



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

HARVARD
COLLEGE
LIBRARY



FROM THE
Subscription Fund
BEGUN IN 1858

HAUSA-ENGLISH DICTIONARY

NOTICE.

It is expected that the second volume of this work (English-Hausa) will be published in 1900.

HAUSA-ENGLISH DICTIONARY



**London: C. J. CLAY AND SONS,
CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE,
AVE MARIA LANE.**

AND

**THE SOCIETY FOR PROMOTING CHRISTIAN KNOWLEDGE,
NORTHUMBERLAND AVENUE, CHARING CROSS.**

Glasgow: C. J. CLAY AND SONS, 263, ARGYLE STREET.

Leipzig: F. A. BROCKHAUS.

New York: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY.

Bombay: E. SEYMOUR HALE,

©

DICTIONARY
OF THE
HAUSA LANGUAGE

BY

CHARLES HENRY ROBINSON M.A.

TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

LECTURER IN HAUSA IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE

HONORARY CANON OF RIPON

ASSISTED BY

William Henry
W. H. BROOKS B.A.

LATE HAUSA SCHOLAR OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE

TYRWHITT'S HEBREW SCHOLAR IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE

STUDENT OF THE HAUSA ASSOCIATION

VOL. I

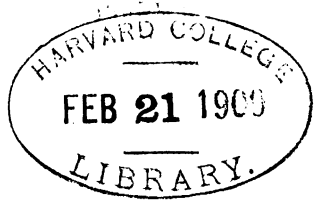
HAUSA-ENGLISH

CAMBRIDGE
AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS

1899

[*All Rights reserved*]

2275.42
3



Subscription fund

Cambridge:
PRINTED BY J. AND C. F. CLAY,
AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS.

144
43-115
38

FRATRI · MEO
STVDIA · AB · IPSO · FELICITER · INSTAVRATA
MORTE · INTERCEPTA
TANDEM · PRO · VIRIBVS · MEIS · COMPLETA
DEDICO
SVMMO · DESIDERIO

2275.42
3

PREFACE.

THE Hausa language is, as far as tropical Africa is concerned, undoubtedly the language of the future. Spoken as it already is by one per cent. of the population of the globe and with every prospect of obtaining a still wider currency in the near future, it seems almost incredible that it should have been so little studied in the past. The disgrace, if such it be, of this neglect rests almost entirely upon our fellow-countrymen, who from the days of Mungo Park onward have from time to time penetrated, if not to the centre of the Hausa-speaking country, at least to the borders of it. The fact that within the last few years England has included the whole of this vast area within her sphere of influence, which means that the future of this great race lies so to speak in our hands, renders the publication of a Hausa-English dictionary the more urgent. Before beginning to explain the method adopted in the compilation of the present work it will be well to state under what auspices the work has been carried out and to what extent it is based upon the labours of others who have gone before.

The task of compiling this dictionary has been accomplished under the auspices and direction of the Hausa Association. On the death in 1891 of the Rev. John Alfred Robinson, M.A. (a brother of the author), in the employment of the C.M.S. at Lokoja, a committee was formed in London to perpetuate his memory and carry on his work "by providing for a thoroughly scientific study of the Hausa language." The present committee of the Association contains such representative names as the Archbishops of Canterbury and York, the Commander in Chief,

Importance of the Hausa Language.

Origin of present work.

the President of the Royal Geographical Society, the Governor of the Royal Niger Co., and the President of the London Chamber of Commerce, in addition to those of the well-known philologists Professor Max Müller and Dr Peile. The expedition which the author was enabled to make to the centre of the Hausa country for the purpose of studying the language and collecting native manuscripts with a view to compiling a dictionary was carried out under the direction of this committee.

Previous
Vocabu-
laries.

The first vocabulary of the Hausa language was that drawn up by Mr Richardson, the leader of the expedition which reached the Hausa country by crossing the Sahara desert from Tripoli. The list of words sent home by Mr Richardson before his death was printed by the Foreign Office, but was so short and incomplete as to be practically of no value. Dr Barth, who afterwards took charge of Mr Richardson's expedition, published in 1862 a series of linguistic notes on Hausa and several other central African languages. This work is of considerable interest, though from the nature of the case extremely incomplete from the point of view of a vocabulary. The only other vocabulary deserving of notice, and by far the most important of all, is that published by Dr J. F. Schön, a missionary of the C.M.S. in 1876, with an appendix published in 1888. Dr Schön may justly be regarded as the pioneer of Hausa study. He learnt the language from some freed slaves in Sierra Leone, and afterwards took part in the Government expedition which ascended the R. Niger in 1841. Unfortunately he was never able to penetrate into the Hausa country; and, as he afterwards spoke of himself as having reduced to writing a hitherto unwritten language, he was apparently unaware at the time he wrote that the Hausas possessed any kind of literature or that they had long ago adopted, with some modifications, a form of the Arabic alphabet as their own. Another difficulty under which Dr Schön laboured was his lack of acquaintance with the Arabic language. In dozens of instances words and expressions have been entered either in the dictionary or appendix as Hausa, which are quite common in Sudanese Arabic, but are unknown to the Hausas of the interior. Dr Schön's inability to recognize them as Arabic, when they were suggested

Dr Schön's
work.

Diffi-
culties
under
which he
laboured.

to him by Arabic-speaking Hausas, coupled with his want of opportunities for verifying them by personal contact with Hausas who had never come under Arab influence, made it inevitable that such words should be inserted. An attempt has been made in this dictionary to point out as far as possible in each case where a word used by the Hausas has been derived from, or is obviously connected with, a word in Arabic or any other language. There are a great many words in Hausa which are pronounced and spelt in four or five different ways in different parts of the country or even at different times by the same people. In these cases Dr Schön has entered them as separate words without supplying any cross-references, of which his entire work does not, I think, contain half a dozen. By grouping such words under one or more heads and inserting altogether nearly two thousand cross-references from one part of the dictionary to another, an attempt has been made to avoid the confusion produced by the former plan. Considering the difficulties under which Dr Schön laboured, his work is deserving of the very highest commendation. The present work is the result of a careful study of that published by Barth and by Schön, and of about six years' independent study of the language in Hausaland, in N. Africa and in England. Whilst living amongst the Hausas in the heart of their country, I went through the whole of Schön's dictionary, verifying or rejecting every entry and adding a large proportion of new words. The MSS. which were obtained in Hausaland, some of which have since been published, furnished many new words and the means of verifying others. These MSS. have also provided a trustworthy standard of Hausa orthography, or rather they have served to show how far a fixed and uniform standard has as yet been formed. As these MSS., which were published under the title of *Specimens of Hausa Literature*, are constantly referred to and quoted in this dictionary, I would like to add to the introduction published with them one or two further explanatory statements in order to facilitate the use of this dictionary in translating them. In the *Specimens* I have given a facsimile of the Hausa MSS., an English translation, and in addition, on the pages opposite to the translation, a

Compilation of present work.

Specimens of Hausa Literature.

transliteration in Roman characters. In this transliteration an attempt has been made, not to reproduce the original letter by letter, but rather to give the sound of these poems, which were written down line by line as I heard them chanted in the heart of the Hausa country. As might naturally be expected, a careful comparison of a transliteration so formed with the original MSS. reveals a large number of apparent inconsistencies of spelling. The student who desires to see the poems as they were written, rather than as they appeared to be pronounced in Kano, is referred to the facsimile of the original MSS. In all quotations from the *Specimens* introduced into this work (where, to save expense, I have not reproduced the original characters), I have tried to represent the exact sound of the words as written, instead of giving the transliteration printed in the *Specimens*. Of the apparent inconsistencies between the Hausa originals and the transliteration given in the *Specimens* the commonest relates to the representation of the Hausa vowel ٲ . This should properly be pronounced like the Italian *e* or like the English *a* (in cake); but in common conversation in and round Kano, and still more in the chanting of songs, this *e* is pronounced like the Italian *i*. In a considerable number of cases in these poems and in many other specimens of writing obtained by me in Hausaland, this vowel is written, as well as pronounced, *i*; many Hausas in fact use the vowel ٲ to represent the sound both of *e* and *i*. Others again use ٲ to express the sound *e*, thus, D 17 ٲٲ for ٲٲ , 24 ٲٲ for ٲٲ ; cf. also D 8, 91, etc. The most correct representation of the sound is undoubtedly ٲ .

*Hausa
Grammar.*

The above remarks apply in part to the elementary Hausa Grammar recently published. As stated on p. 122, I have tried in the grammar to represent the sounds most commonly heard in Kano where, even in the case of the substantive verb 'to be,' it seems impossible to say whether the sounds more frequently used by the common people are *ni*, *ki* and *chi*, or *ne*, *ke* and *che*. In the dictionary I have taken as the standard of correctness the written forms, though I have pointed out the cases where these differ from the colloquial. I have also for the sake of greater

exactness made use of the form ي to represent the sound of the Italian *e* instead of using ى , as some Hausas do, to represent both *e* and *i*. The grammar was intended for beginners, many of whom will probably never attempt to get beyond the colloquial; the present work will, it is hoped, be of use not only to beginners but to genuine students of the language.

In order to suit the requirements of both classes I have transliterated every word in the dictionary so that it may be of use even to those who have not learnt the distinctive Hausa alphabet. I have not thought it worth while to transliterate the Arabic, as beginners, who have not mastered the Hausa and Arabic characters, would not presumably take much interest in suggested derivations from Arabic. I have, somewhat reluctantly, arranged the words in the order of the English alphabet, and this for two reasons; 1. to have adopted the genuine Hausa order, i.e. the order of the Arabic alphabet, would have been to render the book entirely useless to the beginner; 2. there are several letters in Hausa which are pronounced exactly alike and are frequently interchanged, e.g. $\text{ص} = \text{س} = s$, $\text{ك} = \text{ف} = k$, $\text{ذ} = \text{ز} = z$, $\text{ح} = \text{ه} = h$. In Arabic these letters have distinct sounds and they do not follow each other in alphabetical order. If the words had been arranged according to the order of the Hausa, i.e. the Arabic, alphabet, the English student, who would be unable to decide from the sound under which letter to look, would in many cases have to search under two or even three headings in different parts of the book in order to find any particular word. The present arrangement is the only one which would obviate this difficulty.

Order in which the words are arranged.

There are a considerable number of words in Hausa which are generally or always pronounced as though they possessed a double consonant but in which the reduplication is not written in the original. Thus the Hausa for 'near' is written *kusa* كُـس but is pronounced *kussa*. In these cases the second of the two consonants is placed in a bracket, but the letter in a bracket does not affect the alphabetical arrangement; thus *kus(s)a* will be found before *kushe*. The general rule in Hausa is that all words ending in *a* in addition to all words denoting female objects are

Double consonants.

Feminine gender.

of the feminine gender. As this rule is so nearly universal I have only pointed out the exceptions, cf. *rana sun*, *safe evening*.

Cross-references.

In some instances there are four or five distinct ways of writing and pronouncing what is obviously the same word, cf. *kurji*, *goraka*, *kobri*, *sab(b)ero*. All the variations will be found given under what appears to be the original or the commonest form, cross-references being provided from each variation.

System of transliteration.

The system of transliteration adopted is that originally propounded by the Royal Geographical Society. It has been sanctioned by the British and by most of the continental governments for the representation of geographical names. The general principle is that all vowels are to be pronounced as in Italian, all consonants as in English.

The following is a brief sketch of the system of transliteration adopted, a more complete account of which will be found in the Hausa Grammar.

Names.	Pronunciation in Hausa.
ا (<i>alif</i>)	
ب <i>b</i>	English <i>b</i> .
ت <i>t</i>	„ <i>t</i> .
ث <i>ch</i>	Soft <i>ch</i> as in ‘church.’
ج <i>j</i>	English <i>j</i> .
ح <i>h</i>	„ strong <i>h</i> , the same as <i>h</i> .
خ <i>h</i>	„ strong <i>h</i> .
د <i>d</i>	„ <i>d</i> .
ذ <i>z</i>	„ <i>z</i> .
ر <i>r</i>	„ <i>r</i> .
ز <i>z</i>	„ <i>z</i> , the same as <i>z</i> .
س <i>s</i>	„ <i>s</i> , the same as <i>s</i> .
ش <i>sh</i>	„ <i>sh</i> .
ص <i>s</i>	„ <i>s</i> .
ض <i>d</i> or <i>l</i>	„ <i>d</i> or <i>l</i> , cf. under <i>d</i> in Dictionary.
ط <i>ts</i>	„ <i>ts</i> or less commonly as hard <i>t</i> .
ع (<i>ain</i>)	
غ <i>g</i>	English hard <i>g</i> as in ‘gate.’
ف <i>f</i>	„ <i>f</i> .

Names.	Pronunciation in Hausa.
ف <i>f</i>	English <i>k</i> , the same as seq.
ك <i>k</i>	„ <i>k</i> , the same as prec.
ل <i>l</i>	„ <i>l</i> .
م <i>m</i>	„ <i>m</i> .
ن <i>n</i>	„ <i>n</i> .
ه <i>h</i>	„ <i>h</i> .
و <i>w</i>	„ <i>w</i> .
ي <i>y</i>	„ <i>y</i> .

The letters *alif* and *ain* are used in Hausa simply as the *Alif* and bearers of the vowel-sounds and are frequently interchanged, ^{*ain*} cf. *ita* اِتْ and *عت* she; the presence of an *alif* does not at all necessarily imply that the syllable is long or that the accent rests on that syllable. The letter *ع* *ain* is but rarely used by the Hausas except in words which they have borrowed from Arabic. Many words when they stand at the end of a line or a sentence, especially in poetry, have a final *alif* ا or *y* ي which they would not otherwise take, and which is therefore omitted in the dictionary.

The vowel-sounds used by the Hausas are: *a* ا as in 'father,' ^{Hausa vowels.} *e* ع pronounced like *a* in 'fate', *y* ي or *ي* as *i* in 'ravine' or *ee* in 'feet,' *و* a shortened *e* or *i*, e.g. *litafi* لِتَاب or *letafi*, writing; it is also used for *i* in a closed syllable, i.e. when it is preceded and followed by a consonant as in *linke* لِنِكِي, to roll up. When *ا* occurs in a closed syllable it is sometimes pronounced *a* as in 'rag,' sometimes *e* as in 'beg,' thus *farifet* فَرِيْفَتْ, very white. The long vowel *o* is written *و* or occasionally *و*, thus *rogo* رُوْغُو, to ask; *o* in a closed syllable is written *ا*, thus *konga* كُنْغَا, a plain; the-sound *u* as in 'flute' is written *و*, or occasionally *ا*, thus *samu* سَامُو, to find; *u* in a closed syllable is written *ا*, thus *muska* مُسْكَا, musk.

¹ In modern Arabic the sound of the Italian *e* is often represented thus اِ, cf. Wright's *Ar. Gr.* i, 6, rem. c. "The sound of اِ inclines in later times and in certain localities from *ā* to *ē*, just as that of *fatha* does from *ā* to *ǣ*; this change is called اَلْاِيْمَانَةُ *al-imala*, the deflection."

Diphthongs.

The diphthongs are *ai* اِي pronounced like *i* in 'nice,' thus مَيْتَا *maita*, witchcraft; *au* اُو pronounced like *ow* in 'how,' thus بَوْتَا *bauta*, slavery; and *oi* اِي pronounced like *oi* in 'loiter,' thus بُوْكُو *bokko*, seven; *iu* اُو like *ew* in 'few,' *shiu* شُو silence.

Accents.

As the emphasis laid on different syllables differs a good deal in different localities I have made very sparing use of accents, only employing them where the emphasis to be placed upon a syllable is very pronounced or specially liable to be misplaced.

Hamza.

The sign *hamza* ء which the Hausas have borrowed from the Arabs, and which denotes the cutting off of the stream of breath which can precede or follow a vowel, is only used irregularly by the Hausas. Thus *abinda* occurs with *hamza* in B 32 but without it in B 57, *en* occurs without *hamza* in B 48 but with it in B 54. The *hamza* sometimes occurs by itself without either ا or ع. I have however inserted the *hamza* wherever it would be inserted in correct writing.

Modifications of Arabic article.

The following are specimens of the changes which many Arabic words and letters undergo when adopted into Hausa, both in regard to their writing and pronunciation.

The Ar. article appears in Hausa: 1. Unchanged from the Ar. form, e.g. *alkali* اَلْقَضَى, Ar. id., judge; *aljenna* اَلْجَنَّة, Ar. id., paradise; *addini* اَدِين, Ar. دِين, religion; cf. also *addua*, *annabi*, *annabanchi*. 2. As the letter *l*, e.g. *lada* لَادَا, Ar. عَادَة, wages, pay; *lokachi* لُوْكُتِي, Ar. لَوْكُت, Kanuri *lokta*, time; *laya* لَايَا, Ar. آيَة, a writing, a charm; *lisha* لِيْشَا, Ar. اَلْعِشَاء, late evening. 3. As the letter *a*, e.g. *azuḥur* = Ar. اَلظَهْر, afternoon. 4. With closer assimilation in the case of words containing *l*, e.g. *allewa* اَللَّوَا, Ar. حَلْوَى, sweetmeats; v. under ض.

Some of these Arabic words appear in Hausa both with and without the article, though occasionally with a slight difference of meaning, e.g. *aia*, *ada*, *amru*, *alameri*. In the same way we employ in English koran and alkoran, kali (as in lemon-kali) and alkali. For modifications of the Arabic article in English

similar to those found in Hausa we may note alcohol which appears in Hausa as *kulli* (antimony), alkali, almagantar, and almagest. This last which is used in astronomy to denote Ptolemy's great collection of problems, is a combination of the Arabic article *ال* and the Greek *μεγίστη* 'greatest.'

An interesting example of the modification of the Arabic alphabet in a manner closely parallel to what occurs in Hausa is afforded by the history of the Greek *ἀμβίξ* 'goblet': borrowed by the Arab chemists it appears as *أَنْبَيْفٌ* and *أَنْبَيْكٌ* *ambikun* which, with the Ar. article, is seen in the French alambic, Eng. alembic, while a further reduction of the article gives the English limbeck, Italian lambicco. Illustrations of this assimilation and disappearance of the article may be found in the European languages themselves, thus, Eng. newt = an ewt, an adder = a nadder¹: Eng. ounce (a lynx) Fr. once, It. lonza: Eng. manatee (a sea cow) Fr. lamantin.

A reduplicated consonant in Arabic often appears in Hausa as a single consonant followed by an *alif*, thus *kal(l)i* *قَالِي*, to disregard = Ar. *kalla* *قَلَّ*; *sābe* *سَابَى*, to revile = Ar. *sabba* *سَبَّ*. Conversely a syllable, originally long, appears in Hausa as one ending in a double consonant; thus *daffa* *دَفَّ*, to cook = Ar. *dāb*; *fatilla* *فَتَيْلَا*, lamp = Ar. *fatīla*.

Reduplicated Arabic consonants.

The Ar. *b* frequently appears in Hausa as *f*, occasionally as *m*; thus Ar. *tobun* *تَوْبٌ* becomes H. *tufa* *تُوفَا*, a shirt; Ar. *labada* *لَبَدَدٌ*, H. *lufudi* *لُوفُودِي*, a coat of mail; Ar. *rakubun* *رَكُوبٌ*, H. *rakumi* *رَكْمِي*, camel.

Changes in words derived from Arabic.

Ar. *th* is regularly pronounced *ch* in Hausa, thus H. *chabura*, Ar. *ṭubūr*, trouble; occasionally however it appears as *t* or *s*, thus Ar. *ṭabata* *تَبَّتْ*, H. *tabbeta* *تَبَّتْ*, to continue; Ar. *miṣqāl* *مِثْقَالٌ*, H. *miskal* *مِسْكَالٌ*, a weight.

Ar. *hh* sometimes appears in Hausa as *alif* ʾ; sometimes it

¹ An interesting parallel to this is seen in mod. Ar. itself, comparing *لَبْعِي* 'viper' with the classical Ar. *الْأَبْعَى* 'the viper.'

disappears altogether, thus Ar. رَبَحَ *rabahha*, H. رِبَا *riba*, unlawful gain.

Ar. *kh* is often changed to *h* ح, thus Ar. *khamasa* خَمَسَ, H. *humushi* حُمِشِي, tax; the Ar. *khasratun* خَسْرَةٌ appears in Hausa under the three forms: *hasara* خَسَارًا, *asara* أَسَارًا and *tasari* تَسَارٍ, loss; the Hausa word *labari* لَابَارٍ, news, comes from the Ar. *khabarun* خَبَرٌ, the article having first been prefixed and then assimilated; cf. also *fas(s)o* فَسُو, chapping, from Ar. *fasikha* فَسِخَ; *foma* فُومًا, pride, from Ar. *fakhuma* فَخِمَ.

Ar. *dh* or *ds* is pronounced *z* in Hausa, occasionally however it appears as H. *ch* ث or H. *ts* ط, thus Ar. *dsoro* دُورٌ, H. *choro* ثُورُو or *tsoro* طُورُو, fear; Ar. *admagar* اذمغرا, H. *chukumara* تُغْمَرًا, cheese; the Hausa word *idan* إِذْنٌ, i.e. the Ar. إِذَا, is usually pronounced *idan*; cf. also H. *dira* دِرَا, cubit, from Ar. *dsira'un* ذِرَاعٌ.

Ar. *s* sometimes changes to Hausa *sh* ش before *i*, thus Ar. *sunnatun* سُنَّةٌ, H. *shin(n)i* شِنِي, knowledge.

Ar. *ṣ* may appear in Hausa as *z* ذ, *z* ز, *ts* ط or *j* ج, thus Ar. *sabba* سَبَّ, H. *zuba* ذُبُّ or *zuba* زُبُّ; Ar. *sharihkhun* صَرِيحٌ, H. *tsari* طَرِي, pure; Ar. *saumun* صَوْمٌ, H. *azumi* أَذْمِي, a fast; Ar. *qashirun* قَصِيرٌ, H. *gajere* غَجِيرِي, short.

Ar. palatal *d* is often written and pronounced in Hausa as *d* د, thus H. *kada* فَادٌ, to judge, from Ar. قَضَى; H. *yerda* يَرْدٌ, to consent, from Ar. رَضَا; H. *rubda* رُبْدٌ, to crawl, from Ar. رَبَضَ. In a few instances the *ض* is changed by the Hausas to *l* ل, thus H. *alalai* أَلَالِي *fululu*, arrogance, from Ar. بُضُولٌ; H. *alalai* أَلَالِي, trouble, from Ar. أَلَأْسٌ. Sometimes the *ض* is retained in the written Hausa but is pronounced as *l*, thus *lulla* لُلُّو, purification, from Ar. وُضُوءٌ with article prefixed. As an instance of the variety brought about by the juxtaposition of the *l* ل of the Ar. article and *ض*, cf. in Dict. under *allowa*, *alwal(l)a*, *arwalla* and *lullo*, all derived from Ar. وَضَأٌ.

Ar. ط emphatic *t* is regularly pronounced *ts* in Hausa, e.g. *tsaka* طَكَا, midst; *tsaya* طَيَّ, to stand. Occasionally in borrowed words the proper Ar. pronunciation is retained, thus H. شَيْطَانُ *shaitan*. An Ar. ط sometimes appears in Hausa as ت, e.g. H. *tasa* تَاسَا, cup, from Ar. طَسَّة; H. *butulshi* بُتْلِشِي, ingratitude, from Ar. بَطْلٌ. A tendency to pronounce ط as د may be seen 1. in the substitution of the latter for the former in words borrowed from the Arabic, e.g. H. *sheradi* شَرَادِ, an agreement, from Ar. شَرَطَ; 2. by using ط to express the Hausa د *d*, e.g. in G 2 بَعَا = بَدَا, fight, so too طَيَّا is used for دَيَّا, one; cf. H. *Spec.* p. 107, note.

Ar. ظ weak emphatic *s* appears in Hausa writing 1. unchanged, e.g. A 50 ظَالِمِي (pronounced *tsalimchi*), deceit, from Ar. rt ظلم; 2. as ط, with which it is then more or less identified in pronunciation, e.g. H. *tsalimi* طَالِمِي, also from the Ar. rt ظلم. 3. Hausa forms of the same origin show as well ذ *z*, e.g. B 59, E 36, *zulumi* ذُلْمِي, doubt, fear. 4. In the Hausa word *minzeri* مَنزَرِي, spectacles, fr. Ar. مَنظَرَةٌ, the ظ has become *z*. This weakening of the sibilants renders it sometimes difficult or impossible to decide with certainty the exact origin of words derived from Arabic, thus *azurfa* أَزْرِفَا, silver, is probably derived from the Ar. rt صرَب (as suggested in the Dict.), but it may possibly come from the Ar. ظَرْب; in either case the initial letter in Hausa represents an attenuated form of the Ar. article.

Ar. ع *ain*. As a general rule, to which however there are numerous exceptions, the occurrence of this letter in a Hausa word suggests that it is borrowed from Arabic. Its occurrence in words which have been definitely incorporated into the Hausa language does not affect the pronunciation, and no mark has therefore been used to represent it in transliterating. In words merely borrowed from the Arabic and where the Arabic pronunciation is retained its presence is marked by '. The Hausas constantly interchange ع and ا, thus we have *ido* عِدُو and اِدُو,

eye; *ita* **إِتا** and **عِتا**, she; *ishe* **إِشِي** and **عِشِي**, to reach. In C 22, 23 what was once the Ar. article is spelt with **ع**, thus *alkaweli* **عَلْفَوَلِي**, agreement. From the Ar. *allama* **عَلَمَر** the Hausas get *halama* **حَلَمَر**, to mark.

Ar. **ك** *k*, 1. may either remain as it is in Hausa or be written as **ك** *k*, the pronunciation being the same in either case, thus H. *kal(l)e* **كَالِي** and **قَالِي** *kal(l)i*, to disregard, from Ar. **قَلَّ**, H. *fasiki* **فَاسِف** or **فَاسِك** *fasiki*, a profligate, from Ar. **فَاسَفَ**; 2. it is sometimes represented by the Hausa **غ** *g*, thus H. *gufa* **غُوفا**, basket, from Ar. **قُبَّة**, H. *shirga* **شِرْغ**, to overcharge, from Ar. **شَرَفَ**. In the colloquial Arabic spoken in N. Africa and in some parts of Arabia the Ar. **ف** is frequently pronounced as *g*.

Ar. **ه** *h*, the Ar. **شَاهِيَّة** *shahiyatun* appears in Hausa as **شَاوُو** *shahu* and **شَاوُو** *shafu*.

HAUSA
PHONO-
LOGY.
Labials.

The treatment of the sound **ف** *f* in Hausa causes much variation in forms and is strongly characteristic of the language. Generally speaking in Europe the *f* sound is produced by making contact of the lower lip with the edge of the upper teeth and forcing out the stream of air with audible friction of the passing breath¹. The Hausas however exhibit a tendency to avoid the contact referred to. They simply draw the lips near one to another, producing a 'bi-labial' fricative. In consequence of this looser articulation the barrier between this and the other labials is slight and on the least occasion, say, that of a following *f, p* and *b*. explosive, a labial stop *p* or *b* is heard instead of *f*. Thus a word which, as we know, had originally our *f*, *tufka* (Ar. **طُفِف**), to plait, may be correctly pronounced *tupka* or *tubka*; cf. also

<i>hafshi</i>	<i>hapshi</i>	<i>habshi</i>	to bark.
<i>safko</i>	<i>sapko</i>	<i>sabko</i>	to start.
<i>tafki</i>	<i>tapki</i>	<i>tabki</i>	a pool.
<i>tafshi</i>	<i>tapshi</i>	<i>tabshi</i>	soft.

¹ Dwight Whitney, *Life and Growth of Language*, p. 64, Max Müller, *Sc. of Lang.* II. p. 148.

Again the Ar. **بَار** pl. **بِيرَان**, mouse, appears in Hausa as *bera*,

A 44. Other examples of this fluctuation at the beginning of words are,

<i>falasa</i>	<i>palasa</i>	to revile.	<i>f</i> and <i>p</i> .
<i>fansa</i>	<i>pansa</i>	reward.	
<i>fasshe</i>	<i>passhe</i>	to break.	

Further, words which must have come into the language with *k* have sometimes changed this to *f*, e.g. Ar. **شَيْخ** *sheik* appears as *shetu* C 46 note, so Ar. **حُجَّة** as *huja* or *fuja*, excuse. Finally an original *f* may be weakened to a mere breath, e.g. *fira* (cf. Ar. **هَرَى**, to trump up falsehood), an untrue story, is also found as *hira*; cf. also

<i>fuda</i>	<i>huda</i>	to pierce.	<i>f</i> and <i>h</i> .
<i>fuska</i>	<i>huska</i>	face, B 171.	
<i>taffo</i>	<i>taho</i>	to come, C 18, 19.	
<i>fudu</i>	<i>hudu</i>	four.	

In closed syllables the labial is often entirely vocalised¹. The labial is then merged into a diphthong or vowel, thus, *hafshi*, *haushi* to bark, *sabtu* (orig. Pers. *safta*), *solu* a trust, *shipka*, *shuka* to sow. Vocalised labials.

The same slackness of articulation will explain cases like *zunufi* = *zunubi*, Ar. **ذَنْب**; *harwanya*, Ar. **حَبِينَة**, chameleon; *rakumi*, Ar. **رَكُوب**, camel; *samako*, Ar. **صَبَح**, to start. It was noticed above that *hafshi*, to bark, appears also as *habshi* and *haushi*. Equally complete absorption of an original *b* occurs in Hausa *alura* = *alibra* = Ar. **أَلْبُرَّة**, needle.

In a similar way *m* is vocalised in *damre*, *daure*, *dora* to bind, fasten up, *zamna* and *zona* to sit down. Hence it is probably correct to refer the H. *hauka* (B 23, F 32) foolish, mad, to the Ar. **حَيْف**.

One of the most characteristic phenomena of Hausa pro-Labialism. nunciation is the tendency to labialise the sounds *k* and *g*. In *k* and *g*.

¹ Cf. Ar. **كوكب** *kaukab* for **كبكب** *kabkab*.

connection with Indo-European languages its origin is described by Dr Peile¹: “*k* is the hardest of all consonants to pronounce, and requires the most distinct articulation to keep the sound pure from subsidiary breaths. If we pronounce it lazily without fully opening the mouth, the result is that together with it a slight *w*-sound is quite unconsciously pronounced, because the position of the tongue is almost exactly the same for *k* and *g* as for *w*, and if the lips be nearly shut an imperfect labial is necessarily produced: the *k* or *g* sound is followed by a labial after-sound, a ‘halbvocalischer labialer Nachklang,’ Corssen calls it, though the sound is a genuine consonant.” In the Indo-European languages this labialism has resulted in a change of the *k* or *g* into another consonant, e.g. Sanskrit *gaus*, Gr. *βοῦς*, O. H. G. *chuo*. In Hausa however this labialism is still in an initial stage and the after-sound causes no actual change in the consonant which it follows. In fact it is so unfixed that it may be introduced or omitted at will. Thus it is equally correct to say, *koda* or *kwoda* although, *komi* or *kwomi* anything, *koria* or *kworia* a gourd, *takwoshi* or *tarkoshi* to go lame, *gonda* or *gwanda* a pawpaw, *goza* or *gwaza* a sweet potato, *koi* or *kwoi* an egg. The last example, if the identification with the Ar. فُوِّي chick, and فَاوِيَّة egg, be right, shows how through force of custom the *w* is treated as if it were not radical but parasitic, being omitted or rejected at pleasure. In most though not all of the above instances a ‘rounded’ vowel of the *o*, *u*, class follows the labialised consonant. This may perhaps have tended to facilitate the labialisation, though how far this has been so it is difficult to say. The suggestion derives some support from the fact that in a few words a *y* sound is at times heard after *k* or *g* when followed by ‘front’ vowels (such as those in Eng. bell or bale). Thus we may equally say *ketu* or *kyetu* a flint, *kemru* or *kyemru* a reed, *kenwa* or *kyanwa* cat, *gero* or *gyero* corn.

¹ *Introd. to Gk. and Lat. Etymology*, p. 404.

² For further discussion of this principle cf. Brugmann, *Comp. Gram. of the Indo-Germanic Langs.* I. 417 in Wright’s translation, also Max Müller, *Science of Language*, II. 272.

The Hausa language possesses the palatal *ch* (as in Eng. Palatals. which), e.g. *wonchan* that, *chiniki* trade, *chiwo* sickness, *chocha* ant; also *sh* (as in Eng. wish), e.g. *ishirin* twenty, *shiga* gusset, and in addition their "voiced counterparts" *j* (as in Eng. jungle), e.g. *jawo* to draw, *jefa* to throw, and *j* pronounced as Eng. *s* and *z* in leisure and azure, i.e. a kind of *jh*, e.g. *aje* truly. To these must be added the "glide" *y* whose affinity with the palatals is exemplified in E 117 where *junwa* = *yunwa* hunger, cf. note ad loc. How strong this tendency to palatalism is we may see in the Hausa pronunciation of the Ar. ش . That of Arab speakers varies much in different districts. Thus in Tripoli it is heard as *t*, e.g. *beid tnein* two eggs, while in Egypt¹ it is pronounced either as *t* or *s* and in Algiers² as *ts*. From whatever quarter Arabic loan-words came into Hausa the attempt to differentiate ش from س gave occasion to its palatalisation as *ch*.

The front vowels *e*, *i*, regularly change a preceding *t* into *ch*, e.g. *kotanta* and *kotanchi* to compare; *mata* and *mache* a woman; *sata* and *sache* to steal. This change is most clearly seen in the case of participles, e.g. m. *batache*, f. *batachia*, pl. *batatu* spoiled; m. *matache*, f. *matachia*, pl. *matatu* dead. Under the same circumstances *s* becomes *sh*, e.g. *tarsa*, *tarshe* and *tarshi* to help; *kassa* and *kasshe* to kill; *hausa* and *bahaushe* Hausa.

The Hausas, as before remarked, pronounce ط as *ts*, but the assibilation often leads to palatalisation, e.g. *tsaga* or *chaga* to tear; *tsarki* or *charki* purity; see Dict. under *chira* etc. and *H. Spec.* F 6 note, and for connection of these variations with dialect cf. notes on F 125, 135, 159, 162, 192, 223. We may add as further examples of fluctuating articulation in connection with palatals: *shikkin* (A 9) = *chikkin* in; *shariri* = *jariri* child; *shere* = *jere* line; *shure* = *jure* to kick; *saurara* = *jurara* to listen.

Close relations subsist between the trilled (*r*) and lateral (*l*) Liquids. semivowels³. In Hausa as in many other languages the one *l* and *r*.

¹ Vollers and Burkitt, *Mod. Egypt. Dialect*, p. 8.

² Machuel, *L'Arabe Parlé*, pp. 2, 4.

³ Cf. Dwight Whitney, *ibid.* p. 66; Max Müller, *ibid.* II. p. 186.

sound readily runs into the other. Thus the change seen in the Fr. *armet*, Eng. *helmet*, is common in Hausa, cf.

<i>galgassa</i>	<i>gargassa</i>	hairy.
<i>galma</i>	<i>garma</i>	a hoe.
<i>halbi</i>	<i>harbi</i>	to shoot.
<i>tsalka</i>	<i>tsarki</i>	purity.

In open syllables too this lispings, like that satirised in the *Wasps* (44) of Aristophanes, may frequently be heard, e.g. *l* and *n*. *fasala* = *fasara* to explain. Of the connection between *l* and *n* we have instances in *ladama* = *nadama* repentance; *limke* = *nimka* to fold. The commonest illustration is afforded by the Hausa connective form, e.g. *gonal* = *gonan* 'garden of,' *lahiralka* = *lahiranka* thy future state. Compare It. *alma* contracted from the Lat. *anima*. This *l* which has been substituted for *n* may further change into *r*, e.g. *dukiarka* thy wealth, and *duniarga* F 63, 71, 73.

d, l and *r*. In Latin *d* sometimes becomes *r* or *l*, e.g. *nemo me lacrumis* (= *lacrumis*) *decoret*¹, *arbiter* = *adbiter*; a similar instance is found in Algerian Arabic in the use of ر for د ²; this latter is most likely due to the influence of African speech. In Hausa a *d* may change into an *r*, cf. *fada* = *fad* = *far* F 190 where its occurrence at the end of the word probably assisted the change. These illustrations suggest the reason why in attempting to pronounce the Ar. palatal *d* ض the Hausas sometimes substitute for it *l*. In studying Hausa MSS. the reader may occasionally come across an instance where, by a mannerism of the writer, ض is used instead of ل in the spelling of words like *sarki* king سَرْكِي when intended to be pronounced as *salki*.

r and *s*. Of the interchange of *r* and *s* we have as examples

<i>asna</i>	=	<i>arna</i>	heathen.
<i>bisne</i>	=	<i>birna</i>	to bury.
<i>hasbia</i>	=	<i>harbia</i>	pigeon.

¹ Peile, *ibid.* p. 339.

² Machuel, *ibid.* p. 129.

With this may be compared the similar treatment of medial *s* in Latin, e.g. *mures* = muses, mice.

The Hausa language has been compared to the Italian owing to its preference for ending words with vowels. With a few exceptions, to be referred to later on, the Hausas seem to find a difficulty in pronouncing consonants at the end of words. "The difficulty is one which English-speakers can hardly realise, since they allow freely every consonant in their alphabet (with the accidental exception of the *zh* sound) at the end of a word, or of a syllable, before another consonant; but the Polynesian dialects, for example, admit no groups of consonants anywhere, and end every word with a vowel; the literary Chinese has no final consonant except a nasal; the Greek none save *ν, σ, ρ (n, s, r)*; the Sanskrit allows only about half a dozen and almost never a group of more than one; the Italian rarely has any final consonant¹."

Terminal vowels.

The following are illustrations of variation and interchange among the vowel sounds.

Interchange of vowel sounds *u* and *i*.

The change from *u* to *i*, whenever it does not arise from mere carelessness, seems to take place through a modification of the *u* to a sound resembling the Fr. *u* or the Germ. *ü*; cf.

<i>duduge</i>	<i>didigi</i>	heel.
<i>fukafuki</i>	<i>fikafike</i>	feather.
<i>rufe</i>	<i>rife</i>	to cover.
<i>tulli</i>	<i>tilli</i>	heap.

The rounding of *a* to *o* is met with, e.g.

a to *o*.

<i>kewaye</i>	<i>kewoye</i>	to go round.
<i>tufafi</i>	<i>tufofi</i>	shirts.
<i>waje</i>	<i>woje</i>	quarter.

An *i* is frequently transformed or degraded into an *e*, e.g.

i to *e*.

<i>dalishi</i>	<i>dalashe</i>	to be blunt.
<i>halbi</i>	<i>halbe</i>	to strike.
<i>tsiwa</i>	<i>tsewa</i>	insolent.

When *s* is followed by the vowels *e* or *i* the effect is often the palatalising of the consonant, e.g. *tarsa, tarshe, tarshi* to help,

¹ Dwight Whitney, *ibid.* p. 72.

fansa, fanshe to ransom. So also *t* becomes *ck*, cf. *daidaita, daidaiche* to be or make similar, *mata, mache* woman, *batache*, pl. *batatu* destroyed.

Short *a*. In the English vulgar pronunciation of 'yes' a sort of dull *a* is heard. By the ear alone it is hard to tell whether the vowel be *a* or *e*, as it really lies between them. Such an *a* or *e*, represented in Hausa script by \underline{a} , is found in words such as *bere* بَری, to leave; *dere* دَری, night; *ferko* فَرکو, beginning; *sayes* سَيس, to sell; *tsayesda* طَيسَد, to detain.

Vowel assimilation.

The influence of vowels on other vowels when separated from them by consonants is seen in the change from Eng. man to men owing to the former presence of an *i* vowel in the plural ending¹. In the word men the *a* of the singular was never wholly lost but was modified through anticipation of the *i* of the plural ending. But in Hausa and in some of the other African languages this assimilation is carried to a much greater degree. We meet with introduction or substitution due to a feeling for assonance and made in obedience to a harmonic law. This is most clearly seen in the modifications of the preposition *ma* to, when followed by suffixed pronouns, e.g. *mini* = *mani*; *mumu* = *mamu*; *muku* = *maku*; *musu* = *masu*. Cases like *fitilla* = *fatilla* a lamp, and *kuruchia* = *kurichia* a dove, are perhaps illustrations of the same principle; cf. also *muguje* = *maguje* fugitive.

Parasitic vowel with liquids.

In connection with liquids a parasitic vowel, generally assimilated to that of the syllable, is often introduced. Parallel cases in other languages are *periculum* = *periculum*, *lucinus* = *λύχνος*. Examples in Hausa are:

<i>girbi</i>	<i>giribi</i>	to reap.	
<i>girma</i>	<i>girima</i>	great.	
<i>sarki</i>	<i>sariki</i>	king.	
<i>kurkono</i>	<i>kurukunu</i>	guinea-worm.	
<i>sulkumi</i>	<i>surukumi</i>	bag.	
<i>zarmi</i>	<i>zarumi</i>	<i>zaromi</i>	officer.

Doubling of consonants.

In a large number of instances where a vowel precedes and follows a consonant the latter is pronounced with an emphatic

¹ Dwight Whitney, *ibid.* p. 71.

stress as if doubled. This energetic doubling is found in Aramaic and in Hebrew, e.g. Heb. constr. pl. *innebhê*, grapes. In Hausa we may compare, *bakki* black, *sanni* to know, *chikka* to fill, *gidda* house, *tokkos* eight, *godda* to show, *tsukke* to chew. As before stated, in these cases where the doubling of the consonant is uncertain, or where it is pronounced but not written, the second consonant will be found in the Dictionary with a bracket thus *bak(k)i*. There is, of course, a total difference between this varying energy of pronunciation and cases where, on the junction of two words, the doubling is radical, cf.

san(n)i know, with *sanni* know me.
gan(n)i see, ,, *ganni* see me.

The number of consonants which can be used at the end of a word in Hausa is extremely limited. Final consonants.

The very few words which are found ending in *b* are Arabic, e.g. *magarub* west, *ajub* wonderful. *b.*

f, the word *jifjif* morning, B 56, is poetical; *alif* thousand is Arabic. *f.*

k, the chief and almost only example is *duk* all, an abbreviated form of *duka*. It is very often employed and the preservation of the *k* seems helped by the emphasis natural to its meaning; so too with *tutuk* on which see below. *k.*

l, a final *l* occurs rarely, e.g. *chisal* a disease, *ful* and *pul* very many; *rotel* a pound and *halal* lawful are Arabic. *l.*

m, there are a few instances of final *m*, e.g. *anim* be sought, B 155, a poetical use, *bam* palm wine, *bambam* different, *dabam* id., *dankam* for ever, *dungum* much. From the Arabic are *haram* lawful, *kullum* always. *m.*

n, final *n* is apparently but not really common. It is used, as an abbreviated form of *na* of, as a connective, e.g. *abin mamaki* a thing of wonder, *chikkin gidda* on the inside of the house, *rawanin sarauta* badge of royalty. In the case of a proper name no difficulty is felt, e.g. *sudan*; for other instances cf. *nan*, *kerrin*. *n.*

p, *shakup* light, *kutup kutup* tottering, occur. In the latter case the retention of the final *p* is aided by the repetition. *p.*

r, comparatively rarely used. In most instances where it *r.*

appears at the end of a word it is substituted for a connective *n*. *beri* to leave is sometimes contracted to *ber*, cf. also *biar* five, *dakkir* with difficulty, *giger* leg-irons, *iddubar* a red ass, *wur* very (red). Words derived from the Arabic are *akbar* great, *alhanzir* boar, *askar* soldier, *azuhur* afternoon.

- s*, this is the most commonly used of the final consonants : examples are, *akass* down, *akras* file, *lalas* hot iron, *tilas* by force, *tubbas* certainly. *s* often appears suffixed to primary verbs in order to produce secondary forms, cf.

<i>ba</i>	<i>bayes</i>	to give.
<i>bata</i>	<i>batas</i>	to destroy.
<i>saye</i>	<i>sayes</i>	to sell.
<i>tuda</i>	<i>tudas</i>	to spill.

In many instances such forms have *da* appended to them, the effect being to give to the word a causative meaning or otherwise to modify its sense, e.g.

sanni to know, *sanas* to learn, *sanasda* to teach.

tara to bring together, *taras* to reach to, *tarasda* to come up with.

The following words ending in *s* are Arabic : *albaras* leprosy, *albarus* gunpowder, *alzibbus* gypsum, *arsas* a bullet, *buss* less.

- t*, the difficulty of pronouncing a word ending with a consonant is nowhere more clearly manifested than in the case of a final *t*. It alternates in this position with final *l*, *n*, and *r*, e.g.

<i>biar</i>	<i>bial</i>	<i>biat</i>	five.
<i>dakkir</i>		<i>dakket</i>	with difficulty.
<i>tutur</i>	<i>tutul</i>	<i>tutut</i>	<i>tutuk</i> for ever.

The word *farifet* very white, is probably to be explained in this way as being equivalent to the reduplicated form *farifar* for *farifari*. So also in *far* for *fad* = *fadda* fight, F 190, the dental is interchanged with the final *r*.

- Apocope. The following are illustrations of the shortening of final vowels and syllables which is sometimes found.

dau and *do* for *dauka* to take.

du for *duka* all.

fau up and *hau* to mount from *hawa*.

lai and *lou* very (well) from *lafia*.

ma great for *mainya*, and *ma* to thee for *maka*.

ra and *ran* for *rana* day.

The following are instances of words common to Hausa and European languages, most if not all of which have come into Hausa through the Arabic. European words in Hausa.

From **Greek** or **Latin**; *zinariu* gold, from Grk. *δηνάριον*, Lat. *denarius*; *kauwera* a flat place, Grk. *χώρα*; *sabuni* soap, Grk. *σάπων*; *takarda* paper, Grk. *χάρτης*.

From **Italian**; *bumbu* a child carried on the back, probably from It. *bambino*; *bindiga* a gun, probably a corruption of Venedigo (see under *bindiga*); *augulu* or *agulu* a vulture, from It. *aguglia* Lat. *aquila*; *araha* cheap, possibly from It. *arra*, Lat. *arrha* earnest money.

From **Spanish**; *liar* a dollar, apparently an inverted form of rial; *tambari* a drum, Sp. *tambor*, in Barbary *تَمْبُور*.

From **French**; *kankanchi* quarrelling, possibly an Arabicised form of *cancan* idle gossip; and perhaps *sambazai* sandal, from Fr. *savate*.

German; *talashi* satin, cf. Germ. *Atlass* fr. Ar. *أَطَاس*.

The word *takas* a badger is the Lat. *taxus*, *taxo* (Augustine), It. *tasso*, Germ. *dachs*. *takanda* sugar cane is the Ar. *قَنْدَة*, Eng. candy. *samfalwa* a blue bead is probably the Ar. *صَفِير*, Eng. sapphire.

The most cursory study of this Dictionary will serve to show to the Arabic scholar that there are not only numerous words borrowed direct from Arabic, but that there are also a large number of idioms and of methods of word building and construction which must have had a semitic source unless the hypothesis be adopted that the Hausa language was itself semitic. This latter hypothesis may some day conceivably be established, but at present the fact that two-thirds of the Hausa vocabulary present no similarity to any semitic language forms an almost insuperable obstacle to the acceptance of this theory until such time as a careful study of the surrounding languages, and more Con-
nection
between
Hausa and
Arabic.

particularly of the languages which are spoken in and on the borders of the Sahara Desert, e.g. Berber, Tuareg, Songai, etc., may prove either the existence or non-existence of connecting links between Hausa and Arabic or any other semitic language. In the *Specimens of Hausa Literature* pp. x—xlv I have given some reasons for supposing that a connection may be established between Hausa, Berber and Coptic, a connection which if genuine would seem to point to a sort of sub-semitic group of languages spoken by a stream of immigrants from the east who entered Africa at an earlier epoch than the semites proper¹.

The question still remains in regard to the large number of words which have obviously been borrowed or added to the Hausa language from the Arabic language as it now exists, from what exact sources did the Hausas obtain the words, so many of which they have incorporated into their language? The answer which we should naturally expect to this question would be, from Arab traders or travellers who many years ago may have visited the country and have introduced articles previously unknown, leaving behind not only the articles but their Arabic names. An examination of the Dictionary will however show that such an answer is altogether incorrect. The majority of the Hausa pronouns and many other words of everyday use though obviously derived from Arabic are extremely unlikely to have been introduced by traders. Several animals which were probably introduced from Arabic-speaking countries do not appear to have semitic names. Moreover the Arabic words borrowed or incorporated by the Hausas are not in most cases taken from the colloquial but from the classical Arabic. The camel, for example, which is clearly an animal introduced by Arabs, does not bear the name universal amongst the Arabs, but is a modification of a word which is sometimes used in classical Arabic for camel, cf. under *rakumi*. A very large proportion of the words borrowed from Arabic and now universally adopted by the Hausas have been borrowed from

¹ For arguments for and against this suggested connection the student may consult Renan, *Histoire des langues sémitiques* i. 2, 89, Prof. Wright, *Comp. Gramm. of the Sem. languages* pp. 33—34, Dwight Whitney, *ib.* pp. 248—253, Max Müller, *ib.* p. 326.

written as contrasted with spoken Arabic, and not only from the Koran but from other literary works current among the Arabs. Mohammedanism had very little hold in Hausaland until the beginning of the present century, whereas long before this it is certain that the Hausa language contained many of the words connected with Arabic roots which are now found in it.

It is just conceivable that the introduction of many semitic words into Hausa and some other West African languages may be traced back as far as the Carthaginian expedition described in the *Periplus* of Hanno. According to Pliny this was sent out "Carthaginis potentia florente" (500 B.C.?). It consisted of 60 ships with 50 oars each, containing 30,000 men and women colonists. That they reached as far as the Congo seems certain from the description given of gorillas, three skins of which were afterwards hung up in the temple of Kronos. The modern word 'gorilla' is derived from this account¹.

The Persian language, half of the vocabulary of which is Arabic², affords an illustration of how the Moslem carries with him not only his religion but his language, but in this case the Persians have been in contact with Islam for centuries. We can but hope that a careful study of some of the other languages, by which Hausa is surrounded, may ere long shed further light upon the problem suggested at once by the similarity and dissimilarity of the Hausa and Arabic languages.

The British and Foreign Bible Society have just issued the Gospel of S. John in Hausa. As this will probably be used by students beginning to study the language, I should perhaps explain how it came into existence. During my stay in Kano in 1895, the most learned Hausa in the city, who was at the same time an extremely good classical Arabic scholar, translated, at my request, the Gospels of S. John and S. Luke from Arabic into Hausa his own native language. The version just published represents his translation with a certain number of corrections which I have thought it necessary to make.

S. John
in Hausa.

¹ On the subject of the circumnavigation of Africa, etc. cf. Herod. II, 32, 33, IV, 42, 43 with Blakesley's notes, also Pomponius Mela, III, 90, 94, Pliny, *Nat. Hist.* II, 67, v, 1, Cic. *Tusc.* v, 32, 90.

² Cf. Duncan Forbes, *Gr. of the Persian Language*, p. 99, vi.

Conclu-
sion.

It remains for me to express my gratitude to those who have so kindly helped in the somewhat laborious task of preparing this work for publication. I am indebted to Mr Hermann Harris of Alexandria for several suggestions and for reading over the proofs. I am also indebted and that to a far larger extent to Mr Brooks, whose name appears on the title-page. In addition to correcting the proof-sheets he has suggested a large proportion of the derivations from Arabic contained in the body of the work and has helped me greatly in writing this preface. Without his help the Dictionary could not have been published as soon as it has been, nor would it have been nearly so complete. My special thanks are due to the Royal Niger Company, to the Society for Promoting Christian Knowledge, and to the Government of Lagos, for grants which they have made towards defraying the expenses of publication and to the Syndics of the Cambridge University Press for undertaking the work.

CHARLES HENRY ROBINSON.

RIPON. *September* 1899.

ABBREVIATIONS.

A, B, C, etc. = no. of piece in "Specimens of Hausa Literature."		indef.	= indefinite.
		intr.	intransitive.
		l., ll.	line, lines.
abstr.	abstract.	lit.	literally.
acc.	accusative.	n.	noun, also = note.
ad loc.	at that place.	n. ag.	noun of the agent.
adv.	adverb, adverbial.	n. verbi.	verbal noun.
aor.	aorist.	num.	numeral.
Ar.	Arabic.	ord.	ordinal.
aux.	auxiliary.	p.	page.
card.	cardinal.	particip.	participle, also = participial.
causat.	causative.	pass.	passive.
*cf.	compare.	periphr.	periphrasis.
comm.	common.	phr.	phrase.
comp.	compound.	pl.	plural.
conj.	conjunctive, also = conjunction.	prec.	preceding.
constr.	construct, construed.	prep.	preposition.
e.g.	for instance.	pres.	present.
etc.	et cetera.	prob.	probably.
expr.	expression.	prov.	proverb.
f.	feminine.	q. v.	which see.
fin.	at end.	recipr.	reciprocal.
fr.	from.	redupl.	reduplicated.
fract.	fractional.	refl.	reflexive.
gen.	generally.	rt	root.
Gk.	Greek.	seq., seqq.	following article, articles.
Gr., Gram., } H. Gr. }	Hausa Grammar.	spec.	specially.
ib., ibid.	in the same work.	Spec. Haus.	"Specimens of Hausa Literature."
id.	the same.	subst. v.	the verb to be.
i.e.	that is.	v.	see.

* Cf. placed after any word does not necessarily imply that the word referred to is the same word or derived from the same root. It is used quite generally.

N.B. A letter enclosed in a bracket, e.g. *gid(d)a*, is usually, or at least occasionally, pronounced, but is not written. The letters *k*, *s*, *z*, *l* are written *k*, *s*, *z*, *l* except at the beginning of an article or in referring to it.

CORRIGENDA AND ADDENDA.

a denotes the first and *b* the second column in the page.

- P. 9 *b*, l. 35 ADD *amma* ^{آما}, but.
- P. 13 *b*, l. 20 FOR *kawa* READ *kaura*.
- P. 36 *a*, l. 32 ,, to no ,, on.
- P. 41 *a*, l. 1 ,, ^{دو} ,, ^{دو}.
- P. 43 *b*, l. 17 ,, ^{دلال} ,, ^{دلال}.
- P. 44 *a*, l. 4 ,, ^{دمع} ,, ^{دمع}.
- P. 46 *a*, fin. ,, ^{دئيجو} ,, ^{دئيجو}.
- P. 53 *a*, l. 13 ,, *akayi* ,, *ahaiifa*.
- P. 56 *a*, l. 17 ADD *fifiche*, see *mafifichi*.
- P. 57 *a*, l. 19 FOR *raia* READ *rai ya*.
- P. 62 *a*, l. 27 ,, at ,, . At.
- P. 76 *b*, l. 28 ADD Ar. ^{فقه}.
- P. 76 *b*, l. 31 fin. ADD cf. *gafaka*.
- P. 187 *b*, l. 6 FOR ^{رمع} READ ^{رمع}.
- P. 192 *b*, l. 8 ,, *sakaina* ,, *sakainia*.
- P. 213 *b*, l. 17 ,, ^{سوم} ,, ^{صوم}.
- P. 222 *a*, l. 2 ,, unbelievers ,, believers.

HAUSA DICTIONARY.

*Words to which * is affixed are not in general use amongst the Hausas, or are Arabic words not definitely incorporated into Hausa.*

a ^ا verbal prefix to denote passive voice of the present or aorist tense, cf. also *an, ana*.

a or *aa* ^{اا}, no. The reduplicated form is that most frequently used, esp. in expressing disapprobation.

a ^ا, at, to, in. It is almost equivalent to *ga*, but of much less frequent occurrence. It is very often prefixed to the prepositions *gare, chikkin, and bissa*. Prefixed to *baya, gabba, kasa*, it is used adverbially, thus *abaya* behind, *agabba* in front, *akasa* or *akass* on the ground.

abada ^{اَبَدَا}, cf. Ar. ^{اَبَدَ} eternity, ever; *hal abada* for ever, F 170.

abawa ^{اَبَوَا} (cf. Ar. ^{اَبَايَة} a woollen cloak), spun cotton, thick cotton yarn (cf. *zarre* thin cotton thread). It is also applied to the white cotton embroidery on a tobe.—A piece of cloth made of cotton.

abduga ^{اَبْدُغَا} or *audiga* ^{اُودِغَا}

(probably from Ar. ^{بَدَّكَ} to card wool, with article prefixed), cotton before it is spun. The cotton plant is found throughout a great part of Hausaland.

abin ^{اَبِنْ} or *abu* ^{اَبُو}, pl. *abubua*

^{اَبُووَا} or *abu* ^{اَبُو}, thing. 1. followed by *da*, it is used as an ordinary relative pronoun; cf. Gr. 25, *abinda ka ke* so what you wish; 2. followed by a verb, noun, or preposition it is used as an indefinite pronoun; thus *abinchi* anything to eat, *abinsha* anything to drink, *abinso* a wish, desire, *abin murna* a cause for joy, *abin baya* that which is behind; 3. it is used of living creatures; thus, *abin da rai* anything living, *abin daji* creatures of the forest; 4. followed by the personal pronoun it means alone; thus, *ka zona abinka*

- remain by yourself, G 2 *abinshi* by himself alone.
- abinchewa** **أَبِنْشَوَا** = *abin mamaki*, a marvel.
- abki* **أَبِك**, prosperity etc.; cf. *auki*.
- aboyi* **أَبُوِي**, secretly, A 35; cf. *boye*.
- aboki* **أَبُوكِ**, fem. *abokia* **أَبُوكِيَا**, pl. *abokai* **أَبُوكَيِ**, friend; *abokin gabba* enemy, lit. friend to the opposite side, *abokin taffia* fellow traveller.
- abude* **أَبُودِي**, opened, openly; cf. *bude*.
- abu kaza* **أَبُو كَذَا**, so and so, such and such a thing; cf. *kaza*.
- abuta* **أَبُوتَا**, friendship.
- abuya* **أَبُويَا**, f. a friend; cf. also *abokia*.
- acha* **أُتَا** (*pennisetum typhoideum*), a small white grain, which is ground and made into a kind of porridge. It grows about eighteen inches high, and two or even three crops are raised during the rainy season.
- achi** **أُتِي** (cf. (?) Ar. **أُتَّ** to grow luxuriantly), grass, A 77; cf. *hachi*.
- achika*, see *chika*.
- ada* **عَادَا**, cf. Ar. **عَادَةٌ**, religious observance, custom, manner; *kamada adansu* according to their custom; cf. *tada*.
- adawa* **أَدَوَا**, sometimes used for

- tadawa* ink; cf. Ar. **دَوَاةٌ** ink-stand.
- addini** **أَلْدِينِ**, Ar. **دِينٌ**, religion, creed, worship, B 77, 136; *mai addini* a religious person.
- addua* **أَلْدَعَا** (i.e. Ar. **دَعَا** with article prefixed), prayer; *yin addua* to pray, D 2.
- adiko* **أَدِيكُو**, a handkerchief tied up so as to form a bag.
- adila* **أَدِيلَا** or *adilan kaya* (cf. Ar. **عَدَلٌ** equilibration of the two sides of a load), a heavy load, a large basket for salt two of which form a donkey load, a load of cloth given as a present.
- adilehi* **عَدِلْتِ**, cf. Ar. **عَدِلٌ**, righteousness, justice.
- ado* **عَدُو** or **أَدُو**, pl. *adodi* **عَدُودِي**, beauty, show, splendour of dress; cf. *riguna na ado* beautiful garments, F 216, 238.
- adua* **أَدُوَا** or *adwa* **أَدُوَا** (*balanites aegyptiaca*), a thorny tree from which gum is obtained, its fruit is edible, its gum is called *kwaron adua*.
- aduda**, cf. *maaduda**, B 122 **مَعْدُودِي** reckoned up, from Ar. **عَدَّ** to reckon.
- af(f)i* **عَفِب**, cf. Ar. **عَو** (cf. also under *lafia*); *yin affi* to make a slight inclination of the head, to bow; it is also used to denote the native custom of prostrating the body

and placing earth upon the head in token of submission.
afko اېكو, desolation, destruction (possibly from Ar. اَبْكَةٌ), cf. B 93, note; *maiafkwawa* about to fall or be destroyed; cf. B 142, 105.
*afko** اېكو, Ar. اِبْكَةٌ, a lie.
afua اِعْوَا, cf. Ar. رَعْوَا, restoration to health, becoming better; *samu afua* to recover, F 78 note, 177; cf. *af(f)i*, *lafia*.
agaga اَغَاغ, tottering, B 109, probably a passive form of *gaga* to be stiff.
agai sheka اَغَيْشِكَا, hail! a very common form of salutation; cf. *gai she*.
agala, see *akala*.
agana اَغَانَا, smallpox; cf. *zanzana*.
agola اَغَوْلَا, stepfather (?).
agua اَغْوَا, wild dove with dark ring round its neck.
agulu, vulture; cf. *angulu*.
agwagwa اَغْوُغْوَا, turkey, probably onomatopoeitic; cf. *talatalu*.
ahai fa اَحْيَا, cf. Ar. اَحْبَاب, claw of animal, finger-nail.
aharus اَحْرَسَا, f. *aharasa*, a brown horse.
ai اِي, Ar. id. verily, indeed, B 79, F 136.
aia اِيَا, the grain or fruit of a grass or reed from which a sweetmeat called *dakua* is made; cf. (?) *aya*.

*aiar** اَيْر, Ar. اَيَّة a verse of the Koran, F 161 *fa aiar adhulu* and the verse 'enter'; cf. *aya*.
aiibu اَيْبُ, Ar. id. spot, blemish, fault, used in regard to men it denotes a worthless fellow.
aika, to send, to do; cf. *aiki*.
aikata اَيْكَتَا, to do, to act, A 85; cf. also *aiki*.
aiki اَيْك, pl. اَيْيَكَا *ayuka* اَيْكَا (F 139), *aikoki* اَيْكُوكِي or *aikuna* اَيْكُنَا (F 140), labour, work, act; *yin aiki* to labour, to work, *aikin raga* net-work.
aiki اَيْكِي or *aika* اَيْكَا, to do, act.
aiki اَيْكِي, *aika* اَيْكَا, *aika* اَيْكَا, to send; *maai kachi* a workman, *maai ka* messengers, F 159.
aiko اَيْكُو, to send to the place where the speaker is; *aiki* to send forth from; thus *ya aikoni* he sent me here; *ya aikini* he sent me there. *aiko* is also used generally for to send.
*aiko** اَيْكُو, work, C 53 (F 140?).
*aiman** اَيْمَان, cf. Ar. اَيْمَان, faith.
aimanshi for *aimanchi* اَيْمَنْشِي, E 30 note; cf. prec. id.
ainin اَيْنِنْ, true, correct, truly, on purpose (?); cf. *ai*.
ainya اَيْنْيَا, beehive; cf. *butumi*.
aiwa or *ewa* اِيْوَا, indeed, truly.
aiya, cf. *aya*.
aiyari اَيْيَارِي, Ar. اَيْيَارِي, caravan,

- train of men or animals; cf. *alaro*.
- ajaba* عَجَبًا, Ar. عَجَبٌ, wonder.
- ajabi* عَجَبِي, to cause to wonder, marvel; cf. prec., also *lajibi*, *ajub*.
- ajali* أَجَلِي, cf. Ar. أَجَلٌ, 1. destiny, decree, day of death; *ajalinsa na chika* his time is come, *ajali dunia*, C 25; 2. delay in paying money which is due; 3. tax-collector.
- ajami** عَجَمِي, Ar. عَجَمٌ, foreign, B 175.
- aje* أَجِي, 1. to put, place, lay aside; 2. to hold; *ya aje kofa* he held the door; *ajia* to set up, A 13.
- aje* أَجِي, truly; cf. *ashe*.
- ajera* أَجِرًا or *ajere* أَجِرِي, in line, abreast; cf. *jera* (F 94 ?).
- ajerta* أَجِرْتُ, to become rich.
- ajia* أَجِيَا, 1. treasures, secret stores, A 44 *giddashen ajia* storehouses; 2. *ajian zuchia* sighing, distress of heart; *ajia* A 13 = is placed; cf. *aje*.
- ajub* عَجَبٌ, anything wonderful, cf. *ajaba*.
- aka* أَكْ, verbal prefix to denote the perfect tense in the passive voice; cf. *anka*.
- akal** أَكَلْ, if, when, D 43; cf. *akan*.
- akala* عَقَلًا, cf. Ar. عَقْلٌ, a rope
- such as is used for tying up a camel.
- akan** أَكَنْ, if, when, F 19.
- akan* أَكَنْ, above, on the top of; probably a contraction of *akain* at the head of, F 96.
- akawali* أَكْوَلِي (cf. Ar. أَكْحَلٌ black), a black horse; cf. also *chicherro*.
- akbar** أَكْبَرُ, Ar. id. great, an epithet usually applied to God, A 72.
- akib(b)a** عَافِيَا, Ar. عَافِيَةٌ, end, result, reward; cf. B 35; *akibba maikeau* a fair reward, *shina da akibba* it is useful.
- akodi* أَكُوْدِي, 1. box, drawer; 2. pistol (cf. Germ. Büchse, box and gun); cf. *algaderia*, *akotia*.
- akoi* أَكُوِي, probably a contraction of *akayi*, there is, there are. Very commonly used as an affirmative answer to a question. It is sometimes prefixed to the personal pronouns; thus *akoishi* he is, or he is there; *akoisu* they are.
- akoko* أَكُوْكُو, grey baft.
- akoshi* أَكُوْشِي, a large dish made of wood.
- akotia* أَكُوْتِيَا, pistol, probably the same as *akodi*, q. v.
- akras* أَكْرَسٌ, *yin akras* to file (a sword, etc.).
- aku* أَكُو, parrot.
- akumari* أَكْمَارِي (cf. (?) Ar. حِمَارٌ ass), a pad placed on a donkey.

akurike أَفْرِفِي, pl. *akurikai* أَفْرِفِي, cf. Ar. rt *فرف*, a place where fowls etc. are kept, a coop; cf. *akuriken kaza*.

akuturche, leprous; cf. *kuturchi*.

akwati (?) أَكْوَتِ, a case of gin or spirits.

akwa أَكْوِيَا, pl. *awaki* أَوَاكِي, goat, f.; cf. *bunsuru* he-goat.

al آل, in the case of many words which have been borrowed by the Hausas from the Arabs, the initial *al* represents the Arabic article; where the word has been regularly adopted as a Hausa word, e.g. *alberka*, it will be found in the dictionary under *al*; in other cases, i.e. where the word is an Arabic word pure and simple, it will be found under the letter following the prefix *al*. Thus for *alwali* relations, see under *wali*.

*ala** عَلَى, Ar. id. upon, A 1.

*alada**, see *ada*.

alafa أَلَابَا (cf. Ar. *حَمِي* to go footsore), a disease on horses' feet just above the hoof.

*alahua** أَلَاهُو, members of family (?); cf. C 44 note.

*alajabi**, see *ajabi*.

alale أَلَالِي, cf. Ar. rt *اض*, trouble, annoyance; also used as a verb.

alama عَلَامَا, pl. *alamomi* عَلَامُومِي,

Ar. *عَلَامَةٌ*, frequently pronounced *halama*; 1. sign, in-

struction, cf. B 131; 2. a large white bead in a set of black beads used for prayer, a book-marker.

alameri الْأَمْرِي, cf. Ar. *أَمْرٌ*, work, task, affair, talk, palaver; *alameringa* behold something wonderful! *alamerin dunia* the course or vicissitudes of life whereby the poor become rich, the rich poor.

alaro الْأَارُو, cf. Ar. *عَارٌ* to roam (from which *aiyari* also is derived); hired carrier, animals used for transport, a heavy load; *dan alaro*, lit. son of a carrier, is one of the commonest designations of an ordinary porter; *sarikin alaro* a head carrier; cf. also *dan gurunfa*.

*alaura** الْعَوْرُ, cf. Ar. *عَوْرَةٌ*, pudenda, A 30.

alayed(d) الْأَيْدِي, the oil obtained from the *kwakwa* palm, any dark-coloured oil.

albad(d)a الْبَدَا, pl. *albad(d)u* الْبَدُو or *albad(d)odi* الْبَدُودِي,

cf. Ar. rt *بَد*, the strips of cloth of which a dress is composed, a seam.

*albaras** الْبَرَصُ, Ar. *بَرَصٌ*, leprosy, white leprosy.

albarka or *alberka* الْبَرَكَ, cf. Ar.

بَرَكَتٌ, blessing, thanks; in bartering it is equivalent to 'no thank you,' cf. use of French *merci*; as an epithet applied

to a field it means fertile; *yi alberka* or *sa alberka* to bless or to thank.

albarkachi الْبَرْكِثِ, B 20; cf. *al-barka*.

albarus الْبَارُسُ or *albarud* الْبَارُدُ, Ar. بَارُود, gunpowder.

albas(s)a الْبَصَا, pl. *albas(s)osi* الْبَصُوسِي, cf. Ar. بَصَل, onion; *albassan kwadi* a white flower something like a lily.

albishir الْبِشِيرُ, Ar. بُشْرَةٌ good news; *albishirinka* good news for you! the usual reply to this salutation is *goro*; cf. *bishara*.

alfádari الْفَادِرِ, f. *alfádara* الْفَادِرَا, pl. *alfádaru* الْفَادِرُو (possibly connected with Ar. بَرْدَعَةٌ a pack saddle), mule.

alfaruwa الْفَرُوَا or *alfaua* الْفَاوَا, Ar. فَرُوءٌ, a tent, made of skins or leather.

alfasha الْفَشَا, cf. Ar. فِشًا, *alfasha magana* blasphemous or shameless language.

alfátia الْفَاتِيَا (cf. Ar. الْفَاتِحَةُ, the opening chapter of the Koran), prayers said daily in the early morning, prayers said by a mallam at a funeral; cf. *fátiha*.

alfin الْفَيْنُ, cf. modern Ar. الْفَيْنُ, two thousand; cf. *alif*.

alfohami, see *alhowami*.

alfuta الْفُوطَا, pl. *alfutai* الْفُوطَى, Ar. فُوطَةٌ, a handkerchief used

by women to bind round the head.

algaba الْغَبَا, a cloth worn next the skin in front and behind like a small *tugua*.

*algaderia** الْغَدِيرِيَا, Ar. غَدَارَةٌ, small pistol; cf. *akodi*.

algaita الْغَيْتَا or *algaitu* الْغَيْتُو, a wind instrument blown in a somewhat similar way to a bag-pipe; a flute; cf. *algaitun sarauta*, F 241.

algarib الْغَرِيبُ, pl. *algaribi* الْغَرِيبِي (cf. Ar. غَرِيبٌ, to be black); the red and black seeds of a certain plant; the black are eaten, the red used in making ointment.

algideri الْغِدِيرِ or *alkideri* الْكِدِيرِ, cf. Ar. فِدْرٌ, a brass cooking pan with a handle.

algringumi الْغَرِنْغِمِ, f. *algringuma* الْغَرِنْغِمَا, an idle gossip.

algus الْغُسُّ or *alkus* الْكُسُّ, green.

algushi الْغُشِ or *algashi* الْغَشِ, needlework done in green as on a tobe.

alhaki الْحَفُّ, Ar. حَفٌّ, judgment, condemnation, oppression, right or claim put forward by one who has been defrauded, B 11 *shi ke da alhaki* he receives judgment.

alhamis الْخَمِيسُ, Ar. الْخَمِيسُ, or *rana alhamis*, Thursday, lit. the

fifth day, G 6; sometimes pronounced *alamis*.

alhanzir الخنزير, Ar. خنزير, wād boar.

alhari الحري, pl. *alharini* الحريينى, Ar. حري, silk; the plural form is often used instead of the singular, F 217 *rigansu na alharini*.

alheri الحيرى, Ar. خير, kindness, free gift; *yin alheri* to do a kindness.

alhowami الحومير, cf. Ar. rt حمر, tinder, anything used to catch sparks, e.g. cotton of the *rimi*. In the colloquial it is sometimes pronounced *alfoami*.

*alibra** البرا, Ar. إبرة, needle; cf. *alura*.

alif ألف, Ar. ألف, thousand; cf. *alfin*.

*alijan** الين, cf. Ar. آل, family, relations, E 51, B 174.

*aljama** الجما or *aljima* الجيما, story, narrative, speech; B 153 *aljama maianfani* words which will profit.

aljan الجن, pl. *aljannu* الجنو demons; cf. *jinnu*.

aljenna الجنة, Ar. جنة, a garden, paradise; cf. F 222 *aljenna ta nima*; A 58 *gidan aljenna*. The word suggests to a Hausa the Mohammedan paradise pictured in the Koran; cf. *sama*.

aljibbus, pronounced *alzibbus*, q.v.

aljifi الجيب or *aljifa* الجيما, pl.

aljifu الجيبو or *aljifuna* الجيفنا,

cf. Ar. جيب, pocket, e.g. the large pocket in front of a tobe, a small bag.

aljimua الجمعة, Ar. الجمعة,

Friday, this being regarded as the last day in the week *aljimua* is sometimes used for a week.

aljinnu, demons; cf. *jinnu*.

*alkaki** الكاكي, wheat, B 14; cf. *alkama*.

alkalami الفلمر, pl. *alkalamai*

الفلمى, Ar. فلمر, pen, reed used as pen.

*alkalanchi** الفصنت or *yi alkalanchi*, to act as *alkali*; cf. seq.

alkali الفضى, pl. *alkalai* الفضى,

Ar. فاض, judge; E 10 *alkalai da masuzua sheria* the judges and those who come to be judged.

alkam(m)a الكما, wheat. It is grown in the north-east part of Hausaland.

alkamura الفمرا (cf. Ar. فمر to be white), calico; it is imported into Hausaland from the East.

*alkaria** الفريا, pl. *alkariyu* الفريو,

Ar. فرية, a village composed of houses with no free land inside.

alkaueli الفولى, Ar. قول, promise,

- agreement; *gama alkaueli* or *yi alkaueli* to promise; cf. C 22, note.
- alkawara** **الْكَوْرَا**, cowrie-shell, E 25; cf. *kurdi*.
- alkebbba* **الْفَبَّا**, pl. *alkebbu* **الْفَبُو** (cf. Ar. **فَبَّ**, a cowl), a sort of burnous.
- alkideri*, see *algideri*.
- alkil(l)a* **الْكَلَّا**, blue and white or black and white shawl made in alternate strips.
- alkiyama*, resurrection; cf. *kiyama*.
- alkumali* **الْفَمَلِي**, cf. (?) Ar. rt **فمر**, a red lion.
- allah* **اللَّه**, Ar. **اللَّه** God; the plural *allohi* **الْهِي** is only used of the gods of the heathen.
- alleluba* **الْتُّوبَا** (cf. Ar. **حَتْبُ** a plant with milky juice), a tree resembling a fig-tree in appearance with sweet-tasting leaves.
- allewa* **الْتُّوَا**, cf. Ar. **حَلْوَى**, any kind of sweet-meat.
- alli* **الْتِّي**, chalk or white earth used for bleaching thread.
- allo* **الْتُو**, Ar. **لُوحٌ**, a writing board, made of a smooth piece of wood used for writing charms etc. on; the ink is afterwards washed off and drunk by the person who is to be benefited by the charm.
- allowa** **الْتُّوَا**, Ar. **وَضُوءٌ**, ablution before prayer; cf. *lullo*.
- almajiri* **الْمَاجِرِي**, f. *almajira* **الْمَاجِرِي**, pl. *almajirai* **الْمَاجِرِي** (cf. Ar. rt **اجر**, VIII to give alms), disciple, beggar, A 83, B 134 *almajira mijinta al-majiri* the disciple will marry one who is a disciple; D 6.
- almakassi* **الْمَقَصِّي**, Ar. **مِقْصٌ**, scissors.
- almanani** **الْمَنْنِي**, lintel or beam above a door.
- almara** **الْمَارَا** (cf. Ar. **مَرَى**, IV to doubt, or **أَمْرٌ**, a matter), a story which is not true.
- almauru** (?) **الْمُورُو**, very late in the evening; cf. *magarub*.
- almoza* **الْمُوزَا**, cf. Ar. **مُوسٌ**, a small knife.
- almugrub*, see *magarub*.
- aloba* **الْوَبَا**, Ar. **وَبَأٌ** sickness, pestilence.
- alraata** **الرَّاعَاتُ**, instruction (?); cf. D introductory note.
- alshafi* **الشَّفِي**, f. *alshafa* **الشَّفَا**, horse speckled white with black.
- aluma* **الْعُمَّ**, Ar. **أُمَّةٌ**, 1. people, assembly, C 42; 2. relations (?), C 42 note.
- alura* **الْوَرَا**, pl. *alurai* **الْوَرِي**, probably from Ar. **إِبْرَةٌ** (for similar change cf. *auduga* from *ab-duga*), needle; cf. *alibra*.
- alwali** **الْوَلِي**, cf. Ar. rt **ولى**, relations, D 99.

*alwal(l)a** الوضى, ablution; cf. *allowa* and *lullo*.

alwashi الوشى (cf. Ar. وَشَى, to misrepresent or denounce), 1. discussion preliminary to making a bargain or doing business; 2. threat to do that which is impossible.

*alzibbus**, *aljibbus** الْجِبْسُ, q.v.

Ar. جِبْسُ, Greek γύψος, gypsum, chalk.

amadeshi امدش (cf. (?) Ar. مَدُوسٌ a beater for corn), large hammer used by blacksmith.

amai اَمَى, sickness; *yin amai* to vomit.

amale اَمَلَى, Ar. يَعْْمَلُ, very large male camel = *kutunku*.

amami اَمَامِ, mats used for roofing, made from leaves of palm-trees (a Nupé word ?).

amana اَمَانَا, cf. Ar. اَمَانَةٌ, arrangement in regard to sale of goods, part payment for goods, earnest money; cf. E 15, 25 *masutabin amana* those who steal a deposit; trust, confidence, security; cf. G 4 *kasa amana ga mutane duka* security of land-tenure for all; *chinye amana* to betray confidence.

*amara** اَمْرَا, Ar. اَمْرَةٌ, marker in book, land-mark, mark on ground.

amarchi اَمْرِحْ, wedding festivities; cf. *amre*.

amaria اَمْرِيَا, bride, lawful wife as distinguished from a concubine.

amas(s)ani اَمَسِنِ or *amas(s)ana* اَمَسَنَا (cf. (?) Ar. rt سَخِنَ), rheumatism.

amawali اَمَوْلَى, veil, such as that worn by a king over his mouth hanging down in front.

ambachi اَمْبِشَى, to make known, to address to.

ambata اَمْبَاتَا or *ambato* اَمْبَاتُو (cf. (?) Ar. rt نَبَا IV), to think of, to remember, to mention; *ambatoni* explain it to me.

ambato اَمْبَاتُو, a memorial.

ameri اَمْرَى, Ar. اَمْرٌ judgment, commandment.

amin اَمِين, Ar. id., amen, verily, B 44.

amina اَمِينَا (Ar. اَمِينَةٌ, lit. faithful one), a name given to the hyena (*kura*), when appearing at night it is regarded as an evil spirit.

aminchi اَمِنْشَى, cf. Ar. اَمِنْ, faith, faithfulness, security; D 98 *allah shina dada aminchi* may God increase faith, B 84 *dunia ba tan yi aminchi ba* the world is not to be relied on.

*amini** اَمِينِ, cf. prec., friend, B 24.

*amiru** اَمِيرُ, Ar. id., prince, emir.

am(m)o اَمُو or اَمُو, hum, buzz, noise, report of a gun; *ammon*

kuge sound of a war-drum or bell which has several distinct notes, *ammo* or *yin ammo* to hum.

amre ^{أَمْرِي} or *amri* ^{أَمْرِي} or *aure* ^{أُورِي} (cf. Ar. ^{إِمْرَأَة}, woman), marriage; *amre* or *yin amre* to marry, B 26.

*amru** ^{أَمْرٌ}, Ar. ^{أَمْرٌ}, commanding; F 151 *amru da kiyauta* exhorting to do that which is good.

amsa ^{أَمَسَا}, reply, answer; *amsa* or *yin amsa* to answer, reply, B 130 *ba ka amsa ba* wilt thou not reply? D 45.

amshi ^{أَمَشِي}, to snatch; cf. seq.

*amshiwa** ^{أَمَشِيوَا}, cf. Ar. ^{مَشَعَ}, participial form of prec., receiving, snatching away; cf. C 24 note, *ta ka yi amshiwa* she would snatch it away. The reading here should perhaps be *amshiya* ^{أَمَشِي}.

*amunchiwa** ^{أَمُنْشِيوَا}, confidence, C 38 note; another form of *aminchi*, q. v.

amurgude ^{أَمْرُغُودِي}, lame, for *anagurgu*; cf. *guragu*.

*amusan** ^{أَمَسَنَ}, A 33, possibly for *anason*, from *so* to love.

an ^{أَنَّ} or *ana* ^{أَنَّ}, verbal prefix to denote the passive voice of the aorist or the present tense; cf. Gr. p. 26.

anade ^{أَنْدِي}, rolled up; cf. *nade*.

anago ^{أَنْغُو}, illness caused by lack of food, dysentery.

anagudawa ^{أَنْغُدَوَا}, dysentery; cf. *gudawa*.

*anamimanchi** ^{أَنْمِيْمَنْتِ}, F 13; cf. *ananminchi*.

anamusu, denial; cf. *musu*.

ananminchi ^{أَنْنَمِيْنِي}, cf. Ar. rt ^{نَمَّرَ}, evil-speaking, tale-bearing.

anche, cf. *che*.

anche or *enche* ^{أَنْبِي}, verily, indeed!

*anchia(r)** ^{أَنْشِيْرٌ}, plenty to eat, D 57; cf. *chi*.

anfani ^{أَنْفَانِي}, cf. Ar. ^{نَفَعَ}, use, advantage, benefit; *enna anfani* of what use is it? *da anfani* useful, *babu anfani* useless, *anfani* *dayaua* it is of great use; *maianfani* useful, B 44 *addua maianfani* a prayer that shall be effective.

angarmia ^{أَنْغَرْمِيَا}, cf. Ar. ^{فَرَمٌ}, a stallion—a large mare (possibly *angarmia* may be for *yangarmia*; cf. *anguria*).

angashe, weary; cf. *gashi*.

ango ^{أَنْغُو} or ^{عَنْغُو}, pl. *anguna* ^{أَنْغُنَا} (possibly from Ar. ^{عَنَفَ}, to embrace), a bridegroom.

angonchi ^{أَنْغَنْتِ} or ^{عَنْغَنْتِ}, marriage.

angulu ^{أَنْغُلُو} or *agulu* ^{أَغُلُو} or *augulu* ^{أَوْغُلُو}, f. *angula* ^{أَنْعَلَا}

or *agula* اَغْلَا (cf. Italian *aguglia*, Lat. *aquila*), vulture.
anguria اَنْغْرِيَا, seeds of the cotton plant. It is sometimes spelt *yanguria* and is probably the Ar. قَوْز cotton.
*anim** اَنْم, an imperative form of *nema*, B 155.
aniya عَنِيا, Ar. عِنَايَة, diligence, haste, intention; *yin aniya* to show diligence, to hasten, D 25 *ku do aniya* take to yourselves diligence, D 25 *aniyar*; cf. A 72.
anjima اَنْجِمَا, by-and-bye; *sai anjima* good-bye for the present! cf. *jima*.
anka اَنْك, verbal prefix to denote the passive voice of the perfect tense = *aka*, q.v. The same prefixes are used to denote the passive imperative, e.g. *akakawo* let it be brought; cf. Gr. p. 26.
annabi اَنْبِي or اَلنَّبِي, pl. *annabarwa* اَنْبَاوَا or اَلنَّبَاوَا, cf. Ar. نَبِي, prophet, A 83, F 25, 37.
annabanchi اَنْبَنْث or اَلنَّبَنْث, the office of a prophet, prophecy.
anna(s)ara اَلنَّصَار (cf. Ar. نَصْرَان), coll. اَلنَّصَارِي, a Christian, lit. the Nazarene; originally used as a term of reproach, but as used in Hausaland it does not necessarily suggest such.
annuri اَلنُّور, Ar. نُور, light, glory, light of heaven; cf. *nuri*.

ansaki اَنْسَف or *hansaki* حَنْسَف, small pincers, F 104.
*anshifi** اَنْشِب, cf. D 39, laid out in death (?).
anta اَتَا or *hanta* حَنْتَا, liver, D 67.
antaya اَنْطَى or اَنْتَى, price; *nawa antaya* what is the price?
araara عَرَعَرَا, a large Bornuese ram with conspicuous horns.
araha عَرَحَا, cheapness; *da araha* cheap (probably from the Italian *arra*, Lat. *arrha* earnest money).
arame اَرَامِي, lean, thin, emaciated; cf. *rama*.
aranfaki اَرَنْفَكِي, to lie in wait; cf. *rafaki*.
araraki اَرَارَكِي, gimlet; *mararaki* the man who uses a gimlet.
aratays اَرَاتَيْي, hanging; cf. *rataya*.
arbaa or *arba* اَرْبَع, Ar. اَرْبَعَة, four, often used for four thousand; cf. Gr. p. 38; *arba mia* four hundred.
arbain اَرْبَعِن, Ar. اَرْبَعِينَ, forty.
ariwa اَرِيوَا or *ariawa* اَرِيوَا, north; G 4, etc.
*ariwachi** اَرُوْث, the northern region.
arna اَرْنَا or *asna* اَسْنَا, heathen, i.e. the worshippers of idols; cf. E 6 *addini na asna* idolatry.
aro عَرُو, Ar. عَرَة, l. loan, *bada aro* to lend, *yin aro* to borrow;

2. an addition made to sum paid by debtor.

arradu ارعد or لَرَعَدُو, Ar. رَعَدٌ, thunder; *ya yi arradu* or *arradu ta faru* it thunders.

arrafiya الرِّفْيَا, Ar. رِبْعِيْعٌ, very fine thread.

arrafiichi الرِّفِيْث, i. q. prec.

arshaberi اَرَشَبِرِي or الصَّبِرِي (cf. (?) Ar. صَبْرٌ, fruit of tamarind tree), a mat made of grass let down in front of a door-way; cf. *shabara*.

arşas اَرَشَصٌ, Ar. رِصَاصَةٌ, bullet, lead for bullets.

artai اَرْتِي, beating, driving away, defeat in war.

*arufu** اَرُوْفُو, alphabet; cf. *hurufi*.

aruwa اَرُوَا, soothsaying, the telling of secrets which are unknown to the questioner by a soothsayer (*boka*).

arwalla, ablution; cf. *alwalla*.

*arza** اَرَزَا, a species of laurel.

arzuki اَرَزِيْ, cf. Ar. رَزَقٌ, prosperity, riches; A 65 *alla ya kan gamma arzikinka* God may give thee prosperity; D 23 *ayi masa arzuki* he shall be successful; prosperous D 91; giver of sustenance D 3 note, *ya yi arzuki* a common expression for 'it was fortunate.'

asalo اَسَلُو (cf. Ar. اَسَلٌ, a rush), a round mat made of plaited grass.

asanchi اَسَنْثِي or azanchi اَزَنْثِي,

knowledge, understanding, cleverness; *yin asanchi* to devise; cf. *sani*.

asara اَسَارَا, Ar. خَسْرَةٌ loss, misfortune; *yin asara* to lose; cf. *hasara*, *tasari*.

*asawaki** اَسُوْفِي B 64; see *sauki*.

asben اَسْبِنٌ, pl. *asbenawa* اَسْبِنُوَا, the name of a tribe of Tuareks in the Sahara Desert.

aserimi اَسِرِيْمِي (cf. Ar. سَرَمٌ, to cut in pieces), round flat pieces of salt.

ashasha اَشَاشَا, a kind of bag made of grass with narrow opening.

ashauma اَشُوْمَا, salt or natron used in dyeing for fixing colours.

ashe اَشِي or *ashi* اَشِي or *aje* اَجِي, surely, indeed, F 136.

asheggi اَشَغِي, profligate, D 32; cf. *shegge*.

ashirin اَشِرِيْن, Ar. عَشْرِيْن twenty; cf. *ishirin*.

*ashiyerda** اَشِيْرْدَا, C 34, abandon (?); cf. *yerda*.

asiri اَسِيْرِي or *ashiri* اَشِيْرِي, cf. Ar. rt سر, secret, in secret; D 63 *loloki asiri* secret recesses, *baden asiri* (lit. open secrets) scandal.

aska اَسْكََا, pl. *asaki* اَسَاكِي razor; cf. *aski*.

askar اَسْكَرُوَا, pl. *askarawa* اَسْكَرُوَا, Ar. عَسْكَرٌ (Turk. Persian id.,

(?) Eng. lascar) soldier; the ordinary word for soldier in Hausa is *dan-yaki*.

aski اسكى, or *yin aski*, to shave.

askunia اسكونيا, anything used to cover the opening of a doorway or window opening, e.g. grass-mat; windows proper do not exist in Hausaland.

asna اسنا, heathen, E 6, 15; cf. *arna*.

aşşalatu الصلوات or *aşşalati* الصلّات, Ar. الصلّاة, 1. prayer E 3; 2. the call to prayer repeated at dawn, B 88; cf. *şal(l)ati*.

assalawi اسلاوى (cf. (?) Ar. rt *صلو*), rope or halter for leading a horse.

aşşuba الصبحة, Ar. صبحة, usually pronounced *azuba*, dawn, the time between *jizifi* and *hanchi*; cf. *rana*.

assubat السبت or السبت, Ar. السبت, Saturday.

asu عسو (possibly from Ar. عس to prowl about at night), a moth from a small black caterpillar, its larva is very destructive to cloth, wool, etc.

*atake** اتكى, suddenly, at once, abruptly (?).

atarata اتار or اتارو or *atarat* اتارت, gathered together; B 25, F 112 *ataru wurin daia*, D 49.

atarus اتارس, a name given to kola nuts newly imported from Gwanja.

atatare اتتبرى, completely, collected together, A 28, 45; cf. *tatara*.

atisha عطيش or *atishawa* عطيشوا, cf. Ar. عَطَس, to sneeze.

attajiri التاجر, cf. Ar. تاجر, a person of rank or wealth, a merchant.

atuni اتونى, dysentery.

audiga, cotton; cf. *abduga*.

augulu, vulture; cf. *angulu*.

auki اوك or عوك, expansion as of rice when boiled, abundance, prosperity, a quantity of salt; cf. *abki*.

awna اون or *auni* اونى or *awuna* اون, to weigh, to measure; F 139 *ayuka awunsu* actions are weighed; *mauni* scales.

*aura** اورا, *auran saraki* chief minister of a king; cf. *kawa*.

aura اورا, a red ass.

aura, to marry; cf. *amre*.

*ausagi** عوسغى, a shirt put on under a shroud, D 88 note.

ausigi اوسغى or عوسغى, half a piece of cloth, paper when it has been cut in two.

auta اوتا, smallest, youngest; *auta yasa* the little finger.

awaki, goats; cf. *akwia*.

*awali** اوالى, cf. Ar. اول, ancestors, F 74.

awanke, washed; cf. *wanke*.

awasa اَوَسَّ (cf. Ar. وَسَى IV to cut), to sharpen a knife.

awo اَوُو, measure, weight; F 139 *abin awo* anything to measure or weigh with; *yin awo* to measure, to weigh; cf. *auna*.

awoje اَوُوْجِي, abroad, outside; cf. *woje*.

awortak(k)i اَوُرْتَكْ or *hawortakki* حَوْرْتَكْ, tongs.

awoza اَوُوْزَا or *awaza* اَوَزَا, pl.

awozai اَوُوْزِي, rib, side.

awuna, to weigh; cf. *auna*.

aya اَيَا (arachis hypogaea), a kind of ground-nut, sweet inside, a quarter of an inch in length; it has a yellow pea-shaped flower; its pods contain from two to four reddish seeds, from which an oil, e.g. the oil used by watch-makers, is obtained; cf. *guchia*.

aya اَيَا, pl. *ayoyi* اَيُوِي, Ar. اَيَّة,

1. a verse of the Koran, also applied to the points °. used as a sign of punctuation; 2. sign, wonder; 3. an expression of incredulity.

ayaba اَيَابَا, 1. banana tree; 2. banana fruit.

ayu اَيُو (Fulah id.), the name of a mythical man or creature supposed to live in water and to drag anyone in who happens to see it.

*aza** اَزْ for *aje*, B 171.

*az(z)a** اَزْ with *wuta*, to rake together cinders; cf. *hassa*.

azaba اَزَابَا, Ar. اَعْدَابْ, pain, punishment, illness, A 7 *shi ke shakka azaba lahira* he doubts the existence of pain in the next world, *wurin azaba* a dark place in which criminals are confined, a place of execution.

*azalumi** اَزْلُمِي, deceiver; cf. *tsalumi*.

azanchi اَزَنْشِي, cleverness; cf. *asanchi*.

azara اَزْرَا, the cross-beam on top of a doorway.

azarigagi اَزْرَغِي or *mazarigi* مَزْرَغِي, a noose for catching animals with.

azawa اَزَاوَا, cf. (?) Ar. اَعْدُو, treasures, F 94 *alazarwa*.

azirka اَزْرَقَا, cf. Ar. اَطْرَقَة, a hole made in the nose of an ox to put a rope through.

*azizu** اَزِيْزِي, Ar. id. mighty.

azuba, dawn; cf. *aşuba*.

azuḥur اَزْهْر, Ar. id. the time about 3 p.m. or 4 p.m., the call to prayer at that time; cf. *rana*.

azumaki اَزْمَكِي, worms in horses or asses.

azumi اَزْمِي, cf. Ar. صَوْمْ fast, *yin azumi* to fast, D 22 *kuna azumi kuna zaka da haji* fast and go on the pilgrimage.

azurfa **أَزْرُفَا** or **أَزْرُفَا**, cf.

Ar. **صَرِيْب** silver, F 225.

azurumi **أَزْرُمِي**, a large pyramid (*kanto*) of salt.

b—for interchange of *b* and *f* sounds, cf. *burtumi*—*furtumi*, *ruba*—*rufa*.

ba...*ba* **بَا بَا**, not. It is placed before and after the verb or the sentence which it negatives, thus we may have *ba ya gani ba mutum* or *ba ya gani mutum ba* he did not see the man; the former is the more idiomatic. In the case of a negative interrogation the second *ba* is frequently omitted; *ba ya* and *ba ya yi* are usually abbreviated to *bai*; *ba na* is abbreviated to *ban*, thus *ban sani ba* I do not know. When *ba* is joined to the following word the *l* is usually omitted.

ba **بَا**, a prefix to nouns to denote origin, ancestry, etc.; thus *ba-haushe* a Hausa native, *ba-laraba* an Arab, *bature* a white man.

ba **بَا**, to give, to cause; *ya bani daria* he made me laugh, *ya bushi tsoro* he made him afraid, *ban hanu* to clap, F 234; cf. also the following modifications or voices of *ba*, *bada*, *bashi*, *bayes*, *bayesda*.

baa **بَعَا** or *yi baa* (cf. Ar. **بَعَا**, to

attack with evil eye), to deride, to scoff at.

baba **بَبَا**, pl. *mainya* **مَنِي** or *maiya* **مَيِي**, sometimes pronounced *babba*, great, large; as used of persons, important, of high rank. When placed before the noun which it qualifies it is usually written *baban*; thus *baban kai* great head (a very common Hausa surname), A 10 *baban gari*.

baba **بَبَا**, chief, leader, eldest.

baba **بَبَا**, pl. *babani* **بَبَانِي** (cf. (?) Ar.

بَوَاب, doorkeeper), eunuch.

baba **بَبَا** (*indigofera endecaphylla*), Indigo. It grows wild in many parts of Hausaland. It is also cultivated for the sake of its dye which is obtained by the fermentation of its leaves in water; cf. Hausaland, p. 160.

babaki **بَبَكِي** (cf. (?) Ar. **بَوَف**, to blow a trumpet), roar of a camel, crackling of hell-fire, D72 note, A 31 *rana kiama kan wuta ta babaki*.

babaku, black, pl. of *baki*, q. v.

babambade **بَبَبَدِي** or *bade** **بَدِي** (lit. great *bade* i.e. fool etc.), jester, buffoon, a king's singer, a crier.

babani **بَبَانِي** (cf. Ar. **بَابَا**, father, grandfather, etc.), uncle, father's brother.

*babawa** **بَبَاوَا**, a lengthened form of *ba* to give; cf. B 69 note.

babe بَابِي, f. *babania* بَابِنِيَا a large species of locust; cf. *fara*, *farandere*, *birdudua*, etc.

*babın** بَابِن, inside (!); cf. B 72 note.

babu بَابُو, or بَابُ (i.e. *ba abu* not anything), nothing, no, not, without; *babu wonda* no one, *babu komi* nothing, or there is nothing the matter, *babu kearu* it is not good, *babu wawa* F 137 seqq. without doubt (cf. similar use in Kanuri of *ago* something, and *bago* nothing).

bache بَشي, to destroy, to spoil, to be spoiled, to speak evil of, B 139 *su bache tare* they perish together; cf. *bata*.

*bachia** بَشِيَا, bush goat.

bachucheni بَشُشِنِي, the son of a slave, but not himself a slave; cf. *cheche*.

bada بَادَا, to give, to give up, usually joined with some other word; thus *bada girima* to honour, *bada gaskiu* to believe or to acquit, *bada laifi* to condemn, *bada wuri* to give place to, used with *hainya* it means to lead, *hainya ya badamu* the road led us to; cf. *ba*.

*bada** بَادَا, for *bata*, to destroy (!); cf. B 108 note, F 72 note.

badada بَادَادَا or *badabada* بَادَادَا, a fool, D 20; cf. *babambade*.

*badagela** بَدَاغِل, to sharpen a knife.

badagula بَدَاغُلَا or بَدَاغُولَا, foolish talking.

badbilla بَدَبِلَا or *belbela* بَلْبِلَا, or *bilbila* بَلْبِلَا (buphus leucotus), a white bird like a small heron.

bade, jester; cf. *babambade*.

bad(d)i بَدِي (cf. Kanuri *bali*), next year; B 120 *makada mai-zache badi* meditating coming next year; cf. *banna* and *bara*.

bafade بَفَادِي or *bafadi* بَفَادِي, a king's minister, a hanger on at court; pl. *fadawa*, q. v.

ba-gab(b)azi بَغَبَزِي, one who has come from the east.

bag(g)arua بَغَرُوَا (acacia nilotica), acacia tree, the bark of which is used for tanning; it grows near water; an astringent medicine is made from its seeds.

*bage** بَغِي, a warrior.

bahago بَحَاغُو, a left-handed person; cf. *hugum*.

*bahili** بَحِيلِي, Ar. بَحِيل a miser, an idle or cowardly person.

bai بِي, a contracted form of *baya* or *ba ya yi*.

*bai** بِي, for *ba* to give, A 83.

baia, after; cf. *baya*.

baiala, wide plain, D 75; cf. *bayala*.

baibai بَبَبِي, backwards; equivalent to *da baya*.

baibai بَبَبِي, pl. *baibaiyi* بَبَبِيِي or

baubawa بَوَبَوَا, barbarous people, people who wear no clothes.

baibaiyi بَبَبِيِي, a ring put through a man's lower lip; cf. *dabebeyi*.

baiki, roar, D 72; cf. *babaki*.

baiso, a drink, i. q. *beso*, q. v.

baiwa بَيَوَا, female slave; *baiwan allah*, lit. the slave of God, a bird rather smaller than a sparrow; cf. *bawa*.

baiwa بَيَوَا, generosity, gifts; A 83 *sadaka da baiwa du* (= *duka*) *ya bai*; A 46; cf. *ba* to give.

*bajini(n)** بَجِينِن, great, mighty; cf. B 85.

bajini or *bajimi* بَجِنِي or *bijimi* بَجِنِي, a bull.

baka بَاكَا, pl. *bakuna* بَاكُونَا, bow; *bakan kibia* bow and arrows, *bakan allah* (lit. God's bow) or *bakan gizo* (lit. spider's bow) a rainbow; cf. also *mashan rua*.

baka, بَاكَا; *bakan gishiri* a load of salt after it has been cut up into small pieces; cf. *kanto*.

bakache بَاكِيِي (cf. Ar. بَفَتْ, to mix up food etc.), 1. to fan, to winnow; 2. a fan; *maibakache* one who fans or winnows.

baki بَاك, pl. *bakuna* بَاكُونَا, mouth, edge, brink; F 199 *wuta na fita baki* fire shall come out of

their mouth, *bakin kofa* doorway, *bakin rua* the bank of the river, *bindiga da baki bin gun* with two barrels, *bakin wuta* stick on which meat is placed to be cooked over a fire, torch, *bakin gatari* the handle of the axe, *yi baki* to promise, *yi baki dara* to make an agreement, to conspire, *gama baki* to speak the same language, to agree together.

*baki** بَاكِي, F 228 *abin baki* a thing regarded; cf. Ar. بَقِيَ to regard, to protect, F 27 (?).

bak(k)i بَاكِي, f. *bak(k)a* بَاكَا, pl.

babaku بَبَاكُو, black; A 21 *sun sun fari sun san bakki* they knew the difference between black and white, *bakkal chiuta*, cf. B 15 note, *bakkin zuchia* (lit. blackness of heart) evil disposition, evil thought, sadness, B 99 *ku ber bakkin chikki* leave off evil hankering after.

bako بَاكُو, f. *bakua* بَاكُوَا, pl.

bakuna بَاكُونَا, *baki* بَاكِي or

bakokuna بَاكُونَا, strange, stranger, guest, visitor; A 15 *bako da dangari* stranger and citizen.

bakonchi, بَاكُونْتِكَا, i. q. seq.

bakontaka بَاكُونْتِكَا, strangeness, that which belongs to a stranger, a feast given to a stranger; *yi bakontaka* or *yi bakonchi* to act as a stranger.

*bakwondoro** بَکْندُورُو, measles (?).
*balaga** بَلِغ, Ar. id., to arrive at the age of 17, to reach puberty.
*balagaga** بَلِغَا, pl. *balagagu* بَلِغُو, one who has reached the age of puberty; cf. prec.
balaguro بَلِغُرُو, a bachelor.
balante بَلَنْتِي, much more, C 48; cf. *balatana*.
*balatana** بَلْتَنَا, much more, C 2.
bal(l)e بَلِي (usually preceded by a negative particle), much less, A 44 *ba bera bale tausangara* there are no mice, much less ants; by no means, F 69 *bale taffiar tutut ka zaka* thou shalt by no means ever come. *bale fa* = *balante*; cf. *fache*.
*balle** بَعْلِي, Ar. بَعْل, master of house = *maigidda*.
balle بَلِي, 1. for *halbe* to sting; 2. to unfasten, untie, open.
balli balli بَلِي بَلِي, sores or scabs.
balma بَلْمَا, an inferior kind of salt, salt such as is given to horses, perhaps originally = the salt from Bilma, the salt mine at the south of the Sahara.
*balshe** بَلْشِي, but; cf. *fache*.
bam بَم or *bumbi* بُمِب, palm wine; D 10 *aber sha gia da bam da buza* leave off intoxicants, drinks etc. The wine is obtained by direct incision into the stems of the palm-tree (*tukurua*), it begins to ferment

on the second or third day; cf. under *gia* and *buza*.
*bama(n)chi** بَمَٲٲ, sport, trick.
bamaguje بَمَٲٲِجِي, heathen, esp. those living among Moham-medans; cf. *majusi*.
bambam بَمْبَم, different, separate, distinct from; F 146 *tambaya bambam ga kowa* the questions at each are different, *ya yi bambam* it is different, *bambam daggga* different from.
*bambam** بَمْبَم, name of a tree; i. q. *bambana* (?).
bambamchi بَمْبَمِٲٲ, بَمْبَمِٲٲ or *bamta* بَمْبَمِٲٲَا, difference, distinction; *minene bambamchi wanan da wanan* what is the difference between this and that? cf. *dabamchi*.
bambami بَمْبَمِي (cf. (?)) Ar. بَوْم, an owl), the name of a small bird. It usually builds its nest of cotton.
bambana بَمْبَانَا, 1. a large tree, with edible fruit, *asclepias gigantea* (?); 2. an aquatic plant; cf. *shalla*.
*bambar** بَمْبَم, bark of a tree.
bambarokai بَمْبَمِرُوكِي, dimness of sight.
bamda بَمْدَا, besides, apart from, in addition to; *bamda wanan* in addition to this.
bamota بَمُوتَا or *bamawuta* بَمُوتَا, butterfly; cf. *litafin allak*.

- ban* بَن, a contracted form of *ba-ni* or *ba-na*.
- ban-hanu*, F 234, to clap; cf. *ba*.
- bana* بَانَا (cf. (?) Ar. بَان), a small tree with edible fruit.
- bananche* بَنْشِي, to mock, to declare falsely; cf. *banna*.
- banga banga* بَنْغَا بَنْغَا or *bunga bunga* بَنْغَا بَنْغَا, a royal procession.
- bango* بَنْغُو or *bungo* بَنْغُو, pl. *bangaye* بَنْغِي or *banguna* بَنْغُنَا, cf. Kanuri *bongo*, 1. the wall of a house built of mud; 2. the stiff cover of a book = *taderishi*.
- bango* بَنْغُو, a royal officer = *dogarín sariki*.
- bani** بَن, perhaps = Ar. بَنِي, to raise up; cf. B 134, note.
- banke* بَنْكِي, 1. a patch on cloth; 2. to patch, to mend.
- banna* بَنَّا, Kanuri id., 1. waste, evil; 2. to no purpose, in vain, B 133 *wonda ya zazari banna* he who hastens after evil; 3. to destroy, to waste.
- banna* بَنَّا, this year; cf. *bara* and *baddi*.
- bannai** بَنْي, harm, evil; B 12, i. q. *banna*, q. v.
- bante* بَنْتِي, pl. *bantuna* بَنْتُنَا, Nupe id. towel, apron, loin cloth.
- banza* بَنْذَا, Fulah id. vain, useless, worthless, evil, without reward, gratuitous; B 136, C 9,

D 20 *aber rikichi na banza* leave off vain deceit.

- bara* بَرَا, f. *barania* بَرَانِيَا or *baranya* بَرَنْيَا, pl. *barori* بَرُورِي or *barurua* بَرُورُوا a servant as distinguished from *barwa* a slave. A servant (*bara*) could not lawfully be sold. The plural *barurua* implies a large number of servants such as a king would have.
- bara* بَارَا, last year; cf. *banna*, *bad(d)i*.
- bara** بَارَا, a charm (?); cf. *sha bara*; *maida bara* = name of a Hausa song *re* the guinea fowl.
- barage* بَرَغِي, a narrow line in a piece of cloth, usually made with silk; cf. *saki* a broad line in cloth.
- barakonchi* بَرَكَنْشِي, thieving; cf. *barao*.
- baramchi** بَرَمْتِي, name of a large fish.
- baranchi* بَرَنْشِي, stealing; cf. *baráo*.
- barandem(m)i* بَرَنْدَمِي (cf. (?) Ar. بَرَنْد), an old sword), a hatchet with broad blade.
- baráo* بَرَاوُو, f. *baraunia* بَرُونِيَا, pl. *baraye* بَرَايِي or *barai* بَرِي, thief.
- barazza* بَرَزَا or *barassa* بَرَسَا (cf. (?) Ar. بَرَس), opiate), an intoxicating drink, a name esp. applied to imported gin.

*barbada** بَرَبَد, to gird (?).

barbaddi or *berbaddi* بَرَبَدِي (cf.

Ar. rt بَد, to scatter), crumbs of food, grains of sand; *ya barbaddi* = *ya zuba akasa*.

*bardi** بَرْد, pl. *baradine* بَرَدِي, cavalry without shields; cf. *garki*.

bardinuwa بَرَدِنُوَا or *birduduwa* بَرَدُدُوَا (cf. Ar. بَرَدِي, locust's wing), a black locust which flies about at night, it is frequently attracted by a light.

bare بَارِي, 1. to peel, to divide in half; 2. the half of a goro nut.

*bare** بَرِي (cf. Ar. بَرَانِي), an alien.

barewa بَرِنُوَا, pl. *bareyi* بَرِينِي, deer, antelope.

bari بَارِي, to dry in the sun, to cast the young, to miscarry.

*baria** بَرِيَا, hole, opening (a Kanuri word ?); cf. *dambaria*.

barka بَرَك (cf. Ar. بَرَك II), 1. to thank, to bless, to congratulate, F 215 *sunu barka da jinna* they congratulate one another; 2. *barka* بَرَكَا, E 38 *da yi allah da albarkar* by the power of God and the blessing of....

*barkatai** بَرَقَتِي (cf. (?) Ar. بَقَط), to talk quickly, in phr. *shina magana barkatai* he talks nonsense, or, he is confused.

barke or *berke* بَرَكِي, to tear.

barra بَرَّ, to beg, to supplicate; C 1 *na barra domin ka tsarshani* I supplicate thee that thou would'st save me, *mai-barra* a beggar.

*baru** بَرُو, a hyena.

burugo, marrow; cf. *burgo*.

*barzahu** بَرَزَخ, Ar. id. tomb, time between death and resurrection; cf. F 70, note.

basara بَسَرَا (cf. Ar. بَسَار, refreshing rain), the hottest part of the dry season just as the rains are beginning; the dry season *rani*, including *basara*, lasts about eight months, then follows *damana* the wet season, which lasts three months, then *kakka* the harvest season, which lasts one month.

bashe بَشِي, but, A 84; cf. *fache*.

bashi بَاش, pl. *basusuka* بَاسُوكَا (cf. (?) Ar. بَضَع, to invest capital), debt, credit; *shina da bashina* he owes me; this might also be expressed *ina binsa bashi*; cf. under *bi*.

bashi بَاشِي, to give up; cf. *ba*.

*basira** بَصِيرَا, Ar. بَصِيرَة, prudence, sagacity, discernment; B 152 *en ba shinni ba anyi basira* *ba* if there be no knowledge there is no discernment.

bat(t)a بَتَا, pl. *bat(t)ochi* بَتُوُحِي, a small box usually made of skin, e.g. a snuff-box.

bata بَت, to destroy, lay waste, spoil, perish; *ya bata* may either be 'it is spoilt' or 'he destroyed,' F 176 *malika ya batansu* the angel shall afflict them, *bata hainya* to lose the way, *bata zunche* to make a mistake; cf. *bache*.

batache بَتَشِي, f. *batachia* بَتَشِيَا, pl.

batatu بَتَتُو, spoiled, destroyed, wasted.

batachi بَتَشِي, destruction.

batas بَتَس, to destroy, to waste, to spend.

batasda بَتَسَد = *batas*; *batasda hainya* to lose the way.

*batsini** بَاتِنِي, Ar. بَطِن, within, B 35 note.

battu بَتُو (apparently a Fulah word), conversation; *yi battu* to converse.

*batunda** بَتُنْدَا, conversation; cf. *battu*.

bature بَتُورِي or *baturi* بَتُور (Kanuri id.) Arab, lit. son of Arab (*ture*), a word applied to any white man or stranger; A 45 *mutum uku ne baturi a lahira* there are three strangers in heaven; cf. *ture*.

bauchi بَوُث, slavery; cf. *bauta* and *bawanchi*.

baua بَوُد, used with *hainya* = to deviate from a straight course; cf. seq.

baudiwa بَوُدُوا, causing to deviate;

C 23 *tana baudiwa kowa* she makes everyone to deviate (from the right way).

bauji بَوُج, girth; *baujin doki* horse girth.

bauna بَوُنَا, pl. *bakani* بَكَانِي (cf. Fulah *mbauna*), buffalo.

baure بَوُورِي or *bore* بَوُورِي, fig-tree, fig.

baushi بَوُوش, name of a tree with edible fruit, its wood is of a reddish colour.

baushia, a hedge-hog; cf. *bushia*.

bauta بَوُوتَا, 1. slavery; 2. to serve; D 42 *barwa wanda ke bauta ta banza* a slave who has served a vain service.

bawa بَاوَا, f. *baiwa* بَيُوَا, *bauya* or *bawuya* بَوُيَا, pl. *bayi* بَايِي or *bai* بِي, slave; *bawan allah* (lit. a slave of God), or simply *barwa*, a servant of God.

bawanchi بَاوَنْث, slavery; cf. *bauchi*.

*bawon** بَاوَنْ—*bawon itache* bark of a tree.

baya or *baia* بَايَا, the back, the hinder parts, used also as preposition, behind, beyond, below, besides; A 6, note *shi kan ji fada ta baya kunuwa* he would hear behind his ears, *bayan hanu* the palm of the hand, *abin baya* the past, that which lies beyond, *bayan hakka* moreover, after this. *baya* is frequently followed by *ga*, *baya*

- ga chin tuo* after eating food. *nabaya* is used adverbially, 'afterwards.' *baya baya*, cf. C 33, 'creeping,' an expression applied to a cat. *bayansa* in his absence.
- baya**, to give; cf. *mabaya* مَبَايَ, giver, F 14.
- bayala** بَيَاضَا (cf. Ar. بَيَّضَاءُ), a wide plain, D 75.
- bay(y)an(n)a* or *bay(y)en(n)a* بَيِّن (cf. Ar. بَانَ II), to declare, make manifest, spread out, appear; F 203 *masuriba akabayennasu* those who have made unjust profits shall be made manifest, F 246.
- bayes*, to give; cf. *ba*.
- bayesda*, to restore; cf. *ba*.
- baza* بَزَّ, to spread out, e.g. to spread out wheat to dry.
- bazere** بَزْرِي (cf. (?) Ar. بَزْر), a tree the root of which is used as a charm in childbirth.
- bebe* بَبِي, pl. *bebaye* بَبَايِي, a deaf and dumb person.
- begeyi* بَغْيِي, a tree the fruit of which when eaten acts as a charm to reconcile a husband and wife; cf. *seq*.
- begi* بَغِي (cf. Ar. بَغَى), to long after an absent friend.
- begua* بَغْوَا (Nupe id.), porcupine; cf. *makibia*.
- belbela*, see *badbilla*.
- benema** بَنَمَا, a small white diving bird.
- ber*, to leave; cf. *beri*.
- bera* بَرَا or *bira* بِيرَا (cf. Ar. بَارَةٌ), mouse, rat; A 44 *ajiar da ba bera* riches free from the attacks of mice.
- berbachi* بَرَبَشِي, horse-fly, called *damisan dawaki*, because spotted like a leopard.
- berbaddi*, crumbs; cf. *barbaddi*.
- berbera* بَرَبَرَا (cf. Ar. بَرَبَر to jabber), to bray; A 6 *shi tada ha ba yi jaki berbera*.
- berbira* بَرَبِيرَا, a small black bird that eats mosquitoes.
- berchi* بَرَشِي or *berichi* بَرِشِي, sleep; D 26 *ku yi berchi ku falaka* sleep and awake.
- berdo* بَرْدُو, pl. *berdaye* بَرْدَايِي, wild pigeon, also applied to a small red bird with black beak and some white feathers.
- berere* بَرَبَرِي, f. *bereria* بَرَبَرِيَا, pl. *bereru* بَرَبَرُو, freed; cf. *beri*.
- bergo* بَرَّغُو or *burgo* بُرَّغُو (cf. Ar. بُرَّقُ, a veil etc.), covering, blanket; A 32 *rana kiama ta rufu a bergo wuta* on the day of the resurrection she shall be covered with a blanket of fire.
- ber(r)i* بَرِي or *ber* بَر, to leave, leave behind, suffer, allow; A 14 *tsofo ba yin kaya ba sai dayawa berri* an old man cannot carry a load without leaving

much behind, *maiberri* epithet applied to a carrier who keeps putting down his load, A 16, note; *berri dai* = but, however, *ber(r)o* to leave a thing and come back, *ya berro shi wuri chan* he left it there and returned. [For use of verbs ending in *o*, cf. gram. p. 59.] Cf. *berere*.

berichi, sleep; cf. *berchi*.

*berima** بریما, Ar. بریمة, gimlet.

berke, to tear; cf. *barke*.

*berkete** برکتی, very many, a crowd (?); cf. (?) *barkatai*.

berkono برکونو, pepper; *berkono defu* a small kind of pepper, *berkono tatasai* a large kind of pepper.

bermushi برمشی, a variegated cloth used for making turbans.

berna برنا or *birna* برنا, loss, waste, G 2.

ber(r)o, see *ber(r)i*.

*bersa** برس or *birza* برز (cf. (?) Ar. برش, to grate), to grind roughly so as to render unfit for food.

bershi برش, much less, B 160; cf. *ber(r)i dai*, *bale*, *balshe*, *bashe*, *fache*.

berza برزا, 1. mud dug out to make a wall; 2. wall; cf. D 28 *idan ya fita hankalinsa da berza* if he go out, his wits remain at home.

beso بسو or *baiso* بیسو, a drink

made of honey, pepper and water.

bi بی, to follow, to obey; *bimbashi* to go after anyone in order to recover a debt, *ina binka bashi* you are indebted to me, *kana bina bashi* I am indebted to you. Used with *hainya* or *tafarki*, A 22 *sunu bi tafarki wanda ta fandare* they followed a path that was crooked; *bi dere* to go by night.

bia or *biya* بیا (cf. (?) Ar. rt بيع), 1. to pay, to reward; 2. payment, wages; *bia bashi* to pay a debt.

bial بیال, *biar* بیار or *biat* بیات, five.

biashi بیاشی, to pay; i. q. *bia*, q. v.

biawa بیوا, to follow; cf. *bi*, E 39 *mu ke biawa har bakura* we follow the road to Bakura.

bibia بیبیا, 1. judgment; 2. بیبی, to judge, to discern, to look carefully into.

*bibini** بیبینی, grumbling, for *bim-bini* B 46.

bidaa بدعا, Ar. بدعة, anything new, hence that which is evil, F 25, note.

bid(d)a بد, to seek, to search after; B 4 *komi ni ke bida da bukata* that which I seek and need, *sai ambideka* (wait) till you are sent for.

bid(d)o بدو, to seek and return

with; F 130 *ya muhammad bido* (sh)etonmu O Mohammed seek for us salvation.

*bidi** بَدِي, the inside of a small ground nut (?).

*bige** بَغِي or *bigi* بَغِي, seat, place on ground for sitting; cf. F 71 *duniar ga babu bigi ka zamna* there is no place for sitting down in this world.

*big(e)ri** بَغْرِي, place; *bigerinsa* instead of it, in its place. [*bigri* is possibly derived from mod. Ar. بَغْعَة, a place or spot. *bigerinsa* may be formed from this or it and *bigri* may come from Ar. بَغِير, instead of.]

bijaji بِيَجَاج, side plaits of a woman's hair.

bijinta بِيَجِنْتَا, victory, prosperity; *ya yi bijinta* he is prosperous.

bika بِيِكَا, pl. *bikoka* بِيِكُوَكَا, ba-boon; cf. *gogo*.

biki, marriage feast; cf. *buki*.

biko بِيِكُو, to try to persuade, entreat, beg, reconcile.

bilbila, cf. *badbilla*.

bimbini or *binbini* بِنْبِينِي, 1. grumbling, fault-finding; B 54 *rika binbini* refrain from grumbling; 2. to grumble, to examine in order to find fault with, B 18; cf. *bibini*.

binchik(k)i بِنْشِكْ, f. questioning;

yi binchikki to enquire, to ask for news.

bindiga بِنْدِغَا, pl. *bindigogi*

بِنْدِغُوغِي, gun; *bindiga da baki biu* double barrelled gun.

The word *banduka* بَنْدُفَة is used by the Arabs in N. Africa for a gun. It is perhaps a corruption of the word 'Venedigo'; in former time guns were largely imported into N. Africa by the Venetians.

bindu بِنْدُو, an edible reed, which grows in water; it is not cooked before being eaten.

bingi بِنْغ, a large dark-coloured male donkey.

bingi بِنْغ, a large cistern, or a pond of stagnant water = *kur-duduffi*.

bingira بِنْغِر, to roll, to roll over in sleep; cf. (?) *birgima*.

biobashi بِيُوْبَاش, to collect a debt; cf. *bia*.

*bira** بِيْرَا or *bera** بِيْرَا, a young girl (?), a spectre (?).

bira بِيْر, to skip.

bira, a mouse; cf. *bera*.

birane, E 19, pl. of *birni*, q. v.

birbira, to bray; cf. *berbera*.

birdudua, black locust; cf. *bardinuwa*.

birgami بِيْرْغِم, a large bag for holding cowries made of skin; cf. *buhu*.

birgima برغما or *birkima* بركما, rolling; D 27 *shina birkima kamanda chocha* he rolls like an ant.

biri بری, pl. *birai* برائی, *biraye* برایی or *biruna* برنا, monkey; perhaps derived from *bira* to skip.

biribiri بربر, a small bat.

birkichi برکچی or *birkiche* برکچی, to upset, overthrow, to shake like a leaf.

birkida بركد, to go back.

birkido بركدو, to come back; D 13.

*birkishé** برکشی, to close; F 80 *ido shim birkishe* (thine) eye closes.

*birkonchi** برکنث, thieving, trickery.

birna, waste; cf. *berna*.

birna, to bury; cf. *bisne*.

birni برن, pl. *birane* برانی or *birnua* برنوا [Kanuri *berni*, Fulah *berniól*], town; it is usually applied only to large and walled towns, smaller places would be called *gari*, e.g. *masuzua ga kofofin birane* those who frequent the gates of the cities. *birnin kano* = Kano.

birtuntuna برتنتنا, *darwa babu ido*, i.e. wheat or guinea corn which has gone bad, or failed to ripen.

birza, to grind roughly; cf. *bersa*.

bis(s)a بسا, pl. *bis(s)ashe* بساشی

or *bis(s)aje* بساجی (Fulah id.), animal, beast; *bissashen daji* wild beasts, lit. animals of the desert, *bissashen gidda* domestic animals, lit. animals of the house.

bis(s)a بس or *abis(s)a* أبسا, 1. top, summit; 2. on, upon; *bissa doki* or *bissan doki* on horseback, G 7 *wanan litafi ta chika bissa yerdan allah* this account is completed by the will of God. *abissa* is sometimes used for 'in order that,' A 72 *aniyar ka dokaka abissa fadi...* thou must take care to say. *bissa gare* concerning; *mi ka che bissa gareni* what did you say in regard to me?

bishara بشرا (cf. Ar. بَشْر, to rejoice, or in II to bring tidings), 1. a letter or paper of introduction; 2. *yin bishara* to rejoice with anyone; cf. *albishir*.

bishiga, helmet; cf. *bushia*.

*bismi** بسمر, Ar. in the name, A 1 etc.

bisne بسنی or *birna* برن, to bury.

biso بسو (cf. (?) Ar. rt بیش II to dig holes for planting trees), burial, also applied to planting of seeds.

biu or *biyu* بیو, sometimes contracted to *bi*, two; *nabiu*, f. *tabiu* second.

biz biz بیز = *bis(s)a bis(s)a*.

bobawa بوبوا or *bobowa* بوبوا

- pl. *bobaiyi* ببببب, foreign speech, usually in bad sense; *su yi bobawa* they talked foolishly.
- bobua* ببببب, a large fly; it attacks horses and donkeys.
- boda* ببببب, lowing of a cow or camel.
- boena** ببببب, an aquatic plant (?).
- boiya*, secret; cf. *boya*.
- boka* ببببب, pl. *bokaye* ببببب, quack doctor, wizard, usually used in a bad sense.
- bokanchi* ببببب, the profession of a boka; cf. prec.
- bokkoi* ببببب, seven; *nabokkoi*, f. *tabokkoi*, seventh.
- bola* ببببب, horse with white face (and weak eyes ?).
- boli** ببببب, Ar. rt بول, 1. to make water; 2. cf. F 200. *masuboli* = *masubori*; cf. *bori*.
- bombegi* ببببب (cf. Ar. ببببب), harlot.
- bori* ببببب, evil spirit, demon, delirious person; *masubori* or *masuboli*, persons possessed with an evil spirit, esp. applied to women; cf. *boli*.
- borintunki* ببببب, a large bird, species of stork (?).
- bota** ببببب, handle of knife, axe, pen, etc.
- boya* or *boiya*, ببببب, hiding, secret; D 9 *enna boiya* where there is a secret, *maboiya* hiding-place.
- boye* or *boiye* ببببب or ببببب

1. to hide, to be hid, B 140 *muna fadi ba mu boiye ba* we tell you and hide it not; 2. *boiyi* or *aboiyi* secretly, B 163 *muna da murna boiyi* we rejoice secretly; *boiyeya* hidden, *boyiwa* hiding, B 98.
- buaya* ببببب or *buaye* ببببب (cf. Fulah *buri*), to exceed, to be too much for, *ya buayeni* he is stronger than I, *na buayaka* I am stronger than you, *abin ya buayeni* it is too difficult for me, *na buaya* I could not do it; cf. *faskare, fu*.
- bube* ببببب, a contracted form of the name Abubekr.
- bubuga* ببببب, an intensive form of *buga* to strike.
- buda* ببببب, cf. Ar. ببببب, frost, hail.
- buda* ببببب, *bude* ببببب, *budi* ببببب, to open, B 163; *abude* openly; *budu* ببببب, to be open; *budede* opened; *hainya ta budu* (or *budi*) the way is open.
- budi* ببببب (cf. Ar. rt ببببب IV, to excel), wisdom, cleverness.
- budurua* ببببب, pl. *budurai* ببببب (cf. (?) Ar. ببببب, to become full grown), virgin from age of puberty; C 16 *yal budurua dunia* the world is a virgin child.
- buduruchi* ببببب or *buduruanchi* ببببب, virginity; cf. prec.
- buga* ببببب, to strike, to beat; *buga*

buga to strike repeatedly, *buga kofa* to knock at a door, *buga bindiga* or simply *buga*, to fire a gun; cf. *bubuga*, *mabugi*.

*buhu** بُوْحُو, a large sack (at Zaria) made of skin (= *birgami* at Kano).

*buhu** بُوْحُو, cheap.

buka بُكَا, pl. *bukogi* بُكُوغِي, tent, temporary shed.

*bukari** بُوكَارِ, Ar. بُيْتَاَر, iron compass for drawing circles.

bukata بُكَاَتَا, 1. business, merchandise, need, C 52 *bai kulla domin bukata* he cared not for merchandise; 2. بُكَاَت, to need, B 4 *komi ni ke bida da bukata* that which I ask and need.

*bukata** بُكْتَا, blows; D 44, note *su dora bukata suna sa masu uku uku* they heap up blows, they lay them on them three at a time.

buki بُكِي or *biki* بُكِي (Fulah id.), marriage feast; *abin buki* anything good to eat, D 83 *yi buki* to make a feast.

*bula** بُوَلَا (cf. (?) Ar. بَاَض, to be white), a long white robe.

bulala بُلَالَا, pl. *bulalai* بُلَالَتِي, a whip, usually made of hippopotamus skin.

*bulbudi**, crumbs; i. q. *barbaddi*, q. v.

*buma**, rat-trap; cf. *burma*.

bumbi, palm wine; cf. *bam*.

bumbu بُمْبُو, child carried on the back; cf. (?) It. *bambino*.

bummi بُمِّر, intoxicating drink, palm wine; cf. *bam*.

*buna** بُوْنَا, eel (?).

bunga bunga, a procession; cf. *banga banga*.

bungo, cover of a book etc.; cf. *bango*.

*bungulawa** بُنْغَلَاوَا, to pour forth; F 190 *machizai deffi su ka bungulawa* snakes pour forth poison.

bunsuru بُنْسُرُو, pl. *bunsurai* بُنْسُرِي, *bunsuraye* بُنْسُرَايِي, he-goat.

bunu بُوْنُو, pl. *bunai* بُوْنِي, 1. grass for thatching or for door-covers; 2*. black striped cloth made by natives.

*buraka** بُرَاَف, the name of the horse on which Mohammed ascended to heaven; F 239.

burbishi بُرْبِيْش, brim, that which is over.

burbura بُرْبُرَا, a large bee.

burbushi, crumbs; cf. *burugushe*.

burdudugi بُرْدُدُوغ, an edible frog.

burdumi بُرْدُمِي, 1. wrapping made of grass, used for packing natron or salt; a heap of natron.

burga بُرْغَا, stable for a horse.

burgo بُرْغُو or *barugo* بُرْغُو, marrow.

burgo, covering; cf. *bergo*.

burgu بُرْغُو, a large rat = *gafia*, larger than *kusu*.

burima بُرِمَا (cf. (?) Ar. بُرْم, to

- plait), large bag made of grass, used by women; cf. (?) *berima*.
- burka* بُرْكَ, to churn.
- burkuti* بُرْكَتِي, to grope about with the hand in the dark.
- burma* بُرْمَا or *buma** بُمَّا, a rat-trap, e.g. a hole in the ground used as a trap.
- burtu* بُرْتُو, a large bird, it lives in the forest and is said by the natives to drink only once in two days.
- burtimi* بُرْتِمِي, a large (castrated?) bull; cf. *furtimi*.
- burugu* بُرْغُو, a kind of cane which grows in the water.
- burugushe* بُرْغُشِي or *burbushi* بُرْبُشِي, 1. crumbs; 2. lump of clay (?).
- buruntu* بُرْنُتُو, to seize by force, to despoil a house in war.
- busa* بُوَس, to blow, to blow a trumpet; *maibusa* one who blows a trumpet A 78, *rana da maibusa ya busa kafa nasa* on the day when the sounder of the trumpet shall sound, F 241.
- busashe* بُوسِشِي, blown upon, dried.
- bushe* بُوشِي, to dry.
- bushe bushe* بُوشِي بُوشِي, any kind of wind instrument.
- bushia* بُوشِيَا or *baushia* بُوشِيَا, a hedgehog.
- bushia* بُوشِيَا or *bishiga* بِشِغَا, helmet, protective covering for the head.

buss بُس, cf. mod. Ar. بَس, sufficient, enough, only, less (= *garin*), e.g. *metin goma buss* = 190, lit. 200 less 10. Used as an exclamation = do not speak more!

busu, a mat; cf. *buzu*.

buta بُوتَا, small earthenware bottle.

*butulshi** بُتُلْشِي or *butulchi* بُتُلْشِي

(cf. Ar. بُطْل, falsehood, vanity), ingratitude; E 5 *maibutulshi ba shi tsira* he who is ungrateful shall not be saved.

butulu بُتُلُو, ungrateful; cf. prec.

butumi بُتْمِي, pl. بُتْمَا, beehive. In Hausaland a beehive consists of a piece of matting or of plaited bushes placed in a tree; cf. *ainya*.

buza بُوزَا (Ar. بُوزَة, beer), intoxicating drink made with salt, honey and water; D 10 *aber sha gia da bam da buza* leave off drinking intoxicating drinks.

buzu بُزُو, or *busu** بُوسُو (cf. (?) Ar. بُزْل, a goat), a mat made of goat's skin with the hair on; cf. *bunsuru*.

*buzu** بُزُو (a Tuarek word?), slave.

buzuzu بُزُزُو, a centipede.

*chabura** چَبُورَا, cf. Ar. چَبُور, trouble; F 142 *su dora kira chabura ga chabura* they shall begin to call out, they shall have trouble upon trouble.

chacha ثَاثَا, a gambling game played with cowries or ground nuts, F 10, note.

chachagi ثَاغِي, to crackle; used of split wood or torn paper; D 72 *tana baiki kamal chachagi* it makes a noise like the splitting of wood; cf. *chage*.

chage ثَغِي or *tsaga* طَغ, to tear, split, rend.

*chaita**, obstinate; cf. *chuya*.

chainye ثَيْبِي or *chinye* ثَيْبِي, to eat, to devour; cf. *chi*.

chakagi ثَاغِي, a large wading bird with white breast.

chakankami ثَاكُنْكَمِي, rings made of brass or iron worn on the feet by women as ornaments.

*chakara** ثَاكَرَا, an edible root like a yam.

chakasabra ثَاكَسَابِرَا, head ornament for horses; cf. (?) *chikasora*.

*chakpi** ثَاكْبِي, to attach oneself to, become a retainer of (?).

chan ثَنَّ or *chana* ثَنَّ, 1. yonder, there; 2. that; used as a demonstrative pronoun agreeing with preceding noun. A longer form, *chananka* ثَانْكَ, is sometimes used in written Hausa.

*chani** ثَانِي, name of a commentary on the Koran (?); cf. E 11, note.

chanza ثَانْزَا, hazel nut, almond (?).

char(r)a ثَر or *chira* ثَر, to crow; *zakara ya chara* (or *ya yi*

chara), the cock crew; cf. *mai-shara*.

chari ثَرِي or *tsari* طَرِي, cf. Ar. صَرِيح, pure, clean, clear; *al-kamma tsari*, wheat in good condition.

char(i)kake ثَرِكْبِي or *tsar(i)kake* طَرِكْبِي, past particip. of *char-kaka*, q. v.; cf. *tsar(i)kake*.

char(i)ki ثَرِكِي or *tsar(i)ki* طَرِكِي, purity, holiness; B 45 *allah shi bamu tsarki kwanaki* may God grant us days without sin, *wuri maichar(i)ki* a holy place.

charkaka ثَرَكْكَ or *tsarkaka* طَرَكْكَ, cf. Ar. صَرَح, to cleanse, make holy, sanctify, revere; D 81 *en ka bishi ka charkakashi shi baka chira* if you follow and revere Him, He will grant you salvation. In this and three preceding words initial letter is usually written ڙ but pronounced ط.

*chawanta** ثَاوَنْت, to be established (?), D 84, = (?) *tsawanta*.

che ثِي, to say, to suppose; *mi anche* (or *akache*) *da shi* what is its name? The pres. participle *chewa* is frequently used, e.g. *shina chewa* he is saying.

che ثِي, the fem. form of the substantive verb; *ita che* it is she, or she is; or, followed by masc. = it is, e.g. A 43 *ita che dalili* this is the reason; cf.

Nupé, from which it has perhaps been borrowed.

cheche, to save; cf. *cheto*.

chechewa, a swallow; cf. *tsaijewa*.

chedia تَدِيَا, a large tree with milk-like sap.

chegi بَغِ, spite; *don chegi* for spite.

cherki كِرِكِ, a black bird which settles on donkeys and pecks their backs.

cheto تَتُو or *cheche* تَبِي, 1. to save, to deliver; 2. deliverance, A 4 *rana da ba cheto* a day on which there shall be no salvation.

chewa تَوَا or *chiwa** تِيَوَا, 1. that, used after the verb 'to say' in written but not in colloquial Hausa, and only when it is desired to lay special emphasis on the statement which follows; 2. because, cf. also *dominchewa*.

chi, frequently used as a suffix in forming abstract substantives, used also to denote office or work of person or thing, e.g. *dabamchi* difference, *diyanuchi* freedom, *turanchi* that which belongs to a foreigner; cf. similar use of suffix *ji* in modern Arabic, e.g. كَلَارَجِي cellarer.

chi تِي, to eat, to devour, to destroy, to gain the advantage of or over, to gain jurisdiction over; *chi riba* to make a profit

on a business transaction, *chi sarota* to gain possession of a kingdom, *chi gari* to capture or to destroy a place, *chi kasua* to trade successfully in the market, F 169 *masuchin zaka* those who stole the tithes, used in gambling *na chi* (or *chinta*) I win, *abinchi* anything to eat; cf. *chida*, *chinta*, *chishe*, *machia*, *machikura*, *maichi*.

*chi** تِي (Kanuri id.), mouth.

chiawa تِيَوَا, pl. *chiayi* تِيَايِي, grass; *chiawa dainyi* green grass; cf. (?) *chi*.

chibara تَبَرِي or *tsibara** طَبَرِي (cf. (?) Ar. صَبَر, to heap up), to roll, to roll into the form of a ball; used of rolling mud into balls prior to using it to build with.

chibaru تَبَرُو, to be rolled together, to congeal; *jinina ya chibaru sabbada dari* my blood is congealed with the cold.

chibda تَبِدَا (Kanuri id.), or *dadin chibda* a sweet smell.

chibia تَبِيَا, pl. *chibioyi* تَبِيَوِي, the navel.

*chibia** تَبِيَا, arrow; cf. *kibia*.

chibiri تَبِير or *chibari* تَبِير, anything round, a pill, a small piece of anything, e.g. of sugar; *chibirin kasa* a round piece of mud; cf. *chibara*.

*chibirikinkini** تَبِيرِكِينِينِي, small

reddish berries growing on a shrub found in sandy places.

chicherro ثيرو, a black horse; cf. *akawali*.

chichik(k)a ثيكا, *yin chichikka* to fill full, to be angry with, F 32 *kana chichikka girma ya haruka* thou swellest with pride, thou fool; cf. *chik(k)a*.

chichik(k)owa, see *chik(k)owa*.

chichira, see *chira*.

chid(d)a ثدا, distant rolling thunder; cf. *arradu*.

chida ثيد, to feed on, to give to eat; cf. *chi*.

chidacheto ثيدثتو, to bribe, e.g. a judge.

chigia ثغيا, search; *yi chigia* or *bada chigia* to make diligent search for.

*chiji** ثجي, to bite, B 149; cf. *machiji* snake, lit. the biter; cf. *chizo*.

chik(k)a ثك, to fill, to be filled, to be complete, in moral sense to be perfect; *ya chikka* it is full, or it is completed, *chikka-wa* filling, completion, F 66. *chikkache*, *chikkaka* filled, full, complete, D 52 *kuna salla chikkaka kuna azumi chikkaka* say your prayers in full, fulfil the fast; *chikka bindiga* to load a gun; cf. *chik(k)o*, *chichik(k)a*.

chikasora ثكسورا, the small bells

placed on horses' heads, rattling of a bridle; cf. (?) *chakasabra*.

chiki ثكي, a breadth between two seams of cloth.

chik(k)i ثكي or ثك, the inside, the belly; *da chikki* pregnant, *chikki daia* an expression used of brothers or sisters, children of the same mother, also used to denote kindness, tenderness; *maichikki* (or *maijiki*) one who is fat; cf. *jiki*.

chik(k)in ثكن or *dagga chikkin* دغ ثكن, within, into; *chikkin gidda* at home, *chikkinsa* may either be 'inside it' or 'its inside.'

chikirikidda ثكركدا, a fowl plucked for cooking.

chik(k)o, complement; *kawo chikkonsu* fill them up.

chik(k)owa ثكووا or *chichik(k)owa* ثككووا, a flood; cf. *chik(k)a* or (?) *jika* to be wet.

chilikorwa ثلكووا, magpie; it eats locusts (= Ar. عَفْعَف).

chima ثما or *chimaka* ثمكا, food, victuals; cf. *chi*.

chimayi ثمي or *chimma* ثمر, to go with, to accompany.

chimbaya ثنباي, lit. to backbite, to slander, to whisper; cf. *chibaya*.

*chim(m)** ثمي or *chim(m)a** ثما (cf. Ar. ثمر, to put right), skill,

contrivance, D 49 *babu chimi ba dibara*, no skill nor craft.
chinaka ٲٲٲٲ or *chirnaka* ٲٲٲٲ, very small black ants with a sting.
*chinchinta** ٲٲٲٲٲ, worthy, *ban chinchinta en yi hakka* I am not worthy to do this; *yi chinchinta* or *chenchenta* to love (?).
chingara ٲٲٲٲٲ, to skip words in reading, lit. to eat like ants (*gara*), i.e. leaving spaces here and there untouched, A 73 *kadda ka ratsa chikkinta kai mata chingara* do not pass over its contents, or miss a word in saying it (the Koran).
chinewa ٲٲٲٲٲ (cf. (?) Ar. ٲٲٲٲ, to swear with a reservation), to spread false news = *kormoto*.
chingi ٲٲٲٲٲ, to eat much, to devour.
chinia ٲٲٲٲٲ, pl. *chinioyi* ٲٲٲٲٲ, thigh, leg.
chiniki ٲٲٲٲ (cf. Fulah *yaunoki*), trade, business, barter; *yi chiniki* to do business, to haggle over the price of anything.
chinta ٲٲٲٲ, in casting lots = I win.
chira ٲٲٲٲ, *chire* ٲٲٲٲٲ, *chiro* ٲٲٲٲٲ or *tsira* ٲٲٲٲٲ, *tsire* ٲٲٲٲٲ or *tsiro* ٲٲٲٲٲ (cf. (?) Ar. ٲٲٲ I, to sprout, to restore, to cut off, IV to throw down), 1. to pluck, e.g. fruits from trees, to pull out, to lift up; 2. to grow, to sprout, to arise; 3. to deliver,

to save, to be saved; *chira* ٲٲٲٲ or *chiraro* ٲٲٲٲٲ, deliverance, safety; D 74 *allah shi samu chiraro mu chira* may God preserve us...that we may be saved; *chichira* ٲٲٲٲ, to tear up; *chirasda* ٲٲٲٲٲ, to deliver; *chiri** ٲٲٲٲ, resurrection; C11 *bai san gidda na chiri* he knows not the place of the resurrection; cf. *chiri*.
chira, to crow; cf. *char(r)a*.
chirara ٲٲٲٲٲ, nakedness, *ya yi chirara* he is naked.
*chirari** ٲٲٲٲٲ, boasting.
chiraro ٲٲٲٲٲ, 1. safety; cf. *chira*; 2. naked; cf. *chirara*.
chirasda ٲٲٲٲٲ, to deliver; cf. *chira*.
chiri ٲٲٲٲ, to break, *yi chiri* to flee; cf. (?) *chira*.
chirnaka, see *chinaka*.
chiroma ٲٲٲٲٲ, title given to a son of a king, sometimes applied to the heir to the throne. The word is probably borrowed from the Bornuese language, in which the syllable *ma* when used as a suffix corresponds to the same syllable in Hausa used as a prefix; cf. *galadima*.
chisal ٲٲٲٲٲ, a disease in the mouth or lips of infants; cf. (?) *chiso*.
chishe ٲٲٲٲٲ, to feed.
chit(t)a ٲٲٲٲ, small red pepper; cf. *chitafo*.

chitafu تَتَبُو, a bush from the fruit of which is obtained a kind of pepper.

chitta تَتَا, the day following *gata*, which = the day after the day after to-morrow, i.e. the fifth day.

chiuta تُوْتَا, n. sickness, disease, evil; B 12 *chiuta da jahili kanwa kai nai* the evil of the ignorant man will take him away, A 63; *chitatan birni* = syphilis.

chiutu تُوْتُو, to become ill; B 143 *kowa shigga chikki nata ya chiutu* whoever enters it becomes diseased.

chiwa, see *chewa*.

chiwo تُوُو, sickness, illness, *jin chiwo* or *yin chiwo* to be ill, *da chiwo* ill, or to be ill; *chiwo na sabon dawa* a fever which breaks out when the guinea-corn (*dawa*) is ripe; to prevent being attacked by it, the Hausas give presents of *dawa* to the poor.

chiwo تُوُو, a large palm tree with hard fruit (cocoanut?), native rope is made from it; cf. *dankon chiwo*.

chiwuki تُوُوْكَى, a noise made by the mud-fish (*gaiwa*).

chiwuta, see *chiuta*.

chizo تِيْزُو, 1. bite; 2. *chizo* or *yi chizo* to bite; cf. *chiji*.

chocha تُوْتَا, an ant, D 27 *shina*

birikima kamanda chocha he rolls like an ant.

choro تُوْرُو (cf. Ar. تُوْر, fright, fear), another form of *tsoro*, q.v.; cf. F 6 note.

chuda تُوْدَا or *chudawa* تُوْدُوَا, to mix milk with anything, to mix together, to rub; *chuda yimbu* to mix mud for building purposes.

chukumara تُوْمَرَا (cf. Ar. اذمغر, Freyt. II. 95), cheese.

chukurufa, تُوْكُرْفَى, a small bag used for carrying salt in (probably borrowed from the Tuareg language).

*chuma** تُوْمَر, Ar. then, C 50.

chuna تُوْن, 1. to invite another to share one's food; 2. = *chinewa* q.v.

churi تُوْرَى, a handful of mud, flour, etc., squeezed out; equivalent to *dunkule*; cf. (?) *chibara*.

chushe تُوْشَى, 1. a large amount collected together, e.g. men, grain, etc.; 2. a medicine which is poured into horses' mouths.

chuta, sickness; cf. *chiuta*.

*chuya** تُوْيَا, to be obstinate; cf. D 52 *kadda ku chuya kuna takama* be not stubborn nor walk proudly.

da د, and, if, *da...da* both...and.

da د, with, used to denote the instrument; *ya yenki da wuka*

he cut with the knife: used with verbs of coming and going to express the act of taking or bringing, *ya taffi da shi* he took it away, *ya zo da shi* he brought it here. It is combined with substantives to form adjectives, e.g. *da rai* alive, *da anfani* useful; when preceded by *tare* = together with; *da safe* in the morning, *da wuri* early, *dadadi* sweetly, *dakarifi* powerfully.

da د, when, used in the same way as *saanda* or *yanda*.

da د, used like *wonda* or *wodanda*; A 31 *mata da ke taffia* a woman who goes, *abinda* that which.

da د, to have, to possess. In an expression such as *suna da yunwa* they are hungry, *da* may be either a prep. or verb; *ina da shi* or simply *da shi* there is, there are, *ina da su dayawa* there are many.

da دَا or *daa* دَأ or *lokachin da* دَا لُوَكَّيْنِ, of old, in olden time, F 73.

da دَا or *dan* دَنْ, pl. *yaya* يَايَا or *yan* يَنْ, 1. son; *dan amina* = Mohammed, *dan uwana*, lit. child of my mother, is used for brother or as a term of endearment; 2. *da* when followed by the name of a place means a native of that place, e.g. *dan zozo* a native of Zozo; 3. it is used to suggest character or

occupation, e.g. *dan daki* a servant, *dan yaki* a soldier, *dan gari* a citizen, cf. A 15; 4. it forms the diminutive of many nouns, e.g. *dan kasua* a little market, *dan gatari* a small hatchet; 5. it denotes the young of animals, e.g. *dan tumkia* a kid, *dan zaki* a young lion; 6. free as opposed to a slave; *ni da ne ba bawa* I am free, not a slave, cf. *diya*; *dan alaro* a hired carrier, *dan garumfa* one who carries his own load, *yi da* to beget. (The forms *dan* and *yan* are the simple forms *da*, *ya* with the prep. *na* affixed.)

*daa** دَعَا, Ar., prayer; cf. *addua*.

dabam دَبْر or دَبْن or *dabam dabam*, different, apart from; cf. *bam bam*.

dabamchi دَبْمَتْ or دَبْمَتْ, difference; cf. *bambamchi*.

dabara دَبَارًا or *dubara* دُبَارًا, Ar. دَبَارَةٌ, contrivance, skill, counsel; *yi dabara* to advise; in D 49 the form *dibara* occurs, *babu chimi ba dibara* no skill or craft.

*dabarun** دَبْرُن, Ar. دَبْر, back of (?), F 180 note.

dabba دَبَّا or *dabbo* دَبُو, pl. *dabboni* دَبُونِي or *dabbobi* دَبُوْبِي (probably from Ar. دَابَّة, an animal that crawls or moves slowly), Fulah id. C 5 note; beast, crea-

ture; applied to horses, cattle, etc.

dabebeyi دَبَبِي, a rope to hobble the front feet of a horse; cf. (?) *baibaigi*.

dabino دَبِينُو, (Fulah id.), date; *itachen dabino* or *dabino* date tree.

*dabori** دَبُور, palate.

dachi دَٚٚٚ, bitterness; cf. *doachi*.

dad(d)a دَد, often pronounced *deddi*, to increase, to go on doing anything, to augment, to surpass, to linger; C 49 *muna dadda godia* we continue giving thanks, C 7 *dada muna tsofa* wait till we grow old, *mu zamna nan ya deddi* we stop here a long time, *wanan ya deddi wonchan* this is better than that, *alla ya deddi rainka* may God prolong your life, *dad(d)awa*, دَدَا or *dad(d)ewa* دَدِنَا lasting, *tun daddewa* a long time since, *kaka dedde-wanka da zaka kare* how long will it be before you finish? *dadade* دَدَدِي, from a long time; cf. *dad(d)ua*.

*dada** دَدَا, used in Sokoto for *kuma* again; cf. F 246 note, already (?).

*dadafa** دَدَا, used in Sokoto for *daidai* correct, etc.

dadaga دَدَغ, to grind to powder, perhaps = *dadaka*.

dadai دَدِي, ever, or used with negative verb, never until now; cf. B 116, D 38 *bako gari ba ka zo dadai ba* a strange city to which thou hast never before come, *dadai ban gani ba* I never saw it.

*dadaidai** دَادِيْدِي, a strengthened form of *dadi* or possibly of *daidai*; cf. B 49 *mu ji dadaidai* we feel glad, B 125.

dadaka دَدَك, intensive form of *dakka*, q. v.

dad(d)ewa, see *dad(d)a*.

dadi دَادِي, sweetness, happiness, comfort; cf. A 12 *zaka sha dadi nata* thou shalt taste of its sweetness, *dadin zuchia* happiness, *ji dadi* to feel happy, *sa dadi* to please, *maidadi* pleasant, *da dadi* sweet, nice, agreeable.

dad(d)owa دَدُوَا, broth made from the fruit of the *dorowa* tree.

*dadoia** دَدِيَا, a plant resembling mint.

dad(d)ua دَدُوَا, increase, growth of a plant, e.g. *ya yi daddua*; cf. *dad(d)a*.

daf(f)a دَف and *daf(f)awa* دَفَا, to support oneself with the palm of the hand in raising oneself up.

*dafafi** دَفَايِي, blue; possibly from *daffa* to cook, so to prepare in a dye pit.

daf(f)ara دَفَارَا (cf. (?) Ar. and Pers. زَعْبَرَان, saffron), a herb,

the root of which is beaten up with a pestle and put in milk to keep it good, and also to thicken it and increase its bulk for cheating purposes = *loda*.

dafari دَبَارِی, at first, before, in former times; cf. *nafari* and *fari*.

daffa دَفَّ (cf. (?) Ar. دَابَّ, to moisten or macerate in water), to cook, to boil, to confuse; cf. B 14 note, *shi kan daffa kai nai* he would be utterly confused, *madaffa* or *wurin daffi* a place for cooking, *maidaffi* a cook, *daffafe* cooked, *daffafe da rua* boiled.

daffe دَفِّي, to stick to, to cleave to.

daffua دَفْوَا, cooking; *wurin daffua* kitchen, cf. *madaffa*.

daf(f)i, poison; cf. *def(f)i*.

*daga** دَاغَا, war (?); cf. *jadaga*, *kayan daga*.

dag(g)a دَاغ, from, from within, out of, at; *dagga enna* whence, *dagga enna ka fito* whence did you come? *dagga chan* thence, there, yonder, *dagga nan* here, from here, *dagga chikki* in, from within, *dagga garesu* from them, *dagga nesa* from afar.

dagangan, to no purpose; cf. *ganga*.

*dagazo** دَاغَزُو, strong = *kato*.

dagumi دَاغْمِر, a collar made of cloth used in war as a protection for the back of the neck.

*dag(g)yura** دَاغْرَا, nerves, veins = *jijia*.

dai دَي, again, indeed; usually found in compounds, e.g. *saidai*, *hardai*, *dadai*; cf. B 36 note.

daia or *daya* دَيَا, one; *daia daia* one at a time, one here one there, *daianku* one of you, *daiana* me alone, *daiansu* they alone, or, one of them, *ku berni ni daiana* leave me alone, *ber-shi daiansa* leave him alone; *daia* is often used as an indefinite article, *wuri daia* together, *ko daia* (in negative sentence) not even one, *duka daia ne* they are all alike, *wanan daia kaman wonchan* this is the same as that.

daiawa, much; cf. *dayawa*.

daibo, to take out; cf. *debo*.

daidai دَيْدَي, alike, correct, just, suitable; *ya yi daidai* it is correct (an expression used in counting money), *na tsaya daidai* I stand upright.

*daidaiche** دَيْدَيْنِي, to be similar to (or, one by one?); cf. A 9 *suka daidaiche chikkin alka-firai* they alike are among...

daidaita دَيْدَيْت, to make things equal or parallel, to make like, to direct aright.

daii or *dayi* دَيِّي, a small prickly herb with bitter taste eaten by camels (= Ar. مَرَار).

daina دَيْن or *dena* دِن, to cease, to desist from; cf. F 83 *ku hankuri ku daina* be patient, cease (lamenting).

dainye دَئِی or *dainyi* دَئِی, pl. *dainyoyi* دَئِیوئی, fresh, green, unripe, raw; *dainyen itache* leaves, *nama dainye* uncooked flesh; cf. *gainya* (cf. (?) Ar. دَوَانِی).

daji دَاج, forest, open fields, wilderness; never used of actual desert.

daka, to beat; cf. *dakka*.

dakali دَکَل (cf. Ar. دَكَلَة, thin clay), a mud bed built in a house, an altar.

dakara دَاكَار, pl. *dakaru* دَاكَارُو, a soldier belonging to a king's body-guard; cf. (?) *dogari*.

dak(k)et دَکْث or *dak(k)ir* دَکْزِ, with difficulty.

daki دَاكِی, pl. *dakuna* دَاكُنَا, a room in a house (*gid-da*), but often used for the house itself, especially if it consists of but one room; A 13 *dunia nan kamal daki ta ke* this world is like a room, *madaki* chamberlain, F 227.

dakile دَاكِلِی, Ar. دَقَل, to prevent, to refuse, to forbid; B 130 *ka dakile shiru ba ka amsa ba dost* thou silently refuse and givest no answer?

dak(k)ir, with difficulty; cf. *dak(k)et*.

dakka دَاكْ, Ar. id., to beat, to thresh or grind corn; cf. (?) *duka*; *doke*, *dirka*.

*dakokoi** دَاكُوکِی, 1. abundance of anything, e.g. food, or cowries; 2. the owner of abundance. *dakolua* دَاكُولُوا or *dokolua* دَاكُولُوا, a hen which is laying eggs; the word is also applied to a woman.

dakua دَاكُوَا, a kind of sweetmeat made from the fruit of a grass or reed; cf. *aiā*.

dakul(l)um دَاكُلْم, always; cf. *kul(l)um*.

dakwora دَاكُوْرَا, the name of a thorny tree with hard wood like mahogany.

dala دَالَا, the name of a rocky hill inside Kano; the name of the other hill is *goron duchi*.

dal(l)ashe دَالِشِی or *dalishi* دَالِشِی, to be blunt.

dalili دَالِیْلِ, Ar. دَالِیْلِ, cause, origin, proof, sign, reason; F 19 *dalili ko akan maitambayawa* this is the reason, if anyone asks.

dama دَامَا (in Kanuri *dama* = recovery, etc.), right, right hand, right side E 44, better, opportunity; *ji dama* to feel better, to improve in health, *da dama* a little more, *da dama dama* moderately, *sai na ga dama* unless I wish, *ya yi dama* it were better, *ba ya samu dama* ba he had not the opportunity, *ba ni da dama* I have not time to, I do not wish to; cf. *damichi*.

dama, to mix, to confuse; cf. *dame*.

damachiri دَمَشِر or *damatsiri* دَمَطِر, a small snake.

damai دَمَى, confusedly; B 142 *ka kafia damai maiafkarwa* thou slippest confusedly and art about to fall; cf. *dame*.

damamia دَمَمِيَا, what is mixed up together, mortar; cf. *dame*.

dām(m)ana دَامَنَا or *dām(m)una* دَامْنَا, 1. the wet season, lasting about three months; cf. *rani*; 2*. sickness; cf. (?) A 42.

damankad(d)a دَمَنكَدَا, a small plant used as a medicine for guinea worm.

damāra دَمَرَا, girdle; *yi damara* to gird oneself; cf. *damre* to bind.

damarichik(k)i دَمَرِيك, girdle; cf. *damre* and *chik(k)i*.

damasa دَامَسَا (cf. Ar. دَمَس, to be obscure or dense), confusion, D 9.

damas(s)ara دَمَصَارَا, maize; cf. *mas(s)ara*.

dambaria دَمَبَرِيَا or دَمَبَرِيَا, rat, mouse (lit. child of the hole; cf. *baria*).

dambe دَمَبِي or دَمَبِي, 1. to give a blow, to box; 2. a blow.

dambiri دَمَبِر or دَمَبِر, a bush cat with a bad smell.

dame دَامِي or *dem(m)i* دَامِي, pl. *damuna* دَامَنَا, bundle, bunch, sheaf.

dame دَمِي or *dama* دَم, to mix,

to stir as mortar, to make giddy, to perplex, to confuse, to annoy, to stagger; *ya damesu* it astonished them; *damu* دَامُو to be perplexed; cf. *damua*, *damai*, *damamia*.

damfam(m)i دَمَفَمِر, fence = *danga*, q.v.

damfare دَمَفَرِي, to press, to push so as to cause to stumble, to embrace, to squeeze; used e.g. of the outside cover of a book, *ya damfareshi*.

damichi دَمِي or *damshi* دَمَشِي,

pl. *damasa* دَمَسَا (Fulah *damche*), the upper part of the arm from the shoulder to the elbow, the right arm; F 242 *shina damshi muhammad* he shall be at the right hand of Mohammed; cf. *dama*.

damis(s)a دَمِيسَا, pl. *damis(s)ai* دَمِيسِي, leopard; *d. dawaki* horse fly; cf. *berbachi*.

damre دَمَرِي, *daure* دَوْرِي, *damra**

دَمَر or *darmi** دَرْمِي, D 13, to bind, tie, gird, put under a spell; F 233 *adamra siliyu dama hauni* chains shall be bound on their right and left hands; *damrare* دَمَرَارِي, pl.

damraru دَمَرَارُو, bound, girded; *damre fuska* to frown, *damre magana* to take heed to, to hold to an agreement.

damshi, arm; cf. *damichi*.

damshi دَمَشِي, moisture.

dam(m)u دَمُو, a large venomous lizard (draconina?).

damu, to be confused; cf. *dame*.

damua دَامُوَا, astonishment; *ji damua* to be astonished.

damuna, sheaves; cf. *dame*.

dan, son of; cf. *da*.

danda دَنَدَا, a horse with white forehead and white forelegs; *mutum ya yi danda* the man becomes white, i.e. with disease.

dandaka دَنَدَاكَ or *dendaki* دَنَدَاكِي, an intensive form of *dakka* to strike; D 15 *azaba anadandakasa kaman kilago* his pain is as though he were a skin that is beaten; to pound or break up again.

dandali دَنَدَالِي (Kanuri id.), court, yard, or entrance-room of a house, esp. of a king's house.

dandana دَنَدَانَن or *dandani* دَنَدَانِي, to taste, test, examine; *madandani* مَدَنَدَانِي, taster, B 17 *madandaninka bashi reggi chiuta* grant to him who tastes a lessening of his sickness.

dandana دَنَدَانَا, a grass used as a medicine by women.

danfarka دَنَفَرَكَا, child of a harlot; cf. *farika*.

danga دَنَغَا, pl. *dangogi* دَنَغُوغِي (Kanuri id.), a fence round a garden, a garden; cf. *darni* and *damfam(m)i*.

dangab(b)a دَنَغَبَا, breast-band for horses made of cloth or wool.

dangana دَنَغَنَان, 1. to lean upon, to recline, 2. to rely on, 3. to weep (?).

dangana دَنَغَنَانَا, children whose parents having died soon after their birth have been entrusted to a stranger to bring up.

dangaram(m)a دَنَغَرَامَا, threshold or raised ridge in front of a door; cf. *garam(m)a*.

dangari دَنَغَرِي, citizen; A 15 *kowa ya zo ya wuche da bako dangari* everyone comes and goes, both stranger and citizen.

dangi دَنَغِ, a shield made with straw; cf. *gerkua*.

dan-gurumfa دَنَغُرُمْفَا (lit. son of a hat), a carrier who carries a load belonging to himself as contrasted with *dan-alaro* a hired carrier.

dani دَنِي, the span measured by the thumb and first finger.

*dankam** دَنَكَمَر, for ever; B 73 *dadai anazama dunia dankam* will the world indeed last for ever?

dankali دَنَكَالِي (convolvulus batatas), sweet potato, very common throughout the whole of Hausaland and in some districts it forms the only available food; its shape resembles that of a thick parsnip, in taste it is sweeter than either parsnip

or yam; for description and use of cf. 'Hausaland,' p. 155.

*dankira** دَنکِر, to press, to compress.

dankō دَنفُو or *dunfō* دُنْفُو, india-rubber (cf. *gumji*), glue, gum; C 21 *ta dada danko riko* she will continue to stick like gum; *dankon zumua* beeswax; *dankon kedainya* oil from the shea-butter tree; *dankon chiwo* the material with which native rope is made; cf. *chiwo*.

dan magurji, snake; cf. *magurji*.

danraguwa دَنرَغَوَا, a red bird (a species of plover?); cf. *rago*.

danuba دَنبَا, a sore at the root of a finger-nail.

danzumu دَنذُمُو, the son of a friend or relation; cf. *zumu*.

dar(r)a or *der(r)a* دَرَا, a game played with cowrie shells, which are placed in little holes in the ground, or are arranged on a board marked with squares. It is considered a disreputable game, though not so closely connected with gambling as *chacha*; F 11, E 16 *ku ber na darra da tsalumshi musulmi* cease from playing *darra* and from deceit, O Mussulmans.

daraja دَرَجَا or *darajia* دَرَجِيَا, Ar. دَرَجَةٌ, glory, honour, gorgeous dress; A 47 *ya ba iyaye daraja* he showed honour to his parents.

*darara** دَرَر, to ridicule (?).

dari دَرِي, a hundred; A 39.

dāri دَار (cf. (?)) Ar. دَر, to rain copiously), cold; *ya yi dari* it is cold, *dari ya kamani* I have caught cold, *na ji dari* I feel cold.

dar(r)i or *der(r)i* دَرِي, small deer or hart with horns, larger than *barewa*.

darīa دَرِيَا (cf. (?)) Ar. دَرَاء, 'to treat with contempt), laughter, smile; *yi darīa* to laugh, *ba* or *bada darīa* to cause laughter; *ya bashi darīa* he turned him into ridicule.

dariwoye دَرُوْبِي, to rinse with water, to clean; cf. *gariwoya*.

darmi دَرْمِي, to bind, D 13; cf. *damre*.

*darni** دَرْنِي (cf. (?)) Ar. دَرِين, dry branches), fence; cf. *danga*.

*dasa** دَسَا, a bottle, = *tasa*, q.v.

dasashi دَسَشِي, gums, in Sokoto the form *dasori* دَسْرِي is used; *maidasashi* a person who has no teeth.

dashi دَشِي, a tree, the bristles of which are used for rubbing the teeth with; the tree has a milky sap.

*daso** دَاسُو, a drop; equivalent to *duggo*, q.v.

datijo, a person of importance; cf. *dotijo*.

datsai دَطِي for *dadai*, B 120.

daru دَو, a contracted form of *dauka*; cf. *do*.

dausa, an open place where grass has been burnt, any large open place; probably = *dawa*.

dauda دَوْدَا (cf. Ar. دَاد, to be maggoty), dirt, filth, *da dauda* dirty, *yi dauda* to make dirty; *daudan kune* the wax in the ear.

daudambayi دَوْدَنْبَايِي, tops or bristles of a grass, which have short spikes and are very adhesive.

daudu دَوْدُو (Nupé id.), a title of respect given to a ruler; in Kano it is given to the heir to the throne; in Zaria to the *galladima*.

dauka or *doka* دَوْك, often contracted to *daru* or *do* دَو, 1. to take, take up, take hold of, take away, receive. *dauka rua* to draw water, A 25; 2. *ya doka jeji* he went into the desert; *dauko* دَوْكُو, to take for oneself; *daukaka* دَوْكَك, or *daukake* دَوْكَكِي, a strengthened form of *dauka* to lift up, exalt, B 147; *ta daukakaka yanzu ta gochima* it takes you up now, it makes you fall; *madaukaka* the exalted one.

daukaka or *dokaka* دَوْكَا, a lengthened form of *dukka* possessions; C 39 *maison daukaka nama dunia* he who desires the possessions of this world; 3*.

a man of wealth or importance.

dauko, to take for oneself, to accept; cf. *dauka*.

*daula** دَوْل or *abin daula* desire, object of desire (?).

dauraro or *doraro* دَوْرَارُو or *daurara** دَوْرَارِي, to look round, to go round; B 127 *shi wanda ke tudu dorara* he who is on a hill sees all round; cf. *dauro*.

daure, occasionally used for *damre*, to bind, q.v.

dauri دَوْرِي, to endure patiently, to suffer.

dauri دَوْر, 1. a medicine given to young children as a preventative against disease; 2. twisted locks of hair arranged on either side of a woman's face (cf. Ar. دَوْرَة, curl of a moustache).

dauri, early, etc.; cf. *dawuri*.

dauria دَوْرِيَا, a small addition to a carrier's load.

dauro دَوْرُو, a small edible grain somewhat like *giero*.

dauro or *doro* دَوْرُو, cf. Ar. دَوْر, to look at, to fix the gaze upon; D 46 *su ka doro su ka bershi* they look in his face, they leave him; cf. *dauraro*.

dawa دَاوَا (sorghum vulgare), guinea corn, i.e. a species of millet with small red grains, called in Egypt *dhurra*. The plant grows to the height of eight or ten feet. The grain, which is exceedingly hard, is ground

between two stones and made into a sort of porridge which has a sour insipid taste. The four principal kinds of *dawa* are *kaura* used for feeding horses, *farafara* used when ground up for making gruel, *muramura* cooked and eaten whole, *giwakamba* used as a medicine for rubbing on the eyes; *dawa* forms the staple food of the Hausa people (cf. 'Hausaland,' pp. 153, 154); an intoxicating drink is made from it; cf. *gia*.

*dawa** دَوَا, Ar. دَوَاةٌ, an uninhabited place, e.g. a desert or forest.

dawaki, horses, pl. of *doki*, q.v.

dawama دَوَمَ (cf. Ar. rt دَوْمَ), to remain, to continue, *maidawama* continuing; cf. *duma*.

dawama دَوَمًا, continuance; C 15 *enna da zama na dawama* where is a state of continuance; D 79 *giddan dawama*, i.e. heaven.

dawo دَوُو, to come back, to return; cf. *dawooyo*.

dawoinya دَوُونِي, to toil for, to seek after; B 52 *shina dawoinya da abin wafi* he toils after vanity.

dawoinya دَوُونِيَا, attention shown to strangers; cf. prec.

dawoiya or *dawooya* دَوُوِي, to return from a place; cf. seq.

dawooyo or *dawooyo* دَوُوُو, to return to a place.

dawuri دَوُر or *dauri* دَوُر, early, long ago, in former time.

dayawa or *daiawa* دَيَوَا, sometimes pronounced *diyawa* or *deyawa* much, great, abundant; cf. *yawa* and *mayawa*.

dayi دَيِي a small herb with thistle-like prickles eaten by horses, etc.

dazu دَزُو, already, formerly.

debe دَبِي or *debo* دَبُو, to take off, take out, pluck from, undress; *debe rua* or *debo rua* to draw water; *debo* used as an imperative means, take and bring it here; cf. use of *wanko*.

*decha** دَشَا, a sore at the corners of the mouth.

dede, to continue; cf. *dada*.

dede, see *daidai*.

def(f)a* دَف (cf. Ar. دَف III and دَفَا), in F 192 = to destroy.

def(f)i or *daf*(f)i دَفِي (Fulah id.), poison obtained from snakes, plants, etc.; F 109 *deffi su ka bungularawa* they pour forth their poison.

dege دَغِي, pl. *degogi* دَغُوغِي, a graminivorous animal (badger (?)), it comes out at night.

deg(g)i, relations; A 8, cf. *dengi*.

dek(k)i *dek*(k)i دَكِك, separately.

dela دَلَا, numbness; *dela ya kama kafata* my leg is gone to sleep.

della دَلَا, name applied to the

Austrian Maria Theresa dollar which circulates to a limited extent throughout Hausaland, value about three shillings.

della* دَلَّة, dogs.

demanta* دَمَنْتَ, to wonder at.

demi دِمِر or dumi دُمِر, used with *rua*, *ruan demi* hot water; *rana da dumi* it is hot.

dem(m)i, a sheaf; cf. *dame*.

dena دِنَن, to cease; cf. *daina*.

dendaki, to strike; cf. *dandaka*.

dengi دَنَغ or denga دَنَغَا or deg(g)i

دَنَغ, pl. dengoyi دَنَغَوِي, relation, friend, the singular is often used for the plural; B 104 *ni dai ina gaya maku dengina* I indeed tell you my relations.

dera, to jump; cf. *dir(r)a*.

derduma دَرْدُمَا, a mattress made of cloth.

dere دَرِي or der(r)i دَرِي, night, esp. the time between *lisha* and *jijifi*; cf. H. Gr. p. 64, *da dere* by night; cf. proverb, *kadan mutum ya yi maku rana ku yi masa dere*, lit. if a man makes day for you do you make night for him? i.e. do you reward evil for good? B 56 *chikkin dere ko ko jijifi* by night or just before the dawn; *jia da dere* last night.

derejia, honour, etc.; cf. *daraja*.

dero, to jump; cf. *dir(r)a*.

derio* دَرِيُو, a file.

desa دَسَس, to plant, used of planting trees.

dewa, contracted form of *dad(d)ewa*; cf. under *dad(d)a*.

dia, offspring; cf. *diya*.

diba* دِيَب, *diba kamna* to sneer (?); cf. (?) *debe*.

dibajo* دِيَبَاچ, Ar. id., cloth worked with gold inside.

did(d)iga* دِيَدِغَا, sum? cf. *kidda*.

did(d)igi, heel; cf. *duduge*.

dig(g)a, a drop; cf. *dug(g)o*.

dik(k)ushi*, to kneel; cf. *durkushi*.

dila دِلَا, pl. diloli دِلُولِي, jackal.

dila* دِيَلَا, melon.

dilali دِلَالِي, Ar. دِلَال, a broker. In Hausaland nearly all buying and selling are conducted through brokers, who receive 5 p. c. of the price paid; *yi dilali* to do business, to trade.

dilanchi دِلَانْتِ, trading; *maidilanchi* one who trades.

dilkushi, to kneel; cf. *durkushi*.

dilo دِلُو, a tall straight tree.

dimajo دِمَجُو (Fulah id.), the offspring of a slave and a free person.

dimbujin zufa دِمْبِجِن زُفَا, small red beads worn round the neck by women; cf. *dumbaji*.

dimi* دِيَمِر (cf. Ar. دِيَمَة, striped cotton stuff), white native cloth (calico?).

- dim(m)i dawa* دِمْدَاوَا, firefly.
- dimso* دِمْسُو, to take a handful, to fill the hand.
- dindimi* دِنْدِمِي (cf. (?) Ar. دَمَع, to water or run, of the eyes), to be dim, used of the eyes.
- dingishi* دِنْغِشِي (cf. (?) Ar. دَنَع, to walk with difficulty under a burden), temporary lameness.
- dir(r)a* دِر or *dir(r)o* دِرُو or *dera* دِرُو or *dero* دِرُو or *dir(r)i* دِرِي (cf. (?) Ar. دَر, to run swiftly), to jump, jump down, leap as a grasshopper.
- dira** or *dra** دِرَا, Ar. ذِرَاع, cubit; cf. *kamu*.
- dirgaza* دِرْغَزَا, dough.
- dirime*, to upset; cf. *durimi*.
- dirje* دِرْجِي, to bruise, knock off.
- dirka* دِرْكَا, a large beam stuck in the ground to support a roof.
- dirka* دِرْكَا, a game played by fortune-tellers, etc. in order to discover secrets; F 11 *ka ber darra duka da dirka duka da sata* give up all playing of darra and dirka and stealing.
- dirka** دِرْكَ, to beat; F 106 *sunu dirkanka har kushe-kusheya* they will beat thee till thou art sore; cf. *tsirka*, *dakka*.
- dirumbua* دِرْمُبُوَا, an armband of plaited grass worn by children; cf. *rumbua*.
- diya* دِيَا, 1. offspring, whether male

or female, daughter, maiden, girl, brood of animals, fruit of tree; C 25 *en ko diya ta baka anshiwa ta ka yi* if perchance she give thee offspring she will snatch it away; 2. one who is free as contrasted with a slave (cf. *da*); *diyatrana** دِيَاتْرَانَا, mirage.

diyantaka دِيَانْتَا, freedom; cf. seq.

diyauchi دِيَاوُث or *diyanchi* دِيَانْثِي, freedom, liberation from slavery, sonship.

do or *daru* دُو, to take, a shortened form of *dauka*; A 20 *wajib mu do hayasu* we ought to take their road; cf. use of *du* for *duka*.

doachi دُوْث or *dachi* دَث, bitterness; *ya yi doachi* it is bitter (e.g. as a kola nut); *madachi* مَدَث, 1. gall; 2. bitter.

dodo دُوْدُو, pl. *dodonai* دُوْدُونِي, evil spirit, spirit of a dead man which is supposed to walk about on the day of his death but to rise and disappear the same evening: it appears at times in trees and catches man.

dodo دُوْدُو, *yin dodo* to show anything exposed in the hand and then snatch it away.

dodowa دُوْدُوَا, the fruit of the *dorowa* tree used for putting in soup; the three kinds of *dodowa* are *yakua*, *kalua*, *kuka*.

dogare دُوْغَرِي, to lean upon, prop oneself up by, trust in, ask

favour from; B 20 *mum dogareka muna kamna* we trust in thee, we love thee, C 47 *mado-gara* a pole to keep a door shut.

dogari دُوغَر (cf. (?) Ar. دَعَر, to repulse), a soldier of the king's body-guard, an executioner; cf. (?) *dakara*.

dogarichi دُوغَرِيْث, the office of a *dogari*.

dogo دُوغُو, f. *dogua* دُوغُوَا, pl. *dogaye* دُوغَايِي, tall, high, long; *lokachi dogo* a long time.

dogua دُوغُوَا, 1. an evil spirit supposed to injure tamarind and other trees: persons eating the fruit become paralyzed and die; 2. paralysis caused by the *dogua*.

doi or *doyi* دُوِي, a bad smell; F 115 *sunu doyi mugunya na zubuwa* they stink, they have an evil odour poured upon them, *yin doi* to emit a bad smell.

doiya دُوِيَا, pl. *doyoyi* دُوِيِي (dioscorea sativa), yam; the root of the plant is eaten after being boiled or fried. It is extremely common on the W. coast and in the neighbourhood of the larger rivers, but in the northern part of Hausaland it is rarely met with; cf. 'Hausaland,' p. 154.

doka دُوَك, plaiting of the hair by a woman with the object of making it stand erect.

*doka** دُوَكَا, a prohibition, a law forbidding anything.

*doka** دُوَكَا, used by Hausas in N. Africa as equivalent to twelve *sous*.

doka, to take; cf. *daruka*.

doke دُوَكِي or *druka** دُوَك, to strike, to beat; cf. *dakka*.

doki دُوَك, pl. *dawaki* دُوَاك, a horse; F 219; *doki kuru* or *kuru* a pony.

dokolua, a hen; cf. *dakolua*.

dole دُوَلِي or *dungule* دُوَنْغَلِي, a blot of ink; the first form is used at Zaria, the second at Kano.

domashi دُوْمَش (cf. (?) Ar. دَمِش, a stimulating medicine), a small tree, the root of which is cooked and used as a medicine for dysentery.

dombubu دُوْمْبُو or *dongudu* دُوَنْغُو, wrist, ankle bone.

domi دُوْمِي or *dominmi* دُوْمِنْمِي, why? wherefore? *domi* is probably a contraction of *don mi* on account of what? cf. seq.

domin دُوْمِن, because of, in order that; *dominsa* for his sake, *domin hakka* for this reason, *dominsa* (or *donsa*) *shi ji* in order that he may hear.

dominchewa دُوْمِنْشُوَا, sometimes contracted to *chewa* therefore, for this reason; not used colloquially.

don دُوْن, 1. because, because of;

2. in order that; *don wanan* for this reason, *don kadda* lest, in order that...not.

*done** دُونِي, to hang up.

dongudu, ankle joint, wrist; cf. *dombubu*.

dora دُور, 1. to heap up, increase, place; 2. to begin; 3. used with *bindiya* to load a gun. 1. D 44 *su dora bukata suna sa masa uku uku* they heap up blows, they give them three at a time, F 99 *dora murna* to rejoice, F 176 *su dora kira* they cry aloud; 2. D 43 *shi dora makarkata* he begins to tremble.

doraro, to look round; cf. *dauraro*.

dori, to endure; cf. *dauri*.

dorina دُورِنَا, pl. *dortnai* دُورِنِي, hippopotamus.

doriwa دُورِوَا or *dorowa* دُورِوَا (*robinia pseudacacia*), a tree resembling an acacia called in America the locust tree, its fruit called *kalua* is contained in a pod like that of a bean and is eaten in soup; the tree is chiefly valued for the magnificent shade which it affords; cf. *dodowa*.

doro دُورُو, hump, swelling; D 14 *anadakka hal ta yin dora azaba* he shall be beaten till the pain causes a swelling on the back; *maidoro* hump-backed.

dorowa, see *doriwa*.

dotijo دُوتِيَجُو or *datijo* دَاتِيَجُو or

dotizo دُوتِيَزُو, a man with a long beard, hence an important or dignified person.

doya, yam; cf. *doiya*.

*dra**, cubit; cf. *dira*.

duba دُب or *dubo* دُبُو (cf. Ar. rt دُوب, to use diligence), to look at, behold, watch carefully; *duba da kiyo* look carefully after, *duba* behold!

dubára, contrivance; cf. *dabára*.

dubbara da دُبَّرَد (cf. Ar. دَبَّر, to come behind), close to.

dubbo dubbo دُبُو دُبُو (cf. Ar. دَبَّ, to walk on all fours), an expression used of the attempts made to walk by a boy of one year old.

dubu دُبُو, thousand. The same word is found in the Fulah, Kanuri, Teda and Bagrimma languages; cf. (?) Coptic *thba* ten thousand.

duchi دُوْش or *dushi* دُش, pl. *duatsu* دُوْطُو, *duasu* دُوْسُو or *dwarwat-tai** دُورُوْتِي, stone, a stone; C 52 *duatsu sun zamai masa dukia* stones became riches for him, *duchin nika* mill-stone.

duduge دُدُغِي or *did(d)igi* دِدِغ, pl. *dudugai* دُدُغِي, heel; cf. *duga duga*.

dufu دُفُو, darkness; *ya yi dufu* it is dark, or it becomes dark, *dere nan ya faye dufu* the night is very dark, *dufu kirim* utter darkness, A 67 *ka shafa*

dufu kirim huaka tasa thou anointest his face with utter darkness.

dufua دُؤُوا, darkness; cf. prec.

duga duga دُغ دُغ, heel; cf. *duduge*.

dug(g) دُغو or *dig(g)a* دِغَا, pl. *dugogi* دُغُوغِي, drop, mark or dot on paper or cloth; used of the dots placed above or below letters, e.g. ت, ٥; *dug(g)on raba* a drop of dew; cf. *daso*.

duguza دُغُزَا, hairy all over, an epithet applied to Dodo, etc.

duk, all, a common contraction for *duka*, q.v.; *duk da wanan* nevertheless, altogether.

duka دُك or *duk* دُك, all, every, everyone; A 5 *duk ya uwana duk ku zo* all ye my brothers come, *duka da'ara ne* it is all the same, there is no difference, *duka komi* everything, *duka biu* (or *su biu*) both of them; cf. *dukachi*, *dukanta*.

*duka**, to strike; cf. *doke*.

duka دُوك, to bend down so as to touch the head on the ground.

dukachi دُكُتْ or *dukanta* دُكُنْتَا, all, the whole; *dukachin komi* everything.

dukanta, see *dukachi*.

*duki** دُك, large carnivorous bird (eagle?).

dukiya دُوكِيَا, pl. *dukoki* دُوكُوَكِي, or *dukiyoyi* دُوكِيُوَيِي, goods, property, riches; A 83 *mayi ka samu dukia achikkinta* thou,

wizard, wast possessed of riches in this world; *maidukia* a rich man.

dukushi دُكُشِ, f. *dukusa* دُكُسَا, pl. *dukusai* دُكُسَايِ, *dan dukushi* a young horse or mare.

duli دُلِي or *duri* دُرِي, pudenda.

duma دُومَر (cf. Ar. rt دُومَر), to remain, continue; *akomo kuma ga aljenna aduma tutur* they shall return again to heaven and remain for ever; cf. *dawama*.

duma دُومَا, a gourd or pumpkin, which is not eaten but is used for making water-pots from; cf. *kworia*.

*duma-muss** دُومُوسْ, an invincible warrior (?).

*dumbaji** دُمْبَجِ, necklace; cf. *dimbujin zufa*.

*dumbuji** دُمْبُجِ, a very rich man.

dumi, hot; cf. *demi*.

dum(m)i دُمِّي (cf. (?) Ar. دُنَّ), noise. In Sokoto especially it is used of the hum of conversation, B 22 *ku ber yawan dumi ku ji kalmata* leave off speaking many words, listen to what I say.

dumia دُومِيَا, goose (or swan?) with black breast, it frequents trees.

dumia دُومِيَا (cf. (?) Ar. دُومَةُ), a wild palm, name of a tree, the fruit of which is sweet and

edible; a kind of molasses is made from it; cf. *mad(d)i*.

dumke دُمكِي, *dumka* دُمك or *dumki*

دُمكِي (cf. Ar. دَمَك, to twist or plait), to sew; F 88 *adumka duk ana kuma gangamawa* it is completely sewn and joined together, *madumke* one who sews.

*dunde** دُنْدِي, to press down (*aduntse* in F 95 should be *adunde*).

dundu دُنْدُو, a small fabaceous tree the fruit of which when ground up and drunk is supposed to render a man incapable of being wounded if struck by a sword.

*dundu** دُنْدُو, 1. to mumble (?), cf. C 32, note; 2. to strike with clenched fist.

dundufa دُنْدُفَا (cf. Ar. دُف, a small drum), a large drum, the drum used by the natives for purposes of signalling, etc.

dundumi دُنْدُمِي, to grope about in the dark after sunset.

dundunia دُنْدُونِيَا, the inside of a bird's talon, the ankle of a man.

dundurusu دُنْدُرُسُو, an axe used for cutting stones with.

dun(n)e دُنْبِي or *den(n)e* دَنْبِي, to close up a hole.

*dungo** دُنْغُو, to snatch the hand away (?).

dungo دُنْغُو, the name of a small locust.

dungu دُنْغُو, the stump of a leg or arm.

dungule, spot; cf. *dole*.

dungul(l)i دُنْغُلِي, 1. butter = *mainshanu*; 2. a cow tied up by the feet.

*dungum** دُنْغُم, much; B 30 *shiwanda ke jirankabakki dungum* he who waits for abundance to eat.

dunia or *duniya* دُونِيَا, Ar. دُنْيَا, the world, sky, atmosphere, weather; *dunia dadi* fine weather, *dunia ta yi dere* it is night, *dunia ta yi rani* it is the dry season; *dunia* is often used to denote the evil principle which characterizes the world, so *dan dunia* (lit. son of the world) a bad man, B 52 *kowa bi dunia nan ya rudu* whoever follows this world is deceived, *ya samu dunia* he has become rich; *dunia* is sometimes used to denote all mankind.

dunia دُنْيَا, a small edible water bird, a species of diver (podiceps minor (?)).

*dunia** دُونِيَا, Ar. دُون, vile, despicable, incredible.

dunko, gum; cf. *danko*.

dunkule دُنْكَلِي, a lump or handful of flour, or anything soft squeezed out; cf. *churi* and (? *dungule*).

dunno دُونُو (cf. Ar. دُونُ near), to draw near.

durimi دُرِمِي or *dirime* دِرِمِي, to upset, used of a boat.

durkushi دُرْكُشِي, *dilkushi* دِلْكُشِي, or *dik(k)ushi** دِكْشِي, to kneel; cf. seq.

durugus(s)a دُرُغَسْ or *durgus(s)a* دُرْغَسْ, to kneel down in prayer or as an act of homage.

durumi دُرْمِي, the name of a large shady tree, the fruit of which somewhat resembles a kola-nut; the tree is greatly valued on account of the shade it affords.

dusa دُسا (cf. Ar. دَاسٌ, to tread out corn), chaff, husks.

dushi دُشِي, to become dim or indistinct; *rana ta dushi* it is getting dark, *fitilla ta dushi* the lamp is going out, *muria ta dushi* the sound is becoming indistinct.

dushi, a stone; cf. *duchi*.

dushirwa دُشِيرْوَا, dimness, indistinctness; used of an eclipse of the moon.

eblis, the evil spirit; cf. *iblis*.

en اِن (Ar. اِن, if) (when followed by *b* or *m* it is pronounced *em*), 1. that, in order that, to; *na taffo en gaya maka* I came to tell you; 2. if, whether; *en* and *idan* are about equally common, *en* being

specially used in the district around Kano, *idan* in the southern part of Hausaland; *ya tambaya en su fulani ne* he asked whether they were Fulahs; 3. *en* is used in an imperative sense or to ask a question; *en mu taffi yawo* let us go for a walk, *em bika* let me follow you, or shall I follow you? B 171 *en rarafe ina aza huskata* let me crawl, let me place my face on the ground! 4. preceded by *kadda* it denotes a prohibition; *kadda en ji kishirua* may I not thirst, or lest I thirst.

enche, verily! certainly; cf. *anche*. *enchi*, to free a slave; cf. *yanchi*.

enda اِنْدَا, where; *ban sami ba enda shi ke* I do not know where he is.

enna اِنَّا, Ar. اَيْن, where? *dagga enna* whence?

*entaya** اِنْتِيَا, a small edible grain.

*enturaka**, female servant; cf. *yanturaka*.

en(n)ua اِنُوَا, shade, shadow, shelter; D 68 *ba ennua sai enda tuti muhammad* there shall be no shade except where the ensign of Mohammed is, D 75 *mu sha ennua* we shall enjoy shelter.

*errahimi** الرَّحِيمِ, Ar. الرَّحِيمِ, the merciful; *errahmani* الرَّحْمَانِ,

Ar. الرَّحْمَانِ, the compassionate. In the case of these and

of the other Arabic words used by the Hausas which begin with the letters ت, ث, د, ذ, ذ, ن, ل, ط, ص, ش, س, ز, ر, and are preceded by the Ar. article, the article is assimilated to the initial consonant and the word is often pronounced as if it began with the letter *e*. For exception to this rule, cf. *arsaberi* instead of *esaberi*.

esga, a horse's tail; cf. *isga*.
ewa, verily, indeed; cf. *aiwa*.

f. The letter ب is used by the Hausas to represent both *f* and *p*, the sounds of which are frequently interchanged; cf. *fago*, *pago*. The sound *f* is also interchanged with that of *b*; cf. under *b*, and with that of *h*, cf. *hako*, *fako*; *huska*, *fuska*.

fa ڤا, Ar. id., therefore, then, thus.

*fache** ڤاشي, ڤاشي, *balshe** بلشي or *bashe** بشي (A 84), 1. but, however; 2*. up till now; B 80, n., cf. (?) *bale*.

fad(d)a ڤد or *fad(d)i* ڤدي (cf.

Ar. ڤد, to shout), 1. to speak, often implying to speak with authority or in a tone of command, to say, to tell; D 18 *kun ji fa mun fadi* do you listen, we say that...; 2. ڤدا speech; A 6 *shi kan ji fadata bayan kunua* he would hear my speech and pay no attention.

fad(d)a ڤد, 1. to fight; A 21 *duka sun fadda* they are all at strife; 2. ڤدا, strife, fighting; *yi fadda* to fight (possibly *fadda* to fight and *fada* to speak may both come from the Ar. ڤد to trample down and to shout).

fada ڤدا, pl. *fadodi* ڤدودي, a blow.

fada ڤادا, pl. *fadodi* ڤادودي, 1. court or palace, F 231; 2. royal council; cf. *fadawa*.

fada ڤاد or *fadi* ڤادي, to fall down; *fadi* is the commoner form.

fadake ڤدائي, 1. trade; 2. merchant, trader; *yi fadake* to trade, *maifadake* trader; *fadake* is probably a plur. form of *falke*, q. v.; cf. *fatake*.

fadama ڤاداما (Fulah *fadamare*), marsh, pool.

fadawa ڤاداوا, a king's officers or attendants; the order of precedence differs in various places: in Kano it is *sariki*, *galladima*, *madaki*, *wombai*, *makama*, *turaki*, *sarikin dawaki*, *sarikin bayi*, *chiroma*, *maji*; in Zaria it is *sariki*, *madaki*, *galladima*, *sarikin maikira* (= *manzo*), *makama*, etc.; cf. *bafade*.

fadi, to fall; cf. *fada*.

fadi ڤاد, width, breadth; *da fadi* wide, broad; cf. *faski*.

fadin rai ڤادين ري or *fadin zuchia*

- بادنْ دُووَيَا**, haughtiness; cf. also *giriman zuchia*.
- fádo*** **بَادُو**, to fall down; cf. *fádi*.
- fad(a)owa*** **بَادُوا**, talking, D 87 (?).
- fádua** **بَادُوا**, falling; D 87 (?); cf. *fádi*.
- fafake** **بَفَكِي**, to feel about as with the hand in searching for anything; cf. *fak(k)e*, *burkuti*.
- fafare** **بَفَرِي**, to drive away; cf. (?) *foro*.
- fag(g)e** **بَغِي**, Kanuri id., a king's assembly room; *faygen doki* a place for riding in.
- fagia*** **بَغِيَا**, bow shot (?).
- fago*** or **payo*** **بَغُو**, a woman's luggage carried in a bag or net.
- fahami*** **بَهَمِي**, Ar. **بَهَامَة**, understanding.
- fahari** **بَحَرِي** or **fahri** **بَحَرِي**, cf. Ar. **بَحَار**, honour, pride; D 35 *ku ber fahri ku yi laiddabi da girima* leave off pride, gain much instruction.
- fahimchi*** **بَهْمِيْت**, understanding; cf. seq.
- fahimta** **بَهْمِيْت** or **fahumta*** **بَهْمِيْت**, cf. Ar. **بَهَم**, to understand.
- faijai** **بَيْبِي**, pl. **fiyafai** **بَيْبِي**, fan or dish cover made of woven grass, fan for winnowing with.
- fakara** **بَكْرَا**, a small bird somewhat like a partridge.
- fak(k)e** **بَكِي**, to hide oneself; cf. *fak(k)o*.
- fak(k)o** **بَكُو** or **بَفُو**, a lying in wait, *yi fako* to lie in wait, set an ambush; cf. *hak(k)o*, *mafak(k)a*.
- fak(k)o** **بَفُو** (cf. Ar. **بَفَا**, to take off the husk), a threshing floor = *wurin susuka*.
- faládara**, fez, cap; cf. *fuladara*.
- falaka** **بَلَك** (cf. Ar. **بَلَف**, used of the dawn 'to break forth'), to awake, arise; D 26 *ku yi berchi ku falaka ku tashi* sleep and awake, rise up; cf. *falka*.
- falala*** **بَلَلَا** or **falale** **بَلَلِي** (cf. (?) Ar. **بَضَّة**, a coin, or, stony tract of land), 1. a rich man; 2. a rock.
- falasa** or **palasa** **بَلَس**, to revile, disgrace, punish.
- falfada** **بَلْفَدَا**, some kind of sickness, a fainting fit.
- falfas(s)a** **بَلْفَس**, to bruise, strike; cf. *fas(s)a*, etc.
- falgaba** **بَلْغَبَا**, fear; cf. *firgabba*.
- falia** **بَلِيَا**, a fish something like a salmon.
- falka** **بَلَك** (B 60) or **falkawa** **بَلَكُوا**; cf. *falaka* id.
- falke** **بَلَكِي**, pl. **fatake** **بَتَاكِي**, travelling merchant, trader.
- falmaki** **بَلْمَك**, throng, tumult as in war; cf. *firmaki*.
- fama** **بَمَا**, strife, battle; *yin fama* to fight.
- fandare** **بَنْدَرِي** (cf. Ar. **بَنْدِير**,

a boulder), to be crooked; A 58 *hainya sun bi wanda ya fandare* they followed a way that was crooked, A 19.

fankasu فَنكسو, a cake made of wheat, flour and honey.

fansa فَنسا, usually pronounced *pansa*, deliverance, revenge, requital, redemption from slavery; *yin fansa* to redeem. *fansawa* فَنساوا, ransoming, redemption.

fanshe, panshe فَنشِي or *fansi, pansi* فَنسِي, to ransom, redeem, e.g. *na fansheka dagga bauta* I ransomed thee from slavery; in playing the game of *chacha* the loser says *na fanshe* i.e. I have to pay.

fanso, panso فَنسو, i. q. *fanshe*.

far فَر for *fada*, to fight; F 190 note.

fara فَارَا, beginning, A 2; cf. *farawa*.

fara فَار or *yi fara* فَارَا, or

*faru** فَارُو, to begin.

fara فَارَا, pl. *farori* فَارُورِي or

faruna فَارُونَا, locust; *farandere*, pl. *farorindere* (lit. locust of the night), a black locust which comes out at night, it is not edible as other locusts are; cf. *bardinuwa*.

faraa فَرَا, cf. Ar. فَرَح, joy; *faraa* or *yi faraa* to rejoice, F 232 *anafaraa anamurna da kowa* there shall be joy and gladness for all.

fara-kaya فَرَكِيَا (lit. white thorn), the name of a large tree with white thorns from the fruit of which ink is made.

farauta فَرَاوْتَا, hunting; *yi farauta* to hunt, to chase.

farawa فَارَاوَا, participial form of *fara*, beginning; D 1 *maifarawa* or *maifarawa* beginner, B 80 *maifarawa dadai bai fara ba* he who first began... did not begin.

faraya فَرَايَا, pl. *farayu* فَرَايُو, whitened; cf. *fari*.

farcha فَرْتْ (cf. (?) Ar. جَمَأ, to heat), to blister; D 65 *ta kan rika farcha kai garemu* it will continually blister our heads; cf. *farsa*.

farga فَرْمَغ (cf. (?) Ar. rt فَرْمَغ, to be disquieted), to perceive something wrong; *na farga da kai*= I see that you are cheating me.

fari فَرِي, f. *fara* فَرَا, pl. *farari* فَرَارِي or *faru faru* فَرُو فَرُو, white, bright; A 21 *sun san fari san san baki* they know the difference between white and black, *dan fari* a small piece of something white, F 88 *akawo dan fari kuma zaashiria* a piece of white cloth is brought to be prepared, *farin yunwa* drought, *fari dabino* an unripe date, also a name for beads, *farin karifi* (or *jan karifi*) brass, *fari ko baki* sometimes denotes good or bad, *farin wata* new

moon, *farin zini* good disposition, *farin chikki* joy, gladness, *yi farin chikki* to rejoice.

fari فَرِي (cf. (?) Ar. فَرِي, used of division between day and night), a break of about ten days duration during the rainy season in June or July.

fari فَارِي, used in the compound forms *dafari*, *nafari*, f. *tafari*, first.

farichi فَرِيْث (a Fulah word ?), a finger nail; cf. *kumba*, *akayi*.

farifasha فَرِيْش, an intensive form of *fashe*, to break in pieces.

farika فَارِيْكَ (cf. Ar. فَرِيْكَ used of a woman 'to hate her husband'), profligate woman.

*faril(l)a** فَرِيْلَا, new moon = *sabon* (or *farin*) *wata*.

*farilai** فَرِيْلَاي, Ar. فَرِيْلَاي, religious duties; B 168 *mu bada faralinmu* we will perform our religious duties, A 69.

farin-chik(k)i فَرِيْنِيْكَ, happiness; cf. *fari*.

farin-gamu فَرِيْنْغَمُو, a name given to a white mixture which is used as a medicine.

*farikon** فَرِيْكَوْن, perhaps from Ar. فَرِيْكَوْن, that which distinguishes between good and evil, or it perhaps denotes author; cf. B 1, note.

farsa فَرِيْس or *farisa* فَرِيْس, a blister; cf. *farcha*.

*farta** فَرْتِي, to be proud, used of a rich man; cf. (?) *fahari*.

fartanya, a hoe; cf. *fatainya*.

faru فَارُو, 1. chiefly used in the expression *mi ya faru* what has happened, what is the matter? *ya faru* it happened; 2. cf. *fara*.

fas(s)a فَسَس, to break, split, destroy, to miss fire; *maifasawa* destroying, F 174 *enda sanyi maifasawa* where cold shall destroy them; cf. *fashe*, *falfas(s)a*.

fasa فَسَا, to defer, postpone, drive away; B 55 *muna da taffia ba fasawa* we have a journey which cannot be put aside, B 120 *mutua...ba tan yi ta fasa ba* death will not admit of delay, *na fasa aike gobe* I put off the work till tomorrow; cf. *fashi*.

*fasabi** فَصَابِي, blasphemer(?), A 80.

fasadi فَسَادِي or *fasada* فَسَادَا, Ar. فَسَاد, discord, envying; E 18 *ku tuba ku ber fasadi* repent, leave off discord, D 9.

fasa-kworria فَسْكَوْرِيَا, a large tree, the aromatic bark of which is ground up as a medicine.

*fasali** فَسَالِي, interpretation; cf. *fasara*.

fasali فَسَالِي, mending by sewing.

fasara فَسَارَا or *fasaranta* فَسَارَنْتَا, Ar. فَسْر, interpretation, explanation; *yi fasara* to interpret, explain.

fásarwa فَاَسَاوَا, postponing, participial form of *fása*.

fashe فَشِي (cf. (?) Ar. فَسَخَ II), usually pronounced *pashe*, to break, to burst; *fashewa* splitting, F 114 *tana kona fa kainua na fashewa* it will burn their heads, it will split them; *maifesshe* brigand, cf. *farifasha*.

fashi فِش, delay, interruption; *ku yi fashi rana* leave off work for a day, *yin taffia ba fashi* to travel without a break; cf. *fása*.

fasiki فَاَسِفِي, فَاَسِفِي or فَاَسِكِي, pl. *fasikai* فَاَسَفِي, a profligate man, F 105, 116, 141; *fasika* فَاَسِكَا, Ar. فَاَسَفَةٌ, a profligate woman, B 139, note.

*fasiki** فَاَسِكِي, to mock; *maifasiki** a mocker.

*fasishiwa** فَاَسِشِيوَا, licentiousness; a lengthened form of *fasika*, E 21.

*faskara** فَاَسَكْرَا, senseless.

faskarari فَاَسَكْرَارِي, bound hand and foot; cf. seq.

faskare فَاَسَكْرِي, to overcome, to be unable to do anything; *ya faskareni* I cannot do it; cf. Gr. p. 46.

faskari فَاَسَكْرِي, the shaving one side of the head as a sign of sorrow; if a woman has three children who die in succession she shaves

half her head, if four die, the whole.

faskari فَاَسَكْرِي, a plank or board, *yi faskari* to make into planks.

faski فَاَسِكِي, breadth; cf. *fádi*.

fas(s)o فَاَسُو (cf. Ar. فَسَخَ, to be chapped), breaking of the skin, e.g. as result of cold.

fata فَاَتَا, pl. *fatuna* فَاَتَانَا, frequently pronounced *pata*; 1. the skin of an animal, cf. *kirigi*; 2. the rind or bark of a tree.

*fata**, wish, desire, usually in a bad sense, *yi fata* to desire that which is wrong.

fatainya فَاَتَيْنِيَا or *fartanya* فَاَرْتَيْنِيَا (cf. Ar. فَاَتَانَا, a plough), a hoe.

fatáke فَاَتَاكِي, Nupé id., merchants; cf. *falke*.

fatalua فَاَتَلُوَا, ghost, hobgoblin, spectre. The word usually suggests something which is regarded as evil.

*fatatake** فَاَتَاتَكِي, to tear to pieces.

fatauchi فَاَتَاوُحِي, trading, travelling for purposes of trade; *yi fatauchi* to trade or travel as a trader, *maifatauchi* trader; cf. *fatáke*.

*fatíha** فَاَتَاَحَة, Ar. فَاَتَاَحَة, lit. the opening; cf. A 73 *ima tukunchi dafari abachi fatiha* thou must not eat before saying the opening chapter of the Koran; cf. *alfatira*.

fatilla بَتَلَا or *fitilla* فِتَلَا, pl. *fatillu*

بَتَلُو, *fatillai* بَتَلَى or *fatilloli*

بَتَلُولَى (Ar. بَتِيلَة wick used in a lamp), lamp; *main fatilla* lamp oil.

fau فَاو, up to the brim, *kura ya tashi fau* the calabash was filled to the brim, *ya hau fau* = *ya hau bissa*. *fau* is probably another form of *hau*, cf. similar interchange in *huska*, *fuska*, or it may be a shortened form of the mod. Ar. فَوْف up, for similar abbreviation cf. *du* for *duka* all.

fauchi فَاوْشَى, to snatch (?), to kill (?); *mafauchi* or *mahau-chi* a butcher; cf. seq.

fawa فَاوَا, to slaughter animals, to cut up meat; *wurin fawa* abattoir.

faye فَايَى, to abound or excel in anything, to do something very much, to be addicted to or fond of anything; *yara suna faye yin worigi* the boys are fond of play; *ya faye da girima* he was too big to...

faza فَازَا, a fishing line to which a hook is attached.

fedua فِدْوَا, whistling; cf. *feto*.

*ferē** فِرَى, to peel, e.g. with a knife.

ferka فِرْكََا, see *farika*.

ferko فِرْكَو, beginning, *naferko* first.

ferko, to revive; cf. *firko*.

fesa فِسَس, to spit, *fesawa* spitting; cf. *tofi*.

feshe فِشَى, only found in the form *maifesshe* brigand; cf. *fashe*.

fet فِت, used with *fari* very white.

feto فِتُو or *fito* فَيْتُو, to whistle with the lips; cf. *fedua* and seq.

ferwa فِرْو = prec.

fi فَى, to surpass, to be better; *ya fi* it is better so; *ya fisu da karifi* he was stronger than they; it is often used with *duka* to express a superlative, e.g. *ya fi duka da keau* he is the most beautiful. *mafi* is often prefixed to a noun or adjective in order to form a comparative or to strengthen the positive; thus *mafi kunche* narrower, or very narrow; cf. *fu*.

fiachi فَيَاشَى, to blow the nose.

fichi فِشَى, to get away, escape; C 34 *kowa ke so shi fichi* whoever desires to escape.

fida فِد or *fide* فِدَى, to flay, open out, prepare food; *fida nama* to dress meat; E 13 *idan an-fida tutoshi jahadi* if the standards of war be unfolded.

*fidakai** فِدْكَى, to save; cf. seq.

fidakai فِدْكَى, a word used to describe the custom of adding four cups of grain when making a bargain in the market.

This amount of grain if given to a mallam is supposed to procure the forgiveness of sins committed during the previous year. [Probably from Ar. *fidā* price or thing given as ransom, *fida kai* would thus be the ransoming of the head, i.e. of oneself.]

fidasari **فِدَسَرِي**, a plant used in making hedges.

fidda **فِدْدَا**, to cast out; F 28 *ka fidda fa zushianka* cast out of thy heart the...; cf. (?) *fit(t)a*.

fideli **فِدَلِي**, a shrub, from the bruised seeds of which an eye medicine is made.

fige **فِيغِي** or *figi* **فِيغِي**, to take, take away, pluck (a fowl); B 119 *ta kam taffo sadada ta figika* it will come unperceived and will take thee away; cf. *fiage*.

fikafike **فِكْفِكِي**, pl. *fikafikai* **فِكْفِكَايِي** or *fukafuki* **فُكْفُكِي**, pl. *fukafukai* **فُكْفُكَايِي**, wing of a bird, feathers.

fiko **فِكُو**, power, excellence; *fikowa* **فِكُوَا**, surpassing or to surpass; cf. A 70 *kowa ya samasa ya fikowa* he surpasses whoever meets him.

fila, stratagem; cf. *hila*.

filafile, a paddle for a canoe; cf. *fulafule*.

filasko **فِلَسْكُو**, the name of a plant,

a drink made from which is used as an antidote for snake bite, also for diarrhoea (the senna plant ?).

fili **فِيلِي**, pl. *filaye* **فِيلَايِي** (cf. Ar. **فِيلِي**, plains, deserts), cultivated field, plain, any unoccupied spot or space; C 11 *ya kunchi kaia nai ga fili dunia* he unties his goods on the plain of this world; *babu fili wuri nan* there is no room here.

findi **فِنْدِي** (cf. Ar. **فِنْدَاوَة**, an axe), a sword with broad blade.

fira **فِرَا** or *hira* **حِرَا*** (cf. Ar. **فِرْيَة**), conversation, tale, a story that is not true.

firdi **فِرْدِي**, lion, wild beast; *dan firdi* an epithet applied to a king.

firfitowa **فِرْفِتُوَا**, a strengthened form of *fitowa* to come out; F 199 *wuta na firfitowa* fire shall come out abundantly.

firgaba **فِرْغَب**, to be distressed; cf. *falyabba*.

firgita **فِرْغَت**, to frighten, or to be frightened, to shiver, e.g. with cold, shrink, tremble.

fir(r)i **فِرِي**, to heap up earth, e.g. round the roots of yams; cf. *maimai*.

firko **فِرْكُو** or *ferko* **فِرْكُو**, Ar. **فَرْف** IV, to revive, e.g. as from fainting.

firmaki **فِرْمَكِي**, to assault, rise up against; cf. *falmaki*.

fisa فِس, to put out, equivalent to *fitasda*, E 8 note; cf. *fit(t)a*, *fidda*.

*fisa** فِس, to complete, A 71 note; *wajib alwalanka ka fisata* is it necessary that thou shouldst perform thy ablutions?

fige فِغِي or *fusge* فُسْغِي, to snatch, draw forth, take out, take off; cf. *fige*.

fisha فِشِي or *fushe* فُشِي, to drive out, draw out, take away; G 5 *goma sha fudu chikkin sarota akafisheshi* (he continued) fourteen years in the kingdom, he was then driven out; cf. *fit(t)a*.

*fishema** فِشْمَر, to go away; F 80 *ido shim birkishe raia fishema* thine eye closes, thy life departs.

fis(s)o فِسُو, i.e. *fi so*, to prefer, wish rather; *na fisso wanan da wanchan* I prefer this to that.

fit(t)a فِت, to go out of, take out, followed by *da* it means to take away; *ya fita da shi* he went off with it, *rana ta fita* the sun has risen, *ya fita nagari* he turned out well, *fit zini* to bleed. The following derivatives are found: *fit(t)o* to come out, *fit(t)as* to take out, *fisha* to draw out, *fit(t)asda* to take out, take off, undress.

fit(t)a فِتَا, departure.

fitilla, a lamp; cf. *fatilla*.

fit(t)o فِتُو, to come out from; cf. *fit(t)a*.

fit(t)o فِتُو, 1. tax paid on leaving a country, tax paid to the king in the Kano market when purchasing a slave; 2. a patch on clothes.

*fito**, to whistle; cf. *feto*.

fitsare فِطْرِي, urine.

fitta فِتَا, kind of leaf used by the Hausas for thatching a house, also regarded as edible; cf. *fufu*.

fiyaya فَيِيَا or *fiyaye* فَيِيَا, excellency; F 51 *ka duba har fiyayan annabawa* consider the excellency of the prophets, D 96, E 3.

*foche** فُوْئِي, a cake of salt.

*fofi** فُوْفِي, to fade, used of leaves, etc.

foma فُوْمَا (cf. Ar. فُخْمَر II, to honour, فُخْمِيَّة, pride), pride, boasting; *naifoma* a proud, arrogant man.

forau forau فُوْرُو فُوْرُو or *foro foro* فُوْرُو فُوْرُو, 1. to mix up together; 2. = *ruan fura*, i.e. the water or soup in which *fura* has been made.

foro فُوْرُو, 1. to punish, instruct; E 22 *masubidar wushewa don asansu anaforonku* those of you who seek for adornment in order that they may be

known shall be punished; 2. instruction, E 23 *ya ki bin foron ubamu* he refuses to follow the instruction of our fathers.

fu فُو, *fua* فُوا; cf. *wanene ya fuane* who excelled me? (= (?) *buaya*; cf. *fi*.

*fuche** فُحِي, to rest; cf. *futa*.

*fuchi** فُحِي, to pass away; cf. *wuche*.

fuchi فُوح, hissing sound, e.g. of a snake, *yi fuchi* to hiss; cf. *maifuchi*.

fuda فُد or *huda* حُد, 1. to open, pierce, bore, dig in the ground; 2. = *fitasda* to take off; cf. *fuji*.

fudowa فُدُوا or *fudawa* فُدُوا, the beginning of the day, early dawn; cf. *fuda*.

fudu فُد, four, *nafudu*, f. *tafudu* fourth; cf. Coptic *ftu*.

fudu فُدُو, to be opened; cf. *fuda*.

fufu فُفُو, 1. a mixture made with kola-nuts and *fitta* leaves; 2. the packing placed round kola nuts.

fufu فُفُو or *kufu* كُفُو, the lungs; F 198 *fufu da hanji na zuburwa* their lungs and bowels shall be poured out.

fufuji فُفُجِي, to pierce many holes, used of water dropping quickly; cf. *fuji*.

*fuja** فُجَا, affair; cf. *huja*.

fuji فُجِي, a form of *fuda* to pierce.

fuka فُوك (cf. (?) Ar. فَاَف, to recover from a swoon), short-

ness of breath, asthma; *na yi fuka* I breathe hard.

fukafuki, wing; cf. *fikafike*.

*ful** فُل, very many; cf. *pul*.

fula فُولا or فُولا, a white cap often worn inside a fez; *fula saki* a blue or black cap.

fuladara فُلَادَرَا or *faladara* فَلَادَرَا, a fez, i.e. a cap made of red cloth with a tassel. These caps are for the most part imported across the Sahara desert; cf. *tagia*.

fulafule فُلُفُلِي or *filafile* فِلِفِيلِي, pl. *fulafulai* فُلُفُلَايِي, the paddles belonging to a canoe.

fulata فُلَاتَا, *fulani* فُلَانِي, *fulanchi* فُلَانِشِي, *fulbe* فُلْبِي, belonging to the Fulah tribe; *ba fulata* = a Fulah native, *fulani* = Fulahs; *fulanchi* = the Fulah language. *fulbe* is used as the name of the people generally.

*fululu** فُلُولُ, Ar. بُضُولُ, arrogance; C 36 *akuber fululu ka zan gudun maigin nasa* leave off arrogance, flee from him who practises it. (Ar. ض = Hausa ل, but cf. seq.)

*fululuwa** فُلُولُوا (Ar. فُضْلُ, to be superabundant), exaggerated, superfluous; B 154 note *yawan dummi na fululuwa* much loud talking and superfluous...

fumfuna فُمُفُنَا, mildew, damp, smell of damp; cf. seq.

*funi** فُون, the smell of a camel.

funtu فُنْتُو or *da funtu* naked, clothed in rags.

funtunchi فُنْتُنْتِ, nakedness; cf. *funtu*.

funturu فُنْتُرُو, chill, especially applied to cold felt at night.

fura فُورَا (cf. Ar. بَار, to boil), a sort of thick porridge made with various kinds of grain, it is one of the commonest kinds of food amongst the Hausas; A 11 *ga abinchi tuo fura*.

fura فُر (cf. (?) Ar. هَرَّة, heat), usually used with *wuta* to light a fire, to blow (?); *maifura* burning, *wuta ta furu* the fire is lit; *mafuri* bellows.

furchi, confession; cf. *furuchi*.

furde فُرْدِي, a bay horse.

fure فُري, pl. *furori* فُرُورِي or *furaye* فُرايِي, flower, blossom.

furja فُرج, to spit; cf. *fesa*.

furji فُرجِي, to sneeze, used of a horse; cf. (?) *fiachi*.

furtumi فُرتُمِي, a large (castrated?) bull; cf. *burtumi*.

furuchi فُرُئِي or *furchi* فُرُئِي or *huruchi* حُرُئِي, 1. confession, 2. to confess, to declare positively.

*furufi** فُرفِي, a chisel for cutting iron with.

furufura فُرفُورَا (cf. (?) Ar. فُلَجَل, to frizzle the hair), turning grey, as from old age.

fusata فُسات, to be angry; F 15 *ba ya fusata* he will not be angry; cf. *fushi*.

fusge فُسغِي, to pull out; cf. *fisge*.

fushi فُشِي, Ar. فِاش, anger; F 29 *ka ber saurin fushi* give up being hastily angry, *yi fushi* to be angry; cf. (?) *haushi*.

fuska فُسكا, pl. *fuskoki* فُسكوكِي

or *fuskuna* فُسكُنَا, face, countenance; F 229 *fuskokinsu sun fi wuta da haske* their faces shall be brighter than fire; *damre fuska* to frown.

fuskanchi فُسكُنْشِي or *fuskanta*

فُسكُنْت, 1. to face in a given direction, e.g. east or west; 2. to be angry (?); *na fuskanta da abu nan* I must have that.

fusuma فُسْمَا, a quarrel; cf. (?) *fushi*.

futa فُتَا, 1. rest, 2. فُت to rest; cf. *fuche* and seq.

futasda فُتَسْدَا, to allay.

fuzu فُزُو, a shameless person.

g. The letter غ is used by the Hausas to represent the sound of the English hard g. In the case of Arabic words containing this letter borrowed by the Hausas, the Arabic guttural sound is changed into that of g, e.g. *gáfara*.

ga غ, to, at, for, towards; *har ga* until, as far as, *bissa ga* upon, *kussa ga* near to, *baya ga* behind; *ga* and *a* are frequently interchanged.

ga غَا, to see; frequently used as an imperative, *gashi wanan* behold this one, *gashi* see here!

ga غ, a shortened form of *wonga*; C 43 *waka ga halilu fa ya yita* this song was composed by Halilu.

gab(b)a غَبَا, before, in front; *ya taffi gabba gareni* he went in front of me, F 239 *su sa'danu suna gabba* they go as an escort in front, *abokin gabba* enemy, opponent, *yi gabba* or *chi gabba* to advance.

gab(b)a غَبَا, pl. *gabbobi* غَبَوْبِي, front, bosom, heart; *gabbobi* is used for joints or limbs of the body, F 175 *shi karya kasshi shi yenke duk gabobi* it will break their bones, it will cut all their limbs, *gabba daia* = abreast; cf. *banga banga*.

gaba غَابَا, pl. *gabobi* غَابَوْبِي, name of a white bird with red beak which lives in trees, wild goose (?).

gab(b)a غَبَا, fore arm (cf. *damshi*, upper arm), cubit; cf. also *kamu*.

gab(b)achi غَبِيْث, eastward; cf. *gab-bas*.

gab(b)adai غَبْدِيْ or *gabbadaia*

غَبْدِيَا, together, at the same time or place.

gab(b)a-rua, غَبْرُوَا, name of a tree used for tanning.

gab(b)as غَبْس or *gabbaz* غَبَز, east.

gabata غَبَات, to go before; *gabata da* to take a thing to, *masu-gabata* those who lived in former times.

gabato غَبَاتُوَا, *gabatorwa* غَبَاتُوَا, to come to, face towards, bring together, used of a herald (*manzo*), to come to announce the coming of someone; F 137 *fa kudira ta gabato talikai duk* and the will of God shall bring together all creatures, *gabatoni* come here to me!

*gache**, to slip; cf. *gubchi*.

*gachi** غَشِي, brass = *jan karifi*.

gada غَدَا, pl. *gadu* غَدُو, small red antelope.

gada غَادَا, *gado* غَادُو, to inherit.

gada غَادَا, an exclamation of joy used by women whilst dancing and throwing their arms back; cf. *guda*.

gadanga غَدَنْغ, very strong, an epithet especially applied to a lion.

gade(g)i غَدِغ, a grass eaten by horses.

gad(d)o غَدُو, pl. *gad(d)aji* غَدَجِي, or *gaddashi* غَدَشِي, bed; *gad(d)on machiji* lit. snake's bed,

the name of a herb in which snakes are often found.

gado **غَدُو**, f. *gadonia* **غَدُونِيَا**, pl.

gadoji **غَدُوچِي**, Kanuri id., wild boar; the domestic hog is called *gursuna*.

gado **غَدُو**, bird with yellow breast about the size of a thrush.

gado **غَادُو**, 1. inheritance, usually occurs in the compound *magado* or *magaji* heir, A 20 *su ne magada annabawa mallamai* the mallams are the heirs of the prophets; 2. cf. *gada*.

gafaka **غَفِيكَا**, small leather satchel, case for a book; cf. *lekki*.

gafara **غَاْفَر**, Ar. **غَفَرَ**, to excuse; it is frequently used as an imperative in the sense of 'I beg your pardon.'

gafara **غَاْفِرَا**, forgiveness, kindness; D 34 *kuna roko ku sa gafara* pray and obtain pardon; C 46 *allah ya bisu da gafara* God follows them with kindness; *aiyin gafara* an act of kindness.

gaferta **غَاْفِرْتَا**, forgiveness, kindness; *yi gaferta*, to forgive, excuse; cf. prec.

gafia **غَاْفِيَا**, pl. *gafiyoyi* **غَاْفِيُوِي**, rat.

yagafa **غَاغَا**, a large bird with red beak, of a light blue colour; it eats mice.

gagara **غَاغَر**, to resist angrily; *ya gagara* it is impossible; *dawa ta gagara* I was not able to eat

the *dawa* (lit. the *dawa* was too much for me).

gagara bado **غَاغَرْبَادُو**, a bar used to close a doorway; cf. *kagara*.

gagata **غَاغَتَا**, followed by *da* to lose; *gagata da hainya* to lose the way; *na gagata da shi* I failed to understand it.

gagawa **غَاغَا**, walking fast or excitedly.

gaga **غَاغِي** or *gaga* **غَاغ**, to be stiff or benumbed, *agaga* tottering; B 109 *dunia agaga tsofua* the world is old and tottering.

gago **غَاغُو** or *gagato* **غَاغَتُو**, name given to a king of a newly conquered district, or to a king marching in procession.

*gago** **غَاغُو**, a large spoon.

gahawa **غَاهَا** or *gahwa* **غَاهَا**, Ar. **قَهْوَة**, coffee. Coffee is not used by the Hausas, but only by Arab traders.

gaia, assembly; cf. *gayya*.

gaida **غَايِدَا**, 1. to greet, salute; 2. to thank; 3. to bid farewell;

gaisa **غَايْسَا**, to salute; *gaishe*

غَايْشِي, to cause to be saluted, salute, congratulate, thank;

gaisua **غَايْسُو**, salutation.

gainya (1), to beg.

gainya **غَايْنِيَا**, pl. *gainye* **غَايْنِي** and *gainyaye* **غَايْنِيِي**, leaf-blade,

herb. *gainye* **غَايْنِي**, fresh; F 95 *dan haki gainye* a little fresh grass; cf. *dainye*.

gaira **غَايْرَا**, Ar. **غَايْر**, less, e.g.

metin gaira ashirin (lit. 200 less 20) = 180; *ba gaira* complete, e.g. *metin ba gaira* = 200 without deduction.

gaisa غيس, to salute; cf. *gaida* and seq.

gaishe غيشي, 1. to cause anyone to be saluted, to send salutations, 2. to salute, 3. to congratulate, 4. to thank.

gaisua غيسوا, salutation, greeting, B 172; cf. *gaida*.

gaiwa غيوا, the mud fish (protoperus) found in most of the W. African rivers and regarded as a delicacy to eat. Its length is about three feet. During the dry season the *gaiwa* buries itself in the mud, and according to the Hausa tradition eats its own tail. During the wet season it secretes fat in its tail which supplies sufficient nourishment for five or six months; cf. similar use of fat in camel's hump at the approach of dry season. It forms a regular chamber in the mud, which it lines with a protecting coat of hardened mucus. When the rainy season returns it takes to the water again. Its skeleton is notochordal, and a single vertical fin surrounds the posterior part of the body.

gaje غجي, 1. to become tired; 2. to tire, to weary.

gáje, to inherit; cf. *gáji*.

gajere غجيري, f. *gajera* غجيرا and *gajeria* غجيريا, pl. *gajeru* غجرو, Ar. قصير, id., short; *gajerta* غجرتا, shortness.

gajewa غجوا, inability, failure from fatigue; cf. *gaje*.

gaji غجي, to be tired, fatigued, faint; cf. *gaje*.

gáji غاجي or *gáje* غاجي, to succeed as heir; D 53 *ku gáji mallama ye* are the heirs of the mallams, cf. *gádo* inheritance.

*gaji** غج or *agaji* غاج, salvation; F 122 *ka nemo agajinmu seek* salvation for us = (!) *gazáwa*; cf. *maiagazawa*.

gajia غجيا, fatigue.

gajimare غاجماري, 1. clouds, cf. *lumshi*; 2. a spirit in form of enormous snake, lives in wells, the male being red, the female blue; it comes out at night.

gal(l)a غلا, 1. some part of the bee which is eaten; 2. a small black odorous bee; cf. *taigalla*.

gal(l)adima غلاڊيما, pl. *gal(l)adi-mai* غلاڊيمي, an official, civil and military. At Zaria the order of precedence is *sariki*, *madaki*, *gal(l)adima*; cf. *fadáwa*; the word is probably borrowed from the Bornuese, the suffix *ma* corresponds to

the Hausa prefix *ma* or *mai*; cf. *chiroma*.

gal(l)an kimburi (?) غَلْنُ كِمْبُرِ, a round blue bead.

galgas(s)a غَلْغَسَا or *gargas(s)a* غَرْغَسَا, a hairy person.

galkadi غَلْفَدِ, warning; B 136 *ji galkadi* to listen to warning, D 30 *muna galkadi gareku* we warn you; cf. *gargadi*.

galma غَلْمَا or *garma* غَرْمَا, q.v. pl. *galmuna* غَلْمُنَا and *galemi* غَلْمِي, 1. some kind of vegetable; 2. large hoe bent back like a small plough.

gal(l)o غَلُو, غَالُو, some kind of hard and transparent salt, rock-salt, saltpetre, natron.

gam(m)a غَمْر, 1. to finish, complete, join; 2. to form a plot or conspiracy; with *wayo* or *kai* to use stratagem; cf. *gamawa*, *gamshe*, *gamu*, *gum(m)a*, *gangama*.

gama (?) غَمَا, because.

gamata غَامَتَا, cf. Ar. غَمِي; D 14 a fainting fit.

gam(m)awa غَمَاوَا, F 247 *abin gamawa* a thing equal to.

gamba غَنْبَا, pl. *gambobi* غَنْبُوبِي, a kind of reed or rough grass.

gamba (?) غَنْبَا, a dark-coloured grain which is ground and eaten.

*gambru** (Fulah), غَنْبُو, door of a house made of wood.

gam(m)i (?) غَمِي, double.

*gami**, غَامِي, against.

gam(m)inbanta غَمِينَبَتَا, two trees planted together so as to grow into one.

gam(m)inbauta غَمِينُوتَا, two odd shoes.

gamji, a tree; cf. *gumji*.

gamki, an image; cf. *gumki*.

gamo, see *gamu*.

gamraka غَمْرَاك, crested crane; cf. *goraka*.

gamshe غَمَشِي, 1. to meet so as to fit, to suit; 2. to deem fit or worthy, to treat one as fit; *ya gamshe*ni or *ya gam(m)ani* = it pleases me = Ar. يَعْجِبُنِي.

gamu or *gamo* غَمُو, followed by *da*, 1. to meet with; C 21 *en ta gamu fa da kai* if she meet (or agree) with thee; to join or be joined together; 2. to fall in with someone or something; A 7 *ya gamu da wuta* he comes to the fire; 3. *gamu da mache* to cohabit with; *ranan gamu* the day fixed for beginning war, or the day for meeting, or the first time of meeting with one; *rangamu* id., D 8, 29.

*gamurji** غَامُرْجِي, cf. Ar. غَمْر, to embrace.

*ganawa** غَانَاوَا, counsel.

gancheruwa, see *gantseruwa*.

gandi غَنْدِي, large cowrie-shell.

gando غَنْدُو, a man who works, but receives only food, not money as wages.

gandu غَنْدُو or *gundu* غَنْدُو, tribute; *kurdin gandu* tribute money.

ganene غَنْبِنِي, *ganenia* غَنْبِنِيَا, pl.

ganenu غَنْبِنُو, seen; cf. *gan(n)i*.

*ganewa** غَانِبُوا, B 33, seeing.

ganga غَنْغَا, pl. *ganguna* غَنْغُنَا, large drum used by soldiers.

ganga غَنْغَا, *daganga* on purpose, designedly, D 23; cf. *gangan*.

gangama غَنْغَمَر, to put up together, to mix; E 7 *agangama dukiansu* their goods shall be gathered together, *gangamawa*, F 88, pass. *ana kuma gangamawa* it is also joined together, *magangami*, confluence of rivers.

gangami غَنْغَمِي, a large drum (lit. gatherer); *yi gangamin azumi* to proclaim end of a fast.

gangan and *dagangan*, see *ganga*, *daganga*.

gangante غَنْغَنْتِي, to push into the water and drown.

gangara غَنْغَر or *gangari* غَنْغَرِي, to roll down, to jump down; pass. *agangari*, A 12, is rolled down (? dies).

gangarawa غَنْغَرَاوَا, rolling, F 153, 165.

gangare غَنْغَرِي, *gangara* غَنْغَرَا,

pl. *gangaru* غَنْغَرُو, 1. bent;

yi gangare to be bent; 2. a steep incline, declivity.

gangari, see *gangara*.

*gangaro** غَنْغَرُو, rolling down.

*gangawari** غَنْغَوَارِي, a herb supposed to be an aphrodisiac.

gan(n)i غَنْبِي, to see, to behold; frequently contracted to *ga* or *gan*. *gā-shi* behold him! *na ganshi* I saw him; cf. *gan(n)o*, *ganene*.

*gani** غَنْبِي, Ar. id., rich; F 14 *shi ne gani* he is rich.

ganna غَنْنَا, rampart; cf. *ganwa*.

*gan(n)o** غَنْو, to see; F 181 *su gano azaba* they shall see pain; cf. *gan(n)i*.

gansarwa غَنْسَوَا, i.q. seq.

gantseruwa غَنْطَرُوَا or *gancheruwa* غَنْشَرُوَا, hollow-backed.

ganwa غَنْوَا, pit, ditch, rampart or wall round a town; cf. *ganna*.

gara غَارَا (cf. Ar. غَار III, to trade), the small addition which the seller is expected to make to the value of the article sold by him on the completion of the purchase. When a man buys nuts or anything else in a small way, he gets his fifty or a hundred cowries worth and so many extra thrown in for luck; this addition is called the *gara*; *enna gara*=how much are you going to give me into the bargain?

gara غَار, it is better; *gara hakka* it is better so, *ni gara en tsaya* it is better for me to stop.

gara غَرَا, pl. *garani* غَرَانِي, termites (*termes bellicosus*), usually

known as white ants; *gara* is also used of ants generally; for description of habits of white ants cf. 'Hausaland,' pp. 160—164.

gara غَرَّ, *gára* غَار or *gera* غَرَّ, to prepare, to put a thing right, to arrange matters; *gara kaya* to get ready a 'load, *gara hainya* to prepare a way; *gerta*, q.v., is probably a secondary form of *gara*.

gára غَارَا, wife's marriage presents given to a bridegroom; *yi gára* to rejoice at a marriage.

garafini غَرَفِين or *garafunu* غَرَفُونُو, bitter plant, its leaves used in making sauce, fruit red.

garafunu, see *garafini*.

garaiya غَرَايَا, harp.

garaje غَرَاَجِي or *garazi** غَرَاَذِي, haste, hastening; D 36 *ku ber garaje ma dunia* leave off hastening after the things of the world.

garam(m)a غَرَامَا (cf. Ar. غَرَامَةٌ, debt, tax), money paid to a king for permission to travel.

*garam(m)a** غَرَامَا, *dan garam(m)a* threshold of door.

garara غَرَّرَا, one who has become blind after he has grown up; cf. *kishimi*.

gardawa, see *gardi*.

gardaye غَرْدَايِي, skilful, especially in war.

gardi or *gerdi* غَرْدِي, f. *gardia*

غَرْدِيَا, savoury, e.g. *gedda tana da gardi* the ground-nut has a fine flavour.

gardi or *gerdi* غَرْدِي, pl. *gardawa*

غَرْدَاوَا, a Hausa snake-charmer who begs, beggar; cf. *turdi*.

gare غَرِي, to, at, unto. Its use with pron. suffixes corresponds to that of *ga* with nouns. Used with them it expresses possession, like the modern Arabic *عندي*, thus *عندي* = *gareni* I have. In D 24 *gare* is used absolutely, the pronoun *shi* being understood, *ba makawa gare* he has no power of resistance. It is often preceded by *dagga*, *bissa* and *kusa*, *dagga gareni* from me, *kusa gareshi* near to him, *bissa garesa* upon it.

gare غَارِي, a cricket (?).

gare غَارِي, pl. *garuruka* غَارُرُوكَا, white tobe; cf. *girike*.

gargadi غَرْغَدِي, to warn, F 36, i. q. *gal'kadi*, q. v.

gargami غَرْغَمِي or *garkami* غَرْكَمِي, strong in war.

gargara غَرْغَرَا, to exceed in strength, to overpower; used like *fas-kara* or *buaye*, *ya gargareni* it is too much for me, = (?) *gagara*.

gargas(s)a غَرْغَسَا, pl. *gargas(s)u* غَرْغَسُو, a large fish with white scales below and red tail.

gari غَرِي, pl. *garurua* غَرُرُوَا

and *garigaru* غَرِغَرُو, 1. country, town, frequently used of a small town as contrasted with *birni* a large town; 2. sky, in the phrase *gari ya waye* the day dawns, lit. the place becomes light; *dunia ya waye* is used in the same way; 3. place.

Hence *gari(n)* غَرِنُ, to, in order to, e.g. *garin shan iska* in order to drink the air, i.e. to enjoy the fresh air, *ya taffi garin yawo* he has gone for a walk.

gari غَارِي, flour; *garin dorowa* meal made from the contents of the locust-tree pods.

*gari** غَارِي, a minute.

*garika** غَارِكَا, a cultivated piece of land.

garike غَرِكِي or *gerke* غَرِكِي, pl. *garikuna* غَرِكُنَا or *gerkuna*

غَرِكُنَا, 1. a place where cattle are kept by night, stall, fold; 2. flock, herd; cf. *girkeke*.

*garikine**, cavalry; cf. *garki*.

garimaka غَرِمَكَا or *garmaka* غَرِمَكَا, crested crane, i. q. *goraka*, q. v.

gario غَارِيُو, a missile knife, a kind of sword with three cutting blades used for throwing.

*gariwaji** غَرِوَجِي, strong in war.

gariwoya غَرِوِي, to mix, knead together; cf. *garwaya* and *darivoeye*.

garkami, strong in war; cf. *gar-gami*.

*garki** غَرِكِي or *garikine* غَرِكِينِي, cavalry with shields.

garkua or *gerkua* غَرِكُوَا, pl. *gariki* غَرِكِي, shield. For different kinds of shields cf. *kwungura*, *kutufani*, *kunkeli*.

garma غَرْمَا, a large hoe bent back like a small plough; cf. *galma*.

garmaka, crested crane; cf. *goraka*.

*garowa** غَارُوَا, fine male slave = *kato*.

garu غَرُو, a wall, a building = *katanga*.

garunfa or *garumfa* غَرُنْبَا, a straw hat; the word frequently occurs in the phrase *dangarunfa*, q. v. (cf. Kanuri, *dangarumba*), i.e. a trader who carries his goods upon his head.

garwashi غَرِوَاشِي, pl. *garwashoshi* غَرِوَاشِوشِي, cinders, burning charcoal; usually followed by *wuta*; cf. *gawoi*.

garwaya غَرِوِيَا, to unite closely; cf. C 20 note *mun garwaya* we will unite together (?); probably = *gariwoya*, q. v.

*gasa** غَسَا, rivalry, emulation = *kishi*.

gas(s)a غَسَسَا, to make a large fire; used with *gurasa* bread, to bake, to roast; *gassa hanu* to warm the hands.

gasashe غَسَّاشِي, f. *gasashia* غَسَّاشِيَا,

pl. *gasasu* غَسَّاسُو, 1. caught, of a fire; 2. roasted; cf. prec.

gas(s)e غَسْبِي, with *yi*, to refuse to keep a promise.

gashi غَاشِ, 1. hair or wool of men, sheep, etc.; 2. feathers of birds, *sabon gashi* = down; 3. a single hair, cf. F 144 *karamta taswa gashi* its path is like a single hair (cf. Fulah *gasa*).

gashi غَاشِ, i.e. *ga shi* behold it! a very common form of exclamation to attract attention to anything; *gashi wanan* look at this! cf. fem. form *gata*.

*gashi** غَاشِ, in the phrase *mugun gashi*, quarrelsomeness, bad disposition.

gashimare, clouds, etc.; cf. *gajimare*.

gaskanta, see seq.

gaskata غَسْكَتَ or *gaskanta* غَسْكَتَتْ, 1. to believe a fact; 2. to establish the truth of a thing, to assure a person of the reality of anything.

gaske غَسْبِي and *da gaske*, true, truly; cf. seq.

gaskia غَسْكِ يَا (in D 32 غَصْفِيَا), truth, certainty, trust, righteousness; *da gaskia* truly, certainly; *bada gaskia* or *yi gaskia* to believe, *ba gaskia* to speak the truth, used of a judge *ba* or *bada gaskia* = to acquit, *gaskia ne*

it is really so, *marasgaskia* = false. *bangaskia** بَنْغَسْكِ يَا, faith.

*gaslu** غَسْلُ, Ar. غَسْلُ, washing; F 90 *awonke ka fa gaslu zaman kushewa* thou art laved and washed for burial; cf. *gislinu*.

gata غَاتَا, pl. *gataye* غَاتَايِي, spy, sentinel, especially applied to a man on watch up a tree, or on a height.

*gata** غَاتَا, to be strong; cf. *gato* and (?) *kato*.

gata غَاتَا, in the phrase *dan gata*, 1. son of a rich man who has inherited wealth but has done no work; 2. anything much desired.

gata غَاتَا or *gatan biri*, large monkey (baboon ?), with red belly.

gata غَاتَا, the day after the day after to-morrow, the fourth day; cf. *chitta*.

*gata** غَتَتْ, this, in C 8 (?) *bida gata dunia* seeking after this world; probably a fem. form of *gashi* behold it!

*gatana** غَاتَنَا, tale = *tasunia*.

gátari غَاتَرِي, pl. *gátara* غَاتَرَا, *gátura* غَاتَرَا and *gátarua* غَاتَرُوَا, hatchet; *dan gátari* a small hatchet.

gato غَتُو, 1. buttock; *maigato* a fat man; 2. bottom, foundation, e.g. *gaton darni* bottom of a fence; cf. *gata* to be strong, also (?) *kato*.

*gatsa** غَطَا, stump, found in D 42 (?).

gaude غَوْدِي, small tree with red flowers, edible fruit and hard wood.

*garigata** غَوَّغَات, to hasten; cf. seq.

garigawa غَوَّغَاو, to hasten, to be in a hurry.

gauraka crested crane; cf. *goraka*.

gaushi غَوْش or *gausi* غَوْسِي, brittleness, rottenness.

gauta غَوْتَا, pl. *gautaye* غَوْتَابِي, a plant closely resembling a tomato, of a bushy growth, its fruit has a bitter taste.

gawa غَاوَا, pl. *gawarweki* غَاوَابِنِكِي, corpse, also used as a collective, C 6.

garwasa غَاوَسَا, pl. *garwasai* غَاوَسِي, *garwasuna* غَاوَسُونَا and *garwasoshi* غَاوَسُوشِي, a sort of plum or stone fruit, brought from the east, not grown in Hausaland.

gawo غَاوُو, pl. *gawake* غَاوَكِي, a large tree, rain accumulates underneath it during the rainy season. It is planted near houses for the purpose of obtaining water during the dry season by digging under it. Its wood is red, its berries white; the leaves, which are eaten by goats and cattle, fall off during the dry season.

gawoi غَاوِي, pl. *gawaye* غَاوَيِي, char-

coal, not burning charcoal, for which cf. *garwashi*, F 207.

gaya غَايَا, to reveal, to make manifest or known; *ka gaya mani* explain to me.

gaya غَايَا, alliance, e.g. between two kings.

*gaya** غَايَا, dough (= *dirgaza*), anything raw or uncooked.

*gaya** غَايَا, evil.

gayara غَايَرَا, fatigued.

gayya غَايَا, 1. assembly, crowd of people; 2. to assemble.

*gaza** غَاذَا, cf. Ar. rt غَذُو, to have strength, to be able; *ban gaze ba* I cannot do this; cf. *gazawa*.

*gazara** غَاذَرَا, a reed from which arrows are made; cf. *kemru*.

*gazawa** غَاذَاوَا, strength; F 15 *shine aziza da bai gazawa* He is mighty and gives strength, F 187 *sunu kuka enna mai-gazawa* (?) they cry out, where is any helper? cf. *mai-gazawa*.

*gazo** غَاذُو, cf. *da gazo*, strong.

geasa, to belch; cf. *gesa*.

*gearuga** غَاوَعَا, playing, play.

gebe غَايَبِي, small pond, small running stream; cf. *gibi*.

*geche** غَايَبِي, in the phrase *gechen kogi* bank of a river.

ged(d)a غَاذَا, غَاذَا, to wag the head, to beckon, especially in phrase *gedda kai*, probably a corruption of *kada kai* to assent; cf. *karuda kai* to dissent.

ged(d)a غَدَا، غَدَا، arachis hypogæa, ground nut, monkey-nut, the oil obtained from it (*main gedda*) is used for food and for lamps in Hausaland and is very largely exported; it is obtained by expression with heat, and is of a light yellowish colour; cf. *guchia*.

ged(d)uwa غَدُوَا، غَدُوَا، a disease which causes the fingers and toes to fall off; *maiged(d)uwa* a man who has lost a finger or toe from this disease; cf. 'Hausaland,' p. 152; probably from Ar. غَدَّةٌ, scrofula.

gefe غَبِي، غَبِي، bank of a river, B 150.

geftu غَبْتُو، girdle, used by women; *dan geftu* id.

gembo غَبْبُو، pl. *gembuna* غَبْبِنَا، ulcer on body.

geme غَمْبِي، pl. *gem(m)a* غَمَا، beard; *maigeme* a bearded man.

gendi غَنْدِي، غَنْدِي، f. *gendia* غَنْدِيَا، a strong, muscular, fat person.

genged(d)i غَنْغِدِي، 1. to feel sleepy, to be overcome by sleepiness; 2. sleepiness.

*gen(n)o** غَنُو، a large foul-smelling ant.

gera, to prepare; cf. *gára*.

gera غَيْرَا، *gira* غَيْرَا or *giro* غَيْرُو، pl. *gerare* غَيْرَارِي، *girori* غَيْرُورِي، eye-brow; cf. *gira*.

gerdama غَرْدَمَا، 1. dispute, denial,

a dispute in which something is denied; *yi gerdama* to dispute, deny; 2. A 37, stingingness (?).

gerdama غَرْدَمَر، to dispute, deny.

gerdawa, snake-charmers; cf. *gardi*.

gerdi, savoury; cf. *gardi*.

gerke, fold; cf. *garike*.

gerkua, shield; cf. *garkua*.

géro غِرُو، 1. a grain like guinea corn, it grows to the height of about eight feet (= pennisetum typhoideum?); 2. a drink made from milk, rice and honey.

gerta غَرْت، 1. to mend, repair, improve; 2. generally, to make ready, prepare, to comb (the hair); cf. *gára*.

gertache غَرْتَاتِي، f. *gertata* غَرْتَاتَا، pl. *gertatu* غَرْتَاتُو، adorned, garnished, cleaned, dressed.

gertawa غَرْتَاوَا، particip. form of *gerta*, mending, etc.

gesa غَسَس، *geasa* غِيَّاس، to belch.

*geti** غَبْتِي، stinging.

get(t)o غَطُو، cf. Ar. غَطِي، 1. hollow; used in the phrase *getton kune* the hollow behind the ear; 2. the perineum; 3. = *guzu*, q.v.

gewoye, around; cf. *kewoye*.

geza غَزَا، pl. *gezuna* غَزُنَا، 1. ear of corn, rice or wheat; 2. used of a horse, lion, etc. = mane.

gia غِيَا، an intoxicating drink; cf. *giya*.

gibi غیبی, 1. tooth-gaping, applied to men who have lost two teeth; 2. in the phrase *ya yi gibi* it overflows, used of rivers, a cup, etc.; cf. *gebe*.

giche غِشِي or *gichi* غِشِي, 1. to overthrow; B 142 *tana rikichi wawa giche* it deceives and overthrows the fool; 2. stretched out; B 118 *ta sainya mutum gichi* it causes a man to lie stretched out (in the grave); cf. (?) *gigichi*.

gid(d)a غِدَا, pl. *gid(d)aje* غِدَاجِي; *gid(d)ashe* غِدَاشِي or *gidadaji**

غِدَدَجِي D 77, 1. house, dwelling, premises. *gidda* includes the whole compound which may consist of more than one house (*daki*); *giddan chira* house of escape, refuge, e.g. house of king, *galladima*, etc.; *giddan gobe*, B 27 *hakka fa dunia da giddan gobe* so, too, earth and the next world, lit. house of to-morrow; *giddan wasa* theatre; 2. household, 3. receptacle, used of cases, covers, etc., as *giddan alura* needle-case, *giddan kibia* = quiver, *giddan zumua* beehive.

gidibi غِدِب or *kidibi* كِدِب, pl.

gidiba غِدِبَا or *kidiba* كِدِبَا (cf. Ar. كِبِد, liver), kidney = *kwoda*.

giger غِغِر, leg-irons = *malwa*.

*gigi** غِغِي, being toothless; cf. *gibi*.

gigi, cf. seq.

gigiche غِغِشِي or *gigi* غِغِي, 1. to fail to understand, 2. to be wanting in sense, 3. to scatter.

gigin(i)a غِغِينَا, pl. *gigangani* غِغِنُوبِي or *giginai* غِغِينِي, fan or *deleb* palm, the fruit (= *kurdugo*) is white inside with red skin, the leaves are used for making hats, mats, etc.; cf. *murichi*.

gigita غِغِيْت, 1. to be giddy; cf. *gigichi*, 2. غِغِيْمَا, giddiness, vertigo.

gilgiji غِلْغِجِي or *girgiji* غِرْغِجِي, cloud, moving cloud as opposed to *lumahi*, q.v., a still cloud.

gilgiza غِلْغِزَا or *girgiza* غِرْغِزَا, to shake.

gilgizaze غِلْغِزَاذِي, f. *gilgizazia* غِلْغِزَاذِيَا, pl. *gilgizazu* غِلْغِزَاذُو, shaken.

gilma غِلْم, to cross, to walk across.

*gilme** غِلْمِي, pl. *gilmomi* غِلْمُومِي or *gilnomi* غِلْنُومِي, cross; *gilmen itache** wooden cross.

gimba غِنْبَا, pl. *gimbayi* غِنْبَايِي, 1. large white seed used as a bead = (?) *kimba*, q.v., 2. the young son of a king.

*gimi** غِمِر, a little village.

*gimshi** غَمَش, name of a large, shady tree.

gimshiki غَمَشِكِي or *gumshiki* غَمَشِكِي, pillar, middle supporting pole of house.

gina غِن, to dig, to build; used of roads, to build, construct.

ginane غِنَانِي, cf. prec., built.

ginania, cf. seq.

ginaria غِنَارِيَا or *ginania* غِنَانِيَا, rain during heavy storm, storm; cf. *zirnania*.

gindi غِنْدِي, 1. the small of back, 2. rope tying a horse's leg to a post; cf. *dabebeyi* and *tarnaki*.

gini غِين, name of large fish from which oil for eating is obtained.

gira, pl. *girori*, eyebrow; cf. *gera*.

girbi غِرْبِي or *giribi* غِرْبِي, to cut down harvest, to reap.

girgiza, to shake; cf. *gilgiza*.

girigiji غِرْجِجِي, cloud; cf. *gilgiji*.

girike غِرْكِي, white robe; cf. *gare*.

girima غِرْم, to grow, to become large.

girima غِرْمَا, great, large; *mai-girima* a proud or important person. *yi girima* = prec., cf. *girma*.

girje, scab; cf. *kurji*.

girke غِرْكِي, to cook by blowing underneath a pot

placed on the fire, *girkin tukumya*, A 84.

girkeks غِرْكِكِي, f. *girkekia* غِرْكِكِيَا, pl. *girkeku* غِرْكِكُو, closed, fastened; cf. *garike*.

*girku** غِرْكُو, to remain (?); D 86 *ya yi tatali don shi girku shi zamna dunia* he makes preparation that he may remain and continue in this world.

girma غِرْمَا, 1. greatness; F 22 *fa girman naka tsoron mai-yawa* let the fear of the Almighty be thy greatness; 2. glory (in heaven), D 62 *rana nan da manmaza kun samu girma* on that day you shall speedily obtain heaven; cf. proverb *sai da rai asamu girma* greatness will not outlast death, *bada girma* (or *girima*) to render honour to.

girmama غِرْمَمَا, to honour.

girmama غِرْمَمَا, greatness; F 22 *ka ber bidan fa girmamaka* leave off seeking after thine own greatness.

girmankai غِرْمَنْكِي, pride E 25; *masugirmankai* proud F 167.

giro, eyebrow; cf. *gera*.

*gis(s)ago** غِسْعُو, a tool with a crooked handle used for stripping leaves off trees.

gishiri غِشِيرِي, salt (about half the salt in Hausaland is imported by way of the R. Niger, the

rest is brought from the Sahara).

*giḥlinu** غِھلین, Ar. غِھلین, putrid matter, F 196 n. From same Ar. root *gaslu* washing is derived.

giṣso, spider; cf. *giz(z)o*.

giwa غِوَا, pl. *giwaye* غِوَايِی, elephant; *toron giwa* male elephant, for fem. cf. *tagua*. *hakkorin giwa* or *hawrin giwa* elephant's teeth, ivory.

giwakamba, medicine for the eyes; cf. *dawa*.

giwaya غِوَايِی or *jiwaya* جِوَايِی, to go round a thing in order to examine it, to gaze at, to look on at. Possibly only another form of *kewoye*.

giya غِیَا, an intoxicating drink made by soaking guinea corn in water for three days till it begins to sprout, it is then beaten and boiled; cf. D 10.

*gizgari** غِزْغَرِی, strong warrior.

giz(z)o غِزْذُو, often pronounced *giṣso*, spider, used as emblem of envy and jealousy. *bakan gizzo* the rainbow.

giz(z)o غِزْذُو, fear, used in the phrase *ya yi gizzo* = *ya ji tsoro*.

giz(z)o غِزْذُو, an abundance of long hair on the head in the fashion of the Asbenawa (Tuaregs) or the itinerant snake-charmers (*gardawa*).

goasa غُوسَا, sweet-smelling fruit of a tree.

gobara غُوبَرَا, Ar. عَبْرٌ, 1. conflagration; 2. ruins left after a conflagration; 3. pain, torment, cf. B 12 *ko gobara ba yita don bannai* even the torment (of hell) is not equally harmful.

gobdodo, bush; cf. *kobdodo*.

gobdua, yolk of egg; cf. *kobdua*.

gobe غُوبِی, 1. the morrow, to-morrow; *sai gobe* a parting salutation = till we meet again to-morrow; 2. used to qualify nouns of time, as week, month, etc. = next, proximo, e.g. *watan gobe* next month; 3. the last day, the judgment day; B 87 *wanda ke shiri domin gobe* who is making preparation for the last day; adverbially, D 20 *idan haka yi gobe anadubu nadama* if this be done, on the resurrection day your repentance will be seen; *ranan gobe* the last day; B 11, 140 *ran gobe* id.; *gidan gobe* B 27, 125 the next world; cf. *mai-gobe*, B 3 note.

gobir غُوبِرُ, pr. name of a large district in Hausaland.

gobro, fem. *gobrua*, 1. bachelor, spinster; cf. *goro**, *gorua**; 2*. used of a bad kola nut that has gone black; cf. *goro*.

*gobso**, bachelor; cf. *goro**.

goburi, also *gobre*, to dash together; cf. *gumberi*.

gochema **غوٲما**, to make to fall, B 147; cf. seq.

gochi **غوٲى** and *goche* **غوٲى**, 1. to turn off from the way, to pass anyone on the path, to lose the way; 2. to be out of joint; 3. to knock against.

gochia or *guchia* **غوٲيا**, avoidance, of a missile, etc.

god(d)a **غَد**, to weigh, to measure.

god(d)a **غَد**, or *goda* **غودا**, to show, to point out; cf. C 17 *shi kan*

goda muna takitaki dunia he would show to us the course of the world; cf. *god(d)u*.

god(d)a **غَدَا**, pl. *god(d)odi* **غُدودى**, a deer with dark skin, smaller than the *barewa*; cf. *karan-god(d)a*.

*godawa** **غودوا**, joint, section.

gode **غودى**, Kanuri id., to thank, give thanks to, constr. with acc. and also with prep. *ma*; *na gode maka* thank you; the word is, however, chiefly used of thanksgiving to God, as in E 2 *mu gode ubangiji sarki sarota*, F 2 *mu gode jalla sarki maiiyawa*, F 256 *na gode ma allah*.

*gode** **غودى**, a thorny creeper.

godia **غوديا**, thanks, C 49; D 100 *muna godia zua ga allah*; cf. D 101 *muna godia don muhammad* we give thanks on account of Mohammed, *yi godia* to give thanks.

godia **غوديا**, mare, used as fem. of *doki*.

god(d)o **غُدو**, a coarse white cloth.

godobe **غُدوبى**, broad road = *rimdi*.

god(d)u **غُدو**, intr. and reflex. form of *god(d)a*, to appear, make oneself known to.

gofi **غوب**, the notch in an arrow fitting the bowstring.

gogali **غوغل**, mixture of nuts, beans, etc.

*gogara**, boastful warrior; cf. *gugara*, *gugirma*.

goge **غوغى**, a stick for a musical instrument resembling a violin; cf. seq.

gogi **غوغى** or *goge* **غوغى**, to scrape, polish, clean.

gogo **غوغو**, baboon (gorilla ?); cf. *bika*, *gata*.

*gogo** **غوغو**, Fulah id., aunt, father's sister.

goguware **غوغورى**, a small lizard, with black head; its bite is said to cause leprosy; cf. *kutu*.

goi, charcoal; cf. *garwoi*.

goiwa **غيووا**, elephantiasis in a man; cf. *kuikui*.

goiya **غيا**, a child carried on the back. Infants are always carried thus in Hausaland, bound to the mother by a fold of cloth; B 116 *ba shi mutu goiya ba* does not an infant die?

goiyo or *goyo* **غيو**, 1. to tie up

together; to bear in the ear, as corn, etc.; 2. *yi goiyo* to give suck to.

goji **غُوج**, a kind of pumpkin that grows on a house; cf. *kabiewa*. *gojia*, ground nut; cf. *guchia*.

golgota **غُلُغْدَا** or *gorgoda* **غُرُغْدَا**, to measure, to compare by measuring; cf. *golgota*.

golgodawa **غُلُغْدَاوَا** or *gorgodawa* **غُرُغْدَاوَا**, participial form from preceding.

golgota **غُلُغْدُ** or *gorgoda* **غُرُغْدُ**, measure; cf. D 25 *kowa shi samu golgodusa* every man shall receive his measure (of reward); used also adverbially with suffixed pronouns, e.g. A 3 *ka yi gorgodonka na kokari* make what attempt thou canst, lit. do thy measure of attempt.

*goma** **غُومَا**, good, applied to women only.

goma **غُومَا**, card. number, ten; used with particle *sha* and the units to form numbers eleven to nineteen, *goma sha daia* **شَادَايَا** eleven, *goma sha biu* twelve, etc. *gomia* **غُوميَا** a plural form of *goma* is sometimes used to express the decades above ten; thus *gomia biu* would = twenty, *gomia uku* thirty. This was probably the original Hausa method of counting large numbers before they borrowed Arabic numerals. With ellipsis of *goma*,

sha daia = eleven, *sha biu* twelve, etc.

*gom(m)i** **غُمِر**, a club or heavy stick.

gomdazaki **غُمْدَاكِي**, 1. eagle (?):

2. followed by *tamraro* = morning star in harvest time, probably a in constellation Aquila.

gomraka, see *goraka*.

gona **غُونَا**, **غُنَا**, pl. *gonaki* **غُونَكِي**,

1. farm, cultivated field; 2. fig. fosterer; B 109 *dunia gonal chiuta* the world is the nurturer of sickness; *maigona* = farmer.

gonda **غُنْدَا**, often pronounced *gwanda* (carica papaya), pawpaw tree or fruit. The leaves and fruit are greatly valued by the Hausas. A piece of tough meat wrapped in a pawpaw leaf becomes tender in half an hour. The same result is produced by placing a piece of the fruit in the cooking pot. The fruit resembles a melon and is bright red inside.

*gondo** **غُنْدُو**, a fish resembling an eel.

gondo **غُنْدُو**, name of district in the hinterland of the Gold Coast whence the Hausas import their favourite kola nut.

*gongola** **غُنْغَلَا**, a kind of rafter.

gon(n)i **غُنِّي**, pl. *gon(n)ai* **غُنِّيَايَا**, clever, skilful, expert; as adv. cleverly, skilfully, expertly.

goni **غُونِي**, **غُونِي**, profession, occupation, skill, art; cf. seq.

*gon(n)inta** غَنْتَا, cleverness.

gonki غَنْكِي, a large deer or antelope.

gora غَوْرَا, *غَوْرِي*, pl. *gororo* غَوْرُوْرُو and *gorina* غَوْرِيْنَا, 1. cane, reed; 2. arrow.

gora غَوْرَا, pl. *gorina* غَوْرِيْنَا, calabash, cup; probably identical with *kworia*, q. v.

gora غَوْرَا, used in the phrase *goran hanchi* bridge of the nose.

goraka غَوْرَاكَا, *gauraka* غَوْرَاكَا, *garmaka* غَرْمَاكَا, *gamraka* غَمْرَاكَا or *gomraka* غَمْرَاكَا, balearica pavonina, crested crane; a large bird with golden crest, the spread of its wings is over six feet, its breast is white; cf. 'Hausaland,' p. 241.

*goraya** غَوْرِي, to box, to fight.

goreba, dum palm; cf. *goriba*.

gorgodo, measure; cf. *golgodo*.

gorgunguma غَرْغَنْغَمَا, a large black beetle with long legs.

*goria** غَوْرِيَا, a large goro-nut.

goriba غَوْرِيْبَا or *goreba* غَوْرِيْبَا, pl.

goribai غَوْرِيْبِي and *goribobi*

غَوْرِيْبُوْبِي, crucifera thebaica, the dum palm, mats, fans, etc. made from its fibre.

gorje or *gurje* غَرْجِي, 1. large, buzzing horse-fly; 2*. small bell on horses, etc.

goro غَوْرُو, pl. *gwurra** (*urr* pronounced as in English currier),

غَرَا, the kola nut, the fruit of the *sterculia acuminata*, found in the greatest perfection in the hinterland of the Gold Coast Colony. The nut, which is the size of a large chestnut and of brick-red colour, has a bitter taste somewhat similar to quinine, and is chewed by the Hausas as a stimulant, and enables them to go for a long time without food; cf. 'Hausaland,' pp. 95—117. *namijin goro* is a small white kind of goro-nut used as a medicine. To the salutation *albishirinka* (lit. your news?) the answer is *goro*.

*goro** غَوْرُو or *gobro* غَبْرُو or *gobso** غَبْسُو, bachelor.

gorua غَوْرُوَا or *gobrua* غَبْرُوَا, a virgin; cf. *gora* in Fulah = husband; cf. prec.

gorzo غَرْدُو, 1. strong, muscular person; 2. husband; C 50 *gorzo nan hadijatu* the husband of Hadija.

goshi غَوْشِي, forehead, brow, front;

B 51 *ku sainya lahiralka gaban goshi* place the next world before your forehead.

goyo, to tie up together, give suck, etc.; cf. *goiy*.

goza, sweet potato; cf. *gwaza*.

gu, always with connective *n*, pronounced *m* before *b*, *gun* غُن = *wuri*, 1. with, at, in; *gunchan* = *wurichan*, C 33 *gun*

- wuya* by the neck, B 111 *gun duniana* in this world, B 155 *gun mallamai* with the Mal-lams; preceded by *har* = *har ga*, A 25 *dagga kasua har gum buki* from the market unto a marriage feast; 2* = *gurubin*, instead of, for.
- guba* غُبَا, 1. a poisonous plant, B 14; 2. a mixture of dead flesh and *adua* tree eaten as a preventive charm against injury in battle, etc.; 3. a thing which has died of itself; cf. Ar. غَابَةٌ.
- gubchi* غُبْشِي or *gache* غَبْشِي, 1. to slip, to slip into; 2. applied to the well, to fall in; cf. *kubche*.
- gub(b)*و غُبُو, back teeth.
- gubri*, to knock against; cf. *gum-beri*.
- guchia* غُشِيَا or *gujia* or *gojia* غُجِيَا, pl. *gujeye* غُجِيِي (cf. Ar. جَوْز, Pers. *gauz* nut), a species of small ground nut, not the nut from which oil is obtained (cf. *gedda*), it is largely used for food.
- guchia*, avoidance of a missile, etc.; cf. *gochia*.
- guda* غُدَا, number, times; *guda nawa* = how many? Used with numerals as *guda uku* three in number; also with the force of our numeral ad-verbs, as *guda uku* three times, thrice; in phrases, *guda kanena* my only brother; B 25 *shi do guda guda ta tsire* let him try to take one, the other flees away.
- guda** غُدَا, full stop; connected with preceding.
- guda* غُدَا or *gudu* غُدُو, shout, acclamation, crying out for joy; cf. (?) *gada*.
- guda** غُدَا, circle, orb; D 64 (?).
- gudaje** غُدَاجِي, pl. in the phrase *gudajen zumua* the young of bees; distinct in meaning from *kudaje*, q.v.
- gudana* غُدَن, a form of *gudu* to run.
- gudawa* غُدَوَا, diarrhoea; cf. *gudun-daji*.
- gudu*, a crying out for joy; cf. *guda*.
- gudumai*, a club; cf. *gundumai*.
- gudu* غُدُو, غُد, to run away, to make one's escape; cf. *gudana*, *guje*.
- gudunmawa* غُدُنْمَوَا, help, assistance, especially in war.
- guchundaji* غُحُنْدَاج, an expression for diarrhoea or dysentery; v. *gudawa*.
- gufa* غُوبَا or *gufata* غُفَتَا, large grass basket or pannier.
- guf(f)aka* غُفَكَا, leathern case for holding a book.
- gufata*, basket; cf. *gufa*.
- guga* غُوغَا, pl. *guguna* غُوغُنَا, bucket, skin used for drawing water from well.
- gugana** غُوغَن, formed from pre-

ceding = *jan rua* to draw water.

*gugara** غُغْرَا or *gugari** غُغْرِي, a mighty man; *kai gugari* thou mighty one! used in exclamations.

*gugi** غُوغ, pl. *gugui* غُوغِي, swelling in front of a man's body; cf. *kukui*.

gugi, a large quantity; cf. *gugu*.

*gugirma** غُوغْرِمَا, boaster in war; cf. *gogara*.

gugu غُوغُو or *gugi* غُوغِي, large quantity, much; *ba shi da gugu* he has but little; *gugin rairai* much sand.

gugua غُوغُوَا, also pronounced *gugwa* a whirlwind, whirling dust.

guiba or *guiba* غُيْبَا or *guibi* غُيْبِي, dirt, muddy water, dregs; D 57 *maimakara ba shi sha rua ba sai na guiba* he who is late shall have nothing but muddy water to drink.

guiwa غُيْوَا, pl. *guiwaye* غُيْوَابِي and *guiwoye* غُيْوَوِي, knee; *guiwan hanu* elbow.

*guje** غُجِي, a form of *gudu* to run away, to flee; cf. *maguje*.

*gujeje** غُجْجِي, fugitive, vagabond, runaway slave.

gujia, ground nut; cf. *guchia*.

gulbi غُلْبِي, pl. *gulabe* غُلَابِي, river, any large amount of water in

a deep place; *gulbin ido* the socket of the eye.

gulgudu غُلْغُدُو, measure; cf. *gol-godo*.

gulgusa, to move back; cf. *gusa*.

*gululu** غُلُول (cf. Ar. غَلَّ, to embezzle), the embezzling of booty; E 9, F 205 *fa masu-halal ta gululu kafirai ne* and those who regard embezzling as lawful are heathen.

*guma** غُمَا, used like *gara* to express superiority, as *gara hakka*, *guma hakka* it is better so.

*gum(m)a** غُمَا, finish; cf. *gama*.

gumagumai غُمُغُمِي, stumps, pl. of *gungume*, q.v.

*gumasakawa** غُمَسَكَا or *gumskarwa* غُمَسَكَا, place where anything is stored.

gumba غُمْبَا, mixture composed of rice, milk and honey.

gumberi غُمْبَرِي, *guburi* غُوبُورِي or *gobre* غُوبُرِي, to knock against, e.g. the arm against a wall, to dash together.

gumbo غُمْبُو, the next child born after the birth of twins *tuguaye*.

gum(m)i غُمِي, abusive language, abuse.

gum(m)i غُمِي (Ar. غَمَّ, to oppress with stifling heat, of the day), 1. heat of the sun, 2. perspiration = *zufa*.

gumji غُمْجِي or *ganji* غَمْجِي, a tree

from which india-rubber is obtained, *Landolphia* (?); *dankon gumji* = india-rubber.
gumki غَمِك or *gamki* غَمِك, pl. *gumakai* غَمِكِي, 1. idol, graven image; 2. place of torment for unbelievers.
*gumki** غَمِكِي, a title given to a learned man or mallam.
gum(m)o غُمُو, the cloth worn by porters on the head.
*gumsakawa**, store-place; cf. *gumasakawa*.
gumshe, to meet, etc.; cf. *gamshe*.
*gumsheka** غُمَشِكَا, 1. species of snake, ten feet long, black, with red neck, poisonous; 2. epithet applied to a warrior.
gumshiki, pole; cf. *gimshiki*.
gun غُن, cf. *gu*.
gunaguni غُنْغُنِي, to grumble, to murmur; *yi gunaguni* id., cf. (?) *guri*.
*gunda** غُنْدَا (prodotiscus ?), honey-guide bird.
gunda غُنْدَا, 1. edible bark of a tree; 2. strips of leather.
gunda غُنْد, to bud, also in phrase *yi gunda* id., used e.g. of a melon *kabewa ta yi gunda* it sprouts.
gundu, tribute, i.q. *gandu*, q.v.
gundumai غُنْدُمِي or *gudumai* غُدُمِي, clubs, D 41.
gungama غُنْغَامَا, warrior.
*gungu** غُنْغُو, pl. *gunguna* غُنْغُنَا, island; the word is probably

borrowed from the Songai language.

gungume غُنْغُمِي, pl. *gumagumai* غُمُغُمِي, stump of a tree after it is cut down.

*gunsul** غُنْسُل, a Moorish corruption of Consul, commonly used by the Hausas in N. Africa.

guntsari غُنْطَرِي, curds of milk which have become sour.

guntu غُنْتُو, in the phrase *guntun abu*, small remainder or fragment of a thing, a small piece cut off.

*gunzu** غُنْزُو, field mouse.

guragu غُرْغُو or *gurgu* غُرْغُو, pl.

guragu غُرْأُو, 1. halt, lame; E36 *guragunmu* our lame ones; 2. with bent legs; 3. without legs.

*gurara** غُرَارَا, Ar. غِرَارَةٌ, a large sack for oxen or camels.

gurasa غُرْصَا, Ar. فُرْصَةٌ, bread; usually confined to wheaten bread, which is only made in the northern parts of Hausaland, red pepper being one of the principal ingredients; *kurdin gurasa* a phrase used in asking alms.

*gurawa** غُرْوَا, foreigners.

gurbache غُرْبَائِي, to be destroyed, to disappear; B 93 *gabbas da yamma zata ta gurbache* the east and west will disappear, B 100 *en ka ga zamani yaqur-*

bache as thou seest that this world will be destroyed.
gurgu, lame; cf. *guragu*.
gurgunchi, halting; cf. *gurugunta*.
gurgunta, halting; cf. *gurugunta*.
guri غُورِي, 1. pride, lust, evil desire; *ya yi magana da guri* he talks proudly; 2. wish; B 119, F 246, B 64 *ba duka guri kan ruska* thou receivest not everything that thou wishest for.
guri غُورِي, 1. to grumble, to groan; also *yin guri* id., cf. (?) *gunaguni*; 2. to entertain some bad design, to desire, to wish for, to be proud, to boast; cf. prec.
guribi غُرِبِ, nest.
*guriguri** غُرْغُرِي, evil, D 61; cf. *guri*.
*guriguri** غُرْغُرِي, Fulah *gorgoro*, a horse-soldier.
gurimi, a musical instrument; cf. *gurumi*.
gurjago, a file; cf. *gurzago*.
*gurje**, small bell; cf. *gorje*.
gurje, scab; cf. *kurji*.
gurjia غُرْجِيَا, a large tree, the bark of which is used for staining the teeth.
gurmunta, halting; cf. *gurgunta*.
gursuna غُرْسُنَا or *gurusunu* غُرْسُنُو (Fulah id.), hogs, also applied to domestic pig; cf. *hanzir*.
*guru** غُرُو, girdle of rope made of grass or fibre.

gurubin غُرْبِين, instead of, *gurbinsa* in his place; cf. *gu* (2).
gurufani غُرْفَانِي, to kneel down, to bow down, to prostrate oneself; *yi gurufani* id.
gurugunta غُرُّغُنْتَا, *gurmunta* غُرْمُنْتَا or *gurgunchi* غُرْغُنْثِ, halting; *yi gurugunta* to halt.
gurugusa, to move away from; cf. *gusa*.
gurugushe غُرُّغُشِي, to move from or towards a place.
guruguso, to move towards; cf. *guso*.
gurumfa غُرْمَفَا, hat made of straw; i.q. *garumfa*, q.v.
gurumi غُرْمِي or *gurimi* غُرْمِي, found in the expression *gurumin kiddi* a musical instrument resembling a guitar.
*gurunguntsi** غُرْنُغْنَطِي, gristle.
*gurus** غُرُسْ (cf. Ar. فُرُش, pl. فُرُش, piastre), small money as used in N. Africa.
gurusunu, hogs; cf. *gursuna*.
*gurzago** غُرْزَغُو or *gurjago* غُرْجَغُو, a file; cf. (?) *gis(s)ago*.
gusa غُسْ or *gulgusa* غُلْغُسْ or *gurugusa* غُرُّغُسْ, to move a little way back, to rise up, to withdraw from. *gusawa* غُسَوَا, participial form of prec., moving a little away. *guso* غُرْسُو or *guruguso* غُرْغُسُو, to move a little way forward, to

- draw towards a person; cf. *gurugushe*.
- gushagushi* غُشَغِشْ, a sort of itching disease which attacks the roots of the toes or fingers; cf. *gurje*.
- gushe gushe** غُشَغِشِي, to gush out abundantly.
- gusu** bottom; cf. *guzu*.
- gusum* غُسُم, south; cf. (?) *guru*.
- gusumchi* غُسُمِثْ, towards the south.
- guwa* غُوَا, water, a sip of water; D 66 *rana na akannemi guwa* on that day a little drinking water shall be sought for; phrases *ina da guwa* there is a little water, *guwa sai ya reggi* the water decreases.
- guza** غُزَا, species of iguana about one foot in length.
- guzu* غُزُو or *gusu** غُسُو, 1. bottom; *guzun itache* stump of a tree; 2. fig. cause, *kada abi guzunsa* let not its cause be traced, meaning, *minene guzunsa?* what is its meaning? 3. matrix.
- guzuma* غُزُمَا, 1. lean; 2. an old lean goat, cow or horse; also applied to women in the same sense.
- guzura* غُزُرَا, pl. *guzure* غُزُرِي, 1. small piece, crumb or fragment; 2. the remaining piece after cloth has been measured out; cf. *seq*.
- guzura* غُزُرَا, to take a pinch of.
- guzuri* غُزُرِي, provisions for a journey; *yi guzuri* to make provision, E34 *idan muna tashi mu yi guzuri da asna* if we start, we obtain provision for the journey from the heathen.
- gwabi* غُوَابِ, n. fat; *da gwabi* or *maigwabi*, adj., fat.
- gwamatsi** غُوَامِطْ, draw near to; B 15 *ku yan uwa ku gwamatsi mallamai* you, my brethren, draw near to the Mallams.
- gwami* غُوَامِ, 1. lameness, a bent leg; 2. bandy-legged, f. *gwamia* غُوَامِيَا; *maigwami* id.
- gwana** غُوَانَا or *gwano* غُوَانُو, a stinking beetle.
- gwanda**, pawpaw; cf. *gonda*.
- gwari* غُوَرِي, name of a large town about fifty miles west of Zaria, v. 'Spec. Haus.,' p. 104 n.
- gwaska* غُوَسَكَا, an ordeal by water given to slaves only.
- gwaza* غُوَذَا or *goza* غُوَذَا, pl. *gwazuna* غُوَذُنَا and *gwazoyi* غُوَذُوِي, a kind of sweet potato.
- gwiba*, dirt; cf. *guiba*.
- gwinki** غُوِنِكِ, oak, terebinth.
- gwiva*, knee; cf. *guiwa*.
- gwumki** غُومِكِي, a large animal with four horns.

h, *h̄*, *h̅*. There is no uniform distinction of sound made by the Hausas between ح *h* and ه *h̄*. These are in fact interchanged in the spelling of the same word. As a general rule Hausa words unconnected with Arabic do not contain the letter ه *h̄*. The letter ح *h* only occurs in words connected with Semitic roots. In the case of those recently borrowed the sound of ح *h* is that of the harsh Arabic guttural *ch* or *kh*; in other cases, e.g. *haifua*, its sound approximates to that of *h* and *h̄*. In the case of certain words taken from Arabic the *h̄* may change into *h* or may disappear altogether; cf. Ar. *hasratun* حَسْرَةٌ, Hausa *hasára* حَسَار, and *asára* أَسَارًا, and *tasári* تَسَار. The sound *h* is sometimes interchanged with that of *f* and *b*; cf. *huda*, *fuda*; *halbe*, *balle*. In some cases the sound of the *h* is very uncertain; cf. *iska* or *hiska* wind, *achi* or *hachi* corn; in *halama* *h* represents Ar. ع.

haba حَبَا or *hubba* حُبَّا, exclamatory particle expressing astonishment, indignation, incredulity or denial.

haba حَبَا, pl. *habobi* حَبُوبِي, chin; A 6 *shi tada haba yi jaki berbera* he would lift up his chin and bray like an ass.

habaichi حَبَيْتِ, pl. *habaitai* حَبَيْتِي, 1. abuse; *yin habaichi* to abuse behind one's back; 2. signs between two men understood by them but not by spectators.

*habaki** حَبَكْ, pl. *habaka* حَبَكَا, cf. Ar. حَبَاكْ, cloud; B 169 *habakal kamshi* clouds of incense.

*habama** حَبَمِي, to expand as boiling water, D 65 (?).

*habe** حَبِي, aboriginal tribes.

*haberta** حَبَرْتْ, Ar. حَبَّرَ, 1. to explain, declare, publish; 2. to warn. *habertawa** حَبَرْتَوَا, declaration, warning. The commoner form is *laberta*, q. v.

habki حَبِكْ, wild onion or leek.

hab(b)o حَبُو, bleeding from the nose.

habri حَبْرِي or *harbi* حَرْبِي, to kick, used of a horse; cf. *harbi*. *habshi* to bark; cf. *hafshi*.

hachi حَاشِي or *hatsi* حَطِي, corn, A 10; cf. *achi*.

had(d)a حَدَّ, 1. to pile up, bring together; A 11 *ta kan hadda maka riguna* it will heap up for you tobes, A 51 *ahad-dasu chikkin wuta* they shall be brought together in the fire.

*hadaka** حَطَاكَا, pl. *hadaku* حَطَاكُو, stranger.

hadari, see *hadari*.

hade حَدِي, to swallow.

hadēri, حَدْرِي, storm, tornado, tempest.

*had(d)ichi** حَدِيث (cf. Ar. حَدَث II), to explain, declare; D 5 *zamu fa haddichi akan majia kalami* we will speak out if there is anyone to listen to our words.

*hadua** حَدُوا, to enter into (?).

hafshi, *hapshi* or *habshi* حَفْشِي,

haushi حَوْشِي or *hamshi**

حَمْشِي, to bark; F 184 *da karnuka chikkin wuta masu-hafshi suna hafshi* and there will be dogs to bark in the fire, they will bark.

hag(g)u حَغُو, a small spear or dart for catching fish.

hagu حَغُو or *hagum* حَغْم, left hand, A 17; cf. *hauni*.

*hai** حَى, a form of the particle *har*; E 47 *hai adamawa* as far as Adamawa, E 50 *hai mu wushe* till we pass by....

*haiba** حَيْبَا beautiful clothing.

haifafe حَيْفَيْفِي f. *haifafa* حَيْفَيْفَا,

pl. *haifafu* حَيْفَيْفُو, pass. particip. of *haife*, born.

haife حَيْفِي, *haife* حَيْفِي, Ar. rt حَيْب, 1. to bring forth, to bear, of human beings, animals, trees and plants; 2. of the male, to beget; C 28 *randa (a)kahaifasa* (كَهَيْفَس) the infant on the day it is born.

haifu حَيْفُو or *haifu* حَيْفُو, 1. to

be delivered; 2. to be confined.

haifua حَيْفُوا or *haifua* حَيْفُوا, birth; *tun haifua* from birth.

hainchi حَيْنْتِ, 1. alloy or metal with which alloy has been mixed; cf. *safi*; 2. fig. deceit, fraud.

haila حَيْلَا, menses of a woman.

hainya حَيْنِيَا or *haya** حَيَا, pl.

hainyoyi حَيْنِيَوِي, used both

as masc. and fem., 1. road, way, street; 2. fig. path of faith, custom, etc.; E 18 *da masuzama ga hainyoyin musulmi* those of you who continue in the ways of Muslims; cf. *tafariki*.

*haira** حَيْرَا, Ar. حَيْرٌ, good, D 40.

haiyet(t)a حَيْتِ, to trouble, to annoy.

*hajetu** حَجْتِ, the vowels.

haji حَجِي, Ar. rt حَج, 1. pilgrim;

2. pilgrimage; B 162 *guri garenen taffi* (or *antaffi*) *haji ne* I have a strong desire to go on the pilgrimage; D 22. *haji* حَجِي, to go on the pilgrimage, i.e. to Mecca.

hajjia حَجْجِيَا (Ar. حَشِيش, an intoxicant), drunkenness.

*hajta** حَجْتَا, found in *muhajta*, B 166, for *masuhajta*, pilgrims; cf. *haji*.

hak(k)a حَكَا, حَكَا, حَكَا, Ar. حَقَّا, so, thus, F 153; *hakka ne ko ba hakka ba* is it so or not?

hak(k)aman حَكَّنن, thus, in this or that manner, also a periphrasis for 'the same.'

hakarikari حَكْرِكَارِي, ribs.

haki حَكِي, pl. *hakukua* حَكُوْكَوَا, a kind of grass; F 95 *akawo dan haki gainye aduntse* a little new grass is brought and pressed down.

hakia حَكِيَا or *hehia* هَكِيَا, disease of the eyes, cataract (?).

hakika حَكِيْكََا, Ar. حَقِيْقَا, truly, verily, indeed.

*hakiḱanta** حَقِيْقَنْتَا, to assert the truth or certainty of anything, to convince, to certify.

hakimi حَاكِمِي, pl. *hākimai* حَاكِمِي, Ar. حَاكِم, governor, ruler.

hak(k)o حَكُو, حَقُو, pl. *hak(k)oki* حَكُوْكِ, 1. pit or hole for game to fall into, pitfall; cf. *turko*; 2. fig. of what leads into error or harm, a snare; *yin hako* to make a pitfall for animals, also to take animals in a pitfall; *ina hako bakin mutum* I watch the words of anyone for a slip of his tongue to be used against him; cf. *fak(k)o*.

hakora, patience; cf. *hankuri*.

hak(k)ori حَقُوْرِي, pl. *hak(k)ora* حَقُوْرَا, tooth; *hak(k)orin giwa* ivory. For distinction between *hak(k)ori* and *hawri*, cf. under *hawri*.

hakumche, see *hakumta*.

hakumchi حَكْمِيْت or *hukumchi*

حَكْمِيْت, Ar. حَكْم, 1. order, command; 2. judgment; D 59, 73 *hal allah shi wanya hukumchi nai ga bayi* until God hath finished His judgment upon His servants.

hakumi حَاكِم, Ar. حَكْم, power, influence.

hakumta حَكْمِيْتَا or *hakumche* حَكْمِيْتِي, Ar. حَكْم, to order, to command.

hal حَل, as far as; cf. *har*.

halaka هَلَك, Ar. هَلَك II, to destroy; G 2 *ya halakasu* he destroyed them. *halaka* هَلَكَا, Ar. هَلَكَةُ, destruction.

halal حَلَل, *halas* حَلَس or *hallata** حَلَّتَا, cf. Ar. حَل, what is lawful, proper, becoming, pure, ceremonially clean; F 205 *fu masuhalal*... those who regard ...as lawful. Opposed to *haram*.

halalchi حَلَلْتِي, Ar. حَل, purity, propriety; see prec.

*hal(l)ama** حَلَامَا, perhaps, it may be, I expect = *ina tamaha*.

*halama** حَلَامَا (عَلَامَا ? B 131), cf. Ar. عَلَم, instruction.

*halama** حَلَم, Ar. عَلَم, 1. to put anything in a book as a marker; 2. to put a mark on the ground; cf. *amara*.

halas, lawful; cf. *halal*.

halbi حَلْبِي, *halbe* حَلْبِي or *harbi*

حَرْبِي, 1. to discharge a bow, gun, etc.; *ya halbi kibia* or *da kibia* he discharged an arrow, *ya halbi bindiga* or *da bindiga* he fired a gun; 2. to shoot or hit with a bow or gun, *ya halbeni* he hit or shot me, G 5, l. 1 *akahalbeshi da kibia* he was shot with an arrow; 3. of serpents, insects, etc., to sting.

hal(l)i حَلِي (cf. (?) Ar. حَال),

1. manner, mode, custom, peculiarity, fashion, characteristic, e.g. *sata hallin barao*, theft is characteristic of the thief; 2. temper, disposition; C 24, F 84 *sunu karfi halli* they have a hard disposition.

*hal(l)ia** حَلِيَا (cf. (?) Ar. حَلِيَّة), adornment (?); cf. B 135 note.

*halichi** حَلِحْت, Ar. حَلَّ, to create = *halita*, q.v.

*haliku** خَالِف, Ar. خَالَف, creator, D 3.

*halil** حَلَل, name of a commentary on the Koran (?); cf. E 11 note.

*halilu** خَلِيل, Ar. خَلِيل, friend, a title frequently given to Abraham, D 77, F 44.

*halita** حَلَّتَا, Ar. حَلَّ, creature, creation; F 208 *sabon halita* a new creation (i.e. creature).

*halita** حَلَّت or *talita** تَلَّت, to create; cf. *halichi*.

halshi حَلْش or *harshi* حَرْش, pl.

halshina حَلْشِنَا, *harshina* حَرْشِنَا, 1. the tongue; D 67 *kishirua che akansurya halshi hal makurua* thirst shall burn the tongue down to the throat; 2. tongue, language, enunciation, pronunciation; *halshin wuta* flame.

hama حَمَا, to gape; *yin hama* id.

*hamada** حَمَادَا (cf. ? Ar. rt همد), desert, stony plain.

hamata حَمَاتَا, pl. *hamatu* حَمَاتُو, arm-hole, arm-pit.

hambudiga حَمْبُدِغَا, ainhum, i.e. a disease which causes painful cracking of the skin in the under-joints of the little toe, v. *kudumbia*; cf. 'Hausaland,' p. 152.

hamfude حَمْفُدِي or *hamfudi*

حَمْفُدِي, to eat greedily, to throw into the mouth; *hamfuden gari* حَمْفُودُنْ غَارِي, rolling flour into little balls and throwing them into the mouth.

*hamilu** حَمِيلُو, Ar. حَمِيلَةٌ, sword-belt, usually made of silk.

hamsa حَمْسَا, Ar. حَمْسَةٌ, card. num. five; often used for five thousand, the Hausa word *biar* being the ordinary equivalent for five.

*hamshi**, to bark; cf. *hafshi*.

hamsin حَمْسِين, حَمْسِين, Ar.

حَمْسِين, card. num. fifty.

*hamso** حَمْسُو, a small branch or twig.

hamzari حَمَزَرِي, حَمَزَرِي or *hamzari* حَمَذَرِي, 1. to hasten,

D 76 *muna hamzari zua gid-danmu* we hasten to our homes, *da hamzari* hastily; 2. to confess a fault (?), A 70.

han(n)a حَنَا, حَنَا, 1. to hinder, prevent, restrain, A 51 *en bai hannasu ba* if he restrain them not; 2. withhold, deny, refuse, say no. In buying and selling *na hanna* = I refuse the offer made, or I decline to do business, *han(n)awa* حَنَاوَا, حَنَاوَا, refusing, refusal; F 16 *shi ni ko karimu da ba hannawa* He is gracious and refuses not.

*hanbare** حَنْبَرِي, to kick away, B 144 *domin ta hanbareka ga addini* that it may kick you away from religion.

hanchi حَنْشِي or *hantsi* حَنْطِي, the morning two hours after sunrise, i.e. about eight o'clock; B 103 *tasawal hantsi* the time of sunrise, B 56.

hanchi حَنْشِي or *hanshi** حَنْشِي, pl. *hanchochi* حَنْشُوئِي, 1. nose, nostrils; F 199 *wuta na fita ga baki da hanshi* fire shall come out of their mouth and nostrils, *goran hanchi* bridge of the nose; 2. loop (?).

hanchi حَنْشِي, found in the phrase *hanchin kade* = 1. the fruit of the shea butter tree (*kadanya*), 2. a neck ornament worn by women.

*hanfude**, to throw food into the mouth; cf. *hamfude*.

hangara حَنْغَرَا, 1. dropsy, 2. swelling caused by the guinea-worm.

*hangarma** حَنْغَرَمَا, a deep wide pit.

*hange** حَنْغِي, 1*. as far as the eye can reach; 2. to see at a distance, *na hangeshi dagga nesa*.

*hangum** حَنْغُم, swelling on the throat.

hania, noise; cf. *hayania*.

haninia حَنْيِنِيَا, neighing, *yi haninia* to neigh.

hanji حَنْجِي, حَنْجِي, bowels, F 189, 198.

*hankade** حَنْكَدِي, to open, e.g. a door.

hankaka حَنْكَاَكَا, pl. *hankaki* حَنْكَاَكِي, *hankaku* حَنْكَاَكُو (corvus scapulatus ?), a crow about the size of a raven, its body is black, its breast and a rim round the neck white.

hankali حَنْكَالِي, *hankali* حَنْكَالِي (cf. (?) Ar. نَكْر, نَكْر, intelligence), sense, prudence, forethought, foresight, care; *da hankali* sensibly, prudently;

yin hankali to take notice of, to beware of, v. B 5, C 16, *maihankali* prudent.

hankaltilo حَنگَلتِلو, Kanuri id., a small spear for throwing.

*hankora** حَنگُور, to believe in.

hankula حَنگُلا, attention; cf. *hankali* and seq.

hankuri حَنگُور, *hankura* حَنگُورا or *hakora* حَگُورا, 1. patience, meekness, resignation, forbearance; *ina hankuri* or *ina yin hankuri* I show patience or resignation, F 83 *ku hankuri* or *ku yi hankuri* be patient; 2. comfort, consolation, *ya bada masu hankuri* (also *hankura*) he comforted them.

hanna, see under *han(n)a*.

hansaki حَنسَف, tongs, pincers; cf. *ansaki*, *hawartek(k)i*.

hansari, to snore; cf. *minshari*.

hanshi, nostrils; cf. *hanchi*.

hanta حَنتا or *anta* اَنتا, liver; F 198 *wuta ta chisu har ta shinyi* (= *chinyi*) *hanta* the fire shall consume them till it eats up their liver; for use of *anta* cf. D 67.

hanu حَنو, pl. *hanua* حَنُوا, 1. hand, A 17 *ka tara hanu* you put forth both hands; *hanun giwa* elephant's trunk, cf. use of Lat. *manus*; *hanun rua* a kind of nut, like a kola, brought from Nupé; 2. sleeve, pl. *hanaye* حَنَيِي; *wuka hanu* lit. sleeve knife, a kind of short

sword attached by a leathern ring round the sleeve, used by the Tuaregs.

*hanzir** حَنزِير, pl. *hanzirai* حَنزِيرِي, Ar. حَنزِير, wild swine; cf. *gursuna*.

hapshi, to bark; cf. *hafshi*.

har حَر or *hal* حَل, till, until, as far as; used 1. with nouns, D 67 *hal makurua* unto the throat; with proper names of place, G 1 *har mangi* as far as Mangi, F 181 *har habhabu* to Habhabu; in a list *har* = until, hence it = as well as, including, cf. *har zubairu* and *Zubair*; 2. with adverbs or prepositions, *har yanzu* till now, up to the present time, G 1 *har ya zua zamani othmanu* until the time of Othman; 3. in introducing clauses and sentences, D 73 *hal allah shi wanya hukumchi nai ga bayi* until God hath finished His judgment on His servants, v. D 84, F 198; *har* is often followed by the particle *dai*; *hardai* is sometimes equivalent to 'in order that'; cf. *hai*.

haram حَرَام, Ar. حَرَام, what is unlawful or cannot be done lawfully, anything ceremonially unclean, unbecoming, unjust; used in sense opposite to *halal*; *abin haram* = *haram*.

harámia حَرَامِيَا, unlawful gain or profit, e.g. from the sale of

- pigs; *chi haramia* to make unlawful gain. *harāmu* حَرَامٌ, anything which is unlawful, E 17 *sunā dubi haramu* they behold what is unlawful, F 9 id.
- harāra** حَرَارًا, Ar. حَرَارٌ, 1. passionateness, F 8 *ka ber harara duka* give up all proud looks; 2. to stare at, frown on, look proudly on.
- harasa* حَرَسَا, reproof.
- harawa* حَرَاوَا, name given to leaves or stalks of beans and ground-nuts, e.g. *harawan wake*, *harawan gujia*. These are used as food for horses.
- harbi* حَرَبِيٌّ, 1. to kick, of a horse, cf. *habri*; 2. to shoot, cf. *halbi*.
- harbia*, a bird; cf. *hasbia*.
- harda** حَرَدًا, used with *samu* to learn by heart, D 33.
- hardai*, until, in order that; cf. *har*.
- harerewa** حَرَبَرَبَوَا, joyous laughter.
- hargi* حَرْغِي, حَرْغِي, small spear tied to the wrist, which is thrown and then pulled back.
- hargowa* حَرْغَوَا, noise made by talking loudly or angrily; *yin hargowa* to howl.
- har(r)i** حَرِي, حَرِي, 1. collection of cavalry for war; 2. a raid in war.
- harifi** حَرِبِ or حُرْبِي, pl.

- harufai* حَرُوفِيٌّ, Ar. حَرْفٌ, a letter of the alphabet.
- hario* حَرِيُو, again = *har* + *yo* (cf. encore = *hanc horam*).
- harsa* حَرَسَا or *hirsā* حَرَسَا, a turban usually made of white muslin with pictures worked on it, worn by princes only.
- harshi** حَرَشِي, abundance of talk.
- has(s)a* حَس or *haz(z)a* حَز or *az(z)a* حَز, to light, *hassa wuta* to light a fire, or to rake together expiring embers.
- has(s)a** حَس, to take in = *shigasda*.
- hasada* حَسَدًا or *has(s)ada* حَسَدًا, Ar. حَسَدٌ, envy, jealousy, D 7, F 8, E 24.
- has(s)ada* حَسَدٌ, Ar. حَسَدٌ, to trouble, torment, persecute.
- hasāla** حَسَالًا, cf. (?) Ar. حَسَدٌ, anger, displeasure.
- hasāra* حَسَارٌ, Ar. حَسَرٌ, 1. to suffer loss, A 33 *sun hasara alahira* they shall suffer loss in the next world; 2. *hasāra*, loss, cf. *asāra*, *tasāri*.
- hasashi** حَسَشِي (cf. Ar. حَس, to listen, perceive), to consider carefully, to be in doubt.
- hasbia* حَسْبِيَا or *harbia** حَرَبِيَا, a bird rather larger than a pigeon with red rim round the eyes.
- hashia* حَشِيَا, silk border at the bottom of a woman's dress.

*haskaka** حَسَكَّ, 1. to shine, give light; 2. to lighten, illuminate.

haske حَسَكِي, pl. *haskoki* حَسَكُوِكِي, light; F 229 *fuskokinou sun fi wuta da haske* their faces shall be brighter than fire; *maihaske* full of light, B 167 *birni madina maihaske tutut* the town of Medina is ever full of light.

*hassanu** حَسَّانٌ, proper noun (Hassan) used verbally, F 240 *su hassanu* they come to the place of Hasan.

hatumi حَتْمِي, cf. Ar. حَتْمٌ, a charm written on a board (*allo*) divided by lines into squares; the ink is then washed off and the water drunk as a medicine, or to secure anything desired. For specimen of such cf. 'Spec. of Hausa Lit.,' finis.

hau حَوُّ, to ascend, shortened form of *hawa*, q. v. F 143.

havia, hoe; cf. *havya*.

havia حَوِيَا, twenty, a score, used esp. in counting cowries with sums divisible by twenty, thus *havia biu* = forty, *havia bokkoi* = one hundred and forty. Compare A 39 *shi ne ya dauki wuri ya ber havia dari* he seizes one cowry but loses two thousand cowries.

hauka حَوْكََا, *hawka* هَوْكََا, 1. a fool; B 13 *jahili shika yi kama*

hauka the ignorant man would act like a fool, F 32; 2. folly, madness; 3. to be mad; *mai-hauka* or *maihaukache* a madman. *haukache* حَوْكَشِي, to be fierce or mad, to rage, to be ecstatic. *haukata* حَوْكَتَ, causat. to madden.

hauri حَوْنِي, left, *hanu na hauri* = *hagu* left hand; E 45 *mu ratsa kano da bauchi mu bersu hauri* we turn aside from Kano and Bauchi, we leave them on the left.

hauri حَوْرِي, tooth, tusk; *hauri* as distinguished from *hakkori* is applied to the large front teeth of a man or animal or to a single tooth, *haurin giwa* would be a whole tusk, *hakkorin giwa* a piece of ivory.

*hausa** حَوْسَا, pl. *harata* حَرَاتَا, tongue, language, speech.

hausa حَوْسَا or *hawsa* هَوْسَا, prop. n. Hausa, the Hausa language, the Hausa nation, the Hausa country (*kasan hausawa* or *kasan hausa*, id.); *bahaushe* بَحَوْشِي (= *ba* + *hausa* + *i* with change of *s* to *sh* before *i*), pl. *hausawa* حَوْسَوَا, a Hausa, a man of the Hausa nation.

*hausaki** حَوْسِك, a kind of shirt put on under a shroud, D 88 note; cf. *ausagi*.

hausshi حَوْشِي, anger, dislike, vexation, envy; *yana jin hausshi* he

feels angry, *yana jin haushina* he is vexed with me, *sunu jin haushinsa* they dislike him; cf. (?) *fushi*.

*haushi** حَوْشَى, to seize.

haushi, to bark; cf. *hafshi*.

*hautsina** حَوْطَنَا, uproar.

*hauya** حَوَيَا, pl. *hauyi* حَوَيِي,

hauyuna حَوَيْنَا, *hauyoyi*

حَوِيِي, hoe = *fatainya*.

hawa حَو or *hau* حَو, to mount, to ascend; *ya hawa doki* or *ya hawa bissa doki* the regular expression for mounting on

horseback, *mahayi** مَحْيِي, ladder;

F 143 *ankafa sirati atashi*

ahau the bridge shall be set up,

men shall ascend upon it. *ha-*

wa حَوَا, 1. height, F 145 *hawa*

nasa har sawo nasa babu wawa

its height and its length are

the same, without doubt; 2.

the firmament, lit. the height.

*hawwa** هَوَا, Ar. rt هَوَى, eager de-

sire, F 10.

hawainya or *harwoinya* حَوْنِيَا,

chameleon; they are very com-

mon in Hausaland.

hawartek(k)i حَوْرْتِك, tongs; cf.

hansaki.

hawaye حَوَيِي, sing. and collec-

tive, tear, tears; *hawayen zaki*

حَوَيْسِن زَكِي, lit. lion's tears,

marks cut on a woman's face;

yin hawaye to shed tears.

haya حَيَا, cf. Ar. rt حَى; C 10 *mai-haya* the Living One.

*haya** road, A 20 for *hainya*, q.v.

hayaki حَيَاكِي, smoke; *jirigin*

hayaki and *jirigin wuta* = ex-

pressions used on the R. Niger

for steamship; *yin hayaki* to

pour forth smoke, to smoke;

for to smoke used of tobacco,

cf. *sha*.

hayania حَيْنِيَا or *hania* حَانِيَا, noise

as of many men walking about

and talking, contention.

haye حَيْيِي, to fall upon, e.g. *ya*

haye masu he fell upon them.

hazo حَزُو, mist, fog, *da hazo* misty.

hekia, disease of the eyes; cf. *hakia*.

*hijra** هَجْرَا, Ar. هَجْرَة, the Hejira

(A.D. 622) F 255.

*hikima** حِكْمَا, Ar. حِكْمَة, wisdom.

hila حَيْلَا or *fila* فَيْلَا, Ar. حَيْلَة,

1. stratagem; 2. a bribe given

to a judge, D 18(?).

*hil(l)afa** حَلَابَا, Ar. (؟) حَلَف, lit.

wanting—an expression used

of cowries short in number.

himma هَيْمَا, *himma* حَيْرَمَا E 42,

Ar. هَيْمَة, zeal, diligence; *da*

himma diligent, *mairda himma*

to show diligence, D 26 *ku yi*

berchi ku falaka ku mairda

himma sleep and awake, rise

up and show diligence, i.e. in

worship.

*hira**, conversation, etc.; cf. *fira*.

- hirsā*, muslin turban; cf. *harsa*.
*hisabi** حساب, Ar. حساب, judgment, F 139 *akarre kua hisabi* judgment is completed.
hiska, wind; cf. *iska*.
*horō** حورو, correction; used in B 132 for *foro*.
hubal حُبَل, (?) cf. D 77, 96.
hubba, an exclamation of astonishment; cf. *haba*.
huda هُودَى, i. q. *fuda* q. v., 1. to bore a hole in a tree, etc.; 2. to hoe the ground with a *fatainya*, to dig in a farm; B 86 *maikokari na noma ko huda* he who gives his time to farming and tilling.
*hudu** حُد, four; cf. *fudu*.
huja حُجَا, cf. Ar. حُجَّة, 1. affair, reason, excuse; A 54 *ya rika taimama kam babu huja* he performed his ablutions with sand, though there was no reason for his doing so, B 10, 140; 2. neglect of work, uselessness; 3. حُج, to have an excuse; D 43 *ba shi huja ba ko shi amsa* he has no reason or answer to give.
huji حُجِي, to shirk or refuse work; cf. *prec*.
hukumchi حُكْمِش, see *hakumchi*.
hukumshi حُكْمِش, Sokoto form of *hukumchi*, q. v.
hume هُمِي, to prevent a person's leaving; *na humeshi* I prevented his leaving.

- humushi* حُمُشِي, Ar. حُمُش, 1. one fifth, cf. 'Hausa Gramm.' p. 41; 2. (cf. Ar. حُمُش), custom, tribute, tax, toll; 3. proportion of slaves or goods paid to a king after a raid.
*hurman** حُرْمَن, Ar. حُرْم, found with Ar. article in F 52 *al-hurman wadanan annabawa* (thou seest) the dignity of these prophets.
*huru** حور, Ar. حور, found in the expressions *huru-l-aini* F 103, and *huru-aini* F 228, from the Ar. حور العين, lit. with eyes of which the black and white are intensely distinct, stag-eyed, the Houris.
huruchi, confession; cf. *furuchi*.
*hurufi**, letter of alphabet; cf. *harifi*.
*husanche** حُسْنَبِي, irritated.
*huska** حُسْكَ = *fuska* face; B 171 *en rarafe ina aza huskata* let me crawl, let me place my face on the ground.
*hutawa** حُوتَاوَا = *futawa* rest, B 62.
*hutsu** حُوطُو, mad.
i عِي, cf. Ar. اِيه, yes.
i عِي, to conquer, overcome, *su i masu* they overcame them; cf. *ima*.
i, a colloquial abbreviation of *yi* to do.
iaka, limit; cf. *iyaka*.

ibada عِبَادَا, Ar. عِبَادَةٌ, service of God, B 47, D 51; *kuna kokari kuna ibada* take pains, serve God; also used of service to men.

ibi عِبِي, عِبِي, a variety of the kola nut brought from Yoruba.

iblis, *eblis* اِبْلِيسْ, Ar. the evil spirit.

iblu عِبْلُو or *ibru* عِبْرُو, a small grain used, when ground up, for gruel, soup, cakes, etc.

iche اِثِي, a tree; cf. *itache*.

ida عِيد, *ida labari* = 1. to delay in delivering a message; 2. to carry unwelcome news.

idan اِدَان, Ar. اِذَا (the *ḏ* in this word is pronounced *d*), 1. if; F 127 *idan anzo gareshi ya she* (= *che*) if you go to him, he will say. In Kano *en* is regularly employed in conversation rather than *idan*, though *idan* is equally used in writing, cf. Gram. p. 52; for interchange of *idan* and *en* cf. B 47, 48, also C 19-26; 2. when, F 93 *idan sun kare salla kuma su dauka* when they have finished praying, they take (thee); cf. E 39-44, 46-48, 50.

idi عِيد, Ar. عِيد, 1. religious feast; 2. procession outside a town towards Mecca, once a year, ending with the killing of a goat.

ido عِدُو, اِدُو, pl. *idanu* عِدْنُو, اِدْنُو, and *idandanu* عِدْنَدْنُو, اِدْنَدْنُو,

1. eye; B 32, 33, F 80, 199; *idonmagi* = squint, *idon kishimi* blind; employed, like the Ar. عَيْن, in various figurative and tropical uses, e.g. 2. sight, view; *idon dunia* عِدْنُ دُونِيَا, in the sight of men; 3. chief; B 76 *duba ga bello idon maliki nai* behold Bello, the ruler over his kingdom; 4. joint; *idon sau* (pl. *ijian sau*) ankle, *idon kaffa* id., *idon hanu* wrist-bone, knuckle; 5. *idon rua* spring of water; 6. *idon zaura*, (a) a variegated cloth of native manufacture, (b) a white stone, pearl (?).

idrisu اِدْرِيسْ, Ar. id., Idris, F 39, mentioned Koran xix. 57, generally identified with Enoch.

id(d)ubar عِدْبُر, reddish brown ass.

igia or *igiyia* عِيْغِيَا, pl. *igoyi*

عِيْغِيُوِي, *igiyoyi* عِيْغِيُوِي, 1. rope, cable, string; 2. fig. *igian rua* current of a stream.

*ihu** اِبْهُو, ho! a cry or shout to attract attention.

ijia اِيْجِيَا, 1. pupil; *ijian ido* pupil of the eye, *ijian sau* pl. ankles, cf. *idon sau*; 2. one cowry, for the plural *kurdi*, q.v., is employed; cf. *wuri*.

iko عِيْكَو, pl. *ikoki* عِيْكَوْكَي, power, authority, right, used frequently in the expression *ikon allah* the power of God, visita-

tion of God; F 110 *ba ka ikon jirkitawa* thou wilt have no power to turn, *maiiko* powerful, E 12 *maiiko da kowa* almighty.

*ila** اِلَى, until, D 92.

ima عِمَا, عِمَا, to conquer, drive away, i.q. *i*, q.v.; cf. seq.

imai عِمَى, *yin imai* to be able; *en na imai* = *en na iya*.

*imani** اِمَانَى, Ar. اَمَن, 1. compassionate = *mutum maiyin tausaye*; 2. pure in heart.

ina اِنَا, = *akoi* there is or there are; the expression *ina da shi* (= *akoishi*) is extremely common in conversation.

ina, to stammer; cf. *inina*.

ina اِنَا, pron. 1st pers. sing. com. gender; *ina* (also *kana shina*, etc.) is used with secondary, nominal or participial forms of verbs, to express the present tense, thus, aor. = *na taffi* I went, but *ina taffia* I am going; *na fitto*, but *ina fittowa*, etc. Where these nominal or participial forms are not in use *ina* is used with the primary form of the verb, e.g. *ina so* I wish.

*in(n)a** اِنَا, mother (a borrowed Fulah word).

*inda** اِنْدَا, Ar. prep., F 132 in the presence of.

*ingaramu** اِنْغَرَمُو, war horses; cf. *angarmia* a large mare.

*ingata** اِنْغَاتَى, 1. as v. to

trust in, rely on; 2. adj. reliable, trustworthy. *ingatachi** اِنْغَاتَى, adj. 1. sound, perfect, solid, reliable; G 7 *wanan labari ingatachi* this account is reliable; 2. large.

ingirichi اِنْغِرِوْث or *ingirochi* اِنْغِرِوْث, hay, dried grass chopped up for feeding horses.

inina اِنِين or *ina* اِنَا, to stammer, stutter; *ininan halshi* impediment or hesitation in speech.

*inji** اِنْجَى, expr. = it is said to be.

iri اِرَى, اِرَى, pl. *irare* اِرَارَى, seed of plants, of men and creatures, offspring, kind, stock, tribe; *minene irin itache* what sort of tree?

isa اِسَى, Ar. اِسَى, Jesus, F 127, 128. This is the Mohammedan form of the name, v. Koran iii. 40, while *yasuru* and *yashuru* are those which were employed by the Christian Arabs at the time of and prior to Mohammed.

is(s)a اِسَا, اِسَا, 1. to reach, arrive at; 2. to be equal to, to be sufficient; *da ya issa* = enough, *ba su chi ya issa* they did not eat enough; cf. *isso*, *ishe*, *iske*.

isga or *esga* اِسْغَا, a cow's or horse's tail used as a switch for driving away flies.

ishe اِسْهَى, اِسْهَى, 1. to reach, meet, overtake; A 44, F 76 *mutua*

ta ishemu death is coming upon thee; 2. to suffice, be sufficient for; F 42 *ta ishemu* it is sufficient for us. *ishe-she* إِشْبِشِي, عِشْبِشِي, fem. *ishashia* إِشَاشِيَا, عِشَاشِيَا, pl. *ishasu* إِشَاسُو, عِشَاسُو, 1. strong, powerful; 2. sufficient.

ishirin عِشْرِينَ or *asherin* عِشْرِينَ, Ar. عِشْرِينَ, card. numeral, twenty; cf. *goma*.

iska حِسْكََا, إِسْكََا or *hiska* حِسْكََا, pl. *iskoki* إِسْكَوْكِي, عِسْكَوْكِي, or *hiskoki* حِسْكَوْكِي, wind; F 154; *shan hiska* (lit. to drink the wind) is used with *taffi*, etc. to go for a walk.

iske إِسْكَبِي, عِسْكَبِي, to meet; D 40, F 73 *ka iske mursalina* thou wouldst meet the messengers.

is(s)o إِسُو, عِسُو, 1. to arrive at, 2. come towards; cf. *is(s)a*.

ita إِتَا, عِتَا, pers. pron. 3rd pers. fem. sing. nominative, she, it; objective, her, it, A 10, 11, 13, 14, 18, 36, B 120.

itache إِتَاشِي or *iche* إِشِي, pl. *itatuwa* إِتَاتُوَا, when masc. = tree, when fem. = a stick cut from a tree, though this distinction is not always observed; *itachen wuta* firewood, *dan itache* a little piece of wood, F 94.

it Ashe إِتَاشِي, Sokoto form of *itache*, tree, F 94.

iwa إِوَا, عَوَا, a shrub, from twigs of which is made the *arsaberi*, the mat used to cover a doorway.

iwo, to make; cf. *yiwo*.

iya إِيَا, mother, the plural *iyaye*, q.v., is used in the sense of 'parents'; cf. the like use of *uwaye*, and Ar. أَبَوَانِ.

iya إِيَا, عِيَا, to be able, to be equal to, can; *ba ya iya shi gani ba* or *ba shi iya gani ba* he could not see. After the pronominal forms ending in *na* it is preferable to write *عِيَا*; a passive form *aiya* is occasionally used, cf. *iyawa*.

iyaka إِيَاكَا, 1. limit, boundary, end, of a country, a room, etc.; 2. as the concluding word of a letter = *finis*.

iyali عِيَالِي, Ar. عِيَالٌ, family, members of a family.

iyata إِيَاتَا or *yata* يَاتَا, elder sister; cf. *ya*.

iyawa إِيَاوَا, عِيَاوَا, ability, power, commonly found in comp. *mai-iyawa* مَيَايَاوَا, مَيَايَاوَا, almighty, A 59, F 2, 22, 210; cf. *iya*.

iyaye إِيَايِي, pl. of *iya* mother, q.v.; parents, A 47, F 77, 150, 252.

*iyes** عِيَسْ, إِيسْ or *iyesda** عِيَسْدَ, إِيسْدَ, forms related to *iya*, to

succeed in a thing, to accomplish something.

iyó عِيُو, *iyó*, to swim; *yin iyó* id.

*iyó** اِيُو, verily.

iza اَز, *iza*, 1. to push, drive away;

2. to fall. *izanwa* اَزَاوَا, driving away.

izan, if, when; see *idan*.

*izanwa** اِدْنُوَا, thirsty (?); D 92

kowa ya izanwa shi do aniya shi yasa he who is very thirsty takes pains to dig a well.

izgili اِزْغِيل (cf. Ar. زَغْلُول, nim-

ble), a game played by boys, pulling at each other's arms, etc. to find something hidden in the hand of one of them.

*izufi** اِزُوبِي, Ar. حَزْبٌ, one of the

sixty equal paragraphs (أَحْزَاب) into which the Koran is divided. For similar phonetic change cf. Ar. ذَنْبٌ, Hausa

zunufi ذُنُوبِ orime.

The letter ج is used by the

Hausas to represent the sound of the English *j*. In several words it is interchanged with that of *sh*, *z*, *y* or *s*, e.g. *jarili* = *yarili*, *jarimi* = *zarumi*, *juni* = *shuni*, *jurare* = *saurara*.

ja جَا, to draw, drag, pull; D 13 *aja-shi* he shall be dragged, *ja rua* to draw water, *jan jibi* crawl-

ing F 155; *ka ja da baya* get thee behind! *ya ja bakinsa* he kept silence, *ja chikki* D 9 = secret thieving, lit. to drag the belly, an expression suggested by the crawling of a snake, applied to the secret approach of a thief; cf. *jawo*, *jajeya*.

ja جَا, pl. *jajayi* جَا جَا يِي, cf. Ar.

rt *جان*, red; very red is *ja wur*, the adv. *wur* being only used with the word *ja*; *jan karifi* brass, copper, *jaja kaddan* a little red, reddish, *jan miyi** or *jan namiji** = with reckless courage.

*jaba** جَبَا, 1. rat, stinking-rat; 2. black ass; 3. *jaba duchi* the wild dove.

*jabbaru** جَبَّارٌ, Ar. جَبَّارٌ, mighty, v. B 118; applied to God, F 50, B 3.

jadaga جَدَّعٌ, to draw up in line of battle; cf. *daga*.

jagaba جَعَبَا, guide to show the way; he goes in front of a caravan, whilst the *maduga*, q.v., goes behind; cf. *shugaba* id.

jagora جَغْرَا, stick, e.g. one used by blind men to find the way.

jahadi جِهَادٌ, Ar. جِهَادٌ, war, especially a holy war; E 7 *idan mun zo jahadi mu shi* (i.e. *chi*) *asna* when we come to the war and conquer the heathen.

jahalichi جَاهَلِيَّتْ, Ar. جَاهِلِيَّتْ, ig-

- norance, *da jahalichi* in ignorance, ignorantly; cf. *jahili*.
- jahannama* جهنم, Ar. جهنم, hell, D 71, 73, F 156; cf. *jahima*.
- jahili* جاهلي, جاهل, Ar. جاهل, ignorant, i.e. with respect to religion, B 12, C 3; cf. *jahalichi*.
- jahima** جحيم, جحيم, Ar. جحيم, burning hell, D 23, the highest and best division in hell, cf. F 164 note; cf. *jahannama*.
- jainye** جنبي, to twist, e.g. a piece of cloth.
- jaiya** جيا, quarrel, fight, *yin jaiya* to quarrel, to fight.
- jajaya* ججى, to drag; cf. *ja*.
- jaje* جاجي, staining red, used of cloth, thread, etc.
- jajebbera** ججبرا, preparation, *ranan jajebbera* the day before any feast.
- jaji* ججى, title of the chief leader of a caravan.
- jajirma** ججوما, warrior.
- jaka* جاك, to draw after one, to pull.
- jakara* جكرا, the name of a large pool at the side of the Kano market.
- jaki* جاك, pl. *jakai* جاكى, *jakuna* جاكنا, fem. *jakainya* جاكنايا, donkey, ass, A 6.
- jaki* جاك, in phr. *jaki bissa tudu* plaiting of hair in two lines,

one in the middle of the head and one behind.

- jalala** جلال, Ar. جلال, great, mighty, used of God, F 135; cf. *jalla*.
- jalili* جليلي, a small water duck, with slight red tint on neck, black velvety head and brown variegated body.
- jalla** جلال, Ar. جلال, great, glorious, used of God; C 49, D 45, F 2, 135; cf. *jalala*.
- jama'a** جماع, Ar. جماعة, i.q. seq. F 5; E 4.
- jam'u** جمع, Ar. جمع, band, company, companions, F 3.
- janaba* جنب, جنب, Ar. جنب, polluted; cf. *jaraba*.
- janai* جنى, gullet, windpipe.
- janyaro* جنيارو, 1. = prec.; 2. a large tree, with reddish bark, its wood used in supporting sheds, etc.
- janzir(r)i* جنزرى, an evil spirit, said to be the patron of the *masubori*, to make men mad, and to eat dung.
- jara* جرا, cf. (?) Ar. أجر, discount, etc.; i.q. *ladda*, q.v.
- jaraba* جربا, Ar. جرب, filthiness, uncleanness; cf. *janaba*.
- jaraba* جربا, جربا or *jarabe* جربى, Ar. جرب, to make trial of, A 65 *allah ya kan gamma arzikinka da jaraba* God may

give thee prosperity to try thee; 2. to make trial, as of a horse before buying; 3. to tempt to evil, cf. seq.

jarabi جَرَبِ، جَرَبِي، trial, *yin jarabi* to make trial of = prec.

*jaru** جَارِي، a cricket (?).

jarili, see *jariri*.

*jarimi** جَرِيمِي، servant of a king, warrior; i.q. *zarumi*, q.v.

jariri جَارِيرِي or *jarili* جَارِيلِي or *yarili* يَرِيلِي, baby up to one year old; C 28 *duba ga jariri fa rana da (a)kahaifasa* behold the infant on the day of its birth; cf. *jinjiri*.

*jatarni** جَتَرْنِي، end of day (?).

*jauwi** جَوُو، spices.

*jawabi** جَوَابِ، Ar. جَوَابِ، speech, answer; D 47 *kadda mu kasa fadi jawabi* that we fail not to utter a reply.

jawagi جَوَاغِي، 1. to walk backwards and forwards; 2. to fly like a bird.

jawayi جَوَايِي or *jiwoyi* جَوُوِي، to visit, to go to salute.

jawel جَوَلِ، a nut, which when ground and burnt produces a scent.

jawo جَاوُو، to draw out, to bring together, to draw towards oneself, e.g. straying sheep; a form of *ja*, q.v.

jayaki جَيَكِي، the fishing vulture, Ar. عَفَابِ.

je جِي، Ar. جَاءَ، to go, to depart; *mu je da ni* or *mu je tare* (B 166) let us go together.

*jebba** جَبَّأَ، Ar. جَبَّةٌ، a red tobe.

*jebda** جَبْدَ، *jefda* جَبْدَ، a form of *jefa* to throw, or it may perhaps be formed from *jib*(be) to place down.

jefa جَبَبِ، to throw, to cast; *jefa da duatsu* to pelt with stones.

Derived forms are *jefas* جَبَسَ

to throw out, *jefasda* جَبَسْدَ

to throw out, overthrow, *jefo**

جَبُو، to place, F 140 *ajefo*

har takardun aiku namu we

shall be placed according to

the list of our deeds; *jefsa**

جَبَسِي and *jefshe** جَبَشِي، to cast out.

jegawa, sandy hill; cf. *jigowa*.

jego جَعُو، accouchement, giving birth; *tana yin jego = ta haifu*.

jehurma جَحْرُمًا، falcon.

jeje جَجِي، thinly wooded or uninhabited country; cf. *daji*.

jekada جَكْدَا، 1. a messenger, sent by anyone; cf. *manzo* a king's messenger; 2. a tax-collector.

*jel(l)ala** جَلَالَا، Ar. جَلَالِ، the cloth placed on a saddle.

jema جَمَا، a kind of scented grass, growing to height of four feet.

*jema'a**, all, i.q. *jama'a*, q.v.

jemagi جَمَاغِي، a large sized bat.

jemi جِمْبِی, 1. to rub the hair off a skin; 2. to tan; *majemi* or *maijima* a leather dresser; cf. *jima*.

*jenfi** جَنْفِی (cf. (?) Ar. جَنْب), back; *bada jenfi* to put to flight.

jeni جِنِی (cf. Ar. rt جنى VIII), together, *ku taffi jeni* keep together!

*jenti** جَنْتِہ, a slight illness.

jera جِہْرَا, *jere* جِہْرِی or *jire** جِہْرِی, line, procession, rank; *ajere* in a line, or abreast.

*jere** جِہْرِی, a wick (?).

*jeri** جِہْر (cf. Ar. جَار v), headache, sunstroke, giddiness.

*jetaka** جِہْتَا, a measure of distance, as far as can be seen with the eye.

jet(t)o, to agree with, i.q. *jil(t)o*, q.v.

ji جِی, 1. to hear, perceive, feel, e.g. *jin tsoro* to feel fear, to fear; *jin wuta* to become warm, or to warm oneself; 2. to understand, *na ji magananka* I understand thy speech, *ban ji ba* I don't understand; 3. to obey; cf. *jiyaya*.

jia جِیَا, i.q. prec.; C 36; D 5 *majia* listener.

jia جِیَا, yesterday; *shekaranjia* the day before yesterday; *watan jia* last month, *jia da dere* last night.

jibda جِہْدَا (cf. (?) Ar. زَبْدَة, butter),

ointment, scent, e.g. *turare*; *jibdan kass* a kind of creeper.

jib(b)e جِہْبِی, 1. to put cotton, garments, etc. out to dry after washing; 2. to place a load down on the ground.

jibga جِہْبَا or *jibki** جِہْبِک, 1. thatched roof; 2. to store up goods; cf. seq.

jibgi جِہْبِغِی, a large quantity of anything, esp. of food.

jib(b)i جِہْبِی, 1. sweat, perspiration, D 68; 2. to sweat, perspire.

jibi جِہْبِی, 1. a food made of flour and *mia* mixed; 2. used as a general word for food.

jibi جِہْبِی, the day after to-morrow; *watan jibi* the month after next; cf. *gata*, *chitta*.

jibji جِہْبِجِی, dung-hill; cf. *jujai*.

*jibki**, a thatched roof; cf. *jibga*.

jiche جِہْشِی or *jichi* جِہْشِی, to turn upside down; cf. *zirikiche*.

*jidda** جِہْدَا (Ar. id., earnestly), really, B 33 note.

jifzifz جِہْفِہْفِہ, B 56 twilight, i.q. *jizifi*, q.v.

jigeribti جِہْجِہْرِہْبِی, to canter, used of a horse.

jigo جِہْغِو, pl. *jiguna* جِہْغِئَا, 1. a tree on which meat is hung up to dry; 2. a post for supporting roof; 3. a beam for drawing water from a well.

jigowa جِہْغِوَا or *jegawa* جِہْجِوَا, 1.

sand, hill covered with sand ;
2. a field with good soil (sandy)
for cultivation.

jiji ججی, plant, sweet scent made
from its root.

jijia ججیا, pl. *jiiwoji* ججیوچی,
vein, nerve ; F 175, C 19 *dunia*
tsafua sai jiiwoji the world is
old and has nothing but veins
(left).

jijifi ججیفی, twilight just before
the dawn ; see Gr. p. 64 ; cf.
jifjif.

jijiga ججیغا, ججیغا, to shake vio-
lently, to feel a load in order
to test its weight ; cf. *jinjini*.

jika جیکا, fem. *jikata* جیکاتا, pl.

jikoki جیکوکی, grand-child.

*jika** جیف, to have pity on (?) ;
cf. B 6 note.

jik(k)a, to moisten ; cf. *jik(k)i*.

jiki جیکی, جیکی, pl. *jikuna* جیکنا,
body ; *maiiki* a fat person,
= *maitumbi*.

jik(k)i جیفی, to become wet ;
particip. form *jik(k)ewa*, pass.
ajik(k)a ; F 78 *akawo magani*
ajik(k)a medicine is brought
and is put in water.

jikka جیکا or *zikka** زقا, pl. *jikkuna*
جیکنا, *jikoki* جیفوی, Ar. زف,
large bag, esp. one made of
skin, used for cowries not for
holding water.

jima جیما, to wait a little while ;

pass. in phr. *sai anjima* = after
a little while, or good-bye for
the present. *jima kaddan* or
jimkaddan, wait a little, or a
little while ; cf. *jinjima*.

jima جیما, to tan ; *maiijima* or
majemi a tanner ; cf. *jemi*, id.

jima جیمی, جیمی, to hurt, injure,
of a malady to cause pain.

jimero جیمرو, a species of dark
coloured rice.

jim(m)ina جیمنا, ostrich.

jimkaddan, a little while ; cf.
jima.

jimke جیمکی, to grasp with the
hand, to take a handful.

jimolo جیمولو, wild cat.

jimrau جیمرو, ass with reddish
body.

jimri جیمری, 1. to be patient, to
bear, to endure, B 36 *ku jimri*
jehadi endure strife ; 2. *da*
jimri used adverbially, *ina*
yin aiki da jimri = *ina da*
hankuri.

jinga جینغا, wages or taxes, *yin*
jinga to pay wages, etc. ; *mai-*
jinga a man who pays wages,
sometimes applied to the man
who receives wages.

jingina جینگنا or *jinjina* جینجنا
1. a pledge or security for
money owing ; 2. to leave
anything as a pledge.

jingina جینگن or *jingina* جینجینی,

- to recline, to lean against something.
- jini* جِنِي blood; F 200 *akaisu su sha deffi da jini* they shall be brought (and made) to drink poison and blood.
- jini* جِنِي found in comp. *jinin kafiri* red beads worn by heathen women round the neck.
- jinia* جِنِيَا a reed, or two or three tied together, forming circular band outside underneath roof.
- jinjima* جِنِيْمَا apparently a strengthened form of *jima*, q. v., to wait a short time; partic. form F 62 *ka san dunia kaddan muka jinjimawa* thou knowest that in the world we stay but a short time.
- jinjimaka* جِنِيْمَاكَا a bird, with black and white plumage, rather larger than a *hankaka*.
- jinjimi* جِنِيْمِي pelican, stork (?).
- jinjina* جِنِيْنَا acclamation, shout in war.
- jinjina*, to leave anything as a pledge; cf. *jingina*.
- jinjini* جِنِيْنِي 1. to feel a thing in order to ascertain its weight; 2. to shake the hand as a sign of greeting; cf. *jijiga*.
- jinjiri* جِنِيْرِي child, infant, B 116; esp. applied to a child between the ages of one month and one year; cf. *jariri*.

- jinkai** جِنْكِي pride, haughtiness; *maijinkai* one who is haughty.
- jinkai* جِنْكِي or *shinkai* شِنْكِي, 1. mercy, grace; C 10 *ya yenki kamnatai ga jinkai maihaya* he despises the mercy of the Living One; 2. used of good or bad action, *jinkai alheri* or *jinkai mugunta*.
- jinkiri* جِنْكِرِي to wait; B 166 *ku yi mani jinkiri (a)muje tare* wait a little while for me, let us go together.
- jinkiri** جِنْكِرِي destiny, fate, death, = Ar. أَجَلٌ.
- jinnu* جِنُّو Ar. جِنُّ demons, genii, evil spirits; D 59 *da malairku da aljinnu su tare* and the angels and genii shall be gathered together.
- jinya** جِنْيَا sickness.
- jir* جِر naked, e.g. *ya sa riga tasa, don jir shi ke* he put on his garments, because he was naked; cf. (?) *tsirara*.
- jira* جِرَا to wait for one; F 237 *ana fa jiran fitowa nasa atashi* after waiting for his coming out, they rise up; cf. seq.
- jirache* جِرْتِي a form of prec., 1. to wait for one; 2. to bear with one.
- jirai* جِرِي gum; cf. *danko*.
- jire**, rank; cf. *jere*.
- jirfata** جِرْفَت to hold fast, A 17.

jirigi جِرِغ or *jirgi* جِرْغِ, pl. *jirage*

جِرَاغِي, 1. canoe, boat; *jirigin wuta* or *jirigin hayaki* used for steamboat, *mai-jirgi* boatman; 2. trough, water-trough for cows, etc.; 3. manger.

jirkiche جِرْكِيْ, to upset, turn upside down, overthrow; cf. seq.

jirkita جِرْكِيْت, 1. to overthrow, upset, used with *fuska* = to frown, to show signs of displeasure; 2. change; B 82 *ku lura da zamanu da jirkitansa* consider the times and their changes; 3. for participial form *jirkitawa* جِرْكِيْتَاو cf. F 108 *ka zamna nan tutur ba jirkitawa* thou wilt remain there for ever without turning over.

jit(t)o or *jetto* جِيْتُو, to agree with, e.g. with an enemy.

jiwaya, to gaze at; cf. *giwaya* or (?) *jawayi*.

jiwoji, veins; cf. *jiya*.

jiwoyi, to visit; cf. *jawayi*.

jiyaya جِيِيَا, understanding; cf. *ji*.

jujai جُوْجِي, 1. dunghill, cf. *jibji*; 2. a woman of bad character, cf. B 134 note.

juje جُوْجِي, a small drum.

juna جُونَا, recipr. pronoun, commonly prefixed to the plurals of the pers. pronouns, thus *junansu* one another; *juna* and *da juna* are also used abso-

lutely, E 37 *muna murna da juna* we will rejoice one with another.

juna جُونَا, a friend.

*juni** جُونِي, blue colour, indigo, = *shuni*.

*jurare** جُرَايِي, to listen = *saurara*.

*jure**, to kick; cf. *shure*.

juya جِيَا, a cow about to give birth to a calf.

juya جُوِي, to turn over, to turn back; *juya da magana* or *juya magana* to interpret, *juya da* to overturn, *juya ma* to turn away from; *juyawa* جُوِيَاو, turning, returning.

ف *k* and ك *k* are used by the Hausas to represent the sound of the English *k*. There is no distinction of sound between the two and they are frequently interchanged. As a general rule words in which ف *k* occurs are connected with Arabic roots, the *k* sound of the original Hausa being represented by ك. For words borrowed from Arabic and beginning with خ *kh* see under *h*. Words beginning with the sound *kw* are variously represented by the Hausas كُو, كَا, كُ, thus they write كَابِي *kwabe*, كُونَا *kwana*, and كَدِي *kwadai*. The first method, i.e. كَا, is used in comparatively

few words, though the other two afford no satisfactory clue to the pronunciation of the word. The sound *k* is sometimes interchanged with that of *s*, *f*, and *g*, e.g. *kunche*, *sunche*; *kufu*, *fufu*; *kurji*, *gurje*.

ka كَ, second personal pron. masc. sing., 1. as subject it is prefixed to the verb in the aor., and pres. tenses, e.g. *ka fitto*, *kan fitto*, *kana fittowa*; suffixed to the auxiliary verb *za* which denotes the future tense, also to the passive, e.g. *zaka fitto* you will come out, *afittasdaka* you are brought forth; 2. as object it follows verbs and preps., e.g. *su kamaka* they seized you, *maka* or *gareka* to you; 3. *ka* كَ or *-nka* نَكَ is used as an inseparable possessive pronoun, and is suffixed to masc. or fem. words provided that the possessor is masculine, e.g. *ubanka* thy father, *uwanka* thy mother, see Gr. p. 17; cf. use of *ki* when the possessor is feminine.

*ka** كَ, a form of the subst. verb *ke* كَى; cf. C 36 *kowa ka yi nasa* whoever practises it, C 39.

ka كَا, a concessive particle; B 28 *kowache ka ka zaba* which thou mayest choose = *kan*, q. v.

*ka(b)*ا كَبَا, pl. *ka(b)*وبى كَبُوبى, 1. a large species of palm with

edible fruit; 2. its leaves and fibre from which baskets, ropes, hats, etc. are made.

*kabak(k)*ى كَبَكى, pl. *kaboka*

كَبُوكَا, 1. a large quantity of food in a calabash, abundance, B 30; 2. a case or package used as a table; cf. *kabeke*.

*kabari** فَبِر, Ar. فَبِر, grave; B 169, F 101 *kana kabarinka kai dai* thou art in thy grave alone.

*kabbar** كَبَر, Ar. كَبَر, A 72 to say 'allah akbar,' i.e. 'God is great.'

*kabeke** كَبِكى, one possessed of food; cf. *kabak(k)*ى.

kabewa كَبُؤَا (cucurbita pepo), a kind of pumpkin or gourd, which grows in gardens and on houses; it is a larger kind than *kubewa*, q. v.; cf. *goji*.

*kabila** فَبِيلَا, Ar. فَبِيل, kindred, all the people belonging to one house.

kabri, thick; cf. *kauri*.

*kachal(l)*ا كَئَلَا, chief slave of a king.

kache كَئى, to scratch up with the nails.

kachia كَئِيَا, circumcision; *yin* or *yenke kachia* to circumcise.

kachokacho كَئُوكُؤُو, a pod like a pea with small seeds inside, used as a plaything for children to shake.

*kad(d)*ا كَدَدَا, *kad(d)*ا* كَدَدَا, conjunction, 1. that not, lest; B 97

allah ubangjinmu ni ke roko. kadda shi kaimu wanan kwana I pray our Lord God that He bring us not to those days; D 56 *ku do ania kadda yan uwanku su berku hainya* take care lest your relations leave you outside (heaven), B 161; 2. preceded by *domin* = in order that not; 3. in imperative sentences it denotes prohibition, B 41 *kadda ka lura da aiki nai* look not closely at his work; B 141 *kadda ka bita* follow it not.

kada كَدَّ, in the phrase *kada kai* to beckon with the head, assent, say yes; cf. *ged(d)a kai*, also *kau da kai* to dissent.

kada فَادَ or فَدَ, Ar. فَضَى [the Ar. *ض* is here pronounced *d*, but in *alkali* الْفَضَى, judge, it is pronounced as *l*], to judge, condemn, chastise; 2. *kada magana* to contemn. Possibly *kayes* to be condemned, and *kasshe* to condemn and to kill, are formed from this root.

kada كَادَا or كَادُو, pl. *kadodi* كَادُودِي, crocodile; *kadan-dunia** a centipede, *kadan-gari* lizard.

*kada** كَادَا, cotton, not used of the cotton from the *rimi* tree; cf. *kadi* to spin.

kadabkara كَدَبَكْرَى, a large black bird, its flesh eaten.

kad(d)adai كَدَدَيِّ, i.e. *kadda dai*, 1. although, A 17; 2. not, used as a prohibitive; A 23, 29 *kaddadai ajita* let her not be heard.

kad(d)ai كَدَيِّ, only, alone, *ni kaddai* I only, I alone, *ka kaddai*, *shi kaddai*, etc.; *sanu kaddai* salutation used to one only.

*kad(d)aichi** كَدَيْثِ, state of being one or alone, found in the phr. *shi kaddaichi* he by himself; cf. *makad(d)aichi* unique.

kad(d)aita كَدَيْتَا, desolation; *yin kaddaita* 1. to lay waste, 2. to isolate.

*kadakara**, a bat; see *tatapara*.

kadami كَادَمِي, found in the expression *kadamin abduga* spindle with cotton on it used in spinning.

kad(d)an كَدَنْ, 1. if, F 14, 18; 2. when, A 64; cf. *kan*.

kad(d)an كَدَنْ, little, few; *kad-dankaddan* very little, very few.

kadangari كَادَنْغَرِ (lit. crocodile of the town), lizard.

kadanya كَدَانِيَا, *كَدَانِيَا* (bassia Parkii), shea-butter tree; the oil obtained from its seeds (*main kedanya*) is of the consistency of butter; it is largely used as an article of food and is exported to England for use

in the manufacture of soap, candles, etc.; cf. *kade*.

kadaura كَدَوْرًا, large tree with soft edible fruit.

kade كَدِي, the fruit of the *kadamya*, q. v.

káde كَادِي, to cut down, e.g. a tree.

*kuderi** فَادِرِي, Ar. فَادِرٌ, powerful, mighty, A 59.

*kaderko** كَدْرِكُو, bridge.

kaderta كَادَرْتٌ, Ar. فَدَرٌ, to appoint, to order (used of God), to warn.

kadi كَادِي, to spin, *yin kadi*, id.; cf. *kada* cotton.

kaf(f)a كَفٌ, 1. to build, esp. to put wooden beams on a house; 2. to nail, fasten with nails; 3. to set up, to place, pitch, *kaffa lema* to pitch a tent; A 13 *mu ga ankafa ragaya* we see ropes set up (for weaving); F 143 *fa ankafa kua sirati* the bridge shall be set up; 4. *ya kafa goshinsa* he prostrated himself; cf. *kafafe*, *kaf(f)i*.

kafa كَفَا, 1. *dawa* ground up; 2. to dig round growing *dawa*; cf. *makafchi** a tiller of the ground.

kafada كَفَادَا, pl. *kafadu* كَفَادُو and *kafudodi* كَفَادُودِي, shoulder.

kafafe كَفَابِي, fem. *kafafra*

and *kafafa* كَفَابَا, pl.

kafafu كَفَابُو, particip. form from *kaf(f)a* finished, established, founded.

*kafan** كَفْنٌ, Ar. id., D 88 a shroud; cf. *kufanwa*, *likafani*.

kafarji كَفْرَجٌ, a small tortoise.

kaf(f)e كَفِي (cf. Ar. *kaba*, to recede), to subside, sink and so, of a well, to dry up, *rijia ta kaf(f)e*.

kafarchi كَاڤَرْتٌ, evil disposition, lit. that which belongs to kafirs (infidels); cf. *kafiri*.

kaffa كَفَا, pl. *kafafu* كَفَابُو or *kafafe* كَفَابِي (cf. Ar. *kaf*, palm of hand, sole of foot), foot, leg; *akaffa* on foot, F 95 *kafafe duk aduntse ma kushewa* by the feet of all is (thy) grave pressed down.

kaf(f)i كَفِي, gate, stockade, barrier.

*kafia** كَفِيَا, to slip, e.g. as in soft mud, B 142 *ka kafia damai marafkawa* thou slippest confusedly and art about to fall; cf. (!) *kafo*.

kafiri كَاڤِرِي, pl. *kafirai* كَاڤِرِي, *kafirawa* كَاڤِرَاوَا, Ar. كَاڤِرٌ, unbeliever, infidel, heathen; A 5, 9, 34, D 24, F 56.

kafo كَفُو, *kafo** كَفُو, pl. *kafoni* كَفُونِي, *kafuna* كَفُونَا, 1. horn;

da kafa horned; 2. horn, trumpet; A 78 *rana da maibusa ya busa kafa* on the day when the sounder of the trumpet shall sound, F 112; *maikafa* trumpeter.

kafa كَبُو, mire, a swamp with much soft mud.

kafa كَابُو, pl. *kafi* كَافِي, blind, blind man; cf. *makafo*, id., *makopchi*, *makanta*, and *makamchi*, blindness.

kaf (f)on *mariri** كَبْنِ مَرِيرِي, a large species of wild ass.

kafri, كَبْرِي, see *kafiri*.

kafrichi كَبْرِيْ, heathenism, paganism; cf. *kafiri*.

kafur كَابُر, Ar. كَأْفُور, camphor. It is greatly valued and passes as a sort of currency in some parts of Hausaland.

kagara كَغَرَا or *kegarua* كَغَرُوَا, pl. *kagaru* كَغَرُو, fortification, barricade made of trees, entrenchment; cf. *gagara bado*.

*kage** كَاغِي, leg bent by disease.

kag(g)o* كَغُو, wall of a house.

kagua كَاغُوَا, pl. *kagunai* كَاغُونِي, edible crab, lives in the water.

kai كَي, pron. 2nd pers. sing. emphatic, thou, thou thyself; used with *ka* to form emphatic aor. 2nd pers. *kai ka nema* thou didst seek; also with *da*, *tare da kai* with thee thyself.

Frequently used as an exclamation to call anyone or attract his attention; *kai yaro* ho boy!

kai كَي, *kai** كَي, pl. *kanua* كَانُوَا, *kawuna** كَاوُنَا, *kawana* كَاوَنَا and *kawuna* كَاوُنَا, 1. head of animated beings; A 80, D 64, F 114 *tana kona fa kanua na fashewa* it will burn their heads and split them, *chivonkai* headache; 2. fig. top or summit of anything; *kain tudu* the summit of the hill, *kandaki* an upper storey in a house; 3. sum, substance or chief point of a statement, chapter of a book. *kai* in conjunction with the personal pron. is used as a periphrasis for the reflexive and emphatic pron. (a) with *da* as *ni dakaina* I myself, *shi dakansa* he himself, etc., *ita dakanta* or *ita takanta* she herself; (b) without *da* as *ni kaina* I myself, C 4, *kai nasa* himself, C 5. The final *i* is dropped except in the first person, e.g. *kanka*, *kansa*, *kansu*; cf. *akan* above, a contraction of *a kai na* on the head of.

kai كَي, 1. to carry, to carry a load; 2. to take, take away, conduct, guide, attain to; A 10 *kowa ya nomi hatsi (ya) kai babban gari* everyone who sows corn (i.e. good deeds), attains to the great city (i.e. heaven) (or will receive a great city); 3. to

this verb is probably to be referred the *kai* in the phrase *ba shi kai hakkanan ba* it is too much, or it is not so; cf. *kawa* to take away, *kaya* a load, *kaiwa* a present.

kaia, 1. burden; 2. gift; 3. thorn; cf. *kaya*.

kaicho, alas! i.q. *kaito*, q.v.

*kaifafa** كَيْفَفَ, to hasten.

kaifi كَيْفِ, كَيْفِي, cf. Ar. كَيْفَةٌ, edge, e.g. of a knife, of the bridge *alsirat*, F 144; *da kaifi* edged, sharp.

kaikai كَيْكِي, itching pain; the itch, *croucrow* a disease very common on the W. coast of Africa.

kaikai كَيْكِي, the chaff obtained when any grain is beaten out.

kaikara كَيْكَارًا, lit. bringing of accusation, 1. accusation; 2. to accuse; cf. *kára*.

kaikaya كَيْكِيَا, a leguminous shrub.

kaimi كَيْمِي, كَيْمِي, pl. *kayumi* كَيْمِي, spur, also used of the spurs of a cock.

kainijia كَيْنِيَجِيَا (compound of *kai* and *ijia*), eyelashes.

kainua كَيْنُوَا, a kind of edible herb like lettuce in appearance; it grows in water.

kainya كَيْنِيَا or *kaiwa* كَيْوَا, name of a large tree with many branches, bearing a sweet edible fruit; cf. *mad(d)i*.

kaitaro, see seq.

kaito كَيْتُو, كَيْتُ, *kaicho* كَيْئُو or *kaitaro* كَيْتَرُو, alas! F 30; found in construction with suff. pron. O 13 *kaitunka wawa* alas for thee, O fool.

kaiwa كَيْوَا, a tree, i.q. *kainya*, q.v.

kaiwa كَيْوَا, a present, especially one given to a king; cf. *kai*.

kaka كَاكَ, how; A 21 *sun fada kaka su ke aiki taada mallamai* they declare how men may act like Mallams; also used interrogatively; *kokaku* however.

kak(k)a كَاكَ, the harvest season, which lasts about one month and comes at the end of the wet season (*damana*) before the rain has quite ceased. In the greater part of Hausaland *kaka* would approximately correspond to November.

káka كَاكَ, pl. *kakani* كَاكَنِي, 1. grandfather; 2. ancestor, B 75; D 58 *akantarshimu dukamu hal kakanmu adamu* we shall all be gathered together even to our ancestor Adam; cf. *kakata*.

*kakabe**, to shake off; cf. *kalkada*.

*kakábi** كَاكَابِي, to marvel as at a thing never before seen.

kakaki كَاكَاكِي, trumpet, musical instrument played before a king; cf. (?) *kaki*.

kakari كَاكَرِي, 1. vanity, vain, untrue; 2. swelling on hand or foot.

kakartsa, to bow; cf. *karkat(t)a*.
kakaruko ڪڪرڪو or *kukaruku*,
 ڪڪرڪو, to crow (probably
 onomatopoeitic); cf. *aguwawa*.
kakata ڪاڪاتا, grandmother.
*kakan** ڪاڪو = *maikauda* one
 who drives away in war.
*kaki** ڪڪي, to spit.
kaki ڪڪي, probably connected
 with prec., found in compound
kukin zumua bees'-wax.
kakigani ڪڪيغني, found in the
 compound *kakiganin allah*,
 name of a large species of
 black bird which appears to
 be always gazing down.
kala ڪالا (cf. (?) Ar. ڪَلَا,
 herbage), gleaning of harvest,
 remainder of nuts, food, etc.;
yi kala to glean.
*kala kala** ڪالا ڪالا, certainly not.
kal(l)abi ڪالاب, handkerchief on
 a woman's head.
*kalabta** ڪالبت, to sit down, used
 of camels, donkeys, etc.
kalachi ڪالچي (cf. (?) Ar.
 قَال, to drink at midday), break-
 fast, midday meal, any meal.
*kalai** ڪالي, Ar. فُلِي, washing of
 clothes, reduplicated form in
 B 136 *banza kalai kalai ba*
addini the washing of clothes
 is worthless apart from reli-
 gion; generally used with
wanke = to wash well and
 thoroughly.

*kalami** ڪلامي, Ar. ڪَلَام, words,
 D 7; cf. *kalmuta*.
kalango ڪالنگو, drum, made with
 wood or out of a calabash; it
 is shaped like an hour-glass, and
 held under the arm; pressure
 on the strings alters the sound
 of the drum. One such would
 be used by the king's fool.
kalgo ڪالگو or *kargo* ڪرگو, small
 tree with slightly fragrant
 leaves, used for wrapping up
 food in; its bark is used by
 women for darkening their
 lips.
*kal(l)i** ڪالي or *kal(l)e* ڪالي, Ar.
 قَل, to regard lightly, disregard,
 refuse to listen; F 34 *fa kowa*
ya zageka ka kale when anyone
 abuseth thee regard it not.
*kal(l)i** or *kel(l)i** ڪلي, to shine
 as metal, a star, etc.; cf. (?) *kalai*.
*kalilan** ڪاليلن, Ar. ڪَلِيل, a little
 = *kankani*.
kalikashin, below; cf. *kalkashin*.
kalkada ڪالڪادي, *kalkade*
 ڪالڪادي, *karkade*
 ڪرڪادي or (?) *kakabe* ڪاڪابي,
 to shake off; *kalkada kura* to
 shake off the dust; D 5 *ba*
wanan da kan jishi ba shi kal-
kade ba that which you hear
 cast not away.
kalkaf(f)i ڪالڪف, towel, napkin,
 small piece of cloth.
kalkashin ڪالڪاشن, *kalikashin*

كَرْكَشِنْ or *karkashin* كَرْكَشِنْ,

1. under, underneath, below;
2. used without a final *n* (i.e. *na*), bottom or base of anything.

kalkeche كَلْبِي، wild dog or jackal.

*kalgili** فَلْغِي، Ar. فَلْغَةٌ, joy, delight, B 163.

kalmas(s)a كَلْمَسْ or *kalma(s)she*

- كَلْمَشِي، 1. to bend, roll up, make a collar, hem, etc.; 2. to avoid, in pass. B 37 *akalmas-sheta* أَكَلْمَشْتَا let it be avoided; 3. *kalmasshe* with *zuchia* = to fail to get one's desire, to be disappointed; 4. *kalmasshen zuchia* = illiberality.

*kalmata** كَلْمَاتَا، Ar. كَلِمَةٌ, words, B 1; cf. *kalami*.

kal(l)o كَلُو، to look at, to gaze, stare at; *yin kallo* id., *ka faye kallona* you continue staring at me, *makel(l)achi* مَاكَلِي one who stares, in a bad sense.

kal(l)o كَلُو، found repeated in expression *kal(l)o kal(l)o* very fine; cf. (?) *kal(l)i*.

*kalu** كَلُو، found in compound *kalun itache* a dried-up tree = *kubri*.

kalua كَلُوَا، seeds of the *doriwa* tree; they are contained in a pod like that of a bean and are eaten in soup.

*kalulua** كَلُولُوَا، pain in the groin.

*kam** كَمْر، as to, e.g. *ni kam* for my part, in my opinion; usually implying a negative statement, *ni kam* = I did not, it is not I. In A 56 etc. *kam* = 'when' or 'if' and is perhaps a shortened form of *kami*, q.v.

kama كَامر، to seize, to catch, lay hold on; then in various secondary applications, e.g. *ya kuma hainya* he took his road, pursued his journey, *ya kama* it succeeds = *ya yi, ba ni kama* I would not believe; *kamu* كَامُو to catch, *kamu kifi* to fish; *makama* مَكَامَا, q.v. that which is laid hold of, handle; *makami* مَكَامِي arms.

kam(m)a كَمَا، Ar. id., as, like, like as; *kama wanan* like this; *kama* used with a word denoting measure = about; with *da* affixed *kamada* and *kamanda* = like as, according as (cf. *tamkarda*), *yi kamada* to be like to; most commonly *kama* assumes the constr. form, as *kaman wanan* like this, *kamandā* كَمَنْدَا or *kama nadā* as before, *kaman kurege* like a jerboa. In A 33 *zasu tashi kaman karre* they shall rise in the form of dogs, is seen its transition to a noun; hence several following forms, nominal and verbal. *kama* كَمَا, pl. *kamamu*

کَمِنُو, 1. likeness, image, picture, appearance; 2. one's like, companion, associate, fellow, partner, friend (cf. Fulah *kama* friend). *kama** **کَمَا** to befit (= *kamata*), found in D 4 *abinda ba shi kama ba* that which is unfitting. *kamache* **کَمَائِي**, to befit, to become, to behave. *kamata* **کَمَات**, to be becoming and so, to be necessary; *ya kamata* it is becoming, we ought, etc., A 24 *noma ga mata bai kamata ba kun sani* farmwork is not becoming for a wife, you know.

kamal **کَمَل**, another form of *kaman*; A 13 *kamal daki* like a room.

*kamal** **کَمَل**, Ar. **کَمَل**, end, completion, B fin.

kamata, see *kama*.

kamazoro **کَمَزُورُو**, the strap, held in hand, tied to the bit *lizami*.

*kambi** **کَنْبِي** (cf. (?) Ar. rt **کَنْب**, to become rich), 1. fine expensive clothes, stored up treasures, esp. those of a king; 2. strength; *shina da kambi* he is strong. Possibly this may be a form of *karifi*, q.v.

kambori **کَنْبُورِي**, 1. finger-nail, also used collectively for all the finger-nails, cf. *ahaiifa*; 2. egg-shell, cf. *kosfa*.

*kambori** **فَنْبُورِي**, Ar. **فَمَر**, fine

white calico or brocade, such as is imported from England; cf. *alkamura* from the same Arabic root.

*kami** **کَمِي**, **کَمِي**, till, until, when, D 91 *kami mareche* until evening; A 12 *kami ka zona* when thou sittest down.

kamna **کَمْنَا**, **فَمْنَا**, Ar. **فَمَن**, 1. love, desire, e.g. *kamna ta tsaya* love is aroused; C 9 *ya nuida kamna tai ga banza duniu* he directs his desires towards this vain world, B 2, 169 *abin kamna* a thing beloved; 2. used as a verb after pronouns ending in *na* to love, e.g. *ina kamnaka* I love thee; B 165 *muna kamna* we desire, or with *yi*, e.g. *na yi kamnansa* = *na sonsa* I love him; 3. with accus. *kamna fuska* to look pleased at seeing, e.g. a friend; cf. *kankamna*.

kamshi **فَمَشِي**, 1. an agreeable smell, *abin kamshi* scent of any kind; 2. incense, B 169.

kamu, to catch; cf. *kama*.

kamu **کَامُو**, a measure of length from the elbow to the tip of the middle finger, cubit; the common measure used in selling cloth.

*kamua** **کَامُوَا**, pledge held for money owing; cf. (?) *kama*.

kamunkaf (f) **کَامُنْکَا**, the two pieces of cloth sewn on at the bottom of native trousers; they

are about six inches wide and brightly coloured.

kamzo ڪَمَزُو, *kanzo* ڪَنَزُو or *amzo** اَمَزُو, the burning of food on the fire.

*kan** ڪَن, *kana** ڪَانَ or *kanda** ڪَنَدَ, conjunctive particle, before that, until, then; *kan su gama* before they have done, *kare wanan kana ka yi wonchan* finish this before you do that, B 57 *kanda ta rabika* before it part you; cf. *kana*, *kanda*.

*kan**, rarely used as the second personal pronoun before a past tense; cf. use of *sun* they.

kan ڪَن (ڪَم before *b*) or *ka* ڪَا, a defective auxiliary, used in order to give to verbs (1) a frequentative or habitual sense; cf. A 54 *wanan da kan rika taimama* the man who always performed his ablutions with sand; (2) a subjunctive or concessive sense, B 137 *almajiri shi kan bida dengi nai* the pupil would seek after his relations; cf. also *kanwa*.

*kana**, see *kan**.

*kana** ڪَانَ (cf. Ar. ڪُون), used as an emphatic substantive verb, A 30, 45, 52.

kanana, little, small, few; used as pl. of *karami*, q.v.

*kanda**, see *kan*.

kandaki ڪَنَدَڪِي, pl. *kandakuna* ڪَنَدَڪُنَا, composed of *kai* and

daki, lit. head of the house; second storey, room above; cf. *kai*.

kandama ڪَنَدَمَا, found in compound *kandaman kai* top of the head; cf. (?) *kundumin kai* absence of hair on the head.

kandilu ڪَنَدِيلُو, dung of cows or camels.

kandu ڪَنَدُو or *kandun ido*, 1. declaring what is on the inside of anything by simply looking at it; 2. a stone used as a charm tied to a woman's neck.

kane ڪَنَبِي, *kane** ڪَنَبِي, pl. *kanena* ڪَنُونِي and *kanoni* ڪَنُونِي, younger brother, A 9; for fem. form cf. *kanua*.

*kan(n)e** ڪَنَبِي, 1. winking, 2. to wink with one eye, *yi kanne*, id.; *kaniarwa* ڪَنِيَاوَا, winking, cf. *kankani*.

kanga, a knife; cf. *kangar*.

kanga ڪَنَغَا or *konga* ڪَنَغَا, plain, flat place without trees, ravine; *kangan fadda* battlefield.

kangalai ڪَنَغَلِي, a long piece of wood tied beside the ear, projecting for some distance before and behind, used as a punishment for thieving.

kangar ڪَنَغَر or *kanga* ڪَنَغَا (cf. (?) Ar. ڪَنَجَر), 1. a rough knife used esp. by pagans with circular handle to fit on wrist and blade projecting back-

wards; 2*. cavalry assembled for war.

*kangara** كَنْغَرًا, to rebel, to refuse to work.

*kangara** كَنْغَرًا, adv. phr. *da kangara* vigorously, B 36; fiercely, strongly.

kangaru كَنْغَرُوا, a strong mare.

kango كَنْغُو, pl. *kangogi* كَنْغُوغِي, 1. desolation; 2. desolate, empty; 3. a desolate and ruined house; 4. a house, built without a door, used as a prison.

kaniawa, winking with the eye; cf. *kan(n)e*.

kankama كَنْكَمًا, new sprouts growing up after trees or grass have been cut down.

*kankama** كَنْكَمًا, a strengthened form of *kama* to seize.

kankamna كَنْكَمْنَا, 1. to dislike, ill-treat, cf. *kamna*; 2*. to frown, probably for *kankani*, q.v.

kankana, fem. form of *kankani*, q.v.

kankana كَنْكَنَا, water-melon.

*kankana** كَنْكَنَا, expr. found in F 36 = *dakanka* thou thyself.

kankanchi كَنْكَنْشِي, كَنْكَنْشِي (possibly this may be the French *cuncan* Arabicised into كَنْكَنْ, idle gossip), dishonour, anger, quarrelling; B 83 *nu sa kankanchi* let us put aside quarrelling, *yi kankanchi da* to quarrel with = *kankani*.

kankandi كَنْكَنْدِي, a bag.

*kankani** كَنْكَنْي, to quarrel; cf. *kankanchi*.

*kankani** كَنْكَنْي, a strengthened form of *kan(n)e*, found in expr. *yin kankanin ido* to look with the eyes nearly shut.

kankani كَنْكَنْي, *kankane* كَنْكَنْبِي, fem. *kankana* كَنْكَنَا, pl. *kankanu* كَنْكَنْو or *kankana* كَنْكَنَا, little, few, A 22; cf. *karami*, *kanana*.

kankanta كَنْكَنْتَا, 1. small, cf. *hallin kankanta* childishness; 2. to evil intreat, beat, etc.; cf. *kankanchi*.

kankar(r)a كَنْكَرًا, hail.

kankari كَنْكَرِي, 1. to peel, scrape, rub out; cf. *makankara* A 38 *مَكَنْكَرًا* = one to rub out; 2*. to hoe grass, A 24 *mata kar ka sata akankari* you may not put a wife to hoe grass.

*kankashi** كَنْكَشِي, haunch, used of the cow.

kankeso كَنْكَسُو, pl. *kankesai* كَنْكَسِي, cockroach.

kanki or *kenki* كَنْكِي, a large species of antelope.

kano كَنْو, Kano, the commercial metropolis of the W. Soudan, G 5; cf. 'Hausaland,' pp. 100-123.

kansa, himself; cf. *kai*.

kansakali كَنْسَكَلِي, a sword.

kantu كَنْتُو, pyramidal load of salt such as could be carried on a man's head; sugar is also made into the shape of a *kantu* about 2½ ft. high for transport across the desert.

kantururua كَنْتُرُورُوا, black seeds worn by women as beads round the neck.

kanua كَنْوَا, *kanua** فَنَوَا, sister, fem. of *kane*, q.v.

kanumfari كَنْمُفَرِي, Ar. فَرَنْبَل, cloves.

kanwa كَنْوَا, natron, saltpetre; 1. *farin kanwa* used in making *tu*; 2. *ja kanwa* used as a medicine; 3. *kanwa gwangwarassa* = *magamin haifua*; 4. *kanwa ungunnu* used for making armlets with. The natron imported into Hausaland by native caravans is chiefly obtained from natron lakes in Bornu near L. Chad.

*kanwa** كَنْوَا, lengthened form of *kan*, denoting the conditional mood; B 12 *chiuta da jahili kanwa kai nai* the evil (lit. disease) of the ignorant man will take him away.

kanzo كَنْزُو, burnt food; cf. *kanzo*.

kapara كَبَارَا, perjury, chiefly used in the phrase *yi kapara* to swear falsely; cf. (†) *kafiri*.

*kar** كَر, a form of the prohibitive particle *kad(d)a*, q.v.; A 24 *kar*

ka sata a kankari you may not put her to hoe grass.

kar(r)a كَر or *kar(r)o* كَرُو, to come together violently as two rams, or as in the shock of battle; *karro da duchi* to stumble against a stone. *karro* is also used as a noun; *wanan ya yi karro da wonchan* this meets that, or conflicts with that.

kára كَار, to bleat.

kára كَارَا, 1. cause of complaint; *kai kara* to bring an accusation, with *ga* = to accuse; 2. to call upon, refer dispute to a judge, accuse.

kára فَار, to add to, to increase; when followed by another verbal form it qualifies it in the sense of the adverbs 'more,' 'further,' 'again,' or with a negative, 'no more,' 'not again,' etc., e.g. *ya kara kuka* he continued crying, *ban kara tashi* I did not rise again.

*kara** فَارَا to cry out; *kana kara* thou criest out, F 79; cf. *kir(r)a*.

kara كَارَا, reed, stalk or stem of plants; e.g. *karan hachi*, *karan shinkaffa* stalk of corn or rice, *karan masallachi* the name of a water reed often planted near mosques.

karafa كَرَفَا, ring of metal placed round hands or legs of women; cf. *kar(r)o*, *kundeg(g)e*.

*karafafa** كَرَفَب, to give an answer.

karafafa, a plural form, strong men; cf. *karifi*.

karaga ڪَرَا، couch of king or judge, judgment-seat, seat on which a king is carried about.

*karaiar** ڪَرِيَرُ، construct form, protection (?); cf. F 86, note.

*karaki** ڪَرَكِي، trouble, difficulty.

*karama** ڪَارَمَا، increase; B 68 *shi baka yanzu gobe shi karama* he gives to-day, he increases on the morrow; cf. *girmama*.

karamami ڪَارَمَامِي or *karmami* ڪَرَمِي، sprout or stalk of guinea corn, etc.

karambani ڪَرَمَبَانِي، ڪَرَمَبَانِي، interference with a matter which does not concern one.

karambik(k) ڪَرَمَبِيڪ، ڪَرَمَبِيڪ، fox, jackal (?); cf. *dila*.

karami ڪَرَمِي، fem. *karama* ڪَرَمَا or *karamia* ڪَرَمِيَا، pl. *karamu* ڪَرَمُو، *kanana* ڪَنَنَا، and *kanana* ڪَنَنَنَا (q.v.), little, small; cf. *karanchi*.

karam(m)ia ڪَرَمِيَا، a species of gourd; cf. *kabewa*.

karamta ڪَرَمَتَا، path; F 144 *karamta taswa gashi babu warwa* its path is (as fine as) a hair, without doubt; cf. *karapta*.

kar(r)ana ڪَرَنَا، a large tree, the fruit of which is ground up and used as an ointment.

karanchi ڪَرَنْڻِي، abstr. n. from *karami*, q.v., a small quantity; *karanchi dagga mutane* few men.

karangama ڪَرَنْغِيَا، ladder, steps.

karangia ڪَرَنْغِيَا or *karengia*

ڪَرَنْغِيَا or *karingia* ڪَرَنْغِيَا (pennisetum distichum), thorns, a grass, the prickles of which stick to the clothes; the seeds are used for food, especially in the northern part of Hausaland on the borders of the desert.

karangod(d)a ڪَرَنْغَدَا، a small male deer; cf. *god(d)a*.

karan hanchi ڪَارَنْ حَنْشِي، bridge of the nose; cf. *hanchi*.

*karanta** ڪَرَنْتَا، ڪَرَنْتَا، Ar. فَرَأَ، 1. taught, learned; 2. to teach.

karapta ڪَرَيْپَتَا (cf. (?) Ar. قَرَبَ، to draw near), with *da*, to meet a person coming from opposite direction, e.g. *ya karapta dashi*.

karara ڪَرَرَا، a prickly tuberous plant; it causes severe itching on skin.

karara ڪَرَرَا، a woman without child, barren.

karātu ڪَرَاتُو، ڪَرَاتُو، Ar. قَرَأَ، 1. reading, then story, language, words, D 1, A 9 *wanan karatu hamza ne* this is the story of Hamza; 2. to read, to learn, A 16 *su sun karatu* they read, *yin karatu* with accusative, to read; *makaranta* مَكْرَنْتَا، school.

kar(r)au, armllet; cf. *kar(r)o*.
karaurawa, bells, pl. of *kar(r)o*,
 q.v.
karaya or *karaiā* کَرِيَا, a species
 of (jelly ?) fish which emits a
 poisonous fluid; cf. *kawora*.
karaya کَرِيَا, trembling, excite-
 ment.
karaya, breaking; proverb *laudi*
ba karaya ba bending is not
 breaking; cf. *karya*, id.
karayeya کَرِيِي, to break, a
 strengthened form of *karya*.
karba کَرَب, *kariba** کَرِب, *karbi*
 کَرِبِي or *karibi** کَرِبِي, 1. to
 take, to take by force, to
 snatch; 2. to accept, receive;
karbiwa taking away; for use
 of passive cf. C 14 *bai san da*
ra nai za akarbiwa tasa he
 knew not that his life was
 about to be taken away. *karbo*
 کَرَبُو, to take to oneself; hence
 the imperative *karbo* = receive!
 cf. *karba* = take!
kar(r)e کَرِي, fem. کَرِيَا, pl. *kar-*
nuka کَرِنُكَا (Kanuri *keri*), dog,
 A 33, F 184; *karren rua* an
 animal like a dog, that lives
 by streams and supports itself
 by catching fish; *karren gidda*
 house-dog.
karē کَرِي, کَرِي (cf. (?) Ar. فَرَّ,
 to stop, be done with), 1. end,
 e.g. D 85 *giddan kare* an abode
 which comes to an end, lit.
 house of end; 2. v. tr. to end,

finish; as v. intr. to come to
 an end, e.g. B 74 *da kai da*
dunia ku kare duk thou and
 the world ye shall both come
 to an end; cf. B 71, 91. Also
 used impersonally to qualify
 adverbially other verbs, *ya yi*
magana ya kare he finished
 speaking; *ya kare* is frequently
 used impersonally = it is enough,
 the matter is at an end. *ka-*
rewa فَاِرِنُوَا, ending, end, B 80;
 an intensive form *kar̄kare*
 فَرَقَارِي, to come utterly to an
 end, is found in B 141 *dunia*
zata ta kar̄kare this world
 shall come utterly to an end;
makara or *makare* end.
*kare** کَارِي, found at B 116,
 to drive away; cf. *kora*.
karembiki کَرَمَبِيكِي, a woman about
 to give birth to a child.
karengia, a thorny grass; cf. *ka-*
rangia.
karewa, end; cf. *kare*.
karfa(s)shi کَرَفَشِي, a species of
 flat-fish.
karfata کَرَفَتَا or *karifata* كَرِفَتَا,
 the loins, from the knee to
 the hip joint.
karfe, strong; cf. *karifi*.
karfi کَرَفِي, strength; cf. *karifi*.
*karfu** فَرَبُو, pl. *karfuna** فَرُونَا,
 F 107, a whip; cf. *kurafu*.
kargo, the name of a tree; cf.
kalgo, id.

kar(r)i کَرِی, 1. abundance; 2. swelling on skin, sting, e.g. of scorpion.

kari, meaning; cf. *ker(r)e*.

kar(r)ia کَرِیَا, bitch, fem. of *kar(r)e*, q.v.

karia, کَرِیَا, قَرِیَا, 1. tale, story; 2. what is merely a story, falsehood, lie; B 107, D 7. Hence the expression *giddan karia* this present world, lit. house of falsehood, opposed to *giddan gaskia* the place to which all go when they die until *ranan gobe*. *kariachi* کَرِیْتِ, falsehood; *makariachi* a liar.

karia, *kari*, *kariwa*, to break; cf. *karya*, *karye*, *karyewa*.

kariachi, see *karia*.

kariba, to take; cf. *karba*, id.

*karifafa**, to strengthen, intensive form from *karifi*, q.v.

karifata کَرِیْتَا, thigh; cf. *karfata*.

karifi کَرِیْفِ, pl. *karafa* کَرَفَا or *karifuna* کَرِیْنَا, 1. iron; *jan karifi* brass; 2. strength, power; *da karifi* powerfully; *maikarifi* strong. *karfi* کَرِیْفِ, a shortened form of *karifi*, C 32, D 41. *karfe* کَرِیْفِ, F 84 *sunu karfe halli* they have a strong disposition, they gave not way to tears. *karifafa** کَرِیْفَا, to strengthen; *karafafa* کَرَفَا, strong men; *karkarifa* very strong.

karifi or *karipi* کَرِیْفِ (cf. Ar. کَرِیْفَا, to foam, of a pot), earthen pot.

karikache کَرِکَئِ, fem. *karikata*

کَرِکَاتِ, pl. *karikatu* کَرِکَاتُو, 1. bent or tottering, as of a wall; 2. to turn off from the road, lose the way, cf. *goche*; to do wrong, cf. *karkache*.

karikara کَرِکَرَا or *karkara* کَرِکَرَا, pl. *karkarori* کَرِکَرُورِ and *karkaroni* کَرِکَرُونِ, cf. Ar. فَرَفْرُ, a very large field or plain.

karikari کَرِکَرِی or *karkari* کَرِکَرِی, to draw, drag.

*karinu** کَرِیْمُ, Ar. کَرِیْمُ, gracious, F 16.

karingia کَرِیْنِیَا, a thorny grass; cf. *karangia*.

kaririye کَرِیْرِی, to break up, an intensive form of *karya*, q.v.

kariya, *kariye*, see *karya*, *karye*.

karkache, to turn off, i.q. *karikache*, q.v.

*karkache** کَرِکَئِ or *karikache* کَرِکَئِ, found in phrases *mutum akarkache* a man of bad disposition, *kai karikache* you have done wrong; cf. *karikache* to lose the way.

karkachi کَرِکَئِ (cf. (?) Ar. فَرَفْرُ) a game played by children.

karkade, to shake off, e.g. dust; cf. *kalkada*.

karkara, see *karikara*.

karkare 'فرقاری, to come utterly to an end, intensive form of *kare*, q.v.

karkari, to draw, i.q. *karikari*, q.v.

*karkari** كَرْكِرِي, to scrape, perhaps = prec.

karkarifa كَرْكِرِيَا, very strong, an intensive from *karifi*, q.v.

karkashin, underneath; cf. *kalkashin*.

karkat(t)a كَرْفَتَا, كَرْفَتَا, and by metathesis *kakartsa* كَكَرْطَا,

1. to bend, e.g. B 38; 2. to bow with head to one side so as to listen intently; with *kunua* ear, D 32 *ku karkatta kunua en gaira maku gaskiana* give attention, that I may explain to you the truth which I have, F 7 *abokina ka kakartsa kunua naka. maikatarta* مَبَكْتَرْتَا one who trembles, D 46.

karkia كَرْكِيَا, yoke, Y-shaped, put on necks of slaves.

*karko** كَرْكُو or *yin karko*, to last, endure; cf. (?) seq.

*karko** كَرْكُو, found in B 71 *karko mu we end* (?).

*karma** كَرْمَا, prostitute, E 16; = *karua*.

karmami, blades of corn; cf. *karamami*, id.

kar(r)o كَرُو or *karau* كَرُو, pl. *karaurawa* كَرُوْرُوَا, 1. armlet made of natron, *kanwa*, espe-

cially worn by Nupé women; cf. *karafa*, *kundeg*(g)e; 2*. small bell attached to a horse.

kar(r)o, to meet; cf. *kar(r)a*.

karu كَارُو, 1. a kind of gum put in ink; 2. *karon maje*, a sort of gum drawn from a tree and used for perfumes.

karoki كَارُوك, boards, paddles.

karoro, a bag of cowries; cf. *kororo*.

*karsana** كَرْسَنَا, small female calf.

*karsan(n)i** كَرْسِنِي, a large or very fat man.

*karsha** كَرْشَا, heel (?); cf. seq.

karshe كَرْشِي, end, the last; used adverbially B 94 *domin abinda zashi gani karshe* for that which he will see at the end; *makarshe* = last.

*karta** كَرْتَا, to scrape with a knife.

karu كَارُو, to abound, to increase, used of the sun, to rise high, e.g. *rana ta karu* the sun rises high in the sky, opposed to *rana ta ragu*.

karua كَارُوَا, bad woman, prostitute; cf. *karma*, id.

karufa كَرْفَا, pl. كَرْفِي, high riding-boots.

*karuki**, see *karoki*.

karya كَرْيَا or *karye* كَرْيِي, to break; F 175 *shi karya kasshi* it will break their bones, *karya azumi* to breakfast, *ka karya mani zuchia* you break my heart, you discourage or dishearten

me. *karyewa* كَرِيوَا, breaking;

karaya كَرِيَا, q.v., id.; *kaririye* كَرِيِي or *karayeya* كَرِيِي, to break up, to scatter.

kas(s)a كَسَا, فَسَا, pl. *kas(s)ashi* كَسَاشِي and *kas(s)asa* كَسَاسَا

(cf. (?) Ar. كَسَس, to pulverize), 1. earth, soil; A 76, F 96 *akwaba kasa ana kuma labarwa* earth is mixed and kneaded up again; 2. the ground; *a kassa* on the ground, usually shortened to *akass*; hence used to express, down below (cf. *a bissa* above); *na kassa* m., *ta kassa* fem., used as adj., the one beneath, the lower; *abin kasa* = worms, etc.; as adv. *taffo kassa*, *shiddo kassa* come down! 3. land, country; in a geographical sense *kasan hausa* = Hausaland; cf. seq.

kas(s)a كَسَس, كَسَا, to place on the ground, to lower to the ground; shortened to *kass*, used fig.; A 29 *anso ta kass muria chikkin magana nata* let her be willing to lower her voice in speaking; cf. (?) seq.

kasa كَاسَس, to fall short of, cf. D 47, B 122; hence to fail one, disappoint one, e.g. *ba ya kasa mani komi ba* he failed me in nothing. *kasasda* كَاسَسَد, to decline; *ina kasasda karifi* I am growing weak. *kasashe* كَاسَشِي, to lower, make less.

*kas(s)a** كَسَس, كَسَا, to divide up = *raba*.

*kasa**, hen; cf. *kaza*.

kasa كَاسَا, a large black and white poisonous snake, its flesh edible.

kas(s)ada كَسَدَد, 1. to believe in, to rely on God; 2*. to wander as a beggar afar alone.

kasaita كَسَيْتَا, كَسَيْتَا, cf. Ar. كَسَا, to be proud.

kasala كَسَالَا, Ar. كَسَل, found in compound *maikasala*, a beggar who refuses to work.

kasanchi كَسَنْشِي, to continue, remain; used like *tabbeta*.

kasasda, to grow less; cf. *kasa*.

kasashe, to lower or make less; cf. *kasa*.

*kasau** كَسُو or فَاسُو, killing, murderous; cf. (?) *ka(s)she*.

kasarusawa كَاسُوسُوَا, a kind of long spear, not used for throwing.

*kasba** كَسَبَا, beads.

kasegi كَسَيْغِي, forked iron stick on neck of a horse.

kas(s)eri كَسِيرِي, water in which rice or grain has been washed.

kaservu كَسِرُوَا (a corruption of *kasa-n-rua*), water-duck.

*ka(s)she**, to exist; cf. *ka(s)shi*.

ka(s)she كَشِي, *kasshi** كَشِي or *kis(s)a* كَسَا, (?) forms of verb *kas(s)a* or *kada*, 1. to bring to the ground, overpower; 2. to

kill; G 6, l. 15 *suka kasshi mutanen zarya* they killed the men of Zaria; hence 3. of money, to spend, e.g. *ya kasshe kurdi*; 4. to condemn, e.g. *alkali ya kassheni* the judge condemned me; *kissa magana* to end conversation; *kasau* كَسُو, q.v., murderous; *kasshin kai* كَشْنُ كَيْ, murder, lit. killing the head. *kas(s)u* كَسُو, q.v., is perhaps formed from the same root.

kaishi كَاشِ, the dung of animals.

ka(s)shi كَشِي, كَاشِي or *ka(s)she**

كَشِي, 1. to be, to exist, D 39; 2. to continue; B 54 *en ka shiru kasshe* if thou continuest silent. *kasshi* is frequently found in written but seldom or never occurs in colloquial Hausa.

ka(s)shi فَشِي, pl. *kasusua* فَسُوْسُوَا, bone, F 175; *kasshin ido* = long ridge over eyes, *kasshin kai* skull, *kasshin tsotso* back-bone.

ka(s)shinkai, murder; cf. *ka(s)she*.

kaska كَسْكََا, vermin infesting horses, goats, etc.

*kaskasta** كَسْكَسْتْ or *kuskunta* كُسْكَنْتْ, to drive away in disgust, to despise; *makaskachi* مَاكَسْكَبِي, oppressed.

kaskawani كَسْكَوْنِ, a small herb with white flowers, rubbed on

the skin in order to cure crow-crow.

kasko كَسْكَو, pl. *kasaki* كَسَاكِي, a vessel made of clay, round, without top, of medium size; i.e. larger than *buta*, smaller than *tulu*.

*kasru** فَصْرُ (Ar. فَصْرُ, a castle), found in compound F 55 *enna sheddadu maikasru almashidi* where is Sheddad, the owner of the mighty palace?

kass كَسْ, 1. shortened form of the verb *kasshe* to kill; 2. to lower, A 29; cf. *kasa*.

kastu or *kestu* كَسْتُو or *ketu* كِتُو, 1. a flint to strike fire with; 2. *kestu wuta* to strike fire with a flint.

*kas(s)u** كَسُو, to subject, subdue, bring into subjection; cf. (?) *ka(s)she*.

kasurwa or *kasua* كَسُوَا (in A 15, 25 كَوُسُوَا), 1*. grass eaten by animals; 2. a market in which some special article is sold, e.g. meat, bread, grass for animals. The meaning grass-market was probably derived from 1., and eventually the word came to be applied to any market or market-place. *dan kasua* (lit. son of a market) is applied to a very small market, e.g. one held under a tree.

kaswa كَسُوَا or *kazua* كَزُوَا,

1. slight swelling anywhere on the body; 2. itch.
- katamba** كَتَبَا, كَتَبَا, thin laths of wood such as are used in building a wall.
- katami* كَتَمِي, a hole where dirty water is thrown.
- katamtamwa* كَتَمْتَمُوا, 1. untimely birth; 2. snail shells; cf. *tan-tanua*.
- katanga* كَتَنَغَا, 1. porch, wall; 2. sherds of pots, etc.
- kátara** كَاتَرَا, thigh.
- katara** كَتَرَا, to wish; cf. seq.
- katarsa** كَتَرَسَا, formed from *katara*, to gratify a wish, D 70.
- katerta** كَتَرْتَا (cf. (?) Ar. كَتَرٌ, dignity), prosperity, D 2 note; *maikaterta* prosperous, D 83.
- kato* فَاتُو, fem. *katuwa* فَاتُوا, strong male or female slave; cf. (?) *gato*.
- katsu** فَطُ, Ar. id., ever; B 23 *ba su gamu katsu* they have never met.
- katumi*, a charm; cf. *hatumi*, id.
- katuwa*, fem. form of *kato*, q.v.
- kan** كَوُ, 1. to go away; C 20 *en ka ga tsofa nan ka che kuu nana* when thou perceivest her age thou wouldest say to her, Depart from here; 2. to spread out.
- kauchara* كَوُتْرَا, كَوُتْرَا, the river of paradise, F 214; often with the Ar. article prefixed, v. *al-kauchara*, id.; cf. Koran cviii.
- kauchi* كَوُتِي, كَوُتِي, 1. a graft from one tree to another, seed dropped by a bird which has taken root in the branches of a tree; cf. (?) Ar. كَانْتُ; 2. a charm for catching slaves, etc.
- kauchi*, to remove; cf. *kawa*.
- kauda*, to take or put away, remove, withdraw; cf. *kawa*.
- kaura** كَوُرَا, to remove, e.g. a tent, etc.; *yin kaura*, id.
- kaura* كَوُرَا, a species of red guinea-corn given to horses; cf. *dawu*.
- kaura** كَوُرَا, a title especially used in Katsina = Master of the horse; cf. *aura*, id.
- kaure* كَوُرِي or *kiauri* كِيُورِي, the covering of a door = *tukurua*.
- kauri* كَوُرِي or *kabri* كَبْرِي, cf. Ar. كَبْرٌ, thick, fat.
- kaushi* كَوُشِي, roughness, unevenness of surface.
- kauwa*, to remove, pass. *akauwa* to be removed; cf. *kawa*.
- kauwe* or *kauwi*, quiet, silent; cf. *karwi*.
- kauwera** كَوُورَا, flat place near a house, (?) = Ar. كَوُورَة, a form of *χώρα*.
- kauwi* كَوُوي, tribe, people belonging to a particular town.
- kaurye* فَوُيِي, pl. *kauryuka* فَوُيُوكَا, Ar. فَرْيَة, a small village.
- kaurye* فَوُيِي, *kowi* كَوُوي or *kwie* كَوُوي, side of a body or edge

of anything; B 171 *ba ni ragi kauye ba* I will not decrease even the edge, *kowien rua* edge of a stream, outskirts of a town.

*kawa** كَاوَا, 1. to take, bring forward; D 46 *su kan kawa dalili* they would give a reason; 2*. to become (?).—*kauwa* كَوُو, to remove; *akanwa* to be removed. *kawas* كَاوَس, to put or take away, to remove. *kawasda* كَاوَسَد, to take away, put away, disperse. *karuda* كَرُوْد, to put away, remove, withdraw; used with *kai*, to turn the head away so as not to look at anything, hence to move the head so as to express dissent (cf. *kada kai* to assent). *kauchi* كَوُئِي, to remove. *kawo* كَاوُو, to bring, bring near (cf. *kawas* to put away), to bring to the place where the speaker is; cf. pass. imperative *akawoshi* let it be brought here. *kawowa* كَاوُوَا, particip. form of *kawo*; D 7 *ku ber kai da karawa (kawowa ?) na karia* leave off false dealing, lit. give up taking away and bringing back falsely. *kai* to carry (q.v.) apparently belongs to the same root; cf. also *kaya*, *kaiwa* and (?) *kawu*.

kuwaichi, to conceal; cf. *kawoi*.

kuwaita, to be still; cf. *kawoi*.

kawalwalnia كَوُوْلُوْنِيَا, vapour rising in hot sun.

*kawamata** كَوَمَاتَا, Ar. قَوَمَر, to estimate, to fix a price for; found in pass. *akawamata* E 7, *ankawamata* E 8.

kawana, heads, pl. of *kai*, q.v.; D 64.

kawara كَوَرَا or *alkawara* اَلْكَوَرَا, cowries; cf. *kurdi*.

kawas, to take away; cf. *kawa*.

kawasda to take away, disperse; cf. *kawa*.

kawazuchi فَاوْذِي, 1. covetousness; 2. grasping.

*kawechi** كَوَيْث, edge, end, D 13; cf. *kayye*.

kawo, to bring near, to bring; cf. *kawa*.

kawoi كَوِي, 1. silence; *yin kawoi* to be silent, keep silence; 2. alone.

karwe كَوِي or *kawoi* كَوِي, quiet, silent, only. *kawaita*

كَوَيْت, to be still; pass. *akawaita* be still! *kawaichi*

كَوَيْشِي, to conceal, e.g. a crime.

kawora كَاوَرَا, a species of fish (jelly-fish?); cf. *karaya*.

kawowa, participial form of *kawo*, bringing; cf. *kawa*.

*kawu** كَوُو, cf. Ar. rt كَوَا, to abdicate; *sariki ya kawu*.

kaya or *kaiya* كَايَا, pl. *kayayeki*

كَايِيكِي, 1. load, burden, goods; C 11 *ya kunchi kaya nai* he unties his goods; 2. instruments, tools, apparatus, e.g. *kayan*

daga = battle-arms, shield, etc., *kayan yaki* id., *kayan ado* ornaments, trinkets, etc., *kayan dakka* = large pestle such as is used for beating up guinea-corn; 3. gift; C 48 *na shiria kayana* I make ready my gift; cf. under *kai*.

kaya كَيَا, pl. *kayayua* كَيَاوَا, thorn; *kayan kifi* fish-bones. *kayeta* كَيْتَا, a quantity of thorns or thorny grass, impossible to walk over.

*kayes** كَيْس, to be condemned, be declared guilty; *kayes ga sheria* to lose one's case. *kayeswa** كَيْسَوَا, condemnation; *kayes* is probably connected with *kada* to condemn.

kayeta, see *kaya*.

kaza كَزَا or *kasa** كَسَا, pl. *kaji* كَجِي, hen, fowl, D 11; *kaza maiyaya* the constellation 'Hen and Chickens' which appears when the rainy season is coming, *kazan duchi* a species of quail, *kazan yariba* lit. fowl of Yoruba = guinea-fowl (*zabua*).

kaza كَزَا, Ar. كَزَا id., 1. so, thus; F 39, 227; 2. used to point out a certain person or thing which is to be nameless, so and so, such and such, e.g. *ya fadi kaza da kaza* he said so and so, *abu kaza* such and such a thing, *chikkin wata kaza* = Ar. فِي شَهْرٍ كَزَا.

kazami كَزَامِ, *kazam*, pl. *kazamai*

فَزَامِي, Ar. فَزَمَ, 1. dirt; 2. dirty, unclean, vile. *kazamia* كَزَمْتَا, *kazama* كَزَمْتَا, uncleanness.

kazaza كَزَزَا, cf. (?) Ar. كَزَّ, hump-back.

kazin-tam(m)a كَزِينُ تَمَا, dross skimmed off from molten iron.

*kazinzemi** كَزِينْزَيْمِي, bug (?).

kazizi كَزِزِي (cf. Ar. كَزَّ, to catch cold), a tuber, from which cough medicine is made.

kazua, itch; cf. *kaswa*.

kazum كَزُوم, كَزُوم, deserter or lingerer at home in time of war.

ke كِي or *ki** كِي, emphatic 2nd pers. pron. fem. sing., always in combination with *ki* 2nd pers. pron. fem. sing. in the emphatic aor., e.g. *ke ki taffi* thou didst go; cf. Gr. p. 60.

ke كِي or كِي, defective subst. verb, is, are, e.g. *shi ke nan* so it is; F 7. The subject is of common gender, while that of *ne* is masc. and of *che* fem. Followed by *da* = to have, to possess; *mu ke da su* we have them.

keau كَوُو, كَوُو or كَوُو, frequently pronounced *kiyo*, 1. beauty (physical), *da keau* handsome, beautiful; 2. also used of moral beauty, good, kind. Hence the phr. *da keau* = well, it is well; this is used to express assent; B 135 *en ta yi*

keau if she act well ; *maikeau*
 B 35 = مَيْكُو, B 167 = مَيْكُو,
 beautiful. *keaukeauwa* كَوَاوَا,
 a redupl. form of *keau*, 1. great
 beauty ; 2. very good, very
 fine. *keauta* كَوَاتَا, 1. act of
 kindness, benevolence ; with
yi to show favour, do a kind-
 ness, e.g. *ka yi masa keauta*
 thou didst a favour to him ;
 2. a gift, a present.

kebe كَبِي, to separate, mark off.

kebe كَبِي, iron stirrup ; cf. *ki-
 nami* leather stirrup.

kedaya كَدَا (cf. (?) Ar. قَدَّ,
 measure), 1. account, reckon-
 ing, method of numbering ;
 2. as verb with pronouns ending
 in *na*, e.g. *muna kedaya* we
 reckon ; *su fi kedaya* = in-
 numerable ; cf. *kidda*, *kididig-
 ga*, *didigga*.

kegarua, fortification ; cf. *kagara*.

kek(k)arai كَكَرِي (pl. in form),
 swelling in the hands.

keka(s)she كَكَشِي, to air, to expose
 to the air, to dry, e.g. a *tobe*.

kekaka(s)she كَكَكَشِي, fem.

kekasa(s)shiu كَكَكَشِيَا, pl.

kekasasu كَكَكَسُو, dried,
 aired, dry ; in F 96 *kekasassa*
 كَكَكَسَا = dry earth ; cf. *kas(s)a*.

keke كَكَبِي, cloth, made of blue
 and white alternate strips.

*kelkeji** كَلِكْجِي, wild dog (?) ; cf. *kir-
 keshi*.

kelle كَلِي, a small axe, used in
 fighting, with silver or ornate
 handle.

kemru كَمْرُو, a reed from which
 arrows are made = *gazara*.

kenke كَنْبِي, to worry, to cause
 trouble.

kenke(s)she كَنْبَشِي or *kenkes(s)a*
 كَنْكَس, to hatch.

kenkes(s)o كَنْكَسُو, cockroach.

kenki, an antelope ; cf. *kanki*.

kenwa كَنْوَا, *kyanwa* or *keanwa*
 كَنْوَا, pl. *kenwuna* كَنْوُنَا and
kenwai كَنْوِي, cat, used of
 both wild and tame cat ; cf.
maggi, *mazoro*.

kepta كَبْت, v. in phr. *kepta iddo*
 to wink ; *keptawa* كَبْتَوَا, wink-
 ing ; *keptawan ido* a moment
 of time.

ker(r)e كَرِي or *kari* كَرِي,
 understanding ; in the phr.
ya yi kerren magana he under-
 stands, he has his wits about
 him ; an expression applied to
 a man who understands the
 drift of what another is saying
 from his opening words, and
 interrupts him by saying *ya
 issa*.

ker(r)in كَرِن, كَرِن, very ; used
 only with *bakki*, *bakki kerrin*

very black; cf. *kirin*, *kirin-jijia*.

kerkara كَرَكْرَ, Ar. id., used of a hen, to cackle; i.q. *kerkera*, q.v.

keskestu كَسِكِسْتُو, tribal marks cut on face; cf. *shaushawa*.

keso كَسُو, 1. old mat made of grass; 2. old rags, old clothes, or old rug.

kestu, a flint with which to strike fire; cf. *kastu*.

kesu كَسُو, 20,000 cowries; cf. *kororo*.

keta, evil; cf. *kita*.

keta كَتَّ, Ar. فَطَعَ, to cut, rip, tear, split; *ketua* كَتُّوَا, splitting.

keture كَتُّرِي (cf. (?) Ar. فَطَّرَ, to traverse a country), to cross, pass over; *ketarewa* كَتُّرُوَا, particip. form of prec., crossing, F 155.

ketu, a flint; cf. *kastu*.

ketua, a splitting; cf. *keta*.

kewa كَوَا or *kiwa* كِيَوَا (cf. (?)

Ar. فَوَا, a desert), forlornness; *sanu da kewa* a salutation addressed to one who is lonely, his friend being dead; F 104 loneliness. *debe kewa* to take away mourning.

kewoye كَوِيِي, كَوِيِي or *kewayi*

كَوِيِي, sometimes pronounced *gewoye*, 1. to go round, to spin round; 2. to go round something, to make the circuit of a

place; *yin kewaye*, B 164 id.; 3. to surround, D 59, F 77 *yan uwaka su kewooyeka* thy brothers surround thee, 105, 245; 4*. to turn over, F 105 *su kewoyeka shikin* (= *chikin*) *kushewa* they will turn thee over (surround ?) in the grave.

keya كِيَا, the back part of the head.

kh, for words beginning with this sound cf. under *h*.

ki كِ, second pers. pron. fem. sing., 1. as subject it is prefixed to the verb in the aor., past and pres. tenses, as *ki fitto*, *kin fitto*, *kina fittowa*; suffixed to auxiliary verb which denotes the future, and to the passive, e.g. *zaki fitto*, *afittasdaki*; 2. as object it follows verbs and preps. as *zasu kassheki* they will kill you (f.); *gareki* to you (f.); 3. *-ki* or *-nki* كِ or كِي, used as an inseparable possessive pron. is suffixed to masc. or fem. words provided that the possessor is feminine, *do-kinki* thy horse, *giddanki* thy house.

ki كِي, *kia** كِيَا, 1. to hate, to dislike; 2. to reject, to refuse, to say no; C 22, 7 *har shi ya kia* till indeed he would refuse altogether; the reduplicated form *kinkinta* كِنِكِنْتَا = to refuse; *kije** كِيَجِي, to hate;

kishi كِشِش or *kishia* كِشِيَا, q.v., emulation, *yin kishi* to refuse; *kiyaya** كِيِيِي, refusing; E 24 *ku tuba ku ber kiyaya* repent, give up refusing; *kiwuya* كِيُوِيَا or *kuyiwa* كُوِيُوَا, refusal, objection; *yin kiwuya* to refuse exertion, to object to labour; *kiyeya* كِيِيَا, envy, hatred, malice, dislike; *makiyi* مَآكِيِي, q.v., adversary. Possibly *kita* فَيِتَا, cruelty, envy, may be formed from *ki*; cf. *kinji*, *makiyachi*.

kiale كِيَلِي, to neglect, despise, let alone, refuse to listen to.

kiama فَيَاَمَا, Ar. قِيَامَةٌ, resurrection, A 31, 32, 33, D 58, 60, F 111.

kiashi, small red ants; cf. *kiyashi*.

kiauri, covering of a doorway; cf. *kaure*.

kiavuta, see *keavuta*.

kib(b)a كِبَا, pl. *kibobi* كِبُوِيِي, fat; *yin kibba* to grow fat.

*kibanta** كِبِيِنْتَا, connections, relations, people.

kibia كِبِيَا, pl. *kibo* كِبُو, arrow; *akahalbeshi da kibia* he was shot with an arrow, G 5, l. 1; *makibia* porcupine; cf. *begua*.

*kibrit** كِبْرِيْت, Ar. كِبْرِيْت, sulphur, brimstone; the native Hausa is *fara wuta*.

kidda كِدَا or *kididiga* كِدِدِيْغَا (cf. Ar. قَد, measure), reckon-

ing, account, sum; cf. *did(d)iga*.

kidda كِدَا or *kiddi* كِدِي, *كِدِي*, 1. a drum or any musical instrument; E 16 *ku ber kidda molo* leave off drumming; 2. playing, drumming; *yin kiddi* to play, to drum; *kiddin dambe* a peculiar kind of drum-beating for dancing; *makiddi* مَآكِدِي, drummer.

kidibi, liver; cf. *gidibi*.

kididiga, reckoning; cf. *kidda*.

kifi كِيِب, *kife* كِيِيِي, pl. *kifaye* كِيِيِيِي, fish; *kama kifi* to fish.

*kije**, to hate; cf. *ki*.

kilago كِلَاغُو, pl. *kilagai* كِلَاغِيِي, 1. cow-hide, skin; D 15 *azaba dandakasa kanal kilago* his pain is as though he were a skin that is beaten; 2. a tent made of skin; cf. *kirigi*.

kilga كِلْغ or *kirga* كِرْغ, to count, to number; cf. (?) *kidda*.

kili كِلِي, fem. *kilia* كِلِيَا, a white horse with a spot on its forehead.

kilili كِلِيَلِي, a young palm tree.

kilin kilin كِلِن كِلِن or *kirri kirri* كِر كِر, an imitation of the sound of falling glass or broken wood, etc.

kil(l)isa كِلِس, 1. to take exercise on horseback; 2. of a horse, to trot.

kilishi كِلِيش, 1. a kind of rug or

mat made of wool, etc., for sleeping on; 2. thin strips of meat cooked with oil and pepper or dried in the sun.
kima كِمِيَا, 1. anything small; 2. price; cf. Ar. فِيمَة, id.
kimba كِمْبَا, fruit of a large tree, ground and used as a medicine, hot like pepper, brought from Nupé, etc.
kinami كِنَامِي, stirrups made of plaited leather; cf. *kebe*, iron stirrup.
kindigaye كِنْدِغَايِي, gathering of many people before a king for discussion.
kingi كِنِغِي, كِنِغِي, rest, remainder, what is left.
kinji كِنِجِي, refusal to hear, a compound of *ki* and *ji*, hence, obstinacy; *maikinji* enemy.
*kinke** كِنِكِي, trouble.
kinkinta, to refuse; cf. *ki*.
*kintsa** كِنِطَا, to gather together (?), A 23.
kiptawa, winking; cf. *kipta*.
kira كِيرَا, to forge metal; *makeri* مَآكِرِي or مَيَكِيرَا, a blacksmith. *makera* مَآكِرَا, anvil.
kir(r)a كِرَا or *kir(r)aye* كِرَايِي, 1. to call, to summon; *kira suna* to name; 2. كِرَا, calling out, F 142 *su dora kira* they raise a cry; *kir(r)awo* كِرَاوُو, to

summon to where the speaker is, to call.
kirari كِرَارِي, 1. praise, laudation, F 240 *suna kuma yin kirari* they praise; 2. self-laudation; 3. flattery.
kir(r)awo, see *kir(r)a*.
kir(r)aye, see *kirra*.
kirchi, a scab; cf. *kurji*.
kirfawa كِرْفَوَا, cutting folds of cloth.
kirga, to count; cf. *kilga*.
kiria, name of a tree; cf. *kiriya*.
kirigi كِرِغِي, skin, hide after it has been tanned, the skin before it is tanned is called *fata*; *kirigin kada* the scales of the (dead) alligator; cf. *kilago*.
kiriki كِرِكِي, better; *ya yi kiriki* he is better, or he acts well, *mutum kiriki* a kind man.
*kirin** كِرِن, found in A 67 *rana ka shafa dufu kirin huska tasa* when thou anointest his face with utter darkness; cf. *ker(r)-in*, *kirinjijia*.
kirinia كِرِنِيَا, 1. rafter forming circular binding line inside roof made of single reeds (*tankai*); 2. fig. *tsfo da kirinia* old man bent double.
kirinjijia كِرِنِجِيَا, a small black duck.
kiriya كِرِيَا or كِيرِيَا, a small tree which often grows on roofs from which blacksmiths obtain charcoal, i.e. *garwashin kiriya*.

kirji كِرْجِي, *kirji* فِرْجِي, pl. *kirijai*

كِرْجِي, breast, bosom.

kirkeshi كِرْكِشِي, a creature resembling a wolf = (?) *kelkeji* (cf. (?) Ar. rt فرفس, and فرفوص, pup).

*kirkira** كِرْكِرَا (cf. Ar. كِرْكَرَة, the cackling of a hen), found in A 29 *kaddadai ajita yi sugara maikirkira* let her not be heard calling fowls, with wide-opened mouth; cf. *karḳurḳur*.

kirma كِرْمَا, soldiers on foot; *sarikin kirma* a leader of infantry.

kirri kirri كِرْ كِرْ, see *kilin kilin*.

kirsa كِرْسَا, a bribe given to a judge; cf. *hila*.

kirta كِرْتَا, 1. to dig up land = *noma*; 2. to draw a line or furrow.

kirtani كِرْتَنِي, strong white string made of flax.

kis(s)a كِسْ, to kill; cf. *kasshe*.

kis(s)aka كِسَاكَا, a hairy caterpillar.

kishi كِيشِي, 1. emulation, jealousy; *yin kishi* = to refuse. 2. *kishia* كِيشِيَا, pl. *kishiyoyi* كِيشِيُويِي, 1. jealousy, hence 2. the name given to either of the two wives of the polygamist; if he takes a third wife he has *kishiyoyi*; cf. *ki*.

*kishimi** كِشِمِي (Ar. كِشْمَر, to have a bodily defect), *k. ido* blind.

ki(s)shimi كِشِمِي, male of a species of large antelope.

kishingida كِشِنَغِدَا, to recline or sit on the ground with legs crossed, the attitude for eating or conversation.

kishirua كِشُرُوَا, thirst, A 66, D 66, E 37; *jin kishirua* to feel thirst (possibly derived from *kishi* emulation and *rua* water).

kis(s)i كِسِي, pl. *kisso* كِسُوسِي, fat.

kis(s)o كِسُو, 1. to twist; 2. twisted; 3. hair worn by women in curls down their cheeks; *maikisso* hair-dresser.

kita كِتَا or *keta* كِتَا, mischief, cruelty, evil of any kind; envy F 8; possibly formed from *ki*, q.v.; *maiketachi** worker of evil.

*kita** كِتَا, found B 58, on the ground (?).

*kitaba** كِتَابْ, Ar. كِتَابْ, book; B 175 fin.

kiwa, loneliness; cf. *kewa*.

kiwo كِوُو, 1. to tend, watch cattle; 2. used intransitively of the cattle, to feed, to graze.

kiwuya, refusal to work, etc.; cf. *ki*.

kiyale, see *kiale*.

kiyashi or *kiashi* كِيَاشِي, small red ants found in houses.

*kiyasi** كِيَاَسِي, Ar. قَاسْ, to measure by a rule or comparison, D 94.

kiyau, see *keau*.

kiyauri covering of a door; cf. *kawre*.

kiyauta, see *keauta*.

*kiyaya**, refusing, E 24; cf. *ki*.

kiyaye کَبَابِي, 1. to keep carefully, to preserve; *kiyaye kanka* spare thyself, i.e. don't trouble; 2. used to denote ready obedience; *kiyaye magana* to obey a command; *kiyayeni* = suffer me; *makiyaye* = a shepherd.

kiyeya, envy, hatred, dislike; cf. *ki*.

kiyo, see *keau*.

*kizman** فَزَمَنْ, Ar. فَزَمَ, slander; F 12 [or perhaps the better reading here is *girmankai da zanba* as in E 25].

ko كُو, 1. either, or, and in negative sentences, neither, nor; hence its use 2. as an interrogative, e.g. *mutum ya taffi ko* did the man go? here *ko* is elliptic for *ko ba hakka ba* = or is it not so? *ko* may also precede the sentence or both precede and follow it for the sake of emphasis; 3. even, although; A 66 *hakkana kishirua ko ya sha kogi biar* so too he shall be thirsty though he drink of five streams; cf. *koda* although.

ko كُو, indef. pronominal prefix by which most of the indefinite pronouns and adverbs are formed from the interrogative,

e.g. *wa* who? *kowa* anyone; *mi* what? *komi* anything, etc.; *kaka* how, *kokaka* however; *yaushe* when, *koyaushe* at any time; *yanzu* now, *koyanzu* immediately.

kobdodo كَبْدُوْدُو or *gobdodo* غَبْدُوْدُو, a thorny bush.

kobdua كَبْدُوَا or *gobdua* غَبْدُوَا, the yolk of an egg.

*kobri** or *kubri** كَبْرِي, found in 1. *kobrin kaffa* leg-bone; 2. *kobrin kofa* door-post; 3. used with *itache* = a dried-up tree. The forms *kwauri* كَوْرِي and *kwabri* كَوَابْرِي, pl. *kwabruka* كَوَابْرُكَا, a withered or leafless tree, are probably secondary forms of *kobri*.

kobsa or *kopsa* كَبْسَا or *kobso* كَبْسُو, pod of nuts, beans, etc.

koda كُوْدَا, though, although; B 112 *koda* or *kuda* = when (?), A 27; cf. *ko*.

koda كُوْدَا, a dried-up nut.

koda كُوْدَا, to furbish or sharpen a sword.

*koda** or *kwoda* كُوْدَا, liver, kidney (?).

kodai كُوْدِي or *kwadai* كَدِي, 1. desire, longing, eagerness for, appetite; 2. *membra privata*; *makodaita*, q. v., covetous; *makodaichi* covetousness.

kodi كُوْدِي, a top or anything

spinninground; *makodi* مَكُوْدَى, a ball; *dan kodi* a small ball.
koenna كُوَانَا, anywhere, wherever, everywhere.
kofa كُوَفَا, pl. *kofofi* كُوُوفِي, 1. hole for entrance, 2. door, gate; E 19 *masuzua ga kofofin birane* those who frequent the gates of the cities; cf. seq.
*kofara** كُوْفَرَا, gate, F 236.
kofato كُوْفَاتُو, pl. *kofatai* كُوْفَاتِي, hoof.
kogi كُوْغِ, pl. *koguna* كُوْغُنَا, *kogina* كُوْغِنَا and *kogwi* كُوْغِي, any large collection of water, lake, large river A 66, ravine through which any water flows; cf. *kogo*.
kogia, hook; cf. *kugiya*.
kogo كُوْغُو, hollow; *kogon itache* hollow of a tree; den, etc.; cf. *kogi*.
kogua, hook; cf. *kugiya*.
*kogua** كُوْغُوَا, echo (?).
koi, egg; cf. *kwoi*.
koikoiyo كُوِيكُوِيُو, to imitate another's pronunciation or actions.
koinya كُوِنِيَا, skull; *koinyan kai*, id.
koiya كُوِيَا, to teach; *maikoiya* مِيكُوِيَا, teacher. *koiya* كُوِيَا, teaching; *koiya na shaitan* the teaching of Satan, D 19; *koiyawa* كُوِيَوَا, teaching; cf. seq.

koiyo كُوِيُو, to learn.
kokari كُوْكَرِي, 1. to try, attempt, endeavour, A 2, 3, 26; 2. to work diligently, cf. *maikokari* one who endeavours. *koḡaru* فُوْكَرُو, diligence, B 16 *ku bada koḡarunku* give diligence.
*koki** كُوْكِى, female spider.
*kokia** كُوْكِيَا, a large tree which bears red edible fruit, its leaves are eaten by cattle.
koko كُوْكَو, a drink made from the flour of *gero* beaten up in a *turumi* and drunk hot, honey being sometimes added.
kokofa كُوْكَوْفَب or *kokwafa* كُوْكَوَاب, to canter.
kokonto كُوْكَوْنْتُو, 1. reasoning, questioning, disputing, continued asking; 2. doubt, uncertainty.
kokua كُوْكَوَا, fighting, wrestling, exertion; *yi kokua* to wrestle, fight, smite.
kokua كُوْكَوَا, point, ridge, pinnacle.
*kokulwa** كُوْكَوَلُوَا, skull; A 80; cf. *kolua*.
kokwafa, see *kokofa*.
kol(t)e كُوْلِي, small red pepper, the plant grows to the height of about two feet.
kolkot(t)a, a small insect; cf. *kwal-kwat(t)a*.
kolli, kulli, kwalli or *kwolli* كُوْلِي, Digitized by Google

Ar. **كُحْل**, antimony or stibnite = the **στίμμυ** or stibium of the ancients; it is found in the eastern parts of Hausaland. Antimony powder, which has a leaden grey colour, is much used by Hausa women for painting their eyebrows. It has been so used from very early times, cf. 2 Kings ix. 30 Jezebel... 'oculos ejus posuit stibio'; cf. *tozali*.

kolua **كُلُوَا**, *kolua* **فُلُوَا**, *kwalua* **كُلُوَا** or *kokulwa* **كُكُلُوَا**, skull, D 65; brains, A 80.

koma **كُومَا**, *ḵoma** **فُومَا**, to go back, return; B 143 *tun ba akoma ba* until there be no return. *komawa* **كُومُوَا**, returning. *komo* **كُومُو**, to return to where the speaker is, to return here, to come back. *komowa* **كُومُوَا**, coming back.

*koma** **كُومَا**, used in compound *komam magana* = the truth or root of the matter.

*koma** **كُومَا**, net to catch fish = *raffa*, which is used in Sokoto.

koma, flea; cf. *kuma*.

komawa, returning; cf. *koma*.

komi **كُومِي**, **كُوم**, anything, everything, A 48; *babu komi* = nothing, so also *ba komi* or *ba komi ba*. *komine* **كُومِينِي** = *komi* with subst. verb *ne*, lit. whatsoever it be, whatsoever.

komo, to return here; cf. *koma*.

komtsa **كُومَطَا** or *kwamsa* **كُومَا**, mucus from the eyes.

kona or *kuna** **كُونَا**, **كُون**, *ḵona** **فُونَا** or *kone* **كُونِي**, 1. to burn, to destroy by fire; pres. *tana kona*, F 114; pass. *akona*, F 156; 2. to burn with desire, etc.; *zuchia ta kuna* the heart burned...; 3. burning desire, burning disease. *konane* **كُونَانِي**, fem. *konana* **كُونَانَا**,

pl. *konanu* **كُونَانُو**, burnt.

konama, scorpion; cf. *kunama*.

kondo, centre of thatched roof; cf. *kwando*.

kone, see *kona*.

konga, a plain; cf. *kanga*.

konga **كُونْغَا**, a knife; cf. *kangar*.

kopsa, pod of ground-nut; cf. *koba*.

ḵora **فُورَا**, Ar. **فَرَعَة**, baldness, either that produced naturally or by shaving.

kora **كُورَا**, *kore* **كُورِي** or *koro*

كُورُو, to drive, to hurry, to drive away; D 21 *ya kora kansa chikkin azaba* he hurries himself to (the place of) pain; *korowa* **كُورُوَا**, driving away; *koro sauki* to send help.

koram(m)a **كُورَمَا**, 1. a fast-flowing stream, a torrent such as would not be navigable by canoes; 2. the ravine in which the stream flows.

kore, see *kora*.

kore **كُورِي**, long tobe of black or dark shiny blue eloth.

korino كُورُنُو, 1*. green; 2. medicine for the eyes made from powdered goat's skin.

kormot(t) كُورْمُوتُو, 1. to carry false news, to tell tales against another secretly; 2. to interfere in a matter which does not concern one; cf. *karam-bani*.

koro, to drive, etc.; cf. *kora*.

kororo كُورُورُو or *karoro* كَرُورُو, a bag containing 20,000 cowries, usually made of the leaves of the *tukurua* palm; possibly from Ar. كُرٌّ, Heb. *cor*, Gr. *kópos* = a large dry measure; cf. *kesu*.

korto كُورْتُو, fem. *kortua* كُورْتُوَا, prostitute.

kosa or *kusa** كُوسَا, an iron nail.

kosa كُوسَا, to be ripe.

*kosai** كُوسَايَ, E 6. pass. *ankakosai* he was driven away.

kosa(s)she, see *koshi*.

kosfa or *kwosfa* كُوسْفَا, pl. *kosfofi* or *kwosfofi* كُوسْفُوفِي (cf. (?) Ar. كُسْبٌ, dregs, crushed fruit, etc.), 1. egg-shell, peel of fruits; 2. in pl., branching off of roads.

koshi كُوشِي, 1. to be satisfied, to have enough, F 10; 2. used as n., a being satisfied, satisfaction (esp. of appetite).

kosa(s)she كُوسَشِي, pl. *kosas(s)u* كُوسَسُو, one who has eaten enough, one who is satisfied. *koshada** كُوشَدَا, causa-

tive form of *koshi* to feed to satisfaction, to satisfy.

*koshi** كُوشِي, compound of *ko* and *shi*, found B 38, himself.

koshia كُوشِيَا, a wooden spoon.

kota كُوتَا, handle, e.g. of a box.

kotafani, shield; cf. *kutufani*.

kotakwana كُوتَاكُونَا, to leave off work till to-morrow, to leave a thing as it is; *yin kotakwana*, id.

*kotana** كُوتَانَا, cousin or relation.

kotanchi or *kwatanchi* كُوتَانْشِي, 1. to compare, to liken to, to place together; pass. *akotanchi* is made like unto; 2. *kotanchin kaza* about so much, *kotanchin hakka* like this; cf. *kutumshi* likeness, F 145. *kotanta* or *kwatanta* كُوتَانْتَا, 1. i.q. *kotanchi*; 2. to describe.

koto كُوتُو, of a bird, to peck; *maikoto* مَيْكُوتُو beak.

kotontarwa كُوتُونْتَارُوَا, to pay a second time, to pay over again.

kotutura, stump of wood; cf. *kututura*.

kowa كُوَوَا, everyone, anyone, any; *babu kowa* or *ba kowa* no one.

kowane كُوَوْبِي, fem. *kowache*

كُوَوْبِي, indefinite pronoun with subst. verb suffixed, 1. anyone, everyone, whosoever it may be; B 28 *duba chikkinsu kowache fa kaka zaba* look as to which of them (f.) thou

wilt choose; 2. combined with the pl. pers. pron. = each; *kowanenmu* each of us, *kowanenku* each of you, *kowanensu* each of them. *kowanene* **كُونِنِي**, a strengthened form of *kowane* with subst. v. suffixed.

*kowainia** **كُونِيَا**, finger-ring.

kowie, see *karuye*.

koya, to teach; cf. *koiya*.

koyanzu **كُونِنْدُو** (compound of *ko* even, and *yanzu*), even now, now, immediately.

koyaushe **كُونُوشِي**, at any time, always; cf. *kulyaushe*.

koyo, to learn; cf. *koiyo*.

kozo **كُوزُو** (cf. Ar. **كُوس**, a kettle-drum), a kind of drum held under the arm; it is covered with skin in front, but is open behind.

kozozobe **كُوزُوزُوبِي**, 1. course or hollow of a stream; 2. a deep ravine without water.

ku **كُو**, 2nd pers. pron. pl. used 1. as separate emphatic pron., e.g. *ku kun taffi* you, you went away, thus standing to 2. in the same relation as the sing. *kai* to *ka*; 2. used as a prefixed and suffixed pron. in the same ways and senses as the sing. *ka*, q.v.; for use of *-nku* your, cf. Gr. p. 17.

kua **كُوَا**, too, also, likewise; it follows as an enclitic the word to which it more particularly refers, e.g. *ni kua ni*

shigga I too shall enter, E 37, F 105.

kubaka **كُوبَكَا**, cord round waist of trousers.

kubche **كُوبِي**, to slip or drop out of one's hands; cf. *gubchi*.

kube **كُوبِي**, sheath for knife or sword.

kube, to mix; cf. *kwabe*.

kubewa **كُوبُوَا**, small kind of gourd, esp. used in making *mia*; cf. *kabewa* (= large gourd).

kubli **كُوبِلِي** (cf. Ar. **فَعْل**, bolt), to lock, lock up; *makubli* or *makul(l)i** key, button. *kubli* **كُوبِلِي** or *kulli* **كُلِي**, a knot.

*kubri** , used with *itache*, a dried-up tree; cf. *kobri*.

kububua **كُوبُوبُوَا**, a snake, five or six feet long, with black and white spots.

kucha **كُوتَا** or **كُوتَا**, to rush or fall down.

*kuda** , when? cf. *koda*.

kuda **كُودَا**, *kudi* **كُودِي**, *kuje* **كُوجِي**, pl. *kud(d)ashe* **كُودَاشِي**, *kud(d)aje* **كُودَاجِي** (cf. Ar. pl. **فِدَان**, stinging insects), common house-fly; *kuddan gerke* a small sand-fly.

kudaku **كُودَكُو**, a species of sweet potato (*dankali*).

kudi, see *kuda*.

*kudi** , money; cf. *kurdi*.

*kudira** **كُودِرَا**, Ar. **قَدَر**, destiny,

will of God ; F 137 *fa kudira ta gabato talikai duk* and the will of God shall bring together all creatures.

kudu كُدْ or *kud(d)us* كُدْسْ, south ; also used adverbially, e.g. *ya taffi kudu* he went south, G 2 l. 1, G 4 l. 15.

kududif(f)i, cistern ; cf. *kurdu-du(f)i*.

*kududura** كُدُّرَا, a small knife used by women.

kuduji كُدْجْ, a plant about two feet high, grows amongst *dauwa*, a medicine made from it.

kudumbia كُدُنْبِيَا, the cracking of skin in the under-joints of toes ; cf. *hambudiga*.

kudunia كُدُونِيَا, range of hills ; hill, mountain.

kuduru كُدُرُو, broken blade of a sword or knife.

kud(d)us, south ; cf. *kudu*.

kufai كُفَيْ, pl. *kufai fai* كُفَيْفَيْ, ruins of a place, a desolated or dilapidated town, etc.

*kufamwa** كُفَمَوَا, funeral, C 15 ; cf. *kafan* (shroud), *likafani*.

kufit(t)a كُفَيْتَا or *kufut(t)a* كُفَيْتَا, pl. *kufittai* كُفَيْتَيْ or *kufut(t)ai* كُفَيْتَيْ, 1*. sandal ; 2. long riding-boot with spurs.

kufu, lungs ; cf. *fufu*.

*kufuli** كُفُولِي, to extinguish a fire or light.

kufut(t)a, see *kufit(t)a*.

kugi كُوغِي, to roar, used of wild animals, etc.

kugiya or *kogia* كُوغِيَا or *kogua* كُوغُوَا, pl. *kugiyoyi* كُوغِيُويِي, hook, clasp.

kukui كُكُوِي, *كُكُوِي*, a disease in women somewhat similar to elephantiasis.

*kuje**, a fly ; cf. *kuda*.

kuka كُوْكََا, Kanuri id., *adansonia digitata* = baobab or monkey-bread tree. The Hausas eat its fruit and use its leaves for making soup. It does not grow to any great height, but has often a girth of 60 to 70 ft. The word *kuka* is also applied to the seeds of the *dorowa* tree ; cf. *dodowa*.

kuka كُوْكََا, cry, lamentation ; *yin kuka* to cry, raise a cry, howl, low, etc., of men and animals, e.g. *sania tana kuka* the cow lows (*ruri* is used of the bull), of the camel, the cat, of Dodo, etc. ; A 4 *rana ya ke kuka da ruri maiyawa* it will be a day of lamentation and much crying.

kuka كُكْ, pers. pron. 2nd pers. pl. used to denote the perfect tense ; *kuka zo* you have come.

kukaruku, to crow ; i.q. *kakaruko*, q.v.

kuku كُكُو, an edible fish, six inches long, with sharp scales on its back.

*kukui**, a swelling on the body;
cf. *kukui*.

kukuki ڪُڪِي, a tree, the fruit of
which forms small calabashes;
from its bark is made a medi-
cine for men and cattle.

kukuma ڪُڪُومَا, a musical in-
strument played by rubbing
on it.

kukumi, a man with his hands
tied to his neck; cf. *kunkumi*.

*kul**, if, when; cf. *kur*.

kul(l)a ڪُلا, 1. to care for, heed,
be concerned about, used abso-
lutely (B 90) or with direct
acc. or with *da* or *ga*; 2. to
care for in the sense of to
covet, e.g. C 52 *bai kulla ba ga*
dunia he cared not for the mer-
chandise of the earth. *kul(l)ata*

ڪُلاتَ, a secondary form of
kul(l)a, to care for, e.g. B 29
ku san ba shi kullata da dunia
ba he cares not, as you know,
for the earth; see also B 30.

*kul(l)i** ڪُلي, ڪُلي, intention,
e.g. *ina da kullin taffia* or *na*
kulla taffia I think of going.

*kulba** ڪُلبَا, a species of lizard.

kul(l)i, see *kul(l)a*.

kulikasa(s)a ڪُليڪَسا, shamelessness.

kulki ڪُلكِ, pl. ڪُلاڪِي, a stick,
F 107.

kulli, see *kubli*.

kulli, antimony; cf. *kolli*.

*kul(l)u** ڪُلُ, Ar. ڪُلُّ, all, A 5;
cf. *kul(l)um*.

kulu ڪُولُو, pl. *kulayi* ڪُولَيِي, wale
made by a whip.

kulu ڪُولُو, 1. froth skimmed from
the top in the making of bread
or *massa* cakes; 2. leaven.

kul(l)um ڪُلُم [originally borrowed
from the Ar. ڪُلُ يَوْمَ = every
day], 1. always, constantly;
hence 2. used with other ex-
pressions of time, every, e.g.
kullum safe every morning,
kullum dere every night, B 88;
cf. *kulyaushe*.

kulume ڪُلُمِي, an edible fish with
red tail, about fifteen inches
long.

*kulyaushe** ڪُلَيُوشِي, always; cf.
kul(l)u and *yaushe* and *koyau-
she*.

kuma ڪُما, ڪُمر, again. At D 49
the word is found repeated in
a comp. *ankuma kuma* prob. =
over again, in any way, by any
means.

kuma or *koma* ڪُما, flea.

kuma ڪُما, a flat fish with reddish
snout.

kumachi ڪُمَشي, a black snake
about fourteen inches long.

kumakum(m)i ڪُمَڪُمِي, a horse-
man's armour made of iron.

kumama ڪُمامَا, weak, infirm,
feeble. *kumamanth* ڪُمامَنتَ,
1. weakness, infirmity, feeble-
ness; 2. what is trying or
troublesome.

kum(m)atu, see *kumchi*.

kumba كُنْبَا, كُمْبَا, pl. *kumbuna* كُنْبُنَا and *kumbai* كُنْبِي, 1. finger-nail, scales of a fish; 2. an edible shell-fish sold in the markets.

kumbe or *kwumbe* كُنْبِي, fashion of shaving the front part of the head only; the heathen custom of leaving a tuft on top of head.

kumbu كُنْبُو (cf. (?) Ar. فُنُوبُ, calices of flowers), 1. a small calabash; 2. round object applied to anything; cf. *shankumbu*, *rumbua*, and *seqq*.

kumbruchi كُنْبِيْث, كُمْبِيْث, rough or hasty plaiting or doing up of a woman's hair.

*kumburata**, see *kumbure*.

kumbure كُنْبُرِي or *kumburi* كُنْبُرِي, to swell; *kumburawa* كُنْبُرَاوَا, swelling with pride; F 30 *kana kumburawa* thou art proud; *kumburata* كُنْبُرَات, swollen with calamity.

*kumche**, narrowed; cf. *kumtata* and (?) *kumchi* forest.

kumchi كُمْتِي, كُمْتِي, pl. *kum(m)atu* كُمَاتُو, cheek.

kumchi كُمْتِي or *kumshi* كُمَش, dense forest.

kumia, see *kumya*.

*kumkumia** كُمْكُمِيَا, a poisonous species of euphorbia tree about two feet high.

kumolo كُمُولُو, qualm or faintness arising from lack of food, esp. in the morning.

kumshi, see *kumchi*.

*kumso** كُمْسُو, to hide anything.

kumtata كُمْتَتَا, to make narrow
A 67. *kumche** كُمْتِي, narrow, tightened; cf. (?) *kunkunta*.

kumya or *kumia* كُمِيَا, shame, bashfulness, good manners; *rashin kumya* want of good manners or of sense of propriety. *sa, ba* and *bada kumya* to put to shame; *jin kumya* to feel shame, to be ashamed; *ba shi da kumya ba* he has no sense of shame. F 115 *masuzina su ka kumya* those who sin will be put to shame.

kuna, to burn; cf. *kona*.

*kuna** كُونُ, v. constr. with *dagga*, to have no fear of God, to be wicked.

kunama or *konama* كُنَامَا or *kunami* كُنَامِي, pl. *kunamai* كُنَامِي, scorpion, F 109.

kunche or *kwanche* كُنْبِي or *kunchi** كُنْبِي, to untie, loosen; C 11 *ya kunchi kaya ga fili dunia* he unties his goods on the plain of this world. *kunche* كُنْبِي, fem. *kunchia* كُنْبِيَا, pl. *kuntu* كُنْتُو, pass. particip. pass. of prec., untied, loosened. *mai-kunche* a wrestler; *sunche*, q.v.,

is apparently another form of the same word.

kundeg(g)e, *kwondeg(g)e* فُنْدَغِيْ, armllets, F 225; cf. *kar(r)o*, *karafa*.

kundi كُنْدِيْ, a book of any kind.

*kundu** كُنْدُوْ, used with *yi*, of an arrow, to miss.

kunduduf(f)i, a pond; cf. *kurdu-duf(f)i*.

kunduma كُنْدِمَا, with *yi*, 1. to topple over, B 150 *ba ni yi kunduma en fada ba* I will not topple over so as to fall; 2. to dip the head in water; cf. (?) seq.

kundumi كُنْدُمِيْ, the pond on the outside of paradise; cf. D 76 note.

kundumi كُنْدُمِيْ, 1. baldness caused by shaving off the hair; 2. to cut off all the hair.

kune كُنِيْ or *kunne* كُنْبِيْ, pl.

kunuwa كُنُوَا, 1. ear, F 7 *ka kakartsa kunuwa* give attention with your ears, A 6; 2. *kun(n)en itache* = leaves.

kunfa كُنْبَا, foam.

*kunkeli** كُنْكَلِيْ, a small shield.

kunkumi كُنْكُمِيْ or *kuntumi* كُنْتُمِيْ, a rich merchant.

kunkumi كُنْكُمِيْ or *kukumi* كُنْكُمِيْ, a man with his hands tied to his neck.

kunkunta كُنْكُنْتَا, narrow, used of a doorway; cf. (?) *kumtata*.

kunkuru كُنْكُرُوْ, tortoise, turtle.

*kunsa** كُنْسَا, to fold up; cf. (?) *kumtata*.

*kunshia**, sleep, F 75; cf. *kwana*.

kuntawa, see *kwantawa*.

kuntukuro كُنْتُكُرُوْ, a player on the *kalango* drum.

kuntumi, a merchant; cf. *kunkumi*.

*kuntuna** كُنْتُونَا, found in pass. *akuntuna* opened, D 63.

kunu كُنُوْ, gruel made of guinea-corn, rice, etc.

*kur** كُرْ or *kul** كُلْ, if, when, e.g. *kur ankache masa* if it be said to him, C 7.

kura كُورَا, pl. *kuraye* كُورَايِيْ, hyena; B 149 *ina gani sarai kura gata* I see distinctly, there is the hyena.

kura كُورَا, dust.

kura كُورَا, gain, profit, esp. unlawful gain, overcharging, cheating, *chi kura* to make unlawful gain; F 201 *fa dillalai fa masuriba da kura* and the brokers who have made unjust profits, i.e. who keep back money for things sold.

kurada كُرَادَا, pl. *kuradai* كُرَادَايِيْ, a small round hatchet used for cutting grass for horses, etc. = *mumtaraga*.

kurafu كُرَفُوْ, *kurfu* قُرْفُوْ or *karfu** قُرْفُونَا, pl. *karfuna** قُرْفُونَا (Kannuri *karafi* hide), 1. a whip made of skin, D 41; 2. flogging, *yin kurfu* to flog, *su yi masa*

kurfu they flogged him ; 3. a horse-girdle made of cloth.

kuran **فُرَان**, Ar. **قُرآن**, the Koran, F 26.

kurar(r)i **كُرِّي**, threatening; *yin kurarri* to threaten = *bada tsoro*.

kurba **كُرْب** or *kurbata* **كُرْبَتَا**, to sip.

kurchia, dove; cf. *kurichia*.

kurdafi **كُرْدِي**, very small black ants.

kurdi **كُرْدِي** (frequently pronounced *kudi*), used as a pl. of *ijia* and *wuri*, 1. cowries (*kawara* and *alkawara* are also used in the same sense); 2. used generally for money of any kind; 3. price, e.g. *kurdinsa nawwa* what is the price of it? *kurdinsa ya issa* it is enough for it; *ba shi kurdi* it is not dear. *kurdin kasa* tribute, taxes.

*kurdi** **كُرْدِي**, a small biting insect found in mats, etc.

kurduduf(f)i **كُرْدُدِي**, *kundudif(f)i* **كُدِدِي** or *kunduduf(f)i* **كُنْدُدِي**, a large pond of water in a town, a large cistern; cf. *bingi*.

kurdugo **كُرْدُو**, the fruit of the *gigimia* palm.

kurege **كُورَنُجِي**, pl. *kuragaj* **كُورَاغِي**, *jerboa* (*dipus*), Ar. **يَرْبُوع**, the length of its body

is about eight inches, of its tail ten inches; it progresses by a series of jumps; it burrows in the ground and feeds chiefly on grain; cf. Browning, 'Saul,' vi. 5, "half-bird half-mouse."

kurfu, a whip; cf. *kurafu*.

kuri **كُورِي** or *kwuriya* **كُورِيَا** (Ar. **فَرَعَ**, to beat a drum), a sort of stringed drum, open at one end, used in war or for signalling.

kuria **فُرْعَا**, Ar. **فُرْعَة**, dice, lots; *yin kuria* to draw lots; *jefa kuria* to throw with dice or with cowrie shells used as dice.

*kurichia** **كُرِيَا**, **فُرِيَا** or *kuruchia* **كُرِيَا**, 1. child, applied to one of any age from ten to thirty years, B 116 *dadai kurichia na kareta* did a young man ever drive death away? 2. childishness = *hallin yaro*.

kurichia **كُرِيَا**, pl. *kurichecheki* **كُرِيَشِي** and *kurchiyoyi* **كُرِيُوِي**, dove, turtle-dove.

kurikia **فُرِكِيَا** or *kurkia* **فُرِكِيَا** (C 18), pl. *kurikoki* **فُرِكُوكِي**, virgin = *budurua*.

kurimi **كُرْمِي** or *kurmi* **كُرْمِي**, dense forest.

kurji **كُرَج** (pl. *kuraji* **كُرَاَجِي**), *kureji* **كُرِنُج** (pl. *kurareji* **كُورِنُجِي**), *kirchi* **كِرْت**, *gurje* **كُورِنُجِي**

'**ڪُرڄي**, *girje ڪُرڄي* or *urji**
ڪُرڄي **اُرڄي** (possibly from
 Ar. rt **فَرَج**, to be scabby),
 1. scab, boil, esp. on dogs and
 horses, itch; 2. lice (?), *mai-*
kurji one who has the itch;
 cf. *gushagushi*.
kurki **ڪُرڪي**, a bird like a crane.
kurkia, virgin; cf. *kurikia*.
kurkono **ڪُرڪَنُو** or *kurukunu*
ڪُرڪَنُو, guinea-worm.
kurkuku **ڪُرڪُڪُو**, dungeon, prison.
*kurkura** **ڪُرڪُرَ**, to scrape any-
 thing, e.g. with a stone.
*kurkura**, to err, to fail; cf. *kus-*
kure.
kurkurkur **ڪُرڪُرڪُرَ**, wide-opened,
 B 32 note; cf. *kirkira*.
kurkwiyo, youngling; cf. *kwikeyo*.
kurmi, see *kurimi*.
kurmus **ڪُرْمَسَ**, adverbial expres-
 sion, 'burnt all over,' F 207;
wuta ta kone kurmus the fire
 burnt it up completely.
kurna **ڪُرْنَا**, pl. **ڪُرْنُونِي** (Kanuri
kurna, Fulah *kurnahi*), zizy-
 phus spina Christi, a large
 tree of bushy appearance with
 small leaves and red edible
 berries.
kurtu **ڪُرْتُو**, calabash about twelve
 inches high with long narrow
 neck, used as water-bottle.
kurtumi **ڪُرْتُمِي**, pl. *kurtumai*
ڪُرْتُمِي, ox or bullock.

kuru **ڪُورُو**, a pony; *doki kuru*, id.
kuru, in silence; cf. *kurum*.
kurua **ڪُرُوَا**, 1. soul, spirit; 2.
 echo; cf. *kururua*.
kuruchia, childishness; cf. *kuri-*
chia.
*kurufi** **ڪُرُفِي**, an iron chisel;
 probably a corruption of *karifi*,
 q.v.
kurugunguma **ڪُرُغُنْغُمَا**, pl. *kuru-*
gungumai **ڪُرُغُنْغُمِي**, a black-
 winged insect which lives a-
 mongst the guinea-corn.
kuruki **ڪُرُڪِي**, a small cane, such
 as that carried by a soldier.
kurukunu, guinea-worm; cf. *kur-*
kono.
kurukure **ڪُرُڪُرِي**, to throw out
 water from the mouth.
kurum **ڪُرْمَ**, silence, e.g. D94 *mu-*
na kurum we keep silence; *yin*
kurum, id. *kuru* **ڪُرُ**, in silence;
 D29 *abersu kuru* let them be
 left alone, i.e. let no one speak
 to them; cf. (?) seq.
kuruma **ڪُرْمَا**, pl. *kurumai* **ڪُرْمِي**,
 1. one who is deaf; 2. to be
 deaf. *kurumchi* **ڪُرْمِشَ**, and
kurumta **ڪُرْمَتَا**, deafness; *shina*
da kurumchi he is deaf.
kurungu **ڪُرْنُغُو**, an edible fish
 with large broad head.
kururua **ڪُرُورُوَا**, 1. a cry, scream;
yin kururua to cry, B 96; 2.
 complaint, grievance; 3. echo;
 cf. *kurua*, id.

kuruskurus فُرُسُفُرُسْ, edible root of small plant used in making *tuu*.

kusa, nail; cf. *kosa*.

kus(s)a كُسا, كَس, near, nearly; *da kussa* near at hand; *kussa da* or *kussa ga* near to, *yin kussa* to be or draw near, *ya yi kussa kare* or *ya kussa kare* it is nearly finished. *kussa kussa* = very near. *kus(s)awa* كُساوا, drawing near. *kus(s)ata* كُسات or *kus(s)anta* كُسنت, to be or to draw near. *su kussata en yi hakka* they were about to act thus. *kus(s)ache* كُساڠي, id. *kus(s)atowa* كُستوا, coming near.

kus(s)ache, see *kus(s)a*.

kusanchi, to condemn; cf. *kushe*.

kus(s)ata, see *kus(s)a*.

kusato, see *kushe*.

kus(s)atowa, coming near; cf. *kus(s)a*.

kussawa, see *kus(s)a*.

*kushe** كُوشي, فُوشي (cf. (?) Ar.

كُشِع, to be anxious), to attribute evil to one who is doing good. *kusanchi* كُوسنتي, to condemn. *kusato* كُوساتو, to murmur against.

*kushekusheya** كُوشكُشيا, itching sore on hand or foot (?); F 106 *sunu dirkanka har kushekusheya* they will beat thee till thou art sore [possibly the reading should be *har ka wushe* (i.e.

wuche) *kusheya* till thou go forth from the tomb].

kushera كُشِرا, Ar. كُرسِي, chair, bench, stool.

kushewa كُشِوا or *kusheya** كُشيا, pl. *kusheyi* كُشيبي, grave, tomb; *wurin kushewa* or *wurin kusheyi* burying-place; D 38, F 63, 95, 102, 106; *wurin kushewa*, F 86. For use of *kusheya* cf. note on *kushekusheya*. *kuskunta**, to drive away; cf. *kaskasta*.

kuskure كُسُكري or *kurkura* كُركُر, 1. to miss, of an arrow to miss or fail to hit the mark; 2. to fail to keep a promise, then to fail in duty, to err; D 4 *kadda mu kurkura* let us not fail, i.e. in our duty.

*kuskus** كُكُس, Ar. كُكُس, *kus-cus* (a north African native dish made of macaroni, etc. not known in Hausaland).

kusu كُوسو, كُوس, pl. *kusai* كُوسَي, a kind of mouse; cf. *kusumbis(s)a*.

*kusuyi** كُسُيو, anything small or insignificant (?).

kusumbis(s)a كُوسُمبِسا, i.e. *kusu* and *bis(s)a*, squirrel.

kusumburua كُوسُمبُورا, a reed growing amongst the guineacorn and like it in appearance; not edible; flutes are made of it.

kusurua كُسُورُوا, pl. *kusuroyi*
كُسُورُوي, cf. Ar. كَسْرٌ, corner;
kusuruan hanu elbow; another
form is *sukurua*.

kutanchi, see *kotanchi*.

*kutara** كُتَارَا, a beam for pumping
water with, D16; *shina takura*
kamal kutara he falls down
like the beam for pumping
water.

kutofi كُتُوبِي, bead necklace worn
by women.

kutu كُتُو, a small tree-lizard, its
bite is said to cause leprosy,
= *goguware*; cf. *kuturu*.

kutufani كُتُفَنِي or *kotafani*
كُوتُفَنِي, pl. *kutufan(n)ai*
كُتُفَنِي, round shield made of
skin.

*kutumshi** كُتْمِش, likeness, F 145
for *kotanchi*.

*kutunku** كُتُنْكَو, male camel =
amali.

kut(t)up kut(t)up كُتُبُكْتَبُ, totter-
ing, applied to the walk of the
old or blind.

kuturu كُتُرُو, pl. *kutare* كُتَارِي,
1. leper; 2. applied to *gero* =
blighted. *kuturchi* كُتُرْتِ or
kuturta كُتُرْتَا, leprosy; cf.
kutu.

kututura or *kotutura* كُتُتُرَا or
kuturtura كُتُرْتُرَا, 1. stump of
a tree, branch with leaves cut
off; 2. stubble.

kuwa كُوَا, cry.

kuyanga or *kwiyanga* كُيَنْغَا, pl.
kuyangai كُيَنْغِي, used as fem.
of *barwa* = a female slave; the
plural is used of slaves of both
sexes.

kuyiwa or *kiwuya*, refusal; cf. *ki*.
kuza, to rush; cf. *kucha*.

kwa, also; cf. *kua*.

kwaba كُوبَ or *kwobe** كُوبِي,
to reprove, blame, check.

kwabe كُابِي or *kube* كُوبِي or
kwaba كُوبَ, كَابَ, to mix,
A 76 *kam ba rua kwabe kasan-*
ka ya shekare if there is no
water to mix with it, your
earth is dry. Pass. *akwaba*
أَكُوبَ F 96.

kwabri كُابِرِي, *kwauri* كُورِي, pl.
kwabruka, *kwobruka* كُابْرُكَا,
withered leafless tree; cf. *kobri*.

kwache كُوبِي, كُابِي (A 50)
or *kwashe* كُشِي, 1. to take
away by force, to snatch; A
50 *sarki da ke kwache da tsa-*
limchi duka the king who
seized everything by deceit;
2. to rescue, deliver; 3. booty,
also *abin kwache*; *maikwacheva*
one who snatches away, B 69.
kwaso كُوسُو, to snatch.

*kwachia** كُشِيَا, كُوتِيَا, calabash,
finger-basin = *kworia*.

kwadai, longing for; cf. *kodai*.

kwado كُودُو, pl. *كُودُوي*, toad.

kwagua ڪُوڳُوَا, pincers; cf. (?)
kugiya hook.

kwake ڪُوڪِي, fading away, as of
a dyed garment; *kwaki* ڪُوڪِي,
adj., fading.

kwakia ڪُوڪِيَا, a long, slender,
light-coloured snake.

kwakwa ڪُوڪُوَا, *elaeis guineensis*,
oil palm tree; *main ja* = the
oil obtained from it. The oil is
expressed from its seeds or nuts
which grow in large clusters.
It is largely used as food by
the Hausas.

*kwakwari** ڪُوڪُوَرِي, place or hole
made for horses' dung, etc.

kwakwata ڪُوڪُوَتَا, 1. a fine white
robe used esp. by the Nupés;
2. slit for head or sleeves in a
gown; 3. inside shirt with
pleats.

kwalfa ڪُوَلْف, to draw water.

kwalkwas(s)a, travelling ants; cf.
kwarikwassa.

kwalkwatta, small white insect;
cf. *kwarkwatta*.

kwalli, antinomy; cf. *kolli*.

kwalu, skull; cf. *kotua*.

kwamin ڪُوَامِن, in compound
kwamin wuta, restoration of a
fire nearly gone out.

kwamsa, mucus from the eyes;
cf. *komtsa*.

kwana ڪُوْنَا, pl. *kwana* ڪُوْنَاڪِي,
kwanuka ڪُوْنَاڪَا, the 24 hours
of day and night, day. The

sing. form is frequently used
instead of the plural, e.g.
kwana fudu four days. *kwana*
ڪُوْنَا, to pass the night, to sleep,
to lie down to sleep, B 53; *an-*
kwanda rua the night has been
passed in the rain. *kwanandaga*
ڪُوْنَاَنَدَا, to march during the
night in time of war. *kwanche*
ڪُوْنَاِچِي, to lie down, to sleep,
to rest, B 58 note. *kwankwan-*
che ڪُوْنَاِچِي, id. *makwanche*
ڪُوْنَاِچِي, a place to lie down in,

a burial place. *kwanta* ڪُوْنَاَتَا,
to lie down to sleep, to pass
the night; also causat. to lay
down. *kwantawa* ڪُوْنَاَتَا,wa,
lying down; F 63 *ka san kai*
dai ka kwantawar kushewa
thou knowest that thou shalt
lie down alone in the tomb.
kwantasda ڪُوْنَاَسَدَا, to allay.
kwanto ڪُوْنَاَتُو, lying in wait,
ambush. *kunshia** or *kwan-*
*shia** ڪُوْنَاَشِيَا, F 75 sleep.

kwanche, to untie; cf. *kunche*.

kwanda ڪُوْنَاَدَا, a cup inverted on
a reed in a field as a charm
against thieves, the sight of
it is supposed to cause the
thief's hands to drop off.

kwando or *kondo* ڪُوْنَاَدُو, the centre
inside a thatch roof where the
reeds meet together.

kwangi ڪُوْنَاِچِي, a sort of cane or
bamboo.

kwankwassa كُنْفَسَا, *كُنْفَسَا*, to knock at a door; cf. (?) *kwari-kwasa*.

kwanta, see *kwana*.

*kwantasa**, to ally; cf. *kwana*.

kwantawa, lying down; cf. *kwana*.

kwanto, lying in wait; cf. *kwana*.

kwanya كُنْيَا, found in the compound *kwanyan kune* wax from the ear.

kwara كُورَا, grain, fruit, or kernel.

kwara(r)a كُرَا, choking from swallowing anything.

kwari كُرِي, rightly, properly; *na ji kwari* I understood aright; *nakwari*, f. *takwari* correct, proper.

kwarakwara or *kworakwora* كُرْكَرَا, female slave in a house.

kware كُرِي or *kwari* كُرِي, to peel, strip, bark, skin. *kwaro* كُورُو, strips of black leather worn round the neck and hanging in front. *kwaria* كُرِيَا, strip of cloth, etc.; cf. (?) *bare*.

kwariche كُرْبِي, poison given in food = *sammu*.

kwarika كُرِكْ or *kwaraka* كُرَكْ, to be ravenous or greedy; *maikwarika* one who lives by begging food, a parasite.

kwarikwassa كُرِكْسَا, a hammer.

kwarikwassa كُرِكْسَا, *kwalkwas(s)a* كَلَسَا or *kwrukwassa*

كُرْكَسَا, a large black ant, usually called the travelling or driver ant; it travels in columns and feeds only on living creatures. For description of its habits cf. 'Hausaland,' pp. 96, 164.

kwarkwat(t)a كُرْكَتَا or *kwalkwat(t)a* or *kolkot(t)a* كَلْكَتَا, a minute white insect in clothes, etc., louse (?).

kwarmi كُرْمِي, pl. *kwarmu* كُرْمُو, socket, hole, joint of scissors, etc.

kwaro كُورُو, pl. *kwari* كُورِي, a black moth.

kwaro, strips of black leather; cf. *kware*.

kwrukwassa, ants; cf. *kwari-kwassa*.

*kwaruru** كُرُرُو, a large nut, similar in appearance to a ground nut, growing on a low bush; its name in Zaria and amongst the Nupés is *yaro da daria*, i.e. laughing boy.

kwaskwasa كُسْكَسَا, pelican (?).

kwasfa, shell; cf. *kosfa*.

kwashe, to snatch; cf. *kwache*.

kwaso, i. q. prec.; cf. *kwache*.

kwatanta, see *kotanta*.

*kwauri**, dried trunk of a tree; cf. *kwabri*.

kwaya كُويَا, found in comp. *kwayan ido* ball of the eye, *kwayan gero*, *shinkaffa*, etc. ear, fruit.

kwazo كُوزُو, diligently.

kwibi كُوبِى or كُيبِى, side of the body.

kwikuyo كُكُيُو or *kurkwiyu* كُرْكَيُو, pl. *kwikuye* كُكُيِى, youngling, young of animals.

*kwilki** كُكُكِى, in comp. *kwilkin kofa* = doorstep; cf. (?) *kulki*.

kwiya كُيَا, ridges in a field.

kwiya, female slave; cf. *ku-yanga*.

*kwobe**, to rebuke; cf. *kwaba*.

kwobruka or *kwabruka*, withered branches; plural of *kwabri*, q.v.

kwochia كُشِيَا, raised part or peak of a saddle, *kwochia gabba* the front peak, *kwochia baya* the hind peak.

kwoda, liver; cf. *koda*.

*kwodoki** كُودُوكِى, strong vigorous man.

kwoi or *koi* كُوى, pl. *kwoinyaye* كُوينِيِي, an egg; *aje kwoi* used of a bird, to lay eggs. *kwoin kifi* pearls.

kwolkwoli كُكُكُلى, helmet.

kwolli, antimony; cf. *kolli*.

kwomo كُومُو, small bean eaten by horses.

kwonda كُند, to bring back or restore.

kwondeg(g)e, armlets; cf. *kunde-g(g)e*.

kwonderiya كُندِرِيَا, large wooden

hook, sometimes used for catching fish.

kwora or *kwara* كُورَا or *ruan kwora*, the Hausa name of the river Niger.

kworakwora, female slave; cf. *kwarakwara*.

kwori كُورِى, furrow or depression in ground.

kwori كُورِى, quiver, in Hausaland usually made of wood and covered with skin; *kworin kibia* quiver for arrows; cf. seq.

kworia or *korìa* كُورِيَا, cucurbita lagenaria, gourd; cups or calabashes are made from it; cf. *gora*.

kworno كُرنُو, the husks of guinea corn.

*kworomi** كُورُومِى, found in *mai-kworomi* one with sunken eyes.

kwosofa, egg-shells, pl. of *kosfa*, q.v.

kwosusu كُوسُوسُو, a second annual crop of indigo (*bába*); it is regarded as better than the first.

kwot(t)ana كُتْنَا, string of beads worn by women round the loins.

kwozo كُودُو, a toad (*kwado*) with a swelling on its back, i.e. a sick toad.

kwumbe, baldness; cf. *kumbe*.

*kwungura** كُنْغُرَا, a large oblong shield like that of a Zulu.

kwuriya, a stringed drum; cf. *kuri*.
kyanwa, cat; cf. *kenwa*.
kyau, see *keau*.
kyetu, a flint; cf. *ketu*.

The letter ل is used by the Hausas to represent the sound of the English *l*. In a few instances the Ar. ض (i.e. a sort of modified *d*) is pronounced by the Hausas as *l*; in these cases it is written ل, but the sound does not differ from ل ل; cf. *fululu* from Ar. فضول, *lullo* from Ar. وضو. In the last case and in the case of many other words beginning with *l*, the initial letter represents the Arabic article, e.g. *labari* from Ar. خبر, *laifi* from Ar. حيف. *l* is interchanged with *s* and *r*, and perhaps with *m*; cf. *halal*, *halas*; *fasali*, *fasara*; *linke*, *minka*.

laane لَعْنِي, fem. *laana* لَعْنَا, pl. *laanu* لَعْنُو, cf. Ar. لَعْن, 1. cursed, accursed, reprobate; *kai laana* a curse be upon thee! 2. worthless, idle; cf. *lainu*.

laasar لَعَسْرُ, *laasar* لَعَسْرُ (cf. Ar. عَصْر, day or night), afternoon, esp. applied to the time about 6 p.m.; cf. Gr. p. 64. The initial letter represents the Arabic article; cf. also seq.

labari لَابَارِي, لَابَارِ, Ar. خَبْر with art., news, message, G 7; *labarin dunia*, lit. news of the

world. When two Hausas meet their first question usually is *enna labari* or *enna labarin dunia? na ji labarinka* I heard news of you. *laberta* لَابَهْرَتْ, to publish news, with acc. to publish news of; cf. *haberta*, id.

labda لَبْدَا, 1. a load, esp. applied to a load put on camels, etc.; 2. لَبْدَ, to put a saddle on, to pack up a load. *labche* لَبْشِي, particip. form from *labda*, laden, loaded (cf. Ar. لَبْدُ, saddle-cloth).

laberta, see *labari*.

*labudda** لَابُدَا, Ar. لَابُدَّ, certainly, to be sure, no doubt, just so.

*lada** لَادَا, cf. Ar. rt عود, the man who calls to prayer, the mu-ezzin, i.e. Ar. اُذِينُ.

lada لَادَا, Ar. عَادَةٌ, 1. wages, payment; 2. recompense, reward; E 14 *ku same lada* you will receive a reward; cf. seq.

lad(d)a لَدَا, a form of prec., 1. wages; 2. special discount, a broker's commission. The usual commission paid to the broker, through whom almost every bargain in a Hausa market is made, is 5 p.c. on the amount involved. If a man sells anything *ladda woje* (lit. discount outside) he receives the whole of the money paid and the buyer pays the market fee or

broker's commission; if however the transaction is concluded *ladda chikki* (lit. discount within) the seller pays the commission.

*lad(d)abi** لَدَبِي (cf. Ar. اَدَبٌ, liberal education), 1. education, e.g. B 37 *laddabi gaskia* a true education; D 33 *en kun samu yaya ku nema laddabi garesu* if you have children seek instruction for them; 2. lowliness, humility, submission.

*ladama** لَدَامَا, grief, remorse; apparently a form of *nadama*, q.v.

*lafafa**, see *lafia*.

lafi لَاْفِي or *lafe* لَاْفِي, hem, edge; *lafen zane* edge of cloth.

lafia لَاْفِيَا, Ar. عَافِيَةٌ, health, i.e. good health, B 62; *yin lafia* to be in good health; common in salutations, *kana lafia* are you well? *sai lafia* or *lafia lau* quite well; adverbially e.g. *ya komo lafia* he came back here well, or safely, *ya samu lafia* he recovered his health. *lafafa** لَاْفَاْفَا, prosperity; B 46 *allah shi bamu kwana lafafa* may God grant us days of prosperity.

lahadi لَاْحَدِي, Ar. يَوْمُ الْاَحَدِ, Sunday, lit. the first day.

lahani لَاْحَنِي, blemish, defect; *lahaniga ido* a blemish in the eye.

lahira لَاْحِرَا, Ar. اٰخِرَةٌ, the future state including both heaven and hell, A 7, 33.

*lai** لَاِي, see *lau*.

*laifa** لَاَيْفٌ, to condemn; cf. seq.

laifi لَاَيْفِي, Ar. حَيْفٌ with art., that which is wrong, sin, guilt; *yin laifi* to do wrong, *bada laifi* or *laifa* to condemn, *babu laifi* there is no harm in it.

*laifi** لَاَيْفِي, Ar. ضَعِيْفٌ, found in C 1, weak; cf. note, ad loc.

*lainu** لَاَيْنِي, Ar. لَعِيْنٌ, found in D 22, the wicked; cf. *laane*.

lajibi لَاَعْجِبِي, Ar. عَجَبٌ with art.; cf. D 90, wonderful; cf. *ajaba*.

laka لَاَكٌ, mire, mud.

lakhira, see *lahira*.

lalaba لَلَبَا, the act of fondling; B 144 *dunia ta kan yi lalaba* the world, it would fondle (you). *lalabe* لَلَبِي, to feel, grope, search with the hand for something. *lalabarwa** لَلَبَاوَا, participial form, found in passive, F 96 *ana kuma lalabarwa* it (is) kneaded up again.

lalachewa, perishing; cf. *lalata*.

lalachi, to perish; cf. *lalata*.

lalachi, idleness; cf. *lalata*.

lalafa لَلَفَا, 1. idle, lazy; 2. quiet, easy, tame, cowardly. *lala-fanchi* لَلَفَانْتِ, idleness, quietness, easy disposition.

lalaftu لَلَفْتُو, to tack in sewing.

lalas لَلَسٌ, to burn with hot iron, pass. in F 170 *ana masu lalas*

- a hot iron shall be (prepared) for them; used of burning or marking the skin with a hot iron.
- lalashi* لَلَّاشِي or *lilashi* لِّلَّاشِي, to calm, appease, persuade; possibly formed from *lalaba* to fondle.
- lalata* لَلَّاتَا, 1. destruction, condemnation; 2. evil disposition.
- lalata* لَلَّاتَات, to linger about, to be idle; *lalachi* لَلَّاتِ, idleness, indifference; *mailalachi* مَلَّلَاتِ or *malalachi* مَلَّلَاتِ, one who is idle. *lalachi* لَلَّاتِي, to perish, be destroyed, pass away; B 101 *dunia ta lalachi* the world passes to destruction; *lalachewa* لَلَّاتِيْمُوا, perishing. *lalatache* لَلَّاتَاتِي, fem. *lalatachia* لَلَّاتَاتِيَا, pl. *lalatachi* لَلَّاتَاتِيَا, 1. lost, perished; B 126 *ku ber ta dunia lalatache* leave the world to perish; 2. worthless, mean.
- lal(l)e** لَلِّي, the flour of wheat.
- lal(l)e* لَلِّي, *lenle** لَلِّي, to be in need of; *da lal(l)e* of necessity.
- lal(l)i*: لَلِّي, found in phrase *lalli ne = ya kamata* it is necessary, needful.
- lalita** لَلَّتَا, a very small bag.
- lambu* لَلَّبُو, pl. لَلَّبِيْنَا, a dry season garden, an irrigated garden.

- lami* لَامِي, tasteless, insipid; *da lami*, id., used of eggs without salt or of broth without meat, etc.
- lamuni* لَامُونِي or *lamini* لَامِينِي, cf. Ar. لَامِنٌ, 1. security; *wotikan lamuni* letter of safe conduct; 2. a surety for payment of a debt; *na yi lamuni* I stand security. *laminta* لَامِنْتِ, to be or become surety for, constr. with accus. *lamunche* لَامُنْشِي id., e.g. *na lamuncheshi* I became surety for him.
- lamunta** لَامِنْتِ, to consent, probably a form of prec.
- langabbu* لَنْغَبُو, the skin of a goat beaten, cooked and eaten.
- langi* لَنْغِي, long narrow bag for salt; cf. (?) *lengi*.
- lanza** لَنْزَا, nuts, almonds (?).
- laraba* لَارَبَا, Ar. عَرَبٌ, found in comp. *balaraba* بَلَارَبَا, an Arab, and its pl. *larabawa* لَارَبَاوَا, Arabs; E 49.
- laraba* لَارَبَا, Ar. يَوْمُ الْاَرْبَعَاءِ, Wednesday; lit. the fourth day.
- larura** لَارُورَا, Ar. صُرُورَةٌ, 1. necessity, e.g. E 14 *domin larura* for the sake of necessity; 2. trouble, *ya rike larura* = he feels pain, e.g. on receiving punishment for wrong-doing.
- las(s)a* لَسَّ, to lick. *lashe* لَشِي

to lick, lick up; of fire, to lick up, consume.

lasso لَسُو, of number, used like *havia*, q.v., for counting amounts divisible by twenty, a score, twenty.

latini لَاتِنِي, from Ar. يَوْمَ الْاِثْنَيْنِ, Monday, lit. the second day.

lau لَو or لاي* لَي, adv. only used with *lafia*, quite, *lafia lau* quite well [(?) = contraction of *lafia*].

lauashi لَوَشِي, the dried leaves of onions.

*laudi** لَوْدِي, bending; cf. proverb *laudi ba karaya ba* bending is not breaking.

lauer لَوْر, a white species of sweet potato.

lauje لَوْجِي, a small semicircular sickle for cutting grass, B 38.

*lauma** لَوْمَا or لوما, Ar. لُفْمَةٌ, mouthful; B 30 *wonda ke jiran kabakki dungum...ba shi kulata da lauma* he who waits for abundance to eat cares not for a mouthful.

laumi لَوْنِي, Ar. لَوْنٌ, 1. colour, hue; 2. kind, species; D 78.

laushi or *loshi* لَوْشِي, thin, fine, as flour, dust, etc.; cf. *roshi*.

laushi لَوْشِي, found in *mailaushi*, a man with a bent arm which cannot be straightened.

*laushiwa** لَوْشِيَوَا, a being blunt; *da laushiwa* blunt.

laya لَايَا, Ar. آيَةٌ with the art.

prefixed, 1. a writing of any kind, then 2. specially a certificate of freedom or manumission of a slave; 3. a written charm, consisting of a piece of paper written on and sewed up in a leather bag and worn on the neck or arm; *layan zana* a charm, the writing of which, if it be washed off from what it has been written on and the water drunk, renders a man invisible; it is also the name of the tree from the fruit of which is made the following, *layan sabani*, i.e. a charm to prevent injury in war; 4. *sallan laya* the Arab feast which corresponds in many respects to the Jewish Passover; 5. *ragon laya* the paschal lamb or ram killed at the feast of the *sallan laya*.

laze لَازِي, لَاطِي, to tread upon, to crush.

lazumche لَزْمِي, Ar. لَزْمٌ, 1. to adhere to, stick together; 2*. to be necessary, e.g. *lazumcheni* I must do.

lebatu لَبْتُو, the wattles of a cock.

lebo لَبُو, pl. *lebuna* لَبِينَا, lip.

led(d)ai لَدِي, spoons; cf. *luddai*.

lefe لَبِي, a kind of shallow basket made of reeds or grass.

leferu لَبِرُو, pl. *leferai* لَبِيرِي, a large pad for a donkey, a cushion.

lekafa لَكَاڤَا, 1. steps placed for mounting a horse; *lekafan doki*, id.; 2*. foot-stool; 3. stirrup.

lekawa لَكَاوَا, to stoop in order to look down into a hole.

leke لَكِي, to roll up the covering of a doorway.

lek(k)i لَكِي, 1. leather satchel; cf. *gafaka*; 2. a piece of cloth thrown over the shoulder.

lela لَلَا, a dance accompanied by music, practised by young men.

*lele** لَلِي, one much loved, darling.

lel(l)e لَلِي, large tree, its leaves are ground up to make a stain for the hands.

lema لَمَا, Kanuri *leima* (probably from Ar. خَيْمَةٌ, a tent, with article prefixed; cf. *labari*, from Ar. خَبَرٌ), tent; *kaffa lema* to pitch a tent, *nade lema* to take down (lit. to roll up) a tent.

lemu لَمُو, Ar. لَيْمُونٌ, Pers. لِيمُون, lime, lemon.

lenge لَنْغِي or *lunge* لَنْغِي, to hop on one foot.

lengi لَنْغِي, a large sack of salt equal to two men's loads or one donkey load.

lesafi, see *lisafi*.

letafi, see *litafi*.

*liar** لِيرٌ, dollar; a word used by Hausas in N. Africa, possibly an inverted form of Spanish *rial*.

*likafani** لِكْفَانِي, Ar. فَبَعَنٌ, a winding sheet, F 91 note; cf. *kafan*.

lilashi, to appease; cf. *lalashi*.

lilibi, veil; cf. *lulubi*.

lil(l)o لَلُو, to swing to and fro.

*limam** لِمَامٌ, pl. *limami* لِمَامِي, Ar. الْإِمَامُ, leader in prayer, chief mallam.

lingab(b)u لَنْغَبُو, a medicine made of the leaves of the *adua* tree.

linke لَنْكِي, 1. to roll up a mat, etc.; 2. to turn over a piece of a mat = *nimka*, q.v.

lisafi or *lesafi* لِسَافٍ, Ar. حَسَبٌ, 1. number, account, bill; *yin lisafi* to render or come to an account; 2. لِسَافِي, to number, count.

lisha لِشَا, Ar. الْعِشَاءُ, very late evening, the time following *maguriba*; cf. *rana*.

litafi or *letafi* لِتَافِي, pl. *litafafi* لِتَافِي (used as fem. in G7), (cf. Ar. لَطِيفَةٌ, elegant literature), writing, book; *litafin allah* a name frequently given to a butterfly.

liwasa لِيوَسَا, an epithet applied to cloth without a seam in it.

loda لُوْدَا, a herb, the root of which is put in milk to keep it = *daf(f)ara*, q.v.

loga لُوْغَا, لُغَا, cf. Ar. لُغَةٌ, the meaning of a word.

lokachi لوكتى (cf. Kanuri *lokta*), probably from Ar. وَفَتْ, with article prefixed, time, season; *lokachinda* at the time that, or when; *wani lokachi* when? *lokachinan* now.

loko لوكو, 1. a temporary halting-place for carriers; 2. a notch or projection in a tree for resting a load against; 3. the stick usually carried by porters in order to support their loads against a tree when halting.

lokoja لوكوجا, the town at the confluence of the R. Niger and R. Benue, 390 m. up the R. Niger from the sea.

loloki لولوكى, pl. *lolokai* لولوكاي, Fulah id., 1. closet, small dark room, cupboard; 2. any secret place; D 63 *rana chan akuntuna loloki asiri* on that day the secret place shall be laid open.

loma, a mouthful; cf. *lauuma*.

lonkwashe لونكشى, to bend or be crooked.

loshi, thin, fine; cf. *laushi*.

*loto** لوتو, time; A 62, 65 = seq.

lot(t)u لتو, time, i.e. occasion or set time; *lottu* is also used for a watch or clock.

lubiya لوبيا, dates tied up in a mat.

lud(d)ai لدى or *led(d)ai* لدى, spoons made from the rind of pumpkins (cf. the *tsokali* spoon which is made of wood).

lufudi لوفدى, pl. *lufudai* لوفدئى (cf. Ar. بَدَّ, to press hair), coat of mail put on horses and men, made of cloth stuffed with cotton, wool, etc., not of iron.

*lullo** لُلُو, Ar. وُضُو with article, purification, F 148 note; cf. *allowa*.

luloki لولوكى, pl. *lulokai* لولوكاي, dividing of roads.

lulu لولو, a small glass box for frankincense.

lulubi لُلُبى or *lulube* لُلُبى, 1. a long veil reaching to the feet; 2. to veil oneself; F 41, A 28, C 18.

lumfashi لُمفاشى (cf. Ar. rt نَس with art. prefixed), 1. breathing heavily; 2. لُمفاشى, to breathe heavily.

lumshi لُمشى, small white clouds; cf. *gilgiji*.

lunge, to hop on one foot; cf. *lenge*.

lungu لَنُغُو, 1. the turning of a road; 2. darkness.

lura لورا, 1. insight, wisdom, knowledge; 2. لور, to look into, attend to, with accus. and also with *da*, e.g. B 41 *kadda ka lura da aiki nai* look not closely at his work.

luru لورو, native cloth with alternate strips of two colours.

The letter م is used by the Hausas to represent the sound of the English *m*. When *n* is fol-

lowed by *b* it is usually pronounced *m*; this sometimes happens when *n* is followed by *f*, *z*, or *ch*, thus *hamfude*, *hamzari*, *dabamchi* are written *hanfude*, *hanzari*, *dabanchi*.

ma مَا, inseparable nominal prefix placed before verbs to form
1. nouns of the agent, e.g. *saki* to weave, *masaki* weaver;
2. nouns of place, e.g. *sabka* to unload, *masabki* lodging;
3. nouns of the instrument; cf. *dauka* to take up, *madauki* handle. This use of *ma* or *mai* as a prefix to form nouns of the agent, etc. is analogous to, or borrowed from, the Arabic use of م for a similar purpose, thus زَيْنَ, to shave, مُرَيِّنٌ, a barber.

*ma** مَا, too, likewise; as an enclitic it follows the word to which it is referred, e.g. *ni ma ina taffia en nema dukia* I too am going to search for property (in Fulah *ma* = or, provided that).

ma مَا, to; F 256 *na gode ma allah* I give thanks to God. It is most commonly used with the personal pronouns, e.g. *maka* to thee, *masu* to them; the vowel is often assimilated to that of the governed pron., e.g. *mini* = *mani* to me, *mumu* = *mamu* to us, *musu* = *masu* to them.

maabba مَاَبَا, cf. Ar. اَبَه, a beggar

who sings the praises of a great man.

*maabudu** مَعْبُودٌ, Ar. مَعْبُودٌ, worshipped, served; cf. D 3 note.

maaikachi مَاَيَكْتِ, 1. industrious labourer, workman; 2. workshop.

maaike مَاَيَكِي, pl. *masuiki* مَاَسَائِكِي and *maaika* مَاَيَكَا, 1. one who sends; 2. one sent, messenger = *manzo*.

maaike مَاَيَكِي, fem. *maaikia* مَاَيَكِيَا, pl. *masuiki* مَاَسَائِكِي, labourer; the fem. = a servant.

maaje مَاَجِي, a place to lay up a deposit or to hide anything.

maanfani مَاَنَبَانِي, a place suitable for keeping anything in, e.g. *maanfanin nama* a meat-safe, larder; cf. *maianfani* useful.

*maasai** مَاَسِي, blasphemy.

maauuna مَاَوْنَا, scales, balance, anything used for weighing or measuring; cf. *auuna*.

mabachi مَاَبِي, pl. *mabata* مَاَبَتَا (cf. *ba* to give), one who gives money or goods on trust or on loan; the trustee or borrower is called *madaukin bashi*.

*mabantari** مَاَبَنْتَرِي, button; cf. (?) *bante*.

mabiriki مَاَبِرِكِي or *maburiki* مَاَبُرِكِي, a small stick for stirring milk or *tuo*; cf. *muchia*.

maboya or *maboyiya* مَبُویَا, a hiding-place; cf. *boya*.

mabugi مَبُغِي, pl. *mabugai* مَبُغِي, a threshing-floor; a place where clothes are beaten in dyeing; cf. *buga* to beat.

*mabukachi** مَبُكِي, a careless man, e.g. one who destroys everything he gets; cf. (?) *bukata*.

maburiki, see *mabiriki*.

mabur(r)us مَبُورُس, a white material or stuff for making turbans.

mabuya مَبُویَا, folly, *shina da mabuya* = *shi murashankali ne*.

machauchi مَئُوْئِي, an animal which barks, about the size of a dog.

mache مَئِي or *machi* مَئِي, pl. *mata* مَاتَا, woman, female, as opposed to *namiji* male; cf. *mata*.

mache مَئِي, *machi** مَئِي, 1. to die, to perish; cf. *akanmache*, B 18; from this comes the particip. adj. *matache*, q.v.; 2*. to destroy, *wuta ta macheshi* the fire burnt it up.

mache مَئِي or *machi* مَئِي or *matse* مَطْطِي, to press, squeeze, crush; *wurin machi* a narrow place; *gidda anmache*, D 85, abode of poverty. *machiachi* مَئِيَّائِي, 1. one who is distressed, perplexed, helpless; 2. distress, poverty, care. *machiata* مَئِيَّاتَا, anxiety, distress. *machichi* مَئِيَّيِي, squeezing, D 14; cf. *matseu*.

*machechi** مَئِيَّيِي, pl. *macheta*

مَئِيَّتَا, 1. deliverer, saviour;

2. deliverance; cf. *cheche*.

*machi**, to die, B 102; cf. *mache*.

machia مَئِيَّيَا (from *chi* to eat), much food, abundance of food.

machiachi, see *mache*.

machiuta and *machichi*, see *mache*.

machiji مَئِيَّيِي, pl. *machizai*

مَئِيَّيِي (lit. biter, cf. *chiji*), snake, F 109, 190. There are said to be 343 different kinds of snakes in Hausaland.

machikura مَئِيَّيِي, pl. *machiakura*

مَئِيَّيِي, one who obtains an undue advantage, a cheat, defrauder; from *chi*, q.v., and *kura* gain.

machiri مَئِيَّيِي, a mutilating form of leprosy.

*machirkia** مَئِيَّيِي, a stringed musical instrument.

machuchi مَئِيَّيِي, maker of mischief; cf. (?) *machauchi*.

*madachi** مَدَّئِي, boy, *madachia**

مَدَّئِيَا, girl.

madachi مَدَّئِي, 1. gall, 2. a bitter fruit; cf. *doachi* bitter.

*madafa** مَدَّافَا, pl. *madafai* مَدَّافِي,

Ar. مَدَّافِع, cannon; *bu madafa* lit. the father of cannon (cf. Ar. *bu*, father), is the name given to

the Spanish dollar, which has
 cannot impressed upon it.
madaffa مَادِبَا, pl. *madaffai* مَادِبِي, kitchen; cf. *daffa*.
madaidaichi مَادِيدِيْت, 1. moderate size, e.g. *yaro shina da madai-daichi* the boy is of moderate size; 2. anything of moderate size.
madaki مَادَاكِي, a chamberlain, one of the chief officials in the Hausa states, cf. G 4 note; see under *fadama* and *daki*.
madala مَادَلَا, Nupé id., yes, indeed, i.e. Ar. مَا دَلَّ الْآلَهَ, what has God shown!
madamri مَدَمْرِي, found in *madamrin chikki* a girdle; cf. *damre*.
madara مَادَرَا, cf. Ar. rt مَدْر, fresh or sweet milk.
madat مَدَت or *madas* مَدَس, a poison ground up and used for destroying mice, etc.
madaukaki مَادُوْكَاكِي, the great or high one, e.g. a king; cf. *daukaka*.
madauki مَادُوْكِي, handle, that part of anything by which it is held in the hand; cf. *dauka*.
madawami مَدُوْمِي, long lasting, incessant; often pronounced *madowami*; cf. *dawama*.
mad(d)i مَدِي or *madya* مَدِيَا (F 230), a kind of molasses

made from the fruit of the *dumia*, *taura*, or *kaiwa* tree.
*madinkia** مَادِنْكِيَا, needle; cf. *dumke* to sew, *madumki* tailor.
madobia مَدْبِيَا, a tree with edible fruit, the wood of which turns red by exposure.
madogara مَادُوْغَرَا, stay, prop, support; cf. *dogare*.
madubi مَدُوْبِي, glass, eye-glass, looking-glass. The latter is more commonly *madubin fuska*; cf. *duba* to look at.
*madudai** مَعْدُوْدِي, cf. Ar. عَدَّ, reckoned up, B 122.
madugu مَادُوْغُو, pl. *madugawa* مَادُوْغُوَا, 1. leader or headman of a caravan; he always walks behind, whilst the *jagaba* (guide) walks in front; 2. the title of a prince amongst the Bornuese.
madumki مَادُمْكِي, fem. *madumkia* مَادُمْكِيَا, pl. *madumkai* مَادُمْكِيَا, tailor; cf. *dumke* to sew, *madinkia* needle.
*madrundumi** مَدْنْدُمِي, a large aquatic bird which, the Hausas say, cannot see except at night and preys on fowls.
madya, a syrup, F 230; cf. *mad(d)i*.
mafada مَافَدَا, pl. *mafadawa* مَافَدَاوَا, councillor, adviser or minister of a king; cf. *fadawa*.
mafak(k)a مَافَكَا, place to lie in wait; cf. *fak(k)o*, *hak(k)o*.

mafalki مَمَلَكِي, dream; *yin mafalki* to dream; cf. (?) *falka* to awake.

mafari مَبَارِي, beginning, origin; cf. *fari*.

mafasa(s) مَابَسَا, brigands, pl. of *maifese*, q.v.

mafauchi مَابَوُئِي, a butcher who sells meat in the market; cf. *fauchi*, *fawa*.

mafichi مَائِي, landing-place; cf. *fit(t)a*.

mafifichi مَابِيئِي, superior, *wanan mafifichi ne daga wonchan* this is superior to that; cf. *fi*.

mafigirma مَابِيغَرْمَا, greater, lit. that which surpasses in greatness *girma*, usually followed by *dagga*.

mafiyawa مَابِيوَا, more, lit. that which surpasses in number, followed by *dagga*.

mafuchi مَابُوئِي or *fifiche* فَيْئِي, pl. *mafelfechi* مَابَلْفَيْئِي, fan.

mafuri مَابُرِي, bellows; cf. *fura*, *maifura*.

mafusara مَبْسَرَا, bladder.

magabachi مَغَابَائِي, title of a royal official = *magaji*; cf. *gab(b)a*.

magada مَغَادَا, مَغَاد, heirs, A 20; used as pl. of *magashi*, q.v.

magagachi مَغَاغَائِي, fool, senseless, B 108; cf. *gigichi*, *agaga*.

magagari مَغَاغَرِي, tool or rasp for sharpening swords, etc.

magagi مَغَاغِي, reeling or staggering as of a dying man; *magagin berichi* stretching one's limbs sleepily on awaking; cf. (?) *agaga*.

magaji مَغَاغِي, مَغَجِي, minister of the household, esp. of a king's household; *magaji* (of which *maji* is perhaps an abbreviation) is probably formed from *gaje* to inherit.

magana مَغْنَا, pl. *maganganu* مَغْنَانُو, 1. word, vocable; 2. speech, language, e.g. *magana hausa* the Hausa language; *yin magana hausa* to speak or to know the Hausa language.

magangami مَغْنَمِي, meeting or confluence of rivers; cf. *ganga* to mix.

magani مَغَانِي, pl. *maganguna* مَغَانُغْنَا and *magunguna* مَغَانُغْنَا, 1. medicine; *mai-magani* a doctor; *maganin kuda* a strip of leather placed over a horse's eyes to keep off flies; *maganin zawo* a purgative medicine; 2. poison, cf. Kanuri *magali*, id.; 3. a charm, *maganin yaki* a charm to afford protection in war.

*maganta** مَغَنْتَا, discussion, *yin maganta* to hold discussion.

magantawa مَغَنْتَاوَا or *magantirwa* مَغَنْتِرْوَا, council or discussion

before a king, etc., or with anyone.

magaria مَغْرِبَا (zizyphus lotus), a bushy tree resembling the *kurna*, with edible fruit about the size of cherries. The fruit is pounded and made into little cakes, *tuwon magaria*, and sold at the little wayside markets.

magarub مَعْرَبُ or *maguriba* مَغْرِبَا, Ar. مَعْرَبُ, 1. late in the evening, the time between *laasar* and *lisha*, cf. *rana*; 2. the west.

magashi مَاعَشِي, fem. *magashia* مَاعَشِيَا, pl. *magata* مَاعَاتَا or *magada* مَعَادَا, heir; cf. *gado*.

magaya مَغْيَا or *magauchi* مَغْوَيْ, pl. *magata* مَغَاتَا, heartless, unsympathetic; cf. (?) *gaya** evil.

mageduwa مَغْدُوَا, *ainhum*, i.e. the disease in which the bone of the little toe becomes gradually absorbed and the toe eventually drops off; *maimageduwa* one so afflicted, cf. 'Hausaland,' p. 152.

magenā مَغْنَا, a tree from whose leaves a yellow stain is made; this mixed with indigo makes a green dye.

mag(g) مَغِي, 1. the tame cat; 2. *maggen tental* the civet cat = Ar. زَبَادُ, it is a native of N. Africa but is kept in a

state of captivity by the Hausas for the sake of the frankincense (*turare*) which is secreted in a double pouch under its abdomen.

magi, cf. *idon magi* squint.

*magirkai** مَغْرِكَيْ, stones put under anything to support it; cf. (?) *gerke*.

*magiro** مَغْرُو, ghost, evil spirit; cf. (?) *giro* an eyebrow.

*magudanchi** مَاعُدَنْشِي, pl. *magudantai** مَاعُدَنْتِي, a slave about fourteen years old; probably formed from *gidda* and originally applied to a slave born in his master's house.

maguje مَاعُجِي or *muguje* مَغُجِي, one who runs away in war.

maguriba, evening; cf. *magarub*.

magurji مَغْرُجِي, a flat stone on which rice, etc. is rolled; *dan magurji*, 1. the stone which is used as the roller; 2. also used as the name of a black snake about 18 inches long.

mahaiji مَاهِيَجِي, pl. *mahaiifa* مَاهِيَفَا, one or both parents.

mahalbi مَاهَلْبِي, pl. *mahalbai* مَاهَلْبِي and *masuhalbi* مَاسْهَلْبِي, bowman, spearman, marksman, anyone who discharges guns or arrows; cf. *halbi*.

*mahalichi** مَاهَلِيْشِي or *maihalichi** مَاهَلِيْشِي, creator; cf. *halita*.

muhamudi مَحْمُودِي, white calico used in making tobés.

maharma مَحْرَمَا, Ar. مَحْرَمَةٌ, handkerchief.

mahas(s)adi مَاحَسَدِي, one who causes trouble or vexation, a persecutor; cf. *has(s)ada*.

mahaukachi مَاحُوكَتِي, fem. *mahaukachia* مَاحُوكَتِيَا, pl. *mahaukatu* مَاحُوكَتُو, a foolish person, a lunatic; *mahaukachi karre* a mad dog; cf. *haukachi*.

*mahawayi** مَحَوَايِي, an object of terror; cf. (?) *hawaye* tears.

mahayi مَحْيِي, steps, ladder; cf. *hawa* to ascend.

mai مَي, pl. *masu* مَاسُ, nominal prefix forming nouns of agency from verbs, substantives and adjectives, e.g. *gudu* to run, *maigudu* a fugitive; *gona* a farm, *maigona* the owner of the farm; *girima* great, *maigirima* one who is great. The formation is closely analogous to the Arabic; cf. *ma*. Words beginning with *mai* which are only occasionally used will be found under their original forms; thus for *maigudu* cf. under *gudu*.

mai مَي, Ar. مَيْع, oil or grease of any kind, e.g. butter, the fat of meat; *main shanu* cow butter, *main ja* palm oil, *main gedda* oil obtained from ground

nuts, *main kedanya* oil from seeds of shea butter tree, *main ridi* oil obtained by distillation from coriander seed, *main shafewa* ointment of any kind.

maiabu مَيَابُو, or in constr. *maiabin* مَيَابِين, one who possesses something, the owner, the proprietor.

*maid(d)ini** مَيَادِينِي, pl. *masuad-dini* مَاسَادِينِي, Ar. دِين, a religious person.

*maiagazawa** مَيَاعَزَاوَا, helper; in F 106 the true reading probably is *kana kuka enna maiagazawa* thou wilt cry, where will any helper be? F 187; cf. *gazawa* and *gaji*.

maiagia مَيَاغِيَا, store-keeper; cf. *agia* and *maiiji*.

maialgus مَيَالْغُسُّ, deceitful person.

*maiamaia** مَيَمِيَا, great (?), cf. F 64.

*maiata**, passing away; cf. *mayata*.

*maibada** مَيِبَادَا, pl. *masubada* مَاسِبَادَا, giver; cf. *bada*.

maibarra مَيِبَرَّرَا, beggar; cf. *barra*.

maichi مَيِئِي, owner, proprietor; cf. *chi* to gain possession of.

maichar(r)a مَيِئَرَا or *maishar(r)a*, مَيِشَرَا, cock, lit. the one who crows; cf. *char(r)a*.

maida مَيِدَا, to turn; then with various modifications of the idea we have *maida kamna* C 9

to direct the desire, *na maida kamna gareshi* = I like him, D 6 *maida himma* to pay attention to or to do quickly, *maida kansa* to pretend, E 6 *maida addinin asna* imitate the religion of the heathen; to cause to do, e.g. *ya maidashi shi kwanche* he caused him to lie down; to turn or change in value, e.g. *sariki ya maida kurdin madafa* the king has changed the value of the Spanish dollar. Derivative forms are: *mayes* مَیْس, to throw or push back, to lay a thing down again, to bring back; *ka mayes* = *ka komo da shi*. *mayesda* مَیْسَد, to turn or change into something; *ina mayesda wani* I become such an one. *maishhe* مَیْشِی, to change; F 207 *ja-himi na ji ta maishesu* the fire, I understand, shall change them; *ya maisheni bawa* he made me a slave.

*maida** مَیْدَا, Ar. مَائِدَة, table (the word is but little known in Hausaland, as tables themselves are unknown).

maidaffua مَیْدَفُوَا, cook; cf. *daffa*.

*maidilanchi** مَیْدِلَنْتِ, trader; cf. *dilanchi*.

maidsasi, see *maitsasi*.

maies(s)a, why? cf. *mayes(s)a*.

maifesshe مَیْفَیْشِی, pl. *nafas(s)a*

مَافِیْسَا, highway robber, brigand; cf. *fashe* to break.

maifuchi مَیْفُوشِی, one who gasps for breath; cf. *fuchi*.

maigobe مَیْغُوبِی, lit. possessor of to-morrow; cf. B 3 note *uban-gijnmu maiyo maigobe* He is our lord to-day and for ever.

maigona مَیْغُونَا, pl. *masugona* مَاسُغُونَا, possessor of a farm; cf. *gona*.

maihakia مَیْحَکِیَا, a man with only one eye; cf. *hakia* disease of the eyes.

*maihalichi**, see *mahalichi*.

mai(r)har(r)* مَیْحَرِی, war-horse, A 74; cf. *har(r)i* cavalry.

*maihaya** مَیْحَا, Ar. حَيَاة, the living One, i.e. God, C 10.

maii مَیْیِ, intoxicated, e.g. with *gia* or *barassa*.

*maiji** مَیْجِی, storehouse, a title given to Mohammed; cf. *mai-ajia*.

maijika مَیْجِکَا, lit. possessor of the bag, a kind of stork.

maikasala, a beggar; cf. *kasala*.

*maikatarta** مَیْکَتَرْتَا, one who trembles, D 46; cf. *makarkata*, id.

maikeau or *maikiyo* مَیْکِیُو, beautiful, good; cf. *keau*.

maikesua, a glow-worm; cf. *make-sua*.

maikinji مَیْکِنْجِی, 1. enemy; 2. hard-headed or stubborn person; cf. *ki*.

*makarkata** مَكْرَكَتَا, one who trembles, adj. trembling, D 43 ; cf. *maikafarta*, *karkat(t)a*.

*makasari** مَكْسَرِي, fem. *makasaria* مَكْسَرِيَا, halt, lame.

maka(s)shi مَاكْشِي, *makasshinkai* a murderer ; cf. *ka(s)shinkai*.

makaskachi مَاكْسَكْتِي, pl. *makaskasta* مَاكْسَكْسَتَا, poor, oppressed ; cf. *kaskasta* to despise.

*makawa** مَكْوَا, resistance ; D 24 *ba makawa gare* (= *gareshi*) he will not be able to resist.

makel(l)aci مَاكَلْتِي, one who stares, generally used in a bad sense ; cf. *kal(l)o*.

*makera** مَاكِرَا, an anvil, v. *kira* to forge ; cf. seq.

makeri مَاكِرِي or *maikira* مَيَكِرَا, fem. مَاكِرِيَا, pl. used in Zaria = *muk(k)ira* مَكِرَا, blacksmith ; fem. = blacksmith's wife. *sari-kin mukkira* the title of one of the principal officers of the court at Zaria ; cf. *fadawa*.

makerua مَبَكْرُوَا, a red-legged part-ridge.

makesua مَبَكْسُوَا or *maikesua* مَيَكْسُوَا, glow-worm.

*maketachi** مَاكَتَتِي, worker of evil ; cf. *keta*.

*maki** مَكِي, 1. to seize, lay hold of ; 2. to strike.

makiayi, see *makiyayi*.

- 1*. experienced soldier; 2. narrow street or path; cf. *matse*.
maitsia مَيْطِيَا, a poor person; cf. *tsia*.
*maiuwadawa** مَيْعَوَادَوَا, paralyzed (?).
maiwa مَيِّوَا, 1. large reeds used in thatching; 2. a very small edible grain = holcus cernuus (Barth).
*maiya** مَيَا, great one, F 54 = *mainya* (?).
maiyan مَيَانِي, handkerchief used to wrap up money, etc.
maiylwa, spacious; cf. *yelwa*.
maiyes(s)a, colloq. expression, for what cause, why? cf. *mayes(s)a*.
*maizache** مَيْظَاشِي, meditating, B 120; cf. *zache*.
maizumba مَيْزُنبَا, rogue, one who refuses to restore a pledge or who buys a thing and runs away without paying for it; cf. *zamba*.
*majarabchi** مَاجَرَبِي, one who wants to take his neighbour's wife; cf. *jaraba*.
*majayi** مَجَيِي, a strap attached to the saddle and passing in front of the horse's breast.
maje مَاجِي, a large tree from which a sweet scent is obtained.
maji مَاجِي (perhaps a shortened form of *mayaji*, q.v.), one of the chief officers of a king; for order of precedence cf. *fadawa*.

- maji**, spear; cf. *mashi*.
majina مَجِينَا, a cold, cold in the head, sickness; cf. *seqq*.
*majinachi** مَجِينَشِي, one who is sick or poor.
*majinata** مَجِينَتَا, one who gives water or acts as an attendant in time of sickness; *majinataka* thy water-bearer, B 59 note.
*majujawa** مَجُوجَوِي, مَجُوجَوِي, to sling a stone.
majusi مَجُوسِي, pl. *majusawa* مَجُوسَا, Ar. مَجُوسِي, heathen, D 29; lit. a magian, sometimes pronounced *maguji*; cf. *bamaguji*.
*makada** مَكَاد, Ar. مَكَاد, being on the point of doing anything, B 120.
makadaichi مَكَادَيْث or *mukadai-chi* مَكْدَيْث, sole, only; *shi makadaichi* he only; cf. *kad(d)aichi*.
*makafchi** مَكْفَشِي, tiller of the ground; cf. *kafa* to dig.
makáfo مَكَاْفُو, pl. *makáfi* مَكَاْفِي, blind, B 34, E 36; cf. *káfo*, id.
makama مَكَاْمَا, the title of a royal officer; for order of precedence cf. *fadawa*.
makáma مَكَاْمَا, 1. that which lays hold or is laid hold on, hence the handle of anything = *kota*; 2*. *makama* used with *magana* = reliable; cf. *kama*.

makamche مَكْمَشِي, 1. to dazzle the eyes, *wolkia ta makamcheka* the lightning has dazzled thine eyes; 2. *makamchi* مَكْمِشِي, blindness, dimness of sight; cf. *kafo*, *makamta*, *makopchi*.

makami مَكَامِي, arms, i.e. guns, swords, etc.; cf. *makama*.

makamta مَكَمْتَا, 1. blindness; cf. *makamchi*; 2. مَكَمْتِي, to make blind.

*makankar(r)a** مَكَنْكَرَا, one to rub out (?), A 38; cf. *kankari*.

makára مَكَارَا or *makári* مَكَارِي, end of anything; cf. proverb *abin da wuya shina da makarinsa* the thing which is difficult comes to its end at last; *makarin berchi* the last sleep, i.e. death; cf. *kare*.

mákara مَكْرَا, to be late in starting or doing anything; D 23 *ku ber makara da salla* leave off saying your prayers late; *mai-mákara*, D 57, he who is late.

makaranta مَكْرَنْتَا, school; cf. *karatu*.

makári, see *makára*.

makari مَكَارِي, a shield made of skin.

makari مَكَارِي, prop or support to prevent anything falling, anything placed under something else, e.g. stones placed under a bag to keep it off the ground.

makariachi مَكَارِيْشِي, a liar; cf. *karia*.

*makarkata** مَكْرَكْتَا, one who trembles, adj. trembling, D 43; cf. *makafarta*, *karakat(t)a*.

*makasari** مَكْسَرِي, fem. *makasaria* مَكْسَرِيَا, halt, lame.

maka(s)shi مَكَشِي, *makasshinkai* a murderer; cf. *ka(s)shinkai*.

makaskachi مَكَاْسَكْتِي, pl. *makaskasta* مَكَاْسَكْتَا, poor, oppressed; cf. *kaskasta* to despise.

*makawa** مَكْوَا, resistance; D 24 *ba makawa gare* (= *gareshi*) he will not be able to resist.

makel(l)aci مَكَلْشِي, one who stares, generally used in a bad sense; cf. *kal(l)o*.

*makera** مَكْرَا, an anvil, v. *kira* to forge; cf. seq.

makeri مَكْرِي or *maikira* مَيْكِرَا, fem. مَكْرِيَا, pl. used in Zaria = *muk(k)ira* مَكْرَا, blacksmith; fem. = blacksmith's wife. *sari-kin mukkira* the title of one of the principal officers of the court at Zaria; cf. *fadárwa*.

makerua مَكْبُرُوَا, a red-legged part-ridge.

makesua مَكْبَسُوَا or *maikesua* مَيْكَبَسُوَا, glow-worm.

*maketachi** مَكَاْتَشِي, worker of evil; cf. *keta*.

*maki** مَكِي, 1. to seize, lay hold of; 2. to strike.

makiayi, see *makiyayi*.

makibia مَكِيْبِيَا, porcupine; lit. possessor of arrows = *begua*.

makiddi مَكِيدِي, player on musical instrument, esp. on drum; cf. *kiddi*.

makiyachi مَكِيْئِي, one who refuses or dislikes labour; cf. *makiyi*.

makiyayi مَكِيْئِي, pl. *makiyaya* مَكِيْئِيَا, shepherd, herdsman.

makiyi مَكِيْئِي, pl. *makiya* مَكِيْئِيَا, one who hates, adversary; cf. *ki*, *maikinji*.

*makō** مَكُو, discomfort.

makodaichi مَكُوْدِيْئِي, covetousness; cf. *kodai*, and seq.

makodaita مَكُوْدِيْئِيَا, covetous, greedy, e.g. a man who picks up crumbs; cf. prec.

makodi مَكُوْدِي, ball, stone ball; cf. *kodi*.

makofchi مَكُوْفِي or *makubchi* مَكُوْبِي, fem. *makopta* مَكُوْفِيَا, pl. *makopta* مَكُوْفِيَا, neighbour, friend.

makōgoro مَكُوْغُرُو, pl. *makōgorai* مَكُوْغُرِي, throat; cf. *makurua*.

makoki مَكُوْكِي, salutations and lamentations at a funeral.

makoko مَكُوْكُو, swelling or wen on the throat.

makopchi مَكُوْفِي, blindness; cf. *makamchi*.

makoshi مَكُوْشِي, throat; *wanken makoshi* a gargle.

makū مَكُو, heavy rain; cf. *malaka*.

*makubchi**, see *makofchi*.

makubli مَكُوْبِلِي, pl. *makublai* مَكُوْبِلِي, 1. key; 2. button; cf. *kubli* to lock; see seq.

*makul(l)i** مَكُوْلِي, lock; see prec.

makure مَكُوْرِي, to choke.

*makuri** مَكُوْرِي, cf. Ar. مَكُرٌ, to deceive; C 18 *ita makuri* she acts deceitfully.

makurua مَكُوْرُوَا, throat; cf. *makure*, *makogoro*.

makwanche or *makwonche* مَكُوْنْشِي, 1. a place to lie down, a sleeping-place; 2. a burial-place; cf. *kwana*.

málafa مَلَفَا, pl. *malafuna* مَلَفُنَا and *málafai* مَلَفِي, a large hat made of plaited straw.

*malaka** مَلَكَا, مَلَكَا, Ar. مَلَكٌ, to rule, reign, govern; *maimalaka* ruler, governor.

*malaka** مَلَكَا, to be the messenger of (?); A 83 *ya malaka annabi* he was the messenger of the Prophet; cf. *malika**.

malalachi مَلَالَاْئِي, pl. *masulalachi* مَسَالَاْئِي, 1. idle person, idler; 2. wicked person; cf. *lalach*.

malam مَالَم, cf. Ar. عَلَمٌ, shortened form of seq., usually prefixed as a title to the proper name

- of one of the lettered class, e.g. *malam musa*, G 7.
- malami* مَالِمِي, pl. *malamai* مَالِمِي, Ar. عَلِمَ, a learned man, a doctor; *baban malami* a great scholar or doctor in learning; A 34 *wanan da ke kin malami da fada tasa* he who rejects a mallam and his sayings, B 15; cf. prec.
- malika** مَالِك, angel, F 176; v. seq.
- maliki** مَالِك, pl. *malaiku* مَلَائِكُو, Ar. id., angel, A 8, D 59, F 177.
- malka* مَلَكَا or *maku* مَآكُو, heavy rain, e.g. rain lasting all day; cf. *sarafa*.
- malolo*, the pouch of a bird; cf. *maroro*.
- malufi*, wool; cf. *mulufi*.
- malwa* مَلْوَا, leg-irons, F 186 *asa masu sasari na wuta da malwa* fetters and leg-irons of fire shall be placed on them; cf. *giger*.
- mama* مَمَا (cf. (?) Ar. أُمُّ, mother), breast.
- mamaki* مَمَاكِي or *abin mamaki*, anything wonderful; *yin mamaki* or *jin mamaki* to wonder.
- mana* مَنَا, مَن, please, of course, then, etc.; *zo mana* come if you please! rarely used in writing but extremely common in conversational Hausa.
- manaa** مَنَعَا, Ar. مَعْنَى, meaning (in Kanuri *mana* = word).
- manafuchi*, deception; cf. *muna-fuchi*.
- manan** مَنَّ, possibly a contracted form of *manomi*; cf. A 18.
- manche*, see *manta*.
- mani* مَنِي, to me, for me; cf. *ni*; *sun yi mani* or *ayi mani* = *akoi* there is, or there are.
- manmaza** مَنَمَزَا, contracted from *maza maza* very quickly, D 62.
- manomi* مَنُومِي, 1. planter, cultivator; cf. *monomi*; 2*. sowing-time, A 10, 18.
- manta* مَنَت, *manche* مَنَشِي, to forget, err, make a mistake. *mantua* مَنَتُوَا, forgetting, forgetfulness, error, mistake; *yin mantua* to forget, to make a mistake; cf. *manche*.
- manuni*, forefinger; cf. *nuna*.
- manzani** مَنَزَانِي, cf. Ar. مَزِين, barber.
- manzo* مَنَزُو, pl. *manzani* مَنَزَانِي, 1. messenger, esp. one sent by a king; 2. *manzo* is often used as a title of an official at court; cf. *fadawa*, *jekada*.
- mara* مَرَا, مَرَا, to take up with the hand or in a spoon.
- mara** مَارَا, loins (stomach?).
- maraba*, welcome; cf. *marhaba*.
- maradi* مَرَادِي or *muradi* مَرَادِي, cf. Ar. رَاد, a searching after, what is sought for, desire; *ma-*

radin mutane that which men desire.

marai مَارِي, a small bird that feeds on guinea-corn.

*maraita** مَرَيْتَا (cf. (?) Ar. rt راح), a going away, C 29 *gawa ra maraita lahira* a corpse on the day on which the dead man sets out for the next world.

*maraito** مَرَيْتُو, coming.

marak(k)i مَرَكِي or مَرَكِي, fem. *marak(k)a* مَرَكَا, pl. *marak(k)u* مَرَكُو, calf.

maraki مَرَكِي, a fellow-traveller = *abokin taffia*; cf. *rakia*, an escort.

mararabi مَرَرَبِي, an intens. form of *raba*, 1. divided, different; 2. division, *mararabin hainya* the meeting-point of two or more roads; at B 23 *muraraba* مَرَرَبَا, a plural, is found = the regions which are divided.

marari مَرَرِي, a small grass basket used in making bread for putting flour and water in. The water is strained out.

maras- مَارَس, a negative prefix, denoting the absence of a thing in the same way as 'less' in English, e.g. *maraskumia* shameless, *marashankali* senseless, *maraskarifi* powerless; probably formed from *ras(s)a* to be without.

maratayi مَرَاتَيْي, handle, suspender, peg; *maratayin kansakali*

sword-string or belt; cf. *rataya*.

mar(r)aya مَرَرِيَا, a large deer, white in front.

maraya مَرَرِيَا, strap round a horse's head fastened to the bridle.

marāya مَرَرِيَا, fem. *marainia* مَرَرِيَا, pl. *marāyu* مَرَرِيُو, orphan, F 20.

*marbika** مَرَبِيَكَا, cf. Ar. rt ربهك, confusion; used adverbially, F 194 *su komo marbika* they will return in confusion.

mare مَارِي, or *mari* مَارِي, to strike, to give a blow with the hand. *mari* مَارِي, pl. *maru-mari* مَارُمَرِي, a blow, a stroke.

marmarawa, q.v., striking repeatedly.

*marea** مَرِيَا (cf. Ar. مَارِيَّة, wild cow), oryx.

mareche مَرَبِيَشِي, evening; *da mareche* in the evening; *da mareche ya yi* when evening came on.

marede مَرَبَدِي, pl. *mare dai* مَرَبَدِي, millstone; *mairada* a miller, or proprietor of a mill.

*mareki**, calf; cf. *maraki*.

marena مَرَبِنَا, stone (i.e. the disease).

marhaba مَرَحَبَا or *marharbi* مَرَحَرَبِي, or *maraba* مَرَبَا, Ar. مَرَحَبَا, welcome, a salutation esp. used on meeting after a long time.

mari مَرِي, a large species of fish.

mari مَرِي, iron fetters.

mari, a blow; cf. *mare*.

marike مَرِيكِي, a small tree with edible leaves; its wood has a reddish colour.

marik(k)i مَرِكِي, pl. *marik(k)a* مَرِكَا, handle; cf. *rik(k)e*.

marikichi مَارِكِيحِي, a deceitful person, esp. one who pretends to buy but steals; cf. *rikichi*.

*marili** مَرِيلِي, Ar. مَرِيضٌ, sick.

marili مَرِيلِي, rhinoceros.

marimari مَرِمَرِي, to be fond of, to like; esp. used of anything sweet to the taste.

marin(n)a مَرِنَا, pl. *marin(n)ai* مَرِنَايِ, a dye-pit, a deep hole in which cloth is left to soak in indigo dye. *marin(n)i* مَرِنِي, pl. *masurin(n)i* مَاسِرِنِي, dyer, dye-worker, proprietor of a dye-pit; cf. *rina*.

mariri مَرِيرِي, a large species of antelope.

marmara مَرْمَرَا, stones collected together, e.g. those placed round a well to keep it from falling in.

marmarawa مَرْمَارَا, redupl. participial form of *mare*, striking repeatedly.

marmaru, see *maromaro*.

marokachi مَرُوكَاتِي, begging; cf. *roko*.

maromaro مَرُومَرُو or *marmaru*

مَرُومَرُو, a spring or fountain of water.

maroro مَرُورُو or *malolo* مَلُولُو, 1. double chin or a swelling under the chin; 2. crop of a bird.

marowachi مَرُوَوِي, 1. greed, greediness; 2. a greedy, selfish person = *mairowa*; cf. *rowa*.

marude مَرُودِي or مَيْرُودِي *mairude*, pl. *maruda* مَرُودَا, one who tempts, deceives or misleads; cf. *rude*.

marufi مَرُوفِي, pl. *marufai* مَرُوفَايِ, covering of any kind; *marufin kofa* door, i.e. usually a mat let down in front of a doorway; cf. *rufe*.

maruru مَرُورُو, a swelling on the loins.

mas(s)a مَسَا, a cake or small round piece of bread made with rice and *dawa* such as is dipped into broth.

*mas(s)a**, quickly; cf. *maza*.

mas(s)aba مَسَابَا, pl. *mas(s)abai* مَسَابَايِ, a large hammer used by blacksmiths.

masabki مَسَبِك or *masapki* مَسَابِك, a lodging-place; cf. *sabka*.

masai مَسَايِ, a hole; i.q. *salga*.

masaka مَسَاكَا, a shuttle; cf. *saka*.

masakanche مَسَكْنَتِي, cf. Ar. سَكَنٌ, peacemaker, mediator; cf. *sakankanche*.

masaki مَسَاكِي, weaver; cf. *saki*.
maşallachi مَصَلَّاتِ pl. *maşallatai*
 مَصَلَّاتِي, cf. Ar. rt *صلو*, place
 of worship, mosque.
masan(n)i مَسِنِي, pl. *masanana*
 مَسِنَانَا, acquaintance.
maşar, Egypt; cf. *mazar*.
maş(ş)ara مَصَارَا or *damaş(ş)ara*
 دَمَصَارَا, Ar. مَصْر, Egyptian
 corn, maize.
*masarauchi** مَسْرُوْثِ, ruler, gover-
 nor; cf. *sarauta*.
masarchi مَسْرَثِ, a beggar on the
 road; cf. *masiachi*.
masarchi مَسْرَثِي, pl. *masartai*
 مَسْرَثِي (cf. (?) Ar. مَسْرَحٌ), a
 comb; cf. *masefi*.
masasaki مَسَسَكِي, pl. *masasaka*
 مَسَسَكَا, carpenter, joiner; cf.
sasaka.
mas(ş)asara مَسَسَرَا, fever; *massa-*
sara ta kamani the fever caught
 me = I caught fever. The word
 is sometimes used for small-
 pox; cf. *agana*.
*masaso** مَسَسُو, the name of a
 black snake, applied to a
 warrior.
masefi مَسَبِي, pl. *masefai* مَسَبِي
 or *masefuna* مَسَبِنَا, a comb,
 made either of wood or iron;
 cf. *masoshi*, *masarchi*.
masharua مَشَارُوا, rainbow; lit.
 water-drinker.

*mashasha** مَشَاشَا, a quantity of
 anything.
mashaya مَشَايَا, 1. watering-place,
 waterside; 2. place of intoxi-
 cating drinks, E 17 note; cf.
sha.
mashemi مَشَمِي, a hoe; cf. *shema*.
mashi مَاشِي or *maji* مَاجِ, pl.
masusuka مَاسُوكَا, 1. a spear;
yesda mashi or *yada mashi* to
 throw a spear as a declaration
 of war; 2. *mashin tamraru*
 a shooting star, usually re-
 garded as prognosticating war
 from the quarter whence it
 comes; 3. a stick of wood
 dipped in antimony for smear-
 ing the eyes.
mashid(d)i مَشِيدِ, 1. a resting-place,
 lodging, khan; 2. steps by
 which to come down from a
 place; *maimashidi* host, inn-
 keeper; cf. *shid(d)a*.
*mashidi** مَشِيدِ, Ar. مَشِيدِ, lit.
 cemented, and so 'strong'
 found with the Ar. art. F 55.
mashimfidi مَشِيمِيدِ, pl. *mashim-*
fuda مَشِيمِيدَا, what is spread
 out, e.g. things spread out for
 sale, or a covering for a horse;
 cf. *shimfida*.
masiachi مَسِيَاتِ, pl. *masiata*
 مَسِيَاتَا one destitute, unfortu-
 nate, unsuccessful or discon-
 tented; cf. (?) *masarchi*.

*masība** مَصِيبَا, Ar. مَصِيبَةٌ, pain, affliction, D 14; D 40 *en shara ka aika ka tso (= zo) ka sha masiba* if thou hast done evil thou wilt meet with great pain.

masifa مَسِيفَا, 1. mischief; 2. misfortune, calamity; 3. mischievous. *maimasifa*, pl. *masumasifa* a felon, villain, mischievous or vicious person. Possibly this may be only another form of prec.

*masilla** مَسَلَا, Ar. مَسَلَةٌ, a large sail-needle.

masirchi مَسِرْتِ, comb; cf. *masefi*.

masis(s)ika مَسِسْكَ, floor, threshing-floor; cf. *sis(s)ika*.

maso مَسُو, pl. *masowa* مَسُووَا, lover, friend; F 79, 80, 85; cf. *masoyi*.

masokachi, mirror; cf. *matsokachi* and *tsokachi*.

masoro مَسُورُو, black berries hot like pepper.

masoshi مَسُوشِي, comb; cf. *masefi*.

masoyi مَسُويِي, fem. *masoya* مَسُويَا, pl. *masoyu* مَسُويُو, 1. one who loves, or is fond of either a person or a thing, a lover, friend; 2. pass. beloved, dear; cf. *maso*.

masukwani مَسْكَوَانِي, a place for horses to gallop; cf. *sukua*.

masuru, cat; cf. *mazoro*.

masusu مَسُسُو, those who fish with hand-nets; cf. *su*.

mata مَاتَا, 1. plural of *mache* women; 2. *mata* is also applied to a married woman, wife, of which the pl. is *mataye* مَاتَايِي, B 110.

*mata** مَات, death = *mutua*; B 158 *mata ta maida mutum kwanche* death causes men to lie down.

*matabbata** مَاتَبَّت, F 82, 228, enduring, lasting; cf. *tabbata*.

matache مَاتِي, fem. *matachia* مَاتِيَا, pl. *matatu* مَاتُو, cf. Ar. مَات, 1. dead; 2. a dead person, corpse; 3. broken, e.g. *matatun kworia* broken calabashes or vessels; cf. similar use of *mutu*.

matache مَاتِي, found in comp. *matachen kworia* a vessel with holes in it to act as a coarse sieve; cf. (?) *tachi* and *tasa*.

*matachi** مَاتِي, found in comp. *matachin wuri* a fruitful place.

*matakara** مَاتَكْرَا, a wooden ladder.

mataki مَاتَكِي, a sort of spindle, used esp. by women, made of skin.

mataki مَاتَاكِي, pl. *matakai* مَاتَاكِي, 1. steps made with mud; 2. footstool; 3. soles of the feet, A 30; cf. *tak(k)i*.

mataki مَاتَاكِي, in comp. *matakin-biri* a horse whose ankle-joint nearly touches the ground, lit. one that steps like a monkey.

matalaka مَاتَلَاكَا, *muntalaka* مَمْتَلَاكَا,

- small hammer; cf. (?) *mum-taraga*.
- matamache* مَتَشِي, thoughts, cares, concerns; *matamachen dunia* the cares of the world or of life; cf. (?) *tama* pride or (?) *tamaha* to think.
- matamachi* مَتَمَش, iron-ore; cf. *tam(m)a*.
- matamni* مَتَمِنِي, pl. *matamna* مَتَمِنَا, the first tooth of a child, lit. the grinder from *tamna* to chew; the plur. *matamna* = all the teeth together.
- matankadi* مَتَنَكْدِي, a sieve used for straining gold from sand, etc.; cf. *tankadi* to winnow.
- matankani* مَتَنَكْنِي, the fan used when grinding flour to get rid of the chaff.
- matashi* مَتَاشِي, in comp. *matashin kai* pillow, rest for the head; cf. *tashi, kai*.
- matauria* مَتَوْرِيَا, used esp. in expr. *matauria zuchia* hardened heart; cf. *tauri*.
- mataushi* مَتَوْشِي, lit. presser; 1. *mataushin kofa* a piece of wood leaning against a door to keep it shut; 2. *mataushin wotika* a signet; cf. *taushe*.
- mataye** مَتَايِي, helper; cf. *taya*.
- matsafi* مَطَايِي, pl. *masutsafa* مَاسَطَايَا, one who worships or sacrifices to idols, an idolater; cf. *tsafi*.
- matsatsaka* مَطَطَاكَا, leech; cf. (?) *tsaga* to bleed.
- matse*, to squeeze; cf. *mache*.
- matsi*, i. q. prec.
- matsi** مَطِي, to cheat in buying or selling.
- matsin(n)a** مَطِن, Ar. مَطْنَةٌ, suspicion, F 8.
- matsokachi* مَطُوَكَش, or *masokachi* مَسُوَكَش, mirror; *matsokachin ido* the pupil of the eye; cf. *tsokachi*.
- matsorata* مَطَوْرَتَا, a coward; cf. *tsoro*.
- matsu* مَطُو, a pass. form of *matse* (cf. *mache*), 1. to be narrow, ' *hainya ta matsu* the road is narrow; 2. to suffer hunger.
- matuki* مَتُوَكِي, a paddle used as a rudder; cf. *tuka*.
- matuna** مَتْنَا or *matunan** مَتْنُن, a thought; cf. *tuna*.
- mauda* مَوْدَا, dark-coloured salt.
- mauro** مَوْرُو, a female slave who begs.
- marwa'adu** مَوَعْد, cf. Ar. وَعَد, one who promises, F 131 note.
- mawadachi* مَوَدَاث, pl. *mawadata* مَوَدَاتَا, 1. fortune; 2. a man of fortune; cf. *wad(d)a*.
- mawauta* مَوَوْتَا, 1. abstr. from *warwa* folly, foolishness; 2. concr. a foolish person.
- mayafi* مَيَايِي, bed-clothes, coverings, covering thrown over

shoulder, A 11 (?); cf. *yafa* to fold over.

mayaki مَيَاكِي, pl. *mayaka* مَيَاكَا, soldier; cf. *yaki*.

*mayata** مَيَاتَا, 1. passing away, D 85, F 37; 2. sorrow, calamity, trouble, D 61.

mayawa مَيَاوَا, pl. مَاسِيَا, many, used especially of persons; cf. *yawa*.

mayawata مَيَاوَاتَا, i. q. prec.

*mayayi** مَيَايِي, an interpreter.

maye مَائِي or مَائِي, fem. *mayia* مَائِيَا, 1. one with evil eye, sorcerer, wizard, A 82 note; 2. drunkard. *ya yi maye* he is drunk; cf. *marita* witchcraft.

*mayenwachi** مَيِنَوَاتِي, pl. *mayenwata* مَيِنَوَاتَا, one who is hungry or destitute; cf. *yunwa*.

mayes, see *maida*.

mayesda, to turn or change into something; cf. *maida*.

mayes(s)a, *maressa* or *maiyes(s)a* مَيَسَا, why? probably formed from *mi ya sa*.

mayi, 1. intoxicated; cf. *maye*; 2. *jan mayi* a cannibal.

mayi, sorcerer; cf. *maye*.

maza مَزَا or *mas(s)a** مَسَس, quickly, F 72; frequently reduplicated thus, *maza maza* or *malmaza* very quickly.

maza مَزَا, men, B 85, 87; cf. *miji*.

mazakuta مَزَكُتَا, 1. one who is brave; 2. bravery, manliness; cf. (?) *zaki* a lion.

mazamne مَزَمْنِي, dwelling-place, habitation. *maizamne* مَيَزَمْنِي, pl. *masuzamne* مَاسُزَمْنِي, inhabitant. *mazamni* مَزَمْنِي, 1. inhabitant; 2. seat, spot on which a man sits down.

mazar مَازَر, Ar. مَازَر (ص) being here pronounced as *z*), Egypt; *dan mazar* or *bamazari*, pl. *mazarawa* an Egyptian. *dawa mazara* a species of millet grown in Egypt and introduced into Hausaland; cf. *mas(s)ara*.

mazargi مَزَرْغِي, a string for tying up trousers (*wanduna*); cf. *zarge* and *mazarigi* a loop in a string.

mazari مَزَرِي, spindle; cf. *zar(r)e* thread.

mazarigi مَزَرْغِي, cf. Ar. طَرَفَةٌ, a noose for catching animals; cf. *mazargi*, *azarigagi* and *zarge*.

maziga مَزِغَا, bellows; cf. *seq*.

mazigi مَزِغِي, one who blows a fire with bellows (*maziga*) worked with a stick fixed into a skin; cf. *zigazigai*, *zuga*.

mazoro مَزُورُو or *muzuru* مَزُورُو or *masuru* مَسُرُو, wild cat, D 11 n., 12.

*mazugu** مَزُغُو, one who is wicked; D 29 *da mazugu aboki majusi* the son of the wicked man is the friend of the heathen.

mazumbachi مَزْمَبَشِي or مَزْمَبَشِي, a rogue; i. q. *maizumba*, q.v.

meke مَبِكِي or مَبِكِيَا or مَبِكِيَا, pl. مَبِكِيَا, a species of eagle or buzzard with white breast = neophron percnopterus (?).

merki مَرَكِي, a species of acacia; a medicine for horses is made from it.

metin مَبْتِن, Ar. مَبْتَان, two hundred.

mi مِي, what? In interrogative sentences the personal pron. must be employed as well as the interrog., e.g. *mi ya sameka* what is the matter with you? Forms strengthened by the addition of the subst. verb are *mine*, *minene*, id.

mia مِيَا, cf. (?) Ar. مَاع, broth.

mia, an hundred; cf. *minya*.

miagu, bad, pl. of *mugu*, q.v.

miau مِيُو, to spit out.

*michali**, *mithali** مِثَالِي or مِثَالِي

مِثَالِي, Ar. مِثَل, 1. similitude, parable, D 82, D 94 *mu dai mu yi michali kadan* we indeed speak a little as it were in parables; 2. like, as, used like *tamka*. *misalinsa* = *kamansa* an expression applied to a picture or likeness.

miji مِيَجِي, pl. مَزَا مَزَا and *mazaje* مَزَا جِي, man, husband; *miji da mache* = married man; *namiji* = male.

mijiria مِجِيرِيَا or مِسيرِيَا, 1. cramp, convulsions; 2. electric fish; 3. a large tree like a *kurna* with red wood.

mika مِيَك, 1. to stretch forth, e.g. the hands or limbs, etc., D 27; 2. to deliver up; 3. to yawn; in pass. = to go, F 241 *amika zua ga fa dar maiiyawa* they shall go to the dwelling-place of the Almighty. *miko* مِيَكُو, to pull in towards oneself. *miku* مِيَكُو, to be extended or stretched out, e.g. *hainya ya miku* the road stretches out to a distance; cf. *mika*.

miki مِيَكِي, sores = *rauni*.

mikia, see *meke*.

mine مِينِي and *minene* مِينِينِي, what? cf. *mi*.

minshari مِشَارِي, *nansari* نَسَارِي or *hansari* حَسَارِي (cf. (?) Ar. شَخَر; Fulah *min harra* = I snore), to snore.

minya مِينِيَا, *mia* مِيَا, Ar. مَائَة, an hundred; *arba mia* = *dari fudu* four hundred.

*minzeri** مِينَزَرِي (cf. Ar. مَنظَرَة, telescope), spectacles.

mio مِيُو, saliva, spittle.

mirdago مُردِغُو or *murdago* مُردِغُو, throttlor; cf. *murde*.

mirmirto مُرْمِرْتُو, a plant with an edible root.

misali, like; cf. *Michali*.

*misiria**, see *mijiria*.

*miskal** مِسْكَال = Ar. مِسْقَال, i.e. a weight especially used for measuring gold = 86 grs.

*mitalafi** مِتَلَفِي, Ar. مُتَلَفٍ, generous, pitiful.

mizani مِيزَان, Ar. مِيزَان, scales, balance; F 139 *akai da mizani ga kowa* the balance is brought for everything.

mobarrachi مُبَرِّش, a beggar, i.q. *maibarra*, q.v.

moda مُودَا, large wooden spoon used for dipping up *mia*, etc.

modi مُودِي, a gambling game played with cowries, also called *chacha*; *yin modi* to throw down dice, shells, etc. in gaming.

molo مُولو, pl. *moluna* مُولُنَا, music, playing; *kiddin molo* drumming, E 16; *abin molo* a musical instrument of any kind.

monomi مُنومي (for *manomi*, q.v.), pl. *monoma* مُنوما, planter, cultivator.

*moria** مُورِيَا, in phr. *yin moria* to be profitable.

mosa مُوسَا, 1. tr. to shake, to move; 2. intr. to move; 3. to be in commotion, e.g. *gari duka ya*

mosa the whole town was in a state of excitement; cf. *mosi*, *muchu*.

*mosaham** مُسَهَم (cf. Ar. مُسَهَم, striate), the onyx stone.

mosi مُوسِي or *motsi* مُوطِي, movement; *motsinshi* his movement, G I, l. 11.

mu مُو, 1. first pers. pron. pl. comm. gender, 'we,' e.g. *mu gani* we saw; 2. -*mu* or -*nnu* مُن, used as poss. pron. 'our'; it is suffixed to nouns of either gender, e.g. *dakinmu*, *dakimu* our house; 3. as objective pron. = 'us,' e.g. *su hannamu* they hindered us.

*muchia** مُشِيَا, stick used for stirring *tuo*, = *mabiriki*; cf. (?) *mosi*.

*muchu** مُوْشُو, to be moved; cf. *mosa*.

mud(d)u مُدُو, pl. *mud(d)una* مُدُنَا, Ar. مُدُّ, a measure, made of wood or metal.

*mugam(m)a** مُغَمَا, a stay; *yin mugam(m)a* to make a stay at a place for some days, to abstain from work, to rest, e.g. as on Friday.

*mugashi** مُوغَشِي, a great man.

mug(g)o مُغُو, a white ass.

mugu مُوغُو, fem. *mugunia* مُوغُنِيَا, pl. *miagu* مِيَاغُو, bad, e.g. *mutum mugu* or *mugun mutum* a bad man; cf. *mumuna*.

mugunta مُوْغَنْتَا, badness, wickedness.

muji مُوجِي, in comp. *mujin karifi*, loadstone, magnet.

mujiya مُوجِيَا, pl. *mujiye* مُوجِيِي, owl.

muka مُكْ, first pers. pron. pl. prefixed to perfect tense; cf. Gr. p. 26.

mukadaichi, only; cf. *makadaichi*.

mukamike مُكَمِيكِي, pl. *mukamikai* مُكَمِيكِي, jaw-bone.

muk(k)ira, pl. of *makeri* (q.v.), blacksmith.

muku مُكْ = *maku*, to you, for you; cf. *ma*.

mulmuleli مُلْمُلِيْلِي, to rub anything in the hand, e.g. guinea-corn.

mulmushi, to smile; cf. *murmushi*.

mulufi مُلُفِي, or *malufi* مُلُفِي

(cf. (?) Ar. صوب),

1. wool, woollen cloth; F 216;

2. the name of a small scarlet woolly beetle.

*mumini** مُومِنِي or *mumoni* مُومِنِي

Ar. مُومِنٌ, believer, C 38, D 46.

*mumona** مُومْنَا, bad = *mugu*, q.v.

*mumoni**, see *mumini*.

mumtaraga مُمْتَرَا, a hatchet for cutting grass; cf. (?) *muntalaka*.

mumu مُمُو, مُمْر = *mamu* to us, for us; cf. *ma*.

mumuna مُومْنَا, bad; cf. *mun(n)i*, *mumona*.

muna مُنَا, مُم, first pers. pron. pl. pref. to pres. tense; cf. Gr. p. 26.

munafiki مُنَافِكْ, pl. *munafikai*

مُنَافِكِي, Ar. مُنَافِقٌ, hypocrite, E 33; cf. seq.

munafuchi مُنَافُثْ or *manafuchi*

مَنْفُثْ, guile, deceit, hypocrisy.

mundaye مُنْدَايِي, arm rings,

usually made of silver or brass; *mundayen kaffa* foot rings.

mun(n)i مُنِي, cruelty, as adj. cruel; *da mun(n)i* cruelly.

muntalaka, hammer; cf. *matalaka*.

muraraba, divided; cf. *mararabi*.

murda مُرْدَا, مُرْدَا, to twist, wind,

throatle, e.g. *shina murda wu-*

yan kaza he wrings the neck

of the chicken; used of medi-

cine, etc. to gripe, to cause

griping. *murje* مُرْجِي, 1. to

rub in the hands; 2. to twist,

e.g. thread; cf. (?) *murdaka*,

murdago, *mirza*.

murdago, see *mirdago*.

murdaka مُرْدَا, two or three

reeds forming a circular bind-

ing line inside a roof and near

to the centre (*kwando*); there

are several such in a roof.

muri مُورِي, a stable; *dan muri* a

groom.

muria, *huriya*, مُرِيَا, pl. *huriyo*

مُرِيُوِي, 1. loud voice, cry, etc.;

2. wind-pipe.

murichi مُورِثْ or *muruchi* مُورِثْ

- stalks of a young *giginia* tree ; in appearance they are like celery and are largely eaten.
- murimuri* مومری, hooks on a fish-ing-line ; cf. *murmura*.
- murjan** مَرْجَان, Ar. مَرْجَان, coral, pearl, F 227 ; red beads used as ornaments ; *murjanin tudu* a large red bead or stone used by women in a necklace.
- murje*, to rub in the hands, to twist ; cf. *murda*.
- murjek(k)* مرچکی, to draw foot on ground, e.g. to crush an insect, to crush. *murjek(k)e* مرچکا, fem. *murjek(k)a* مرچکی, pl. *murjek(k)u* مرچکو, rubbed, smashed.
- murkoshi** مرقشی, to rub violently, to break up ; cf. (?) *murdago*.
- murmura* مومرا, a fish-trap ; cf. *murimuri*.
- murmushi* مومشی or *mulmushi* ملشی, to smile.
- murna* مurna, joy, gladness ; *yin murna* or *jin murna* to rejoice, F 217 *sunā murna da jama'ru annabarwa* they shall rejoice with all the prophets.
- muruchi*, i.q. *murichi*, q.v.
- murufu* مروفو, fire-place, stove, place on which the pot is placed for cooking.
- murza** مرز, cf. Ar. مَرز, to rub, e.g. the head ; cf. (?) *murda*.

*musa** موسى, Moses.

mus(s)a مَسَا, pl. *mus(s)oshi* مَسُوْشِي, cat = *kenwa* ; cf. *musuru*.

mushe موشی, a dead body, skeleton ; *yin mushe* = to die a natural death ; cf. seq.

*mushe** موشی, evil smell = *doi*, F 168 ; cf. prec.

*musilmi** مُسْلِمِي, A 5, i.q. *musulmi*, q.v.

muska مُسْكَ, Ar. مُسْكَ, musk.

musu مُسُو, to deny, to contend. *musuwa* مُسُوَا, contending ; F 159 *babu musuwa ga kowa* there is no contending for any-one.

musulmi مُسْلِمِي, pl. *musulmai* مُسْلِمِي, Ar. مُسْلِمٌ, a moslem, Mohammedan. *musulumchi* مُسْلُمْتِ, worship, religion, in the Mohammedan sense of the word. *musulumta** مُسْلُمْتِ, to be a Mussulman ; cf. F 58 *da ta musulumta* (she) who was a Mussulman.

musuru مُسُوْرُو, Fulah id., cat ; cf. *mazoro*.

musuwa, contending ; cf. *musu*.

mutu مُتُو, Ar. مَاتَ, 1. to die ; 2. to end, come to an end, e.g. *har wata ya mutu* until the month-end ; *hainya ya mutu* the road is closed, *wuta ta mutu* the fire has gone out. *mutua* مُتُوَا, death ; *mutuan allah* = a natural death.

mutum مُمْر or *mutume* مُتْجِي, pl.

mutane مُتَابِي, man, human being.

mutumchi مُتْمِث, humanity.

mutume, see *mutum*.

*mutumnia** مُتْمِنِيَا, a concubine.

muturu مْتُرُو, a small cow, about three feet high, with very short horns, brought from the W.

*muznibina** مُذْنِبِينَ, Ar., sinners, F 129 note.

muzuru, cat; cf. *mazoro*.

The letter ن is used by the Hausas to represent the sound of the English *n*. When ن is followed by ب *b* it is pronounced *m*. This is sometimes the case when *n* is followed by *f*, *z* or *ch*; for instances cf. *m*. *n* is sometimes interchanged with *l*, esp. at end of word; cf. *nimka*, *linke*; *gonan*, *gonal*.

n ن, shortened form of seq. used with both genders and numbers to denote the possessive and genitive relation, e.g. *dokin sariki* the king's horse, *sauran nama* the rest of the meat. This *n* is frequently changed to *l*; cf. B 109 *gonal chiuta*.

na نَا, fem. تَا, particles, 1. prefixed as signs of the genitive, e.g. G 1 *litafi na labari sarakuna* the book of the history of the kings; 2. used before pr. names, e.g. A 19 *na*

ahmadu of Ahmadu; 3. pron. suff., e.g. *nasa* his, A 22, F 145 *nata* her, A 12, *naka*, *nak* thine, *naku* your, *namu* our, *nasu* their; 4. placed before card. numerals to form the ordinals, e.g. *nabiu tabiu* second, *na goma tagoma* tenth.

na نَا, pronominal particle, first person sing. masc. and fem. = I, 1. prefixed to aorist tense, *na taffi* I went; 2. rarely used as objective pron., *ya ganina* he saw me; 3. as an inseparable possessive pron. suffixed to either masc. or fem. nouns provided the speaker is masculine, e.g. *ubana* my father, *uwana* my mother, *dawakina* my horses, see Gr. p. 17; cf. use of *-ta* when speaker is feminine.

*na'am** نَعْمَر, Ar. نَعْمَر, yes.

*na'amaa** نَعْمَاءَا, Ar. نَعْمَر, some kind of sweet herb or grain.

nabaya نَبَايَا, fem. *tabaya* تَبَايَا, that which comes after, the second.

nada نَدَا, before, already, e.g. *ba ya ji tsoro ba kaman nada* he was not afraid as before; it is used also as equivalent to 'former,' e.g. *litafi nan duka daina kaman nada* this book is just the same as the former one; cf. *da* of old.

*nada** نَدَا, cf. Ar. نَدُو, to call; used to form *mainidai*, cf. F 16 note.

*nadama** نَدَامَا, *nidama* نَدَامَا or

*ladama** لَدَامَا, Ar. نَدَامَةٌ,

1. repentance, D 20 note; 2. remorse, D 62, F 162.

nad(d)e نَدَدِي, 1. tr. v. to roll to-

gether; 2. intr. to coil, wind; in phr. *ya nadde masa sarota* he enthroned him. *nad(d)u*

نَدُو, intr. and refl. form, to roll or coil up.

nafari نَبَارِي, fem. *tafari* تَبَارِي,

ord. num. first; *da nafari* first-born son.

naferko نَبَرَكُو, fem. *taferko* تَبَرَكُو,

i.q. prec.; F 147 *ga tozo nai naferko* at its first turning.

*nafsi** نَفْسِ, Ar. نَفْسٌ, the desires;

D 22 *ku bi allah ku ber bi laimu da shi da nafsi* follow God, cease following the wicked man, leave both him and his desires.

nagari نَغَرِي, fem. *tagari* تَغَرِي,

pl. *nagargaru* نَغَرُغَرُو, good.

nagerta نَغَرْتَا, goodness, kindness.

nai نَيِ, of him, to him, his; equivalent to *nasa*, e.g. B 12, 76.

nai نَيِ, contr. from نَيِي, I do, I make, etc.

*naiji** نَيِجِي, D 47, relations (?).

naima نَيِمَا, *nema* نِمَا, kindness.

The latter form is esp. used in the Sokoto district i.q. *nima*, q.v.

*najasu** نَجَاسِ, Ar. نَجَسٌ, abomination; *yin najasu* to be filthy.

naka نَكَ, separable possessive pron.

second pers. sing. 'thy,' used when possessor and thing possessed are both masculine; when possessor is fem. and thing possessed is masculine *naki* is used; cf. *taka*, *taki*.

naki نَكَ thy; cf. prec.

*nakiri** نَكِيرِي, Ar. نَكِيرٌ, *Nakir*,

an angel whose office, according to Mohammedan belief, is to try the dead in their graves; cf. D 41 note.

naku نَكَ, separable possessive pron.

second pers. pl., used when the object possessed is masculine; cf. *taku*.

*nakuda** نَكْدُ, cf. (?) Ar. نَكْطٌ, to be in travail.

nama نَامَا, pl. *namomi* نَامُومِي,

1. flesh, meat, A 22; *naman daji* bush-meat, venison, game; 2. *naman daji* wild beast, also as coll. the beasts of the field.

namiji نَمِجِي, fem. *tamata** تَمَاتَا.

Both forms were originally compounded of the prepositions *na*, *ta*, and the nouns *miji* and *mata*. 1. male, fem. female; 2. *namiji* also = man, husband, the pl. is then *maza*; *namiji da shara*, lit. the man with the broom, a taunt applied to a bachelor, because he has to sweep his own house; phr. *jan namiji* = with reckless courage; cf. *miji*.

namu نَمُ, separable possessive pron. first pers. pl. 'our,' used when object possessed is masculine; cf. *tamu*.

nan نَنْ, 1. this, that, these, those, e.g. *doki nan* this horse, *lita-tafai nan* these books; 2. so, e.g. *shi ke nan* it is so; 3. here, e.g. *ba shi nan ba* he is not here. *nan da nan* نَنْدَنْ, an adv. expr. = 1. in a moment, instantly, quickly, e.g. *nan da nan ka komo* return forthwith; 2* = *kusa kusa*, e.g. *daki nan shina nan da nan da wanan* this room (or house) is quite close to that one; cf. seq.

nana نَنَا, here, hither, this, A 10; cf. prec.

nanaf (f) *a* نَنْبَا, a plant with small black seeds, red inside; a medicine for men is made from it; cf. (?) Ar. نَانَحَةُ = ammiu cumine.

nandan, see *nan*.

nani نَانِي, 1. to flatten; *nanane* نَنْابِي, flattened; *maihanchi nanane* a man with flattened nose; 2. to stick as with gum, etc.; 3. to stick, adhere to.

nansari, to snore; cf. *minshari*.

narike نَرِكِي, to melt, to smelt; particip. adj. *narike*, fem. *narika*, pl. *nariku* melted. *nariku* نَرِكُو, to melt, be melted.

nasa نَسْ, separable possessive pron. third pers. sing. 'his,' used

when possessor and thing possessed are both masculine; cf. *nata*, see Gr. p. 17.

nas(s)ara نَصْرًا, Ar. نَصْرٌ, victory, success, good luck; G 2 *ba ya yi nassara ba* he did not obtain the victory. *nas(s)archi* نَصْرِيْ, victory, success.

*nasha** نَشَا, a shortened form of *abinsha* drink found at C 35 *saiko abinchi nai nasha nasa kun jia* except his food and drink, do you understand?

*nas(s)a** نَسْ, Ar. نَسٌّ, used of drawing water.

*nassi** نَصِّي, text of the Koran; E 11 *ku dubi nassi ku yi ziyaya* thou regardest the text, understand it well.

*nasta'inu** نَسْتَعِينُ, Ar. نَسْتَعِينُ, we ask help; cf. G 1 note.

nasu نَسْ, separable possessive pron. third pers. pl. 'their,' used when the object possessed is masculine; cf. *tasu*.

nata نَتَا, third pers. possessive fem. pers. pron. 'her,' used when object possessed is masc. and possessor is fem.; also sometimes used as first pers. possessive fem. 'my,' when the object possessed is masc. and the possessor is fem.; cf. Gr. p. 17.

*natsu** نَطُو (cf. (?) Ar. rt نَطُو), calm, absence of wind, then, relaxation; B 62 *gidan da ba natsu ba hutawa* it is a house

in which is no relaxation or rest; cf. (?) seq.

*natsu** (usually pronounced *nazu*)

نَطُو (cf. Ar. rt نَطُو, to be distant), used with *hankali*, e.g. *hankalinsa ya nazu* lit. his wits are away, i.e. his wits have not yet come back to him, he is still asleep or unconscious.

naiiku نَعَك, fem. *taïku* تَعَك, ord. num. third; A 48 *naiikunsu* the third among them, the third one of them.

*nauwa** نَوَا, weight; cf. *mai-nauwa* a man who goes slowly.

nauyi or *noyi* نَوِي, weight, heaviness; *da nauyi* heavy.

nawa نَوَا, separable possessive pronoun first pers. sing. 'mine,' used when the possessor and the thing possessed are both masc.; cf. Gr. p. 17.

nawa نَوَا, often pronounced *nauwa* (cf. (?) Ar. نَحُو, about, according to), how much? how many? e.g. *nawa ne kurdi* what is the amount? *su yi nawa* how many were there? *gudda nawa* how many?

nawaya نَوَايَا, distress, e.g. *ka sa mani nawaya* you cause me distress, *ni na gamu da nawaya* I experienced distress; cf. (?) *nauwa*.

*nazu** نَطُو, see *natsu**.

ne نِي or *ni** نِي, to be, used with any person or number but

usually with masc. subject; with a fem. subject *che* is used, while *ke* is used with either gender. It is usually placed at the end of the clause, e.g. *waman barao ne* this man is a thief, though it might be written *wanan shi ne barao*. *ne* is often pronounced and sometimes written *ni*, cf. C 13, 38, F 16, etc.; cf. similar use of *ke* and *ki*.

nema نَمِر, to seek, look for, search; as n. verbi F 65 *ka ber murna da neman nan ta dunia* leave off rejoicing and seeking after this world; a pass. form *anim* is found in B 155 *kai dai anim shinni gun mallamai* thou must seek knowledge with the mallams. *nemo* نِمُو, to go to seek and return with a thing, F 122.

nen(n)a or *nin(n)a* نِن or *nuna* نُن, 1. to be fully cooked, e.g. *abinchi ya nenna* the food is finished cooking; 2. to be ripe, e.g. *diyan itache ta nenna* the fruit of the tree is ripe. *nen(n)a* نِنَا, *nen(n)ane* نِنْبِي or *nunane* نِنْبِي, pl. *nen(n)anu* نِنْنُو or *nunanu* نِنْنُو, 1. cooked, baked; 2. ripe.

nesa نَسَا, نَسَا, distance, *da nesa* at a distance, far, *dagga nesa* from afar. *nesanta* نَسَنْت, to place at a distance, to drive

- away. *nesanchi* نِسَانِشِي or *ni-sanchi* نِيسَانِشِي, to keep aloof from.
- ni* نِي, first pers. pron. sing. comm. gender, 'I'; when followed directly by a verb it is used like *zani* to denote the future tense *ni taffi* I will go. It is often placed for the sake of emphasis before *na* or *ina*; *ni na taffi* it was I who went, or I indeed went; cf. *nia*.
- ni* نِي first pers. suffixed pron. comm. gender preceded by 1. a verb, e.g. *sun kirani* they called me; indirect obj. e.g. *ya bani wanan* he gave me that; 2. a prep. e.g. *mani* to me, *gareni*, id.
- ni** نِي, to be; cf. *ne*.
- nia* نِيَا = is it I? do you mean me? e.g. in answer to a call, esp. used in the district of Sokoto. Possibly *nia* was originally a feminine form of *ni*.
- niam** نِعْمٌ, Ar. نَعْمٌ, prosperous, found B 169 *tana niam* it is a prosperous place; cf. *nima*.
- nidama*, remorse; cf. *nadama*.
- nif(f)a*, to wish; cf. *nuf(f)e*.
- nik(k)a* نِكْ, to grind; *duchi nikka* = a mill.
- nima* نِعْمَا, Ar. نِعْمَةٌ, pleasure, kindness; D 75 *mu sha nima* we shall have pleasure; F 102, 222, 223; cf. *niam*, *naima*.
- nimka* نِمْكَ, نِمْكَ, to fold up cloth,

- paper, etc.; i.q. *linke*, q.v.
- nin(n)a*, to be ripe; cf. *nen(n)a*.
- ninkaya** نِنْكَيَا, to dive, to sink.
- nisanchi* to keep aloof from; cf. *nesanchi*.
- nishi* نِيشِي, groaning; *yin nishi* to groan, used of a sick man; F 79, 107.
- nka, -nki, -nku, -nmu*, inseparable possessive pronouns; cf. *ka, ki, ku, mu*; see H. Gr. p. 17.
- noma* نَوْمٌ, *nomi* نَوْمِي or *nome* نَوْمِي, to work with the hoe, to till the ground. *mainoma* مَيْنَوْمَا or *mainomi* مَيْنَوْمِي, pl. *masunoma* مَاسُونَوْمَا, a tiller of the ground. *manomi* مَنَوْمِي, a sowing-place; A 10 *ita dunia nana che manomi ga lahira* this world is a sowing-place for the next. *noma* نَوْمَا, farm-work; A 24 *noma ga mata bai kamata ba kun sanni* farm-work is not becoming for a wife, you know, B 86.
- nome*, see *noma*.
- nome* نَوْمِي, a plant about three feet in height, the white grains of which are ground and eaten.
- nomi*, see *noma*.
- nono* نُونُو, pl. *nonua** نُونُوَا, 1. breast, pap; 2. milk.
- noyi*, weight; cf. *navyi*.
- nsa, -nshi, -nsu, -nta*, inseparable possessive pronouns; cf. *sa, shi, su, ta*; see Gr. p. 17.
- nuche*, to immerse; cf. *nuta*.

nuf(f)e نُبِيْ or *nif(f)a** نَبِيْ, to search for, to wish for; B 42 *kaina na ke niffa ba kowa ba* I myself desire nothing, *ya yi nuffe* = he desired or he purposed. *nuf(f)i* نُبِيْ, object of desire; F 251 *da na fita sokoto...nuffina* that I may go forth from Sokoto is my desire.

nuna نُونُ, *nuni* نُونِيْ, to show, to point, to explain, e.g. B 41 *abinda mallaminka ya nunama (=nuna maka)* that which your Mallam explains to you. *manuni* مَانُونِيْ, forefinger. *nunawa* نُونَاوَا, particip. form, showing, manifestation, explanation.

nunane, cooked; cf. *nen(n)a*.

*nurayishu** نُرَيْشُ = 1260; cf. F 255 note.

*nuri** نُورِ, to gaze upon, C 15 *kai nuri wawa* behold the fool; cf. *annuri* and (?) *lura*.

nus(s)a, *nus(s)e*, *nus(s)o*, see *nuta*.

nuta نَتَا, *nus(s)a* نُسَا or *nus(s)e* نُسِيْ, to dive, dip under water, sink. *nuta* is more commonly used in the Sokoto district, *nus(s)a* or *nus(s)e* in Kano. *nus(s)o* نُسُو, 1. to dive; 2. to enter or come into a town or place. *nuche* نُشِيْ, to immerse (cf. (?) Ar. نَسَّ). *-nwa* نُوَا, inseparable suffixed in-

terrogative pronoun = whose? *dokinwa* whose horse? *tumkianwa ke nan* whose sheep is this?

The sound of the English *o* is represented in Hausa by *و*, *و* or *و*; the first representation is the most correct, cf. *gogo* غُوُوْ; the second is usually pronounced *au*, but in certain districts the sound heard in many words is much more frequently that of *o*, cf. *يو*, to-day, which is generally pronounced *yo*; the third form is used when the *o* is short or in a closed syllable; cf. *غُرُوْ* *gorzo*.

orraki عَرَكِيْ, and *dan orraki*, ass belonging to a celebrated Sudanese breed, large-sized and of a light tawny colour.

othman عَثْمَانُ, Ar., Othman, F242.

In Hausa as in Arabic there is no distinctive symbol for the letter *p*. It is usually represented by *f*, though occasionally *b* is pronounced as *p*. In many words the sounds *f* and *p* are constantly interchanged. *pago*, woman's luggage carried in bag; cf. *fago*.

palasa or *falasa* فَالَسَا, punishment.

palashe فَالَسِيْ, to punish, e.g. *ya palashe* he punished me.

*palinwota**, often.

palpashe = *farifasha*, an intensive

form of *fashe*, q.v., to break in pieces.

pampame بَمَامِي, a wind-instrument used by a court musician.

pansa or *fansa* فَنَسَا, ransom.

pansawa or *fansawa* فَنَسَاوَا, ransoming; cf. under *fansa*.

panshe فَنَشِي, *pansi* فَنَسِي, to ransom, redeem; cf. under *fanshe*.

*pasakori** فَسَكُورِي, a Nupé tree, its fruit is used as a medicine.

pa(s)he فَبَشِي, to burst, to break; cf. under *fashe*.

pashi فَبَشِي a small *kanto* of an inferior kind of salt used in making *mia*, etc.

pet(t)i پَتِی پَتِی, a soft mash of rice, guinea-corn or anything similar.

pul or *ful** فُلْ, = very many; shortened forms are *fu** or *bu**; *fu* and *ful* are the forms used in Sokoto; *pul* is used at Kano; cf. Fulah *fo* altogether, completely.

The letter ر is used by the Hausas to represent the sound of the English *r*. It is sometimes interchanged with *l*, e.g. *harbi*, *halbi*; *firkaki*, *falmaki*.

ra رَا, a shortened form of *rana*, day, e.g. C 27 *kuma babu mur-na ra shiggowa dunia* more-over there is no joy on the day of entry into the world; C 28, 29.

raba رَاب, 1. to divide, to separate, cf. B 23 n.; 2. to distribute, pass. *anraba*, B 131; *ankaraba*, E 38; 3. to decide, e.g. as a judge; *mairaban gaskia* a distinguisher or decider of right, used of a judge (*alkali*); 4. to part from, leave; 5. *raba* رَابَا, parting; C 29 *kuka mu kai mata don rabanta da dunia* we lament over it on account of its parting from the world.

rab(b)i رَبِي or *rib(b)i** رَبِي, to part, to separate, B 57, 58; 158 *marabiwa* the angel of death, lit. he who separates; cf. phr. *ya rabbi fasalinsa* he interprets. *rab(b)i* رَب, half.

rababe رَبَبِي, fem. *rababa* رَبَابَا,

pl. *rababu* رَبَابُو, divided, cloven, separated. *rabu* رَبُو, intr. and pass. form of *raba*, 1. to be divided; 2. to depart, slip from, leave, e.g. *rabu da wuta* move away from the fire; *tunda shekara bokkoi na rabu da kano* it is seven years since

I left Kano. *rabua* رَبُوَا, separation, estrangement. *rabo* or

rabu رَبُو, pl. *raberibi* رَبِيرِي, division, part, e.g. D 82

rabunta bokkoi its divisions are seven; share or portion; E 8 *rabon doki da maidoki* the share assigned to a horse and its owner; portion, lot, A 22 *da rabo wuta* their portion

shall be the fire; separation, B 118 *sarikin rabo* author of separation; C 30 *rabonta da dunia* its separation from this world; cf. *raraba*.

raba رَابَا, also *reabu* رِحَابَا (cf. Ar.

رَحَبَ IV, to make anything moist), dew.

rababe, see *raba*.

rabbi رَبِّي, رَبِّي, *ribbi* رَبِّي or

*rab(b)a** رَبَا (A 48), Ar. رَبُّ, Lord, a title of God; cf. C 1, D 2.

*rabchi**, hot ashes (Sok.); cf. *ru-fushi*.

*rabe** رَابِي, to cling to, draw near to; B 121 *yawanda ta taffo ta rabeshi* when it comes, it draws near to a man.

rab(b)i, half; cf. *raba*.

rabji رَبَجِي, a panther = the Ar. رَجَد.

rabua, separation; cf. *raba*.

rache رَاتِي or *ratse* رَطِي, to turn out of the way, to lose the way; cf. *ratsa*, *ras(s)a*.

rad(d)a رَدَا, 1. to whisper, speak secretly; 2. *radda* رَدَا or *rad-(d)ata* رَدَاتَا, n. whispering, D 7, E 24; *mairad(d)a* a whisperer.

rafa رَفَا, a maternal uncle.

raf(f)a رَفَا, a net for catching fish, esp. used in Sokoto; cf. *koma*.

rafaki رَفَكِي, to cling to or hide behind any person or thing in fear; cf. *aranfaki* to lie in wait.

rafi رَاْفِي, pl. *rafuna* رَاْفُنَا or *rafa-fuka* رَاْفِيْكَا, brook, pool; cf. (†) *refe*.

rafonia رَاْفُونِيَا, pl. *rafoni* رَاْفُونِي, a round closed-in chamber, built of mud, about four feet across, common in Hausa huts, used for storing grain or treasure.

raga رَاْغَا, pl. *ragogi* رَاْغُوْغِي, cf.

(?) Ar. رَقِي, 1. a kind of sack made of network; *aikin raga* = network; 2. a net for fishing.

ragai, see *ragaya*.

ragaita رَاْغَيْتَا, pl. *ragaitu* رَاْغَيْتُو, idleness, want of employment.

mairagaita مَيْرَاْغَيْتَا, one who saunters idly about.

ragama رَاْغَمَا, halter, a rope put on horses or camels to lead them, also a leather halter decorated with metal.

ragaya رَاْغِيَا, pl. *ragiyo* رَاْغِيُو, a rope tied to anything, e.g. to a rafter in the roof, ropes supporting a shelf, etc.; A 13 *mu ga ankafa ragaya ajia zari* we see ropes set up (for weaving), and thread is placed ready.

rage, *ragi*, to decrease; cf. *reg(g)i*.

rago رَاْغُو, fem. *ragua* رَاْغُوَا, pl. *ragaye* رَاْغَايِي, an idle person;

rago maza a bird whose note is heard in the evening, said by the Hausas to be so called because it is idle, its mate providing it with food [or it may

be derived from the Ar. رَغَاوُ, a species of bird, from Ar. rt رغو, to call loudly]; cf. *danraguwa. ragonchi* رَاغْنَتْ, idleness.

rago رَاغُو, pl. *raguna* رَاغُنَا, 1. a ram; 2. fig. a chief warrior.

ragonchi, idleness; cf. *rago*.

ragu, to decrease; cf. *reg(g)i*.

ragua, diminishing; cf. *reg(g)i*.

*raha** رَاَح, Ar. رَاَح, 1. to exult; 2. رَاَحَا, singing, exulting; *yin raha* to speak proudly.

rai رَيْ, pl. *raiu* رَيْو and *raiuka* رَيْكَا, feminine gender, 1. life; *da rai* living, alive, *na rike wanan rai da rai* I will stick to this all my life; 2. mind, soul; cf. phr. *da giriman rai* haughty, *da karamin rai* modest, humble, *da zafin rai* irritable, fretful, *da sainyin rai* of patient temper or disposition; 3. followed by possessive pron. = self, e.g. F 254 *fa raina kun ji na yiwa wonga waatsi* and I myself, do you hear, make this song of instruction; 4*. the plural *raiuka* is applied to evil spirits.

raia or *raya* رَاِي, 1. to keep alive, e.g. *ya raiaasu alokachin yunwa* he kept them alive in time of famine; 2. to restore to life or being, B 102, D 61. *raiesda* رَاَيْسَد, to quicken. *raiu** رَيْو, to come to life.

raidore رَاَيْدُورِي, a plant, the leaves of which are bruised and rubbed on the chest as a medicine = *tafessa*.

raiesda, to quicken; cf. *raia*.

raina رَاَيْن, to quarrel with; probably another form of *rena*, q.v.

rairai رَاَيْرِي or *rere* رَيْرِي, 1. sand; 2*. a grass from the leaves of which when ground up a medicine is made; it has sharp thorns.

rairaiia, a sieve; cf. *rereya*.

rairo رَاَيْرُو, the beard of a goat.

raiuwa رَاِيُوَا, coming back to life; cf. *rai*.

rak(k)a رَاَكَا, Ar. رَاَكَعَة, prostration in prayer; cf. *roko*.

raka رَاَك, to accompany, to escort. *rakia* رَاَكِيَا, *RAKI*, the act of accompanying; *yin rakia* to escort, A 26 *ka yi kokari rakia rua achikkin dere* do thou endeavour to escort her to the water in the evening.

rakaso رَاَكْسُو or *rukaso* رَاَكْسُو, to pursue in war.

*raki** رَاَكِي, fear, in phr. *na yi raki* = *na ji tsoro* I fear.

rakumi رَاَكْمِي, pl. *rakuma* رَاَكْمَا,

Ar. رَاَكْمِي, camel, E 30, F 219; cf. phr. *rakumin allah* a man of extraordinary patience, *rakumin kasa larva* of a small species of ant.

rama رَامَا, رَامَر, 1. to pay, make restitution, restore, give in place of; 2. to revenge; *mai-rama*, pl. *masurama* avenger; cf. *ramche*.

rama رَامَر, cf. Ar. رَعِمَ, to be or become lean. *rama* رَامَا, leanness; cf. *yin rama* to be lean, *ya yi rama* he is getting lean, i.e. he is very ill. *arama* رَامِبِي or *ramame* رَامِبِي, fem. *ramamia* رَامِيبَا, pl. *ramamu* رَامِمُو, particip. adj. lean, emaciated.

rama, a reed; cf. *ramma*.

ram(m)a رَمَا, رَمَر, to accompany, e.g. *zani rammaka* = *zani tare da kai* I will accompany thee.

ramche رَمْبِي, 1*. a debt; 2. *yin ramche* to borrow, pawn, pledge, e.g. *sun yi ramchen kurdina* they borrowed my money; see *rama* to pay; cf. *aro*.

rami رَامِي, pl. *ramuna* رَامِنَا, hole, pit, e.g. B 127 *shina gani ba shi shigga rami ba* he beholds but does not enter the pit.

ramma رَمَا, Ar. رَمَّة, 1. a plant from which native ropes are made, soup is also made from it; it grows like a reed; 2. the rope made of this plant.

*ramaru** رَمَرُ, Ar. رَمَزُ, a sign of abbreviation in writing, F 255.

rana رَانَا or *ra* رَا, pl. *ranuka** رَانُكَا, 1. the sun; *har rana ta fadi* = until the sun set; 2. the day,

properly the time from sunrise to sunset; cf. *kwana* the day of 24 hours. *rana* is however frequently used like *kwana*, e.g. *rana uku* three days. *kwana* كُونِكِي is often used as the plural of *rana*. When *rana* means 'day' it is either masc. or fem., when it means 'sun' it is fem.; *mu yi taffia rana duka* we travelled all day, D 61 *rana chan* on that day, *ranan gobe* (lit. the day of tomorrow), the last day, the resurrection day (= *ranan kiama*, A 31, 32). *ra* is often used as an abbreviation of *rana*; cf. *ran gobe* B 11, 140. *randa* = *rana da* on the day that, i.e. when. *ransuna* رَسُونَا, the day on which a child receives its name. *rana* is usually placed before the days of the week, which are: *lahadi* Sunday, *latini* Monday, *talata* Tuesday, *laraba* Wednesday, *alhamis* G 6 Thursday, *aljimua* Friday, *assubat* Saturday.

The hours of the day are approximately: *jijifi* the twilight just before the dawn; *assuba* or *azuba* the dawn; *hanchi* two hours after dawn, circ. 8 a.m.; *wollata* circ. 10 a.m.; *rana tsaka* or *tsakan rana* midday; *zowall* circ. 2 p.m.; *azuhur* the call to prayer, circ. 4 p.m.; *laasar* circ. 6 p.m.; *maguriba* or *ma-*

garub late in the evening;
lisha very late in the evening;
between *lisha* and *jizifi* comes
dere night.

ranche رَنْشِي, to swear, take an
oath; *na ranche da ullah* I
swear by God; cf. *rantsua*.

randa رَنْدَا, pl. *randuna* رَنْدُنَا, a
large earthen pot.

*rangoji** رَنْغَجِي, to sway to and fro.

rangamu رَنْغَمُو, an abbreviation of
ranan gamu, day of meeting;
D 8 *ku ji choro (tsoro) akoi*
rangamu mu da mu da allah
be afraid, there is a day of
meeting between us and God.

*rangaz(z)a** رَنْغَزَا, plague amongst
men or cattle.

rani رَانِي, cf. Ar. رَعَن, the hot
and dry season, lasting seven
months, during which little or
no rain falls, then follows
basura, q.v., for one month,
then *damana* the wet season,
for three months, and then
kakka the harvest month; *rani*
ya deddi lokachi dogo the dry
season lasted a long time.

ransuna, the day on which a child
receives its name; cf. *sunu*.

rantsua رَنْطُوَا, an oath, *yin rantsua*
to swear; cf. *ranche*.

raraba رَرْبَب, *rarabi** رَرْبِي, D 94
note, intensive forms of *raba*,
q.v., to divide, to scatter; E 8
ararabatu a division is made.

muraraba مَرْرَبَا divided, B 23

muraraba da ba su gamu katsu
the regions which are divided
and have never met.

rarabi, see prec.

rarafe رَرْبِي, to creep or crawl,
of animals, to walk on four legs
like an animal, B 171. *mairarafe*,
pl. *masurarafe*, creeping
things, reptiles = *abin kasa*.

rare رَارِي, to strain, to filter.

mairarewa مَيْرَارِنُوَا, pl. *masu-*

rarewa مَاسَرَارِنُوَا, one who

strains or filters. *marari*

مَرَارِي, a strainer or filter,

usually in the form of a small

grass basket through which

water is strained out in making

bread, etc.; cf. *rereya* and seq.

raria رَارِيَا, 1. a calabash with holes

in bottom, used for straining;

2. a hole in a wall for water

to flow out; cf. prec.

ras(s)a رَسَا, 1. to lose; *na rassa*

hainya I have lost the way;

2. to be lost; 3. not to be in

possession of a thing, to be

without; B 10 *ba shi rassa*

huja ba he is not without

reason. *reshi* رِشِي or *ra(s)shi*

رِشِي loss, a being without any-

thing; *sanu da reshi* a form of

salutation to one who has lost

a relative or friend by death;

cf. *sanu da kewa* and *sanu da*

rabua; E 49 *da babu rasshi*

da kowa without lack of any-

thing, *yin reshi* to lose, *reshin*

- karifi* weak, *reshin haifua* barren, *reshin lafa* ill; cf. *maras* without, which is probably formed from this. *ras(s)u* رَسُو, to depart; *ya rassu* he died.
- ras(s)i* رَسِي, to go out of the way, to make room for, e.g. *ina rassuwa daga bissa haɪnya* I stand aside from the path.
- ras(s)u*, to depart; cf. *ras(s)a*.
- rasulu** رَسُول, Ar. رَسُول, one sent (from God), B 2, F 27.
- rat(t)ata** رَتَّتَا, abundance, e.g. of food, water, etc.
- rataya* or *rataia* رَاتِيَا, رَاتِيَا, to hang up, to hang, to tie; D 16. *ratayawa* particip. adj.; F 216 *da siliyoyi ado su ka ratayawa* and beautiful chains shall they hang (upon themselves). *yin rataya* to hang, suspend.
- ratsa** رَطَّ, رَاط, 1. to turn aside; E 44 *mu ratsa ta zaria* we turn aside from Zaria, E 45 *mu ratsa kano* we turn aside from Kano; 2. of words in a book, to pass over, miss, A 73, possibly formed from *ras(s)a*, q.v.; cf. *rache*.
- rauda* رَوْدَا, رَوْدَا, cf. Ar. رَوْد, 1. to shake, e.g. *su ka rauda kansu* they shook their heads; cf. *kauda kai*; 2. to drive away.
- rauni* رَوْنِي, 1. wound, bruise; *da rauni* wounded; 2*. رَوْنِي, to wound, bruise.
- rauni** رَوْنِي, to sway to and fro.

- raura* رَوْرَا, رَوْرَا, to tremble, to shake, to shiver or shudder, as with cold; *raurawa* shaking, trembling; *yin raurawa* to become deranged or raving.
- rawa* رَوَا, dance; *yin rawa* to dance, *ina taka rawa* I dance.
- rawaiya* or *rawaya* رَوِيَا, pl. *rawaiyu* رَوِيُو, yellow.
- rawani* رَوْنِي, pl. *rawuna* رَوْنَا, a bandage of any kind, head-dress, turban; *rawanin sarauta* = the badge or insignia of royalty, F 202 *da wandunan wuta fa kaza rawuna* they shall have trousers of fire and turbans of fire.
- raya*, *rayuwa*, see *raia*, *raiwa*.
- razan(n)a* رَاَزَنَا or *razan(n)i* رَاَزْنِي, 1. terror; B 46 *da babu razani* without fear; 2. رَاَزَنْ, to fear, to start or hasten in fear of anything; D 38 *ba mutua ni ke razana* I do not fear death, F 75 *ka razana dagga kwama* hasten to arise from sleep.
- rebandari** رِبَنْدَرِي, to go into a dark place, to hide.
- reda* رِبْد, 1. to grind wheat, guineacorn, etc.; 2. to cut into small strips, to cut marks on. *mai-reda*, q.v., a miller, *marede* a mill-stone.
- refe* رِبْعِي (cf. Ar. رِبْع, a region near water), steep bank or edge of stream or pond; cf. (?) *raft*.
- refi** رِبْعِي or *refo* رِبْعُو, pl. *refina*

- رغینا and *refu* رِفُو, a branch, used esp. in Sokoto district; cf. *reshe*.
- reg(g)a* رَغَا, pl. *reg(g)una* رَغْنَا, rags, old clothes.
- reg(g)i*, *ragi* رَغِي, رَغِي, *rage* رَغِي, 1. v. tr. to diminish, to decrease; B 69, 77; 2. v. intr. B 17. *ragu* رَاغُو, intr. and pass. to decrease; *rana ta ragu* the day is on the wane. *ragua* رَاغُوا, diminishing, decrease.
- rekua* رِكُوا, a small black bee.
- reme* رِمِي, a very large species of tailless rat living in rocky ground; probably a species of jerboa (*kurege*).
- rena* رِنِن, 1. to slight, neglect, disregard, e.g. *shina rena abokinsa* he despises his friend; part. form *renawa* despising; 2. to refuse. *rena* رِنِنَا or *reni* رِنِي, despising; *renin wayo* contempt of advice. *renane* رِنِنِي, fem. *renana* رِنِنَا, pl. *renanu* رِنِنُو, despised, despicable; cf. *raina*.
- reno* رِنُو, to lull, nurse, bring up, educate; *maireno*, pl. *masureno* nurse, tutor.
- reran*, *reran* رِرُون, on the back of, *na fadi reran* = I fell on my back.
- rere*, sand; cf. *rairai*.
- rerebi* رِرِبِي, to look closely at, e.g.

- so as to distinguish two things that are much alike.
- rerereu* رِرِرِيَا, a shout or chant of joy, it implies *ka zo ka ji* come and hear!
- rereya* رِرِيَا or *rairaiya* رِرِيَا, a sieve or fan for sifting.
- rero** رِرُو, wool from a sheep; also applied to its hair and beard.
- reshe* رِشِي, branch, bough; cf. *refi*.
- reshi*, loss; cf. *ras(s)a*.
- reto* رِتُو, to shake to and fro, possibly connected with *rataya*; cf. *seq*.
- reto* رِتُو, hanging; cf. (?) *prec*.
- ria** رِيَا, Ar. رَائِي, to pretend, to dissimulate.
- riba* رِبَا, Ar. رِبْح, 1. profit, esp. unlawful gain; *kin riba* to hate covetousness or unlawful profit, *chin riba* to gain such profit, F 17 *ka tuba ka ber riba ka bada zaka* repent, cease from unlawful gain, give tithes, F 201 *masuriba* those who make unlawful profits; 2. رِب, to make unlawful profit.
- riba* رِب, *ruba* رُب, to go bad.
- ribabe* رِبِيَا, fem. *ribabia* رِبِيَا, pl. *ribabu* رِبِيُو, spoiled, rotten, used of fruit, dates, etc. *ribachi* رِبِي, to spoil, render bad.
- rib(b)i** رِبِي, half; cf. *rab(b)i*.
- ribbi** رِبِي, Ar. رِبِي, 1. num. myriad; D 59 *ribbi da ribbi*

antaru myriads and myriads of them shall be collected, D 64 *ribbi sabain* seventy thousand-fold; 2. used as a verb, to repeat ten thousand times, e.g. D 44 *su kan ribbi sanduna maimai kaman duatsu* they pile up blows many in number as stones.

rida ريدَا, ريدَا, to seize, to snatch at in order to eat; C 33 *ta ridasa gun wuya* she seizes him by the neck; *masurida* gluttons.

ridi ردى, coriander seed; an oil is obtained from it; cf. *main ridi*.

ridi ردى, a native cloth of a black or blue colour, with silk woven into it.

rife ريفى, a form of *rufe*, q.v.

riga ريغَا, pl. *riguna* ريغْنَا, robe, gown, shirt, and gen. garment, A 11, F 201, 216, 217; *sa riguna* to put on clothes, *riga saki* a dress with small blue and black squares, *riga tsamia* a dress consisting in part of yellowish brown silk obtained from a kind of silkworm called *tsamia* from its feeding on tamarind (*tsamia*) trees. The robe (*riga*) is the characteristic dress of the Hausas. Immense quantities of them are manufactured in Kano. Its shape is that of a loose surplice with a large embroidered pocket in

front. They are made in blue, red and white cloth.

rig(g)a ريغ, *rig(g)aya* رِغَى or *rig(g)agi** ريغَاغى, to get in advance of, to outrun; *shi ya riggamu* he got in front of us.

*rigi** ريغ, a vegetable used in making soup; it has a mint-like leaf, and purple flower.

rigigi ريغِغى, a small red bead.

ringingini ريغِنِغى, 1. deceitful; *ya yi magana ringingini* he uttered deceitful words, *mairi-gingini* deceitful; 2. i.q. *ringingine* on the back.

rijia ريجِيَا, pl. *riyaji* رِيوَجِي or *rijiyoyi* رِيَجِيوِي (cf. Ar. رَجَا, coping stone of a well), well, spring; *riju da zurifi* a deep well, *gina rijia* to dig a well.

rik(k)a, see *rik(k)e*.

rik(k)ake, held; cf. *rik(k)e*.

rik(k)awa, holding fast; cf. *rik(k)e*.

rik(k)e رِفِي, *rik(k)a* رِف or *rik(k)i** رِفِي (B 31), 1. to hold, keep, retain, cleave to; 2. to hold fast in the mind, to keep, observe, e.g. the commandments of God; 3. used of a woman, to betroth, to hold betrothed; in phr. *zan rika taffi*

I will go at once. *rik(k)o* رِفُو, to detain; B 18 *ba riko ba bimbini* he does not detain him or make a long examination.

rik(k)awa رِفَاوَا, holding fast,

cleaving to. *rikake* رِفَكِيْ, fem.

rikakia رِفَكِيَا, pl. *rikaku* رِفَكُو, held, retained. The following are apparently strengthened forms of *rik(k)e*: *riske* رِسْكِ, *riski* رِسْكِ, *ruska* رُسْكَ, to hold, detain, obtain; B 144 *ta kan yi lalaba da ta riskeka* it (the world) would fondle and detain you, B 64; cf. *rukun*.

rik(k)i, see *rik(k)e*.

rikiche رِكِيْحِي or *rikichi* رِكِيْحِي, 1. deceit, fraud, double dealing; D 10; 2. to act deceitfully; B 100, 107 *kadda ka rikiche ka bi shashasha* act not deceitfully nor follow a fool.

rikida رِكِدَا, to change oneself, to be transformed, e.g. as a chameleon is, to change oneself into or become something different, e.g. *na rikida tsuntsua* I transformed myself into a bird. *rikidade* رِكِدَايِي, fem.

rikidadia رِكِدَايَا, pl. *rikidadu* رِكِدَادُو, changed, transformed.

rik(k)o, see *rik(k)e*.

*rikumbu** رِكُنْبُو or *rikimbu** رِكِيْمْبُو, abundance, e.g. *kaya rikumbu*.

rimdi رِيْمْدِي, a broad road or track = *godobe*.

rimi رِيْمِي, the silk-cotton tree = *eriodendron bombax*, a large spreading tree greatly valued for the shade which it

affords, also for the cotton obtained from it. Its seeds are enveloped in long silken hairs closely resembling the true cotton, but owing to lack of adhesion between the hairs they cannot be manufactured, but are used for stuffing cushions; cf. 'Hausaland,' p. 159. Used in making armour; cf. *lufudi*. *rimi tsamri* a grass, the leaves of which when beaten up make a pleasant drink.

rimmani رِيْمَان, Ar. رِيْمَان, pomegranate.

*rina** رِيْنَا, a wasp.

rin(n)a, to dye; cf. *rin(n)i*.

*ringingine** رِيْنْغِيْنِي, backward; *suka fadi ringingine* they fell backwards; cf. *rigingini* (2), id.

rin(n)i رِيْنِي or *rin(n)a* رِيْن, 1. to dye, to tinge; *mairin(n)i*, pl. *masurin(n)i*, a dyer; 2. colour, dye. *rin(n)ene* رِيْنِيْنِي, *rin(n)ena* رِيْنَانَا, pl. *rin(n)enu* رِيْنَانُو, dyed, tinged.

rinjayi رِيْنْجَايِي or *rinjaya* رِيْنْجَايِي, to prevail over, to overcome, e.g. *na rinjayi mutum* = *na fi karifinsa*, B 38 *shi wonda zu-chiata rinjayi* he who overcomes his own heart.

rino رِيْنُو, 1. an iron fork for toasting meat at a fire; 2. a stake, D 16.

- rinto** رِتُو, a false accusation.
- risbawa** رِسْبَاوِي, cf. Ar. رَسَبَ, desolation, B 92; see *rizbata*.
- risga* رِسْغَا, a small species of yam (*dioscorea*) with a sage-like leaf, its root eaten like the sweet potato, or ground up. (In Fulah *risgaje* = breadfruit, Barth.)
- riske* رِسْكِي, *riski* رِسْكِي or *ruska* رِسْكَ, probably strengthened forms of *rik(k)e*, q.v.
- rizbata** رِزْبَاتَا, Ar. رَسَبَ, to perish, B 102 note; cf. *risbawa*.
- rize* رِزِي, Ar. رَزَا, 1. to capture, also to encompass a town and capture it; 2. to detect, overtake in a fault. *rizewa* رِزِنُوا, capturing, etc.
- rizuma* رِزْمَا, cf. Ar. رَزَمَ, a pack tied up, a packet of paper not written upon, etc.
- rochi* رُثِي, to strike a blow; cf. *roshi*.
- rogo* رُوْغُو, Fulah *ragohi* (manihot utilissima), a tuber like *dankali*, edible, with milky juice.
- rokachi** begging; cf. seq.
- roko* رُوْكَو, *roko* رُوْفُو or *roka* رُوْكَ, Kanuri *logo* (cf. Ar. رُكِعَ from رَكَعَ, to bend in prayer), 1. to ask, beg, pray; B 165, D 34; 2. to beg of, ask of. *mairoko* مَيْرُوْكَو, beggar. *marokachi* مَرُوْكَثِ, begging; cf. *rak(k)a*.
- roma* رُوْمَا, رُوْمَا, to escort.

- romua*, *rumua* رُوْمَا or *romo* رُوْمُو, broth, soup; *romon sariki* a feast held by the heathen in Hausaland; fig. *romon kune*, lit. ear-broth = pleasant words.
- rongoda* رُوْنْغَدَا, a swaggering walk.
- rongomi* رُوْنْغِي, 1. a better state of health, convalescence, recovery; *shina da rongomi* he is getting better, *yin rongomi* to recover; *jin rongomi* to feel better; 2. an amount deducted from the price paid for any article; *ka yi rongomi* grant a reduction, *enna rongomi* what discount do you allow? cf. *gara*.
- roro* رُوْرُو, to glean in a field.
- roshi* رُوْشِي, pl. رَاَطَا, a blow, such as causes a wound or swelling, e.g. *na yi masa roshi* I gave him a hard blow; cf. *rochi*.
- roshi* رُوْشِي, finely ground, e.g. *al-kamma ina da roshi* the corn is ground fine; cf. *laushi*.
- roshi* رُوْشِي, a council, consultation, talk, gossip, e.g. *sunu yin roshi* = *sunu yin shawora* they consult.
- rotel** رُوْطَلْ, Ar. رَطَلْ, a pound of twelve ounces, sometimes pronounced *rotli*. The word is very little used except by Hausas in constant intercourse with Arabs.
- rowa* رُوْوَا, covetousness, F 13; in A 37 *rowa* is used as an ad-

jective, *wanda ya ke rowa yana murna nata* whoever is stingy (*rowa* as adj.) and rejoices in being so, *yin rowa* to be greedy, *da rowa* covetous, greedy, stingy.

rua رُوا, pl. *ruaye* رُوَائِي, 1. water; F 90 *akama na rua* water is brought for thee, *ruan demmi* hot water, *ruan kasa*, lit. earth water, water as in a river, *ruan sha* drinking water, *da rua* watery; fig. *ya sha rua a dunia* he has enjoyed prosperity in this world, *ruan ido* = watery eye, i.e. longing eye; F 230 *ruan nama* soup, *ruan tsami* vinegar; 2. rain; cf. also *ruan sama*, lit. sky water, and *ruan allah*; *ana rua* and *yana rua* it rains, *ruan kankara* and *rua da kankara* hail; 3. care, attention, thought, business, concern, e.g. *ba ruana* it does not concern me, *babu ruana gareka* I have nothing to do with thee, *enna ruanka* what does it matter to thee? *babu komi sai ruan allah* it is God's concern alone, A 5 *kulu musulmi ba rua alkafiri* all the mussulmans, I care not for the heathen.

*ruba** رُب, to frighten off = *na bada tsoro*.

ruba, to go bad, as meat or fruit; cf. *riba*.

*rubda** رُبْد (cf. Ar. رَبَض, to crouch), *rubda chikki* or *rufda*

chikki to crawl, or be prostrate, F 192 *fa rubda shikki* (= *chikki*) *akanjan kafirawa* and the heathen shall be dragged prostrate. Cf. *rufda-chikki*.

rub(b)e رُبِي, to break open.

rubsa or *rufsa* رُبْس, used with *kuka*, to utter a cry.

rubshi رُبْش, hot ashes; cf. *rufushi*.

rubuchi, writing of any kind; cf. *rubuta*.

*rubui** رُبُع, Ar. رُبْع, a quarter.

rubushi رُبْشِي, to lose; D 21, B 126, 141 *kadda ka bita ku rubushi gobe* follow it (the world) not lest you lose on the last day.

rubuta رُبُوت (cf. Ar. رَبَّت, to educate children), to write.

rubutu رُبُوتُو, 1. to write;

2. writing. *rubuchi* رُبُوتُ, id.

rudade, see seq.

rude رُوْدِي, to deceive, entice;

mairude, pl. *masurude*, deceiver,

B 128 *ta rudai* = *ta rudeshi*.

rudade رُوْدِي, fem. *rudada*

رُوْدَا, pl. *rudadu* رُوْدُو, de-

ceived, misled; cf. *rude* and

rurudi.

rudi رُوْدِي, to fail to understand

what is said; cf. *gigichi*.

rudu رُوْدُو, a light hut raised on

four poles, with thatched roof.

rufa رُوْفَا, a dress or cloth used as a

covering; cf. *rufe*.

rufda-chik(k)i, to crawl; cf. *rubda*.

rufe رُفِي, *rufi* رُفِي or *rife* رُفِي, to cover, to conceal, to keep secret; A 31, 32; pass. D 93 *kadda arufe kofa* beware lest the door be closed, *mairufe*, pl. *masurufe*, one who conceals, e.g. the truth. *rufafe* رُفِي, fem. *rufafa* رُفَا, pl. *rufafu* رُفُو, particip. adj. of *rufe*, covered, concealed; cf. *rufa*.
rufogo رُفُو, abundance, a place for storing corn.
rufushi رُفِش, *rubshi* رُبِش or *rabchi** رُبِش, hot ashes, a fire which has burnt down.
ruga رُوغَا, a place where animals are tied up (= *garike*).
*ruga** رُوغ or *rauga* رُوغَا, 1. to make to flee; 2. to flee.
*rugu** رُوغُو, quickly; cf. prec.
*rugunguza** رُغُنْغَز, to break in pieces, to smash.
*rujia** رُجِيَا, an edible root like the sweet potato *dankali* but larger and with watery substance inside.
rukaso, to pursue; cf. *rakaso*.
rukuke رُكُكِي, a wand or stick carried by officials; cf. seq.
rukuki رُكُكِي, wood, forest.
*rukun** رُكُن, *rikun** رِكُن, cf. *rik(k)e*, 1. to maintain, A 47; 2. to save, C 37.
rumache رُمَاثِي, a mixture of onions, flour and water; cf. *romua*.
rumbu رُمْبُو, 1. a barn, storehouse

(cf. *rafonia*), 2. shed, stall in the market = *rumpa*, q.v.
*rumbua** رُمْبُوَا, *رُمْبُوَا*, wheel; cf. *dirumbua*, *kunbu*, *shankumbu*.
rumchi رُمُثِي or *rumtsi* رُمُطِي, cf. Ar. (?) رَمَر, to blink with the eyes.
rumpa رُمْبَا, pl. *rumfuna* رُمْفُنَا, plank, table, shed, booth; stand on which things are exposed for sale, cover of a canoe; cf. *rumbu*.
*rumtsi** رُمُطِي, to retain, B 27.
rumua, broth; cf. *romua*, *rumache*.
rungume رُنْغُمِي, to embrace.
runhu رُنْحُو, cf. (?) Ar. رَنْب, a small tree with yellow blossoms; an infusion of its leaves is used for washing by women about to be confined.
runsuna رُنْسُن or *rusona* رُسُن, to fall down before one, to do obeisance.
rupta رُپْت or *rupto* رُپْتُو, to snatch with violence; cf. seq.
rupta رُپْتَا, quickly; cf. prec.
ruri رُورِي, to roar, to bellow, used of camel, ox, donkey, men, A 4; fire, D 72.
*rurimi** رُورِمِي, used in phr. *mutum ya yi rurimi* he is ill or distressed.
*rurudi** رُرُدِي, redupl. form of *rudi*, e.g. B 147 *tana da rurudi don ta yi zamba* it practises deceit in order that it may commit a crime.

rushi رُشَى, to fall into ruin, as a house. *rushiwa* رُشَوَا, falling into ruin.

*rushua** رُشُوا, Ar. رُشْوَةٌ, a bribe given to a judge = *toshi*.

ruska, to obtain, B 64; cf. *riske*.

ruski رُسْكِ, to catch; C 2 *zambata da ta ruski masugudu nata* the evil which catches even its swift runners; cf. (?) *riska*.

rusona, to bow; cf. *runona*.

ruza رُوزُ, to rush, e.g. out of a crowd.

س *s* and ص *ṣ* are used by the Hausas to represent the sound of the English *s*. There is no distinction of sound between the two and they are frequently interchanged. Thus *gaskia* truth is written غَسْكِيا, B 66, or, less commonly, غَصْكِيا, B 37. The letter ص *ṣ* is comparatively seldom used in written Hausa except in words which are derived from Semitic roots.

sa س, pronominal suffix 3rd pers. masc. sing., 1. -*sa* or -*nsa* نَسْ used as inseparable possessive pronoun suffixed to masc. or fem. words provided that the possessor is masculine, e.g. *ubansa* his father, *uwasa* his mother, *giddansa* his house (this latter would be in Zaria *giddanshi*, in Sokoto *giddanshi* or *giddanai*); 2. as objec-

tive pronoun esp. when preceded by the prepositions *ma* and *gare*, e.g. *masa* or *garesa** to him.

sa س, 1. to lay, put, place, *ya sashi chikkin sanfo* he placed it in the basket; to put on, to wear, used of clothes, etc.; to lay aside, B 83 *mu bada gaskia mu sa kankanche* let us give credence, let us put aside quarrelling, cf. note, ad loc.; 2. to cause, to make do, e.g. *shi ya sa na tashi* it was the cause of my starting. *saarwa** سَاوَا, placing of a thing.

sa س, bull, f. *sanja* سَانِيا, cow, pl. *shanu* شَانُو, cattle; cf. *sakaza*.

saa سَا or سَاع, Ar. سَاعَةٌ, 1. time, season; also used for time-piece, watch, clock; 2. used adverbially with *nan* and *da*, *saanan* سَانَنْ or سَاعَنْن, at that time, then, G 3; *saanda* سَانْد or سَاعَنْد, at the time that, when; *wane saa* when? *saada** سَاعَادَا, Ar. سَعَادَةٌ, happiness, D 79.

saanun, then; cf. *saa*.

saanda, when; cf. *saa*.

*saati** سَاَتِي, a foot-soldier who does not possess a horse.

*saarwa**, placing of a thing; cf. *sa*.

saba سَاب, سَابَا, to be accustomed to, *na saba da wanan* I am accustomed to or practised in this; cf. *sabo*.

sab(b)a سَبَّ, to fight, to rub (?).

saba, the cast skin of a serpent;
cf. *suaba*.

sab(b)abi سَبَب or *sub(b)abi* سَبَب,

Ar. سَبَب, 1. reason, cause, *babu sababi* without cause; 2. violent dispute, angry words, cf. *sabe**; 3. accident, misfortune, e.g. *sababi ya sameshi* an accident happened to him; *mai-sababi*, pl. *masusababi* = mischief-maker, *yin sababi* to do mischief.

sabani سَبَانِي, disagreement, breaking up of friendship.

sabara صَبْرَا (cf. (?) Ar. صَبْرَا), a small thorny palm; cf. *arsaberi*.

sab(b)ara سَبْرَا, *sab(b)ura* سَبْرَا,

Ar. سَبْرُورٌ, a place with no trees or houses, but grass only.

*sabbada** سَبَد or *sabbado** سَبَدُو or

*sabboda** سَبَد, Ar. سَبَب, 1. because of, *sabbada wanan* for this reason; 2. in exchange for. The word is very rarely used in correct Hausa.

*sabboda**, see prec.

*sabe** سَابِي, Ar. سَبَّ, to revile,
F 34.

sabe سَبِي, of irregular lengths (*ba daidai ba*), used also of paper arranged with irregular edges; cf. *sasabe*.

sab(b)ero سَبْرُو, *sabro* سَبْرُو, *sauro* سَبْرُو or *samro* سَبْرُو, a mos-

quito, sometimes used also for bug [cf. Ar. دَبُورٌ, a wasp].

*sabira** سَبِيرَا, a sort of leathern bag or pouch; cf. *sarita*.

*sabiri** صَابِرِي, Ar. صَبِيرٌ, patient, found with Ar. article *essabiri* in A 40.

sabka سَبَك or *sabki* سَبَكِي or

sapka سَبَك, 1. to let down, to lower, to unload camels; hence, 2. to alight at a place (cf. Ar. نَزَلَ), to lodge; *masabki* or *gidan sabka* (cf. Ar. مَنْزِلٌ) inn. *sabkas* سَبَكْس or

sapkas سَبَكْس, used with *da* to let down; *na sabkas da kaya* = *na sabka kaya* I laid down the load, to unload.

sabkeke سَبَكْبَكِي, let down, laid down. *sabko* سَبَكُو, *safko* or *sapko* سَبَكُو, to start, to set out; cf. *sauka*.

sabo صَابُو, fem. *šabua* صَابُوَا, pl.

sabi صَابِي, new, fresh, young; *sabon wata* new moon; *na sabo* again, D 18 *maituba ba shi komo ga aiki nai na sabo* he who repents, returns not to his work again.

sabo سَابُو, habit, practice, custom; *aikin dunia duka sai sabo* no work in the world can be accomplished except by practice; cf. *saba*.

*sabo** صَابُو, fixed abode, B 145.

sabro, mosquito; cf. *sab(b)ero*.

sabtu سَبْتُو, *saptu* سَبْتُو or *sotu**
 سَوْتُو (cf. Ar. سَبْتَج and Pers. سبته), a trust, *yin sabtu* to entrust, e.g. *na yi sabtu masa kurdi* I entrusted the money to him.

sabua سَابُوَا or *zabua* زَابُوَا, pl. *sabi* سَابِي or *zabi* زَابِي, guinea-fowl, *zakara sabi* the male bird.

šabuni صَابُون, Ar. صَابُون, Gr. σάπων, soap, *sabunin sello* a superior soap, e.g. that imported via the Nupé country, used for washing the face.

sab(b)ura, a barren field, etc.; cf. *sab(b)ara*.

sabur(r)a سَابُرَا, a tree with small white leaves; cf. (?) *šabara*.

sache or *šache*, to steal; cf. *sata*.

*sadada** سَدَاد, possibly for *sandua* to creep along unperceived [or more probably it may be from Ar. سَد, to close in, to act as a boundary to]. B 118 note; cf. *sadda*.

šadaka صَدَقَا, Ar. صَدَقَةٌ, 1. alms, almsgiving, A 83 *šadaka da baiwa du ya bai almajirai* he gave all offerings and gifts to (his) followers; 2. to give alms, e.g. A 46 *wanan da ke šadaka da baiwa maiyawa* one of these gave alms and showed much generosity.

šadaka صَدَاقَا, Ar. صَدَاقَةٌ, a female slave, a concubine.

*sa'danu** سَعْدَان (cf. Ar. سَعْد IV,

to assist), found as v. at F 239 *su sa'danu* they go as an escort.

sadare سَدَرِي, Ar. سَدَر, to be confounded, A 8; cf. *šandare*.

sadda سَدَّ, Ar. id., to close, to shut up, to put an end to a quarrel between two men.

saddu سَدُو or سَادُو, 1. to agree with a person; 2. to meet on the road, to meet with, E49 *šikkīn* (i.e. *chikkīn*) *dadi mu saddu da larabawa* with joy we shall meet with the Arabs. *saddua*

سَدُوَا, particip. form, 1. concord; 2. meeting with.

saduda, confidence, etc.; cf. *šaduda*.

*safa** or *saf(f)a** سَعَف, to increase, used with *arzikī*, D 35; cf. *suf(f)a*.

*safage** سَعَفِي, one who scatters his enemies in war.

šafe صَافِي or *šafia* صَافِيَا, Ar. صَفِي (safe is used as fem., A 11), early morning; *šafe ya yi* morning came, *da šafe* in the morning, A 11; *sanu da šafe* good morning! *sai da šafe* good night! *kowache šafia* every morning; *šafia* is used adverbially in B 103 *en ka ga šafia rana* if thou beholdest the sun in the dawn. *šasafe* صَافِيَا, very early in the morning.

šafe سَافِي, a long leathern boot

reaching about ten inches up the leg.

saffu صَفُو, Ar. صَفَّ, a line or row, e.g. as formed for prayer. *yin saffu* to form a line; D 60, F 92 *atsaida saffu assallashe* a line is formed, prayer is said.

safi صَفِي or *safe* صَفِي, Ar. صَفِي, unalloyed, pure, used of metals, e.g. silver = *babu hairinchi*.

saf(f)i صَفِي, fem. *saf(f)ia* صَفِيَا, a young horse.

safia, morning; cf. *safe*.

*safirchi** صَفِرْت, an oath, invocation of God.

safko, to descend; cf. *sabko*.

*sagara** صَاغَر, a calling of fowls, A 29.

*sag(g)i** to feel pain; cf. *shag(g)i*.

sago صَاغُو, cf. Ar. سَفَى, medicine which when drunk is supposed to ward off the blows of an enemy.

*sagogi** صَاغُوغِي, a kind of gum (?).

*sahabai** صَحَابِي, Ar. صَاحِب, friends; B 174, E 52 *sahabai nai* his friends; cf. seq.

*sahba** صَحْبِي, Ar. صَاحِب, friends, D 99; cf. prec.

sai سَنِى, 1. only, except, unless, but, e.g. *sai wanan* only this; 2. until, e.g. *sai ka tsofi*, B 115 (wait) until you grow old, *sai gobe* until to-morrow; 3. *sai wota rana* farewell till another day! *sai anjima* goodbye for the present; 3. conjunctively,

e.g. *dagga wanan sai wanan* = both of them; 4. quite, used with *lafia*, e.g. *sai lafia* quite well or hail! cf. *saida*, *saidai*, *saiko*.

saida سَيْد, i.e. سَى د, except.

saida سَيْد, to sell; cf. *sayes*.

*saidabu** سَيْدَبَا, سَيْدَب, to refuse, to withhold = *hanna*.

saidai سَيْدِي, only, merely, though, A 6, 16.

saiifa, spleen; cf. *sefa*.

saiko سَيْكُو, 1. nevertheless; A 3 *saiko ka che* nevertheless thou sayest; 2. unless, except; A 49 *saiko da tuba zayi sha alkara-chara* only by repentance shall [he] drink of the water of heaven, F 123.

saiko سَيْكُو, a roof made of grass and reeds.

sainya سَنِىَا, a tree, from the fruit of which when crushed a scent is made.

sainya or *sanya* سَنِى, a lengthened form of *sa*, to put, to place, e.g. B 51 *ku sainya duniaka a bayanka ku sainya lahiralka gaban goshi* place this world behind you, place the next world before your forehead, B 118, D 72 *asanya* it shall be put.

sainya سَنِى or *shainya** شَنِى, 1. to cool, e.g. *ina sainya ruan zafi en sha* I cool the hot water, so that I may drink it; 2. to dry, D 64. *sainyato* سَنِىَتُو to

put out to dry. *sainyi* سڀي, 1. cold, a cold, cold in the head, e.g. *sainyi ya kamani* (lit. a cold has caught me) I have caught cold; metaph. coolness of mind, *jin sainyi* to be comforted, resigned, *sainyin zuchia* comfort, consolation. *shainyaye* شڀي, fem. *shainyaya* شڀيا, pl. *shainyayu* شڀيو, dried, aired, also applied to a man with a withered arm.

*saishe** شڀي, to deceive (?).

saiwa سڀوا or *saiwo* سڀوو or *soiya* سڀويا, a root.

saiyi سڀي, pl. *saiyoyi* سڀويي, 1. a temporary booth or covering for the night; 2. fig. a delay; F 120 *ida(n) fa saiyi kiama tsawita* if there be a long delay on the day of the resurrection.

sajada سڀدا, Ar. سجد, bowing so as to touch the ground with the forehead; D 34 *yin sajada* to do obeisance to; cf. *sujuda*.

saje سڀي or *saji* سڀي, hair on the cheeks.

*saji** سڀي, to join together, e.g. by filling up a gap.

saka ساڪ, to weave; *masaka* weaver, also used for a shuttle.

sakake سڀي, fem. *sakakia* سڀيا, pl. *sakaku* سڀكو, woven; cf. particip. of *sake* to change.

saka ساڪا, found in the comp. expr. *saka-mako*, -moko or -mukko,

retaliation or return of kindness done.

*sak(k)a** ساڪ, to embalm.

sakafchi سڀي, 1. forgetfulness; 2. carelessness.

sak(k)ai ساڪي, light, i.e. not heavy.

*sakaina** سڀنيا, the fragments of a broken pot.

*sakake** woven; cf. *saka*.

sakake changed; cf. *sake*.

*sakalia** ساڪاليا, that part of the day about six o'clock, i.e. just before sunset.

*sakan** ساڪن, conj. form found in comp. *sakan zumua* honey poured out from comb.

*sakankache** سڀنڪڻي, Ar. سڪن, to trust in, B 16, note; cf. *masakanche*.

sakaye سڀي or *saye** سڀي, to hide.

sakaza ساڪڙا, drake; from *sa* bull and *kaza* fowl; cf. Eng. bull-seal, bull-walrus, etc.

sake سڀي or *sake* سڀي, *saki* سڀي or *saki* سڀي, to change, to

alter. *sakiwa* سڀيوا, changing, D 54 *ku nema shinni habika da gaskia ku ber sakiwa* seek after true and correct knowledge, leave off changing. *sakake* سڀي, fem. *sakakia*

سڀيا, pl. *sakaku* سڀكو, changed.

saki سڀي or ساڪي, to let go, to

drop, to let loose, release; *ya saki alkauehi* he broke his promise. *sako* سَكُو, to put down; D 11 *bai sako ba* it puts it not down.

saki سَافِي, *soki* سَوْفِي, *soaki* سَوَافِي, 1. a broad blue line or stripe in cloth; cf. *barage* a narrow strip; *fula saki* black or blue cap, *rigan saki* a tobe of a similar colour; 2. to be blue.

sakia سَاكِيَا, piercing, e.g. of the skin, by an arrow; *yin sakia* to pierce.

sakinwa, changing, divorce; cf. *sake*.

*sakiya** سَاكِي, found C 10 *ya sakiya ya maiyawa fa ga la-hira* he dislikes to talk much about the next world.

sako, to put down; cf. *saki*.

*sako** سَاكُو, to drive away, e.g. *na sako sania* I drove away the cow.

sako سَاكُو, errand, message.

sal(l)a صَلَا, Ar. id., 1. prayer; A 56 *kam babu tsarki babu salla kun sani kam babu salla babu shan alkauchara* if there is no purity there is no prayer, as you know; if there is no prayer there is no drinking of the water of heaven; cf. also A 68; 2. divine worship and so, a service, feast, e.g. *baban salla* the great Mohammedan fast; *sallan laiya* the feast corresponding to the Jewish passover; 3. *yin salla* to pray, D 22 *kuna azumi da*

salla keep the fast and pray; D 23, 24, A 53. *sal(l)ata* صَلَات, Ar. صَلَات, festival; *raman sallata*, id. *sal(l)ati* صَلَاتِي, Ar. صَلَا, 1. prayer; 2. salutation, blessing, E 51 *muna zuba essallati* (i.e. *sal(l)ati* + Ar. article) *bissa muhammad* we pour forth salutations on Mohammed, F 3 *muna kuma yin sallati bissa muhammad* we further salute Mohammed; D 2 *muna zikir muna sallati* we offer supplications and prayers. *maisal(l)ati* مَيْصَلَاتِي, one who habitually prays. *sal(l)atu** صَلَاة, salutation, greeting, C 50, F 5, 256; cf. *sal(l)ashe*.

sal(l)abi سَلْبِي, saliva; *yin sal-labi* to slaver.

*sal(l)achi**, to jump; cf. *tsal(l)i*.

*saladak(k)a** سَلْدَا, cf. (?) Ar.

إِسْنَطَج, to fall headlong.

sal(l)ala سَلَلَا, thin gruel (*kunu*) mixed with water.

salam سَلَام, Ar. سَلَام, peace, chiefly used in the form of the salutation *salam alaik* peace be upon thee, to which the answer is *alaikum salam* upon you be peace. *salmawa* سَلْمَاوَا, particip. greeting; F 4 *muna salmawa* we greet.

sal(l)ame سَلْمِي, Ar. سَلْم II, to give up, to let go, *ya salame rainsa* he gave up his spirit; the passive is often used in

selling anything, e.g. *asalameshi* = you can take it, it is yours.

*sal(l)ashe** سَلَّاشِي or *sallashe**

سَلَّاشِي, to pray for a person or thing; F 92 *atsaida saffu assallasheka* a line is formed, prayer is said for thee.

sal(l)ata, festival; cf. *sal(l)a*.

sal(l)ataswa صَلَّاتَسْوَا, the religious ceremony observed at the time of circumcision (*kachia*).

sal(l)ati, prayer; cf. *sal(l)a*.

sal(l)atu, salutation; cf. *sal(l)a*.

salga سَلْغَا, pl. *salgagi* سَلْغِي,

cf. (?) Ar. سَلَح, 1. cesspit, B 105; 2. dung-hole, *bayan gidida* is used similarly.

salī صَلِي, *solī* صُولِي or *soale*

سُولِي, cf. Ar. rt صَلِي, to peel off, to blister as skin when burnt; *yin salī*, id.

*salīhi** صَلِحِي, pl. *salikai* صَلِكِي,

Ar. صَلِح, good, true, faithful, e.g. B 8 *shi sashi salīhi ba mugu ba* may He make it good, not evil; C 17 *aboki salīhi* a good friend, E 32 *da salīhai da mumīnai ku tashi* ye who are good and faithful, rise up.

*salīma** سَلِم, Ar. id., to be without blemish.

salka, *salka*, سَلْكََا, pl. *salkuna*

سَلْكََا, Ar. سَلْخ, a bag or bottle made of skin.

*ṣalla** صَلَّى, Ar. = may (Allah) bless, found in prefatory passages, e.g. A 1, F 1, D title.

*salmarwa**, greeting; cf. *salam*.

sama سَمَا, pl. *samanīa* سَمَانِيَا (or

samomi سَمُومِي), Ar. سَمَا,

sky, heaven; *maisama* a title given to God; A 2 *da yerdan maisama* with the approval of Him who dwells in the heaven.

sama to befall a person; cf. *samu*.

sam(m)a سَمَا or *summa* سُمَا, possibly an adverbial use of *zama* to become, usually found in reduplicated form *samma* *samma* a little, e.g. *ban ji ba sai samma samma* I heard only a little; cf. *zama zama* after some time.

*samagi** سَامَاغِي, a royal warrior.

samako سَمَكُو, (?) Ar. صَبَح, to come very early, v. D 49 note; cf. *saumako*.

samame سَامَمِي, a slave-raiding expedition; cf. *same* to catch.

samari, youths; cf. *samrai*.

samasadowa سَمَسَدُوَا, white cotton brocade of various patterns; its price in the Kano market is about 30,000 cowries a *turumi*.

*samata** سَامَاتَا, a secondary form from *same* to receive, A 83.

sambachi سَمْبِشِي, to boast over, to rejoice over.

sambazai سَمْبَزِي, sandals with red

leather tops and a hole for the toe; cf. (?) Alg. Ar. صَبَاط.

same سَامِي, *sama** سَام or *samo*

سَامُو, to get, to find, to meet with and hence to happen to, e.g. *mi ya sameka* what has happened to you? i.e. what is the matter with you; A 48 *komi ya samasa* whatever befalls him; *amusami* may we obtain, E 52. *samu* سَامُو, سَام, 1. to take, to find; 2. to be obtained, *samuwa* participial form, B 156 *yala ta samu ko ba ta samuwa ba* whether it be obtained or not obtained; 3. possession, B 106 *na duba dunia hal samunta* I have considered the world and its possessions; 4. often used as equivalent to *iya*, e.g. *ba ya samu ya shigga* he could not enter; 5. to spend time, *ya samu wata guda* he spent one month, *samu dama* or *samu ron-gomi* to get better, *samu sauki* to obtain help. Cf. *samata**.

samfalwa سَمْبَلُوَا, a blue cylindrical bead; (?) = Ar. صَفِير, Eng. sapphire.

*sami'u** سَمِيْع, Ar. سَمِيْع, an epithet of God = He who listens, F 16 *zama shi ni sami'u* for He listens.

sammu سَم or *sammo*, Ar. سَم, 1. a charm written with intent to injure someone; 2. poison given in food.

samo, see *same*.

samrai سَمْرِي or *sarmayi* سَرْمِي,

pl. *samari* سَمَارِي, a youth from fourteen to twenty years of age (cf. Ar. زَمِير).

samri, haste; cf. *sauri*.

samro, mosquito; cf. *sab(b)ero*.

samsam سَمَسَم, Ar. سَمَسَم, *samsamum*, sesame, a herb from two to four feet high; an oil is obtained from its seeds which is esp. valued by the Hausas on account of its providing a medicine or ointment for the eyes; cf. Pliny xxii. 25 'hoc (i.e. sesama) amplius oculis imponitur decocta in vino.'

samsi سَمْسِي, smooth; v. *sansamsa* and seq.

samtsi or *santsi* سَمَطِي, 1. smoothness, slipperiness, F 144 *da kai'fi kua da samtsi duk za soka* and its sharp edge and slipperiness shall pierce them; 2. a slip, *yin samtsi* to make a slip, *kadda samtsi ya sameka* that thou slip not.

samu, see *same*.

san, to love; cf. *so*.

sananche سَنَنْشِي, to harass, trouble, distress; cf. seq.

sananta سَنَنْتَا, trouble; cf. prec.

sanas سَنَس, to learn. This and the following are secondary forms of *san(n)i* to know.

sanasda سَنَسْد, *sanaswa* سَنَسُو, to

teach; in C 47 *sanda* is for *sanasda*, v. note.

sanbazai, sandals; cf. *sambazai*.

sanche سَنڀِي, to converse, probably for *zanche*, q.v.

sanda سَنڀَا, pl. *sanduna* سَنڀُنَا, stick, staff; then fig. blow, stripe, D 44 *su kan ribbi sanduna mainai kaman duatsu* they pile up blows many in number as stones.

*sanda** سَنڀَا, to teach; cf. *sanasda*.

сандаре سَنڀَرِي, to be confounded, to swell out, A 64; probably a form of *sadare*, q.v.

sandua سَنڀُو, to creep or walk as on tiptoe silently; cf. *sadada*.

сандукѝ Сَنڀُوف, pl. *сандукѝ* Сَنڀُوفِي, Ar. *صندوق*, box, drawer. It denotes usually a small box, e.g. of leather, etc.; large wooden boxes are unknown in Hausaland.

sanfo or *samfo* سَنڀُو, pl. *sanfuna* سَنڀُنَا, a large grass basket with handles.

*sangarnia** سَنڀَرْنِيَا or *zangarnia** زَنڀَرْنِيَا, pl. *sangarnu* سَنڀَرْنُو, a Nupé word (?), stalk or sheaf of corn.

sani سَانِي or *suane* سَوَانِي, theft.

maisani مَيسِنِي, a man who steals openly during the daytime, a market thief.

*sani** سَنِي, a ladder (?).

san(n)i سَنِي (cf. Ar. *سنة*, knowledge), to know; A 14, 15 *ita dunia na kasua che kun sanni* the world, you know, is a market-place; the final *i* is frequently omitted, e.g. *allah ya san komi* God knows everything, this is regularly so before pron. suffixes, e.g. *ban sanshi ba* I did not know it, *ansanshi* it is known. Another form of this word is *shin(n)a* شِن or *شنا*, e.g. *na shinna = na sanni*. *shin(n)i* شِنِي, knowledge; B 40, 152, D 54 *ku nema shinni hakika da gaskia* seek after true and correct knowledge.

sansanche سَنَسَنڀِي, to understand well; cf. *sanas* to learn, *sanasda*, *sanaswa*, to teach.

sania, cow; cf. *sa* bull.

sankara سَنڀَكْرَا, an insect found in kola nuts.

sanko سَنڀُو, to be bald on the top of the forehead.

sankurumi سَنڀُورُمِي, the *sarikin kasua* or officer of the market, whose right it is to lay hands on offenders and to settle trade disputes in the market.

sansama سَنَسَمَا, a mixture of *fura* and sour milk.

sansami سَنَسَمِي, a large tree, from the bark of which an astringent medicine is made.

*sansamsa** سَنَسَمَسَا, smoothly, an intensive form of *samsi*.

sansanche, to understand well; cf. *sani*.

sansan(n)i سَنَسَنِى, camp, encampment, esp. applied to a war camp; cf. (?) seq.

sansan(n)i سَنَسَنِى, a halo round the sun or moon, it is regarded as a sign of approaching war.

sansarifa سَنَسَرِيفَا or *sasarifa* سَسَرِيفَا, the stumbling of a horse.

san(n)u سَنُو, 1. slowly, gently; *sanu sanu* very slowly or very quietly; Hausa proverb *taffi sanu ko hainya da nesa* go slowly though the way be long; 2. *sanu* is most frequently used in salutations = hail? It is often repeated a dozen or more times in order to add emphasis to the greeting. Its meaning varies according to the word with which it is used; *sanu da rana* good morning, *sanu da dere* good night, *sanu da aiki* may you be happy over your work, *sanu da gajia* (lit. greetings to weariness) may you not be overtired. If a man meets another when it is raining he will say *sanu da rua* welcome to you amidst the rain! *sanu da kewa* greetings to you in your loneliness (cf. *kewa*). It is joined on to the 2nd personal pronouns, *sanuku* greetings to you, *sannuki* hail lady!

sanya, to dry; cf. *sainya*.

sanya, to place; cf. *sainya*.

sapka, to let down; cf. *sabka*.

sara, to accuse; cf. *sare*.

*saraba** سَرَبَا, a gift given to conciliate anyone.

*sarafa** سَرَف, Ar. سَرَف, to rain for a long time = *malka*.

sar(r)ai سَرَى, 1. clear, clean; then, exact; 2. clearly, carefully; *kilga sarrai* to count correctly, B 28 *duba sarrai sarrai* look carefully, *na ji sarrai* I quite understand.

sarakua سَرَكُوَا, mother-in-law; cf. *sariki* or *surki* father-in-law.

sarare, cut; cf. *sare*.

sar(r)ari سَرَرَى, 1. open space, plain, meadow without trees; B 76 *wa ya yi tasu nan sararin sultan* what was like unto it in the regions of the Sudan? A place where people assemble; 2. space, room; D 60 *sarari na bait almukaddas ta ishimu* the space of the Bait al-Mukaddas shall be sufficient for us, *daki nan ya fi wanan da sarari* this room is larger than that. *maisarari* مَيْسَرَرَى, spacious; cf. seq.

sar(r)ari سَرَرَى or *asar(r)ari* اَسَرَرَى, openly; cf. prec.

saraunia سَرُونِيَا, queen.

sarauta or *sarota* سَرَوْتَا, kingdom; *chin sarauta* to gain possession of a kingdom or to become a king, A 8, G 1, l. 4; cf. *masarauchi*, *sariki*.

saraya سَرِيَا, a fall; *yin saraya* = *fadi* to fall.

sare سَارِي, *sara* سَار or *zara** ذَار, to accuse, to report or inform against; *yin sare*, id. *maisara* مَيْسَار, pl. *masusara* مَاسَسَار, accuser, informer.

sare سَارِي, to cut, to cut down; *da takobi* with a sword; used of cutting down wood or trees, e.g. F 89 pass. *anasaran itache don kushewa* wood is cut for the grave. *sarare* سَارَرِي, fem.

sararia سَارَرِيَا, pl. *sararu* سَارَرُو, cut; cf. (?) seq.

sare سَارِي, used of reptiles, etc., to sting, to bite.

sarewa سَرِنُوَا, a kind of wind-instrument, a flute.

sar(r)i سَرِي, a small species of ant which eats grain, etc.

*sari** سَارِي, found in n. ag. *mai-sari* a man who sells a thing a second time at a profit.

sari سَارِي, a bay horse.

sariki سَرِك or سَرِكِي, pl. *sarakuna* سَرَكَنَا or *sarikai** سَرِكِي, king. In Hausaland every town and village has its king. The title *sariki* is given not only to these but to many of their sons and to anyone who presides over any special work; B 3 *jabbaru wahidi sarki allah* God the one all powerful king,

G 1, l. 1 the title *sarikin musulmi* is applied to the sultan of Sokoto, *sarikin sudan* (lit. king of the Sudan) to the king of Birnin Gwari, *sarikin dunia* is used in N. Africa for the sultan of Turkey, *sarikin dawaki* master of the horse, *sarikin kirma* a leader of infantry, *sarikin kasua* president of the market, *sarikin kofa* door-keeper, *sarikin rua* ferryman, *s. wuta* cook. In Kano the blind, lepers, beggars, etc. each have their king (*sariki*).

*sariki**, father-in-law; cf. *sarki*.

*sariki** سَرِكِي, to seize; cf. *sarkafe*.

sarita سَرِيْتَا, a small leather or grass bag, carried on the back.

sarka سَرَكَا or *sarka* سَرَكَا, pl. *sarka* سَرَكَا and *sarkoki* سَرَكُوَكِي, Ar. سَارِفَة, chain, D 12; cf. *sulke* chain armour.

sarkafe سَرَكَبِي, to bind, tie, close; *sarkafe* binding.

sarkaki, a bush; cf. *sirɔkɔkia*.

sarmayi, a youth; cf. *samrai*.

sarota, kingdom; cf. *sarauta*.

sartsi سَرَطِي, a splinter, e.g. in the skin.

*sarwata** سَرَوْتَا, F 241 = *samwata* (?) heavenly (the reading here should probably be *sarauta*).

sas(s)a سَسَا, side, e.g. *sassa nan da sassa chan* on this side and that, *sassa fudu* the four sides.

sasabda or *sasapta* سَسْبَد, tied loosely; cf. (?) seq.

sasabe سَسْبِي, 1. to cut up into small pieces; 2. to clear ground before ploughing; cf. *sabe*.

şasafe, very early in the morning; cf. *şafe*.

*sasago** سَسْغُو, a saw.

sasaka سَسَك or *sameka* سَسَك, to smooth or prepare wood. *ma-sasaki* مَسَسَك, carpenter.

sasari سَسَرِي, cf. Ar. سَسَلَة, chains; F 186 *asa masu sasari na wuta da mahwa* fetters and leg-irons of fire shall be placed on them, F 156.

*sashi**, half; cf. *shashi*.

sassarifa, stumbling; cf. *sansarifa*.

sata سَاتَا, thieving, theft; *yin sata* = to steal. *maisata* مَيْسَاتَا, a thief. *sache* سَاشِي or *sache* صَاشِي, to steal; B 58 *ta rabika ta sache rai* it will part you (from this world) it will steal thy life.

sau or *so* سَو, prefixed to cardinal numerals to form numeral adverbs, e.g. *sau daia* once, *sau biu* twice, *sau fudu* four times.

sau سَو, 1. the sole of the foot; 2. a foot-print.

*sau** سَو, to leave or quit, used of a path, e.g. *sau hainya* = to leave the track, A 19, 22 *sun sau tafarki* they left the right path (? = short form of *sauya*).

*şa'uda** صَعُود, Ar. صَعُود, a mountain in hell, F 189, 191 note.

sauka or *soka* سَوَك, a modified form of *sabka*, to alight, settle down, stay; F 252 *giddan kua dan bazo amasoka ni kua* in the house of the son of Bazo would I stay.

sauki سَوَكِي, 1. quick; *sauki mutua* sudden death; 2. used with *da* as adverb; *da sauki* quickly = *da sauri*.

sauki سَوَفِي, 1. help, assistance, e.g. *allah ya koro muna sauki* may God give us help; 2. health, e.g. *na samu sauki* I recovered; 3. used as v. in passive, B 64 *kai dai asarwake dayawan guri* thou obtainest much of thy desire.

saulo سَوُولُو or *sub(b)olo* سَبُولُو (cf. (?) Ar. سَابَل), a large bag for holding rice.

saumako سَوْمَكُو, the early morning; prov. *kayan saumako da mareche akandamreshi* the load for early morning should be tied up overnight; cf. *samako*.

*sauna** سَوْنَا, pity, compassion.

saura سَوْرَا, Ar. شَار, remainder, gleanings in a field; *yin saura* to glean, *ya yi saura kaddan* there is little left; cf. *shawora*.

*saura** سَوْرَا, a place to sleep in, e.g. in a tree, for fear of wild beasts; cf. (?) Ar. سَوْر, climbing a wall.

saurara, *sorara* سَوْرَار or *jurare**

جراری, to listen attentively, e.g. B 22, 153 *ku yan uwa ku jini ku saurara* you, my brethren, listen to me and pay attention; cf. seq.

sauraro* سَوْرَارُو, a form of prec., to hesitate, doubt, be uncertain.

sauri سَوْرِي or **samri** سَمْرِي, Ar. سَوْر, haste, e.g. F 29 *ka ber saurin fushi* give up being hastily angry; *da sauri* hastily.

sauro, mosquito; cf. *sab(b)ero*.

sausauchi or **sosochi** سَوْسُوْث, idleness, unwillingness to work.

sautare* سَوْتَارِي, often; = *sau, tare*.

sauya سَوِي or **sawaya** سَوِي, 1. to change, transform; 2. to be changed, e.g. *na sauya da arna musulmi* I changed from a heathen to a Musliman. **sauyaye** سَوِيِي, fem. **sauyaya** سَوِيِيَا, pl. **sauyayu** سَوِيِيُو, altered, translated, related to *juya*; cf. *saurara, jurare*.

sawaba* سَوَاب or **şawabe** سَوَابِي, Ar. سَوَاب, that which is fitting, proper; D 4 *mu yi aiki sawaba* that we may work successfully, *yin sawabe* to work well or diligently.

şawarwari سَوَرُوْرِي, anything sold in the market and returned to the seller injured.

sawo سَوُو = *tsawo*, q.v., a form found in F 145 *hawa nasa har sawo nasa babu wawa* its height

and its length are the same without doubt.

saye سَيِي, **sayi** سَيِي, **sai** سَيِي, **saida** سَيِد, **sayo** سَيُو, to buy; all these forms, and specially the last, are also used for 'to sell'; cf. *sayes*.

saye*, to hide; cf. *sakaye*.

sayes سَيِس, **sayesda** سَيِسْد, **saida** سَيِد, to sell, dispose of by sale; the form *saida* more frequently means to buy. *asaidashi* = it is bought; *asayesda* it is sold or it is on sale.

sayo سَيُو, to buy or sell; cf. *saye*.

seb(b)ain سَبْعِيْن, Ar. سَبْعِيْن, numeral seventy; D 64 *nasebbain*, fem. *tasebbain*, seventieth.

seb(b)i* سَبِي (cf. (?) Ar. سَب, to plait palm leaves), 1. to spin yarn; 2*. to take up; cf. *sef(f)i*.

sefa سَفَا or **saifa** سَفَا, pl. **sefofi** سَفُوْفِي, spleen; cf. D 67 *chiwon sefa* disease of the spleen, a swollen spleen.

sef(f)i سَفِي (cf. (?) Ar. سَب, to plait), to comb the hair; cf. *masefi* comb.

seki* سَكِي, remainder, dregs left at the bottom of a cup = *kingi*.

sek(k)i سَكِي, flour, e.g. *sekkin gero, sekkin dawa*.

sello, soap; cf. *sabunin sello*.

sensen(n)i, a halo; cf. *sansan(n)i*.

serkafewa, binding; cf. *sarkafe*.

settin سَتِيْن, Ar. سَتِيْن.

numeral sixty; *nasettin*, fem. *tasettin* ord. num. sixtieth.

sha شَا, to drink, e.g. *bani en sha* give me to drink; to drink in, e.g. *shan iska* to drink the air, i.e. to take an airing or to take a walk, cf. similar Arabic idiom; *shan taba* to smoke. Hence *maisha*, pl. *masusha* one who drinks. *mashaya**, 1. water-side, 2. place of intoxicating drink, E 17 note; *mashan rua*, lit. water-drinker, rainbow; *shani ka sanni*, i.e. drink me, you know me, an expr. used to denote a herb from which a medicine, a cure for diarrhoea, is made (= the Ar. سَنَا, senna); *sha lemu* to suck a lime or lemon. *sha nono* (used of a child) to suck; trop. uses, e.g. A 12 *kamin ka zona zaka sha dadi nata* when thou sittest down thou shalt taste of its sweetness; *sha wohalla* to suffer or experience trouble, to enjoy; D 75 *mu sha ennua* we enjoy the shade; *ya sha kansa* he was confused, *ya sha kaina* = he caused me distress; *ya sha kai* = *ya taffi gabbansa*, i.e. he went towards him so as to intercept and stop him; *sha bauji* used of one who carries everything in his girdle, i.e. a warrior; *sha kuskure* to miss, *sha bara* to miss fire, to miss the mark, the name of a charm drunk in order to ward off

arrows. *shangia* شَنْغِيَا, lit. drinking *gia*, intoxication; cf. *shankumbu*.

sha شَا, a prefix used in forming the numerals eleven to nineteen, e.g. *goma sha davia* eleven, G 3, l. 13 *goma sha biu* twelve; the word *goma* may be omitted, e.g. *sha bokkoi* seventeen.

*shaair** شَعِير, Ar. شَعِيرٌ, barley (not grown in Hausaland).

shache, to comb; cf. *shata*.

shaduda شَدُودًا or *saduda* سَدُودًا (cf. (?) Ar. شَدَّ, to strengthen one's resolution), 1. confidence, freedom from fear, trust in a person; 2. to trust or rely upon a person.

shafa شَابًا or *shafe* شَابِي, Ar. شَاب, to smear or anoint

with oil, also with water; used of ceremonial ablutions, e.g. B 48 pass. *enshafa* (for *anshafa*) ablutions were made, v. note; fig. of anointing the face with darkness, A 67; *shafa gashi* to brush back the hair.

shafi شَابِي, 1. a turn in at the edge of a garment, a patch on clothes; 2*. the page of a book.

shafi'u شَفِيْع, Ar. شَفِيْع, protector, v. F 129 note.

shafu شَابُو, kite or falcon; cf. *shahu*.

shag(g)ali, *shag(g)eli*, شَغَل or *shug(g)eli* شُغَل, *shag(g)al** (A

64 ?), pl. *shugulgula* شُغُلْغُلَا, Ar. شَغَلَ, work, business; B 50 *ku yan uwa ku ber shagalin dunia* you, my brethren, abandon the business of this world; trade, management; *yin shagali* to do business. *shagalichi** شَغَلِي, to be so occupied with one thing as to forget another, to act carelessly, i.e. through absence of mind.

shagalichi, see prec.

*shag(g)i** شَغِي or *sag(g)i** سَغِي, Ar. شَغِي, to feel pain, esp. that arising from sickness; cf. *zogi* sharp pain.

shagiri شَغِرِي, pl. *shagirai* شَغِرَاي, a beardless person.

*shahada** شَهَادَا, Ar. شَاهِد, a man killed in a war (for religion).

shahawa شَهَوَا, Ar. شَهْوَةٌ, to covet, desire; also to love, e.g. *na shahawa abokina* I love my friend. *shawa* شَاوَا, lust, evil desire, C 39 *kowa ka bin shawa da guri* whoever follows lust and desire.

shahu شَاوُو (cf. Ar. شَاهِيَّة, a hawk), a kite or falcon, small white hawk; cf. *shafu*, id.

shaida شَيْدَا, pl. *shidai* شَيْدَاي, and *shaidodi* شَيْدَوْدِي, Ar. شَيْد, 1. witness, testimony, *shaida ido* eye-witness; *maishaida*, pl. *masushaida* a witness; 2. a

mark or sign, as e.g. that of a witness who cannot write, a mark put on animals, also a mark on trees to show the way; 3. *shaida* or *yin shaida* to bear witness, also to mark, e.g. *mun shaida tumakimu* we marked our sheep; *ya shaida* he bore witness, also *kai* and *kawo shaida*, id. *shaidade* شَيْدَادِي, fem. *shaidada* شَيْدَادَا, pl. *shaidadu* شَيْدَادُو, attested, certified.

shaidani شَيْدَانِي, to know, to have a clear knowledge of.

*shaii** شَيْي (cf. Ar. شَاءَ, to frighten), fear, *na ji shaii* I was afraid.

shainya شَيْي, 1. to dry, cf. *sainya*; 2. to drink in, to absorb; see *sha*.

shainyaye, dried, aired; cf. *sainya*.

shaitan or *shetan* شَيْطَان, *shaitani* شَيْطَانِي, Ar. شَيْطَان, Satan, the devil, B 105 *gonan shaitan* the garden of Satan; B 132 *turuba shaitani* the path of the evil one. As pl. it is used in the sense of evil persons, seducers; cf. *shaitane* شَيْطَانِي,

B 70 and *shaitanai* شَيْطَانَاي, B 133. The word *shaitan* is often used as synonymous for clever or crafty, e.g. *shina shaitan* he is as clever as Satan.

shaka شَك or *sheka* شَك, to smell, e.g. frankincense, water, etc.

shakali شَكَل, fornicator. *shakalia* شَكَلِي, pl. *shakalai* شَكَلِي, harlot, whore; *shakalichi* شَكَلِث, whoredom, fornication (cf. Ar. شَكَل, to use amorous gestures).

shak(k)e شَكِي, to strangle.

shakka شَكَّ, Ar. شَكَّ, 1. to doubt, e.g. A 7 *shi ke shakka* he doubts, A 35 *ni babu na shakka ku che masa kafiri* I have no doubt but that you may call him a heathen; 2. شَكَا, doubt; *babu shakka* or *babu shak* without doubt.

shakua شَكُوا, to hiccough; cf. (?) *sheka*.

shakup شَكُف, 1. = *sakkai* light; 2. in phr. *abinchi ya yi shakup* the food is not nice.

*shali** شَلِي, also *yin shali* to salute or give a present.

shalla شَلَا, an aquatic plant, the flowering head of which is called *bambana*.

shama شَام, 1. to trouble; used with *kai*, *ya shama kai* it causes trouble; 2. to toil.

shamak(k)i شَمِكِي, pl. *shamak(k)ai* شَمِكِي, 1. a partition; 2. place for horses; 3. a groom.

shamowa or *shamua* شَمُوا, 1. raven; 2. a species of stork; cf. Gr. p. 86 seqq.

shangia, a compound of *sha* and *gia*, intoxication; cf. *sha*.

shankumbu شَنْكُومُو, to cut round; cf. *kumbu*.

shanshani شَنْشَانِي, pl. *shanshanu* شَنْشَانُو, a centipede.

*shanshere** شَنْشِيرِي, cleaned, an epithet applied to rice; cf. *shinkaf* (f)a.

*shantali**, a large cup; cf. *shintali*.

shanto شَنْتُو, a long, oblong *ktivoria* which is beaten like a drum; *maishanto* a drummer.

shanu شَانُو, cows, cattle; cf. *sa* bull.

shara شَار or *share* شَارِي, 1. to sweep; 2. *shara* شَارَا, sweeping, *yin shara* to sweep. *sharare* شَارَرِي, fem. *sharara* شَارَرَا, pl. *shararu* شَارَرُو, swept.

*shar(r)a** شَرَا, Ar. شَرُّ, evil, e.g. D 40 *en shara ka aika* if thou hast done evil; cf. *shariri*.

sharaba شَرَب, to embroider, to knit.

*sharaba** شَرَابَا, the calf of the leg.

sharare, swept; cf. *shara*.

*sharatsa** شَرَط, Ar. شَرَط, condition, necessity; B 92 *tana da sharatsan tana karewa* it is subject to the necessity of coming to an end; cf. *sheradi*.

share, to sweep; cf. *shara*.

*sharhoi** شَرْحُوِي, Ar. شَرْح, commentaries, E 11 note.

*shariri** شَرِير, Ar. شَرِير, evil, e.g.

- ya yi shariri* = *ya yi mugu abu*; cf. *shar(r)a*.
- shariri** شَارِيرِي, infant; a rare form of *jariri*, q.v.
- sharkira* شَرْكَرَا, dung.
- sharo* شَارُو (cf. Ar. شَهْر, to brandish a sword), a fencing game played by the Fulahs with two sticks.
- shasanda** شَسَنْدَا, a long ridge of hair left in shaving the head.
- shasha** شَاشَا, a gambling game, F 10; a less common form of *chacha*, q.v.
- shashafe* شَشَفِي, a reduplicated form of *shafe*, to blot out; pass. *inkashashafe* (*in-* for *an-*), found at E 21.
- shashasha** شَاشَاشَا, a fool, a born idiot, B 107.
- shashi* شَاشِش or *sashi** سَاشِش, 1. half; 2. a part, a portion, i.e. one out of three or more portions.
- shashisha** شَاشَشِش, to gasp for breath, D 15.
- shata* شَاتَا, 1. a comb; 2. *shata* or *shache* شَاشِي, to comb, e.g. *ta shata gashin kai* she combed the hair of (her) head.
- shaushawa* شَوْشَوَا, marks cut in the face to point out the tribe or family to which a person belongs.
- shawa*, lust; cf. *shahawa*.
- shawagi* شَوَاغِي, applied to a man who passes quickly by a place without stopping to talk, to go quickly from place to place.
- shawo** شَاوُو, to draw out; a form of *jawo*, q.v.
- shawo* شَاوُو, a form of *sha*, 1. to drink, e.g. F 189 *don su shawo ruan zafi* that they may drink hot water; 2*. to splash water over an infant, to wash it.
- shawora* شَاوَرَا, Ar. شَار III, consideration, deliberation, consultation, D 25; *yin shawora* to deliberate, consult, *wurin shawora* place of deliberation, court (= Ar. مَشْوَر), hall of public audience.
- shawora* شَوَرَا, Ar. شَار, 1. rest, remainder, i.q. *saura*, q.v.; 2. less, e.g. *na bashi arbaa shawora daia* I gave him four thousand less one, i.e. I gave him three thousand; cf. *saura*.
- shaya* شَايَا, a form of *sha*, to drink, found in n. loc. *mashaya*, place of intoxication, E 17.
- sheda* شَدَا, sigh, heavy breathing; *yin sheda* to sigh, breathe heavily, pant for breath.
- sheddadu** شَدَادُ, Sheddad, son of Ad, mentioned in the traditions of the Arabs, F 55 note.
- sheg(g)e* شَغِي or *shege* شَغِي (A 60), (cf. Ar. شَغِيْفَة, شَغِيْف, uterine brother, sister), bastard, A 60; *dan shegge*, id. In a trop. sense *ashegge* pass. in form is found D 32 = one that is profligate, adj., profligate.

shag(g)eli, business; cf. *shag(g)ali*.
shagifa, a porch or hut; cf. *shigifa*.

*shehu** شَيْخ, Ar. شَيْخ, teacher.

*sheji** شَجِي, a bay horse = *sari*.

shek(k) شَكَا, pl. *shek(k)una* شَكْنَا
 and *shekoki* شَكُوَكِي, a nest.

sheka شَك, to run away quickly.

sheko شَكُو, to come quickly.

sheka to sniff up or smell; cf. *shaka*, *shesheka*, and (?) *shakua* hiccough.

sheka شَك, to pour out grain so that the chaff may be blown away.

shekara شَكْرَا, pl. *shekaru* شَكْرُو, a year, with numerals the sing. is commonly found, e.g. F 145, G 6, l. 11 *shekarashi tokkos da wata shidda* his time was eight years and six months; used as a verb G 2, l. 14 *ya shekara uku chikki sarota zaria* he lived three years in the kingdom of Zaria, *shekarunka nawa* or *shekara nawa kana da rai* or *shekara nawa tun haifuanka* how old are you?

shekaranjia شَكْرَنْجِيَا, the day before yesterday.

shekare شَكْرِي, to be dry; A 76 *kam ba rua kube kasanka ya shekare* if there is no water to mix with it, your earth is dry.

sheko, to come quickly; cf. *sheka*.

shela شَلَا, a notice issued by a

king forbidding people to sell in the market.

shema شِمَا, to cut down very small plants or reeds with a hoe.
mashemi مَشِمِي, a hoe; cf. seq.

sheme شِمِي, a grass or reed for making arrows.

*sheradi** شَرَادِ, Ar. شَرَط, an agreement, esp. one to do work for a certain payment; cf. *sharatsa*.

*shere** شِرِي, line; a less common form of *jere*, q.v.

sheria شَرِيَعَا, شَرِيَع, pl. *sheriai* شَرِيَعِي, Ar. شَرِيَعَة, judgment, sentence, ordinance; *yin sheria* to judge, give judgment, E 10 *da alkalai da masuzua sheria* both the judges and those who come to receive judgment. (The use of the word, though fairly common, is confined to certain localities.)

sherif شَرِيَف, Ar. شَرِيَف, a holy man, said to have the power to enter fire without its injuring him, but possessing no definite qualifications. Most of those who have been on the pilgrimage (cf. *haji*) claim this title afterwards.

sherinia شَرِنِيَا, the name of a large tree.

*sheshag(g)i** شَشِغِي, interference, evil action.

shesheka شَشِشَك, to pant; cf. *sheka*.

shetan, Satan; cf. *shaitan*.

shewa شِوَا or *suwa* سُوَا, to be merry, to shout aloud like a fool. The form *suwa* is esp. used in Sokoto.

shi شِ, شِ, شِ (cf. Kanuri *shi* or *shima*, pl. *sa*), pronominal particle, 3rd pers. masc. sing. = he, it, 1. *shi* followed by *ya* is used as the emphatic form of the personal pron. *shi ya yi hakka* he did so, or it was he who did so; 2. used as a prefix to verbs in the sense of subjunctive, e.g. *ina roko shi bani wanan* I ask him to give me that, *ya ki shi ji* he refused to listen; cf. use of *ya*; 3. used to express a wish, *allah shi deddi ranka* may God lengthen your life; B 46 *allah shi bamu kwana lafafa* may God grant us days of prosperity; 4. as objective pron. suffixed to verbs and prepositions, e.g. *ya ganshi* he saw him, *gareshi* to him, etc.; 5. *-shi* or *-nshi* شِشِ as inseparable possessive sometimes found for *-sa* or *-nsa*, e.g. G 1, l. 11 *motsinshi* his movement. This last use is especially common in the southern part of Hausaland; 'his house' in Zaria would usually be *giddanshi*, in Kano *giddansa*, in Sokoto *giddanai*.

shia, a quarter or division of a town; cf. *shiya*.

*shiawa** شِياَوَا, saying (?), F 33; cf. *che*.

*shib(b)a** شِبا, arrow, sheaf of arrows; cf. *chibia*, *kiibia*.

shid(d)a شِدْ, *shid(d)e* شِدِي, 1. to descend; used with *da* to let down, e.g. *na shida da tulu a kasa* I put down the pitcher on the ground; 2. to take down, to unload; *su shida gi-shiri* they unloaded the salt; 3. to alight, encamp, sojourn; 4. *shide* to receive as a guest; *ya shidemu chikkin gidda* he received us into the house; *mashid(d)i* مَشِدِي, lodging place. *shid(d)i** شِدِي, followed by *da*, to bear, to carry, e.g. *na shidi da abu zua kawa* I carried something to the market. *shid(d)o* شِدُو, to take; D 17 *ba mutua bale shidoshi shi je shi futa* much less will death take him away, so that he should go to rest.

shidda شِدَا or شِدْ (cf. (?) Ar. سِتُّ), card. num., six, G 6, l. 12; the corresponding ordinal is m. *nashidda*, fem. *tashidda*. (*shidda* is the only one of the lower Hausa numerals which at all resembles the Arabic; if, which seems otherwise improbable, the Hausa numerals were originally formed on a basis of five, *shidda* would be for *sha daia*; cf. *sha*, also Spec. H. L. p. xiv.)

shidi and *shid(d)o*; cf. *shid(d)a*.

shifchi شِفْشِي, to cut with knife or scissors a piece of cloth gathered up in a knot or roll.

*shifi** شِب, cf. D 39 *en akaika anshifi da ka chikkin kushewa* if thou art brought and laid in the grave.

shiga شِغَا, 1. a triangular piece of cloth inserted at the bottom of a robe, etc. to make the bottom broader than the top; 2. garments, F 232, 238 *shiga kayan adonsa* garments (which are an) object of adornment to him.

shig(g)a شِغ, to go in, to enter, A 18 (?) *shigga da* followed by a substantive = to carry anything in; cf. use of *taffi da*, etc. *shig(g)asda* شِغَسْد, to cause to enter, to take in. *shishig(ga)* شِشِغ, to go constantly to a place. *shig(g)o* شِغُو, to come in, to enter in, to where the speaker is.

*shig(g)e** شِغِي, like; *shiggensu* like them.

shigifa شِغِيْمَا or *shogifa* شِوْغِيْمَا, pl.

shigifu شِغِيْفُو and *shigifofi*

شِغِيْفُوْمِي, Ar. سَفِيْف, house, porch, dwelling; usually a house built of mud.

shig(g)o, see *shig(g)a*.

*shigoro** شِغُوْرُو, fear; *yin shigoro* to fear.

shika شِكَ, particle prefixed to 3rd pers. sing. to form perf. tense, v. H. Gr. p. 26.

shik(k)a شِكَ, 1. to throw up anything so that it falls down again; 2*. to divorce a woman; cf. *sakki*, id.

shikashiki شِكَشِكَ, pl. *shikashikai*

شِكَشِكَي, poles used to support a tent.

*shikawa**, completing, i.q. *chikawa*, F 5.

*shik(k)in**, in, i.q. *chik(k)in*, A 9.

shil(l)u شِلُو, to wave = *reto*, to shake violently, e.g. *na shillu magani da wamani* I shook up two medicines together.

*shim** شِم, used in Sokoto, etc. for *shina*, F 80 note.

shimfida شِمِيْد or *shimfada* شِمِيْدَا, to extend, enlarge; to spread out, e.g. *shimfida taberma* to spread out a mat; *abin shimfida* = a mat. *mashimfidi*, q.v., anything spread out, e.g. for sale.

shimge شِمِغِي or *shinge* شِنِغِي, pl.

shimgaye شِمِغَايِي, a fence made of stalks or thorns to keep in sheep, etc.

shimtake شِمِكَبِي, a crow = *han-kaka*, q.v.

shina شِنَا, شِنَا, verb. pron. prefix of the pres. tense 3rd pers. sing. masc., e.g. *shina so* he wishes. The pronominal forms ending

in *na*, e.g. *shina*, *yana* may be followed by substantives or participial forms, thus *yana taffia* he is going, *shina zua* he is coming; cf. under *ina*.

shin(n)a, to know; cf. *san(n)i*.

shinaderi, solder; cf. *sinaderi*.

shimbali, a small jar; cf. *simbali*.

shinge, hedge; cf. *shimge*.

shin(n)i, knowledge; cf. *san(n)i*.

shinkaf(f)a شنگبَا, rice in the husk; *shinkaffu shanshere* (or *surfafe*) = cleaned rice.

shinkai, kindness, good or evil deed; cf. *jinkai*.

shintali شنتَلِي or *sintali* سِنْتَلِي or *shantali* شنتَلِي, pl. *shintalai* شنتَلِي, a large cup, kettle.

shipka شِبْكَا, pl. *shipkoki* شِبْكَوَكِي, small plants; cf. seq.

shipka شِبْكَ or *shuka* شُك, to sow, plant; *yin shipka*, id.

shira شِير, to dig with a *fatainya*, to hoe.

shirai شِيرِي, a small porch, a hut used for storing grain in.

*shirari** شِرَار, Ar. شَرَّ, one who has done evil; cf. *shariri*.

shirbache شِرْبَتِي, to return often, to work at the same thing.

shirga شِرْغ (cf. Ar. سَرَف, to steal), used with *tsada* to charge much money, *yana shirga tsada* he overcharges; cf. (?) seq.

shirga شِرْغِي, شِرْغِي, 1. to ascend; 2. to place one thing on top

of another, e.g. in arranging papers.

shiri شِرِي, preparation; *yin shiri* to prepare, make ready, B 55 *en ka yi shiri* whether you are prepared; passive used in D 59 *zaashiri hukumchi* judgment shall be prepared. *shiria* شِرِيَا (written *shirya* but always pronounced *shiria*), to prepare, make ready, e.g. D 89 *bale ku shiria* still less that you should make preparation; passive, B 55 *da idan ba ashiriia ba* or (whether you are) unprepared; E 29 *idan sarkin musulmi zashi makka amushiria kaya* if the king of the Mussulmans goes to Mecca, we must make ready our goods; D 50 *masushiria* مَاسُشِرِيَا, those who are prepared; cf. ad loc. *shiriwa** شِرِيَوَا, preparation, D 36. *shiriyaye* شِرِيِيِي, fem. *shiriyaya* شِرِيِيَا, pl. *shiriyayu* شِرِيِيُو, participial form from *shiria* ordered, arranged, prepared. *shirshiria* شِرْشِرِيَا, an intensive form, B 114 *ka yi talahiralka ka shirshiria* accomplish deeds fit for the next world, make much preparation.

shirku شِرْك, Ar. شَرَك IV, anything unlawful, idolatry, witchcraft, etc.

shiru or *shiriu* شِرُو, also *shiu* شُو,

1. in silence, silently, B 54, F 98; 2. calm after a storm, *ka yi shiriu* be silent?
shirua or *shirwa* شِرْوَا, pl. *shiruoyi* شِرْوُوِي, hawk.
shishig(g)a, to go constantly to a place; cf. *shig(g)a*.
*shishik(k)a** شَشِكَا, F 32 *kana kuma shishika* (= *chichik(k)a*) *girma* thou swellest with pride.
shishit(t)a شَشِتَا, hissing, sh! sh!
shiwaka شِوَاكَا (cf. Ar. شَوْكَا), in the names of several medicines), a bitter herb from which a medicine is made.
shiya or *shia* شِيَا, pl. *shiyoyi* شِيُوِي, quarter or division of a town; cf. *ungua*.
shu or *shiu* شُو, 1. = *shiru* silence; 2. used as a call, e.g. to join in a game; cf. *shu shu shu*, B 70 note.
shude شُوْدِي, *shuda* شُوْدُ or *shudi* شُوْدِي or *shutse** شُطِي (a Fulah word?), to pass away; A 62 *kova ya ber lotu ya shude ya bata* whoever omits the times (of prayer) passes away and is destroyed; F 154 *wonsu kan shutse wa iska* some will pass like wind.
shudi شُوْدِي, blue cloth = *zanne maishuni*.
shugaba شُغَبَا, pl. *shugabai* شُغَبِي, guide, leader; cf. *jagaba*.

shug(g)eli, business, etc.; cf. *shag(g)ali*.
shuka, to sow; cf. *shipka*.
shukra شُكْر, Ar. شَكَر, 1. to praise, give thanks; 2. شُكْرًا, praise; B 172, D 100 *muna shukra muna godia zua ga allah* we give thanks and are grateful to God.
shuni شُونِي or *juni** جُونِي (cf. Ar. جَوْن, red, white, etc.), blue colour, indigo.
shure شُورِي or *jure** جُورِي, to kick.
shurfe شُرْفِي, to shed tears.
shusia شُسِيَا, a small piece of twisted cotton.
*shutse** شُطِي, to pass away; for *shude*, q.v.
shuwaki شِوَاكِي = *yin yawo*, to take a walk or promenade.
*sidi** سِيْد, Ar. سَيِّد, lord, applied to Mohammed, B 20 *albarka-chinka sidi mu samu cheto* blessed art thou, O lord, we obtain salvation (through thee); *ya sidi* is a common form of polite address.
siko سِيْكَو, Ar. سَكَّ, a very large needle or spike; cf. *tsiko*.
silia or *siliya* سِلِيَا, pl. *siliyu* سِلِيُوِي and *siliyoyi* سِلِيُوِي, cf. Ar. سَلِيْلَة, silk cord, string; F 216 *siliyoyi ado su ka ratayawa* beautiful chains shall they hang upon themselves; F 233.

simbali سِبَلِي or *shimbali* شِبَلِي,

cf. (?) Ar. سَبُولَة, a small jar.

*sin** سِين, China.

sinaderi سِنْدَرِي or *shinaderi*

سِنْدَرِي or *sunadari* سُنْدَرِي,

1. a sort of solder used for joining metals, white like salt, chloride of ammonium (?); 2*. tin.

sinbali; cf. *simbali*.

*sinche**, to loose; cf. *sunche*.

sinih سِنِح, Ar. سَنَح, 1. to render miserable; 2. to sigh, to be sorrowful.

sinishi سِينِيشِي, to sigh; cf. prec.

sintali, cf. (?) Ar. سَطَل, a large cup; cf. *shintali*.

*sintua** سِنْتُوا, picking a thing off the ground, finding, etc.; cf. *tsintua*.

*sirati** صِرَاطِي, Ar. صِرَاط, a bridge over hell to be crossed by all after death; its length is a thousand years' journey, its breadth as fine as a thread; cf. F 143 *fa ankafa kua sirati chikkin jahima* the bridge shall be set up in the fire; F 154.

*siri** سِرِي, to prepare, F 238; cf. *shiri*.

sirkakia سِرْقَافِيَا or *sarkaki* سِرْقَافِي, a thorny bush which grows near water, its fruit is ground up and eaten.

sis(s)ika سِسْكَ or *sus(s)uka* سُسْكَ, to thresh; *masissika* or *wu-*

rin sissika threshing-floor; cf. *shik(k)a*.

sitaka سِتَاكَ, hatchet, axe, with broad blade similar to that of *barandem(m)i*, q.v.

sit(t)ira سِتْرَا or *sutura* سْتْرَا, Ar. سِتْر, covering, fine clothing, pomp; *yin sutura* to cover.

sit(t)ira سِتْر or *sutura* سْتْر, to clothe, cover, preserve from; *allah shi muna sutura da aikokin ebliz* may God preserve us from the works of the evil spirit. *maisutura* box, grave, etc. *sit(t)irta* سِتْرْت, to clothe.

so سُو (cf. (?) rare modern Ar. سُو, to desire, a contraction of (سَوَب), 1. to love, to like, *ina sonka* I love you; hence *masowa* مَسُوَا, friends, lovers; F 79 *masowa duka enna maitai-makarwa* of all who love thee where is one who will help! F 80; 2. to wish, desire, hope, consent; pass. form *anso*, A 29 *anso ta kass muria* let her be willing to lower her voice. The word is sometimes pronounced *san*, e.g. *na sansa* I love him; cf. *sofa*.

so, a prefix to numerals; cf. *sau*. *soale*, to peel; cf. *sohi*.

soborodo سَبْرُوْدُو, the fruit, similar in appearance to *yakua*, of a tree, with a red flower; soup (*mia*) is made from it.

*sofa** سَوَف, Ar. سَوَف, D 25 *sofa sofa*, = as to the future, v. note.

sofani سڀني, blemish, e.g. white or black spot on an animal, or a piece of material not of uniform colour on anything.

soinya سونيا, a bush, with white flowers, from which a scent is obtained.

soiya, root; cf. *saiwa*.

soiya or *suya* سوي, سويآ, to cook without water, fry, also to roast, burn, D 67 *ta soiya sefa* it shall burn the spleen; F 230 *abin soiya ga kowa* there shall be cooked food for all. *soiyaye* or *soiye* سويبي fem.

soiyaya سويآ, pl. *soiyayu* سوييو, participial adj. of prec., parched, broiled, fried, cooked without water; cf. *surya* or (?) Ar. طهو.

soka سوكا, *soke* سوكي or *soki* سوكي, to pierce, to prick, e.g. F 144 *da kaiifi kua da samtsi duk za soka* and its sharp edge and slipperiness shall pierce all. *sosoke* سوسوكي, to prick or pierce through.

soka, to alight; cf. *sauka*.

sokara سوكرا, a yam cooked and beaten up.

soke, *soki*, to pierce; cf. *soka*.

sokoto سوكتو, the town of Sokoto, G 4, ll. 1, 10.

soma سوم, to begin.

*soma**, to dip; cf. *tsoma*.

sonsona, to smell; cf. *sunsuna*.

sorara, to listen; cf. *saurara*.

soraye, see seq.

soro سورو, pl. *soraye* سورايي, the porch at entrance to house, B 167; a second storey in a house (such are very seldom found in Hausaland); cf. *zauri*.

sosai سوسي, straight, correct, proper, level, equal; *ya yi sosai* it is level, *hainya sosai* a straight path; = *daidai*.

*sosaiya** سوسيا, cutting with scissors, shearing, etc.; *yin sosaiya* to cut, to shear.

soshia سوشيا, chaff from wheat or other grains; cf. *dusa*.

*soso** سوسو, the foliage of a small plant used like a sponge.

sosochi, idleness; cf. *sausauchi*.

sosoke, intensive form of *soke*, q.v., to pierce or prick much.

soto سوتو, a cake made of bean-flour and oil (*maingedda*).

*sotu**, to entrust; cf. *sabtu*.

*soyeya** سويي, *soaya* سواي or *sowaya* سويآ, love; *yin soyeya* to love.

su سو, س, Kanuri *sa* (cf. Hausa-Kanuri *shi*), 3rd pers. pl. pron., 1. as a separate pron. it expresses the subject 'they,' e.g. *su kua (sutaifi)* they also (went); 2. prefixed to verbs as subj., e.g. *su gudu* they fled; 3. suffixed to verbs as obj., e.g. G 1, l. 8 *ya koresu* he drove them away; 4. *-su* or *-nsu* نس, suffixed to

nouns as an inseparable possessive pron., e.g. *dawakinsu* their horses.

su سُو, to fish with hand-nets, *yin su*, id.; cf. *masusu*.

sua سُوا, pl. of *wa*; used with *ne*, *suane* = pl. of *wane*; 1. used with reference to what is previously known, e.g. *sune sua* these are the ones, these are they; 2. with *ne*, as interrog., e.g. *suane ne* who are they? *suane ne su ke zo* who are they that are coming? 3. *suasua* = either who are they? or, it is all the same, they are both alike, i.e. Ar. سَوَا سَوَا; cf. *duka daidai* and *duka daine*. Possibly the *a* at the end of *sua* corresponds to *a* in *nia*, is it I?

suaba سَوَابَا or *saba* سَابَا, the cast skin or slough of a serpent, *ya yi suaba* he comes out of his skin.

suabe سُوْبِي, to beat grain, corn, etc.

suabo, *ṣuabo* or *ṣabo* صَابُو (cf. Ar. rt صوب iv, ruined, harmed), evil, e.g. D 81 *en suabo ka kan yi shi kaika giddan azaba* if you do evil He will bring you to the abode of pain, cf. B 36, 37; *maisuabo* evil-doer, D 21. plr. *ya yi suabon allah* = to blaspheme or to act profanely.

suane, to steal; cf. *sani*.

*suba**, to pour; cf. *zuba*.

sub(b)abi, violent dispute; cf. *sab(b)abi*.

subda سُبْدَا, to take off, e.g. a load.

*subhana** سُبْحَانَ, Ar. سُبْحَانَ, praise, B 1.

subi, much; cf. *tsibi*.

sub(b)olo, a rice-bag; cf. *saulo*.

subub(b)i سُبُوبِي, Ar. سَبَب, cause, reason; from a different application of the same Ar. rt comes *subab(b)i* dispute.

*subui** سُبُوعِي, Ar. سُبُوع, fractional numeral, one-seventh, the seventh part.

suda سُوْدَا (cf. Ar. سَوَادِيَة, sparrow), a small brown bird; its call is said to be ominous of war.

sudan سُوْدَان, Ar. سُوْدَان, Sudan, B 76 *sararin sudan* the regions of the Sudan. The word *sudan* which means the blacks, i.e. the country of the blacks, is applied by the natives to all Africa N. of the equator and S. of the Sahara desert, reaching from Senegal to the Red Sea. In Hausaland the king of Kwontagora bears the title *sarikin sudan*, i.e. king of the Sudan.

sudi سُوْدِي, that which is left, e.g. as food for children or servants.

*sudusi** سُوْدُسِي, Ar. سُدُس, fractional numeral, one-sixth.

suf(f)a, to increase; cf. *safa*.

suf(f)adu سَبْدُو, pl. *suf(f)adai* سَبْدِي, small light shoes worn inside boots.

sufi صُوب, Ar. صُوب, wool from sheep.

sufili, see seq.

sufuri سُفُور, *sufurchi** سُفُورْت or *sufili* سُفِيلِي, Ar. سُفُر, 1. a large thick book; 2. to bind up tight, to tie up kola nuts, etc.

sufuri سُفُور and *sufurchi* (cf. (?) Ar. سُفُورَة, provisions for a journey), 1. money paid to carriers; 2. to hire, rent, let out to; *yin sufuri* or *yin sufurchi*, id.

*sujuda** سُجُود, Ar. سَجَد, F 132 *shina sujuda* he will prostrate himself; cf. commoner form *sajada*.

sukani, see *sukua*.

*sukintsa**, A 23, probably = *su kintsa*; see *kintsa*.

sukua سُكُوَا, *suka* سُكَا and *sukani* سُكَانِي, to gallop, flee away; cf. B 113, F 234 *adora suka da ban hanu da jiuna* they shall mount and gallop, clapping their hands together, *yin suka* or *sukua* or *sukani*, id., *masukwani* a place for galloping. *sukua* is the form generally used in Kano, *suka* in Sokoto.

sukuki سُكُكِي, bush with thick foliage, its food ground and eaten; cf. (?) *sirkakia*.

*sukurua** سُكُرُوَا, corner; *sukuruan hanu* elbow. Another form of the word is *kusurua* = *guinwan hanu*.

sulale سُلَالِي, white cotton for sewing; cf. under *silia*.

sulale سُلَالِي, cf. Ar. سَلَا, to cook meat with very little water.

*sulba** سُلْبَا, agreement (?).

sulke سُلْكِي, Ar. سِلَاح, Kanuri *suluge*, iron armour, chain armour.

sulkumi سُلْكُمِي or *surukumi* سُرُكُمِي, leather bag with narrow mouth, smaller than *taiki*.

suma سُومَا, *suma* صُومَا or *zuma** ذُومَا (cf. (?) Ar. سَوْمَر, abstinence), faintness; *yin suma* to feel faint. *zumane** ذُومَانِي, faint; cf. *sumanche*.

sum(m)a, a little; cf. *sam(m)a*.

suma سُمَا, hair of the head, i.e. when cut off.

sum(m)a سُمَا or *tsuma** طُمَا, pl. *sumoki* سُموكِي or *tsumoki** طُموكِي

sumoki طُموكِي, rags, old garments.

sumanche سُمَنْبِي or *sunanche* سُنَنْبِي, to cause to choke.

sumanjia سُمَنْجِيَا, a thin bending branch of a tree, a stick.

sumba سُمْبَا, kiss, kissing hands to; B 164 *mu yi kewoye muna sumban dutsi* we make the circuit, we kiss the stone.

sumbulewa سُبُلِيوَا, 1. slipping out, slipping down; 2. drawing out (?), F 65 note.

sumuni سُمُنِ, Ar. ثَمُنٌ, fractional numeral, one-eighth.

sumya سُمَيَا, spider's web.

sun سُنْ, used as 3rd pers. pron. pl. as prefix to past or aorist tense; *sun taffi* they went.

sunā سُونَا, pl. *sunūā* سُونُوَا and *sunanaki* سُونَاكِي, name.

ransuna رَنْسُونَا, day on which a child receives its name. Used in buying and selling, e.g. *ba shi suna*, lit. give it a name, i.e. name its price.

ḡuna صُنَا, musty smell as of grain long kept; cf. *sunsuna*.

sun(n)a, law; cf. *sunna*.

*sunā** سُنَا, married; A 25 *mata da ke suna ta ber taffia* a woman that is married gives up going (to three places).

sunadari, solder; cf. *sinaderi*.

sunanche, to cause to choke; cf. *sumanche*.

*sunche** سُنْشِيْ or *sinche** سِنْشِيْ = *kunche* to untie, to loosen; *ya sinche rakuminsa* he ungirded his camel.

*sunena** سُنَيْنَا, the edible fruit of the *giginia* (?).

sunguma سُنْغُمْرَا, to lift up a heavy weight with both hands.

*sunke** سُنْكَفِيْ, to wrap or veil; pass. F 91 *asa maka dan lika-*

fani kuma asunke a shroud is placed for thee, thou art wrapped therein.

*sunkuru** سُنْكَوْرُ, a warrior without a load, i.e. carrying only arms.

sunkuya, see seq.

sunkwia, *sunkuya* سُنْكَوِيَا, 1. to bow down, to stoop; fig. 2. to work uselessly, e.g. to till and reap no harvest; C 4 *kowa yi aiki ba sani ya sunkwia* whoever works without knowledge works uselessly.

*sunna** سُنْنَا, Ar. سُنَّةٌ, law; C 42 *en sun bi sunna wanda yaiwo (ya iwo) addunia* if they follow the law of him who made the world.

sunsuna or *sonsona* سُنْسُنْ, to smell, esp. to smell a sweet scent, also to hold anything up to test whether it has any smell; cf. *ḡuna*, musty smell.

*supa** سُبَا, form, likeness; *supasu daia* they are alike, *supansa = kamansa* his likeness.

*sura** سُوْرَا, pl. *surori* سُوْرُوْرِي, Ar. سُورَةٌ, chapter, e.g. of the Koran.

surdi سُوْرْدِي (cf. (?) Ar. سَرْدٌ, to sew together), pl. *suradi* سُوْرَادِي,

سُرَادِي and *surduna* سُوْرُوْنَا, pack-saddle, saddle, e.g. *suradi kua na zinariya ga kowa* there shall be golden saddles for everyone.

sure سُوْرِي, a soup like *yakua*, q.v.

surfafe 'سُرِبِي', an epithet applied to rice when husked and cleaned; cf. *shinkaf*(f)a.

surfe 'سُرِبِي', the husk of grain; cf. prec. and *surife*.

suri 'سُورِي', pl. *sura* 'سُورَا', ant-hill = *gidan gara*.

surife 'سُرِبِي' or *surufa* 'سُرِب', to clean from husks by beating in a mortar; cf. *surfe*.

surka, chain; cf. *sarka*.

surki 'سُرِكِي' or *sariki* 'سُرِكِي', father-in-law; cf. *sarakua* mother-in-law.

surkia 'سُرِكِيَا', bowstring; cf. (?) *sarka*.

surufa, see *surife*.

suruki 'سُرِكِي', a sort of porridge made with guinea-corn and rice.

surukumi, a leather bag; cf. *sulkumi*.

surya 'سُورِيَا', to parch, to burn (?) = *soiya*, q.v.; a passive form occurs in D 67 *kishirua che akansurya halshi hal makurua* thirst shall burn the tongue down to the throat.

susa 'سُوس', to scratch, e.g. to rub an itching place.

susuka threshing; cf. *sis(s)ika*.

*sususi** 'سُوسُوسِي', insects; F 109 *da sususi deffi su ka bungulawa* and the insects will pour forth their poison.

sutura, 1. to cover; 2. pomp; cf. *sit(t)ira*.

*suwa** 'سُوَا', Ar. 'سُوء', evil desire, evil intention, F 10.

suwa 'سُوَا', an internal swelling or disease.

suwa, to make merry; cf. *shewa*.

suya, to parch; cf. *soiya*.

swane, to steal; cf. *suane*.

The letter ت is used by the Hausas to represent the sound of the English *t*. In the case of words either borrowed or adapted from the Arabic, the Arabic letter ط is frequently represented in Hausa by ت, e.g. *tudu* 'تُدُو', Ar. 'طُوذ'; in a few words the Arabic letter is retained in Hausa, e.g. *tarfa* 'طَرَف'. As a general rule ط is used by the Hausas to express the sound of the English *ts*. The letter ظ is rarely used except in words derived from Arabic, e.g. *tsarafi* 'ظَرَب'; its pronunciation is the same as ط. The Arabic ث is sometimes changed by the Hausas into ت, e.g. *talata* 'تَلَاتَا', Ar. 'ثَلَاث'. The Hausa letters ط *ts* and ث *ch* are often interchanged, e.g. *tsar(i)ki* 'طَرِكِي' and *char(i)ki* 'ثَرِكِي'.

ta 'تَا', feminine pronominal particle, 1. 3rd pers. sing. personal pron. she, it; it is prefixed to the aorist and present tenses

and suffixed to the future auxiliary form, e.g. *ta taffi* she went, *tana taffia* she is going, *zata taffi* she will go; 2. it is used as an objective pronoun and suffixed to verbs and prepositions, e.g. *gata* behold her, *gareta* to her; 3. *-ta* or *-nta* تَئَا is used as an inseparable possessive pronoun for the third person, and is suffixed to masculine or feminine words, provided that the possessor is feminine, e.g. *dokinta* her horse, *giddanta* her house, *iyayenta* her parents; 4. *-ta* or *-nta* is also used as an inseparable possessive pronoun for the first person, and is suffixed to masculine or feminine nouns; in correct Hausa it is only used when the possessor is feminine, thus: my father and my mother, if the speaker were a man, would be *ubana uwana*; if the speaker were a woman they would be *ubata uwata*; for further explanation of this use of *ta* see H. Gr. p. 17; cf. *tawa*, *tata*, *taka*, etc.

ta تَا, related to prec., used as a feminine prefix, 1. to form the adjectives *tagari* (masc. *nagari*) good, *takwarai* (masc. *nakwarai*) proper, correct; 2. to form ordinal from cardinal numerals, e.g. *uku* three, *bokkoi* seven, *taiiku* third, *tabokkoi* seventh. For other uses of *ta* as a prefix,

cf. *ta'ada*, *taberma*, *taderishi*, *takanda*, *takarda*.

*ta'ada** تَعَادَ, Ar. عَادَة, from *ada* custom with *ta* (the fem. form of *na*); like, A 21 *kaka su ke aiki ta'ada mallamai* how men can act like Mallams; cf. *tada*.

*ta'adi** تَعَدِي (cf. Ar. عَدِي, to treat as an enemy), loss, destruction = *berna*; *yin ta'adi* to suffer loss.

*ta'ala** تَعَلَى, Ar. id., exalted, an epithet applied to God, F 2 note.

tab(b)a تَبَّ, 1. to touch, handle; 2. used of snakes, etc., to sting, bite; cf. seq.

tab(b)a تَبَّ, تَبَّا, probably the same word as prec.; 1. to do or have done a thing once or to a slight extent, to touch upon, e.g. *na tabba taffia* I went but a little way; *na tabba chin tuo* I ate but a little; *ka tabba je sokoto* have you ever been to Sokoto? *ka tabba ganinsa* have you ever seen him? *na tabba ganinsa* I saw him once, I have seen him; *ban tabba yin hakka* I never acted thus; 2. to try, e.g. A 2 *zan tabba kokari* I will endeavour to make the attempt; cf. (?) *tabbata*.

*taba** تَبَا, to eat (?), A 35 *wananda ke azumi aboiyi shi kan taba* he who fasts but at the same time eats in secret; or

possibly the reading should be *tāba* تَابَا, smokes.

tāba تَابَا, tobacco; *tukunian taba* pipe; *shan taba* to smoke, lit. to drink tobacco.

*ta'ba** تَعَبَا, Ar. تَعَبٌ, 1. toil, trouble, F 68 n.; 2. = *yin wohalla* to toil, to be in trouble.

*taba'a** تَبَعَا (cf. Ar. طَبَعَ, to stamp), found in the comp. *taba'an takarda* sheet of paper, page of a book.

tabani, beans ground up; cf. *tubani*.

tabaria تَبَارِيَا, pl. *tabare* تَبَارِي (cf.

(?) Ar. تَبَرَّ, to smash), large wooden pestle for pounding up rice, etc. in a *turumi*.

tabbache, see seq.

tabbata or *tabbeta* تَبَّتَا (sometimes pronounced *tabetta*), Ar. تَبَّتْ, 1. to be sure, to be assured, to make sure; *ya tabbeta* = *ya yi babu shakka* or *ya sani kwarai* he had no doubt, he felt sure, *ka tabbeta* are you certain? 2. hence used like English, surely, certainly, e.g. *ya tabbeta nan* he is certainly there; cf. D 24 *kowa ya ki salla ko tabbeta kafiri ne* he who refuses to pray is indeed a heathen; 3. continuance, permanence, e.g. B 106 *ni ban ga tabbeta ba ga mulkinta* I have seen no continuance to its dominion; D 79 *giddan dawama giddun tabbeta* the

house of constant abode, the house in which to remain. In this sense is employed the particip. form *tabbetawa*, e.g. F 62 *muka tabbetawa* we shall continue, F 152, 166, 173, 180. *matabbata**, q. v., enduring, *tabbache* تَبَّتِي, to know certainly. *tabbatachia* تَبَّتِيَا, established, approved, certain; *magana tabbatachia* true words.

tabe تَابِي, to be without, to fail to get; B 67 *roki ubangiji ba ka tabe ba* ask the Lord, thou wilt not fail to get it.

taberma تَبْرَمَا, mat made of reeds or grass; (?) from Ar. بَرَمَ, to twist into a rope, with Hausa prefix as in *taderishi*.

*tabi** تَبِي, a shortened form of *tambaya* to question, D 45 n.

*tabi** تَبِي, found in comp., E 15 *masutabin amana* those who steal earnest money, v. note, ad loc.

*tabia** تَبِيَا, custom.

*tabi'i** تَابِع (E 52) (= Ar. تَابِعِي,

constr. pl. oblique of تَابِعِينَ), *tabi'ina* followers, B 174, E 52 *tabi'i tabi'ina* followers of followers.

tabki تَبْفِ, *tapki* or *tafki* تَبْفِ

(Ar. طَبْفُ, rain over the whole country), fem. gender, flowing water, river, pool.

tab(b)o تَبُو, pl. *tabuna* تَبْنَا (cf. Ar.

طَبَّعَ, soil, dirt), mud, a spot or mark; cf. (?) seq.

tabo تَبُو, scar of a healed wound.

tabo تَابُو, ripe; *dabino ya yi tabo* the date is ripe or soft.

*tabo** تَبُو, to meet with a person, to relieve another of his load, *na taboshi* I took his load; cf. (?) *tab(b)a* and *tareo*.

tabo, a lunatic; cf. *tabu*.

tabri تَبْرِي, pl. تَبْرَا, a castrated goat.

tabsa تَبْسَا, to dye. *tabsa* تَبْسَا, dyeing, *yin tabsa* to dye.

*tabshi**, soft; cf. *tapshi*.

tabu or *tabo* تَبُو, fem. *tabuwa* تَبُوَا, a lunatic.

tachi تَاشِي or *tashi* تَاشِي, 1. to make bright; *ya tachishi* = *ya yi shi da keanu*, to purify water by straining; 2. *da tachi* clear, bright, *sama da tachi* the sky is bright. *tatache* تَتَاشِي, pl.

tatatu تَتَاتُو, made bright.

tachi, to milk; cf. *tasa*.

tada تَادَا, pl. *tadodi* تَادُودِي, custom, habit, matter, subject, thing, e.g. *tadansu ke nan* that is their custom; cf. *ada*, *ta'ada*.

tada تَادَ, تَدَ, 1. to lift up, A 6 *saidai shi tada haba yi jaki berbera* he would merely lift up his chin and bray like an ass; 2. to start or send, *na tada manzo* I sent a messenger.

tadowa تَدُوَا, verbal form D 76

mu taka tadowa we shall rise up; cf. the related form *tashi*.

tadawal allah تَدَوَّلَ آلَاهُ, a mole on the skin, lit. God's ink; cf. *adawa*.

taderishi تَدَرِشِي (cf. (?) Ar. from Pers. دَارِش, black leather, with Hausa prefix), boards or stiff covers for binding books = *bango*.

taderishi تَدَرِشِي, cf. (?) Ar. دَرَس, bluntness of a knife.

tadi, loss; cf. *ta'adi*.

tadi تَادِي or *yin tadi*, to converse.

tadowa, raising up; cf. *tada*.

tafa تَاب or *tafi* تَافِي, to clap the hands; cf. *tafi*.

tafariki تَبْرِكِي, *tafarki* تَبْرِكِي (A 19, 22), *tafarka** تَبْرِكِي

(D 50), *tafrika** تَبْرِك (D 50),

pl. *tafarkoki* تَبْرِكُوكِي, way,

road, path. *tafariki* is often used of the path of religion,

A 71 *itache tafarki da ke bi ita daia* the path for thee to follow is one. *tafariki* is generally used for a smaller or less defined path or track than

hainya, q. v.

tafarnua تَبْرِنُوَا, pl. *tafarnai* تَبْرِنِي, garlic.

tafassa or *tafessa* تَبَسَا, to boil, *rua ya tafassa* the water boiled, pass. id. *atafassashi* it is boiling; A 80 *rama kokulwa kanua tafassa su kai* (= *su ka yi*) lit.

on that day the skulls have made the heads to boil; cf. D 65. Fig. *zuchiata ta tafassa* my heart boils, i.e. it is vexed; cf. *taswa*.

*tafasua** تَبَسُوا, needle; cf. (?) *fas(s)a*.

tafe تَابِي, *tafi* تَابِي or *tabe* تَابِي,
1. to fade away = *kwake*; 2. to be without, to fail to obtain; cf. *tabe*.

taferka, see *tafariki*.

taferko تَعْرُكُو, 1. beginning, e.g. *taferko da takarshe* the first and last of a thing, also = *dunia da lahira* this world and the next; 2. used as an adjective as the feminine of *naferko*, q.v.

tafessa تَبَسَا, a small plant, its leaves when ground up are used as a medicine to rub on the chest, = *raidore*.

tafessa, to boil; cf. *tafassa*.

tafi تَابِي, 1. the hand spread out flat, *tafin hanu* the palm of the hand, *tafin kafa* the sole of the foot; *tafin giwa* (a) a round mat, only used by a king, (b) salt spread out; 2. to clasp the hands together; cf. *tafa*.

tafi, to be without; cf. *tabe*, *tafe*.

taf(f)i تَبِي, to go, to travel; to form the pres. tense the noun *taffia* must be employed with the pronominal forms ending in *na*, e.g. *sunna taffia* they are

going; *taffi* followed by *da* = to take away. *taffi ga rana* lit. go to the sun is the name given to a small brown harmless snake which comes out at daylight. *taf(f)ia* تَبِيَا, pl. *taffia* تَبِيَا, going, journey, travelling; *taffian kwana biru* two days' journey, *yin taffia* = *taffi*. *taf(f)iarwa* تَبِيَاوَا, partic. form of *taffi*, journeying. *taf(f)o* تَبُو or *taho** تَهُو, to come, *taffo kusa* come near; for the pres. tense the form *taffowa* is often used; *sunna taffowa* they are coming here.

tafki, a pool; cf. *tabki*.

*tafo** تَابُو, used in phr. *tafo magamma* to get a splinter in the foot.

taf(f)o, see *taf(f)i*.

tafshi, soft; cf. *tapshi*.

taga تَاغَا (Ar. طَائِفَة, window), a hole to look out at. In Hausaland houses are built without windows, the only opening being the doorway.

tagari تَغَرِي, good, fem. of *nagari*, q.v.

tagia تَغِيَا, fez, cap, usually worn by the Hausas underneath the large straw hat, *malafa*; most of those in the country are imported across the desert from Tripoli.

*tag(g)o** تَغُو, pl. *tag(g)una** تَغُنَا, a kind of shirt = (?) *tug(g)ua*, q.v.

tagomas تَغُومَس, a sword with a double sharp edge.

tagua, a shirt; cf. *tugua*.

tagua تَغُؤَا, pl. *taguai* تَغُؤَى, 1. female camel, she-camel; 2. the constellation of the camel which rises at the beginning of the dry season (Ar. الأَنَافَةُ).

*tagua**, heavy rain; cf. *tugua*.

taguaye, twins; cf. *tuguaye*.

tagula تَغُولَا or *tugula* تَغُولَا, pl. *tagului* تَغُولَى, 1. bracelet, *tagulain hanu*, id.; 2. a girdle made of copper.

*taho**, to come; another form of *taf* (f), C 18, 19, D 87.

tai or *taii*, to make an offer in bargaining for anything; cf. *taya*.

taiesda, to raise up, to send away; cf. *taya*.

*taigal(l)a** تَيْغَلَا, the part of the comb made by bees which is not eaten (?); cf. *galla*.

taiki تَيْك, pl. *taika* تَيْكَا or *taikuna* تَيْكُنَا [cf. Ar. تَيْف IV, to fill a skin bag], large bag made of skin, a bundle; cf. *sulkumi*.

taimako تَيْمَكُو, help, assistance, e.g. A 2 *ka yi taimako gareni* do thou help me, send help unto me. *taimakawa* تَيْمَكَاوَا, help, assistance; F 79 *masowa duk enna maitaimakawa* of all who love thee where is one that can help?

taimama تَيْمَمَر (cf. Ar. يَمَر v), ceremonial ablutions made with

sand; A 54 *wanan da kan rika tainama kam babu huja* the man who performed his ablutions with sand though there was no reason for his doing so (i.e. when water was available).

tainya, *tainye*, *tainyo* and *tainyona* secondary forms of *taya* to help, q.v.

tajawankai تَجَوَتَكَي, light kind of sandals, more highly decorated than *sambazai*, q.v.

*tajini** تَاجِنِي, a large drum such as would be used by a king.

tajiri تَاجِر, Ar. تَاجِر, merchant, trader.

taka, to tread, trample upon, to mount up; cf. (?) *tak(k)i*.

tak(k)a تَك, to measure lengths with the hand; cf. *tak(k)i*.

taka تَك, separable possessive pron. 2nd pers. sing. 'thy,' used when possessor is masc. and object possessed is fem.; cf. *naka* and *taki*.

tak(k)aba تَكَب, to take off garments as a sign of grief, to mourn, to make lamentation.

tak(k)abod(d)o تَكَبُدُو, a white bird with reddish feet, somewhat resembling a dotterel.

takaichi تَكَيْث, hatred, anger; *ina ji takaichi* = *na yi fushi da* I am angry with.

*tak(k)aka** تَكَا, very many, e.g. *mutane takkaka* (?).

tak(k)ake تَكِكِي, fem. *tak(k)aka* تَكَا,

pl. *tak(k)aku* تَكُّو, particip. form from *tak(k)i* beaten, mashed.

takala تَكَلَا, loom. The native looms are very narrow and can only weave a width of 4 in. at a time.

takalmi تَاكَلْمِي, pl. *takalma* تَاكَلْمَا, shoe, sandal, including *kufittai* and *sambazai*.

takama تَكَمَا, to walk proudly, to sway the arms to and fro, D 52, 54, in last passage *takamal* is a connective or constr. form; cf. *maitakama* one who walks proudly.

takanda تَكَنْدَا or *takanta* تَكَنْتَا, sugar-cane; Ar. فَنْدَة (English 'candy') with Hausa prefix *ta* as in seq.

takarda تَكْرَدَا, pl. *takardu* تَكْرَدُو, Kanuri *tagarda* (cf. (?) Ar.

فَرْطَاس, Gk. χάρτης), paper, letter, book, anything with writing on, e.g. F 140 *ajefo har takardun aiku namu* we shall be placed according to the lists of our deeds.

takarikari تَكْرِكْرِي, pl. *takarikarai* تَكْرِكْرِي, bull or ox used for carrying loads.

takarshé last = *karshé*, q.v.

takas تَكَس [cf. Ar. تَخَس and دَخَس, which have been variously interpreted dolphin, sea-cow, hyena and badger, Lat. *taxus*, *taxo* (Augustine), It.

tasso, Germ. *dachs*; cf. Bochart, 'Hierozoicon,' p. 989], badger.

takawa, steps; cf. *taka*.

taki تَك, separable possessive pron. 2nd pers. sing., used when possessor and object possessed are both feminine; cf. *taka* and *naki*.

taki تَاكِي, dung; *yin taki* to manure.

tak(k)i تَك, pl. *takoki* تَكُوكِي, a foot regarded as a measure of length, also applied to the hand; *takin hanu* a span; cf. *tak(k)a*.

tak(k)i تَكِي or *taka* تَاك, to beat down, to tread down with the feet, to mount upon; *maitaki* = one who treads, beats or threshes corn, *maitakin biri*, lit. stepping like a monkey = a horse that walks with its pasterns touching the ground, F 194 *zasu taka* they will mount up, D76. *takarwa* تَاكَارَا, steps; cf. *tak(k)a*, *takitaki*.

taki تَكِي, pl. *takoki* تَكُوكِي, an insect like a locust, with long legs.

takichi, a fee paid for bringing a present; cf. *tukuichi*.

*takitaki** تَكِيْتَكِي, course, tendency = *halli*; C 17 *takitakin dunia* the course of this world.

takobi or *takwobi* تَقُوب, pl. *ta-kuba* تَقُوبَا, sword, cutlass, e.g. C 38 *su ni takuban mumini na*

- shirin fada* they are as swords to the unbelievers, a preparation for fighting.
- takoko* تَكُوْو, an old man with bent back.
- taku* تَك, separable possessive pron. 2nd pers. pl. 'your,' used when the object possessed is feminine; cf. *naku*.
- takuba*, see *takobi*.
- takumkumi** تَكْمُكْمِي, a muzzle for a goat or a donkey.
- tak(k)ura* تَكْرَا, تَكُرَا, to be curled up in a heap, used of a man or snake; to fold the arms; D 15 pass. *anatakura* he is bowed down, D 16 *shina takura* he falls down.
- takurua* a species of palm; cf. *tukurua*.
- takwobi*, see *takobi*.
- takwoshi* تَكْوِشِي or *tarkoshi* تَرْكُوشِي, lameness; *yana taffia takwoshi* he walks on one side of his instep, he goes lame; cf. *gwami*.
- tal(l)a* تَل (cf. Ar. rt تلو iv, to press for payment), to higggle, sell, expose for sale, cry one's wares in the street.
- talaba* تَلَب, to support anything with the hand spread out.
- talafa** تَلَف, Ar. تَلَف, *ya talafa* it is lost or destroyed.
- talafi* تَلَف, to bring up a child or animal the parent of which is dead, to feed.

- tal(l)agi* تَلْغِي, to stir about in the pot while cooking.
- talaka* تَلْكَا, pl. تَلْكَاوا, Kanuri *talaga*, poor, a poor person; *mai-talaka* a poor or humble person.
- talalabia* تَلَلَابِيَا, to slip, to make a slip; *yin talalabia*, id.
- talashi** تَلْشِي (Ar. أُطْلَس, satin, whence Germ. *Atlass*), satin; *ja talashi* red satin.
- talata* تَلَاتَا, Ar. تَلَاتُ, the numeral three; *talata* is frequently used, esp. in counting cowries, for three thousand.
- talataku* تَلْتَلُو, turkey, possibly onomatopoeitic; cf. *agvagwa*.
- talatin* تَلَاتِن, Ar. تَلَاتِن, card. num., thirty.
- talauchi* تَلُوْثِي, تَلُوْث, n. abstr. of *talaka*, poverty, humbleness; C 53 *ya daru talauchi ya fiya masa dukia* he took upon himself poverty, it was better to him than wealth.
- talhatina** تَلْحَتِنَا, pl. *talhatinu* تَلْحَتِنُو, a stone pendant worn by women.
- taliala** تَلِيَا, flour mixed with water; in N. Africa = macaroni.
- talibambam* تَلِبَنْبَم, 1. a small frog, with large belly, and two lines across it; 2. fish with belly like that of this frog.
- talikai** تَلَاكِي, Ar. تَخْلِيْف II, things created, animate and inanimate, F 137.

talili تَلِيلِي, leather case for book.
*talita**, to create; cf. *halita**.

*taltali** تَلْتَلِي, B 72, preparation ;
cf. *tatali*, id.

tam(m)a تَمَّا, 1. the ore of iron;
2. a sword of cheap rough work-
manship; cf. *kazin-tam(m)a* and
matamachi.

tama تَمَّا, pride = *foma*.

tamaha تَمَّهَا (cf. (?) Ar. طَمِعَ, to
covet, Kanuri *tama* = ex-
pectation), hope, expectation,
thought, C 14; *yinamaha* to
think, imagine, hope, expect.

tam(m)alawulo تَمَلُولُو, a sword with
only one cutting edge; cf.
tam(m)a.

*tamani** تَمِين, Ar. ثَمِين, price;
tamaninsa its price is....

tamanin تَمَانِين, Ar. ثَمَانِين, card.
num., eighty.

tamba تَنْبَا, a dark red species of
rice.

tambaba تَنْبَابَا, doubt, uncertainty;
yin tambaba to be in doubt
or uncertainty, *babu tambaba*
there is no doubt, = *kokonto*.

tambaia, to ask; cf. *tambaya*.

tambari تَنْبَارِي (cf. تَنْبُور, used in
Barbary for drum, and which
comes through the Spanish
tambor), a kind of drum, the
bottom of which is pointed,
often carried in front of a
royal procession. *maitambari*
drummer.

tambaya or *tambaia* تَنْبَيَا, 1. ques-

tion, inquiry; F 146 *fa su duka*
tambaya bambam ga kowa and
the questions asked at each
are all different; *yin tambaya*
to ask, A 27 *ta yi tambaya* let
her ask; 2. to ask, to inquire,
D 41; *maitambayawa* one who
asks, F 19; cf. *tabi*, id.

*tamga** تَمَّغَا, a cutlass about three
inches in breadth.

tamgaram تَمَّغَرَم, a glass dish, any
small white vessel; cf. (?) *tan-*
garai.

tanka تَمَّكَ, *tamkar* تَمَّكَر, *tamkan*
تَمَّكَن, *tamkat* تَمَّكَت or *tankat*
تَنكَت, like, *wanan shine tam-*
kat wonchan this is like that;
usually followed by *da* = like
to or like as. *tamkarda su che*
just as they said; cf. *kamada*.

tamka, to converse; cf. *tanka*.

tamka تَمَّكَا, a small kind of pepper.

*tammata** تَمَّت, Ar. id., lit. it is
finished; it is often placed at
the end of compositions, C 55,
G 7.

tamna تَمَّنَا, 1. to chew, e.g.
mutane suna tamna goro the
people chew the kola-nut;
2. *tamna hakkori* to gnash the
teeth; 3. to hurt. *tamnane*
تَمَّنَبِي, fem. *tamnana* تَمَّنَنَا,
pl. *tamnano* تَمَّنَنُو, chewed.

tamraro تَمَّرَارُو or *tauraro* تَوَّرَارُو,
pl. *tamraru* تَمَّرَارُو, *taurarai*
تَمَّرَارِي, and *tamrai* تَمَّرَرِي,
star,

tamu تم, separable possessive pron.

1st pers. pl. 'our,' used when the object possessed is fem.; cf. use of *namu*.

tana تَنَا, pers. pron. 3rd pers. fem. pres. tense; cf. *shina* (masc.).

tana تَنَا, pl. *tanu* تَنُو, a worm which lives in the ground.

tanda تَنَدَا or *tanderu* تَنَدَرُو, pit for cooking bread in, oven, large earthen pot used as an oven.

tandabara, pigeon; cf. *tantabara*.

tandawara تَنَدَوَرَا, a small goat-skin bag used for holding water, etc.; cf. *tandu*.

tanderu, oven; cf. *tanda*.

tandewa تَنَدَبُوَا or *tundewa* تَنَدَبُوَا, to lick the hand.

tandu تَنَدُو, Kanuri id., vessel made of skin; *tandun tozali* small skin bottle for holding antimony.

*tan(n)e** تَنَبِي, to say, speak, *ya tanne = ya che*.

tanfari or *tamfari** تَنَبِير, like, A76 *tanfari kasa che ka kana so kai gini* it is like earth when you desire to build.

*tangana** تَنَغَن, to lean against, *ya tangana ga itache* he leaned against a tree; cf. *dangana*, id.

*tangar(r)a** تَنَغَر, cf. Kanuri *tungur*, to feel trouble, *na tangarra = na ji wohalla*.

tangarai تَنَغَرِي, l. bright as silver;

hence 2. early dawn. *tangarai ke nan* the sky is unclouded.

tangas تَنَغَسْ = *daidai*, e.g. *aboki da ni mu ne tangas* my friend and I, we agree exactly.

tanka تَنَكْ or *tamka* تَمَكْ, 1. to converse. *tankawa* تَنَكُوَا, conversation; 2. to talk much, D 87 *idun ka tanka* if thou talkest much. *tankiya* تَنَكِيَا, much talking.

tanka تَنَكَا, roof, also used of sets of three or four grass reeds bound together, forming the inside binding to a thatched roof, from *tanke* to bind; cf. *kirinia*.

tankade تَنَكَدِي, 1. to winnow, to shake; *yin tankade*, id., v. seq.; 2. to knock down, to overturn.

tankadi تَنَكَدِي, a fan.

tankari تَنَكَرِي, prop, support, e.g. tent-pole; *sariki shi ne tankarin dunia* the king supports the world.

tankat, like; cf. *tamka*.

tankawa, conversation; cf. *tanka*.

tanke تَنَكِي, to bind; cf. *tanka*.

tankerike تَنَكِرِكِي, a large species of wood pigeon called *mallamin daji* from the noise which it makes.

tankiya, much talking; cf. *tanka*.

*tanko** تَنَكُو, a name given to a boy who is the third or fourth child of his mother, the previous children being all girls.

tankosa or *tankwas(s)a* تَنْكَسَا

1. to bend, e.g. *yasana ta gage ba na iya ba en tankosata* my finger is stiff, I cannot bend it; 2. to hinder, e.g. *na tankosa zuchianka* = *na hanna abinda ka ke so* I prevent you from obtaining your wish; 3. to submit, *na tankwassa kaina* I humble myself; cf. *tankwas(s)a* and seq.

tankoshe تَنْكَبْشِي, to be repelled, to rebound, used of a spear thrown back.

tankwas(s)a, to hinder; cf. *tankosa*.

tankwas(s)a تَنْكَسَا, humility, *ma-tankwassa* a humble person.

tantabara تَنْتَبَرَا, *tandabara* تَنْدَبَرَا, pl. *tantabaru* تَنْتَبَرُو or *tandabaru* تَنْدَبَرُو, Fulah *tantabararu*, 1. pigeon; 2. fig. a young girl.

tantam(m)a تَنْتَمَا, doubt, uncertainty.

*tantanua** تَنْتَنُوَا, snail (?); cf. *katamtamwa*.

*tanura** تَنْوَرَا, a small bag for carrying provisions for a journey.

tapki, pool; cf. *tabki*.

tapshi or *tafshi* تَفْشِي or *tabshi**

تَفْشِي, soft, tender, well-cooked, ripe; *tapshi tapshi* kind, soft-hearted, soft, used of cloth; *yin tapshi* to be or to make soft.

tara تَرَا, card. num. nine, A 41;

the corresponding ordinal is m. *natarā*, f. *tatarā* ninth, *sau tara* nine times.

*tara** تَرَا, Sokoto *taro** تَرُو, tribute, but paid only by heathen.

tara تَارَا, to put together, e.g. A 17 *kaddadai ka tara hanuka don tsoron berri* although thou put both thy hands on it for fear of losing it; to gather, collect, assemble; E 23 *su tara gidida* = they share in the abode.

taruwa تَارُوَا, meeting; many related forms are found, e.g.

taras تَارَسَا, to reach to, *tarda* تَرْدَا or *tarasda* تَارَسَدَا, to join, i.e. to come up with or overtake, to meet with; A 38 *ya tarda chiuta* he will contract a disease; *na tardashi* (possibly for *tare da shi*) I came up with him; *tarsa* تَرَسَا is used in D 70 in the sense of to benefit or help. *tarshe*

تَرَشِي, *tarshi* تَرَشِي, to help, D 78, 48 *ka tarshimu ji dadi* help us to feel happy. *taris*

تَارِي, to meet, to go to meet, to interfere with another. *tareo* تَارِيُو or *tario* تَارِيُو, to bring, to take and bring. *tatarā*,

q.v., to pile up, etc. *taru* تَارُو is used as intr. of *tara* to be assembled, gathered together, to be full; cf. *tare*, *taria*, *tari*, *tarare*, *tarua*.

tarabulus تَرْبُلُس, the town of Tripoli.

taraia تَرِيَا, a girdle made of cloth.

tarara تَرَر, to be poured out like wheat through a sieve, or like water. *tarare* تَرِي, to strain out.

tarare تَارِي, fem. *tarara* تَارَرَا,

pl. *tararu* تَارَرُو, gathered, collected, altogether; cf. *tara*.

taras, to reach to; cf. *tara*.

tarasashi, all, altogether; cf. *tasashi*.

tarasda, to overtake; cf. *tara*.

tarda, to meet with; cf. *tara*.

tare تَارِي, together, *tare da ni*

together with me; *mu taffi tare* let us go together; *tare da wanan** lit. together with this, nevertheless (an imitation of the Ar. expression وَمَعَ هَذَا).

tare or *tarie*, to meet or interfere with; cf. *tara*.

*tareo**, to meet with, to take and bring, to relieve another of his load; cf. *tara*.

*tarfa** طَرَب, Ar. طَرَب, to pour out drop by drop, to pour out slowly. *tarfi** طَرِب, a drop of rain, etc., a small piece of anything, cf. Ar. طَرِب.

tari تَارِي, abundance, plenty, as adv. much, plentifully, as v. D57 *akanguda tari* very many shall come together, v. note;

used sometimes with pronouns *tarinku* all of you; cf. *tara*.

taria تَارِيَا, from *tara* to assemble, meeting, *yin taria* to meet; *masutaria* crowd; *masutari** brigands (?).

*tarika** تَرِيَا or تَرِيَا, 1. (cf.

Ar. طَرَفَة, a line or row) a collection of tents or temporary huts or booths; 2. (cf. Ar. طَرِيفَة, mode of acting, habit) to have a certain character, e.g. *ya tarika dedde* he is a dawdler, *ya tarika fadda* he is quarrelsome. *tarikachi** تَرِكْتِي,

دَوَّلَاتِي, dwellings, D 88 *ka kan ber tarikachi dunia* thou wilt leave behind the dwellings of earth.

*tariki** تَرِي (cf. (?) Ar. طَرَف, to foul water by throwing stones into it), small stones or sand mixed with grain.

*tario**, to take and bring; cf. *tareo* and *tara*.

tarioshe تَرِيوشِي, i.q. prec.

tarkoshi, lameness; cf. *takwooshi*.

tarnaki تَرِنَاكِي, a rope used to hobble a horse by tying one front leg to one hind leg.

taro or *taru* تَارُو, pl. *tarori* تَارُورِي, D 71 multitude, company, heap; used adverbially B 158 = together; cf. *tara*.

taro, a tax; cf. *tara*.

*tarsa**, to help, D 70; cf. *tara*.

*tarsasa** تَرَسَسَ, to reproach, despise; cf. *tersa*.

tarsashi, all, altogether; cf. *tasashi*.

tarshé, tarshi, to help; cf. *tara*.

tarsoa تَرَسَوَا, lit. grouping, the constellation Pleiades [in Ar. قُرْبَا].

taru تَارُو, pl. تَارُونَا, net; *suná kama kifi da taru* they are catching fish with a net.

tarú, to assemble; cf. *tara*.

taruku, trap for wild animals made with a rope; cf. *turko*.

taruwa, l. meeting, cf. *tara*; 2*. heaping up, D 87 (?).

tasa تَسَ, separable possessive pron. third pers. sing. 'his,' used when the possessor is masc. and the object possessed is fem.; cf. *tata* and *nasa*.

tasa تَاسَا or *dasa** دَاسَا, pl. *tasoshi* تَاسُوشِي, Ar. طَسَّة, Kanuri id., Nupé id., a cup, bowl, bottle.

tasa تَسَ, *tasi* تَسِي, *tachi* تَاشِي, *tútsa* تَطُّ or *taza* تَزُّ (cf. (?) Ar. تَدِي, *teat*), *na tasi akwia* I milk a goat, *na tasa nono* I milk; to squeeze a lemon, etc.

tasári تَسَارِي, misfortune, loss, *na yi tasari* I have a misfortune; *na yi tasarinsu* I have lost them. *tasari* and *asara* are apparently both forms of the Ar. خَسْرَةٌ, cf. *hasara*.

tasashi تَاسَشِي, *tarsashi* تَرَسَشِي or

*tarasashi** تَرَسَشِي (cf. (?) Ar. طَاس), all, altogether.

tasawa تَاسَاوَا, rising, B 56 *tasawal hantsi* the rising of the sun.

*tasbaha** تَسْبَحَا, Ar. سَبَحَ II, praise, D 26 *kuna tasbaha* offer up praise.

tasbi تَسْبِي, pl. *tasbai* تَسْبِي (cf. Ar. سَبَّحَةٌ, rosary), beads, esp. as used for counting prayers.

tashe, to raise up; see seq.

tashi تَاشِي, l. a rise, rising, *tashi dagga matatu* resurrection; 2. to rise, arise, go forth, to start from a place, e.g. G 1, l. 10 *ya saki tashi* he prepared to start. Other forms are *tada* تَادَ, q.v., to raise up, lift up; *tashe* تَاشِي, to cause to rise, to erect, to wake one up; *tayes* تَآيس, to wake one up, to set up; *tayesda* تَآيسَدَ, to raise up, to send away; *tayesua* تَآيسُوا, rising, resurrection; *taso* تَاسُو, to rise up, to come up.

tashi, bright, etc.; cf. *tachi*.

ta(s)shi, etc., a kind of pepper; cf. *tushi*.

tashinkai تَاشِنَكِي, pride, lit. raising up the head.

tasi, to milk; cf. *tasa*.

taska تَسَكَا, pl. *taskaki* تَسَكَكِي, store-room, treasury, a round mud receptacle for grain, etc., hence meton. treasure. *taskache* تَسَكَكِي, to lay up treasure.

*tasliman** تَسْلِيمٌ, Ar. سلم II, id., saluting, D title, note.

taso, to come up; cf. *tashi*.

tasu تَسُّ, separable possessive pron. third pers. pl. 'their,' used when the object possessed is fem.; cf. *nasu*.

*tasu** تَأْسِي, B 76, like, from Ar. سَوَى, or *ya yi t.* = it is like them.

tasunia تَأْسُونِيَا, pl. *tasunioyi* تَأْسُونِيَوِي, a story told at night, story, tale.

taswa تَسْوَا, boiling; apparently a shortened form of *tafussa*, q.v.

*taswa** تَسْوُ, possibly = *tai* or *tasa* its, F 144 *karamta taswa gashi* its path is as a hair; the better reading is *k. tas wa*; cf. under *wa*.

*tata** تَتَا, separable possessive pron. used both for the first and third persons, i.e. 'my' and 'her,' when the possessor and object possessed are both feminine. *tawa* is however frequently used for the first and *tasu* for the third person; cf. Gr. p. 17, note.

tatache, pl. *tatatu*, bright, intensive form of *tachi*, q.v.

tatak(k)a تَتَكَا, stalks of grass, used for horses' food; cf. (?) seq.

tataka تَتَكْ or *tatake* تَتَكِي, to tread down, trample under foot, also fig. B 40 *kadda mu tatakeshi muna banna* let us not vainly trample it (knowledge) under foot.

*tatali** تَتَلِي, preparation, D 86 *ya yi tatali* he makes preparation; cf. *tatali*, id.

*tatapara** تَتَبَرَا or *kadakara* كَدَاكْرَا, a bat.

tatara تَتَرَا, an intensive form of *tara*, q.v., to squeeze, pile up together, A 28 pass. *atatare* sitting crouching with arms tightly folded, D 61 *rana chan akatanturamu* on that day when we have been gathered together; E 19 *su tatara han-kalinsu zua ga mata* they pay all their attention to women.

tatsa, to milk; cf. *tasa*.

tatsunia تَطُونِيَا, pl. *tatsunia* تَطُونِيِي, star.

*tauhida** تَوْحِيدٌ and *tauhidi* تَوْحِيدِ, Ar. rt وحد II, to profess the unity (of God); A 48 note, F 147.

taura تَوْرَا, a large tree, the fruit of which is an edible nut.

tauraro, star; cf. *tamraro*.

*tauri** تَوْرِي, he-goat.

tauri تَوْرِي, hardness, stubbornness; *da tauri* strong, hard, the opposite to *tapshi*, *taurin zuchia* hardness of heart, *yin tauri* to harden, to become hard.

tauria تَوْرِيَا, a form of *tauri*, barrenness. *matauria* مَاتَوْرِيَا, barren.

*tausa**, to squeeze; cf. *taushe*.

tausai تَوَسَى, also *tausaye* تَوَسِي, pity, compassion; B 59, C 13 *kaito ku wawa kai mau ki tausai nana* alas thou fool, we pity thee here, *yin t.* and *jin t.* to have or feel pity, to be sorry, *abin tausaye* what a pity!

*tausangara** تَوَسَنَغَرَا, ants; A 44 *ajja da ba...tausungara* riches free from...ants; possibly we should read *tausangara* the nibbling of ants, cf. *taushe*.

tausaye, see prec.

taushe تَوَشِي or *tausa* تَوَس, 1. to press, squeeze; 2. to hold off or back, to keep one off. *tausheshe* تَوَشِيْشِي, fem. *tausheshia* تَوَشِيْشِيَا, pl. *taushetu* تَوَشِيْتُو, particip. pass. form, pressed, squeezed. *taushewa* تَوَشِيْمُوَا, pres. particip. form, pressing, squeezing; cf. *tushe* to rub or grind, and *tersawa*.

taushi تَوَشِي, 1. onions cooked in soup; 2*. root of a tree, i.q. *tushi*.

tatau, spider, etc.; cf. *toto*, id.

tauwi, to lessen; cf. *tawaya*.

tawa تَوَا, separable possessive pron. first pers. sing., used when possessor is masc. and object possessed is fem. See Gr. p. 17; cf. *nawa*.

tawas(s)a تَوَسَا, pl. تَوَسِي, a large tree, from the bark of which small ropes are made.

tawaya تَوَايَا or *tauwi* تَوَوِي,

1. to decrease, to lessen, e.g. *rana ta tawaya* the day declines; 2. to press down.

*tawaye**, twins; cf. *tuguaye*.

taya, *taia* تَيَا or *tayi* تَيِي, to bargain, to make an offer in bartering; *yin tayi*, id.

tayu تَيَا, تَيِي, to help, to assist, constr. 1. with direct obj.; 2. with *ma*, e.g. *na taya maka* I help thee; 3. with an inf., e.g. *wane shina tayani chin kifi nan* who will help me to eat this fish? *tainya* تَنِي, *tainye* تَنِيْ, *tainyo* تَنِيُو, to help. *tainyona** تَنِيُونَا, help; cf. *taimako*.

tayas, to set up; cf. *tashi*.

tayesda or *taiesda*, to raise up, to send away; cf. *tashi*.

tayesua, rising, resurrection; cf. *tashi*.

*taza**, to milk; cf. *tasa*.

*tazargadi** تَزَرْغَدِي, a bitter medicine made from herbs used to prevent vomiting.

teddas تَدَدَس, to blow water out of the mouth. *teddaswa* تَدَدَسُوَا, the action of blowing water out of the mouth; cf. *tuda*.

tental, civet; cf. *mag(g)i*.

terga تَرْغَا, pl. *tergai* تَرْغِي (cf. Ar. طَرْف VIII to have weak knees and fall), disease of joints; *ya yi terga*.

ter(r)inia تَرِنِيَا, fatness; *ya yi ter-rinia* he is fat = *ya yi jiki*.

*tersa** تَرَسَ (cf. Ar. طَرَسَ v), to despise; cf. *tarsasa*.

tersawa تَرَسَاوَا, also *tesawa* تَسَاوَا, grinding of wheat, etc.; cf. (?) *tausa*, *tushe*.

tes(s)a تَسَس or *tesa* تَسَس, to say a thing over again, repeat.

tijo تِيَجُو, disease on horses' legs.

*til(l)alabia** تِلَلِيَا, soft, slippery mud.

tilas تِيَلَس, force; *da tilas* by force, perforce, *yin tilas* to use force, to compel. *tilasa* تِيَلَس and *tilasda* تِيَلَسَد, to use force with, to constrain, e.g. *na tilasa mutum* I use force to compel the man.

tilasda, see prec.

*tilli** تِلِّي or *tulli* تُلِّي, Ar.

تَلِّ, id., heap, large store of anything, e.g. *tillin duatsu* heap of stones. *tululu* تُلُولُو, abundance, plenty.

timbuktu تِنْبُكْتُو, Timbuctoo.

timjere تِمَجِرِي or *tumjere* تُمَجِرِي, syphilis = *chiutan birni*.

tindumi تِنْدُمِي, sewing or embroidery at edge of a garment.

tingama تِنْغَام, to beat or grind rice, wheat, etc.

tinia, large bush, etc.; cf. *tumia*.

tinkia تِنْكِيَا, a small female stag.

tinzera تِنَزَرَا, perplexity, fear; *na yi tinzera* = *na ji tsoro* I am afraid.

tir تِر, woe! may God curse you! *tir da wanan* woe to this man!

tirman تِرْمَانِي, a very small black stinging ant similar to *chinaka*, q.v.

tis(s)ain تِسَعِين, Ar. تِسْعِينَ, id., card. num. ninety.

to تُو, well! so! yes! indeed! good! if a native does not quite understand what is said he will frequently reply *to*.

tofi تُوْفِي, to spit, to spew.

tofo تُوْفُو, pl. *tofuna* تُوْفُونَا, leaf, sprout; *yin tofo* to shoot forth as plants, *itaua su yi tofo* the trees sprout, *itache ya tofu* the tree sprouts. *tofu* تُوْفُو = *yin tofo*.

toi or *towi* تُوِي or *toya* تُوِي, to kindle, to burn; F 114.

toka تُوْكََا, pl. *tokuna* تُوْكَونَا, ashes, dust.

tokara تُوْكَرَا, to uphold, to support as a pole supports a tent.

tokochi, a fee for bringing a present; cf. *tukuichi*.

tok(k)os تُوْكُس, card. num. eight; the corresp. ordinal is m. *natokkos*, fem. *tatokkos*; A 69, D 69, G 2 l. 10, 6 l. 13.

*toma** تُوْمَر or *tomo** تُوْمُو, to treat proudly, e.g. *ina tomansa* I speak haughtily to him; cf. *foma*, id.

*tomashi** تومشى, winning favour,
e.g. *ya yi tomashi* all men like
him, he is popular.

tombo تنبو, a scar or scab which
has healed up; cf. *tabo, tubbo*.

tomo, see *toma*.

tona تون, to chew, to masticate =
tsuk(k)e.

tona تونا and *tone* توني, 1. to pull
out, tear out, scrape up, e.g.
roots; hence 2. to lay open,
D 63 *rana chan akuntona lo-
loki asiri* on that day the
secret place shall be laid open;
to take off garments *tone tu-
fafi*; 3. to stir up, e.g. a fire;
na tone kurdi I rake up cow-
ries towards me; fig. *tona*
fadda to pick a quarrel.

toro تورو, pl. *torone* توروني,

Ar. تور, bull, large male of
any animal; *toron giwa* or
simply *toro* bull elephant, so
toron zaki male lion.

toroso تروسو, dung of horses, etc. =
kashi.

*toshi** توش, a bribe.

toto توتو, *tarutau* توتو, Kanuri id.
(in Ar. حزاز), 1. a dry scale, a
lichen, dandruff; 2. spider.

tow(w)i, to lessen; cf. *tawaya*.

towi, to burn; cf. *toi*.

toya توي, i.q. prec.; see *toi*.

tozali توزلي, antimony, used for
rubbing on the eyebrows; *tan-
dun tozali* a small skin bottle
for holding antimony; cf. *kolli*.

tozo توزو, the hump on a bull,
camel, etc.

*tozo** توزو, a turn on the bridge
Alsirat; F 146 *sirati mun ji*
tozo nai bokkoi ne the bridge,
we understand, has seven
turns; cf. F 149.

tsaba طابا or *tsal(l)a** طلا, 1. a
lump, a mass; 2. that which is
pure = that and nothing else,
e.g. *tsaban kurdi* simply cow-
ries, i.e. nothing but cowries;
tsaban hazi beaten out corn;
cf. *tsalka*.

tsabore طبوري or *zabore* زبوري,
reeds such as are used for
making doors, etc.; cf (?) *sa-
bara*.

tsachi ظشي or *zache* زشي, to think,
suppose, meditate; B 14 *guba*
shina tsachi alkaki che he would
think that a poisonous plant
was wheat, B 120. *maizache*
ميظشي, meditating; cf. *tsetto*.

tsada طادا, dearness, expensive-
ness; *da tsada* dear, expensive,
yin tsada to be costly.

tsada طادا, 1. a bush with red
edible fruit bitter as a lemon,
wild apricot (?); 2. a small
bird like the *bairwan allah*,
which frequents the guinea-
corn plantations.

tsada طادا or *ruan tsada* the river
Benue which joins the R. Niger
at Lokoja. (Lake) Chad from
the neighbourhood of which

the Tsada flows is a corruption of this word.

tsad(d)eri طَدْرِي, bad, rotten, used of corn that has been kept too long and has become useless.

tsafi طَافِي, pl. *tsafuna* طَفُنَا or *tsafafuka* طَفَبُكَا, idol; A 59 *wanan da ke tsafi shina raba hankula* the man who gave half his attention to the worship of idols.

tsaga طَغ or *chage* تَغِي, 1. to tear, split, rend; 2. طَعَا, a split.

tsagi طَغِي, a half torn off.

tsatsaga طَطَّغ, 1. to tear to pieces; 2. to beat down loose earth, etc.; cf. *chachagi*. *tsa-tsajawa* طَطَّغُوا, a ramrod.

tsaga طَاغ, 1. to drop down, to let drop; 2. to bleed. *tsagia* طَاغِيَا, sickness accompanied by bleeding; cf. *matsatsaka* a leech.

tsagagi طَغَغِي, a water goose with white breast.

tsag(g)e طَغِي, a fish, 18 in. long, with large, sharp teeth.

tsagi, a half torn off; cf. *tsaga*.

tsagia, a sickness; cf. *tsaga*.

tsahiri ظَاهِرِي, Ar. ظَاهِرٌ, adv. or adj. clear, manifest; A 62 *saiko da huja wanda ke ga tsahiri* unless there be some obvious excuse; A 65 *loto ya shude tsahiri* the time is obviously past.

tsaida, to lift up; cf. *tsayi*.

tsaido طَيْدُو, a thorny herb with small leaves, eaten by camels.

tsaijewa طَيْجَمُوا, *tsaitsewa* طَيْطَمُوا or *chechewa* تَيْشَمُوا, a swallow.

tsaiko طَيْكُو, 1. a roof; 2. to dawdle; *yin tsaiko*, id.

tsainya طَنْيَا or *tsania* طَنْيَا, a small species of cricket.

tsaishe, to cause to stand still; cf. *tsayi*.

tsaitse, intens. form from *tsayi*, q.v., to prevent, to anticipate one.

tsaitsewa, a swallow; cf. *tsaijewa*.

tsaiwa طَيَّوَا, plaited grass, palm leaves, straw, fibre, from which are made 1. ropes, 2. a medicine, 3. a curtain to hang down in front of a doorway.

tsaiye طَيْبِي, to hide.

tsaiyi, to stand, etc.; cf. *tsayi*.

tsaka طَكَا, a very small venomous lizard; if swallowed in water it kills a man.

tsak(k)a طَك or طَكَا, cf. Fulah *jakka*, midst, middle, *tsakan rana* south, noon; between, within, A 23 *anche su kintsa tsakka giddansu* it has been said that men should gather within the house. *tsak(k)ia* طَكِيَا, 1. the midst, centre; 2. a woman's girdle made of beads = *kwot(t)ana*. *tsak(k)ani* or *zakani** طَكَانِي, between, betwixt; from this, in the sense

of separating, comes *tsakankani*
طَكَنَّانِي, differences.

tsak(k)ani, *tsakankani*, see prec.

tsakara طَكَرَ or *tsakura* طَكَرَ, to pinch, then to take a pinch of, i.e. a very little of = *guzura*.

tsak(k)i طَكِي, husks from wheat or guinea-corn.

tsaki طَكِي, to refuse contemptuously with a noise made with the lips.

tsuk(k)ia, midst, the centre, a woman's girdle; cf. *tsak(k)a*.

tsako طَاكُو, *tsiako* طِيَاكُو or *chiako** ثِيَاكُو, *dantsako* or *danchiako** a chicken, *yantsako* pl. chicken.

tsakua طَكُوَا, little stones, gravel.

tsakura, to pinch; cf. *tsakara*.

tsal(l)ache, to jump, to run away; cf. *tsal(l)i*.

tsal(l)eta طَلَبْتَا, a small money-bag made of skin or cloth.

tsali طَلِي (cf. Ar. صَلِي, to roast), to scald with hot water, e.g. the hand.

tsal(l)i طَلِي or *tsul(l)i* طَلِي, to jump, to dance, *yin tsalli*, id.

tsal(l)ache طَلَبْتِي or *sallachi**

سَلَبْتِي, to jump, to run away.

tsalimchi, see seq.

tsalimi ظَالِمِي or *tsalumi* ظَالِمِي (cf.

Ar. ظَلَمَ, to oppress, ظَلِمَ, to

be wronged, ظَلَمَ, fraud, ظَالِمِ,

unjust), avarice, deceitfulness, grasping disposition; *tsalumchi* ظَالِمِي, *tsalimchi* ظَالِمِي, A 50; *tsalimshi** ظَالِمِي, F 13, or *tsalimchi* ظَالِمِي, deceit; *maitsalumchi* a deceitful or grasping person; *yin tsalumchi* to be avaricious or importunate, or to treat deceitfully; *da tsalimchi* deceitfully, A 50 *sarki da ke kwache da tsalimchi duka* the king who seized everything by deceit. *tsulama* ظَلَامَ, B 109 note, injustice, *tsulumi* D 80 (!), unjust; cf. (!) *zulumi* doubt. The form *tsalimi* is perhaps more frequently used as an adjective, and *tsalumi* as a noun.

*tsalimshi**, see prec.

tsalka طَلَكَا or *tsatsalka* طَطَلَكَا, purification; adj. pure, unmixed; also of ceremonial purification, washed; cf. *tsarki*, *tsaba*.

tsalumchi, see seq.

tsalumi, deceitfulness; cf. *tsalimi*.

tsami طَامِي, sourness, acidity; *da tsami* sour, *shina da tsami* it is bitter, e.g. of a lemon. *tsamia* طَامِيَا, acidity, sourness, *da tsamia* = sour; the acid pulp of tamarind used as yeast, leaven; cf. seq.

tsamia طَامِيَا, l. tamarind tree; its fruit is sometimes cooked

- in *fura*; 2. a sort of silkworm, cf. *riga tsamia* a cloak worked with silk from this silkworm.
- tsamki* طمكى or *tsumki* طمكى, to pinch, squeeze, to strike a blow.
- tsana** طانا, طانى, the skin of a snake = *saba*.
- tsan(n)an** ظنن, Ar. ظن, doubt, concealment; C 19 *ta kori tsannan nan* she drives away all that uncertainty (as to who she is).
- tsanani* طنانى, torment, violence, *abin tsanani*, id.; *maitsanani* a violent person. *tsananta* طننت, to torment, molest, trouble; *jin tsananta* to suffer torment; cf. *tsane*.
- tsundaure** طندورى, very hard earth or soil.
- tsane* طنى, *tsani* طنى, *tsanache* طنى, to oppress, torment; cf. *tsanani*.
- tsani** طنى, ladder, staircase.
- tsania*, the name of an insect; cf. *tsainya*.
- tsantsani* طنطنى, to loathe, to despise, to reject as something bad, *yin tsantsani*, id.; cf. seq. *tsantsanta* طنطنتا, 1. terror; 2. to fear.
- tsapta* طبتا, 1. the washing of the hair, garments, etc., cleanliness; 2. to clean, wash thoroughly.

- tsaru* طر, *tsari* طرى, *tsare* طرى, *tsaro* طرو, *tsarima** طريمى, 1. to guard, protect, guard against, watch, ward off; C 41 *ka tsara uwana(n)* do Thou guard my mother. Pass. *akatsara*, C 42 *akatsara da aluma muhammada* guard the people of Mohammed; C 41 *akatsar da dengimu* guard my relations; C 40 *ka tsarima dan bawanka* Thou guardest the son of Thy slave; 2. used as a noun, *ka nema tsari* = take heed against.
- tsara* طرا, friend, companion of same age; cf. *tsaranchi*.
- tsaraba** طرابا (cf. Ar. طرب IV, to give), a present.
- tsarafi** ظرف (Ar. ظرف, to be skilled or versed in), skill, opportunity; *ina da tsarafi = na samu dama* I have opportunity to, am ready to, know how to do anything.
- tsaranchi* طرنث, 1. companionship, usually in evil sense; 2. adultery; cf. *tsara*.
- tsarari** طرى, a little, e.g. *yin kwana tsarari* to sleep a little, *mutane sun zo tsarari* the men came a few at a time.
- tsarchi** and *tsarshi*, abstr. n. fr. *tsoro*, q.v., to fear, B 139, E 12.
- tsare* طارى, an animal, probably a species of iguana; it frequents water.

tsari طَرِي, Ar. صَرِيح, pure, clear; clean, used of wheat.

*tsari** طَرِي, to stay at home = *tabbeta a gida*, A 23.

tsari, to guard; cf. *tsara*.

tsarikake, see seq.

tsariki طَرِكِي and *tsarki* طَرِكِي

(cf. *tsalka*), adj. holy, pure; then as noun *tsarki* = purity, esp. ceremonial purity, e.g.

A 56, 68. *tsar(i)kaka* طَرِكَاك

or *tsarkaka* طَرِكَاك or *tsarkaki*

طَرِكَاكِي, 1. to purify, sanctify,

e.g. E 30 *nu tsarkaka zushi-*

anmu (zuchiamu) we cleanse

our hearts; hence 2. D 81*

(*charkaka*) to worship, reverence.

tsar(i)kake طَرِكَاكِي,

fem. *tsarkakia* طَرِكَاكِيَا, pl.

tsarkaku طَرِكَاكُو, sanctified,

holy. These forms are usually

pronounced as though they

began with ط *ts*, but written

with initial ٢ *ch*; cf. *charkaka*.

Possibly they are connected

with the Ar. صَرِيح; cf. *tsari*.

tsarima, to guard; cf. *tsari*.

tsarki, holy; cf. *tsariki*.

tsarkia طَرَفِيَا (cf. Ar. rt طرف), 1. a

string of a musical instrument;

2. bowstring; cf. *azirka*.

tsaro, to watch, guard; cf. *tsari*.

*tsarsha** طَرَشِي, apparently a form

of *tsara* to guard or of *tsira*

to save; C 1 *domin ka tsar-*

shani ga zamba dunia that

Thou wouldst save me from
the evil of the world.

*tsarshi** to fear; cf. *tsoro*, id.

tsaso طَاسُو (cf. (?) Ar. طَيْر), loins;
cf. (?) *tsotso*.

tsatsa طَطَا, dross; *yin tsatsa* = 1. to
have dross mixed with it; 2. to
rust.

tsatsafa طَطَايَا, 1. a *massa* or cake
made of oil, honey, and rice or
wheat flour; 2. light rain.

tsatsaga, 1. to tear to pieces; 2. to
beat down, as of loose earth;
cf. *tsaga*.

tsatsagawa, a ramrod; cf. *tsaga*.

*tsatsagi** طَطَاغِي, the name of a
small tree.

tsauni طَوْنِي, a mountain or hill
larger than *tudu*.

*tsauri** طَوْرِي, strong; apparently
another form of *tauri*.

tsauria طَوْرِيَا, white specks in the
eyes of a blind man; cf. *hakia*.

*tsaushi** طَوْشِي, to cleave to (?);
D 31 pass. *anatsaushi* cleave
to it, lit. let it be cleaved to;
cf. *taushe*.

tsawa, length; cf. *tsayi*.

tsawa طَاوَا, roar of thunder, thun-
der; B 139 *ku tsarshi wolkia*
tsawa you fear the lightning
and the roar of the thunder.

tsawa طَاوَا, to roar, cry loudly,
used of dogs F 184; also, to
rebuke, scold, drive away, order
to go; *yin tsawa*, id. *tsawu-*

tawa طَاوَاتَا, F 186, used of

fire, to roar; F 188, used of men, to cry out.

tsawanta, length; see *tsayi*.

tsawarwara طَوْرَوْرَا, a large bush cat or small leopard.

tsawo, *tsawoita*, see *tsayi*.

tsaya, to stand; cf. *tsayi*.

tsayesda, to detain; cf. *tsayi*.

tsayi or *tsaiyi* طَيّی or *tsai* طَيّی,

length; *da tsaiyi* having length, long. *tsawa* طَوَا (*chawa** تَوَا, F 120), *tsawo* طَوُو, length,

depth, height, tallness, length of time; *tsawan zama* long continuance, B 49. *tsawoita*

طَوُوَيَا, it continued long, F 120.

da tsawo = *da tsaiyi*. *tsawo*

طَوُو, to prolong. *tsawanta*

طَوُوَيَا, length, continuance.

tsayi طَيّی, *tsaya* طَيّی or *tsai* طَيّی,

1. to stand, stand up; *na tsaya daidai*, I stand upright; 2. to stop, to come to an end, e.g. *ya tsaya* it is finished; 3. to fall in with, meet with; *ya tsaya da biri* he fell in with a monkey; used with *ga*, *ni na tsaya ga litafi nan* I lit upon this book. *tsaida* طَيّيد, to lift up, to detain; F 92 *atsaida saffu* a line (of men) is made to stand up, i.e. is formed, F 188 *malaiku su tsaida zuga-zuganta* the angels will lift up the bellows. *tsaitse* طَيّيطَيّی, to go in front of, to anticipate; *na tsaitseshi* I got before him.

tsaishé طَيّيشِي, to make or cause to stand still, to stop.

tsayesda طَيّيسَد, to detain by force.

*tse**, fem. substantive verb = *che*, C 19.

tsefe طَيّيفِي, to pull grains one by one from a stalk, to pull out a hair.

tsegia طَيّغِيَا, 1. hair of the tail of a horse, elephant, etc.; 2. neck-band made of such hair.

tsek(k)i طَيّكِي, rough flour from wheat, guinea-corn, etc.; *da tsekki* = roughly (ground); cf. *tsok(k)ua*.

tseko طَيّكُو, a room built of mud and thatched with reeds.

tsereria طَيّيرِيَا, a red, edible bean.

tseri طَيّيرِ, Ar. طَيّير, a foot or horse race. *طَيّيرِي*, to outrun.

tsertua طَيّيرْتُوَا, to spit out water from the mouth; cf. *teddas*.

*tsetarewa** طَيّيتَرِنُوَا = *ketarewa* (?), crossing; cf. F 215 note.

tset(t)o, *tsat(t)o* or *zet(t)o** طَيّتُو, طَيّت, 1. doubt, uncertain thought; 2. to think, to suppose; B 103 *kana tsetto fadawa* thou thinkest that it will set; cf. *tsachi*.

*tsewa** طَيّوَا, likeness, like, e.g. *wanan tsewa da wanan* this is like that.

tsia طَيّيا (cf. (?) Ar. طَيّوِي, to

suffer hunger), poverty, lack of goods. *maitsia* مَيْطِيَا, a poor person.

tsiako, see *tsako*.

tsiayi طِيَّي, to scatter, pour out.

*tsibara**, to roll up; cf. *chibara*.

tsibi طِيبِي or *subi* سُبِي, a large collection of anything, much.

tsik(k)a طِكْ, طِكَا, a form of *chikka* to fill, to fulfil, e.g. C 22 *en ta yi alkauli da kai fa ba tan tsikashi ba* if she make an agreement with thee, she will not fulfil it.

tsiko طِيكُو, pl. *tsikuna* طِيكُنَا, pin, spike for making holes in skin, etc.; i. q. *siko*, q.v.

tsina طِين, *tsinche* طِنْشِي, *tsunche* طُنْشِي and *tsinta* طِنْتَا, to pick up, to pick out pieces of dirt from cotton, etc. *tsintua* طِنْتُوَا or *sintua** سِنْتُوَا, picking up; *yin tsintuan chiawa* to weed; cf. *tsini*. *tsintsiya* طِنْتِيسِيَا, brush; cf. (?) *zuntsia*.

tsinche, see prec.

tsini طِينِي or *zini* زِينِي, sharp, pointed; *da tsini*, id.; cf. *tsina*.

tsinkaia طِنْكِيَا, to see from afar, as in war.

tsinki طِنْكِي or *zinke* زِنْكِي, pl. *tsinkai* طِنْكِي or *zinka* زِنْكَا, 1. a small piece of chaff; 2. an iron nail or spike; cf. *tsiko*.

tsinki طِنْكِي, *tsunke* طُنْكِي, *tsinko*

طِنْكُو, to pluck, e.g. fruit from a tree.

tsinko, see prec.

tsinta, see *tsina*.

tsintsiya, broom, brush; cf. *tsina*.

tsintua, see *tsina*.

tsira طِير or *tsiro* طِيرُو or *tsoro**

طُورُو, to spring up out of the ground, used of seeds, etc.; A 77 *ya ke tsira* it grows up.

tsira طِيرَا, deliverance, salvation, e.g. F 52 *muna yi muna addua amusami tsira* we offer prayers, may we obtain salvation. *tsira* طِير, 1. to be saved; E 5 *ba shi tsira* he shall not be saved; 2. B 18 *ya tsira* he saves; a degraded form *sar* occurs F 125 n. *ba ni iko sar da kowa* I have no power to save anyone; *tsiraro* deliverance; cf. under *chiraro* safety, deliverance. [All the above forms are usually pronounced as though they began with *ts*, but spelt as though they began with *ʃ ch*; see under *chira*.]

tsirara طِرَارَا, naked; A 81 *kowa tsirara za yi tashi* everyone shall rise naked; cf. *chirara*, id.

tsiraro, deliverance; see *chiraro*.

tsire طِيرِي, to run away; B 25 *shi do guda guda ta tsire mai* let him try to take one, the other flees away from him; pass. *atsira*, B 143 *ka dai atsira*

tun ba akoma ba flee thou then
until there be no return.

*tsirka** طرك = *dirka*, cf. Ar. طَرْف, to beat; F 187 *sunā tsirkar jama'a alkafirawa* they shall beat all the heathen.

tsiwa طَيِّوَا or *tsewa* طَبَّوَا, insolent, impertinent, *maitsiwa*, pl. *ma-sutsiwa*, id.; *na yi tsewa* = *na yi fushi* I was angry, enraged.

*tso** طُو = zo, D 88 *ba ka tso da su ba* thou wilt not bring them with thee; cf. *tsua*.

tsufa طُوب and *tsufe* طُوبِي (cf. (?)

Ar. صَبَا IV, to be exhausted, to become effete), to grow old; B 91 *dunia ta tsofe komi ya tsofa...* the world grows old; whatever grows old.... *tsufa*

طُوبَا (طُوبَا, C 7), 1. old age; 2. to grow old; C 7 *dada mun tsufa* wait till we grow old, *yin tsufa* to grow old. *tsofo*

طُوبُو, fem. *tsofua* طُوبُوَا, pl. *tsofi* طُوبِي or *tsofofi* طُوبُوبِي, old; A 14 *dunia nan tsofua che* this world is old, E 36.

*tsohor** طَهْر, the call to prayer about 3 p.m. = *azuhur*, q.v.

tsokachi طُوكِشِي, often written طُوكِشِي *chokachi*, but always pronounced *tsokachi* 1. to look at attentively, to consider; 2. attentive gaze; A 77 *ya yi tsokachi da achi akass da ya ke tsira* let him consider how the grain that is in the ground

grows up. *matsokachi* مَطُوكِشِ or *masokachi* مَسُوكِشِ, looking-glass.

tsokana طُوكِن, to stir up strife, e.g. *na tsokana yaki* I provoke to battle.

tsok(k)ua طُوكُوَا, very small stones; cf. *tsek(k)i*.

*tsololo** طُلُولُو, very tall, applied to men, trees, etc.

tsoma or *zoma** طُوم, طُومِي, to dip, immerse.

tsorata, to frighten; cf. *tsoro*.

*tsorchi**, to fear; see seq.

tsoro طُورُو, Ar. ذُورُ, 1. fear, terror; 2. to fear; *jin tsoro*, id., *bada tsoro* to cause fear, to frighten; cf. B 84, 161, C 26, F 22; other less correct forms are *choro** تُورُو, D 8 *ku ji choro*; *zoro** ذُورُو, D 43; also the following secondary forms: *tsorchi** طُورُنِي, C 24;

*tsorshi** طُرشِ, F 6, 9, 23; *tsarshi**

*chi** طُرشِ, B 139; *tsarshi**

طُرشِ, E 12; cf. F 6 note. Causal *tsorata* طُورَت, to frighten.

*tsoro** طُورُو, to spring up, used of seeds, plants, etc. = *tsira*, q.v.

tsoro طُورُو, pl. *tsorayi* طُورُوبِي,

1. the comb of a cock; 2. a small entrance porch opening into a larger one; cf. (?) *zauré*; 3. storey, i.e. room above room.

*tsorshi**, to fear; cf. *tsoro*.

tsosa طَوَسَ and *tsotsa* طَوَطَ, to suck, to absorb as cloth does water, to kiss; probably the same root as *seq*.

tsotse طَوِطِي and *tsotsi* طَوِطِي, to wither, dry up as water; hence to destroy; C 5 *ya tsotsi kai nasa* he destroys himself.

tsotso طَوُوُو, backbone; cf. (?) *tsaso*.

*tsua** طَوَا, to come; i.q. *zua*, q.v.

tsub(b)u طَبُو, طَبُّ (Ar. طَبُّ, medicine, magic, incantation), to write charms; *maitsubbu* a writer of charms.

tsufa, to grow old; cf. *tsfo*.

tsuguna طَغُنْ or *tsugun* طَغُنْ (C 12), to stoop, to incline the head, to squat down on the ground.

*tsuke** طُوَكِي (cf. Ar. طَوْفٌ, anything that surrounds another thing, a rope for ascending a palm-tree), to bind fast.

tsuk(k)e طَكِي, to chew, masticate.

tsuk(k)u طَكُو, gnashing; *tsuk(k)un hakkora* gnashing of teeth.

tsula طُولَا, a small monkey with reddish skin; probably derived from *tsul(l)i* to jump; cf. similar derivation of *biri*.

tsulama, B 109 *ta dan tsulama* it is the child of wrong; cf. *tsalimi*.

tsul(l)i, to jump, dance; cf. *tsal(l)i*.

tsulumi, unjust; cf. *tsalimi*.

tsuma طُومَا, pl. *tsumoki* طُومُوكِي, gusset.

*tsuma**, pl. *tsumoki**, rags; cf. *sum(m)a*.

*tsumanjia** طُمنَجِيَا, a branch of a tree.

tsumi طُومِي or *tsume* طُومِي, to preserve fruit in syrup with honey or water so as to form a medicine to be kept for use.

tsunche, to pick up; cf. *tsinta*.

tsunjia طُمنَجِيَا, a large hole or pit for storing corn.

tsunke, to pluck off; cf. *tsinki*.

tsuntsua طُنُنُوتُوا or *zunzua** ذُنُذُوا, pl. *tsuntsaye* طُنُنُطِي, a bird.

tsurfa طُرْفَا, work, profession; cf. (?) *tsarafi*.

tsururi طُورُورِي (cf. (?) Ar. طَرَّ, to carry off), to search diligently for, toil for; B 157 *tsururin da ya fi ga mailura* search diligently for that which excels in the eyes of the diligent man.

tsutsa طُوطَا, a small moth which bites men; it eats ants; its caterpillar is brown; cf. (?) *chocha*.

tsuwa طُوَا, grunting as a pig, barking; *yin tsuwa* to cry out. D 16 *shina tsuwa* he cries out,

tuba تُوَبٌ, Ar. تَابٌ, to repent, A 49, 50, 52, 53, B 39, D 21; pass. *atuba* let repentance be made = repent! e.g. D 10 *atuba hakika aboki* my friend, repent truly. *tuba* تُوَبَا, repentance;

A 53 *kam babu tuba ku gashiri da kafiri* if there be no repentance you will keep company with the heathen, *yin tuba* to repent, pass. D 11, 19, 20. *maıtuba* مَيْتُوبَا, pl. *masutuba* one who repents, D 12, 18.

tubali تُوْبَلِي, a ball or brick made of mud *yimbu*; *yin tubali* to make bricks.

tubani تُوْبِنِي, beans ground up and cooked in water.

tubbas تُبْس (cf. (?) Ar. rt ثَبَّت), surely, certainly = *hakika*.

tubbo تُبُو (cf. (?) Ar. تَبَّ, to cut away, amputate), a healed up scar on the skin; cf. *tabo*, *tombo*.

tube تُوْبِي, to take off, used of garments, etc.

tubka تُبْك, also *tufka* and *tupka* تُبْك (cf. Ar. طَبَف II), to plait, twist, braid, e.g. *muna tubka igia* we are making rope.

tuda تُوْد or *tude* تُوْدِي, to run over, e.g. *rua nan yana tuda* this water is running over.

tudas تُوْدُس, to pour over, to spill; cf. *teddas*.

tudas, see prec.

tudu تُوْدُو, pl. *tudodi* تُوْدُوْدِي, Ar. طُوْد, mountain, mound, hill, any low elevation or rising ground; B 127, 151 *shi wonda ke tudu* he who is on a hill.

tufa تُوْفَا or *tufua* تُوْفُوَا, pl. *tufafi*

تُوْفُوْبِي, *tufofi* تُوْفُوْبِي, cf. Ar. تُوْب, shirt, worn under or instead of the large flowing gown (*riga*), the plural and sometimes the singular is used for clothes generally; C 35 *saito tufa ka bida ga dakin dunia* thou must seek for nothing in this world but clothing.

tufania تُوْفُونِيَا, a mat let down in front of a doorway; cf. *arsa-beri*.

tufka, to plait; cf. *tubka*.

tufua, see *tufa*.

tugua تُوْغُوَا, *tagua* تُوْغُوَا, q.v., pl. *tuguna* تُوْغُنَا, a shirt like a tobe (*riga*) but smaller with short sleeves; cf. (?) *tag(g)o*.

tugua تُوْغُوَا, to shake, e.g. milk in a calabash in order to make butter; cf. seq.

tugua تُوْغُوَا or *tagua* تُوْغُوَا, heavy rain; *ya yi tugua* it is tempestuous.

tuguai تُوْغُوَايِي, *tuguaye* تُوْغُوَايِي or *taguaye* تُوْغُوَايِي, twins.

*tug(g)ula**, copper girdle; cf. *tagula*.

tuji تُوْجِي, a large black bird, a species of raven.

tuka تُوْكََا, to push; *tuka jirigi* to paddle a canoe, *matuki* a paddle used as a rudder, apparently a shortened form of *tunkude*, q.v., *tukawa* pushing, paddling. *tuke** a shortened form of *turike*, q.v.

tuku تُوَكُو or *tukuwa* تُوَكُوَا (cf.

(?) Ar. طَاف, to make arched or vaulted), a tuft of hair on the head, the top to a dish-cover made of plaited grass.

tukuichi تَكِيْث, *takichi* تَكِيْث or

tokochi تَكُوْث, the fee paid to the bearer of a present from a king, etc. It varies from about 5 to 10 p.c. of the value of the present.

tukumya, see *tukunia*.

tukun تُوْكُن, *tukun(n)a* تُوْكُنَا, first, at first, before, since, not as yet, used in affirmative and negative sense, as is also the secondary form *tukunche* تُوْكُنْشِي,

A 73 *ima tukunche dafari abachi fatiha* but thou must not eat before saying the opening chapter of the Koran.

tukunia تُوْكُنِيَا, تُوْكُنِيَا (D 65), pl.

تُوْكُنِيَا (F 94), also pronounced *tukwane* and *tukuane* (at A 84 is found a sing. coll. *tukumya* تُوْكُمِيَا), an earthen or iron pot, pitcher, vessel; *tukunian taba* tobacco pipe, *maitukunia*, pl. *masutukunia*, a potter.

tukurua تُوْكُرُوَا, a palm; the intoxicating drink *bam* is obtained from incisions in its bark, its stalks which somewhat resemble bamboo are esp. used as poles for supporting the thatch of a roof.

tukuwa, a tuft of hair; cf. *tuku*.

*tulawa** تُوَلُوَا (cf. Ar. تَلَا, to read the Koran), saying by rote; *yin tulawa* to say off by heart, e.g. the Koran.

tulli, a heap; cf. *tilli*.

tulu تُوَلُو, pl. *tulina* تُوَلُوْنَا, water-pot, bottle, pitcher, e.g. A 26 *kan ba ka yaro za ya daru tulu nata* if thou hast not a boy to take her pitcher.

tululu, abundance; cf. *tilli*.

tuma تُوْمَا, to jump (= *tsulli*), *tuma da murna* to jump with joy, to start, of horses to be restive; *tuma da gaya* a name given to the *chinaka* ant.

tumaki, sheep; cf. *tumkia*.

tumbar تُوْمْبَار, a naked person.

tumbi تُوْمْبِي, تُوْمْبِي, pl. *tumbuna*

تُوْمْبُنَا, stomach, pouch; *maitumbi* a fat man.

tumbudi تُوْمْبُدِي, to vomit. *tum-*

budu تُوْمْبُدُو, to flow quickly; *rua ya tumbudu* the river flows fast.

tumburkuma تُوْمْبُرْكُمَا, the large intestine.

tumfafia تُوْمْفَفِيَا, pl. *tumfafi* تُوْمْفَفِي, asclepias gigantea (?), a large tree from the bark of which ropes are made; a medicine for women is made from its blossoms; cf. (?) *bambana*.

tumia تُوْمِيَا or *tinia* تُوْنِيَا, 1. a large bush with a milky juice, from which is made poison for arrows; 2. a very deep well.

tumkia تُمكيا or *dumkia* دُمكيا, pl.

tumaki تُماكى, sheep.

tumseri, syphilis; cf. *timjere*.

tumu تُمُو, ears of unripe *giero* or wheat cooked for eating.

tumuku تُموكُو, an edible root somewhat resembling a yam.

tun تُن, also with *da*, *tunda* تُند, as far as, till, e.g. *tunda safe* till morning; while, e.g. *tunda suna yin magana* while they were speaking; from, since, e.g. *tun haifuanka* since your birth.

tuntuni تُنْتُنِي, long ago.

tundade تُندَدِي, *tundadewa* تُندَدِنُوَا, long since.

tunyaushe تُنْيُوشِي, how long? how long since?

tunda with negatives = before, e.g. *tunda ba shi tsira ba* = before it springs up, C 6 *tun bai mutu* even before he is dead.

tuna تُنَا, frequently constr.

with *da* or *ga*, 1. to think of, pay attention to, e.g. B 54 *kana tuna abin da ka ke tsoro* meditate on that of which you are afraid; 2. to remember, to come to remember; *tunane*, fem. *tunana*, pl. *tunanu* particip. forms, what is contrived or thought of, then as n. thought, reflection, meditation, consciousness, remembrance; *tunawa* a form used as pres. tense of *tuna*, also as n. remembrance, recollection.

tunane, see prec.

*tunari** تُنَرِي, leader, chief.

tunawa, see *tuna*.

tunda, see *tun*.

tundade, *tundadewa*, for a long time; cf. *tun*.

tundewa, to lick the hand; cf. *tandewa*.

tunguji تُنْغُجِي or *tunkui* تُنْكَوِي, to gore, toss; cf. (?) *tunkuda*.

tunku تُنْكَو, 1. a covering of skins; 2. a small malodorous panther.

tunkuda تُنْكَد, to push aside, to butt, toss, gore; used with *jirigi* to paddle; cf. *tuka*, *tunkushe*, *zonkutsa*.

tunkui, see *tunguji*.

tunkushe تُنْكَشِي, to close the fist, bend the leg, etc.; cf. *tunkuda*.

tunsure تُنْسُورِي, to be upset, trip, stumble.

*tuntuni**, long ago; cf. *tun*.

tunyaushe, how long? cf. *tun*.

tunzurua تُنْزُرُوَا, panic, fright.

tuo تُوُو, تُو, food, victuals, esp. applied to a mixture made with guinea-corn, oil, etc.; *tuon suna* a meal in connection with the naming of a child, which usually takes place seven days after its birth, *tuon ranan sallam laiya* the meal on the day of the Mohammadan feast corresponding to the passover.

tupka, to plait; cf. *tubka*.

tura تُورَا, a swelling on the back of horses, etc.

tura تُورَا, and *turi* تُورِي, to dye; *yin turi*, id. *turare* تُورِي, fem. *turara* تُورَرَا, pl. *turaru* تُورَرُو, dyed, coloured.

*turaba'i** تُرَابِعِ (Ar. رَبَعٌ v), *yin turaba'i* to squat down with the legs crossed; C 12 note.

turaka تُورَكَا, a seat or the neighbourhood of a king, a royal reception; *yan turaka* female slave; cf. *enturaka*. *turaki* تُورَكِي, an officer at court, usually a son of the king; for order of precedence cf. *fadawa*.

turanchi تُورَنْثِ, what belongs or appertains to Arabs or whites in general, the Arabic language; cf. *ture*.

turare تُرَارِي, frankincense, F 103; obtained from the civet cat; cf. *mag(g)i*.

turare, dyed; cf. *tura*.

*turayi** تُرَايِي, a log of wood such as is fastened to the feet of a slave as a punishment.

*turbaia** تُرْبَايَا (cf. Ar. تَرَبٌ, earth, dust), fine sand.

turde تُرْدِي, butter = *main shanu*.

turdi تُرْدِي, pl. *turdawa* تُرْدَوَا or *turdodi* تُرْدُودِي, a man who charms snakes by singing = *gardi*.

ture تُورِي, 1. to push down, push along; 2. to fall down.

ture تُورِي, cf. *ba-ture* Arab, Euro-

pean, stranger; pl. *turawa* تُورَوَا [(?) fr. Ar. طُورِي, wild, a stranger, rt طور]; cf. *turan-chi*.

*turgude** تُرْغُدِي, to be lame, to suffer from a disease of any of the joints, e.g. of the fingers.

turgunwa تُرْغُنْوَا or *turgunuwa* تُرْغُنُوَا, an edible herb, its leaves are used in making soup.

turi and *yin turi*, to dye; cf. *tura*.

turike تُرِكِي and *tuke* تُوكِي, a place where sheep or goats are closed in for the night, also a post for tying up horses, etc.

turko تُرْكُو, a trap for catching wild animals made by covering up a hole and placing ropes inside = *hako*.

turkudi تُرْكُودِي, a blue shiny cloth of native manufacture, used esp. by women, made up in lengths of eight cubits (*kamu*) and dyed with indigo.

turnuka تُرْنُكَا, conflagration, the smoke which accompanies such.

turuba تُرْبَا, تُرْبِ (B 132), pl. *turubobi* تُرْبُوبِي (cf. Ar. مَطْرَبٌ, narrow or divided path), path, road, way; metaph. B 132 *shi wonda ya bi turuba shaitani* he who follows the path of the evil one.

turubude تُرْبُودِي, to shut up, to fill up a hole, to place in the ground, to bury in the earth as locusts do their eggs.

turumi تَرُمِي, pl. *turami* تَرَامِي, a mortar made by scooping out a log, used for pounding rice, wheat, etc. in; *maiturumi* a maker of mortars.

turumi تَوْرُم, a measure for cloth about 22 yards in length; 8 *kamu* = 1 *zanne*, $4\frac{1}{2}$ *zanne* = 1 *turumi*.

tururua تَرُرُوَا, both sing. and coll., a black stinging ant. They only eat what is alive, and often attack men, driving them out of their houses.

tusa, تُوَسَى, to break wind.

tus(a) تَس or *tuso* تُسُو, to repeat.

tusga تَسْغَا or *tusge* تَسْغِي, to enter, to go as far as; F 156, 164, 183.

tushe تُوَشِي, to rub or grind corn; cf. *tarushe*. *tushia* تُوَشِيَا, 1. the stubble of guinea-corn, wheat, etc.; 2. a pod.

tushi تُوَشِي, the root of a tree, the foundation of a wall, then fig. = meaning; cf. similar use of *guzu*.

tushia, see *tushe*.

tuski تُسْكِي or *tuske* تُسْكِي, to seek for, try to find, long for, the pass. *atuski* اَتُسْكِي is used as a common form of salutation = much sought after.

*tusu'i** تُسْع, Ar. تَسْع, id., fract. numeral, one-ninth.

tuta تُوْتَا or *tuti* تُوْتِي, pl. *tutoshi* تُوْتُوَشِي, flag, standard of a king, umbrella; E 13 *idan anfida tutoshi jahadi* if the standards of war be unfurled, D 68 *ba ennua sai enda tuti muhammad* there shall be no shade except where the shelter of Mohammed is.

tutu, see seq.

tutul تُوْتُل or *tutur* تُوْتُر, also found as *tutu** تُوْتُ B 61, *tutuk** تُوْتُك B 124, *tutut** تُوْتُت B 109, F 69, continually, for ever. [If *tutul* be the original form, it may = Ar. تلو inf. vi.]

tutushi تُوْتُوَشِي, sweet, good to eat.

tutul, see *tutul*.

tuya تُوِي, 1. to cook without water, to bake; 2. to light, e.g. a lamp.

The sound of the English *u* or rather of the Italian *u* as represented by *oo* in 'root' is represented in Hausa by *و* or *ـُ*; the first representation is the more correct of the two, the second form *ـُ* when it occurs at the beginning of a word may have as the bearer of the vowel sound either *alif* ا or *ain* ع; thus *uba* عِبَا or اِبَا father; the sound of the English *u* or of *u* occurring in a closed syllable is represented by *ـُ*, thus *muna* مَنَا we, *murda*

مرد to twist. The representation of the *o* and *u* sounds are so far identical that it is impossible to ascertain the sound from a study of Hausa writing.

uba or *oba* عُبَا، أَبَا، pl. *ubane* عُبَانِي،

ubanai عُبَانِي (cf. (?) Ar. أَب)،
1. father (A 60, B 21, 170, C 41, D 97 exemplify the spelling عُبَا; B 75, C 41, F 122 the spelling أَبَا); *uban ubaka* B 75 = thy grandfather; 2. leader, master, e.g. *uban yaki* the leader of a fight; cf. seq.

ubangiji عُبَنْجِي، عُبَنْجِي، F 6, lit.

father of the household, master, proprietor, lord; a title frequently applied to God = the Lord, e.g. B 4, 67, 173, D 48, E 2, 31; cf. *uworigijia* mistress.

ufu عُوْفُو، عُوْفُو، 1. scream, a loud or sharp cry; *yin ufu* to scream; 2. to scream.

*ujala** عَجَلَا (cf. Ar. عَجَلَة a water-wheel), a wheel.

uku عَكْ، card. num. three; A 58 *achikkin giddan aljenna babu mutun uku* in heaven three men will be wanting, G 2, l. 14 *ya shekara uku chikki sarauta zaria* he lived three years in the kingdom of Zaria. The corresp. ordinal is m. *naïku*, f. *taïku*, third; A 61 *naïkunsu* the third one of them; adv. *sau uku* three times, thrice.

*um(m)a** عُمَا and *um(m)ata** أُمَاتْ،

Ar. أُمَّة، family, people, congregation, found in C 42 with the Ar. article, and the latter form in E 3 *ummattan muhamadu* the people of Mohammed.

*umorni** أُمْرِنِي، Ar. أَمْر، *yin umorni* to order, command.

ungo or *ungwo* عُنْغُو، عُنْغُو، take! (?) a Bornuese word.

ungozuma عُنْغُوزُمَا، عُنْغُوزُمَا، midwife.

ungua أَنْغُوَا، pl. *unguai* أَنْغُوِي، in Sokoto *unguni* أَنْغُنِي، a suburb or division within the walls of a town.

ungurnu, armlets; cf. *kanwa*.

*uri**, see *wuri*.

*urji**, a sore on the skin; cf. *kurji*.

*usali** أُصَلِ، أُصَلِ، Ar. أُصَلْ، origin, race, ancestors.

ushuri عَشْرُ، Ar. عَشْرُ، fractional numeral, one-tenth.

uss أُسْ or *ush* أُشْ = *allah wadanka* may God curse you; so *uska*!

uwa عُوَا، أُوَا، pl. *uwaye* عُوَايِي، أُوَايِي، mother, A 60, B 26, C 44, 45; the plural is used in the sense of parents; *dan uwa*, pl. *yin uwa*, lit. mother's son = friend, *dan uwata* or *dan uwana* = my friend; cf. A 5, 47, B 22, F 21. Also in various compound expr.: *uwal deffi*

poison put on arrows = *tumia*, *uwan magunguna* the name of a small tree from the root of which is made a scent, used as a medicine, *uwal rufi* B 105 mother (i.e. source) of secret evil, *uwan rana* a foster mother who finds a child deserted and adopts it; cf. seqq.

uwalgid(d)a, see *uworigid(d)a*.

uwayara عَوَيَارَا, lit. mother of children, the name given to an evil spirit who kills the mother and the new-born child at the time of child-birth.

uworigid(d)a عَوْرِغِدَا or *uwalgidda* عَوْلَغِدَا, chief wife or mistress of the house; cf. seqq.

uworigijia اَوْرِغِجِيَا, mistress or owner of slaves. This and the preceding are really feminine forms of *ubangiji*.

The letter و is used by the Hausas to represent the sound of the English *w*. It is also used as a vowel in forming the diphthong *au* (pronounced like *ow* in 'cow'), and in representing the long *o* and long *u*, e.g. *bauta* بَوْتَا slavery, *sabko* سَبْكَو to set out, *rude* رُوْدِي to deceive; cf. under *u*, p. 244.

wa وَا, *wane* وَنْبِي, *wanene* وَنْبِنِي, fem. *wache* وَّحِي, pl. *sua* سَوَا, *suanene* سَوَنْبِنِي, interrog. pron.

who, which, what? [The word *wane* was formed by adding the substantive verb to the original *wa*; the form *wane* having become fully established, a strengthened form *wanene* was made by affixing the substantive verb again; cf. use of *kowa*, *kowane*, *kowanene*.] B 76 *wa ya yi tasu nan sararin sudan* what was like unto them in the regions of the Sudan? *su wanene* who are they? *da ka da su wanene* who is there besides you? The expression, what is his name? is often rendered *wa sunansa*, lit. who? his name? -نَوَا, at the end of a word = whose? *danwa shi ke* whose son is he? *wane* is sometimes used as an indef. pron. E 36 *wane ka ka zulumi* whoever of you is afraid.

*wa** وَ, Ar. and.

*wa** وَ, like, like as; F 144 *karamta tas wa gashi* its path is like a hair, F 154 *wonsu kan shruše (shude) wa iska* some would pass like wind; cf. *wani*.

wa وَا, pl. *yeyu* يَيُو, elder brother; cf. *yaya* (corresp. terms: younger brother = *kane*, elder sister = *ya*).

wa وَ, وَا, to do, make, *ya wa kansa karifi* he strengthened himself, *ya wa alberka* he blessed, *wa mugunta* to curse; cf. *yiwu*.

*wa'adu** وَعَدُّ, Ar. وَعَد, found in

F 131 *mawa'adu ka hakka* O Thou who promisest that which is true.

*wa'atsi** وَعَظِي، وَعَظِي، *wa'atsu*

وَعُظُو، وَعُظُو، often contracted colloquially to *wazi*, *wazu*, Ar. وَعَظٌ، id., 1. instruction, proclamation; A 5, F 254, D 30 *muna waatsi muna galkadi gareku* we tell you openly and warn you; 2. to warn, instruct.

wabi وَبِي (cf. (?) Ar. وَبِي، to be plague-stricken), miscarriage; *dan wabi* a child which dies soon after birth.

wachananka وَتَنَّكَ، a lengthened form of *seq.*; sometimes used in sense of because, for that reason.

wache, fem. of *wane*; see *wa*.

wache وَاشِي، وَاطِي، وَاطِي، and *washe* وَاشِي، to spread, to scatter; F 98 *su washe shiru* they scatter in silence, pass. *anwachesu aka-wachesu* they were scattered. *watsu* وَطُو، scattered. The reduplicated and intensive form *walwache* وَلَوَاطِي = to scatter far and wide. *wache* is probably derived from *wasu*, q.v.

wada وَادِي، وَادَا، fem. *wadania* وَادِنِيَا، pl. *wadani* وَادَانِي، cf. Ar. rt ودی، dwarf.

wad(d)a وَدَا (cf. (?) Ar. وَدَع، to deposit), treasure. *wadata* وَدَاتَا or *wodata* وَوَدَاتَا، وَوَدَات، riches;

F 57, 59 *sunka wodata...ba sukowa* they had riches...they have none, *yin wadata* to become rich. *wadachi* وَوَدَاحِي، riches. *maiwadachi* مَيُوَدَاحِي or *maiwadata* مَيُوَدَاتَا، a rich man.

wad(d)ari or *wod(d)ari* وَوَدَرِي، to walk or ride, to walk up and down as women do with thread when weaving.

wade وَوَدِي، to curse.

waga وَوَاغَا (cf. (?) Ar. وَوَاغَا، repository, case, etc.), sack made of skin, used for loading donkeys, camels, etc.

wahaia وَوَحِيَا، concubine; C 45 *shi dan wahaia ne urwa tasa zainabu* he was the son of a concubine, his mother's name was Zainabu.

wahal(l)a, trouble, A 64, 84; cf. *wohal(l)a*.

wahami وَوَحِيم (cf. Ar. وَوَحِيم and وَوَحَام، morbid appetite or desire), madness, frenzy.

*wahidi** وَوَاحِد، Ar. وَوَاحِد، id., one; B 3 *jabbaru wahidi sarki allah* God the one all-powerful king.

wai وَوَي (Ar. id., 1. alas! woe! cf. *seq.*; 2. as an expression of doubt or uncertainty; *wai ya che* = I do not understand what he says; 3. it is said that, on the assumption that; F 30

kana kumburawa wai ka fi kowa thou art proud because it is said Thou excellest all, F 29; 4. it is said, or he says, e.g. B 111 *wai dukia* he says (that he desires) its goods; cf. *waya* words.

wainia وَيِنْيَا, alas! perhaps = *wainia* woe is me!

waiwaia وَيَوِيَا, to care for, to seek after; C 46, 51 *ba waiwaia ba bale shi duba tadunia* he sought not for the things of this world, much less did he fix his attention upon them; cf. (?) *woiwoiya*.

wajib وَاجِب or *wajibi* وَاجِبِي, Ar.

وَاجِب, necessary; A 20 *wajib mu dau haiasu* we ought to take their road, A 68 *tsarki ga maisalla ku san wajib ya ke* purity is necessary, as thou knowest, for one who prays; hence *wajibine na taffi* = *na taffi tilas* I was forced to go. *wajaba* وَاجَب, *wajabu* وَاجِب or *wajiba* وَاجِبَة, to be necessary, ought; A 63 *rana nan ka wajaba taimama achikkin gari* on that day thou must wash with sand in the city, *ya wajiba* = *ya kamata* it is necessary.

*wajiba** وَاجِب, to rejoice.

*wajuna** وَاجُون, found in phr. *wajuna rana* to fix a day.

waka وَآكَا, *waka* وَآفَا, 1. song; C 55, F 256 *na gama waka*

I have finished the song; 2. to sing.

*wakati**, see *wakti*.

wakawake وَكَوَاكِي, having spots or stripes, speckled black and white, used of fowls, etc.

wake وَآكِي, beans.

wakili وَكِيْل, Ar. وَكِيْل, steward, representative, governor; *sariki wakilin gari nan. wakilchi** وَكَلْبِي, stewardship.

*wakti** وَكْتِي, *wakati** وَكْتِي, Ar.

وَكَت, time; D 23, A 54 *wakti duka* = always; from this root is probably derived the Hausa word for time; cf. *lokachi*.

wala وَالَا, pl. *walu* وَالُو, dove, turtle-dove.

*wala** وَلَا, to have plenty of room in which to sit down. *walawa** وَلَوَا, enjoyment of abundance, comfort.

*wal(l)a** وَضَا, Ar. وَضُو, found with Ar. art. *alwalanka* A 71 thy ablutions; cf. from same root *lullo*, F 148 note and *allowa*.

walakanta وَكَنْت, to maltreat, to despise. *walakanchi* وَكَنْتِ, disgrace, maltreatment.

walawa, see *wala*.

*wali** وَلِي, Ar. وَلِي, id., 1. friend, in a religious sense only, i.e. a friend of Allah; D 99 *alwali muhammad* the friends of Mohammed, E 38, F 4; 2. a man

who gives away a woman in marriage, e.g. her father.

walianchi وَلِيْنْتِ, prophecy.

walki وَلِكِي or *wolki* وَلِكِي, a wrapper made of the skin of a goat, used as a loin cloth.

walwache, redupl. form of *wache*, to scatter; cf. *warwari*.

walwaji وَلَوَجِي, 'antilopeleucoryx' (?), its skin is used for making white shields; it is found towards the northern part of Hausaland.

*walwale** وَلَوَلِي, Ar. وَلَوْلَ, to object to an agreement, C 23 note.

wanan, *wani*, see *wonan*, *woni*.

wanche, see *woni*.

*wandara** وَنْدَرَا, strong lion.

wando وَنْدُو or *wondo* وَنْدُو, pl. *wanduna* وَنْدُنَا, *wonduna** وَنْدُنَا (F 202), loose baggy trousers which are drawn tight under the knee; they are similar to those worn by Arabs; A 11, F 202 *wandunan wuta fa kaza rawuna wuta* they shall have trousers of fire and turbans of fire.

wane, fem. *wache*; cf. *wa*.

wane da wanche male and female; cf. *woni*.

*wane** وَنِي, without (?).

wanene, pl. *suanene*, strengthened form of *wa*, q.v.

wani وَنِي, like; *waninsa* like him or his likeness; cf. *wa**.

wani, anyone; cf. *woni*.

*wanji** وَنْجِي, superfluity, probably a corrupted form from *wanzu*, q.v.

wanka وَنْكَ, *wanke* وَنْكَبِي, to wash, e.g. the face, clothes, etc.; pass.

*awonke** اَوْنْكَبِي, F 90 *awonke ka fa gaslu zaman kushewa* thou art washed and cleaned for burial. *wanko* وَنْكَو, implies to wash and bring back to the place where the speaker

is. *wankake* وَنْكَبِي, f. *wankaka* وَنْكَكَ, pl. *wankaku* وَنْكَكَو, washed, cleaned.

wanko, see *wanka*.

wanshekaranjia وَنْشِكْرَنْجِيَا, three days ago, the day before *shekaranjia*. [Possibly *wan* in this word is the same as *war* in *warhakka* about this time.]

wanya وَنْيَا, وَنِي D 73, *wanye* وَنْيِي, *wanyi* وَنْيِي B 121, وَنِي D 13, 1. to finish doing anything, *na wanya = na kare*; to end, D 13 *wuta da wuta ta ke wanyi duka*, lit. fire and fire ends everything, v. note, D 73 *hal allah shi wanya hukumchi ga bayi* until God hath finished His judgment on His servants; 2. B 121 *ranan ta duniya tasa ta wanyi* his day of earthly life is ended.

wanzu وَنْزُو and *wonzu** وَنْزُو, to prolong, delay, stay, remain

- over, be over and above; *mai-wanzuwa* مَيُونُزُوا, remaining; cf. *wanji*.
- waraka* وَرَكَا, Ar. وَرَق, leaf of a tree, page of a book.
- waraka*, see *warhakka*.
- warami* وَرَمِي, pl. *waramai* وَرَمِي, ornament of iron, ivory, etc. worn by the heathen on the wrist.
- wardi**, bad smell; cf. *wari*.
- ware* وَارِي, to separate, to disperse. *warwari* وَرَوَارِي, *warivari* or *worivori* وَرَوِرِي, *wawari* وَوَارِي, to be broken up, to be divided, used with *alkaueli* to break a promise.
- warga*, this; cf. *worga*.
- warhakka* وَرَحَكَا, often contracted colloquially to *waraka*, by this time, about this time, e.g. *ka komo gobe warhakka* return at this time to-morrow; cf. (?) *wuri*.
- wari* وَارِي or *wardi** وَرِدِي (cf. (?) Ar. وَرِي, corrupt matter), bad smell; *jin wari* to perceive such, *zama wari* to become stinking.
- wari* وَرِي, to open, used e.g. of a book, etc.; possibly a form of *ware*.
- wari** وَرِي, cf. Ar. وَرَاء, outside, e.g. D 48 *abinda akayi wari* what is done outside, D 70.
- wari* وَرِي, 1. a part, one piece of;
2. وَرِي, to select, to choose out one or more pieces.
- warnu* وَرَنُو, a small dark-coloured frog.
- wartsaka** وَرَطَك, to be convalescent, to get better.
- warwari*, to be broken up; cf. *ware*, *walwache*.
- warwarji* وَرُورَجِي, وَرُورَج, a large shield.
- was* وَاسَا, a song, the sound of a drum; *yin wasa* to play music, hence *wasambuki* وَاسَنْبُكِي, feasting at a marriage.
- was* وَاس, to sharpen; pass. *awasa* to be sharpened.
- was* وَس or *wase* وَسِي, to break up, scatter, disperse; *was* *da kurdi* to throw down money in gambling. *wasawasa* وَسَوَسَا, scattered abroad, but few together; probably *wache*, *washe*, *watsu* are secondary forms of *was*; cf. also *waso*.
- wasali* وَصَل (cf. Ar. وَصَلَ, the sign َ placed over ل), the points, or vowels (?), placed above or below the letters; cf. *hajetu*.
- wasambuki*, see *was*.
- wasaso*, to snatch or steal; cf. *waso*.
- wasawasa*, scattered; cf. *was*.
- wasawasa* وَاسَوَاسَا, a sort of porridge made of beans or guinea-corn, or in N. Africa of macaroni; cf. *kuskus*.

wase, to throw down; see *wasa*, *watsu*.

*washe** واَشِي, F 98, probably a form of *wache*, to break up.

waso وَسُو, found in pass. *anwaso*, to be devastated. *wasoso* وَسُوَسُو to snatch or steal goods, to scramble for anything; cf. *wasa*, *wawasu*.

wata وَتَا, pl. *watani* وَتَنِي and *watashi* وَتَشِي (G 5, l. 2), 1. moon, usually construed as masc. e.g. *wata shina bada haske* the moon gives light, *farin wata* new moon; 2. hence month; G 6, l. 1, *watan yo* this month, *watan jibi* the month after next, *watan jia* last month, *wata ya mutu* the month (or moon) is ended.

*wata** وَت, to arrive at, reach.

*watane** وَتَنِي (cf. Ar. وَتَن III, to be assiduous), found in phr. *ka watane* prepare!

watsatsi وَطَطِي, fem. *watsatsia* وَطَطِيَا, a name given to a vicious goat.

watsu وَطُو, spread, scattered; cf. *wache*.

*warshi** وَوَشِي, perhaps (?).

wauta وَوَتَا, abstr. of *wawa*, 1. foolishness, vanity; 2. to be foolish, vain; *maiwauta* foolish, deranged person.

wawa وَوَا F 30, 32, وَوَا B 142, وَوَا C 5, 13, a fool, one who is

vain, a jester; *tana chewa kai wawa* she thinks you a fool, *bada wawa* to deceive (?), F 32. *wawanchi* وَوَانْثِي, folly, foolishness.

wawa وَوَا, found only in the phr. *babu wawa* without doubt, doubtless, F 7, 71, 137, 142, etc.

wawari, to separate; cf. *ware*.

*wawasu** وَوَأَسُو used with *yi*, to snatch greedily, to steal; cf. *waso*.

*waya** وَوِيَا = words; F 33 *fa enda ka jita waya dan uwatu* when thou hearest its words my brethren; cf. *wai*.

waye وَوَيِي, 1. to dawn, e.g. *gari ya waye* the day dawns; 2. to make clear, to explain; *ka waye mamu abin nan* explain this thing to us; pass. *akan-waita* explained, D 95. *wayewa* وَوَيَاوَا, 1. dawning, dawn; 2. explanation, interpretation.

wayo وَوِيُو, *waya* وَوِيَا, 1. plan, scheme, plot, stratagem; hence cunning, skill, C 6; *maiwayo* cunning, skilful; 2. *wayo* and *wayi* وَوِيِي, to be cunning.

wazi and *wazu*, to warn; cf. *wa'atsi*.

*wazir** وَوَزِير, Ar. وَوَزِير, vizier.

wene وَوَنِي, cakes made with rice and guinea-corn.

windi وَوِنْدِي, a small round mat made of grass; cf. (?) *wundi*.

*woba** وَبَا (cf. (?) Ar. وَبَّه, to consider attentively), wonder; *yin woba* to wonder, to marvel.

wochan, that, fem. of *wonchan*, q.v.

*wochika**, a letter; cf. *wotika*.

wod(d)a وَدَّ, fem. of *wonda*, q.v., pl. *wodanda* and *wodanan*, who, which A 19.

wodachi, riches; cf. *wad(d)a*.

wod(d)anan, these, pl. of *wonan*, q.v.

wod(d)anda وَدَدَّ, who, pl. of *wonda*, q.v.

wod(d)anga, these; cf. *wonga*.

wod(d)ansu, some, pl. of *woni*, q.v.

wod(d)ari, to walk or ride; cf. *wad(d)ari*.

wod(d)ata, riches; cf. *wad(d)a*.

wofi وَوْفِي, bareness, nakedness, deprivation of goods; *abin wofi* vanity, *aika wofi* fruitless, used of goods brought to the market and not sold, *karia wofi* a bare lie, *mutum wofi* a man of no use, B 160, *tsiwon (chiwon) wofi* incurable disease.

wog(g)a, fem. of *wonga*, q.v.

wohal(l)a وَحَلَّ, وَحَلَّ, *wahal(l)a* وَحَلَّ (cf. Ar. وَهَلَ II to strike fear into), affliction, trouble; A 84 *mu ka chi ba wahalla nika* we shall eat without the trouble of grinding, *yin wohalla* to punish, inflict punishment; pain, *wohallan haifua* labour pains; *maiwohalla* one who bears trouble,

a poor man who toils constantly. *wohalda* وَحَلَّدَ, *wahalda* وَحَلَّدَ = *yin wohalla* to trouble oneself, be grieved, distressed, *kadda ka wohalda kanku* do not trouble, vex, distress yourselves. *wohalshe* وَحَلَّشِي, to vex, to annoy, to cause affliction, to correct.

wohalda, *wohalshe*, see prec.

woiga وَوَيْغ, *woida** وَوَيْد and *woishe* وَوَيْشِي, to look back, behind.

woiwoia وَوَيْوِي, *waiwoia* وَوَيْوِي to turn round, to look back.

woiwoiawa وَوَيْوَيَاوَا, turning round, returning, F 69; cf. *darwoiya* and *kewoye*.

woishe, see *woiga*.

woiwoia, *woiwoiawa*, see *woiga*.

woje وَوَجِي, pl. *wosashe** وَوَسَاشِي,

Ar. وَجَه, side, place, region; *wojen dama* right side, right hand, *wojen hagum* left side, *dagga woje nan...dagga woje chan* on this side...on the other side, *wojenka* = with you, hence as adv., out, outside; *ina taffia woje* I am walking outside.

wolka, see *wolkia*.

wolki, a goat's skin, etc.; cf. *walki*.

wolkia وَوَلْفِيَا, lightning; B 139, F 154 *wodansu ya wolkia kuma babu warwa* some like lightning, without doubt. *wolka* وَوَلَكْ and *yin wolkia* to lighten; cf. Ar. أَلْف.

*wolla** وَالِه, Ar., an oath, by Allah!

wollata وَلَاتَا [possibly derived from the Ar. الصَّحْوَة, the title given to the prayers which are said when the sun is high], time about 10 a.m., v. H. Gr. p. 64.

wombai وَئْبَى, a royal officer, the heir to the throne at Kano; cf. *fadarwa*.

*wonan, wanan** وَنَن, pl. *wod(d)a-nan* وَدَنَن, وَدَنَن, this near by; at B 97 *wonan* is found with a pl. n. *kadda shi kaimu wonan kwanaki* that He may not bring us to those days. (The word is nearly always pronounced *wonan* though written *wanan* as above; cf. seq.)

*wonchan, wanchan** وَنْشَن, وَنْشَن, fem. *wochan*, pl. *wod(d)anan*, that over there, the one yonder, the other. An emphatic form is *wonchananka* وَنْشَنَك = that one.

*wonda, wanda** وَند, fem. *wod(d)a* وَد (A 19), pl. *wod(d)anda* وَدَد, وَدَد or *wod(d)anan* وَدَنَن, وَدَنَن, who, which; *babu wonda* no one. When the relative pronoun is followed by a verb the personal pronoun is also used; thus *wonda ya taffi* or *shi wanda ya taffi* he who went.

wonga وَغ, fem. *wog(g)a* وَغ, pl. *wod(d)anga* وَدَغ, this near by; cf. *wodansu* those far away.

*woni, wani** وَن, fem. *wota* وَوَتَا,

pl. *wonsu* وَوَس, *wosu* وَوَس, وَوَس or *wodansu* وَدَنَس, F 81, 154, 155, some one, some, a certain person or thing. In the expression *wane...wanche* male...female, either *wane* = *woni* and *wanche* = *wochan* or *wane* and *wanche* are borrowed Fulah words.

woniyayi وَنْيَايِي, comp. of *woni* and *yayi*, q.v., sometime.

wonsu, pl. of *woni*, q.v.

*wonzu**, to prolong; cf. *wanzu*.

worga or *warga* وَرَغ, used esp. in Sokoto district as equivalent to *wonan* this; F 26 *dalili worga waka duka ga kuran* the purpose of the whole of this song is (to commend) the Koran (related to *wonga*).

worigi وَرِغِي, play, sport, also *yin worigi* to play, to beat a drum.

worike وَرِكِي, *worke* وَرِكِي or *warke* وَرِكِي, to heal, cure; pass. to be healed, cured. *worikeke* وَرِكِكِي, fem. *worikekia*, pl. *worikeku*, healed, cured, restored to a right state of mind [cf. (?) Ar. أَرَك].

woriwori وَرِوَرِي, to improve in health.

woriwori or *wariwari*, to break; cf. *ware*.

*woshi** وَوَشِي, cf. B 7 *awoshi* he was born (?).

wosu, others, etc., pl. of *woni*,
q.v.

wota, a certain one, fem. of *woni*,
q.v.

wotakila وَتَكِيلَا (cf. (1) Ar. كَيْلَة, so that *wotakila* would mean 'in some measure'), perhaps.

wotika وَتِيكَا or *wochika** وَتِيكَا* (cf.

Ar. وَتَاف, covenant, document), a letter.

wowo وَوُو. At the end of the month Muharram, i.e. end of the year, boys light torches and throw them about; this display of torches is called *wowo*.

wu وَو, a shout or scream = *ufu*.

wuche وَوُحِي, *wushe** وَوُشِي E 50, or *fuche* فُحِي, to pass by, pass away, subside; A 15 *kowa ya zo ya wuche* every one comes and goes, B 75 *duka sun wuche* they have all passed away; cf. *wulga*, *wurga*.

*wuchia**, a tail; cf. *wutsia*.

*wufi**, *wupi**, وَوُپِي, shoes.

*wujuhum** وَوُجُوهُم, Ar., their faces, v. F 248 n.

wuka وَوُوكَا, pl. *wukake* وَوُوكَايِي, knife; *wasu* or *gerta wuka* to sharpen a knife; *wukan sariki* name of a spotted grasshopper with green wings.

wukia وَوُوكِيَا, small, long-shaped vase or bottle for holding scent.

wulakanta وَوُلَاكَنْتَا (cf. Ar. وَوَلَف,

to strike), to strike blows, to evil intreat; A 66 *rana da zai mutu kan wulakanta massa* on the day that he shall die he shall be struck with blows.

wulga وَوُلْغَا, *wulge* وَوُلْغِي, *wurga* وَوُرْغَا, 1. to pass by, pass away; 2*. to throw away.

wundi وَوُنْدِي, the round hole cut for the neck in a shirt (*tugua*).

wuni وَوُنِي (cf. Ar. وَوَنِي, be weak, relaxed, tired out in work), to pass the night at a place, the whole day from sunrise to sunset; *sanu da wuni* salutation used to a man working the whole day; cf. *yini*.

wur وَوُر, very, used with *ja* only; *ja wur* very red.

*wur(r)a** وَوُر, to jump backwards and forwards, to dance.

wurga, to pass by; cf. *wulga*.

wuri وَوُرِي, pl. *wurare* وَوُرِيِي, place, spot, locality; *wurin chira* place of escape, refuge, e.g. a king's house, B 95, 98, *wurin gudu* a place to flee to, *wurin sapka* a camping-place. *wurin*, i.e. *wuri na*, is often equivalent to 'with' or 'to'; *wurinsa* with him, *ya taffi wurin sariki* he went to the king. It is also used for in place of, instead of.

wuri وَوُرِي, an adverbial use of prec., early, already, before, before time; *da wuri* before, some

time ago, *tunda wuri* already, up till now, *wuri wuri* very early; cf. (۱) *warhakka*.

wuri وُرِي, pl. *kurdi* كُرْدِي, cowrie; the pl. is also used in the general sense of money, e.g. *kurdin gurasa* bread-money, i.e. alms. [Cowrie shells are imported into Hausaland by way of the R. Niger from Zanzibar and the Maldivé Islands.]

*wushe**, to pass away; see *wuche*.

*wushewa** وُشِوَا, cf. Ar. وُشَى, adornment, E 22 n.

*wushiria** وُشِرِيَا (cf. Ar. وُشَر), to make the teeth sharp and thin), the natural space between the two front teeth in the upper jaw.

wuta وُتَا, fire, a fire; *jin wuta* to warm oneself at a fire, *wuta lahira* and *wuta* the fire of hell A 7, 22, F 118, 160, *dabarun wuta* F 180 the back of the fire = *bayan wuta*, equivalent to our 'top of the fire.' *farawuta* فَرَوُتَا, brimstone (in Ar. كِبْرِيْت).

wutsia وُطِيَا, وُطِيِي, *wuchia** وُتِيَا, tail.

wuya وُيَا or *wiya* وِيَا, pl. *wiyayi*

وِيَايِي, neck, C 18, 33; *wuyan hanu*, lit. neck of the hand = wrist.

wuya وُيَا, difficulty; *da wuya*

difficult, hard to accomplish, of necessity, *abin-dunia da wuyan sani* it is difficult to know all things.

The letter *ی* is used by the Hausas to represent the sound of the English consonant *y*. It is also used in forming the diphthongs *ai* اِي and *oi* اِي, e.g. *saidai* سَيْدِي only, *bokkoi* بَكِّي seven; and in representing the sounds of the Italian vowels *e* اِي and *i* اِي, e.g. *sare* سَارِي to cut, *taf (f) i* تَفِي to go. It is placed at the end of verbs ending with the sound *i*, but not as a rule at the end of nouns except in the plural number, thus: *fadi* فَادِي to fall, *takobi* تَقُوب sword, *sasari* سَاسَرِي chains.

ya يَا, pers. pron. third pers. sing. prefixed to aor. 'he,' 'it,' e.g. *ya yenke* he cut; used in impersonal expressions, e.g. *ya issa* it is enough, *ya fi* it is better; also to express a wish, e.g. *allah ya baka lafia* may God give you health [*shi* is more commonly used in this sense].

ya يَا, also *yi* يِي (A 6), *yina* يِن, A 81 = *kama*, like, as; B 72, F 154 *wonsu kan shutse (shude) wa iska wadansu ya wolkia*

some would pass like wind,
some like lightning.

ya يَا, Ar. id., O! esp. used in
expression *ya sidi* sir!

ya يَا [Kanuri id.; cf. note on
yaya], elder sister, for corresp.
masc. v. *wa*; cf. also *yata*,
iyata.

ya يَا (nearly always used in con-
struct form *yan* يَنْ pl. of *da*,
Kanuri id., son; *yan uwana*,
lit. sons of my mother = friends,
brothers, brethren; cf. also
yamata.

yab(b)a, see *yab(b)o*.

*yabdamuna** يَبْدَمُونُ, Ar. expr.
used in F 42; cf. note ad loc.

yabe يَبِي, to daub, ceil, smooth,
plaster, of walls, etc. *yababe*
يَبَبِي, fem. *yababa* يَبَبَا, pl. *ya-*
babu يَبَبُو, smoothed, ceiled,
plastered.

yab(b)o يَبُو, praise, fame, reputa-
tion, report; *yin yabo* to praise,
honour, B 21 *ina yabonka sidi*
uban zahra I praise thee, O
lord, father of Zahra, D 100,
F 31. *yab(b)a* يَب, to praise,
to give thanks; *na yaba* = *na*
gode. *yeb(b)abe* يَبَبِي, fem.

yeb(b)aba يَبَبَا, pl. *yeb(b)abu*
يَبَبُو, honoured, praised.

yada يَد, *yada wuta* to light a
fire.

*yada** يَاد, probably related to
yesda, q.v., to reject, e.g. A 58

sun yada hainya they rejected
the right way.

yade يَدِي, to skim milk.

yadia يَدِيَا (= *cynanchum vimi-*
nale?), a shrub that burns with
a noise in the fire; ropes are
made from its bark.

*yado** يَدُو, roots of gourds or
melons.

yado, *yadu* يَادُو (cf. Ar. يَدِي, *yadi*,
wide), to spread out, increase;
B 47 *ibada kan yado* the ser-
vice of God would increase.

yaenda, when; usually contracted
to *yanda*, q.v.

yaenman يَانَنْ, then; cf. *saanan*.

yafa يَاف and *yafu* يَافُو, 1. to rub,
to wash over with water; 2. to
fold over, to wrap or cast a
garment about one; *mayafi*
A 11 = coverings, wraps.

yafe يَافِي, Fulah *yafu*, to forgive =
gaferta.

yafu, see *yafa*.

yaga يَافَا, to tear, e.g. cloth,
paper, etc.; F 184 (of dogs)
sun hafshi suna yaga da tsawa
they will bark and tear and
cry. *yagua* يَافُوَا, a tear in
clothes, etc.

*yaiyawa** يَافِيَا, found D 66 for
dayarwa, *ba iyaka zafi yaiyawa*
there shall be no limit to the
great heat.

yaji يَاجِي, hot spice, pepper, any-
thing hot like pepper, e.g. B 17

annabi magani ba yaji ba the medicine of the prophet is not hot.

yaka يَأَكْ, fem. *yaki* يَأِكِي, come thou, come!

yaki يَأِكِي, pl. *yakuna* يَأَكُنَا,

yakoke يَأَكُوكِي, C 31, war, fighting; *yin yaki* to wage war G 1, l. 7, C 31 *ita dauki yakoke* it undertakes wars. *mayaki* مَيَأِكِي, warrior, G 2, l. 6.

yako يَأِكُو, a shrub, from the wood of which a medicine is made = *maganin majina*.

yakua يَأِكُوَا, a soup or stew made of meat and the fruit of the *dorowa* tree; cf. *dodowa*, *soborodo*.

*yakutu** يَأَفُوتْ, Ar. id., a precious stone, ruby or sapphire, F 227. The Greek *δάκρυθος*, English jacinth, is the same word.

yal يَأَلْ, a form of *yan*, children; pl. of *da*, q.v.

yala يَأَلْ, يَأَلِي (Fulah *yalla* perhaps), whether, or, e.g. B 56 *yala chikkin dere ko ko jifjif* whether by night or just before dawn, B 156 *yala ta samu ko ba ta samuwa ba* whether it be obtained or not obtained.

yalo يَأَلُو, pl. *yaluna* يَأَلُنَا, a plant about 3 ft. high, its fruit is like a large tomato, larger than *gauta*.

yalwa or *yelwa* يَأَلُوَا, abundance;

B 45 *shi bamu chi da sha da abin yelwa* may He give us food and drink and abundance, also = a wide place, D 40. *yalwata* يَأَلُوَتَا, 1. abundance of room, prosperity; 2. to extend, to flourish. *yayakwachi* يَيَأَلُوَتِي, an intensive form = fulness. *maiyelewa* مَيَيَأَلُوَا, spacious = *maisarari*; cf. (?) Ar. أَلُو, plenty.

yamata يَأَمَاتَا = *ya* + *mata*, daughters, girls; cf. *yarinia*.

*yambu**, mud; cf. *yimbu*.

yamche يَأَمِشِي, *yamchi* يَمِشِي, to bind grass with cords so as to form a roof.

yami يَأَمِي, 1. leaven, vinegar, anything sour; 2. to swell, used of a sore, etc.; cf. *tsamia*.

yamkon hanu, cutting off hands of thieves; cf. *yenka*.

yamma يَأَمَّا, يَمَّا, Ar. يَمْرُؤٌ, west, evening; G 4, l. 15. *yammachi* يَمِثْ, يَمِثْ, westward.

yamutse يَأَمُطِي, *yamutsi* يَمُطِي, to be pulled down, destroyed, ended, e.g. *kasua ta yamutse* the market is ended.

yamyam يَأَمِيمِ, cannibals, a name given to the cannibal tribes living in the S.E. of Hausaland.

yana يَأَنَا, verbal pronominal prefix to pres. tense 3rd pers. sing. masc.; it is not so commonly used as *shina*, q.v., and like it is followed by nouns or parti-

- cial forms. In colloquial Hausa it is often pronounced *yina* or *ina*, e.g. *alkamma ina da roshi* the wheat is ground fine.
- yanbaka* يَنْبَكَا, 1. tribal marks cut from the corners of the mouth; 2. very talkative; cf. *ya(n)*, *baki*.
- yanchi* يَنْشِ (from *ya* pl. of *da*, son, free), liberty, freedom, adoption. *yanchi* يَنْشِي or *enchi* اِنْشِي, to free a slave.
- yanchiako**, chicken; cf. *tsako*.
- yanda* يَنْدُ, *yaenda* يَإِنْدُ or *yawanda* يَوْنْدُ = *saanda*, when, at what time; D 18, B 121 *mutua yawanda ta taffo ta rabeshi* death, when it comes, etc.
- yani** يَنْي, to close, shut a box, door, etc.?
- yan-uwa*, brethren; cf. *uwa*.
- yanyawa* يَنْيَاوَا, a fox (?).
- yanzu* يَنْذُو, now, directly; *ko-yanzu*, an emphatic form = even now, immediately; *yanzu* presently, forthwith; B 174 *hal ya zua yanzu* even to the present time.
- yaö*, to walk; cf. *yawo*.
- yao*, to-day; cf. *yaü*.
- yapki* يَپْكِي or يَبْكِي, a kind of velvet cloth brought from the west.
- yar* يَرُ, for *yan*, or perhaps a feminine form of *ya* child; A 24 *kan yar gidä* she is free; cf. *da*.
- yara*, see *yaro*.

- yan(n)i* يَنْرَانِي, yellow needle-work on a burnous.
- yaraye*, see *yaro*.
- yari* يَارِي, the chief slave of a king, used esp. in Sokoto and Zamfa districts.
- yarili*, infant; cf. *jarili*.
- yarinia* يَرِينِيَا, pl. *yamata*, q.v., fem. of *yaro*, girl, young woman.
- yarinta* يَارِئْتَا, youth; cf. seq.
- yaro* يَارُو, pl. *yara* يَارَا, *yaraye* يَارَايِي (F 82), *yaya* يَايَا and *yayaye* يَايَايِي (F 99); the last two forms may perhaps be regarded as plurals of *da*; *ya-yaye* may perhaps be formed from *yaye* to wean; boy, child; the pl. *yaya* is often used of produce, etc.; *yayan itache* the fruit of a tree. The corresp. fem. of *yaro* is *yarinia*, q.v. *yaro da daria*, i.e. laughing boy, the name applied to a certain kind of ground nut; cf. *kwarruru*.
- yasa* يَاسَا, pl. *yasosi* يَاسُوسِي, finger, toe; *yasa na kaffa* = toe, *baban yasa* = thumb or big toe, *auta yasa* the little finger; cf. F 162.
- yasa* يَاسَس, to dig; D 92 to dig a well, *na yasa rijia* I dug a well.
- yashe*, to cast away; cf. *yes*.
- yashi* يَشِي, white sand or mud in water.
- yasuu*, يَسُعُ, *yashuu** يَشُعُ, the

original Arabic name for Jesus; cf. under *isa*.

yata, elder sister; cf. *iyata*.

yau يَوُ, often pronounced *yo*; cf.

Ar. يَوْم, to-day, this day;

maiyo existing to-day, B 3

ubangjinmu maiyo maigobe

He is our lord to-day and for

ever, B 21. *yauyau* or *yoyo*

يَوِيو, 1. of time = at last, just

now; used with *da*, *zashi fisu*

da yauyau he will overcome

them eventually; 2. of place =

close by, just behind; *ya yi*

yauyau he came behind.

yauchi يَوُثِي, delay; *ya yi*

yauchin zakua he delays his

coming; adv. late.

yaudon ruri يَوُونْدَن روري, a small

herb with red flowers, used in

sauce, like coriander.

*yauuni** يَوُونِي the name of a small

fish with prolonged mouth.

yaushē يَوُشِي when, at what time;

daga yaushē from what time?

har yaushē until when, how

long? *tunyaushē*, id., *koyaushē*

at any time, whenever.

yaushi or *yoshi* يَوُشِي cf. Ar.

يَبَس, to wither, wrinkle, fade,

used of a tree; *ya yi yaushi*

it shrivels up.

yauwa, see *yawo*.

yawa يَاوَا, the fibre of a tree used

for making rope.

yawa يَوَا, plenty, multitude, as

adv. much; *yawan rai* long

life. *dayawa* (often pronounced

deyawa or *diyawa*) دَيَوَا, much,

many. *mayawa* or *maiyaawa*

مَيَوَا, pl. *masuyawa* مَاسَيَوَا,

many, used esp. of persons;

sa yawa-yawa = to multiply.

yawanachi يَوُونُث, large portion,

abundance. *yawanta* يَوُونُت

and *yin yawanta* = to multiply.

yawanda يَوُونْد, when, B 121; cf.

yanda.

yawanta, see *yawa*.

yawo يَاوُو, يَاوُ, also pronounced

yaō, to walk, to promenade, to

take exercise, e.g. on horseback;

e.g. F 103 *da huru-l'wini na*

yawo kushewa and the Houris

will walk within thy tomb, *yin*

yawo, id., *na yawo bissa doki*

I took exercise on horseback.

yauwa يَوُوَا walking, wander-

ing.

yaya, Kanuri id., children, pl. of

yaro, q.v.

*yaya** يَايَا = *wa*, elder brother.

[The word is apparently bor-

rowed from Kanuri, in' which

yaya and *ya* = elder brother or

elder sister.]

yayalwachi, fulness; cf. *yalwa*.

yayan yaki, soldiers, used as pl. of

dan yaki and *mayaki*.

yayaye boys, pl. of *yaro*, q.v.

yaye to wean; cf. *yeye*.

*yaye** يَيِي, to uncover (?).

yayef(f)* يَيِمَا or *yinyif*(f)i

يَيِنِي, gentle rain.

yayi يايى, time, age; *ga yayin annabi* in the day of the prophet, *yayinsa ya wuche* = he is old, *woniyayi* = sometime.

yeb(b)abe, honoured; cf. *yab(b)o*.

yed(d)a, to throw; cf. *yes*.

yedda يَدَّ, 1. as = *kanda*; *yedda kai* or *yedda kaso* as you like; 2. *yedda* is also used as a rel. pron., that, which.

yelwa, see *yalwa*.

yenka يَنَكْ and *yenke* يَنْكِي, to cut, to reap, to slaughter, e.g. G 4, l. 8 *yenka mutame*; hence various idiomatic uses, e.g. *yenke kamna* to despise C 10, to reject the love of, *yenke magana* to put an end to conversation, *yenke karia* to tell lies.

mayenka مَائِنَكْ, puffed up, proud. *yenkake* يَنْكِي, fem.

yenkaka يَنْكَا, pl. *yenkaku*

yenkaku يَنْكُو, cut. *yamkon hanu* يَمَكُونُ حَنُو, cutting off hands, a common form of punishment inflicted on thieves, etc.

yenylene يَنْيَنَ, to cut up into very small pieces, to make mince-meat.

yerda يَرْدَا, *yirda* يِرْدَا (cf. Ar.

ruṣī, to agree), to forgive, remit; *yerda bashi* to remit a debt, to give up, deliver up; C 34 pass. impersonal *ashiyerda* must abandon, *yerda da* to rely upon; also as a n. will, per-

mission; A 2 *da yerdan mai-sama* with the approval of Him who dwells in heaven, *abin da ya yerda da shi* = that which pleases him; cf. G 7 fin. *yer-*

dade يِرْدَدِي, fem. *yerdada* يِرْدَدَا,

pl. *yerdadu* يِرْدَدُو, approved of, agreed to, believed in, received.

yerji يِرْجِي or *yerje* يِرْجِي, permission; *bani yerji* allow me, A 27 *ka bata yerji* grant her permission, *yerje mana* = do!

yerdaji يِرْدَجِي, trustworthy, faithful; cf. prec.

yerfe يِرْفِي, to throw away.

yerina يِرِيْمَا, son of a king, perhaps = *chiroma*.

yerji, see *yerda*.

yes (pronounced almost like *yez*)

يَسْ, to throw, to throw away.

yesda يَسْدَا, B 89 *sun yesda dunia* they cast aside the world.

yed(d)a يَدَّ and *yashe* يَشِي, id.

yeye, children; cf. *yaya*.

yeye يَيِي or *yaye* يايى, 1. to wean; *yinyeye*, id.; 2. the person who takes charge of a child after it is weaned; this is usually done at the age of two years.

yi يِي [cf. Nupé *ji* to make],

to do, make. *iwa*, *yawa* يَوَا F 254; also *iwo* and *yinwo* يَوَا = to do, make, C 42, 49; pass. to be done; idiomatic uses are impers. *ya yi* it does, it is satisfactory (cf. Eng. 'it does');

yi also expresses equality, e.g. *wanan ya yi wonchan* this is equal to that, cf. H. Gr. p. 52; *su yi nawa* how many were there? *anayi da shi* = he is set upon, he is abused, *yin karia* used of a gun, to miss fire; see also seq.

*yi** یی, working, power, in phr. E 38 *da yin allah = da ikon allah* by the power of God, used esp. in Sokoto district.

yi, A 6, like = *ya*, q.v.

yimbu ینبو, *yambu** ینبو, clay, mud.

*yina**, often pronounced *ina*, یینا = *shina* or *yana*; F 35 *yina ganinka* He beholdeth thee.

*yina**, A 81, or *yi**, A 6, like = *ya*, q.v.

yini یینی, 1. the space of a day, a day; F 111 *yini nan jalla kua shi ka tada kowa* on that day the glorious One will raise up every one; 2. to stay or stop at a place for a day only, then to continue, e.g. *ina yini taffia, aiki*, etc. I continue travelling, working, etc. till evening, B 146 n.; 3. (?) continually, always; cf. *wuni*.

*yinyif (f)i**, light rain; cf. *ya-yeffa*.

yirdaji, trustworthy; cf. *yerdaji*.

yiwa, *yiwo* or *iwo*, to make; cf. *yi* and *wa*.

yo, to-day; cf. *yau*.

yodo, see *yau*.

yonkane یُنْکَنِی, to wither, of plants; also of man, to be wasted with disease.

yoshi, see *yaushi*.

yoyo, at last; cf. *yauyau*.

*yumki** یُمْکِی, to seal, to set a seal (?).

yunwa یُنْوَ (often pronounced *zungwa*), hunger, famine; *jin yunwa* to feel hungry, *da yunwa* hungry, *ina da yunwa* I am hungry.

*yuthki** یُثْکِی, prob. for Ar. یُسْفِی, found in F 197, v. note.

ذ z and ز z are used by the Hausas to represent the sound of the English z. There is no distinction of sound between the two, and they are often interchanged; thus *guzuri* is written غُزْرِی in F 67, but in the following line is written *guzuri* غُذْرِی. The sound is sometimes interchanged with that of j or s, thus *guzu* or *gusu* bottom, *zarumi* or *jarimi* a warrior. In words which are not connected with semitic roots z j is more commonly used than z ذ.

za ڙ lit. = to be about to go, and so = to be about to..., used as auxiliary to form the future, e.g. C 13 *zamu tashi* we shall arise, B 71 *komi ya faru zashi shi kare ni* whatever begins will come to an end, A 26; za and

zo to come, probably stand to each other in the same relation as *bid(d)a* and *bid(d)o*, they are both probably connected with *je*, the *z* being palatalized to *j* through the influence of the vowel following; cf. *zaka*, *zatsa*.

zaba ذَاب C 11, *zabe* ذَابِي F 134,

*zabi** ذَاب A 16, ذَاب A 39, F 53, to choose, select, elect, e.g. F 134 *mun zabeka* we choose thee. *zabu* ذَابُو, to be chosen. *zababe* ذَابِي, fem. *zababa* ذَابَا, pl. *zababu* ذَابُو, particip. adj. of *zaba*, chosen, picked out, selected.

zaba ذَابَا (cf. (?) Ar. ذَهَب, gold), found in phr. *kurdi zaba* pure or genuine money.

*zabania** ذَابَانِيَا, Ar. id., found in D 72 *asanya zabania wa dubu saba'in chakani* seventy thousand evil angels shall be put therein; cf. note ad loc.

zabe and *zabi*, to choose; cf. *zaba*.

zabgai ذَابَغِي, poison put on arrows.

zabia ذَابِيَا, 1. with pl. *zabiyoyi*

ذَابِيُوِي, a minstrel, a king's musician; 2. a species of dark red coloured date (cf. (?) Ar. ذَابِيَب); 3. an albino.

*zabki** ذَابِك, to soften; D 65 *kai garemu ta zabki* it will soften our heads.

zabo ذَابُو, a herb, the leaves of

which are tooth-shaped; they are beaten up to make a medicine.

zabore, reeds; cf. *tsabore*.

zabura ذَابُرَا, to start back, to rise up quickly, to start, of a horse.

*zabura** ذَابُورَا, Ar. ذَابُورُ, id., writing from God, used of the Koran, the Psalms, or the Gospels.

zabuta ذَابُتَا, white muslin for making a turban, with red edge.

zache, to suppose; cf. *tsachi*.

zaen(n)a, to seal; cf. *zuin(n)a*.

zafi ذَابِي F 189, 195 also *zafi*

ذَابِي D 66, Ar. ذَابِي, heat; D 66, F 195, *ruan zafi* hot water, F 189; cf. seq.

zafi ذَابِي, pain; *da zafi* painful, *na ji zafi* I feel pain, *jin zafin zuchia* to be cut to the heart; prob. akin to prec.

*zafi** ذَابِي, idol; cf. *tsafi*.

zagarafi ذَابَغَرَابِي, a plant, the dried root of which is used as a purgative.

zage ذَابَغِي F 34, *zagi* ذَابَغِي F 8, to reproach, revile, e.g. F 34 *fa kowa ya zageka dunia* when anyone in the world revileth thee.

zage ذَابَغِي, *zagi* ذَابَغِي, 1. to draw a sword; 2. to go to a place = *taffi*, e.g. E 50 *mu zage makka* we go to Mekka; cf. *zazage*.

zago ذَابُغُو, to walk about, to walk backwards and forwards,

to go a long way round to a place.

zagi, see prec.

*zagi** زَاغِي, a horse led behind another, not ridden.

zago, see *zage*.

zag(g) زَاغُو, a species of ant which builds ant-hills.

zago زَاغُو, a harpoon for river fishing.

zahiri, to appear; cf. *tsahiri*.

zahra زَهْرَا, the name of a daughter of Mohammed (?); see B 21 note.

zaiba زَيْبَا, Ar. زَيْبَف, Pers. زيوه, id., quicksilver.

*zaiti** زَيْت, Ar. زَيْت, olive.

zaka زَكَا, 1. to come (esp. in Sokoto); 2. to go, e.g. D 22 *kuna zaka da haji* go on the pilgrimage. *zakua* زَكُوَا, coming. [*zaka* may possibly be derived from *za* used in the sense of 'to go' with pronoun suffixed, or *za* may be used as a noun and followed by a possessive pronoun. Either derivation is however most uncertain.]

zak(k)a زَكَا, Ar. زَكَاةٌ, alms, e.g. F 17, *ka ber riba ka bada zaka* cease from unlawful gain, give tithes; cf. *zukkatta*.

zaka ذَاك, the fut. aux. verb, second pers. sing. masc.; *zaka gani* thou wilt see; cf. *za*.

zakainya, lioness; cf. *zaki*.

zakami زَكَامِي, *zakami* زَقَامِي (cf.

Ar. زَقَوْمٌ, a medicinal tree), a shrub, from the berries of which is made a medicine, also a highly intoxicating drink; cf. *zakumu*.

*zakami** ذَكَانِي (?), blaze, D 64 note.

*zakami**, between; cf. *tsakani*.

zakara زَكْرَا, *zakara* ذَكْرَا, pl. *zakaru* زَكْرُو, *zakaru* ذَكْرُو, cf. Ar. ذَكْرٌ, cock; *zakaran dawaki* a large bird which flies about at night and cries *kúra kúra*, its coming is considered an omen of war, *zakara maisurdi* a cock with a red mark on its back like a saddle.

zaki ذَاكِي, the fut. aux. verb, second pers. sing. fem.

zaki زَاكِي, fem. *zakainya* زَاكِنِيَا, pl. *zakoki* زَاكُوَكِي, lion.

zakka زَكَا or *zikka* زِكَا or *jikka* جِكَا (cf. (?) Ar. زَفٌّ, a bag made of skin), a measure for grain.

zaku ذَاك, aux. verb, fut. tense, second pers. pl.; cf. *za*.

zakua, coming; cf. *zaka*.

zakuda زَكُد, *zakudo* زَكُدُو, to move forward a very little or to make room.

*zakumu** زَكَوْمٌ, Ar. زَقَوْمٌ, F 196, the name of a tree in hell, v. note. From the same root prob. comes *zakami*, q.v.

zallantaka ذَلَّتْكَ (cf. Ar. ذَلَّ, to be vile), unchastity.

zalumchi, deceitfulness; cf. *tsalimi*.

zawani زَوْنِي, a dark-coloured women's cloth.

zama ذَمَّ A 57, 80, C 8, *zama* زَمَّ B 133, found as *zamai* ذَمِّي C 52, to come into a condition or state, to become, e.g. B 133 *ku zama shaitanai* you become evil, *ni zama da hankali* I shall behave wisely. *zama* ذَمَّا and *zamanchi* ذَمْنْتِي, state, condition, e.g. C 15 *enna da zama na duwama* where is a state of continuance? hence = affairs, *enna zaman gari* how is your stay in the town? ans. *zaman gari da godia* we are quite well thank you; continuance, E 14, 28, F 67, C 6 *zamansa na dunia* his sojourning on earth, E 18 *masuzama ga hainyoyi musulmi* those (of you) who continue in the ways of Muslims. Hence its use when repeated, *zama zama* after some time; cf. *sam(m)a*; *yin zama* to succeed in doing anything attempted.

zama ذَمَّا, 1. prep. because of; F 90 *zaman kushewa* for burial; 2. conj. for, because, e.g. F 14, 15, 68. Prob. related to prec. word.

zamanchi, condition; cf. *zama*.

zamani زَمْنِي G 4, *zamani* B 95, 96,

zamani ذَمَانِ G 1, *zamanu*

زَمَانُ B 82 (cf. Ar. زَمَن, id.), time; *zamanin annabi* in the times of the prophet, *zamani kaddan* a short time, G 4 *ya yi zamanishi* he reigned.

zamarke زَمْرَكِي, a species of leguminous plant used for burning.

zamba or *zanba* ذَنْبَا, ذَنْبُ, Ar. ذَنْبُ, crime, adultery; B 108, C 1, E 25, B 147 *tana da rurudi don ta yi zanba* it practises deceit in order that it may commit a crime; cheating, e.g. in selling, etc. *zambache* ذَنْبِي, *zambata* ذَنْبَتِي, to cheat, hence *maizambachi* or *maizambata* one who cheats, a cheat. *zambata* ذَنْبَتِي, C 2, guilt, from the same rt comes *zunufi*, *zunubi*, q.v.

zambar زَمْبَر, thousand, prob. a Songai word.

zambata, see *zamba*.

zambu زَنْبُو, a sort of pudding made with flour and onions.

*zami** ذَامِي, cf. Ar. ذَامَر, blame, e.g. C 32 *zami ta kan che na mallami* she speaks evil of a Mallam.

zami زَامِي (cf. Ar. زَمَّر, to muzzle a camel), 1. to keep back, put down; particip. n. *zamiwa* زَامُوا, B 113; 2. to recline, lean back on a horse, stumble.

zamna ذَمْنًا, *zamna* زَمْنًا

zona زَوْنَا A 12, *zamne** ذَمْنِي B 73 (cf. Ar. زَمَن IV, to last a long time), to stop at a place, to reside, dwell, sit down; G 1 *suka zamna chikki* they settled down in it, *maizamna*, pl. *masuzamna* dweller, inhabitant, sojourner; cf. *Introd.* p. xix.
zamu ذَامُ fut. aux. verb, first pers. pl.; cf. *za*.
zana ذَانَ, ذَانَا, to reckon up, take account of; E 4 *hallinmu da amkazana sai mu tuba* our (evil) deeds shall be reckoned up unless we repent.
zana ذَانَ or *zani* ذَانِي, to draw strokes or lines. *zane* ذَانِي, spots, lines.
zana زَانَا, a rough kind of mat made of grass or reeds, with which the outside of houses is covered and partitions made within.
zamba, *zambata*, see *zamba*, *zambata*.
zanche ذَنْبِي, *zanchi* ذَنْبِي, A 3, word, conversation; *yin zanche* to speak, converse. *zantawa* ذَنْتَوَا, conversing; cf. *sanche*.
zane, spots, lines; cf. *zana*.
zan(n)e ذَنْبِي, *zan(n)i* ذَنْبِي, also pronounced *zen(n)e*, pl. *zan(n)ua* ذَنْوَا, 1. cloth, esp. a piece such as that worn by women, of oblong shape; A 28 *ta dau zani* let her take a cloth; 2. a measure of cloth of about 15

feet; 1 *zane* = 8 *kamu* and $4\frac{1}{2}$ *zane* = 1 *turumi*, q.v. *zan(n)e* is frequently treated as of feminine gender.
*zangarami**, a large tree with poisonous fruit.
zangarnia, a stalk of corn; cf. *sangarnia*.
zango زَنْغُو, a hundred, seldom used except in counting cowries; probably a Songai word; cf. *zungo*.
zani ذَانِي, ذَانَ, fut. aux. verb, first pers. sing., I will or I will go; cf. *za*.
zanko زَنْكُو, a tuft of hair in the middle of the head.
zantawa ذَنْتَوَا, rel. to *zanche*, particip. form used as an intr. v., to speak.
zanzana زَنْزَانَا, small-pox = *agana*.
zanzaro زَنْزَرُو, a hornet; cf. mod. Ar. *هو زَنْزَل*, wasp, lit. father of buzzing.
*zara**, to accuse; cf. *sare*.
zaraba زَرْبَا, a bunch of dates.
zar(r)e ذَرِي A 75, *zar(r)i* زَرِي A 13, cf. Swaheli *zari*, 1. thread, e.g. A 75 *shi ne ya ke dumkin fari ba zare* he is as a man sewing a white garment without thread; 2. a rope put through the nose of a cow. *mazari* مَزَرِي, spindle; cf. *zar(r)ia* and *seq*.
zarge زَرْغِي, pl. *zarguna* زَرْغَنَا (cf. Ar. طَرْقَة, a noose), a loop in

string, etc.; from the same Ar. rt comes *azirka*, q.v.; cf. *mazargi*, *mazarigi* and *azari-gagi*.

zar(r)i, see *zar(r)e*.

zari زاری, 1. plenty to eat; 2. one who eats much, a strong man.

*zar(r)i** ذری, v. B 160 *ta kan zarishi ba ko da tausai* it will snatch him away without pity.

zar(r)ia ذریا, *zar(r)ia* ذریا, fem. of *zar(r)e*, q.v., a string to tie up trousers, *wando*.

zaria زری, to leap, dance. *zaria*

زری, dancing; *yin zaria* to dance.

zarmi, see *zarumi*.

zarumi, *zaromi* زارمی, *zarmi* زرمی,

*jarimi** جریمی or *zarmi* زرمی,

pl. *zarumai* زارمی, officer, one of a king's body-guard.

zashi ذاش, fut. aux. verb, third pers. sing. = he will; cf. *za*.

zasu ذاس, fut. aux. verb, third pers. pl. = they will.

zati ذاتی, Ar. ذات, greatness, majesty, size, realm, F 45, 246; king, F 132 *shi fadi shina sujuda enda zati* he will speak, he will prostrate himself in the presence of the King.

zat(t)o, to think; cf. *tsetto*.

*zatsa** ذات, a Sokoto form of *za*, to go; cf. F 237 *ahau kuma zatsa fa dar maiiyawa* they mount and go to the dwelling-

place of the Almighty; cf. F 50 note.

zau زو, a large fish, from which oil for eating is obtained.

*zauđa** زوڈ [cf. (?) Ar. rt *zud*, to make preparations for a journey], to separate from, to desert a friend, etc.

zaura زورا, *idon zaura*, 1. a variegated cloth; 2. a white stone; cf. *ido*.

zaure زوری, pl. *zauruka* زورک, hall, a porch with double entrance; cf. *tsoro*.

*zauwa** ذوا, particip. form from *zo*, coming = *zua*.

zauwara زوورا, widow.

zawo زاوو, purging, used of medicine.

zayen(n)a زين (cf. Ar. rt *zin*, to adorn, to ornament), to illuminate a manuscript. Probably the same word as *zwin(n)a*, q.v.

*zayi** ذی, to go to visit (?); F 58 *ta zayi annabarwa* she went to see the prophets; cf. (?) *ziaya*.

*zaza** زازا, bank, found in F 182 *zazan wuta* a bank of fire; see note.

zaz(z)abi or *zez(z)ebi* ززی, fever.

zazaga ززغا, to shake, tremble.

zazagarwa ززغوا, trembling all over.

*zazage** زراحی, to go, to make ready to go; B 168 *mu bada farilimmu mu zazage* we will

perform our religious duties, we will make ready; cf. *zage*.
zazari زَزَرِي, to hasten after; B 133
ya wanda ka ga na zazari banna he whom you see hastening after evil; cf. (?) *zar(r)i*.
zazewa زَزَبُوَا, the name of a certain small white-breasted bird of the same size as the *baiwan allah*.
zergi زَرْغِي, 1. avarice, greed; 2. suspicion.
zerto زَرْتُو, a saw. Prob. another form of *derto* دَرْتُو, a file.
zet(t)o, to think; cf. *tset(t)o*.
zzeb(b)i, see *zaz(z)abi*.
ziara زِيَارَا, *ziara* ذِيَار, Ar. زِيَارَةٌ, to go to visit or salute anyone, C 37 *ziara mallamai* salute the Mallams; B 162 *en je madina en yi ziarata* to go to Mecca to visit it; B 168 *zua madina zamu ziara nai* (we will go) to Medina, we will salute him.
*ziaya** ذِيِي, E 11, 20 [for *jiyaya*?] understanding, used with *yi* = to understand.
zigazigai, bellows; cf. *zuga*, *maziga*, *mazigi*, = Ar. زِف.
zikir, see *zikri*.
zikka, a large bag made of skin; cf. *zakka*.
zikri ذِكْرِي, D 2, B 88. *zikir** ذِكْر, C 37, Ar. ذِكْر, to make invocations to God, to pray to God, *muna zikri* we pray.

*zilla** ذِلَّة, Ar. ذُل id., humiliation; F 105 n. *ka ga zilla* thou wilt see humiliation.
zina زِنَا A 55, F 180, *zina* ذِنَا E 21 (cf. Ar. زِنَا and زِنَاء), whoring, adultery; E 21 *da fashishivan zina babu amre* and concerning evil living without marriage; F 180 *masuzina* مَاسُزِنَا, profligates; *yin zina* to be profligate. *maizinachi* adulterer, *maizinachia* adulteress.
zinaria ذِينَارِيَا, *zinaria* ذِينَارِي, F 219 (cf. Ar. ذِينَار, a gold coin, Gr. δηνάριον, Lat. denarius), gold, e.g. F 219 *suradi kua na zinaria ga kowa* there shall be golden saddles for everyone.
zinder زِنْدَر, the name of a large town in Hausaland.
zini, a point; cf. *tsini*.
zinke, a little spike of straw; cf. *tsinki*.
*zipka** زَيْكَا (cf. (?) Ar. صَعِيف, of coarse and gross texture), a cloth put over a native saddle with two large holes to fit the projecting points of the saddle.
*zira** ذِرَا, Ar. ذِرَاع, cubit; cf. *dira*.
zir(r)awa, see *seq*.
zir(r)e زِرِي, to lower a bucket into a well; participial form *zir(r)awa* زِرُوَا, lowering.
zirnania زِرْنَانِيَا, a cloud producing a shower, or a cloud

threatening but not producing rain; cf. *ginaria*.

zo ذو, to come, with *da* = to come with a thing, i.e. to bring it. *zua* ذُوا, *zauwa** ذُوُوا, particip. form = coming, used with pronouns ending in *na* to form pres., e.g. *muna zua* we are coming. *ya zua* and *zua* are often employed with any number or person to express 'to, unto,' e.g. *su taffi ya zua sokoto* they went to Sokoto; B 174 *hal ya zua yanzu* even to the present time; D 100 *muna godia zua ga allah* we give thanks to God; cf. *za*.

zobe زوبى and zobi زوبى (cf. Ar. طَبَعَ, to stamp with a seal), a ring; *zoben shaida* seal-ring, seal; *zoben* or *zobin kaya* handle of a box, etc.

zobi, see prec.

*zofo**, an incorrect form of *tsofo* old.

zogi زوغى, sharp pain; cf. (?) *shag(g)i*.

*zoma**, to dip; cf. *tsoma*.

zomu or *zomo* زُمُو, pl. *zomai* زُمَى (cf. Ar. زَمُوغ, swift, an adj. spec. applied to the hare), hare.

zona, to stop; cf. *zamna*.

*zonkutsa** ذُنْكَطَا, possibly related to *tunkude*; F 93 *su zonkutsaka shikkin (chikkin) kushewa* they thrust thee into the grave.

zowari زَوْرِى (cf. (?) Ar. صَوَّرَ, to be inclined to, to desire), 1. covetousness, ravening, voracity, cf. (?) *zar(r)i**; 2. a flat piece of salt cut out of a block.

zua, a participial form of *zo*, q.v. *zua zua**, by and by, cf. prec. or the expression may be a corruption of the Ar. سواء سواء, just so; cf. *sua sua*.

zub(b)a زَبَا (A 78), ذَبَّ (E 3), *zub(b)o* زَبُو or *zuba** صَبَّ, Ar. صَبَّ, 1. tr. to pour, pour out, 2. intr. to gush out, leak. Other forms tr. are *zub(b)as* زُبَسْدَا, *zubasda* زُبَسْدَا, to pour out, implying accident or injury, to throw out, throw away; *zubda* زُبْدَا, to upset, esp. to upset water; *zub(b)u* زُبُو, intr. v. *rua ya zubu* the rain pours down; *zubuwa* or *zubuwa* ذُبُوُوا, particip. form, e.g. F 115, 189, 198 *fufu da hanji na zubuwa* their lungs also and bowels shall be poured out.

zupas, *zupasda*, *zubda*, see prec.

zub(b)i زُبَى, bright iron wrought into cups, etc., for use.

zub(b)o, *zub(b)u*, see *zub(b)a*.

*zubuta** زُبْتَا, a small red turban with a white border.

zuchia ذُنْيَا B 37, ذُونْيَا D 67, pl. *zukata* ذُكَتَا, and *zutochi* ذُتُوْخَى, 1. the heart, e.g. D 67; 2. fig.

as the seat of feelings, desires, passions; *zuchia biu* (lit. two hearts) doubt, hesitation, deceitfulness; *karamin zuchia* littleness of heart is only used in a bad sense; *maganan zuchia* used as an exclamation of astonishment. Hence the word *zuchia* heart is used as a periphr. for oneself; cf. B 37, 38 *shi wanda zuchiaata rinjayi* he who overcomes his own heart.

zufa زُوفَا, akin (?) to *zafi*, q.v.,

1. heat, perspiration = *jibbi*;
2. زُوبَ, to perspire. Cf. *dimbujin zufa* red beads.

zuga ذُغَا, ذُغَا, to blow with bellows.

zigazigai ذِغَاذِغَايِ, *zigazigai*

ذِغَاذِغَايِ or *zugazuganta* ذِغَاذِغَايِ

bellows, F 188 *malaiku su tsaida zugazuganta* the angels will lift up bellows. *mazigi* مَازِغِي,

a man who blows a fire with bellows. *maziga* مَازِغَا, the stick fixed into the bellows.

zugu زُوغُو, native burial-cloth;

chini da zugu the name of a plant with a red flower and poisonous nut; its name is equivalent to, prepare to die if you eat me.

*zwin(n)a** زُونَا, to seal, possibly connected with *zayen(n)a*, q.v. to illuminate.

zakatta ذُكَّتِي (cf. Ar. زَكَاةٌ, alms), to ask for help; cf. *zak(k)a*.

zulbi زُلْبِي, a water-bird with a naked beak about 8 in. long.

zulumi ذُلْمِي (cf. (?) Ar. ظُلْمٌ, fraud), doubt, fear, B 59, E 36 *wane kaka zulumi* whoever of you is afraid; cf. *tealimi*.

zuma, see *zumua*.

zuma ذُمَا, *zuma** زُمَا and *zumu*

ذُمُو, pl. *zumuna* ذُمُنَا (cf. Ar. ذِمَّة, clientship, client), friend,

brother. *zumunchi* ذُمُنْشِي,

clan feeling, friendship, e.g.

A 47 *da rikun zumunchi ya(n)*

uwa achikkin gari and main-

tained friendship with his

brethren in the city, D 30

aso allah aso zumunchi love

God, love friendship. *zumunta*

ذُمُنْتَا, id. D 31.

zumami زُمَامِي (cf. Ar. صَمْرٌ II, to

impress anything on the me-

memory), a list or memorandum

of goods written on paper, any-

thing written, a memorandum.

*zumane**, faint; cf. *suma*.

*zumbuda** ذُنْبُدَا, F 107 to beat.

*zumra** زُمْرَا, the title of the 39th

sura of the Koran alluded to

in F 158, v. note.

zumu, see *zuma*.

zumua زُمُوَا or *zuma* زُمَا F 230,

honey; *kudan zumua* a bee.

zumunchi, *zumunta*, friendship;

cf. *zuma*.

*zumurruz** زُمُرُّزُ, Ar. زُمَّرُّذُ id.,

emerald, F 227.

zunde زُنْدِي, *yin zunde* to laugh at, deride; to pout the lips at.

zungo زُنْغُو, a halting-place for the night, camp; *dagga bayan zungo* outside the camp.

zungo زُنْغُو, زُنْغُو or *zango* زَنْغُو, a hundred cowrie shells.

zuntsia زُنْطِيَا, a grass used for making mats; cf. (?) *tsintsiya*.

zunubi, see seq.

zunufi زُنْفِي, زُنُوْبِي or *zunubi** زُنُوْبِي (D 12), Ar. ذَنْبٌ, sin, evil.

zunzua, bird; cf. *tsuntsua*.

zurfi زُرْفِي, زُرْفِي (cf. Ar. جَرْفٌ,

the steep side of a hill), depth, D 82 *zurfinta ya fi gabban michali* its depth exceeds all comparison.

*zuria** زُرِّيَا (cf. (?) Ar. زَرَعٌ), lineage (?).

zurma زُرْمَا, oil obtained from nuts; used for rubbing camels with, but not used as food.

zurnako زُرْنَاكُو, wasp.

*zuru** زُرُو, to look steadfastly, to gaze; generally used in a bad sense.

zwakia زُوَكِيَا (cf. (?) Ar. زَوَّفٌ, to adorn), small beads worn by women on the forehead.

ENGLISH-HAUSA DICTIONARY



**London: C. J. CLAY AND SONS,
CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE,
AVE MARIA LANE.**

AND

**THE SOCIETY FOR PROMOTING CHRISTIAN KNOWLEDGE,
NORTHUMBERLAND AVENUE, CHARING CROSS.**

Glasgow: C. J. CLAY AND SONS, 50, WELLINGTON STREET.

Leipzig: F. A. BROCKHAUS.

New York: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY.

Bombay: E. SEYMOUR HALE.

DICTIONARY
 OF THE
 HAUSA LANGUAGE

BY

CHARLES HENRY ROBINSON M.A.

LECTURER IN HAUSA IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE
 HONORARY CANON OF RIPON
 FIRST STUDENT OF THE HAUSA ASSOCIATION

ASSISTED BY

W. H. BROOKS B.A.

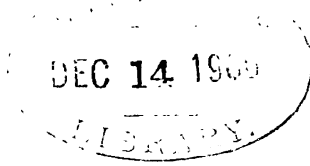
LATE HAUSA SCHOLAR OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE
 TYRWHITT'S HEBREW SCHOLAR IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE
 STUDENT OF THE HAUSA ASSOCIATION

VOL. II
 ENGLISH-HAUSA

CAMBRIDGE
 AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS
 1900

[All Rights reserved]

22~~1~~ 5.4-2
3



Subscription fund
(2)

Cambridge:

PRINTED BY J. AND C. F. CLAY,
AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS.

PREFACE.

THIS volume, though issued separately for the convenience of students, is intended to be used as a companion volume to the Hausa-English Dictionary already issued. In order to save expense and so lessen the price of the dictionary I have transliterated all the Hausa words in this part: their spelling in the original may be ascertained by referring to Vol. I. In accordance with the general principle here adopted all vowels are to be pronounced as in Italian, all consonants as in English. For further explanation and some account of Hausa phonology the student is referred to the preface attached to Vol. I.

This dictionary has been seven years in course of preparation, and though I am fully conscious of its incompleteness and other deficiencies, its publication will, I trust, mark a distinct stage in the elucidation of this language and so fulfil in part the objects of the Hausa Association under whose auspices the work has been accomplished.

CHARLES HENRY ROBINSON.

RIPON. *September* 1900.

ABBREVIATIONS*.

A, B, C, etc. See poems, etc. in "Specimens of Hausa Literature."		neg.	=negative.
ans.	= answer.	neut.	neuter.
art.	article.	obj.	objective.
coll.	collective.	part.	participle.
comp.	comparative.	pers.	person.
concr.	concrete.	phys.	physically.
conn.	connective.	possess.	possessive.
dem.	demonstrative.	pregn.	in a pregnant sense.
diff.	different.	prep.	preposition.
expr.	expression, also = expressed.	pr. n.	proper noun.
fem.	feminine.	pron.	pronoun.
fig.	figuratively.	rel.	relative.
fol.	following.	rep.	repeated.
fut.	future.	sep.	separate.
gent.	gentilic.	spec.	specially, also = special, special term or terms.
impers.	impersonal.	suff.	suffixed.
instr.	instrumental.	techn.	technical
interj.	interjection.	tr.	transitive
interrog.	interrogative.	trop.	tropically.
loc.	of place.	v.	verb, also = see.
		vv.	verbs.

* N.B. The foregoing list is supplementary to that given in Vol. I.

The following Addenda and Corrigenda are intended to be inserted in Vol. I.

ADDENDA.

- dalma* دَلْمَا, n. lead.
dalulu n. a small bottle, see *lulu*.
fifche n. a fan, see **mafuchi*.
*futo** فُتُو, intr. v. to swim.
*isgili** عَسْغَلِي, tr. v. to mock.
*jinwache** جِمْرَتِي, tr. v. to bear with anyone.
kififla كِفِفْلَا, n. a tortoise.
kwadaye كُودِي, tr. v. to long after.
lisami or *lezami* لِزَامِ, n. a horse's bit.
*machewa** مَشْوَا, n. bile.
matsorachi مَطْرَثِ, n. cowardice.
musaya used with *yi*, to exchange.
toari طَوَارِ, n. cough; *yin t.*, to cough.
tsalla adj. chaste = *tsaba* (?).
tsokali طُوكَلِ or *chokali* تُوكَلِ, n. wooden spoon.
tuntube used with *yi*, to stumble.
zaki ذَاكِ, n. sweetness, flavour.

CORRIGENDA.

a denotes the first and *b* the second column in the page.

P. 34 b, l. 9	FOR	lamb	READ	kid.
P. 40 b, l. 21	„	دَرِينِ	„	دَرِينِ.
P. 48 b, l. 17	„	دَلَالِ	„	دَلَالِ.
P. 44 a, l. 11	„	دِنَرُو	„	دِنَرُو.
P. 44 b, l. 29	„	man	„	men.
P. 52 b, l. 27	„	san san	„	sun san.
P. 76 b, l. 28	ADD	of. Ar.		فَبَّة.

P. 79 b, l. 22	FOR	فُوش	READ	فِوش.
P. 102 a, l. 20	„	فَقَى	„	فَقَى.
P. 104 a, l. 18	„	كَافُوز	„	كَاهِر.
P. 116 a, l. 30	BEFORE <i>kása</i>	INSERT	<i>kása</i>	فَاسْ or.
P. 184 b, l. 11	FOR	make	READ	made.
P. 187 a, l. 80	„	كُوسَاتُو	„	كُوسَاتُو.
P. 198 b, l. 8	„	صَلَات	„	صَلَات.
P. 222 a, l. 17	„	<i>takura</i>	„	<i>tankura.</i>
P. 237 b, l. 87	„	<i>ka</i>	„	<i>kai.</i>
P. 245 b, l. 14	„	أَنْغَنَى	„	أَنْغَنَى.

VOL. II.

CORRIGENDA AND ADDENDA.

P. 14 a, l. 20	FOR	<i>da</i>	READ	<i>da na.</i>
P. 81 b, l. 17	„	<i>gasashu</i>	„	<i>gasasu.</i>
P. 52 a, l. 40	„	<i>sini</i>	„	<i>jini.</i>
P. 57 a, l. 36	READ	(=suffer) <i>dauri</i> ,	(=continue).	
P. 58 a, l. 24	BEFORE	<i>tabbatachia</i>	READ	<i>tabbatache fem.</i>
P. 58 a, l. 29	FOR	<i>kunkumia</i>	READ	<i>kumkumia.</i>
P. 71 b, l. 15	fin.	ADD	<i>dan muri.</i>	
P. 89 a, l. 40	FOR	<i>kabila</i>	„	<i>ķabila.</i>
P. 92 a, l. 9	„	<i>maduga</i>	„	<i>madugu.</i>
P. 107 b, l. 26	„	<i>kunkai</i>	„	<i>kumbai.</i>
P. 139 a, l. 15	„	4	„	5.

The student is recommended to mark the above in the text of the dictionary.

ENGLISH-HAUSA DICTIONARY.

Words to which * is attached are not in general use amongst the Hausas, and should not be employed without reference to the HAUSA-ENGLISH Dictionary.

When more than one equivalent is given, the order is that of frequency of use.

a, 1. indef. art.; there is no word in Hausa corresp. to the Engl. indef. art., the simple noun sufficing, e.g. *bani goro* give me a kola nut; 2. as indef. pron. taking the place of an art., *daia* one and *wani* or *woni*, fem. *wota*, pl. *wonsu wosu* or *wodansu* are sometimes used, e.g. *wani gari ke nan* there was a city, *akoi wota mache sunanta amina* there was a (certain) woman named Amina; 3. a-, found as a prep. prefix with Engl. words, as ashore *a, da* e.g. *afoot akaffa*, alive *da rai*; cf. seq.

aback, 1. adv. see **back**; 2. fig. e.g. I was taken aback (= I was staggered or surprised) at this *wanan yu faskureni*.

abandon, tr. v. *ber(r)i, ber*; it must be abandoned *ashiyerda*.

abandoned, adj. see **profligate**.

abase, tr. v. *maida* or *yi karami*; refl. with *kai* (= self), e.g. he

abases, humbles himself *ya maida kansa karami* = *ya tan-kwassa kansa*.

abash, tr. v. *sa, ba* or *bada kumia*; I feel abashed *na ji kumia*.

abate, tr. v. *reg(g)i, rage, ragi*; intr. *ragu, regi*.

abatement, n. (= decrease) *rage-wa, ragua*; = amount deducted from price of anything *ron-gomi*, grant me an a. *ka yi mani rongomi*.

abattoir, n. *wurin fawa*.

abdicate, intr. v. (used of a king) *karou**.

abdomen, n. *chik(k)i; jiki*, pl. *jikuna* (lit. body) is also employed in this sense.

abhor, see **hate**.

abide, intr. v. (= dwell) *zamna*; cf. *abode*.

ability, n. 1. (= power) *iyawa, iko, gazawa**; 2. (= mental power, understanding) cf. *hankali, du-bara, lura, wayo*; cf. **able**.

abject, adj. see **despised**.

able, to be, v. *iya, imai, yin imai, issa, gaza*, e.g. I am a to do this work *ina iya yin aiki nan*, you can do this *ku issa yin wonan* or *ku issa ku yi wonan*; to be unable or not able is expr. by the neg. of the above, e.g. we are unable to lift this *ba mu issa mu dauka wonan ba*, I cannot *ban gaza ba* or *ya faskareni* (lit. it surpasses me); a. (= clever) *gon(n)i*.

ablutions, ceremonial, n. *allowa, alwal(l)a, arwal(l)a, wal(l)a*; a. made with sand *tainama*; to make a. *shafe, shafo*.

abode, n. *muzamne, gid(d)a*; fig. e.g. a. of pain *gidan azaba*; cf. D 85.

abolish, tr. v. see **take away**, **destroy**.

abominable, adj. *mugu*, fem. *mununia*, pl. *miagu*.

abominate, tr. v. see **hate**.

abomination, n. *abin mugu, abin kasamta, abin haram*.

aborigines, n. *habe*.

abortion, to produce, v. *bata chik(k)i, yesda dia*.

abortive, adj. *babu anfani, banza*.

abound, intr. v. *faye, karu, yin girima*; cf. **abundance**, **abundant**.

about, adv. and prep. 1. (= a. so much, nearly) *ko, kotanchin* (or *kwatanchin*), *kaza*; 2. (= around) *kewoye*; a. him *kewoyensa*.

about, to be, v. *za* followed by the personal pronouns, e.g. I am

a. to start *zani tashi*; *yin kus(s)a, kus(s)ata*, e.g. *su kus-sata en yi hakka*.

above, adv. and prep. *bis(s)a, abis(s)a, dag(g)a bis(s)a*; as prep. *bis(s)a ga*, and when followed by personal pronouns *gare*, e.g. *bissa ga tudu but bissa gareshi*.

abreast, adv. *ajere, ajera, gab(b)a daia*.

abroad, adv. *awoje, dag(g)a woje*; (= at a distance) *dag(g)a nesa*.

abrogate, tr. v. *kaua, kawasda*.

abrupt, adj. (= precipitous) *da gangara*.

abruptly, adv. (= suddenly) *da sauki*.

abscess, n. *kurji*, pl. *kuraji, kureji*, pl. *kurareji, kirchi**, *gurje**, *gembo*, pl. *gembuna*.

absence, in his, *bayansa*.

absent, see under **present**.

absorb, tr. v. *shainya*; (used of cloth, etc.) *tsosa, tsotsa*; to be absorbed in thought or business (so as to forget all else) *shagalichi*, e.g. I was so absorbed that I forgot this *na shagalichi har na manta wonan*.

abstain from, tr. v. *daina, dena; beri, ber*; cf. A 25, F 8—13.

abstract, tr. v. *debe, fitasda*; (= to purloin) *sache, sata, yin sata*.

absurd, adj. *banza; warwanchi* (lit. foolishness).

Abubekr, pr. n. (a contracted form) *bube*.

abundance, n. *yawa, yawanchi, auki, yalwa, yelwa, kar(r)i*,

walawa, tululu, tilli, rikumbu, rikimbu; (a. of food) *zari, machia*; (a., also owner of a.) *dakokoi*.

abundant, adj. *dayawa, mayawa, mayayawa*.

abuse, n. (= abusive words) *habaichi*, pl. *habaitai, gum(m)i**.

abuse, tr. v. 1. (= to revile) *zage zagi*; (to a. behind one's back) *yin habaichi*; 2. (= to make ill use of) turn by *yin* with *abin wofi*, etc.

acacia tree, n. cf. *bag(g)arua, doriva**, *merki**, *chedia* (?).

accede to, v. 1. *yerda*, e.g. *abin nan da ya fadi maka muna yerda* = we a. to the terms he mentioned to you; 2. (as heir) *gáda, gádo*; 3. (to the throne) *chin sarota, yin sariki* G 1, 4.

accept, tr. v. *karba, kariba, karbi, karibi, samu*; cf. also prec. 1.

acceptable, adj. it is a. to me, periphr. *ya gamsheni, da* or *abinda ya gamsheni* or *ya gam(m)ani*.

accident, n. *sab(b)abi, sub(b)abi*; an a. happened to him *sabbabi ya sameshi*.

acclamation, n. *guda, gudu*.

accompany, tr. v. *rakia, yin rakia, ram(m)a, chima, chimayi, tare*, e.g. I will a. thee *zani rammaka* or *zani tare da kai*.

accompanying, act of, n. *rakia*.

accomplish, v. *iyes, iyesda, kare, chik(k)a*.

accomplished, particip. see **finished**.

accord, to a. with, *yin baki daia, yi kamada*.

according as, adv. particle *kamada, kamanda, kanda, tamkanda, tamkarda, yedda*.

accordingly, see **therefore**.

account, n. 1. *lisafi, lesafi, kedaya, kid(d)a, kididig(g)a, did(d)iga*; to render an a. *yin lisafi, yin kedaya*, to take a. of *zana*; 2. fig. e.g. he held of no a. *ba ya kulla* or *ba ya yi kulla* constr. with *da* or *ga*; 3. (= narration) *labari*, to give an a. *bada, ba* or *gaia labari*; I will give you an a. of the war *zan gaia maka labarin yaki*.

account, on a. of, prep. *sab(b)ada**, *sab(b)ado**, *sab(b)oda**, *abis(s)a, don, domin*, e.g. on a. of this *sab(b)ada wonan*, on a. of what? wherefore? *domin mi* or *domi*.

accoutrements, i.e. arms, etc. *kayan daga, kayan yaki*.

accrue, v. 1. (of gain) see **profit**; 2. (= happen, ensue) *faru*.

accumulate, see **gather**.

accurate, adj. and adv. *nakwarai*, fem. *takwarai, daidai, sosai*; to be a. *yin daidai*.

accursed, adj. *laane*, fem. *laana*, pl. *laanu*.

accusation, n. *sara, abin sara, kara*; false a. *rinto*.

accuse, v. *sare, sara, zara**, *yin sare, kai kara* (lit. bring an accusation, constr. with *ga*) e.g. they a. this man *sun kai kara ga mutum nan*.

accuser, n. *maisara*, pl. *masu-sara*.

accustom, v. 1. to be accustomed *saba*, e.g. I am accustomed to this *na saba da wonan*, domestic animals are accustomed to men, *bissashen gid(d)a su saba da mutane*; 2. (= to be wont, used) employ the verbal form with *kan*, e.g. he was accustomed to do thus *shi kan yi hakka*; 3. tr. I accustomed him to this food *na sa shi saba da abinchi nan*.

ache, n. *chiwo*, *jeri*; I have a headache *na ji* (or *na yi*) *chiwon kai*.

achieve, v. see **accomplish**.

acid, adj. *da tsami*, *da tsamia*, *da yami*.

acidity, n. *tsami*, *tsamia*, *yami*.

acknowledge, see **confess**.

acquaint, tr. v. (= tell, inform of) *gaya*, *fadi*.

acquaintance, an, n. *masan(n)i*, pl. *masanana*; he is no a. of mine, I am not acquainted with him *ba shi ne masannina ban sanshi ba*.

acquainted with, 1. see prec.; 2. (= versed in); see **accustomed** 1.

acquiesce, v. *yerji*, *yerda*; I a. in this *ina yerda nan*.

acquit, v. (used of a judge) *bada* (or *ba*) *gaskia*.

acid, see **acid**.

across, prep. 1. e.g. a. the sea *ketaren* (or *dag(g)a ketaren*) *gulbi*; 2. (= beyond) *bayan*.

act, n. *aiki*, *shinkai**, *jinkai**; phr. a bad a. *mugunta*, *aiki mugu*, *jinkai mugunta*; a good or kind a. *alheri*, *jinkai alheri*.

actually, adv. *hakika*, *da gaskia*, *ko*; the last is emphatic (= even), e.g. this man a. surpasses a lion in strength *mutum nan ya fi ko zaki da karifi*.

adansonia digitata = the baobab or monkey-bread tree, *kuka*.

add, tr. v. *kara*.

addicted, to be a. to *faye*, e.g. the boys are a. to (or fond of) play *yara suna faye yin worigi*.

addition, in a. to *bamda*.

address, to a. to, v. *ambachi**.

The following is a specimen of an address on a letter *takarda ya fitta dagga hanuan malam chani zua ga malam yushai* this letter goes forth from the hands of malam Chani to malam Yushai.

adduce, tr. v., e.g. to a. testimony *kai* or *kawo shaida*.

adept, n. *gon(n)i*, pl. *gon(n)ai*; he is an a. at... *shi ne gonni na...*; also *ya saba da...*

adhere, to a. to, v. *rik(k)e*, *lazumchi*, *nani*, the last used of things stuck together with gum etc.; those who a. to the commandments of God *masuriken hakumtai na allah*.

adieu, interj. *sai wota rana*; a. for the present *sai anjima*, a. till to-morrow *sai gobe*.

adjoin, intr. v. *kus(s)ata*, *kus(s)anta*, *kus(s)ache*, *yin kus(s)a*.

adjure, v. I a. thee by God *na gamaka da allah*.

administer, tr. v. (= to give to, e.g. medicine) *ba*, *bada*; to a. justice or law *yin sheria*; to a. government cf. *malaka*, *hakumta*; an administrator of law and justice *maraban sheria da gaskia*.

admire, tr. v. *yin* (or *j'in*) *namaki*.

admit, tr. v. 1. I admitted him, periph. *na bershi shi shigga*; 2. to a. e.g. error, guilt etc.; see **confess**.

admonish, see **warn**.

adoption, n. *yanchi*, to adopt, id.

adorn, tr. v. *gerta*.

adorned, adj. *gertache*, fem. *gertata*, pl. *gertatu*.

adornment, n. *wushewa*, *hulliu**, *ado*, the last used of trinkets, etc., also of dress; cf. F 216, 232, 238.

adulterer, n. *maizinachi*, *maizina*; the exalted One who made it (fire) for the adulterers *taala da ya yi wuta don mutanen zina*.

adulteress, n. *maizinachia*, *farika*, *fasika*, the last two used in the general sense of profligate.

adultery, n. *zina*, *zinu*, *tsaranchi*, *zamba*; to commit a., e.g. they profane marriage, they commit a. *sunu bata amre sunu yin zina*.

advance, intr. v. *yin gab(b)a*, to get in a. of *chin gab(b)a*, *rig(g)a*, *rig(g)aya*, *rig(g)agi*, e.g. he outran us *ya riggamu*.

advantage, n. *anfani*; of no a. *babu anfani*.

advantageous, adj. *da anfani*, *maianfani*.

adversary, n. *makiyi*, pl. *makiya*, *abokin gab(b)a*, *maikinji*.

advice, n. *dabara*, *ɗubara*, *shawora*.

advisable, adj. see **advantageous**.

advise, v. *yin dabara*.

advocate, n. (fig. = helper, defender) *maitaimako*; cf. F 79.

afar, adv. *nesa*, *dag(g)a nesa*, e.g. I saw him from a. *na hangeshi dagga nesa*; proverb, travel slowly though the journey be to a. off *taffia sanu ko na nesa*.

affair, n. *abu*, *abin*, pl. *abubua*, e.g. a sad a. *abu mugu*, *abin mugu*; avoid deceit and falsehood in your affairs *aber or berri tsalumchi da karia ga abubuanka*; *alameri*, e.g. a wonderful a. *alameringa*; the affairs (= the vicissitudes or changes) of this world *alamerin dunia*; *zamanchi*, *zama* (= condition of affairs), e.g. how are affairs with you in the city! *enna zaman gari*, ans. we have reason to be thankful for the condition of affairs *zaman gari da godia*; *huja*, *fuja* = affairs used as an excuse, e.g. unless on account of

- affairs *sai ko da huja*; cf. also *shag(g)ali*.
- affection**, see love.
- afflict**, tr. v. *yin wohal(l)a*.
- afflicted**, adj. (= one who endures affliction and toil) *maiwohal(l)a*, pl. *masuwohal(l)a*.
- affliction**, n. *wohal(l)a*, *maṣiba*.
- affright**, 1. n. *tsoro*; 2. tr. v. *bada tsoro*, *tsorata*.
- afoot**, adv. *akaffa*, *da kaffa*.
- afraid**, adj. I am a. *na yi tinzera*, he made him a. *ya bashi tsoro*; to be a. *jin tsoro*.
- afresh**, adv. see again.
- after**, 1. prep. *baya*, *bayan*, *baya ga*; 2. adj. *nabaya*, fem. *tabaya*.
- afternoon**, n. *laasar*, *laasar*; see under *rana*.
- afterwards**, adv. (= after this) *bayan wonan*, *bayan hak(k)a*, e.g. *bayan hakka ya komo* after this he came home; a. (in a looser sense) *nabaya*.
- again**, adv. *kuma*, *hario*, *na sabo*, *dada*, *dai*; the v. *kara* (add), e.g. I did not do so a. *ban kara yi hakka*.
- against**, prep. *gab(b)a ga*, *ga, gani**; to stumble a. *tuntube da*; a. his will (= perforce) *da tilas*.
- age**, n. 1. (= period or time) *yayi*, e.g. in the a. of the prophet *da yayin annabi*; 2. (= time that a person has lived) *shekara* or pl. *shekaru*, e.g. what is your a. *shekarunka nawa?* or *shekara nawa kana da rai?* or *shekara nawa tun haifu anka?*; I am eighteen years of a. *shekarana goma sha tokkos*.
- aged**, adj. 1. (= of a certain age), see prec. 2.; 2. (= advanced in years) *tsofo*, fem. *tsofua*, pl. *tsofi* or *tsofofi*; he is a. *yayinsa ya wuche*, lit. his time is past; see old.
- agent**, n. nouns denoting the a. may be formed from verbs, substantives or adjectives by prefixing *mai* or *ma*, e.g. *gudu* to run, *maigudu* a fugitive, *sasaka* to smooth wood, *masasaki* a carpenter; for further illustrations see under *mai* and *ma*.
- agitate**, tr. v. see shake.
- ago**, adv. *tun*, *tunda*, e.g. I was born eighteen years a., see age 2.; this was written twelve days a. *kwana sha biu tunda wonan anrubitashi*; long a. *da, daa, lokachin da, tundadewa, dawuri, dauri, tuntuni*.
- agree**, v. *gama*, *gamu*, *yerd*, *yin baki daia*, *tangas*, *saddu*, *jit(t)o*, *jet(t)o*, *damre magana*; agreed to *yerdade*.
- agreeable**, adj. 1. (= pleasant) *dadi*, *dadi*, *daidai*; 2. (= willing), e.g. if you are a. *en* (or *idan*) *ka yerd*, *en ka* (or *kana*) *so*.
- agreement**, n., to make an a. see agree; a. to work for a certain sum *sheradi*.
- ague**, n. see fever.
- ahead**, adv. *gab(b)a*.

aid, tr. v. *taya*, *yin taimako*, *tainya*, *tainyo*, *koro sauki*.

aid, n. *taimako*, *taimakawa*, *sauki*; (= a helper) *maitaimako*.

ail, v. e.g. what ails you? *mi ya sameka*.

ailment, n. see *sickness*.

ainhum, n. i.e. a disease of the little toe, *hambudiga*, *mage-duwa*; cf. also *kudumbia* a disease which may affect all the toes.

air, n. *iska*, *hiska*; *shan iska* is the Hausa idiom for to take a walk, e.g. let the two of us take a walk to enjoy the air *ni da kai mu biu mu yi yawo garin shan iska*.

air, v. see *to dry*.

alas, interj. *kaito*, *kaicho*, *kaitara*, *kaitaro*, *wai*, *wainia*.

albino, n. *zabia*, pl. *zabiyoyi*.

alien, n. *bare**; see also *stranger*.

alight, intr. v. *sabka*, *sapka*, *sauka*, *soka*, *sabki*, *sapki*, *shid(d)a*, *shid(d)a*.

alike, adj. *daidai*, *suasua*; they are all a. *duka daia ne, supasu daia*.

alive, adj. *da rai*; to keep a. *raia*, *raya*, e.g. may God preserve us a. *allah shi raiamu*.

alkoran, n. *kuran*, F 26.

all, adj. *duka*, *duk*, *dukachi*, *jema** , *kul(l)u**; a. together *tasashi*, *tarsashi*, *tarasashi*, *tarare*, fem. *tarara*, pl. *tararu*; a. of you *dukanku*, *tarinku*; a. men *mutane duka* or *dukan mutane*.

Allah, by *wolla*.

allay, tr. v. *futasda*, *kwantasda*.

allegory, n. *michali*, *mithali*, *misali*.

alliance, n. *gaya*.

alligator, n. *kada* or *kado*, pl. *kadodi*.

allow, tr. v. *ber(r)i*, *ber*, *yerda*, e.g. let me depart *berri ni taffi*, if you a. we will do so *en kana yerda zamu yi hakka*, a. me *bani yerji*.

alloy, n. *haiinchi*; unalloyed *babu haiinchi*, *safi*.

allure, tr. v. *rude*.

almighty, adj. *maiiko da kowa*, *maiyyawa*.

almond, n. *chanza** , *lanza**.

almost, adv. *kus(s)a*; it is a. finished *ya yi kussa kare* or *ya kussa kare*.

alms, n. *zak(k)a*, *kurdin gurasa*; almsgiving, n. *ṣadaqa*, to give a. v. *ṣadaqa*.

alone, adv. *kad(d)ai*, *kawoi*, *abin* followed by a personal pronoun, thus; he a. *abinshi*, I a. *ni daiana* or *ni kad(d)ai*; leave him a. *bershi daiansa*; they a. *daiansu*; a state of being a. *kad(d)aichi*.

alphabet, n. *arufu**; letter of the a. *harufi* or *hurufi*, pl. *harufai*.

already, adv. *nada*, *dazu*, *wuri*, *tunda wuri*.

also, adv. *kua*, usually placed after that which it connects.

altar, n. i.e. heathen a. *dakali**.

alter, v. 1. tr. *sake*, *sake*, *saki*, *saki*, *sauya*; 2. intr. *sauya*.

altered, particip. adj. *sauyaye*, fem. *sauyaya*, pl. *sauyayu*.

although, adv. *ko*, *koda*.

altogether, adv., cf. *fau*, also *faye* and *fi*.

always, adv. *koyaushe*, *kulyaushe*, *tutur*, *tutul*, *kul(l)um**, *da-kul(l)um**, *yini**, *chik(k)in kowane yayi**.

am, v. see *be*.

amazed, to be, *yin mamaki*, *jin mamaki*, *jin damua*.

ambuscade, n. see *seq*.

ambush, n. *kwanto*, *fak(k)o*, *hak(k)o*; to set an a. *yin fak(k)o*, place of or for an a. *mafak(k)a*.

amen, *amin**.

amidst, prep. *tsak(k)a*, *tsak(k)an*, *tsak(k)anin*.

amount, large, n. *chushe*.

amulet, see *charm*.

amuse, tr. v. *bada* or *sa murna*.

ancestor, n. *kaka*; ancestors *usali**, *awali**.

ancestry, see under *ba*.

and, conj. *da*, *wa**.

angel, n. *malika**, *maliki**, pl. *malaiku*.

anger, n. *fushi*, *haushi*, *kankanchi*, *takaichi*, *hasala**, *zafin zu-chia**.

angry, to be, v. *yin fushi*, *fusata*, *yin tsewa*; to be a. with *chichik(k)a*, *yin chichik(k)a*, *jin takaichi*; he feels a. *yana jin haushi*.

angry, adj. *da fushi*; one who is a. *maifushi*.

anguish, n. *azaba*, *zogi*, *zafin zogi**.

animal, n. *bis(s)a*, pl. *bis(s)ashe* or *bis(s)aje*; domestic animals *bis(s)ashen gid(d)a*, wild animals *bis(s)ashen daji*, *abin daji* or *naman daji*.

animosity, n. see *hate*.

ankle, n. *dundunia*, *idon kafa*, *idon sau*, pl. *ijian sau*; a. bone *dombubu*, *dongudu*, a. joint *dongudu*.

announce, tr. v. *gaya*, *fad(d)*, *labari**, *laberta*; to a. as a herald does the coming of some one *gabato*, *gabatowa*.

annoy, tr. v. *dame*, *dama*, *hai-yet(t)a*, *wohalda*, *wohalshe*, *sa wohal(l)a*, *alale*.

annoyance, n. *alale*, *wohal(l)a*.

anoint, e.g. with oil or water, tr. v. *shafa*, *shafe*.

anon, adv. *sai anjima*, *jima kad(d)an*.

another, pron. *woni*, fem. *wota*, pl. *wosu* and *wodansu*; often rendered with *kuma*, e.g. *woni kuma*.

answer, n. *amsa*, *jawabi**.

answer, v. *amsa*, *yin amsa*, to give an a. *karafafa**.

ant, n. *chocha*; different species are *zag(g)o*; small a. *sar(r)*; small stinging a. *tirmani*; small black a. *chinaka* or *chirnaka* or *tuma da gaia*; large black travelling a. *kwalkwas(s)a*, *kwarikwas(s)a* or *kwarukwas(s)a*; black stinging a. *turu-rua*; very small black a. *kur-*

- dafi*; small red a. *kiashi* or *kiyashi**; white ants (i.e. termites) *gara*, pl. *garani*; *gara* is also used of ants generally.
- antelope**, n. *barewa*, pl. *bareyi*; young a. *dan barewa*; diff. species are: large a. *gonki*, *mariri*, *kanki* or *kenki*; small red a. *gada*, pl. *gadu*; a. leucoryx *walwaji*; male of a large species *kisshimi*.
- ant-hill**, n. *suri*, pl. *sura*; the ants called *zag(g)o* and *gara* construct the ant-hills *sura*.
- anticipate**, v. *tsaitse*, e.g. I got before him *na tsaitseshi*
- antimony**, n. *kolli*, *kwolli*, *kwalli*, *tozali*; small skin bottle for holding a. *tandun tozali*, *gid(d)an kolli*.
- anvil**, n. *makera**.
- anxiety**, n. *machiata*, *matamache**.
- any**, indef. pron. *kowa*.
- anyhow**, indef. pronl. adv. *ko-kak(k)a*.
- anyone**, indef. pron. *kowa*; *kowane*, fem. *kowache*; *kowanene*.
- anything**, indef. pron. *komi*; not a., nothing *babu komi*, *ba komi*.
- anywhere**, indef. pronl. adv. *koenna*.
- apart from**, adv. *bamda*, *dabam dabam*.
- apartment**, n. (= room) *daki*, pl. *dakuna*.
- apparatus**, n. *kaya* or *kaia*, pl. *kayayeki*.
- appear**, intr. v. *bayen(n)a*, *god(d)u*.
- appearance**, n. *kama*, pl. *kamanu*.
- appease**, tr. v. *lalashi*, *lilashi*, *yin dadi*.
- appetite**, n. *kodai**, *kwadai**.
- appoint**, tr. v. (= to order, used of God) *kaderta*; (= to select for an office) *zaba*, *zabe*; appointed *zababe*, fem. *zababa*, pl. *zababu*.
- approach**, intr. v. *yi kus(s)a*, see **near**.
- approve of**, v. *yerda*; approved of, adj. *yardade*, fem. *yardada*, pl. *yardadu*, *tabbatachia*, e.g. *magana tabbatachia* approved, i.e. true words.
- apricot**, wild, n. *tsada**.
- apron**, n. *bante*, pl. *bantuna*.
- Arab**, gent. n. *ture*, *bature* or *baturi*, pl. *turawa*; an A. *balaraba*, pl. *larabawa*; that which pertains to the Arabs *turanchi*; the Arabic language *turanchi*.
- are**, v. *ne*, *che*, *ke*, *ki*; phr. there a. *ina*, *akoi*, *akwoi*; there a. to me, i.e. I have *sun yi mani*, *ayi mani*.
- aright**, to direct a. *daidaita*.
- arise**, intr. v. *falaka*, *tashi*, *taso*, *tsira*, *tsire*, *tsiro* or *chira*, *chire*, *chiro*.
- arm**, n. 1. (i.e. the limb) *damshi*; the fore-arm *gab(b)a*; the upper part of the a. *damichi* or *damshi*, pl. *damasa*; 2. arm (i.e. weapon), see **arms**.
- armhole**, n. *hamata*, pl. *hamatu*.
- armlet**, n. gen. *kundeg(g)e* or

- kwondeg(g)e*; a. made of metal *karafa*; a. made of *kanwa* or *natron kar(r)au* or *kar(r)o*, pl. *karaurawa*, *ungurnu*; a. made of plaited grass, worn by children *dirumbua*.
- armour**, n. chain or iron a. *sulke*; a horseman's a. *kumakum(m)i*.
- armpit**, n. *hamata*, pl. *hamatu*.
- arms**, coll. (= weapons, etc.) *makami*; battle a. *kayan daga*, *kayan yaki*.
- around**, adv. *kewoye*, *gewoye*, prep. *kewoyen*, *gewoyen*.
- arouse**, tr. v. *tada*, *tashe*, *tayes**, *tayesda**.
- arrange**, tr. v. *gara*, *gera*; to a. the hair (= to comb or dress the hair) *gerta*, *gertawa*.
- arranged**, adj. *shiriyaye*, fem. *shiriyaya*, pl. *shiriyayu*; *gertache**, fem. *gertata**, pl. *gertatu**.
- arrive at**, v. *is(s)a*, *is(s)o*, *wata**.
- arrogance**, n. *foma*, *fululu**.
- arrogant**, n. one who is a. *maifoma*, pl. *masufoma*.
- arrow**, n. *kibia*, *chibia**, *shib(b)a**, pl. *kibo*, *gora*, pl. *gororo* and *gorina*; bow and arrows *bakan kibia*; quiver for arrows *kworin kibia*; special names of a. poison are *tumia* or *tinia*, *zabgui*, *uwal deffi*, gen. *deffi*; e.g. they (the arrows) are poisoned *sunu da deffi*. Arrows are made from the reed-like plants named *kemru*, *sheme*, *gazara**. A. notch *goji*.
- art**, n. *gon(n)i*.
- article**, the indefinite, see a.
- as**, adv. *kam(m)ya*, *yedda*, *kaua*, *ya**, *yi**, *yina**, *wa**; = when *da*.
- ascend**, v. *shirga*, *hawa* or *hau*, constr. with *bissa* or *bissa ga*; e.g. he ascended the hill *ya hau bissa tudu*.
- asclepias gigantea**, n. *tumfafa*, pl. *tumfafi*; *bambana* (!).
- ashamed**, to be, intr. v. *jin kumia*.
- ashes**, n. *toka*, pl. *tokuna*; hot a. *rufushi*, *rubshi*, *rabchi**.
- aside**, e.g. I turn a. from the path *ina ras(s)iwa dagga bissa hainya*; *abaya*, *ga baya**.
- ask**, v. *roko*, *roka*, *yin tambaya*; one who asks *maitamaya*; to a. of or from *roko*, *roka*; to a. favour from *dogare**.
- asking**, continued a., n. *kokonto*.
- ass**, n. *jaki*, fem. *jakainya*, pl. *jakai* or *jakuna*; large male a. *bingi*, diff. species have the foll. names; a. with red body *jinrau*; red a. *aura*, reddish brown a. *id(d)ubar*, tawny a. *orraki* and *dan orraki*; large black a. *jaba**; white a. *mug(g)o*; a spec. of wild a. is also found called *kaf(f)on mariri*.
- assault**, tr. v. (as in war) *firmaki*.
- assemble**, v. *gayya*, *tara*, intr. *taru*.
- assembled**, to be, *taru*, particip. *tarare*.
- assembly**, n. *gayya* or *gaia aluma**; royal assembly-room *fag(g)e*, *dandali*.

assent, v. *kada kai, ged(d)a kai*.

N.B. assent is very frequently expr. by *keau* as in the phr. *da keau*.

assist, tr. v. *taya, yin taimako*.

assistance, n. *taimako, taimakawa, sauki*; a. in war *gudunmawa*.

assure, to a. a person of the reality of anything *gaskata* or *gaskanta*.

assured, to be a. of (= to feel sure) *tabbata* or *tabbeta*, e.g. are you a. of this? *ka tabbeta?* cf. seq.

assuredly, adv. *da gaskia, babu shakka, babu wawa**; he is a. there *ya tabbeta nan*; he is a. a heathen *ko tabbeta kafiri ne* D 24, cf. prec.

asthma, n. *fuka*.

astonished, to be, v. *jin damua, jin mamaki, yin mamaki*.

astonishment, n. *damua*. N.B. a common exclamation expressing astonishment is *hubba!*

astringent medicine, n. *magani maikama chik(k)i*.

at, prep., e.g. *awuri chan* at that place; this 'at' is often prefixed to *gare, chik(k)in* and *bissa*; *ga* (*gare* with pronouns), e.g. *ga gid(d)a* at home; *dag(g)a*, e.g. *shi ne dagga nan* he is at that spot, i.e. he is there; *gun**, e.g. *gunchan = awuri chan*.

atmosphere, n. *dunia**, *duniya**.

attain, to a. to *same, samu, kai*.

attempt, v. *kokari, yin kokari*;

A 26 *ka yi kokari rakia* do thou a. or endeavour to escort.

attend, to a. to (= to look carefully into) *lura*; to listen to *ji, saurara*, cf. **attention** (2).

attendant, n. an a. on one sick *majinata**; the attendants of a king *fadawa*.

attention, 1. n. (= serious thought) *hankula, hankali*; *rua*, e.g. it is no matter worth my a. *ba* or *babu ruana*. 2. to pay a. to *tuna*, constr. with *da, maida himma*; to give a. to what is said *ji, saurara*; give a. with your ears (= incline your ears to) *ka kakartsa kunuwa*.

attentively, to look at a. *tso-kachi*.

attest, v. *shaida, yin shaida, kai shaida*.

attested, particip. adj. *shaidade*, fem. *shaidada*, pl. *shaidadu*.

augment, tr. and intr. v. *dad(d)a* often pronounced as *ded(d)i*.

aunt, n. *gogo**.

authority, n. *iko*, pl. *ikoki*.

avarice, n. *zergi, tsalimi, tsalumi, rowa*.

avaricious, adj. *mairowa*.

avaricious, to be *yin tsalumchi*.

avenge, tr. v. see **rama**.

avoid, v. *kalmas(s)a, kalma(s)she*.

avoidance, i.e. of a missile, etc. *gochia, guchia*.

await, = to wait for one *jira, jirache*.

awake, intr. v. *falaka, falka, falkawa, falga*.

away, to get a. (= escape) *fichi*.

axe, n. *gatari*; small ornate a. *kells*; a. for cutting stones *dundurusu*; a. with broad blade *barandem(m)i*, *sitaka*.

axe-handle, n. *bakin gatari*.

baboon, n. *bika*, pl. *bikoka*, *gogo*, *gata* (?) or *gatan biri* (?).

baby, n. *juriri*, *jarili*, *yarili*, *jinjiri*.

bachelor, n. *gobro*, *goro**, *gobso**, *balaguro*; *namiji da shara*, lit. one who has to sweep his own dwelling.

back, n. *baya*, *baia*, *jenfi**, hence *bada jenfi* to put to flight; phr. on the b. *ringingine*, on the b. of *reran*.

back, e.g. to come b. *komo*, *komu*; to go b. *koma*, *koma*; to move b., intr. v. *gusa*, *gulgusa*, *gurugusa*.

backbite, tr. v. *chim* (*chin*) *baya*.

backbone, n. *tsotso*, *ka(s)shin* *tsotso*.

backward, adv. (= on the back) *ringingine*.

backwards, adv. *baibai*, e.g. they walked b. *su taffi baibai*.

bad, adj. *mugu*, fem. *mugunia*, pl. *miagu*; *numuna** or *munona**; used of corn *tsad(d)eri*; corn gone b. is called *birtuntuna*; b. man *dan dunia*, b. woman *jujai*; the expr. *fari ko bak(k)i* often = good or bad.

bad, to go b. *ruba*, as meat or fruit; to render b., to spoil *ribachi*.

badger, n. *takas*; *dege*, pl. *dego-gi* (?).

badness, n. *mugunta*.

baft, grey b. *akoko*.

bag, n. The language is rich in words for b. A small b. *aljifi* or *aljifa*, pl. *aljifu* or *aljifuna*; b. made of grass *ashasha*; b. for cowries *birgami*; woman's b. made of grass *burima*; small b. for carrying salt *chukurufa**; b. of feminine luggage *fago** or *pago**; leathern b. for camels, etc. *gurara**; large skin b. for cowries *jikka* or *zikka*, pl. *jikkuna* or *jikoki*; *kan-kandi*; b. holding 20,000 cowries *kororo*; very small b. *lalita**; long, narrow salt-b. *langi*; a sort of leathern pouch *sabira**; skin b. or bottle *salka* or *salha*, pl. *salkuna*; small leathern or grass b. *sarita*; large b. for holding rice *sub(b)olo* or *saulo*; leathern narrow-mouthed b. *sulkumi* or *surukumi*; large skin b. *taiki* or *taika*, pl. *taikuna*; small goat-skin water-b. *tandarara*; small provision-b. *tanura**.

bag, tr. v. (= to catch or kill game, etc.) *kama*, *ka(s)she*.

baggage, n. *kaya* or *kaia*, pl. *kayayeki*.

bagpipe, n. *algaita**, *algaitu**.

bail, see *surety*.

bake, tr. v. *tuya*, *gassa*, the latter also spec. used of baking bread, e.g. *ya gassa gurasa*; baked (i.e. fully baked = the Engl.

- colloquial 'done') *nen(n)a*, *nen(n)ane* or *nun(n)ane*, pl. *nen(n)anu* or *nun(n)anu*.
- balance**, n. = pair of scales *maau-na*, *maauuni*, *mizani*; *abin awo*.
- balanites aegyptiaca**, n. *adua*, *adwa*.
- bald**, adj. *maikwumbe*; b. on the top of the forehead *maisanko*.
- baldness**, n. 1. natural b. *korā*; 2. b. due to shaving *korā*, *kundumi* or *kundumin kai*; cf. prec.
- ball**, n. *makodi*; a small b. *dan kodi*; b. or brick made of mud *tubali*; b. of the eye *kwayan ido*; (= bullet) *arṣas*.
- ballad**, n. *waka*, *waka*.
- bamboo**, a sort of, n. *kwangi*, *tukurua**.
- banana**, n. 1. the b. tree *ayaba*; 2. the b. fruit, id.
- band**, n. 1. (= company or gathering) *taro* or *taru*, pl. *tarori*; 2. (= strip for binding) cf. seq.
- bandage of any kind**, n. *rawani*, pl. *rawuna*.
- bandit**, n. *maife(s)she*, pl. *maifas(s)a*.
- bandy-legged**, adj. *gwami*.
- bank**, n. (= edge or margin) *baki*; b. of a river is expr. by *gefe*, *bakin rua* or *gechen kogi*; a steep b. *refe*.
- banner**, n. see **flag**.
- baobab**, n. *kuka*.
- bar**, n. (= a rod or stick of wood, iron, etc.) *sanda*, pl. *sanduna*; a b. of iron *sanda ta karifi*; b. used to close a doorway *gagara bado*.
- barbarian**, n. 1. (of men in a rude, uncivilised state) *baibai*, pl. *baibaiyi* or *baubawa*; 2. (= cruel) *da mun(n)i*.
- barbarity**, n. (= cruelty) *mun(n)i*.
- barbarous**, see **barbarian**.
- barber**, n. *manzani**; a hair-dresser is *maikis(s)o*.
- bare**, see **naked**.
- bareness**, n. *wofi*.
- bargain**, v. *taya*, *taia*, *tayi*, *yin tayi*, *yin chiniki*.
- bargain**, n. (= bargaining) *chini-ki*; a discussion before making a b. *alwashi*; to haggle over a b. *yin chiniki*; to make an offer in bargaining, see prec.; a b. (= cheap) *da araha*; into the b. (= besides, as well) *bamda wonan*.
- bark**, n. (of a tree) *fata**, *gunda* (edible), *bamban**, *barwon* itache*.
- bark**, tr. v. (= to strip off b.) *kware*, *kwari*.
- bark**, intr. v. (of dogs, etc.) *hafshi*, *hapshi*, *habshi*, *haushi*, *hamshi**.
- barking**, n. (of dogs, etc.) *tsuwa*.
- barley**, n. *shaair**.
- barn**, n. *rumbu*, *rafonia*; a large b. *rufogo*.
- barrel of a gun**, n. *baki*, a double-barrelled gun *bindiga da baki biu*.
- barren**, adj. (used of the female sex) *reshin haifua*, *karara*, *ma-auria*; a b. field *sab(b)ura**, *sab(b)ara**.

barrenness, n. (of woman, etc.)
tauria.

barricade, n. *kagara* or *kegarua*,
pl. *kagaru*.

barrier, n. *kaffi*.

barter, n. *chiniki*; to b. *yin chiniki*, cf. *bargain*.

base, adj. (= of low worth) *banza*.

base, n. 1. (= lowest part or bottom of anything) *kalkashi*, *kalikashi* or *karkashi*; 2. (= support or foundation of anything) *gusu*, *guzu*, which is used physically and also figuratively.

bashful, adj. see seq.

bashfulness, n. *kumya* or *kumia*;
to feel bashful *jin kumya*, e.g. when asking you for this, I felt bashful *da rokeka wonan na ji kumya*.

basin, n. *kwachia**.

basis, n. see *base* (2).

basket, n. The following are thus distinguished: large b. for salt *adila* or *adilan kaya*; large b. or pannier made of grass *gufa* or *gufata*; a kind of shallow b. *lefe*; small grass b. used in making bread *marari*; large grass b. *sanfo* or *samfo*, pl. *sanfuna*. See under *bag*.

bastard, adj. *sheg(g)e* or *shege*,
dan farika.

bat, n. Diff. species of bats are: *kadakara**, *tatapara**; small b. *biribiri*; large-sized b. *je-magi*.

battle, n. *fama*, *fad(d)a*, *yaki*, the

latter is also the proper word for war, q.v.

battle, to draw up in line of b. *jadaga*.

battlefield, n. *kangan fad(d)a*.

bawl, n. *yin kuka*, *yin ufu*.

be, v. 1. *ne* with masc. subject, *che* with fem. subj., *ke* with either; they may follow the subj. but are often found at the end of their clause; e.g. he is truthful *shi ne mutum maigaskia*; she is very beautiful *ita kearukearwa che*; both of them are old *su biri tosofi su ke*; the above chiefly express the simple copula, but see below (3). 2. *ka(s)shi*, *ka(s)she**, these are used where emphasis is laid on the fact or continuance of existence; they are frequently used in written, but seldom in colloquial Hausa. 3. *akoi* or *akwoi*, implying real existence, there is, are, was, were, e.g. are there elephants in this place? *akwoi giwaye a garinga?* ans. there are *akwoi*: *ke* is often found with *nan* in this sense, e.g. there was a certain jerboa *woni kurege ke nan = akwoi woni kurege*.

bead, n., a large white b. in a set of black *alama*, pl. *alamomi*; round blue b. *gal(l)an kim-buri* (?); a large white seed used as a b. *gimba*, pl. *gimbi*; a small red b. *rigigi*; a blue cylindrical b. worn by women *samfalwa*; coll. beads *fari da-*

*bino, kasba**; small red beads *dimbujin zufa*; red beads *jini* (*jinin kafiri*); beads made from black seeds *kantururua*; necklace of beads *kutofi*; string of beads worn round loins *kwot-(t)ana*; red beads *murjan**; large red b. *murjanin tudu*; prayer beads *tasbi*, pl. *tasbai*; woman's girdle of beads *tsak(k)ia**; small beads worn by women on forehead *zwakia*.

beak, n. *maikoto, bakin tsuntsua*.

beam, n., b. above door *almannani**; b. or post stuck in the ground to support a roof *dirka, jigo*, pl. *jiguna*; b. for pumping water *jigo, kutara**.

bean, n., red edible b. *tsereria*; small b. *kwomo*; coll. beans *wake*; beans ground up and cooked in water are called *tubani* or *tabani*.

bear, 1. (= to carry) *kai, shid(d)i**, constr. with *da*; 2. (= to produce their kind, of animals, trees, plants, etc.) *haife*; to b. in the ear as corn *goiyo* or *goyo*; 3. (= to endure) *jimri*, (= to b. with one) *jimrache**.

beard, n. *geme*; b. of goat *rairo*.

bearded, a b. man *maigeme*, pl. *masugeme*.

beardless, adj. *shagiri*, pl. *shagirai*.

beast, n. *bis(s)a*, pl. *bis(s)ashe* or *bis(s)aje, dabba* or *dabbo*, pl. *dabboni* or *dabbobi*; wild b. *naman daji, firdi**; wild beasts *bis(s)ashen daji*.

beat, tr. v. 1. *buga, doke, duka, dirka*, the last sometimes written *tsirka, kankanta**; 2. to b. down, as earth etc. *taka, tak(k)i, tsak(k)i, tsatsaga*; 3. to b. or tread grain *daka, dak(k)a, dadaka, suabe*, tak(k)i, tingama*; 4. to b. a drum *yin worigi*, see *drum*; 5. to b. in war, intr. *yin nas(s)ara*, trans. *chi*; 6. to b. in a game *chi*, e.g. *na chika* I have beaten you; cf. seqq.

beaten, part. adj. in sense of prec. 3. *tak(k)ake*, fem. *tak(k)aka*, pl. *tak(k)aku*.

beating, n. (= a defeat in war) *artai*.

beautiful, adj. *keau, da keau, maikeau* or *maikiyo*; very b. *keaukeawa*.

beauty, n. 1. of persons and things *keau*; 2. of dress, ornaments etc. *ado*; great b. *keaukeawa*.

because, conj. *don, chewa* or *chiwa, dominchewa, gama**, *wachananka**, *zama**; *chewa* and *dominchewa* are used in written, but not in colloquial Hausa.

because of, prep. *domin, don, sabbada*, sabbado* or sabboda**, *zama**, e.g. *zaman kushewa*, F 90; b. of me *domina*, b. of him *dominsa*.

beckon, v. *ged(d)a*, to b. with the head (in token of assent) *ged(d)a kai, kada kai*.

become, intr. v. (= to come to

- be) *zama, zama, kawa**, e.g. she taught him so that in course of years he became a highly accomplished mallam *ta koya masa da shekara zua shekara ya zama malami mai-karatu dayawa.*
- become**, intr. v. (= to befit, to be proper) *kamata, kamache.*
- becoming**, adj. (= lawful, ceremonially right) *halal, halas* or *hallata, daidai*; it is b. *ya yi daidai.*
- bed**, n. *gad(d)o*, pl. *gad(d)aji* or *gad(d)ashi, karaga**; to go to b. v. *kwanta*; a b. of mud *dakali*; cf. seq.
- bed-clothes**, coll. n. *mayafi.*
- bee**, n. *kudan zumua*, pl. *kudashen zumua*; spec. large kind of b. *burbura*, small black b. *gal(l)a** and *rekua*; an edible part of the b. *gal(l)a*; young of b. *gudajen zumua.*
- beef**, n. *naman sa, naman shanu.*
- beehive**, n. *ainya, butumi*, pl. *butuma, gid(d)an zumua.*
- beeswax**, n. *dankon zumua, kakin zumua.*
- beetle**, n. spec. large, black, long-legged b. *gorgunguma*; stinking b. *gwana, gwano*; scarlet, woolly b. *malufi* or *mulufi.*
- befall**, intr. v. *same, sama**, *samo*; it befell him *ya sameshi.*
- befit**, intr. v. *kamata, kama**, *kamache, daidai.*
- before**, adv. of time *dafari, tukun* or *tukun(n)a, nadā, kama nadā, kamandā, wuri* and *dawuri* or

- dawuri*; in former time *loka-chin daa*; see *ever.*
- before**, conjunctive adv. = b. that *kan**, *kam** before the labial b, *kana**, *kanda**, e.g. finish this b. (that) you do that *kare wonan kana ka yi wonchan*, b. it part you *kanda ta rabika* B 57; *tun* and *tunda* are employed with negative clauses, e.g. b. (that) he died he composed a book *tunda bai mutu ka ya yi woni litafi.*
- befriend**, tr. v. see *assist.*
- beg**, v. 1. (= to entreat, supplicate) *biko, roko*; 2. (= to ask a thing of, as alms) *barra, yin barra, roko (?)*; I beg pardon *gafera* or *gafera mani* or *mini.*
- beget**, tr. v. (of the male) *haife.*
- beggar**, n. *maibarra, mobarrachi, mairoko, almajiri*, fem. *almajira*, pl. *almajirai, gardi**; spec. an idle b. *maikasala*, a b. on the road *masarchi*, a b. who sings a great man's praises *maabba*, one who lives by begging food *kwarika* or *kwaraka.*
- beggar**, to wander far alone as a b. intr. v. *kas(s)ada*.*
- begging**, n. *marokachi, rokachi*.*
- begin**, v. *fara, yin fara, dora, soma*, e.g. when he began to speak *da ya fara chewa* or *da ya fara yin magana.*
- beginning**, participial n. *farawa*, he who is the b. of (my) writing *farawa na karatu* D 1; *ferko, tafferko, mafuri*, from the

- b. of the world *dagga mafarin dunia*.
- beguile**, tr. v. *rude*.
- behave**, intr. v. (= to turn out, prove) *zama*, e.g. *ni zama da hankali* I shall b. wisely; *maida**.
- behaviour**, n. (= character, conduct) *hal(l)i*.
- behead**, tr. v. *yenke* G 3, *debe kai*.
- behind**, adv. *baya* or *baia*, *abaya*, *dag(g)a baya*; that which is b. *abin baya*.
- behind**, prep. *baya* or *baya ga*, with suff. prons. *gare*, e.g. b. them *baya garesu*.
- behold**, v. *duba*, *dubo*, *gan(n)i*, *tsokachi*, *yin kal(l)o**, exclam. phr. b. *duba!* b. him or it *gāshi!* b. her or it *gāta!*
- belabour**, tr. v. *buga*; cf. *beat*.
- belated**, to be, i.e. to be late in arriving *yin yauchin zak(k)ua*, *makara**.
- belch**, intr. v. *gesa*, *geasa*.
- belief**, n. 1. (= creed) *addini*; 2. (= credence) *bangaskia*.
- believe**, v. to b. a fact *gaskata*, *gaskanta*, to b. a person *bada gaskia*, *yin gaskia* constr. with prep. *ga*, to b. in *hankora**, *kas(s)ada** as to b. in God.
- believed in**, particip. adj. *yerdade*, fem. *yerdada*, pl. *yerdadu*.
- believer**, n. *mumini** or *munmoni**.
- bell**, n. small b. attached to horse *gorje*, *gurje*, *kar(r)au* or *kar(r)o*, pl. *karaurawa*; small bells on horses' heads *chikasoro*.

- bellow**, intr. v. *ruri*.
- bellows**, n. *mafuri*, *mafurin wuta*, *zigazigai*, *zigazigai* or (F 188) *zugazuganta**; a man who blows b. *mazigi*; the stick of the b. *maziga*.
- belly**, n. *chik(k)i*; cf. *abdomen*.
- belong**, intr. v. 1. (= to be the property of) *na*, fem. *ta* with the forms of the v. to be, e.g. this book belongs to Hassan *litafi nan na hassan ne*, the horses b. to the king *dawaki su ke na sariki*, that stick belongs to this man *sanda chan ta mutume nan che*, it belongs to me *nawa ne* or *ni ke da shi*; 2. (= to be native of) e.g. he belongs to Kano *shi dan kano ne*.
- belongings**, n. (= property) *dukia*, and in a still more general sense *abubua*.
- beloved**, n. *masoyi*, fem. *masoya*, pl. *masoyu*, *lele** or *nalele**; a thing b. *abin kamna*.
- below**, 1. adv. *a kas(s)a*, *akass*, *baya**, *baia**; 2. prep. *kalkashin*, *kalikashin*, *karkashin*.
- belt**, n. *maratayi*, *abin damre*, *madamre*; b. for sword *hamilu**.
- bench**, n. *kushera*, pl. *kusheru*.
- bend**, tr. v. *kalmas(s)a**, *kalma(s)she**, *karkat(t)a*, *kakartsa*, *tankosa*, *tankwas(s)a*, *tonkwoshe* (?); spec. *karkat(t)a* or *kakartsa* with or without *kune* (ear) to b. down (the ear) in order to attend to what is

- said; *tunkushe* to b. the leg; *duka* intr. to b. so as to touch the earth with the head; cf. bent.
- bending**, n. *laudi**.
- beneath**, adv. and prep. see below.
- beneficial**, adj. see seq.
- benefit**, n. *anfani*; of b. (= beneficial) *da anfani, maianfani*.
- benevolence**, n. (= an act of b.) *keauta, abin keauta*.
- benign**, see **kind**.
- bent**, adj. *gangare* or *gangara*, pl. *gangaru*; b. or tottering, as of a wall, *karikache*, fem. *karikata*, pl. *karikatu*; a man with a b. arm *mailaushi*, with a b. leg *gwami*, old man with b. back *takoko*.
- bent**, to be, *yin gangare*.
- Benué**, the river, pr. n. *tsada* or *ruan tsada*.
- benumbed**, to be, intr. v. *gage** or *gaga**; my foot is b. *dela ya kama kaffata*.
- bereavement**, n. *kewa* or *kiwa*.
- bereft** (= devoid of) in phrases like b. of sense *maras, reshi*, e.g. *marashankali*, b. of shame *maraskumia*, b. of strength *reshin karifi*; see under **ras(s)a**.
- beseech**, v. see **ask**.
- beseem**, v. see **beft**.
- beside**, prep. (= at the side of) *wojen, awojen*; in a looser sense, *kus(s)a ga, tare da*.
- besides**, prep. *bamda, baya, bayan, baia, baiyan, baya ga*.
- best**, adj. this can only be expr. by the phr. *ya fi duka, mafi duka*, or *ya fi kowa*; cf. Hausa Gr. p. 46, § 5.
- betray**, tr. v. (= to deliver up treacherously) no special term, it may be expr. by phr., e.g. he betrayed him *ya badashi da munafuchi* or *ya badashi yana yin munafuchi*.
- betroth**, tr. v. *rik(k)e, rik(k)a, rik(k)i*.
- better**, adj. 1. gen. *dama*, e.g. it were b. *ya yi dama*; (= superior) *mafifichi* foll. by *dag(g)a* to expr. than; *fi*, e.g. it is b. so *ya fi*; *gara*, e.g. it is b. *gara*, it is b. so *gara hakka*, it is b. for me to stop *ni gara en tsaya*; *kiriki*, e.g. he is a b. man *ya yi kiriki*; 2. a b. state of health is expr. by means of *dama, afua, rongomi*, e.g. to feel b. *jin dama, jin rongomi*, to get b. *samu dama, samu rongomi*, also by *wartsaka**; cf. Hausa Gr. p. 45.
- between**, 1. adv. *tsak(k)a, tsak(k)ani, zakani**, e.g. he was b. *shi ne tsak(k)a* (or *atsak(k)a*); 2. prep. *tsak(k)an, tsak(k)anin*, e.g. b. them *tsak(k)aninsu*.
- bewail**, v. 1. intr. *kuka, yin kuka* G 4; 2. tr. expr. by 1. with preps. given under on **account** of.
- bewailing**, 1. particip. n. (= the act of b.) *kukawa*; 2. coner. (= wail) *kuka*.
- beware of**, v. *yin hankali* or *tuna**, *tunane** constr. with

prep. *da*, e.g. b. of that log lest you fall over it *ka tuna da ichen nan sai ka fadi bissa*.

bewilder, tr. v. *dame*.

bewildered, to be, intr. *damu*, *jin damua*; he was b. *ya batasda kainsa*.

bewilderment, n. *damua*; owing to his b. he left the path *sab-boda damua* (or *jin damua*) *ya rache hainya*.

bewitch, v. *yin mayi**, *yin mayanchi**.

beyond, 1. adv. of place *baya*, *baia*; (=further on, at a distance) *nesa*, *da*, or *dagga* or *na nesa*, e.g. that which lies b. *abin baya*; 2. prep. *baya*, *baia*, more usually *bayan*, *baian*, *ketaren*; 3. fig. (=surpassing) *faskare*, *fi*, e.g. it is b. me *ya faskareni* or *ya fini*, b. man *ya fi mutum*.

beyond, to go, v. e.g. he went b. sea *ya ketare gulbi*.

bid, v. 1. (=to command) *hakumche*, *hakumta*; 2. (=to offer a price for) *taya*, *taia*, *tayi*, *yin tayi*.

big, adj. 1. (of size) *baba*, pl. *mainya*; also fig. (=important), e.g. a b. man *bab(b)an mutum* or *mutum babā*; 2. (=pregnant) *da chik(k)i*; 3. (=pompous, arrogant) *da giriman kai*, *maifoma*, pl. *masufoma*.

bill, n. *amai*.

bill, n. 1. (=account) *lisafi* or *lesafi*; 2. (=beak) *makoto*.

bind, tr. v. 1. *damre*, *darime*, *dauve*, *damra** or *darmi**, *sar-*

kafe, *tanke**; spec. to b. fast *tsuke*; to b. grass with cords so as to form roof *yamche* or *yamchi*; to b. up tight *sufuri*, *sufurchi* or *sufili*.

binding, particip. n. *sarkafewa*; boards or stiff covers for b. books *bango*, *taderishi*.

bird, n. *tsuntsua* or *zunzua*, pl. *tsuntsaye* or *zunzaye*. The following are some of the commonest Hausa birds, most of which have not yet been identified: a small sparrow-like b. *bairwan allah*, a small b. *bambami*, small white diving b. *benema**, small black mosquito-eating b. *berbira*, large b. said to drink once only in two days *burtu*, large white-breasted wading b. *chakagi*, a black b. which settles on donkeys' backs *cherki*, red b. (plover ?) *danraguwa*, small edible water b. *dunia*, large carnivorous b. (eagle ?) *duki*, small partridge-like b. *fakara*, white red-beaked b. (wild goose ?) *gaba*, pl. *gabobi*, yellow-breasted b. *gado*, large red-beaked light-blue b. *gagafa*, crested crane, i.e. balearica pavonina *gamraka*, *gauraka*, *goraka*, *garmaka*, honey-guide b. *gunda**, large black and white crow *hankaka*, pl. *hankaki*, *kankaku*; pigeon-like b. with red rim round eyes *hasbia* or *harbia*, b. larger than *hankaka* black and white plumage *jinjimaka*, large black

- edible b. *kadabkara*, large black downward-gazing b. *kakiganin allah*, large aquatic nocturnal b. *madundumi**, small b. feeding on guinea-corn *marai*, a b. whose note is heard at evening *rigo maza*, white red-footed b. (dotterel?) *tak(k)abod(d)o*, small b. (like *baiwan allah*) *tsada*, large black b. *tuji*, small white-breasted b. (like *baiwan allah*) *zazewa*, long-beaked water b. *zulbi*.
- bird lime**, n. *dankon tsuntsua*.
- birth**, n. 1. (= coming into life) *haifua*; since your b. *tun haifuanka* = since you were born; 2. (= the act of bringing forth) *haifua*, *jego*; 3. (= condition or rank with respect to b.) *zama*, e.g. his b. and parentage were as follows, his father was learned and so was his mother *zamansa ke nan ubansa malami ne uwansa kua ita che malama*.
- birth**, to give b. to, tr. v. *haife*, *haife*, *yin jego*.
- birth**, a woman about to give b. to a child *karembiki*.
- birth**, untimely b. *katamtamwa*.
- birthday**, n. *rana ta haifua*, *rana haifua*.
- birthplace**, n. *mahaifua*, phr. *wuri enda akahaifa*.
- bit**, n. 1. (of a horse) *lizami*, *lezami*; 2. (= small piece, fragment) *guzura*, pl. *guzure*.
- bit**, the strap tied to the b., n. *kamazoro*.
- bitch**, n. *kar(r)ia*.
- bite**, n. *chizo*.
- bite**, tr. v. *chizo* or *yin chizo*, *chiji**; of snakes etc. (= to sting) *sare*, *tab(b)a*, *halbi*.
- bitter**, adj. *da doachi*, *da dachi*; b. like lemons *da yami*, *madachi*.
- bitterness**, n. *doachi* or *dachi*.
- black**, adj. *bak(k)i*, fem. *bak(k)a*, pl. *babaku*; very b. *bak(k)i ker(r)in*; a b. horse *akawali*, *chicherro*.
- blacken**, intr. v. (= to become or turn b.) *zama bak(k)i*, *sauya* or *sawoya bak(k)i*.
- blacksmith**, n. *maikira* or *makera*, fem. *makeria*, pl. *muk(k)ira*; the fem. = blacksmith's wife.
- bladder**, n. *mafusara*, *jikka**.
- blade**, n. 1. (of corn etc.) *karamami*, *karmami*, *kara**, *tofi**; 2. (of knife) *karifin wuka*; 3. (= broken b. of sword) *ku-duru*.
- blame**, n. 1. (= finding fault, reproof) *zami**; 2. (= fault, guilt) *laifi*.
- blame**, tr. v. 1. (= to reprove, check) *kwaba* or *kwobe**, *yin tsawa**; 2. (= to impute guilt) *buda laifi*.
- blameless**, adj. *maraslaifi*, *babu laifi*.
- blanket**, n. *bergo* or *burgo*.
- blaspheme**, v. *yin alfasha*, *yin suabon allah*.
- blasphemy**, n. *alfasha magana*, *maasai**.
- blaze**, n. (of fire) *zakami**.
- bleaching**, chalk used for, n. *alli*.

bleat, intr. v. *kára* and gen. *yin kuka*.

bleed, v. intr. *tsaga* or phr. *zub(b)a da jini*; tr. *ja jini* or *fit(t)a jini* constr. with prep. *ma*.

bleeding, particip. adj. see **bloody**.

bleeding sickness, n. *tsagia*; b. from nose *hab(b)o*.

blemish, n. 1. material or physical b. *aibu, lahani*, e.g. a b. in the eye *lahani ga ido*; b. consisting in a spot of different colour in cloth etc. *sofani*; 2. moral b. *aibu*.

bless, v. *barka, alberka* used with *yi* or *wa*, e.g. he blessed *ya wa alberka*.

blessing, n. *albarka* or *alberka, sal(l)ati**.

blighted, adj. applied to corn, *kuturu*, pl. *kutare*.

blind, adj. *kafo*, pl. *kafi, makafo*, pl. *makafi, ido kishimi** or *idon kishimi** or *kishimin* ido*.

blind, tr. v. = to make b. *makamta*.

blindness, n. *makamchi, makamta, makopchi*.

blink, intr. v. *rumche, rumtsi*.

bliss, n. *nima*; cf. D 75, 78, F 222, 223.

blister, n. 1. i.e. something to cause blistering *farsa, farisa*; 2. of the skin *šali, šoli* or *šale*.

blister, v. 1. tr. *farcha*; 2. intr. = to be blistered *šali, šoli, šale*, and *yin šali*.

blood, n. *jini*.

bloody, adj. = bleeding or blood-

stained *da jini*; his face was all b. (or covered with blood) *fuskansa duka sai jini*.

blossom, n. *fure*, pl. *furori* or *furaye*.

blot, n. e.g. of ink *dole* or *dun-gule*.

blot out, v. *yin maimai, shashafe*, the latter used figuratively in the passive E 21 (God) shall cause others (who live thus) to be blotted out *ya sa inkashashafe wadansu*.

blow, n. gen. *buga*; the foll. apply to blows given in punishment, fighting etc.: a b. esp. in boxing *dambe*, b. in fighting *fada*, pl. *fadodi*, b. with hand *mari*, pl. *marumari*, hard b. causing wound or swelling *roshi*, pl. *ratsa*, b. in punishment fig. *sanda*, pl. *sanduna*, coll. blows *bukata** D 44.—To strike or give blow or blows, v. gen. *buga*, intens. *bubuga* or *bugabuga*; *mari* or *mare* with intens. participial n. *marmarawa*; *rochi, wulakanta, tsamki* or *tsumki, dakka* with intens. forms *dandaka* and *dendaki*; to give a b. with clenched fist *dundu**, I gave him a b. that left its mark *na yi masa roshi*.

blow, v. 1. tr. *busa*, e.g. the trumpeter blew the trumpet *mai-busa ya busa kafo*; 2. intr. *busa*, e.g. the wind used to b. all night *iska ta kan busa dere duka*; spec. to b. the nose *fiachi*, to b. the fire under a

- cooking pot *girke*, *girki*, to b. water out of the mouth *teddas*, b. a fire *zuga*, *fura*, e.g. b. up the fire with the bellows *ka fura wuta da mafuri*.
- blowing**, n. *busa*, e.g. the b. of the trumpet, wind, etc. *busan kafo*, *busan iska*; b. of water out of the mouth *teddaswa*.
- blown upon**, i.e. dried, adj. *bu-sashe*.
- blue**, n. *shuni* or *juni**.
- blue**, adj. *da shuni* or *da juni**, *dajafi**; spec. b. cloth *shudi*, *turkudi*, *saki**.
- blue**, to be, intr. v. *saki**, *soki** or *soaki**.
- blunder**, see **mistake**.
- blunt**, adj. *da laushiwa*; in the sense of devoid of edge *babu kaiji*.
- blunt**, to be, v. *dal(l)ashe*, *dalishi*.
- bluntness**, n. (of a knife) *taderishi*, *laushiwa*.
- boar**, the wild, n. *alhanzir*, *gado*, fem. *gadonia*, pl. *gadoji*.
- board**, n. (= plank) *faskari*; to make into boards *yin faskari*, coll. boards *karoki*, boards for binding books *taderishi**.
- boast**, v. *guri**; to b. over *sambachi*.
- boaster**, n. *maifoma*, pl. *masufoma*, *maitama*, pl. *masutama*; b. in war *gugirma*.
- boasting**, n. *foma*, *tama*, *chirari**.
- boat** (i.e. canoe), n. *jirigi* or *jirgi*, pl. *jirage*.
- boatman**, n. *maiirigi*, pl. *masujirigi*.
- body**, *jiki*, pl. *jikuna*.
- body-guard**, one of the king's, n. *zarumi*, *zaromi*, *zarmi* or *jarimi*, pl. *zarumai*.
- boil**, n. *kurji*, pl. *kuraji*; *kureji*, pl. *kurareji*; *kirchi*, *gurje*, *girje*, *urji**.
- boil**, v. 1. intr. *tafassa* or *tafessa*, e.g. it boils *ya tafassa* or (pass.) *atafassashi*; 2. tr. *daffa* or *yin tafassa*.
- boiled**, past part., e.g. b. egg *koi daffafe da rua*.
- boiling**, n. *taswa*.
- bold**, adj. see **brave**.
- bone**, n. *ka(s)shi*, pl. *kasusua*.
- book**, n. *litafi** or *letafi**, pl. *litatafi**; *takarda**, pl. *takardu**, *kundi*, *kitaba**; leathern case for a b., n. *gafaka* or *guf (f)aka*; large thick b., n. *sufuri*, *sufili*, *sufurchi**; page of a b., n. *waraka*; stiff covers for a b., n. *taderishi**, *bango* or *bungo*, pl. *bangaye* or *banguna*.
- book-marker**, n. *alama* or *halama*, pl. *alamomi*, *amara**.
- boot**, n. spec. long leathern b. *safe*, high riding b. *karufa*, pl. *karufai*, long riding b. with spurs *kufit(t)a* or *kufut(t)a*, pl. *kufit(t)ai* or *kufut(t)ai*.
- booth**, n. *buka*, pl. *bukogi*.
- booty**, n. *kwache* or *kwashe*, also *abin kwache*.
- border**, n. 1. of a country *iyaka*; 2. silk b. on woman's dress *hashia*; 3. b. of cloth *lafe*, *lafi*.

bore, tr. v. *fuda*, *fude**, *huda*.

born, pass. part. *haifafe*, fem. *haifafa*, pl. *haifafu*.

borrow, tr. v. *yin aro*, *yin ramche*, e.g. I did not b. much money *ban yi ramchen kurdi dayawa ba*.

borrower, n. *maidaukan bashi*.

bosom, n. *gab(b)a*, pl. *gab(b)obi*, *kirji* or *kirji*, pl. *kirijai*.

both, 1. adj. *biu*, e.g. b. of them *duka biu* or *su biu*; this may also be expr. by *dagga wonan sai wonan*, for this use of *sai* cf. vol. 1. *har* 1; 2. conj. *da*, e.g. b....and *da...da*.

bottle, n. *tasa* or *dasa**, pl. *tasoshi*, *tulu*, pl. *tulina*, *dalulu*; small earthenware b. *buta*, water b. calabash *kurtu*, skin water b. *salka* or *salha*, pl. *salkuna*, scent b. *wukia*.

bottom, 1. (= lowest part or foundation) *guzu* or *gusa**, *kalkashi*, *gato*, e.g. b. of a fence *gaton darni*; 2. (= buttocks) *gato*.

bough, n. *reshe*, *refi** or *refo*, pl. *refina* or *refu*, e.g. the tree called *chedia* puts forth boughs and its leaves make a wide shade *iche anache mata chedia ta yi refu da gainyenta ta yi enua ta marfadi*; cf. branch.

bought, e.g. it is b. *asaidashi*.

bound, intr. v. (= to leap up or forward) *tuma*.

bound, past part. 1. (= tied up, fastened with a band) *damrare*, pl. *damraru*; 2. fig.

(= obliged, required) *wajib*, *wajibi* with *ne* or *ke*, e.g. we are b. to go to the war *wajibi ne mu taf(f)i yaki*.

boundary, n. *iyaka*.

bow, n. (i.e. the weapon) *baka*, pl. *bakuna*, b. and arrows *bakan kibia*; to discharge a b., v. *halbi* or *harbi*.

bow, 1. intr. v. (= to incline the head in salutation) *yin af(f)i*; 2. to b. down as in the native prostration, *yin af(f)i*, *guru-fani*, *yin gurufani*, *runsuna* or *rusona*; 3. to b. or bend down (= to stoop) *sunkwiya* or *sunkuyu*; 4. to b. the head down or sideways in order to listen *karkat(t)a* or *kakartsa*.

bowed, he is b. down, pass. *anatakura* D 15.

bowels, n. *hanji*.

bowing, n. i.e. so as to touch the ground with the forehead *sajada*, *sujuda**.

bowl, n. *tasa* or *dasa*, pl. *tasoshi*.

bowman, n. *mahalbi*, pl. *mahalbai* or *masuhalbi*.

bowshot, n. i.e. the measure *fagia** (?).

bowstring, n. *surkia*, *tsarkia*, *igian baka*.

box, n. *akodi*, *şunduki*, pl. *şandukai*, *maısutura**; spec. small skin b. e.g. for snuff *bat(t)a*, pl. *bat(t)ochi*, small glass b. for frankincense *lulu*.

box, v. *dambe*, *goraya**.

boy, n. *yaro*, pl. *yara*, *yaraye*, *yaye* or *yayaye*, *madachi**;

- spec. b. who is third or fourth child, the previous ones being all girls *tanko**.
- boyishness**, n. *hal(l)in yaro*.
- bracelet**, n. *tagula* or *tugula*, pl. *tagulai*.
- brains**, n. coll. *kolua*, *kwalua*, *kokulwa*.
- branch**, n. of trees *reshe*, *refi** or *refo*, pl. *refina* or *refu*; spec. small b. *hamso**, b. stripped of leaves *kotutura* or *kututura*, withered branches coll. *kwa-bruka* or *kwobruka*, thin bending b. *sumanjia* a related form of which is *tumanjia*.
- brass**, n. *farin karifi* or *jan karifi*, *gachi**.
- brave**, adj. *mazakuta*, *da zuchia* *baba**, *maizuchia**.
- bravery**, n. *mazakuta*.
- bray**, intr. v. (of the ass) *berbera* or *birbira*.
- bray**, tr. v. (= to beat small, pound) *dakka*.
- bread**, n. (made of wheat) *gu-rasa*.
- breadth**, n. *fadi*, *faski*.
- break**, v. 1. tr. *chiri*; *fas(s)a*, *fashe* or *pashe*; *karya*, *karye*, *karia* or *karie*; 2. fig. to b. a promise *saki alkaweli* or *warwari alkaweli*; 3. fig. intr. of the day, daylight or morning, see **dawn**; 4. tr. with various modifications of meaning: to b. open *rub(b)e*, to b. to pieces *farifasha* or *palpashe* intens. of *fashe*, *pashe*, *rugunguza**, to b. up *karayeya* and *kaririye* intensive forms of *karya*, *murkoshi**, *wasa* or *wase*, to b. up again *dandaka* or *dendaki* intensive forms of *dakka*.
- breakfast**, n. *kalachi* (also = mid-day meal), *kariyan azumi*.
- breaking**, participial n. *karaya* and *kariewa* or *karyewa*.
- breast**, 1. (= bosom) *kirji*, pl. *kirjai*, *gab(b)a*, pl. *gab(b)obi*; 2. (= b. of mother or dam) *nono*, pl. *nonua**.
- breath**, shortness of, n. *fuka*.
- breathe**, intr. v. e.g. I b. hard *na yi fuka*, to b. heavily *lumfashi*, *yin sheda*.
- breathing**, n. heavy b. *lumfashi*, *sheda*.
- breed**, v. *ba dia*, *yin dia*, *haifi*, *haife*, *haifu*.
- brethren**, n. *yanuwa*; my b. *yanuwana*.
- bribe**, n. *toshi**; b. given to a judge *hila* or *fila*, *kirsa*, *ru-shua**.
- bribe**, tr. v. *chidacheto*.
- brick**, n. (made of mud) *tubali*.
- bricks**, to make, v. *yin tubali*.
- bride**, n. (applied to lawful wife) *amaria*.
- bridegroom**, n. *ango*, pl. *anguna* or *angaye**.
- bridge**, n. *kaderko**.
- bridle**, n. *lizami*.
- brigand**, n. *maife(s)she*, pl. *maifu(s)sa*; brigands, pl. only, *masutari**.
- bright**, adj. *fari*, fem. *fara*, pl. *farari* or *farufaru*; *farifet*, *da tachi*, *tatache*, pl. *tatatu*, b. as

silver *tangarai*, the last appl. to sky = unclouded.

bright, to make, or to brighten *tachi* or *tashi*.

brim, n. *burbishi*; up to the b. *fau*, e.g. it was filled to the b. *ya hau fau*.

brimstone, n. *fara wuta, kibrit**.

bring, tr. v. *kai*, e.g. may He b. us to the city without lack of anything *shi kaimu garin da babu rashi ga kowa* E 49, they shall be brought *akaisu* F 189, 191, 196, 200; *zo* constr. with *da* (lit. come with), e.g. he brought the book *ya zo da litafi*; spec. modifications are to b. back (= to restore) *kwonda, maida*; to b. forth *fitto da*; (= to give birth to) *haifi* or *haife*; to b. forward (= to adduce) *kai* or *kawa*, e.g. b. proof *kai shaida*, they would b. forward a reason *su kan kawa dalili* D 46; to b. near to the speaker, also simply b. here or b. near *karwo*; to b. together *gabato, jawo*; to b. up (= to nurse, educate) *reno*; spec. to b. up a child or animal whose parent is dead *talafi*; pregn. to take and b. *tareo* or *tario*.

bringing, participial n. *kawowa*.

brink, n. *baki*, pl. *bakuna*.

broad, adj. *da fadi, mafadi, mai-fadi*.

brocade, n. *kambori**; white cotton b. *sama, sadowa*.

broil, tr. v. *soiyaya* or *suya*.

broiled, past part. *soiyaye* or *soiyeye*, fem. *soiyaya*, pl. *soiyayu*.

broken, past part. *matache*, fem. *matachia*, pl. *matatu*, e.g. *matatun kworia* b. vessels; *karaye*, fem. *karaya*, pl. *karayu, fa-sheshe**.

broken, to be b. up, v. *warwari, wariwari, woriwori* or *wawari*.

broker, n. *dilali*; to act as b. *yin dilali*; broker's commission, cf. seq.

brokerage, n. (= fee or commission as intermediary in sales) *lad(d)a*; if the price paid is to be *ladda chikki* (= b. included) the seller pays the b. (usually 5 p.c.), if *ladda woje* (= exclusive of b.), the buyer.

brood, n. coll. (= offspring) *dia* or *diya*, in a wide or general sense *iri*, pl. *irare*, q.v.

brook, n. *rafi*, pl. *rafuna* or *rafafuka*.

broth, n. *mia, romua, rumua* or *romo*; b. made from fruit of *dorowa* tree *dad(d)owa*.

brother, n. 1. *dan uwa*; 2. fig. (= friend) *zuma* or *zummu*, pl. *zumuna*; 3. as an expr. of regard in addressing others (usually with suff. pron. *na*) = brother! or dear friend! *dan uwana*, pl. *yan uwana* or *yan uwa* A 5, e.g. you, my brethren, listen and pay attention *ku yan uwa ku jini ku saurara*; 4. elder b. *yaya**, *wa*, pl. *yayu*; 5. younger b. *kane*, pl. *kanena* or *kanoni*.

brow, n. (= forehead) *goshi*; he bent his b. or knit his brows (= he frowned) *ya damre fuskansa* or *ya jirkita fuskansa*.

bruise, n. *rauni*.

bruise, tr. v. *dirje*, *falfas(s)a*, *rauni**.

brush, n. *tsintsiya*, *abin shara*.

brush, tr. v. (= to sweep with a broom or b.) *shara* or *share*; to b. the hair *shafa gashi*.

buck, n. prefix *namiji*, e.g. b. antelope *namijin barewa*; b. goat *bunsuru*, pl. *bunsurai*.

bucket, n. *guga*, pl. *guguna*.

bud, intr. v. *gunda*, *yin gunda*, *yin tofo*.

buffalo, n. *bauna*, pl. *bakani*.

buffet, v. *buga*, *dambe*.

bug, n. *kazinzemi** (?).

build, tr. v. *gina*, *kaf(f)a*; the former is also spec. applied to construction of roads, the latter to that of roof etc. with beams.

building, a, n. *garu**.

built, past part. *ginane*, pl. *ginanu*.

bull, n. 1. (= male of horned cattle) *sa*, *bajimi*, *bajini* or *bijimi*; spec. large (castrated) b. *bur-tumi*, *kurtumi* or *furtumi*; b. for carrying loads with spreading horns *takarikari*, pl. *takarikarai*; 2. gen. (= male of any large animal) *toro**, pl. *torone**, e.g. bull elephant *toron giwa*; *toro* with omission of *giwa* is often spec. applied to the male elephant = *namijin giwa*.

bullet, n. *arşas*.

bunch, n. (as a b. of flowers) *dame* or *dem(m)i*, pl. *damuna*.

burden, n. *kaia* or *kaya*, pl. *kaya-yeki*.

burdensome, adj. see heavy and troublesome.

burial, abstr. n. *biso*.

burial-cloth, native, n. *zugu*; see winding sheet.

burial-place, n. *makwanche*, *wur-in bisne*, *wurin kushewa*, *wurin kushayi*.

burn, v. 1. tr. *kona*, *kone*, *kona**, *kuna**, *soiya* or *suya*, *surya*, *toi*, *towi* or *toya*, e.g. the Almighty will b. him, he is a profligate *taala shi toyeshi shi fasihi ne*; spec. to b. with a hot iron *lalas*; 2. intr. employ passive; fig. of desire etc., the heart burned *zuchia ta kuna*.

burning, particip. adj. *maifura*; b. disease *kona*, *kone*, *kona** or *kuna**.

burnt, past part. *konane*, fem. *konana*, pl. *konanu*; spec. b. food, n. *kamzo*, *kanzo* or *amzo**; b. all over, adv. *kurmus** F 207.

burst, v. tr. and intr. *fa(s)she* or *pa(s)she*.

bury, tr. v. *bisne* or *birna*; spec. to b. in the earth as locusts do their eggs *turubude*.

burying-place, n. see burial-place.

bush, n. spec. thorny b. *gobdodo* or *kobdodo*, *sarḳaki* or *sirḳakia*; thick-foliaged b. used as food *şukuki**, b. with white flowers

from which a scent is obtained *soinya*, b. with milky poisonous juice *tumia* or *tinia*, b. in the sense of ground covered with vegetation not desert soil *daji*, *rukuki**.

bush-cat, the stinking, n. *dam-biri*.

bush-goat, n. *bachia**.

business, n. 1. (= trade, commerce) *chiniki*, *shag(g)ali*, *shog(g)eli*, *shug(g)eli* or *shag(g)al*, pl. *shugulgula*, *bukata*; 2. gen. (= concern) *bukata*, e.g. the b. of this world *bukata ta dunia nan*; also, in neg. and interrog. sentences, *rua*, e.g. it is no b. of mine *ba ruana* or *babu ruana*, what b. is it of yours *enna* (lit. where?) *ruanku*? 3. (= affair or thing) *abu*, e.g. a bad b. *abin mugu*.

but, 1. adversative conj. *amma*; *da* is at times found where the opposition is not (as with *amma*) explicit and logical, e.g. but are you able to do this? *da kana iya yin hakka? fache**, *fashe**, *balshe** or *bashe** q.v., *ber(r)i dai*; 2. exceptive prep. and conj. *sai*, e.g. a woman's entire body ought to be strictly concealed but the soles of her feet and her eyes *jikin mache duk yi alaura ya ke sai ko matakai sai ido* A 30, those who love thee can but salute again *masowa naka sai kuma salmawa* F 80; neg. there is no health in it, nothing but

sickness *babu lafia chikki nata sai chiuta* B 62; there is often an idiomatic ellipsis before *sai*, e.g. the whole street was nothing but water *dukan kasua sai rua*, nothing but blood *sai jini*; in this way is to be explained the phr. *sai lafia* as = nothing but well, i.e. quite well. The expr. *bamda* may = Engl. but, e.g. put nothing in the pot but meat *kada ku sa komi chik(k)in tukunia bamda nama* where *sai nama* would be equally correct.

butcher, n. *mafauchi* or *mahauchi*.

butcher, tr. v. = to slaughter animals in technical sense *yin fawa*.

butchery, n. tech. = slaughtering of animals *fawa*.

butt, intr. v. *tunkuda*, e.g. the two goats butted each the other *awaki su biru suna tunkuda jiuansu* or *da jiuna*.

butter, n. 1. gen. whether animal or vegetable *mai*; 2. cow b. *main shanu*, *dungul(l)i*, *turde**.

butter-tree, n. the shea-butter tree, i.e. *bassia Parkii*, *kadanya*; shea-butter, i.e. its thick butter-like oil, *main kadanya*, *main kade*.

butterfly, n. *bamota* or *bamawuta*, *kwaro**; the expr. *litafin allah*, lit. writing of God, is often used to designate the butterfly; cf. *tadarwal allah*.

buttock, n. *gato*.

button, n. *makubli* or *makul(l)i**,

pl. *makublai*, *mabantari**, *ma-ballen riga*.

buy, v. *saye*, *sayi*, *sai*, *saida*, *sayo*.

buyer, n. *maisaye*, pl. *masusaye*.

buzz, n. *am(m)o*.

buzz, intr. v. *am(m)o* or *yin am(m)o*.

buzzard, n. *meke*, *mekiya* or *mi-kiya*, pl. *mekiye*.

by, 1. prep. instr. (= with) *da*, e.g. he was struck by an arrow *akuhabeshi da kibia*; 2. prep. loc. (= near) *kus(s)a*, *kus(s)a da* or *kus(s)a ga*, e.g. by the shore of the pool *kus(s)a ga bakin gulbi*; (= along by) *baya*, e.g. we walked by the town *mun yi yawo bayan birni*, by the pool *bayan kogi*; 3. prep. distributive, e.g. by fours *fudu fudu*, by tens *goma goma*; 4. adv. (= near) *kus(s)a*; cf. the following phrases: to stand by *tsaya kussa*, fig. = to help *taimako* and *yin taimako*; by himself (= alone) *daiansa*, leave me by myself *berrini daiana*, by-and-by *anjima* and *zua zua**.

cackle, intr. v. *kerkara*, *kirkira** A 29.

cage, n. *akurike*, pl. *akurikai*, *gid(d)an tsuntsua*, a cage for fowl (= a hencoop) *akuriken kaza*.

cake, n. c. of rice and guinea-corn *mas(s)a*; c. of wheat flour and honey *fankasu**; c. of

bean flour and oil *soto*; c. of oil, honey and rice or wheat *tsatsafa*; cakes of rice and guinea-corn coll. *wene*.

calabash, n. *gora*, pl. *gorina*, *kworia*; spec. small c. *kumbu*; long necked c. used as water-bottle *kurtu*; c. finger-basin *kwachia**; c. strainer *raria*; tree, fruit of which is formed into small calabashes *kukuki*.

calamity, n. (= distress, adversity) *machiachi*, *masifa*, *mayata* D 61, *wohal(l)a* or *wahal(l)a*; a c. (= a distressing or adverse thing or event) *abin mugu* or *mugun abu*.

calculate, v. (= to compute, reckon) *kedaya*, *yin lisafi*, the latter is also commonly applied to commercial or other accounts, bills, etc.

calculation, n. 1. (= act of computing or reckoning) *kedaya*, *kidda*, *kididiga*; 2. (= sum or amount reached by c.) *kedaya*, *kidda*, *kididiga*, *lisafi*, the last commonly applied to accounts, bills, etc., cf. prec.; beyond c. (= incalculable, innumerable) *su fi kedaya*.

caldron, n. *tukunia*.

calf, n. 1. (= young of large animal) *da*, connective *dan*, pl. *yaya* or *ya*, connect. *yayan* or *yan*, coll. pl. *dia*, connect. *dian*; 2. (= young of cow) *marak(k)i* or *mareki*, fem. *marak(k)a*, pl. *marak(k)u*; spec. a young female c. *karsana**.

calf, n. i.e. of the leg *sharaba**.
calico, n. *alkamura*; white c. for making tobés *mahamudi*.
call, tr. v. (= to summon) *kir(r)a* and *kir(r)aye*; to c. or summon to where the speaker is, and also simply to c. *kir(r)awo*; to c. in the sense of to name *kir(r)a suna*; to express 'called' = named or entitled, cf. following: a man called Bube *woni mutum sunansa bube*, a great man who was called the Madaki *baba anache mashi madaki* G 4, calling out, verbal n. *kir(r)a*, calling of fowls *sagara** A 29.
calm, n. (= absence of wind, still weather) *natsu**, also used fig. in the sense of relaxation or rest; c. after a storm *shiriu* or *shiru*.
calm, tr. v. (= to appease) *lalashi* or *lilashi*.
calumniate, v. *chi baya* or *chimbaya*.
calumny, n. *chimbaya*.
camel, n. *rakumi*, pl. *rakuma* which also = the female c.; the female c. *tagua*, pl. *taguai*; spec. large male c. *amale* or *amali*, *kutunku**; smell of c. *funi**; the constellation of the C. *tagua*.
camp, n. 1. halting ground of travellers etc. *zungo*, cf. seq.; 2. (in the military sense) *sansan(n)i*; camping-place, n. *wurin sabka* or *sapka*.
camphor, n. *kafur*.

can, auxiliary v. *iya*, also *samu*, e.g. c. you bring here a heavier stone than this? *kana iya kawo duchi ya fi wonan da nauyi ko?* I cannot lift it *ban iya na daukeshi* or *ban iya daukensa*; with passives *aiya* may be employed, e.g. it cannot be lifted *ba aiya adaukeshi*, it could not be lifted *ba aiya akadaukeshi* *ba*, he could not enter *ba ya samu ya shiga*.

can, n. see **pitcher**.

cane, n. 1. *gora*, pl. *gororo* or *gorina*; spec. water-cane *burugu*; small species of c. *kuruki*; sort of bamboo c. *kwangi*; sugar c. *takanda* or *takanta*; 2. (= walking-stick) *sanda*, pl. *sanduna*.

cannibal, n. 1. *jan mayi*; 2. c. tribes of S. E. Hausaland *yamyam*.

cannon, n. *madafa**, pl. *madafai**.

canoe, n. *jirigi* or *jirgi*, pl. *jirage*; c. cover *rumpa*, pl. *rumfunu*; c. paddles *filafile* or *fulafule*; c. paddle used as a rudder *matruki*; cf. seq.

canoe, to paddle a c., v. *tuka*, the participial n. of which is *tukawa*.

canter, intr. v. *jigeribti*, *kokofa* or *kokwafa*.

cap, n. *tagia*; spec. a white c. worn inside fez *fula*; a blue or black c. *fula saki*; c. of red cloth with tassel = fez *faladara* or *fuladara*.

capture, tr. v. 1. (= to catch or

- take, of prisoners, slaves) *kama*, e.g. Diko was captured *akakamu diko* G 5; same; 2. (= to conquer, get dominion over a city or people) *chi*, e.g. he conquered the people, the king of Jaba was captured *ya chisu akakama sarkin jaba*; also to c. a town *rize*, participial n. capturing *rizewa*.
- caravan**, n. *aiyari*; chief of a c. *jaji*; head-man of a c., who walks behind it *madugu*, pl. *madugawa*; guide or fore-runner of a c. *jagaba* or *shugaba*, pl. *jagubai* or *shugabai*.
- carcass**, n. *gawa*, pl. *gawaweki*.
- care**, n. 1. (= heed) *rua* in neg. and interrog. clauses, e.g. what c. of mine is it? *enna ruana?* *hankali* or *hankali*, which also has the sense of forethought; 2. (= sorrow) *machiachi* or *machiata*; *matamache* coll., e.g. the cares of this world *matamachen dunia nan*.
- care for**, v. (= to heed, regard) *waiwaia*, *kulla* or *kullata* or *yin kulla*; to c. for (= to pay attention to and so beware of) *tuna*, *yin hankuri*; all of these verbs except the first govern an object by means of prep. *da*, e.g. he cared nought for his reproof *bai kulla da foron-sa ba*.
- careful**, adj. (= heedful) *maihan-kali*; to be c. see **care**.
- carefully**, adv. 1. (= heedfully, prudently) *da hankali*; 2. (= at-
- tentively) *sar(r)ai*, e.g. look c. *duba sar(r)ai*.
- careless**, adj. (= imprudent) *marashankali*; (= inattentive to work) *mailalachi*; spec. of one who breaks or injures what he gets *mabukachi**.
- carelessly**, adv. *babu hankali*, *dalalachi*, *dalalafanchi*, *dasakafchi*; to act c. through absence of mind *shagalichi*.
- carelessness**, n. 1. (= want of care) *sakafchi*, *sak(k)a**; 2. (= indifference, idleness) *lalachi*, *lalafanchi*.
- caress**, n. *lalaba*.
- caress**, v. *yin lalaba*.
- cargo**, n. *kaia* or *kaya*.
- carpenter**, n. *masasaki*, pl. *masasaka*.
- carpet**, n. *kilishi**.
- carrier**, n. gen. *maikaya*, *maikawo**; spec. hired c. *aloro*, *dan aloro*; head or chief c. *sarikin aloro*; a trader who carries his goods on his head *dan garumfa*; money paid to carriers *sufuri*, *sufurchi*.
- carry**, tr. v. *kai*, *shid(d)i*, the latter constr. with *da*; to c. in *shig(g)a da*, *shiggo da* (lit. to enter with), e.g. except oil nothing shall be carried tied up into the town of Zaria *bamda da mai ba ashiggo da komi adamri abirni zaria* G 4; to c. on (= transact) *yi*, (= to continue, prolong) *dad(d)a*; to c. oneself (= behave) *maida kansa*; to c. off *taf(f)i da*; to

- c. through (= accomplish) *iyes*, *iyesda*.
- case**, n. (= receptacle, cover) *gid(d)a*, e.g. needle-c. *gid(d)an akura*; spec. leathern c. for holding a book *gafaka*, *guf(f)aka*, *talili*; c. or package used as a table *kabak(k)i*, pl. *kaboka*.
- case**, n. 1. (= state or condition) *zama*; 2. (= event, thing) *abu*, e.g. a bad c. = a bad business *abin mugu*.
- cast**, tr. v. *jefa*; to c. aside *yesda*, *yedda*, *yashe*; to c. out (= throw out) *jefa da*, *jefas*, *jefasda*, *jefsa**, *jefshe**; (= to expel as from the mind, the throne, etc.) *fidda*, *fit(t)a* with *da*, *fisha*, e.g. he was c. (or driven) out *akafita da shi* G 4, *akafisheshi* G 5; to c. up (= to reckon), see **calculate**; (= to vomit) *yin amai*.
- castigate**, tr. v. 1. (= punish) *falasa*, *palasa*; 2. (= beat) *buga*, *bubuga*.
- castigation**, n. 1. (= punishment) *falasa*, *palasa*.
- castle**, n. *kasru**.
- casualty**, see **accident**.
- cat**, n. 1. (= tame c.) *kenwa*, *keanwa* or *kyanwa*, pl. *kenwuna* and *kenwai*, *mag(g)i*, *mus(s)a*, pl. *mus(s)oshi*; 2. spec. bush-c. *dambiri*; large bush-c. or small leopard *tsawarwara*; civet-c. *mag(g)i tental*; wild c. *kenwa**, *mazoro* also spelt *masaru*, *masuru*, *musuru*, *muzuri* and *muzuru*, *jimolo*.
- cataract**, n. (of the eye) *hakia* or *hekia*.
- catch**, tr. v. *kama*, *kamu*, *ruski*; to c. cold, e.g. I caught cold *sainyi ya kamani* (lit. the cold caught me), I caught fever *masasara ta kamani*.
- caterpillar**, hairy, n. *kis(s)aka*, *kulba**.
- cattle**, n. coll. *dabba* or *dabbo*, pl. *dabboni* or *dabbobi*; (= cows) *shanu*.
- caught**, particip. adj. (of a fire) *gasashe*, fem. *gasashia*, pl. *gasashu*.
- cause**, n. 1. (= positive origin or ground) *guzu* or *gusu**, *sab(b)abi*, *sub(b)abi* or *subub(b)i*; without c. *babu sab(b)abi*; 2. (= reason adduced in proof or explanation) *dalili*, e.g. they give a c. (i.e. a reason for confidence) and an excuse *sukan kawa dalili da huja*; hence often applied to texts from the Koran, cf. F 138, 158, 161 etc.
- cause**, tr. v. *sa*, *ba* or *bada*, *maid*, *yi*; these are construed as follows: I caused him to laugh *na bashi daria*, he caused me to fear *ya bani tsoro*, he caused him to sleep *ya sashi shi kwanche* or *ya maidashi shi kwanche*.
- causeless**, adj. *babu sab(b)abi*.
- caution**, n. (= prudent care) *han-kali*.

cautious, n. *da hankali*; to be c. *yin hankali*.

cavalry, n. *garikine**; c. with shields *garki** or *garikine**; c. with shields *bardi**, pl. *baradine*; collection of c. *har(r)i**, *kangar**.

cave, n. *kogo*, pl. *koguna*.

cease, v. *daina* or *dena*, intr., e.g. she did not c. *ba ta daina ba*, tr. she ceased crying *ta daina kuka*.

ceaselessly, adv. *kulyaushe*

cell, tr. v. *yabe*.

ceiled, particip. adj. *yababe*, fem. *yababa*, pl. *yababu*.

celebrate, tr. v. (= to praise, honour) *yab(b)o*, *yin yab(b)o*.

celebrated, particip. adj. *yeb(b)abe*, fem. *yeb(b)aba*, pl. *yeb(b)abu*.

celebrity, n. *yab(b)o*; see **name**.

celestial, adj. *maisama*, applied to God, A 2.

celibate, adj., see **bachelor**.

cemetery, n., see **burial-place**.

centipede, n. *shanshani*, pl. *shanshanu*, *buzuzu*, *kadan-dunia**.

centre, n. *tsak(k)a*, *tsak(k)ia*; spec. c. on the inside of thatch roof *kondo* or *kwando*.

certain, adj. 1. (= assured, true) e.g. c. (i.e. true) words *magana tabbatachia*; are you c.? *ka tabbata*? 2. (= one, some) *woni* or *wani*, fem. *wota*, pl. *wonsu*, *wosu* or *wodansu*, cf. a 2.; to express a c. person known but unnamed (= so-and-so)

kaza, e.g. a c. person passed *mutum kaza ya uruche*.

certainly, adv. *da gaskia*, *enche*, *hakika*, *labudda**, *tubbas*; c. is expressed also by means of *tabbata*, e.g. he is c. there *ya tabbata nan*; c. not *kala kala**; cf. **doubt**.

certainty, n. *gaskia*.

certificate, n. *laya**.

certified, particip. adj. *shaidade*, fem. *shaidada*, pl. *shaidadu*.

certify, v. *hakikanta**.

cesspit, n. *salga*, pl. *salgagi*.

Chad, pr. n. of lake, *tsada* or *ruan tsada*; cf. **Benué**.

chafe, intr. v. (= to feel irritated) *jin haushi*; he chafed at this *ya ji haushin wonan*.

chaff, n. *dusa*, *kaikai*, *soshia*; small piece of c. *tsinki* or *zinke*, pl. *tsinkai* or *zinka*.

chagrin, n. *haushi*.

chain, n. *sarka* or *surka*, pl. *sarka* or *sarkoki*; coll. chains *sasari*; c. armour *sulke*, *mari**, pl. *marurua**.

chair, n. *kushera**; take a c. *ka zamna abissa kushera*; *karaga**.

chalk, n. *alzibbus**; c. or white earth used for bleaching thread *alli*.

chamber, n. *daki*, pl. *dakuna*; very small c. or closet *loloki*, pl. *lolokai*.

chamberlain, n. *madaki*.

chameleon, n. *hawainya* or *hawainya*.

chance, n. see **accident**.

chance, impers. v. *ya faru*.

change, v. 1. tr. and intr. *sauya* and *sawaya*; 2. tr. *maida*, *maishe*, *sake*, *sake*, *saki* or *saki*; 3. intr. *mayesda*, *rikida*, *jir-kita*, the last referring to any c. of position whether material or figurative; e.g. he changed his body *ya sauya* or *sawaya jikinsa*, I changed to a moslem *na sauya musulmi*, the king has changed (the value of) the Spanish dollar *sariki ya maida kurdin-madafa*, my master changed my wages *ubangijina ya sake ladan*, I am changing into some creature or other *ina mayesda woni abu*, I changed myself into a bird *na rikida tsuntsua*; 4. for the Engl. c. Hausa very often has the weaker expr. become *zama*, *kawa**, e.g. she changed into a bird *ta zama tsuntsua*, it changed to (lit. became) deep black *ya zama bak(k)i ker(r)in*.

changed, particip. *sauyaye*, fem. *sauyaya*, pl. *sauyayi*; *sakake*, fem. *sakakia*, pl. *sakaku*; *rikidade*, fem. *rikidadia*, pl. *rikidadu*.

changing, participial n. *sakiwa*, *jirkitawa*, for the application of the latter cf. *jirkita* under **change**.

chapter, n. (= division of a book) *kai*, *sura**, pl. *surori**, e.g. the tenth c. *kai nagoma* or *sura tagoma*.

character, n. 1. (= disposition) *hal(l)i*, e.g. such is his c. *hal(l)insa shi ke* or *hal(l)insa ke nan*; 2. (= good repute) *suma*; he bears a high c. *sunansa nagari ne*, cf. fame; 3. to have a certain c. is expressed by means of v. *tarika*, e.g. he is a quarrelsome c. (= he is always quarrelling) *ya tarika fad(da)*.

characteristic, n. *hal(l)i*, pl. *hal(l)ai*.

charcoal, n. 1. *gawoi* or *goi*, pl. *gawaye*, not used of burning c. for which cf. 2., e.g. they shall all become (black) like c. without doubt *su juya kamar gawoi duk babu wawa* F 207; 2. burning c. *garwashi*, pl. *garwashoshi*; 3. charcoal-tree, a small tree *kiriya*, from which is made smith's c. *garwashin kiriya*.

charge, v. 1. (= to load) *chik(k)a* or *dora*, e.g. they have charged their guns *suka dora bindiga*; 2. (= to command) *hakumche*, *hakumta*; 3. (= to rush on, to attack) *fadi* (*bissa*, *bissa ga* or *abissa*).

charity, n. see **alms**.

charm, n. 1. gen. whether written or of any other kind *magani*, *laya*, *hatumi* or *katumi*, *bara**; *sunan allah* (lit. the name of God), this is used of various charms which are written on a smooth board, the ink from which is washed off and swallowed, e.g. come and let me give thee a certain c. to swal-

- low *ka taf(f) o em baka woni sunan allah ka hade*; 2. spec. c. against sword-cut *dundu*; stone c. for woman's neck *kandu* or *kandun ido*; c. for catching slaves etc. *kauchi*; c. against thieves *kwanda*; c. against injury in war *guba*, *layan sabani*; c. to render anyone invisible *layan zana*; c. to ward off arrows *sha bara*; injurious c. *sammu* or *sammo*; cf. seqq.
- charmer**, snake-, n. *gardi* or *gerdi*, pl. *gardawa* or *gerdawa*, *turdi*, pl. *turdawa*.
- charms**, 1. to write c. *tsub(b)u*; one who writes c. *maitsub(b)u*; one who utters deadly c. *maita*; 2. (= female attractions) see **beauty**.
- chase**, n. (= hunting) *farauta*.
- chase**, v. 1. (= to hunt) *yin farauta*; 2. (= to drive away) *kore*.
- chaste**, adj. *tsalla**.
- chastise**, tr. v. *kada*, see **castigate**.
- chat**, n. and v. see **conversation**, **converse**.
- cheap**, adj. *da araha*, *buhu**; it is c. *shina da araha*.
- cheapness**, n. *araha*.
- cheat**, n. 1. (= fraud) *kura*, *riba*, *rikichi* or *rikiche*; 2. (= one who cheats) *machikura*, pl. *machiakura*; *maichin kura*; *mairiba*, pl. *masuriba* or *mairiba da kura*; *maizambachi* or *maizambata*.
- cheat**, v. *chin riba*, *chin kura*, *rikiche* or *rikichi*, *zambache* or *zambata*.
- cheating**, n. *kura*, see **precc**.
- check**, v. 1. (= reprove) *kwaba*, *kwobe**; 2. (= hinder, restrain) *han(n)ya*.
- cheek**, n. *kumchi*, pl. *kum(m)atu*; hair on the cheeks *saje* or *saji*.
- cheer**, v. *bada murna*, *yin murna*.
- cheese**, n. *chukumara*.
- chest**, see **breast** and **box**.
- chew**, v. tr. *tamna*, *tona*, *tsuk(k)*; e.g. we are chewing kola-nut *muna tamna goro*.
- chewed**, particip. *tumnane*, fem. *tamnana*, pl. *tamnanu*.
- chicken**, n. 1. *tsako*, *tsiako*, *chiko**; *dantsako* or *danchiako*, pl. *yantsako*; 2. coll. *yanchiko**.
- chief**, n. *baba*, e.g. he is their c. *shi ne babansu*, also in sense of a c., a great man, cf. G 4; *sariki*, often in the sense of head or president of any body, trade etc. as in Engl. chief-steward; *ido* (lit. eye) poet., e.g. behold Bello, chief over his kingdom *duba ga bello idon malki nai* B 76; *tunari**; see under **fadawa**.
- child**, n. 1. (= son or daughter) *da*, connect. *dan*, fem. *dia*, pl. *yaya*, *yayaye* and *ya*, connect. *yan*; *yaro*, pl. *yara* (lit. lad) less frequent; 2. (= young person) *yaro*, pl. *yara*, *kuruchia* or *kurichia**; 3. a very young c., an infant up to one year of age *jariri*, *jariki* or

yarili, jinjiri; spec. c. carried on a woman's back *bumbu, goiya*; a c. which dies soon after birth *dan wabi*; 4. with c., see **pregnant**.

childhood, n. *yarinta, yaranchi**.

childish, adj. *da hal(l)in yaro*.

childishness, n. *hal(l)in yaro, hal(l)in kankanta, kuruchia* or *kurichia**.

chill, n. *funturu*, especially that felt at night.

chin, n. *haba*, pl. *habobi*; double c. *maroro* or *malolo*.

China, n. geogr. *sin**.

chisel, n. *kurufi**; spec. c. for cutting iron *furufi**.

choke, tr. and intr. v. *makure*; to cause to c. *sumanche* or *sunanche*.

choking, due to swallowing anything, n. *kwar(r)a*.

cholera, n. see **anger**.

chosen, 1. pass. v. *zabu*; 2. particip. *zababe*, fem. *zababa*, pl. *zababu*.

choose, v. *zabe, zaba, zabi**; spec. to c. out one or more pieces of anything (= to select) *wari*.

Christian, a, n. *annaş(s)ara*, also used as coll. pl. Christians.

Christianity, n. *addinin annaş(s)ara*.

church, i.e. a place of worship, n. *maşallachi*, pl. *maşallatai*.

churn, v. *burka, tunkwi nono**.

cicatrice, n. *tubbo, tombo* or *tabo*.

cinders, n. *garwashi*, pl. *garwashoshi*.

circle, n. *guda**.

circuit, to make the c. of, tr. v. *kewoye* or *kewayi, yin kewoye*.

circumcise, v. *yin kachia* or *yenke kachia*.

circumcision, n. *kachia*; spec. the ceremonial used at c. *şallataswa*.

cistern, large, n. *bingi, kurdu-duf(f)i, kunduduf(f)i* or *kududuf(f)i*.

citizen, n. *dan gari*, pl. *yan gari*, e.g. everyone comes and goes, both stranger and citizen *kowa ya zo ya wuche da bako dan gari* A 15.

city, n. *birni*, pl. *birane* or *birnua*, used of large and walled towns, while *gari*, pl. *garurua* and *garigarua*, is applied to less important and to country towns.

civet-cat, n. *mag(g)en tental*; frankincense obtained from the c. *turare*.

claim, n. *alhaki*, e.g. as of one defrauded.

claim, tr. v. (= to demand as one's own) *nema*, e.g. I claim my own *ina nema abin nawa*; to claim a debt *bimbashi*; cf. *bi*.

clamber, v. see **ascend**.

clamour, n. (= loud outcry) *kururua, dum(m)i*.

clamour, v. (= to cry aloud) *yin kururua*.

clan, n. *dengi, denga* or *deg(g)i*, pl. *dengogi*; *iri*, pl. *irare*.

clap, v. (= to strike the hands together in applauding etc.) *tafu* or *tafi, yin tafi, ban hanu*.

clarify, by straining, tr. v. *tachi*.
clasp, v. (= to embrace) *rungume*;
 to c. the hands together *tafi*.
claw, n. of an animal, *ahaiifa*.
clay, n. *yimbu*, *yambu**, e.g. they
 are built of c. *anginasu da*
yimbu; lump of c. *burugushe**
 or *burbushi**.
clean, adj. 1. gen. *sar(r)ai*, of
 wheat *chari* or *tsari*; 2. (= cere-
 monially and so also morally
 c., pure) *halal*, *halas*, *hallata**,
chari or *tsari*.
clean, tr. v. e.g. with water *dari-
 woye*; of the hair, garments
 etc. *tsapta*, cf. *wanke*; (= to
 scrape off, c. off) *gogi*, *goge*,
 e.g. the jackal was about to c.
 off the guinea-fowl's spots *dila*
fa zashi goge zane na sabua; to
 c. from husks *surife* or *surufa*;
 (to render c.) *yin sar(r)ai*,
maida sar(r)ai, *gerta**.
cleaned, particip. *gertache*, fem.
gertata, pl. *gertatu*; *wankake*,
 fem. *wankaka*, pl. *wankaku*;
 c. from husks etc., of rice,
shanshere, *surfafa*.
cleanliness, n. of the person,
 clothes etc. *tsapta*.
cleanness, n. in a religious or
 moral sense *tsarki*, e.g. because
 a profligate has no c. *zama*
babu tsarki ga maiyin zina;
 cf. seq.
cleanse, tr. v. (of the heart) *tsar-
 kaka* or *charkaka*.
clear, adj. 1. (of liquids, the sky
 etc.) *da tachi*; 2. (= manifest,
 plain) *tsahiri*, *sar(r)ai*, *kwa-*

*rai**; 3. (= pure, irreproachable)
tsari or *chari*.

clear, tr. v. used of ground before
 ploughing, *sasabe*.

clear, to make, tr. v. (= to ex-
 plain) *waye*, e.g. this matter is
 difficult, I wish you to make it
 c. to me *abu nan da wuya ina*
so ka waye mini.

clearly, adv. (= manifestly, ob-
 viously) *sar(r)ai*, *tsahiri*, *kwa-
 rai**.

cleave, tr. v. (= to cut with a
 strong blow) *sare*.

cleave to, intr. v. *rik(k)e*, *rik(k)a*,
rik(k)i, *daffe*, *tsaushi*, e.g. if
 you c. to them (to prayers)
 they will be a gain to you *en*
ku rikkesu sai maku anfani
 B 31.

clever, adj. 1. i.e. in an art or
 profession *gon(n)i*, pl. *gon(n)ai*;
 2. gen. = astute or cunning
shaitan, i.e. as c. as Satan.

cleverly, adv. *gon(n)i*, (= cunning-
 ly) *da wayo*.

cleverness, n. 1. (in an art etc.)
*gon(n)inta**; 2. gen. *asanchi*
 or *azanchi*, *budi*, *hikima**; see
 ability 2.

climb, v. *hawa* or *hau*, e.g. he
 climbed the hill *ya hawa duchi*
 or *ya hawa bissa duchi*.

cling to, v. *rabe**; to c. to a
 person in fear *rafaki*.

cloak, n. *alkebbu*, pl. *alkebbu*,
*riga**.

cloak, tr. v. 1. (= to put on a c.)
sa alkebbu; 2. (= to conceal)
rufe, *rufi* or *rife*.

clock, n. *saa**, *lot(t)u**. N.B. Such Hausas as are acquainted with our clocks express 'o'clock' thus, three o'clock *saa uk(k)u*; half past eight o'clock Turkish time *saa tok(k)os da shashi na turkawu*.

close, v. 1. tr. *sadda*, *sarkafe**; to c. a door, box etc. *rufe*, *rufi* or *rife*, *yani**; to c. the fist *tunkushe*; to c. a hole *dun(n)e* or *den(n)e*; the door is closed (also in fig. sense) *anrufe kofa*; 2. intr. of the eye in death *birkishe*, e.g. thine eye closes, thy life departs *ido shim birkishe rai ya fishema* F 80; 3. to c. with, used of a bargain or agreement *yerda*.

close by, adv. *kus(s)a*, *yauyau* or *yoyo*, e.g. he came c. by *ya yi yauyau*.

close to, adj. *nan da nan*, *dubbara da*.

closed, particip. (=fastened up) *girkeke*, fem. *girkekia*, pl. *girkeku*.

closet, n. (=small room) *loloki*, pl. *lolokai*.

cloth, n. 1. spec. names of stuffs are; blue c. *shudi*; blue, shiny c. *turkudi*; c. formed of blue and white strips *keke*; native blue or black c. with silk inwoven *ridi*; native black striped c. *bunu*, pl. *bunai*; native striped c. *luru*; dark-coloured women's c. *zalwani*; variegated c. *zaura* or *idon zaura*; variegated c. used for

turbans *bermusshi*; a kind of velvet c. *yapki*; white native c. (calico?) *dimi**; c. that has no seam in it *liwasa*; woollen c. *mulufi* or *malufi*; c. worked with gold inside *dibajo*; 2. (=piece of c. in various senses and spec. = Engl. 'a cloth') a loin c. *bante*, pl. *bantuna*, a goatskin loin c. *walki* or *wolki*; a shoulder c. *lek(k)i*; a small piece of c., a c. *kalkaf(f)i*; a piece of c., a woman's c. *zan(n)e*, *zan(n)i* or *zen(n)e*, pl. *zan(n)ua*, *lulubi* or *lulube*, cf. A 28; c. gusset in a tobe *shiga*; a remnant of c. *guzura**, pl. *guzure**; a strip of c. *kwaria*; half a piece of c. when it has been cut in two *ausigi**; a narrow silken line in c. *barage*; to twist a piece of c. *jainye**.

cloth-measure, n. cubit *kamu*; 8 *kamu* = 1 *zan(n)e*, $4\frac{1}{2}$ *zan(n)e* = 1 *turumi*, the last = 22 yds nearly.

clothe, tr. v. *sit(t)ira*, *sutura* and *sit(t)irta*; *sa* (lit. to put on or upon), e.g. to put on one's clothes *sa riguna*; e.g. and the brokers who have made unjust profits shall be clothed with (lit. shall have put upon them) garments of fire, without doubt *fa dillalai fa masuriba da kura asa masu riguna wuta babu wawa* F 201.

clothes, n. coll. *tufa* as well as its pl. *tufafi* or *tufafi*; *riguna*; spec. beautiful c. *sit(t)ira** or

- sutura**, *haiba**; fine, expensive c. *kambi**; old c. *keso*, *reg(g)a*, pl. *reg(g)una*, *sum(m)a*.
- clothing**, n. e.g. fine c., beautiful c.; cf. prec.
- cloud**, n. *habaki**, pl. *habaka*; special names, where in Engl. adjectives would be employed, are: moving c. *gilgiji*, *girigiji* or *girigiji*; small white, still clouds *lumshi*; a c. that produces a shower *zirnania*; clouds coll. *gajimare* or *gashimare*.
- cloudy**, adj. expr. by *da* with prec., e.g. *da lumshi*.
- cloven**, particip. *rababe*, fem. *rababa*, pl. *rababu*.
- cloves**, n. coll. *kanumfari*.
- club**, n. *gommi**; clubs, pl. *gudumai* or *gundumai* D 41.
- coal**, n. see **charcoal** (coal is unknown in Nigeria).
- coat**, n. 1. *riga*; 2. c. of mail made of cloth and padded with cotton, wool, etc. *lufudi*, pl. *lufudai*.
- cobweb**, *zar(r)en giz(z)o*.
- cock**, n. 1. (= male of poultry) *zakara* or *zakara*, pl. *zakaru* or *zakaru*; *maishar(r)a*, *maichar(r)a**; 2. to express precisely the male of birds *miji* or *namiji* (hen *mache*) must be used where the gender is not denoted by different words; 3. as a name of species of wild birds like Engl. black cock or Fr. coq de roche *zakara*, q.v.
- cockroach**, n. *kenkes(s)o*, pl. *kenkes(s)ai*.
- coerce**, tr. v. 1. (= restrain) *han(n)a*; 2. see **to force**.
- coffee**, n. *gahawa* or *gahwa*.
- coffer**, n. see **box**.
- cogitate**, v. *tuna*, the obj. of thought is constr. with *da* or *ga*.
- cogitation**, n. *tunane*.
- cohabit with**, v. *gamu da mache*.
- coll**, intr. v. *nad(d)e*; intr. and refl. to c. up *nad(d)u*.
- cold**, n. 1. *dari*, *sainyi*, e.g. I feel the c. or I feel c. *ina jin dari*; 2. (= catarrh) *dari*, *sainyi*, e.g. I have caught c. or a c. *dari (sainyi) ya kamani*; 3. spec. c. felt at night *funturu*.
- cold**, adj. *dari*, *sainyi*, *da dari*, *da sainyi*, e.g. c. water *ruan dari*, *rua dari*, *rua sainyi*, *sainyin rua*, they are c. *suna da dari*.
- collar**, n. spec. a padded cloth collar used in war to protect the back of the neck *dagumi*.
- collar**, to make a, *kalmas(s)a* or *kalma(s)she*.
- collect**, v. 1. tr. *tara*; spec. to c. a debt *bio bashi*; 2. intr. *taru*, also the pass. *antara*.
- collected**, particip. *tarare*, fem. *tarara*, pl. *tararu*.
- collection**, n. (of men and things) *taro* or *taru*, pl. *tarori*; *tsibi* or *subi*; *chushe*; the last two imply that the c. is large.
- collector of taxes**, n. *jekada**.
- colloquy**, n. *zanche*.

colour, n. *launi*, *rin(n)i* or *rin(n)a*;
blue c. *shuni* or *juni**.

coloured, particip. *turare**, fem.
*turara**, pl. *turaru**.

colt, n. *dan dukushi*.

comb, n. *masarchi* (also *masirchi*
and *masoshi*), pl. *masartai*;
c. made of wood or iron *ma-*
sefi, pl. *masefai* and *masefuna*;
shata.

comb, the uneaten part of bees' c.,
n. *taigal(l)a**.

comb, tr. v. *gerta*, *sef(f)i*, *shata*
or *shache*, e.g. I am combing
the hair of my head *ina shata*
gashin kaina.

come, intr. v. *zo*; (used with pro-
nominal forms ending in *na*)
zua or *tsua**, *zaka*; *taf(f)o* or
*taho**, e.g. c. to me *zo* or
taf(f)o mani, but when used to
invite attention or cooperation
yaka, fem. *yaki*, e.g. c. let
us sit down and converse to-
gether *yaka mu zamna mu yi*
zanche tare; we came to a city
mu ka zaka ga woni birni.
Some idiomatic combinations
of c. with preps. etc. are: to
c. about = to c. to pass *faru*;
to c. at *is(s)a*, *ishe*; to c. back
dawo, *dawoyo* or *dawooyo*,
komo, *birkido*; to c. by = ac-
quire, obtain *same* or *sama**,
samo; to c. down *shid(d)a*,
shid(d)e; to c. in *shig(g)o*; to
c. out *fit(t)o* and (with pro-
nominal forms ending in *na*)
firfitowa; to c. out from *fit(t)o*;
to c. quickly *sheko*; to c. to

gabato, *gabatowa*; to c. towards
is(s)o; to c. up *tasu*; to c. up
with *tarda*, *tarasda*; cf. coming.

comfit, n. *allewa*.

comfort, n. 1. (= satisfaction)
dadi, *dadin zuchia*, *walawa**;
2. (= consolation) *hankuri*, *han-*
kura or *hakora*, *sainyi* or *sain-*
yin zuchia.

comfort, tr. v. *bada hankuri*, e.g.
he comforted them *ya bada*
masu hankuri.

comfortable, to feel, intr. v. *jin*
dadi, *jin dadin zuchia*.

comforted, to be, (= feel consoled)
jin sainyi, I am c. *zuchiata*
tana jin dadi.

coming, participial n. *zua*, *zau-*
*wa**, *zakua*; c. back *komowa*;
c. here *taf(f)owa*; these forms
are used with pres. ending in
na, e.g. they are coming here
suna taf(f)owa.

command, n. (= order) *hakumchi*
or *hukumchi*, pl. *hakumtai*,
abin hakumta, *abin hakumchi*.

command, v. *hakumta* or *ha-*
kumche, *yin umorni**.

commander, n. (= leader, chief)
baba, e.g. tell me the name of
their c. *ka fad(d)i mani suna*
babansu.

commandment, n. see com-
mand.

commence, v. see begin.

commend, see approve of.

commission, broker's, n. see
brokerage.

commit, v. 1. (= to do, to per-
petrate) *yi*, he committed theft

- ya yi sata*; one who commits adultery *mai yin zina*.
- common**, adj. 1. (shared in by all) *na duka*, e.g. their common good fortune *arzikī na su duka*; 2. (defiled) *haram*.
- companion**, n. *kama*, pl. *kamanu*, *aboki**, *dan uwa**; a c. of the same age *tsaru*.
- companionship**, n. (evil) *tsaranchi*.
- company**, n. *taro* or *taru*, pl. *tarori*, *jam'u**; in c. (= together) *tare*; in c. with *tare da*.
- compare**, v. 1. gen. *kotanchi* or *kwatanchi*; 2. to c. by measuring *golgoda* or *gorgoda*.
- compass**, iron, n. *bukari**.
- compassion**, n. *tausai* or *tausaye*, *sauna**; to feel c. *jin* or *yin tausai*.
- compassionate**, 1. (of God) *er-rahimi**; 2. (of men) *imani**.
- compel**, v. *yin tilas*, *sa tilas*, *tilasa*, *tilasda*, e.g. you c. me *kana yin tilas* or *kana sani tilas*, I was compelled to work *ansani tilas aiki*, I compelled the fellow *na tilasa mutum*, I was compelled *antilasdani*, if he refuses c. him *idan ya ki asashi tilas*; cf. compulsion, force.
- complain**, v. *yin kururua*.
- complaint**, n. 1. (= loud expression of grief, pain, etc.) *kururua*; 2. (= sickness) *chiwo*, *chiuta* or *chuta*, e.g. liver c. *chirwon anta*; 3. (= a grievance, a cause of c.) *kara*; and so
4. (= accusation, a legal term) *kara*, *sara**, *abin sara**.
- complement**, n. *chik(k)o*, *abin chik(k)awa*, *yayalwachi**.
- complete**, adj. 1. *chik(k)ache*, fem. *chik(k)aka*, plur. *chik(k)aku*; 2. (of number) *ba gaira*, e.g. a c. hundred *dari ba gaira*, lit. a hundred without deduction.
- complete**, tr. v. *gam(m)a* F 256, *fisa**, and in a less strict sense = to bring to an end *ƙare*.
- complete**, to be, intr. *chik(k)a*; cf. seq.
- completed**, to be, *chik(k)a*, *ƙare*; often used at end of compositions, stories, etc. with the Ar. *tammāt**, e.g. the song is finished with thanks to God, it is c. *tammāt bihamdi allah waka ta chik(k)a*, the account of Bornu and that of Kano are c. *labarin bornu da labarin kano sunchik(k)a*; cf. C 65, G 7.
- completion**, n. *chik(k)awa*, *ƙamal**; note of c. placed at end of composition *iyaka*.
- compose**, tr. v. 1. (of an author) *yi*; 2. (= to settle or decide a dispute) *sadda*, *raba*.
- comprehend**, v. (= to understand) *fahimta* or *fahumta*, *ji*.
- compress**, tr. v. *matse*, *mat̄si*, *mache*, *dankira**.
- compressed**, to be, intr. and pass. *matsu*.
- compulsion**, *abin tilas*; under c. *tilas*, *da tilas*.
- compute**, v. see **calculate**.

comrade, n. *kama*, pl. *kamanu*, *aboki*, pl. *abokai*.

conceal, tr. v. *rufe*, *rufi* or *rife**; *boye*, *boiye* or *boiyi*; *kawaichi*, e.g. a crime; to c. oneself = to hide *boya* or *boye*, also with *kai*, e.g. he concealed himself under the leaves *ya boye kansa dagga kalkashin sansami*; to c. oneself (of lying in wait) *fak(k)e*.

concealed, particip. *rufafe*, fem. *rufafa*, pl. *rufafu*; *boiyeye*, fem. *boiyeya*, pl. *boiyeyu*.

concealment, n. *boya* or *boiya*, *boiyiwa*; place of c. *maboiya*, *wurin boiyiwa* B 98; cf. *ambush*.

conceals, one who, e.g. the truth, n. *mairufe*, pl. *masurufe*.

concede, tr. v. 1. (= to agree to) *yerda*; 2. (= to yield up) *ber(r)i* or *ber*.

conceive, tr. v. 1. (of thought) *tamaḥa*, e.g. I c. (= imagine) that they are Moslems *ina tamaḥa musulmai su ne*; 2. (of the female sex) *haifu*, *samu chik(k)i*.

concern, n. see **affair and business**.

concerned about, be, v. *kul(l)a* constr. with *da* or *ga*, e.g. he was not c. about this world *bai kulla ba ga dunia* C 52; *rua* used with subst. v. e.g. you are not concerned *babu ruanka*.

concerning, prep. *bis(s)a ga*, with prons. *gare*; *da*, e.g. fear to whisper evil c. anyone *ka tsor-*

shi ratsa da kowa F 9; *sab-bada**, *sabbado** or *sabboda**.

conclude, tr. v. see **complete and completed**.

concord, n. *saddua*; cf. **agree**.

concubine, n. *ṣadaka*, *wahaia*, e.g. he was the son of a c., his mother's name was Zainabu *shi dan wahaia ne uwa tasa zainabu*.

condemn, tr. v. *ka(s)she*, *kasshi** or *kis(s)a*, *ḡada*, *bada laifi*, *laifa**, *kusanchi*.

condemnation, n. *kayeswa* cf. seq., *alhaki*, *lalata*, the last quite general = **perdition**.

condemned, to be, v. *kayes**.

condition, n. 1. (=state) *zama*, *zamanchi*; 2. (= terms) *sharatsa**.

condition, to come into a, or state *zama* or *zama*.

conduct, letter of safe-, n. *wotikan lamuni*.

conduct, tr. v. (= to lead, bring) *kai*.

confectionery, n. *allewa*.

confer, v. 1. (= to consult together) *yin shawora*; 2. (= give, bestow) *ba*, *bada*.

confess, v. *furuchi*, *furchi* or *huruchi*.

confession, n. *furuchi*, *furchi* or *huruchi*.

confidence, n. (= reliance, trust) *amana*, *aminchi*, *amunchiwa**, *amuntsiwa**, *dangana*, *saduda* or *shaduda*; to have c. in *dangana*, *dogare*, *saduda* or *shaduda*, e.g. I have c. in... *ina dangana da...*; we have c. in thee *mu dogareka*; for

he puts no c. in this world
don bai amuntsiwa ga kowa dunia; to betray c. *chinye amana*; to justify c. (= to be trustworthy) *yin aminchi* B 84.
confine, n. (= boundary) *iyaka*.
confined, to be, v. (of women) *haifu*.
conflagration, n. *gobara, tur-nuka*, e.g. prov. *gid(d)a biu maganin gobara* two houses are a provision against a c.
conflict, n. *fad(d)a, fama, yaki*.
conflict, intr. v. *kar(r)a, kar(r)o* and *yin kar(r)o*, e.g. this conflicts with that *wonan ya yi kar(r)o da wonchan*.
confluence, n. of rivers, *magan-gami*.
confounded, to be, v. *şandare* or *sadare*, e.g. on the day when thou meetest with the angels, thou shalt be c. *rana gamu da malaiku ka sadare* C 8.
confuse, tr. v. (= to confound or perplex) *dame* or *dama, daffa**.
confused, to be, v. *damu*; *daffa kai* and *sha kai*, e.g. for the fool would be utterly c. *don jahili shi kan daffa kai nai* B 14; he was c. *ya sha kansa*.
confusedly, adv. *damai*.
confusion, n. (of mind) *damasa, marbika**, *damua**.
congeal, intr. v. *chibaru*.
congratulate, tr. v. *barka, gaishe, gaida*.
congregate, intr. v. *taru*.
congregation, n. *jama'a**, *jam'u** F 3.

conjoin, tr. v. *gam(m)a*.
connections, n. coll. *kibanta**, *dengi, denga* or *deg(g)i*, pl. *den-goyi*, q.v.
conquer, tr. v. 1. (= to acquire by war) *chi*; 2. (= to overcome) *i* and *ima, yin naş(ş)ara, yin naş(ş)archi*.
consciousness, n. *tunane* (a particip. form), fem. *tunana*, pl. *tunanu*, is used substantively = thought, consciousness.
consent, v. *yerda, bada yerji, ji**, *so*, e.g. do you c.? I do *kana so ? ina so*.
consequence, n. 1. (= effect), e.g. in c. of this *don wonan, domin wonan, don hak(k)a, don hak(k)anan, sab(b)ada wonan*; 2. (= importance), e.g. it is of no c. *babu komi*, people of c. cf. consideration 2.
consider, v. 1. gen. *tsokachi* and *yin tsokachi* A 77, *tuna* and *tunane* with *da*; 2. (of a council, deliberation) *yin şawora*.
consideration, n. 1. (= deliberation) *şawora*; 2. (= importance), e.g. a person of some c. *bab(b)an mutum*, pl. *mainya mutane*.
consolation, n. *hankuri, hankura* or *hakora, şainyin zuchia*.
console, tr. v. *bada hankuri*; to be consoled *jin şainyi*.
consort, n. 1. see companion, comrade; 2. (of married people) *namiji, miyi*, fem. *mata*.
conspiracy, to form a, v. *gam(m)a**.

conspire, intr. v. *yin baki daia*.
constantly, adv. *koyaushe, kul(l)um**, *kulyaushe**.
constellation, see **star**; c. of the Camel, pr. n. *tagua*.
constrain, tr. v. *tilasda*; cf. **compel**, force.
construct, tr. v. 1. gen. *yi*; 2. spec. of roads *gina*.
consul, n. *gunsul**.
consult, v. 1. intr. (= to deliberate) *yin shawora, yin roshi*; 2. tr. v. *yin shawora* constr. with *ma, ga, da*, e.g. I am going to c. you *zani yin* (or *en yi*) *shawora da kai*.
consultation, n. *shawora, roshi*.
consume, tr. v. 1. (used of fire) *las(s)a, la(s)she, kona**, *kone**; 2. (generally) *chi, chida, chain-ye, chinye*.
contain, tr. v. see **hold**.
contaminate, tr. v. *yin kasamta*.
contemplate, tr. v. see **consider**.
contempt, n. *rena**; cf. **despise**.
contemptuous, adj. see **proud**.
contemptuously, treat, intr. v. *tsaki**.
contend, tr. v. see **fight, strive**.
content, adj. *kosa(s)she*, pl. *kosas(s)u*; to be c. *koshi*.
content, tr. v. *koshada**.
contention, n. (= disputing) *haryana, hania, musuwa*; cf. **strife**.
contents (= that which is contained) *abin chik(k)i*.
contest, n. see **contention**.
continually, adv. see **constantly**.

continuance, n. *tabbatawa, dawama*; where is a state of c.? *enna zama na dawama?* C 15; long c. *tsarwa, tsawanta*.
continue, intr. v. *dawama, duma, dad(d)a, ded(d)i, faye**, *tabbata, tabbata*; to c. to exist *ka(s)shi, ka(s)she, kasanchi*; phr. we c. giving thanks *muna dadda godia*, I c. travelling until evening *ina yini taffia*.
continuing, *maidawama, maitabbetauwa*.
contract, tr. v. 1. (a disease) *tarda*; 2. to c. the face *damre fuska*; 3. intr. v. (= to shrivel up) *yaushi, yoshi*; 4. (= to make an agreement) see **agree**.
contrivance, n. *dabara, dhubara, chim(m)i**, *chim(m)a**, *wayo, waya, abin wayo*.
contrive, v. *wayo, waya*.
control, tr. v. see **restrain**.
convalescence, n. *rongomi*.
convalescent, be, intr. v. *jin* or *yin rongomi, yin dama, wart-saka**.
convenient, adj. *shawaba**, *daidai*; cf. **fit, suitable**.
conversation, n. *battu, batunda**, *zanche, zanchi**, *fira, hira**, *tankawa, zantawa*; hum of c. *dum(m)i**.
converse, intr. v. *tanka, tamka, yin battu, yin zanche, sanche**, *yin magana, tadi, yin tadi*.
conversing, part. *tankawa, zantawa*.
converted, be, intr. v. *sanya*, e.g. he was c. from heathenism

- to Islam *ya sauya da arna musulmi*.
- convey**, tr. v. see **carry**.
- convict**, tr. v. *ka(s)she**.
- convince**, tr. v. (= satisfy by evidence) *hakikanta**.
- convulsions**, n. *mijiria, misiria*.
- cook**, tr. v. *daffa*; c. without water *tuya, soiya, suya*; c. by blowing under a pot on the fire *girke*.
- cook**, n. *maidaffi, maidaffua, sarikin wuta*.
- cooked**, be, *nen(n)a, nin(n)a, nuna*; c. part. *daffafe*; c. without water *soiyaye*, fem. *soiyaya*, pl. *soiyayu*; well c. *nen(n)ane*, pl. *nen(n)anu*, *nun(n)ane*, pl. *nun(n)anu, tapshi, tafshi, tabshi**; c. food *soiya*.
- cooking**, part. *daffua*; c. place *madaffa, wurin daffa*; c. place on which a pot is set *murufu*.
- cool**, adj. *sainya, shainya**, *da sainyi*.
- cool**, tr. v. *sainya*.
- cooled**, part. *sainyaye*.
- coop**, n. *akurike*, pl. *akurikai*.
- copper**, n. *jan karifi* (lit. red iron); girdle made of c. *tagula**, *tugula**.
- copy**, tr. v. see **imitate**.
- coral**, n. *murjan**.
- cord**, n. *silia* or *siliya*, pl. *siliyu* or *silyoyi*, *igia*, pl. *igoyi* or *igiyoyi*; a c. to tie trousers round the waist *kubaka*.
- coriander seed**, *ridi*; oil made from c. s. *main ridi*; a plant resembling c. *yaudon ruri*.
- corn**, n. *hachi, hatsi*, (wheat) *al-kam(m)a*; guinea c. *dawa, gero, kaura**, *farafara**, *mura-mura**, *giwakamba**; Egyptian c. *ma(s)ara, dama(s)ara*; ear of c. *geza*, pl. *gezuna*; a pit for storing c. *tsunjia*; to rub or grind c. *tushe, nik(k)a, dakka*.
- corner**, n. *kusurua*, pl. *kusuroyi, sukurua**.
- corpse**, n. *gawa*, pl. *gawaweki, mushe, matache*, fem. *matachia*, pl. *matatu*.
- correct**, tr. v. (= punish) *foro, horo**, *wohalshe*.
- correct**, adj. *daidai, nakwarai*, fem. *takwarai, sar(r)ai, sosai, ainin*; it is c. *ya yi daidai*.
- correctly**, adv. *daidai, sosai, kwairai, sar(r)ai*; to count c. *kilga sar(r)ai*.
- cost**, n. (= price) *kurdi*; what does it c.? *kurdinsa nauwa?* its c. *kurdinsa, antayansa, tamaininsa**, *hakinsa**.
- costly**, adj. *da tsada*; to be c. *yin tsada*.
- cotton**, n. *kada*; c. plant *abduga, audiga*; c. yarn or thread *abawa*; white c. for sewing *sulale*; small piece of twisted c. *shusia*; seeds of c. plant *anguria*; silk c. tree *rimi*.
- couch**, n. of a king or judge, *karaga*.
- cough**, n. *toari*; c. medicine *kazizi*, q.v.
- cough**, intr. v. *yin toari*.
- council**, n. *fada, roshi, magantawa, magantirwa*.

councillor, *mafada*, pl. *mafadawa*.
counsel, n. *dabára, dubára, wayo, ganawa**.

counsel, tr. v. see **advise**.

count, tr. v. *kedaya, kilga, kirga, yin lisafi, lisafi**.

count, n. *kedaya, lisafi, lesafi*.

countenance, n. *fuska*, pl. *fuskoki* or *fuskuna*.

country, n. *kas(s)a*, pl. *kas(s)ashi* or *kas(s)asa, gari*, pl. *garurua* or *garigarua*; uninhabited c. *jeje*.

courage, n. *mazakuta*.

courageous, adj. see **brave**.

course, n. *takitaki**.

course of, *mana*.

court, n. c. of a king *fada, wurin shawora, fag(g)e, kindigaye**; c. yard *dandali*.

courtiers, n. *fadawa*.

cousin, n. *kotana**.

cover, n. c. of a book *bango, bungo*, pl. *bangaye, banguna, taderishi*; dish c. made of grass *faijai*, pl. *fiyajai*; cf. **covering**.

cover, tr. v. *rufe, ruft, rife, yin sutura* or *sit(t)ira*.

covered, part. *rufafe*, fem. *rufafa*, pl. *rufafu*.

covering, n. e.g. a blanket, *bergo, burgo, mayafi, sutura, sit(t)ira, marufi*, pl. *marufai, rufa*; c. of a door *kiyauri*; c. of skins *tunku*; c. for a horse *mashimfidá*, pl. *mashimfuda*; temporary c. for the night *saiyi*, pl. *saiyoyi*.

covet, tr. v. *shahawa, yin guri*.

covetous, adj. *da rowa, mairowa,*

makodaita, maikawazuchi, marowachi.

covetousness, n. *rowa, kawazuchi, zowari, makodaichi*.

cow, n. *sania*, pl. *shanu*; a small species with very short horns *muturu*; an old lean c. *guzuma*; a c. about to give birth to a calf *juya*; c.-shed *turiken shanu*; a c. tied up by the feet *dungul(l)i*; cowhide *kilago*, pl. *kilagai*.

coward, n. *matsorata, bahili**, *lalafa**.

cowardice, n. *matsorachi*.

cowhide, n. see **cow**.

cowry shell, n. *ijia, wuri*, pl. *kurdi* or *kawara* or *alkawara*; a large c. s. *gandi*; a bag containing 20,000 shells *kesu, karoro, kororo*; large skin bag for cowries *jikka, zikka*.

crab, n. *kagua*, pl. *kagunai*.

crack, tr. v. *tsaga**.

cracking, e.g. of the skin under the toes, *kudumbia*.

crackle, intr. v. *chachagi*.

crackling, of hell fire, *babaki**.

craftiness, n. *wayo*.

crafty, adj. *da wayo, mairwayo, shaitan**.

cram, tr. v. (= stuff) *dora*.

cramp, n. *mijiria, misiria*.

crane, crested, n. *goraka, gauraka, garmaka, gamraka, gomraka*; a bird somewhat resembling a c. *kurki*.

crawcrawl, n. see **crowerow**.

crawl, intr. v. *rarafe, rubda* (or *rufda*) *chik(k)i*.

crawling, n. *jan jiki*.
create, tr. v. *halita, talita, halichi**.
creator, n. *mahalichi**, *maihalichi**, *haliku**.
creature, n. *halita, dabba* or *dabbo*, pl. *dabboni* or *dabbobi*; creatures *talikai**.
credit, n. *bashi*, pl. *basusuka*.
creditor, n. *maibada bashi, maibashi*.
creed, n. *addini**.
creep, intr. v. *rarafe, sandua, sadada**; c. like a cat stealthily *baya baya**.
cricket, n. small species of, *tsainya, tsania, jare**.
crier, n. (= one who cries aloud or proclaims) *babambade, bade**; (= one who calls to prayer) *maikir(r)an sal(l)a, lada**.
crime, n. *zamba*.
crocodile, n. *kada* or *kado*, pl. *kadodi*.
crooked, be, *fandare, lonkwashé*.
crooked, adj. *karikache*, fem. *karikata*, pl. *karikatu*.
crop of a bird, n. *maroro, malolo*.
cross, n. *gilme**, pl. *gilmomi** or *gilnomi**, *gilmen itache**; c. beam on top of doorway *azara*.
cross, tr. v. *gilma, ketare*.
crossing, part. *ketarewa, teta-rewa*.
cross-legged, sit, intr. v. *turaba'i**, *yin turaba'i**.
cross-ways, n. *mararabin hainya*.
crow, intr. v. *chira, char(r)a, kakaruko, kukaruku*; cock-crow *chiran zakara*.

crow, n. species of, *shimkake, hankaka*, pl. *hankaki* or *hankaku*.
crowcrow, n. (disease) *kakai*; a herb supposed to cure c. *kaskawani*.
crowd, n. (of people) *gayya, taru, masutaria, aluma**.
crown-prince, n. (i.e. heir to the throne) *chiroma**.
cruel, adj. *mun(n)i*.
cruelly, adv. *da mun(n)i*.
cruelty, n. *kita, keta, mun(n)i*.
crumbs, n. *burugushé, burubushi, bulbudi, barbaddi, guzura*, pl. *guzure*.
crush, tr. v. *mache, machi, matse, laze, murjek(k)i, kumtata**.
cry, n. *kuka, kuwa, muria*, pl. *murioyi, kir(r)a, tsuwa*; loud c. *ufu, kururua*.
cry, intr. v. (= cry out) *yin kuka, yin kururua, tsawa, tsawutawa, kara**, *rubsa* (or *rufsa*), *kuka*; raise a c. *dora kir(r)a*; c. for joy *guda, gudu**; c. wares for sale *tal(l)a*.
cubit, n. *kamu, gab(b)a, zira**.
cucurbita, n. (= gourd) *kworia*.
cucurbita pepo, n. *kabewa*.
cultivate, tr. v. *noma, nomi, nome*.
cultivator, n. *manomi, monomi*, pl. *monoma*.
cunning, n. see **craft**.
cup, n. *dasa, tasa*, pl. *tasoshi, gora*, pl. *goruna, kworia*; large c. *sintali, shintali* or *shantali*, pl. *shintalai*.
cupboard, n. *loloki**, pl. *lolokai**.
curds, n. of milk, *guntsari*.

cure, tr. v. *worike*, *worke*, *warke*.
cured, part. *worikeke*, fem. *worikekia*, pl. *worikeku*; to be c. *worike*.

curl, intr. v. (used of a snake) *tak(k)ura*; cf. coil.

curse, n. *laana*.

curse, tr. v. *wade*, *wa mugunta*, *zage*; may you be cursed! *tir*, *uss*, *ush*.

cursed, part. *laane*, fem. *laana*, pl. *laanu*.

curtain, n. (made of fibre and let down in front of a doorway) *tsaiwa*, *bunu*, *arsaberi*, *tsabore*, *zabore*, *kaure*, *kiauri*.

cuscus, n. *wassa wassa*, *kuskus**

cushion, n. *leferu*, pl. *leferai*; c. placed on a donkey *akumari*.

custom, n. *ada*, *tada*, pl. *tadodi*, *humushi**, *sabo**, *haya** or *hainya**, pl. *hainyoyi**, *hal(l)i*, pl. *hal(l)ai*, *tabia**

cut, tr. v. *yenka*, *yenke*, *sare*, *yin sosaiya*; c. into small pieces *sasabe*, *yenylene*; c. into strips *reda*; c. round *shankumbu*; c. off *chira*, *chire*, *chiro*, *tsira*, *tsire*, *tsiro*; c. down *kade*; c. up meat *fawa*; c. marks on *reda*; c. cloth *shifchi**; c. off the hair *kundumi*; c. with a hoe *shema*; c. down the harvest *giribi*, *girbi*.

cut, part. *yenkake*, fem. *yenkaka*, pl. *yenkaku*, *sarare*, fem. *sararia*, pl. *sararu*.

cutlass, n. *takobi*, *takwobi*, pl. *takuba*, *tamga**

cutting off of hands (a punish-

ment for thieving) *yamkon hanu*.

dagger, n. *hargi**, *konga**, *wuka**

dally, adv. *kowache rana*.

damp, n. *fumfunu*.

damsel, n. *yarinia*, *budurua*.

dance, n. *rawa*, *lela*, *zaria*.

dance, intr. v. *yin rawa*, *taka rawa*, *yin zaria*, *tsal(l)i*, *tsul(l)i*, *wur(r)a**

dandruff, n. *toto*, *tautau*.

danger, n. *abin tsoro*; a dangerous place *wurin tsoro*.

daring, adj. see *brave*.

dark, adj. *da dufu*; phr. it is d. *ya yi dufu* or *rana ta dushi*.

darkness, n. *dufu*, *dufua*, *dushiwa*, *lungu**; utter d. *dufu kirim*.

darling, n. *lele**

dart, n. *hankaltilo*, *hargi*; a d. used for catching fish *hag(g)u*.

dash together, tr. v. *gumberi*, *goburi*, *gobre*.

date, n. (= tree and fruit) *dabino*; a bunch of dates *zaraba*; dates tied up in a mat *lubiya*; a species of dark coloured d. *zabia*, pl. *zabiyoyi*.

date, n. (= time of an event) *yayi*, *zamani**, *lokachi**

daub, tr. v. *yabe*, *shafa**, *shafe**

daughter, n. *diya*, pl. *yamata*.

dawdle, intr. v. *tsaiko*, *yin tsaiko*.

dawn, n. *wayewa*, *azuba*, *asuba*, *fudowa*, *fudawa*.

dawn, intr. v. *waye*; the day dawns *gari ya waye* or less commonly *allah ya waye*.

day, n. (the time from sunrise to sunset) *rana* or *ra*, pl. *ranuka*, used both as masc. and fem.; (= twenty-four hours) *kwana*, pl. *kwanaki* or *kwanuka*; to-day *yo*, *you*; to stay at a place for a d. *yini*; three days ago *wanshekaranjia*; the d. before yesterday *shekaranjia*; yesterday *jia*; the following d. *rana maizakua*; to-morrow *gobe*; the d. after to-morrow *jibi*; the d. after the d. after to-morrow *gata*; the d. after *gata*, i.e. the fifth d. *chitta*; the last d. *ranan gobe* or *ranan kiyama*; the d. on which *randa* (a shortened form of *rana da*); every d. *kowache rana*; all d. *rana duka*; the d. on which a child receives its name *ransuna*; when d. is used with ordinal numbers the singular form is usually employed, thus: three days *rana uku* or *kwana uku*. The days of the week are: Sun. *lahadi*, Mon. *latini*, Tues. *talata*, Wed. *laraba*, Thurs. *alhamis*, Fri. *aljimua*, Sat. *assubat*.

dazzle, tr. v., to d. the eyes *makamche*; the lightning has dazzled thine eyes *wolkia ta makamcheka*.

dead, adj. *matache*, fem. *matachia*, pl. *matatu*, *amache**; a d. body *mushe*, *gawa*, pl. *gawaweiki*; (= that which has died of itself) *guba*; cf. die.

deaf, adj. *kuruma*, pl. *kurumai*,

kurma; d. and dumb *bebe*, pl. *bebaye*.

deaf, be, intr. v. *kuruma*.

deafness, n. *kurumchi*, *kurumta*.

dear, adj. (=costly) *da tsada*; (=be-loved) *masoyi*, fem. *masoya*, pl. *masoyu*, *lele**, *abin kamna**.

dearness, n. (= high price) *tsada*.

dearth, n. see *want*.

death, n. *mutua*, *jinkiri*, *matá*, (lit. last sleep) *makarin berchi*; a natural d. *mutuan allah*; sudden d. *sarki mutua*; the angel of d. (lit. he who separates) *marabiwa*.

debt, n. *bashi*, pl. *basusuka*, *ramche*; to pay a d. *bia bashi*; to recover a d. *bio bashi*, *bimbashi*; surety for payment of a d. *lamuni*, phr. he is in my debt *shina da bashina* or *ina binsa bashi*.

debtor, n. *maikarban bashi*, *maidarukan bashi*.

deceit, n. *munafuchi*, *manafuchi*, *tsalimi*, *tsalumi*, *tsalimchi*, *rikiche*, *rikichi*, *haiinchi*, *wayo*, *mantua**, *rurudi**, *algus**; (lit. two hearts) *zuchia biu*.

deceitful, adj. *marikichi*, *mairi-gingini*, *rigingini*, *maitsalumchi*, *maialgus*, *azalumi**, *marude*, *mairude*, pl. *maruda*.

deceitfully, adv. *da tsalumchi*; to treat d. *yin tsalumchi*; to act d. *rikiche*.

deceive, tr. v. *rude*, *makuri**, *saishe**.

deceived, be, v. *ruthu*.

deceived, part. *rudade*, fem. *rudada*, pl. *rudadu*.

deceiver, n. see **deceitful**.

decide, tr. v. (of a judge) *raba*.

declare, tr. v. *had(d)ichi*, *laberta**, *haberta**, *fad(d)a*; d. openly *bayan(n)a*, *bayen(n)a*; d. positively *furuchi*, *furchi*, *huruchi*.

decline, v. (= grow less) the day declines *ranu ta tawaya*, see **decrease**; (= refuse) *ki*, *kiya*.

decorous, adj. see **becoming**.

decrease, n. *ragua*.

decrease, tr. v. *rage*, *ragi*, *reg(g)i*, *tawaya*, *tauwi*; intr. v. *ragu*, *reg(g)i*, *tawayà*, *tawayo*, *tauwi*, *kasasda*.

decree, n. *ajali**.

deed, n. see **act**.

deep, adj. *da zurufi*, *maizurufi*; a d. place. (usually with water in it) *gulbi*, pl. *gulabe*.

deer, n. *barewa*, pl. *bareyi*, *dar(r)i*, *der(r)i*, *kanki**, *god(d)a*, pl. *god(d)odi*, *gonki*; small male d. *karangod(d)a*.

defeat, n. (in war) *artai*.

defect, n. *lahani*, *aibu*; cf. blemish.

defend, tr. v. see **guard**.

defer, tr. v. *fasa*.

defile, tr. v. *yin haram*; cf. pollute.

defraud, tr. and intr. v. *chin kura*, *chin riba*.

dejected, see **disheartened**.

delay, n. *fashi*, *yauchi*, *dad(d)ewa*, *saiyi**; d. in paying money which is due *ajali*.

delay, intr. v. *yin fashi*, *yin yauchi*, *wanzu*, *wonzu*, *dada*, *ded(d)i*; d. to deliver a mes-

sage *ida labari*; he delays to come *ya deddi da zakua*.

deliberate, intr. v. *yin shawora*.

deliberately, adv. *da gangan*.

deliberation, n. *shawora*; place of d. *wurin shawora*.

delight, n. *kalkili**; cf. joy.

delight, tr. v. see **please**.

delirious, adj. a d. person *bori*.

deliver, tr. v. (= give over) *bada*, *bashi*, *yerda*, *mika**; (= save) *cheto*, *cheche*, *chira*, *chire*, *chiro*, *tsira*, *tsire*, *tsiro*, *chirasda*, *kwacha*, *kwasha*.

deliverance, n. *chira*, *chiraro*, *tsira*, *tsiraro*, *fansa*, *pansa*.

delivered, be, v. *haifu*, *haifu*.

deliverer, n. *machechi*, pl. *macheta*.

demon, n. *aljan*, pl. *aljanu* or *al-jinnu* or *jinnu*, *bori**, *fatalua**.

denial, n. (= a dispute in which something is denied) *gerdama*, *anamusu*.

deny, tr. v. *musu*, *han(n)a**, *ki*.

depart, intr. v. *fit(t)a*, *ras(s)u*, *rabu*, *je**, *fishema**.

departure, n. *fit(t)a*.

deposit, n. *amana*, *lamuni**; to steal a d. *chin amana*, cf. E 25; those who steal a deposit *masutubin amana*, E 15; a place in which to d. anything *maaje*.

deprivation, n. e.g. of goods *wofi*.

depth, n. *zurufi*, *zurfi*.

deranged, a person, n. *maicauta*; to act as one d. *yin raurawa*.

deride, tr. v. *yin baa*, *baa*, *yin zunde*.

derision, n. *baa*, *zunde*.

descend, intr. v. *shid(d)a*, *shid(d)e*, *shid(d)o*, *sabka**, *sapka**.
describe, tr. v. *kotanta*, *kwatanta*.
desert, n. (= solitary place) *dawa**, *daji**, *sab(b)ara**, *sab(b)ura**, *hamada**.
desert, tr. v. d. a friend *zaua**; cf. abandon.
deserter, n. (in war) *kazum*.
deserve, tr. v. *chinchinta**.
designedly, adv. *da gangan*.
desire, n. 1. (= wish) *so*, *daula*, *kamna**, *maradi*, *muradi*; eager d. *hawa**; desires *zuchia**, *nafsi**; evil d. *shawa*, *shahawa*, *fata*, *guri*, *kodai*, *kwadai*; 2. (= the thing wished for) *abinso*, *abin daula*, *maradi*, *muradi*, *guri*, *nuf(f)i*, *gata*.
desire, tr. v. *so*, *nuf(f)e*, *nif(f)a*; d. what is wrong *yin fata*; burn with d. *kona*, *kuna**; *kona**, *kone*; intr. v. direct the d. *maida kamna*.
desist, intr. v. *daina*, *dena*, *beri*, *ber*.
desolation, n. *kango*, pl. *kangogi*, *afko*, *kad(d)aita*, *risbawa*.
despicable, adj. see **despised**.
despise, tr. v. *rena*, *kiale*, *tsantsani*, *walakanta*, *yenke kamna*, *kaskasta**, *kuskunta**, *tersa**, *tarsasa**.
despised, part. *renane*, fem. *renana*, pl. *renanu*.
despising, part. *renawa*, *rena*, *reni*; the d. of advice *renin wayo*.
despoil, tr. v. (in war) *buruntu*.
destiny, n. *ajali*, *jinkiri**, *ku-dira**.

destitute, one who is, n. *masiachi*, pl. *masiata*, *mayenwachi**, pl. *mayenwata**; cf. *rashi*, *maras*.
destroy, tr. v. *bata*, *bache*, *halaka*, *fas(e)a**, *banna*, *tsotse**, *tsotsi**, *chi**.
destroyed, be, v. *lalachi*, *gurbache*, *yamutse**, *yamutsi**, *talafa**; about to be d. *maiafkawa*.
destroyed, part. *batache*, fem. *batatchia*, pl. *batatu*.
destroying, part. *mai-fasawa*.
destruction, n. *afko*, *halaka*, *lata*, *ta'adi*, *batachi*.
detain, tr. v. *riska*, *riske*, *riski*, *rik(k)o*, *tsaida*, *tsaishie*, *tsaiesda*, *hanna*.
detect, tr. v. (e.g. in a fault) *rize**.
deter, tr. v. see **prevent**.
devastate, tr. v. *yin afko*, *yin kud(d)aita*.
deviate, intr. v. (from a straight course) *bauda* used with *hainya*; causing to d. *baudiwa*.
devil, n. *shaitan*, *shetan*, *shaitani*, *iblis*, *eblis*; cf. demon.
devoid of, see **without**.
devour, tr. v. *rida*, *chaisnye*, *chinye*, *chingi*, *hadie**.
dew, n. *raba*, *reaba*; a drop of d. *dig(g)an raba*.
diarrhoea, n. *gudawa*, *gudun daji*; a medicine for d. *filasko*.
dice, n. *kuria*; a throw of d. *jefan kuria*; to cast d. *yin modi* (cowrie shells are generally used instead of d. for gambling with).
die, intr. v. *mache*, *machi*, *mutu*

- (this is seldom used except to denote the past tense), *ras(s)u**;
d. a natural death *yin mushe*.
- differ**, intr. v. *yin dabam, yin bambam*.
- difference**, n. *dabamchi, bambamchi, bambamta*; what is the d. between this and that? *minene bambamchi wonan da wonan*; differences (= points of variance) *tsakankani*.
- different**, adj. *dabam*; very d. *dabam dabam*; d. from *dabam da, dabam dag(g)a*; a d. sort *iri dabam*.
- difficult**, adj. *da wuya*; it is too d. for me *ya buayeni, ya faskareni, ya fayeni*.
- difficulty**, n. *wuya, karaki**; with d. *dak(k)et, dak(k)ir*.
- dig**, tr. v. *gina, tona*, haka**; d. in the ground *fuda*; d. up land *kirta*; d. with a hoe *shira*; d. round growing corn *kafa*; d. a well *yasa*.
- dignified**, adj. a d. person *dotijo, datijo, dotizo*.
- diligence**, n. *kokaru, him(m)a, him(m)a, aniya*.
- diligent**, be, intr. v. *yin aniya, marda kokari, kokari*; be d. *ku bada kokarunku B 16*.
- diligently**, adv. *da him(m)a, da aniya, kwazo*.
- dim**, be, intr. v. *dindimi, dushi*.
- diminish**, see **decrease**.
- dimness**, n. *dushiwa*; d. of sight *makamchi, bambarokai**.
- dip**, tr. v. *tsoma, soma*, zoma**; d. under water *nuta, nus(s)e, nus(s)a*; d. the head in water *yin kunduma*.
- dipus**, n. (=jerboa) *kurege*.
- direct**, adj. e.g. a d. path *hainya sosai**.
- directly**, adv. *yanzu, koyanzu, nan da nan*.
- dirt**, n. *guiba, gwiba, gwibi, dauda, kazami*, pl. *kazamai, kazamta*, kasamta**.
- dirty**, adj. *da dauda, da kazami*; to make d. *yin dauda*.
- disagree**, intr. v. see **quarrel**.
- disagreement**, n. see **discord**.
- disappear**, intr. v. *gurbache**.
- disappointed**, be, intr. v. *kalma(s)she zuchia**.
- discern**, tr. v. *ji*, bibia**.
- discernment**, n. *basira**.
- discharge**, tr. v. 1. (= fire off) *buga, halbi*; 2. (= send away) see **dismiss**.
- disciple**, n. *almajiri*, fem. *almajira*, pl. *almajirai*.
- discomfort**, n. *mako**.
- discontented**, adj. one who is d. *masiachi*, pl. *masiata*.
- discord**, n. *fasadi, fasada, kiyeya, rikichi*, sabani, fusuma, gerdama**; cf. **dispute**.
- discount**, n. *jara*; a special d. *lad(d)a*; what d. is allowed? *enna rongomi*.
- discourage**, tr. v. *sake fuska* (lit. to change the face); cf. **dishearten**.
- discover**, tr. v. see **find**.
- discussion**, n. *magantawa, magantirwa, maganta**; to hold a d. *yin maganta*.

disdain, tr. v. see **despise**.
disease, n. *chiuta*, *chiwo*; a d. in women *kui'kui*, *kuku*; a d. of the joints *terga*, pl. *tergai*, cf. *turgude*; a d. on horses' legs *tijo*.
disgrace, n. *walakanchi*; cf. shame.
disgrace, tr. v. *falasa*, *palasa*.
dish, n. a large wooden d. *akoshi*, pl. *akusa*; dish-cover (made of plaited grass) *fai'fai*, pl. *fiyafai*; the knob which forms the top of dish-cover *tuku*, *tukuwa*.
dishearten, tr. v. *karya zuchia*; phr. you d. me *ka karya mani zuchia*, I am disheartened *zuchiata ta bache*; cf. discourage.
dishonour, n. *kankanchi*, *walakanchi**, *kumia**.
dislike, n. *haushi*, *kiyeya*; cf. hate.
dislike, tr. v. *ki*, *kia*, *kiyeya*, *kankamna*; they d. him *sunajin haushinsa*.
dismay, n. see **fear**.
dismiss, tr. v. *tayesda**; cf. disperse.
dismount, intr. v. *shid(d)o*, *sabka*, *shid(d)a kasa*; cf. alight.
disobedience, n. *kinji*.
disobey, tr. v. *ki ji*.
disperse, tr. v. *kawasda*, *wasa*, *wase*, *ware*, *wahwache*.
displease, tr. v. *sa wohal(l)a*; this displeased them *wonan ya sa wohalla garesu*; cf. distress.
displeasure, n. *has'ala**, cf. anger; to show signs of d. *jirkita fуска*.
disposition, n. (= temper) *hal(l)i*, pl. *hal(l)ai*; good d. *farin zini*

(lit. white blood); had d. *bak(k)in zuchia* (lit. blackness of heart), *lalata*, *kafarchi*, *mugun gashi**.

dispute, n. *gerdama*, *sab(b)abi*, *sub(b)abi*, *binchik(k)i*, *funuma*, *sabani*.

dispute, intr. v. *yin gerdama*, *gerdama*, *yin kokonto*, *yin tsamki**.

disregard, tr. v. *rena*, *hal(l)**; cf. despise.

dissemble, intr. v. see **pretend**.

dissent, intr. v. express d. by turning the head away *kaudakai*.

dissolute, adj. see **profligate**.

dissolve, l. tr. v. *narike*; 2. intr. v. *nariku*.

distance, n. to place at a d. *nesanta*; to keep a d. from *nesanchi*; a measure of d. (as far as the eye can reach) *jetaka**; I saw him from a d. *na hangeshi dagga nesa*.

distant, adj. *nesa*, *dag(g)a nesa*, *da nesa*; d. from *nesa dag(g)a*.

distinct, adj. see **different**.

distress, n. *nawaya*, *wuya*, *wohal(l)a*, *machiachi*, *machiata*, *sananta*, *ajian zuchia*.

distress, tr. v. *sananche*, *sa wohal(l)a*; that which causes d. *abin da wuya*.

distressed, be, v. *firgaba*, *jin wohal(l)a*; I was d. *na gamu da nawaya*.

distribute, tr. v. *raba*.

district, n. *gari**, *wuri**.

ditch, n. *gamwa*.

dive, intr. v. *nus(s)o*, *nuta*, *nus(s)e*, *nus(s)a*, *ninkaya**.

diver, n. (bird) *dunia*.

divide, tr. v. *raba*, *raraba*, *rarabi**, *kas(s)a**.

divided, be, intr. v. *rabu*, *warwari*, *wariwari*, *woriwori*, *wawari*.

divided, part. *rababe*, fem. *rababa*, pl. *rababu*; *mararaba*, *muraraba*.

division, n. *rabo* or *rabu*, pl. *raberibi*; *mararabi*; the dividing point of two roads *mararabin hainya*; d. of a town (within the walls) *shia*, *shiwaka*, *ungua*, pl. *unguai* or *unguni**.

divorce, n. *sakiwa*.

divorce, tr. v. d. a woman *shik(k)a*, *saki*, *kore* all followed by *mache*.

do, tr. and intr. v. 1. (= act) *yi*; 2. (= accomplish) *yi*, *i*, *yiwa*, *iwa*, *yiwo*, *ivo*, *wa*, *aiki*; 3. (= succeed) *yi*; 4. do a thing once *tabba*; phr. it is done *anyishi*, it does (i.e. it is satisfactory) *ya yi*; I never did so *ban tabba yin hakka*; *na yi* I did, is often contracted into *nai*.

doctor, n. *maimagani*; a quack d. *boka*, pl. *bokaye*.

dog, n. *kar(r)e*, *kar(r)ia*, pl. *kar-nuka*; wild d. *kalkeche*, *kelkeji**, *kirkeshi**; an animal resembling a d. *macharuchi*; a mad d. *kar(r)e mahaukachi*.

dollar, n. *della* (usually applied to the Austrian Maria Theresa

d.) *gurus**, *gu**, *liar**, *bu madafa**.

dominion, n. see **kingdom**.

done, part. see **do**.

donkey, n. *jaki*, fem. *jakainya*, pl. *jakai* or *jakuna*; large pad for a d. *leferu*, pl. *leferai*; for names of various species of donkeys see **ass**.

door, n. *kofa* or *kwofa*, pl. *kofofi*, *gambu*; doorway *bakin kofa*; doorstep *kwilkin kofa*; a mat usually made of grass or reeds let down in front of doorway *tufania*, *arsaberi*, *askunia*, *marufin kofa*, *tsabore*, *zabore*, *bunu*, pl. *bunai*, *kaure*, *kiawuri*, *tsaiwa*, *tukurua**, *iwa**; d. post *kobrin kofa*; pole or bar to keep the d. shut *mataushin kofa*, *mado-gara*, *gagara bado*; door-keeper *sarikin kofa*.

dot, n. (e.g. the d. placed above or below a letter) *dig(g)a*, *dug(g)o*, pl. *dugogi*.

dotterel, n. a bird like a d. *tak(k)abod(d)o*.

double, n. *gam(m)i** (?).

doubt, n. *zuchia biru* (lit. two hearts), *tambaba*, *kokonto*, *tantam(m)a*, *zulumi*, *tset(t)o*, *tsat(t)o*, *zet(t)o**, *shakka*: without d. *babu wawa*, *babu shakka*, *babu shak*, *babu tambaba*; an expression of d. *wai*.

doubt, intr. v. *yin* (or *da*) *zuchia biru*, *yin tambaba*, *yin zulumi**, *hasashi**, *sauraro**.

dough, n. *dirgaza*, *gaya**.

dove, n. *kurichia*, pl. *kuriche*

cheki or *kurchiyoyi*; a wild d. with dark ring on neck *agua*; a rock d. *jaba duchi**.

down, adv. *akas(s)a*, *akase*; to put d. *sako*, *zami**.

down, n. (of birds) *sabon gashi*.

dowry, n. *gara*.

drag, tr. v. see **draw**.

drake, n. *sakaza*.

draw, tr. v. *ja*, *jajaya*, *karikari*, *karkari*; d. forth or out *fisge*, *fusge*, *jawo*, *fisha*, *fushe*; d. towards oneself *jawo*; d. after one *jaka*; d. a line or a furrow *kirta*; d. strokes *zana*, *zani*; d. a sword *zage*, *zagi*; d. the foot on the ground *murjek(k)i*; d. water *jan rua*, *gugana*, *kwalfa*, *debe rua*, *debo rua*, *danuka rua*.

drawer, n. (= sliding box) *akodi**, *sanduki**.

dream, n. *mafalki*.

dream, intr. v. *yin mafalki*.

dregs, n. *guiba*, *guibi*, (at bottom of a cup) *seki**.

dress, n. see **clothes**.

dress, tr. v. (= put on clothes) *sa*; d. leather *jemi*; d. meat *fida* (or *fide*) *nama*.

dressed, part. (= prepared) *ger-tache*, fem. *gertata*, pl. *gertatu*.

dresser, n. (of leather) *majemi*, *maijsima*.

dried, part. *kekashe* or *kekaka(s)-she*, fem. *kekasa(s)shia*, pl. *kekasasu*, *busashe*, *shainyaye*, fem. *shainyaya*, pl. *shainyayu*; dried-up tree *kalun itache*, *ko-brin* (or *kubrin*) *itache**.

drink, n. *abinsha*, *nasha**; a d. made of honey, pepper and water *beso*, *baiso*; a d. made from milk, rice and honey *gero*; a d. made with flour, etc. *koko*; an intoxicating d. made from guinea-corn *gia*, *giya* (the drinking of *gia* = *shangia*); drinking-water *ruan sha*.

drink, tr. v. *sha*, *shawo*, *shainye*, *shainya*, *shaya*.

drive, tr. v. (= d. away) *kore*, *kora*, *koro*, *kare**, *ima*, *iza*, *sako**, *tsawa*, *yin tsawa*, *rauda*, *fasa*, *fafare*; d. to a distance *ne-santa*; d. away in disgust *kaskasta**, *kuskunta**; d. out *fisha**, *fushe**.

driver ant, n. *kwarikwas(s)a*, *kwalkwas(s)a*, *kwarukwas(s)a*.

driving, n. (away in war) *artai*.

drop, n. *dig(g)a*, *dug(g)a*, pl. *du-gogi*, *daso**; a d. of dew *dug(g)on raba*.

drop, tr. and intr. v. 1. (= pour out by drops) *tarfi*, *tarfa*; 2. (= let fall) *saki*, *tsaga*, *kubche*; 3. intr. v. see **fall**.

dropsy, n. *hangara*.

dross, n. (= scum of metals) *tsatsa*, *kazin tam(m)a*; to be mixed with d. *yin tsatsa*.

drought, n. *farin yunwa*.

drown, tr. v. *gangante*.

drum, n. *kidda*, *kiddi*, *kalango**, *tozo**; a large d. *ganga*, pl. *ganguna*, *dundufa*, *gangami*, *tajini**; a small d. *juje*; a long cylindrical d. *shanto*; a d. with pointed bottom carried in a

royal procession *tambari*; a kind of d. with strings *kuri*; the sound of a d. *wasu**.

drum, intr. v. *yin kiddi, yin worigi**.

drummer, n. *makiddi, maishanto*.

drumming, n. (accompanied by dancing) *kiddin dambe*.

drunkard, n. *maye, mayi*, fem. *mayia*.

drunkenness, n. *hajijia*.

dry, adj. see **dried**.

dry, 1. tr. v. *keka(s)she, bushe, sainya, shainya*; put out to d. *sainyato, jib(b)e*; d. in the sun *bari*; 2. intr. v. *shekare*; d. up (used of a well) *kaf(f)e*, (wither, or d. up as water) *tsotse, tsotsi*.

dry season, n. *rami*.

duck, n. *kaseraua, abagba** (?); small water d. *jalili*; small black d. *kirinjijia*.

dumb, (= d. and deaf person) *bebe*, pl. *bebaye*.

dum-palm, n. see **palm**.

dung, n. *kashi, taki, shakira, shakira*; d. of horses *toroso*; d. of cows or camels *kandilu*; d. hole *salga*, pl. *salgagi, bayan gidda**, *kwakwari**; d. hill *jujai, jibji*.

dungeon, n. *kurkuku*.

during, prep. *chik(k)in, a, da, ga*; d. reign of *chik(k)in sarota* G 6.

dust, n. *kura, toka**, pl. *tokuna**.

dwarf, n. *wada*, fem. *wadania*, pl. *wadani*.

dweller, intr. v. *zamna, zona*.

dweller, n. *maizamna*.

dwelling, n. *mazamme, wurin*

zamna, tarikachi, shigifa or *shigifa*, pl. *shigifu* or *shigifof*.

dye, n. *rin(n)i, rin(n)a*.

dye, tr. v. *rin(n)i, rin(n)a, tabsa, yin tabsa, tura, turi, yin turi*; d. pit *marin(n)a*, pl. *marin(n)ai*; place where clothes are beaten when being dyed *ma-bugi*; owner of a d. pit or dyer *marin(n)i, mairin(n)i*.

dyed, part. *rin(n)ene*, fem. *rin(n)ena*, pl. *rin(n)enu, turare*, fem. *turara*, pl. *turaru*.

dyer, n. see **dye**.

dysentery, n. *gudun daji, gudun dawa, anago, anagudawa, atuni*.

each, pron. adj. *kowane*, fem. *ko-wache, kowa**, *kowanene*; e. of us *kowanenmu*; e. of them *kowanensu*.

eagerness, n. *kodai*; cf. **desire**.

eagle, n. *meke, mekiya, mikiya*, pl. *mekiye, gomdazaki**, *duki**.

ear, n. *kune, kunne*, pl. *kunuwa*; hollow behind the e. *get(t)o*; wax in the e. *kwanyan kune, daudan kune*; e. of corn *geza*, pl. *gezuna, kwaya*; e. of *gero* cooked for eating *tumu*.

early, adv. *wuri, da wuri, dauri*; very e. *wuri wuri*; e. in the morning *sasafe, fudowa, fudawa, tangarai, saumako*; to come very e. *samako, sarumako**.

earnest money, n. *amana*.

earth, n. 1. (= the world) *dunia*;

2. (= soil) *kas(s)a*, pl. *kas(s)ashi* or *kas(s)asa*, *turbai**; very hard e. *tsandauri**; (= dry soil) *kekasasa* F 96.
- easily**, adv. *babu wuya*, *ba da wuya ba*, *sanu**.
- east**, n. *gab(b)as*, *gab(b)az*; one who comes from the e. *bagab(b)azi*.
- eastward**, adv. *gab(b)achi*.
- easy**, adj. *lalafa*; cf. *easily*.
- eat**, tr. v. *chi*; e. greedily *chainye*, *chinye*, *hamfude*, *hamfudi*, *chingi*; snatch in order to e. *rida*; anything to e. *abinchi*; plenty to e. *zari*, *jibgi*; that which is good to e. *tutushi*.
- echo**, n. *kurua*, *kururua*, *ko-gua** (?).
- eclipse**, n. (e.g. of the moon) *dushiwa*.
- ecstasy**, n. *hauka*, *haukachi**.
- edge**, n. *kauye*, *kowi*, *kwie*, *ka-wechi*; (of stream) *refe*; (of a knife) *kaiji*; (of a sword) *baki*; (of cloth) *lafe*, *lafi*.
- edged**, adj. (sharp e.) *da kaiji*.
- educate**, tr. v. *reno**, *fore**, *foro**.
- education**, n. *lad(d)abi**.
- eel**, n. *buna**.
- egg**, n. *kwoi* or *koi*, pl. *kwoinyaye*; e. shell *kosfa* or *kwosfa*, pl. *kosfofi* or *kwosfofi*, *kambori*; yolk of e. *gobdua*; a hen laying eggs *dakolua*, *dokolua*.
- Egypt**, n. *mazar*, *masar**; the inhabitants of E. *mazarawa*.
- eight**, adj. *tok(k)os*.
- eighteen**, adj. *goma sha tok(k)os*, *sha tok(k)os*.
- eighth**, adj. *natok(k)os*, fem. *ta-tok(k)os*; one e. *sumuni*.
- eighty**, adj. *tamanin*.
- either**, adj. *ko*; e.... or *ko...ko*.
- elaeis guineensis**, n. (= oil palm) *kwakwa*.
- elapse**, intr. v. see *finish*.
- elbow**, n. *kusuruan hanu*, *sukuruan hanu*, *did(d)igin hanu*, *guiwan hanu*; from the e. to the shoulder *damichi*, *damsi*, pl. *damasa*.
- elder**, e. brother *wa*; e. sister *ya*, *yata*, *iyata*.
- eldest**, adj. *baba**.
- elect**, tr. v. see *choose*.
- elephant**, n. *giwa*, pl. *giwaye*; male e. *toron giwa*, *toro*; trunk of e. *hamun giwa*; tusks of e. (i.e. ivory) *hakorin giwa*, *haurin giwa*.
- elephantiasis**, n. *goiwa*.
- eleven**, adj. *goma sha daia*, *sha daia*.
- eleventh**, adj. *nagoma* (fem. *ta-goma*) *sha daia*.
- else**, see *other*.
- emaciated**, part. *arame*, *ramame*.
- emancipate**, tr. v. *yanchi*, *enchi*, *bada diyauchi*.
- emancipated**, part. *berere**.
- embalm**, tr. v. *sak(k)a chik(k)in turare**.
- embark**, intr. v. *hawa jirigi*.
- embezzling**, part. (e.g. booty) *gululu**.
- embrace**, tr. v. *rungume*, *damare*, *gamurji**, *gama*, *gab(b)a**.

embroider, tr. v. *sharaba*.
 embroidery, n. *tindumi*.
 emerald, n. *zumurruz**.
 emir, n. *amiru**.
 emperor, n. *sultan*.
 emptiness, n. *wofi*.
 empty, a place that is e. *kango*,
 pl. *kangogi*.
 emulation, n. *kishi, gasa**.
 enable, tr. v. see *help*.
 encamp, intr. v. *shid(d)a, shid(d)e,*
sapka, sabka.
 encampment, n. *sansan(n)i, zun-*
go, wurin sapka.
 enclosure, n. (for cattle, etc.)
garike, gerke; cf. *fold*.
 encompass, tr. v. (e.g. a town
 in war) *rize*.
 encounter, tr. v. *gama* (or *gamu*)
da, tarie.
 end, n. *makara, makari, karshe,*
karewa, akib(b)a, kamul**;
 (= boundary) *iyaka*; e. of day
*jatarni**.
 end, 1. intr. v. *kare, kare, tsayi,*
tsaya, tsai, nutu, yamutse,*
yamutsi; come utterly to an e.
karkare; 2. tr. v. *wanya, wan-*
ye, wanyi, kare, kare; (e. con-
 versation) *yenke magana*; the
 affair is ended *ya kare*.
 endeavour, n. *kokari*.
 endeavour, intr. v. *yin kokari*;
 one who endeavours *maikokari*.
 endure, 1. tr. v. *jimri*; 2. intr. v.
 (= suffer or continue) *dauri,*
yin karko, dad(d)a, deddi.
 enduring, part. 1. (= lasting) *dad-*
*(d)ewa, matabbata**; 2. (suffer-
 ing) see *patient*.

enemy, n. *abokin gab(b)a, makiyi,*
 pl. *makiya, makinji*.
 enfranchise, tr. v. see *free*.
 English, adj. wherever the word
 is known the form *ingliz* bor-
 rowed from the Arabs of N.
 Africa is used; an Englishman
 would be *mutum ingliz*.
 enjoy, tr. v. *sha, chi*; we e. the
 shade *mu sha enmua D 75*.
 enjoyment, n. *murna, abin mur-*
na; cf. *joy*.
 enlarge, tr. v. *shimfida, shimfada,*
*yin girima**.
 enough, n. *da ya issa, buss*; to
 have e. *koshi*; one who has
 eaten e. *kosa(s)she*, pl. *kosas(s)u*;
 it is e. *ya issa, ya koshi**.
 enquire, see *inquire*.
 ensign, n. *tuta, tuti*, pl. *tutoshi*.
 enslave, tr. v. *mairda bawa*; to be
 enslaved *shig(g)a bawanchi*.
 enter, tr. v. (= go in) *shig(g)a,*
tusga, tusge; (= come in) *shig-*
(g)o, nus(s)o; cause to e.
shig(g)asda.
 entice, tr. v. *rude*.
 entire, adj. see *complete*.
 entirely, adv. *tau*, cf. also *faye*
 and *fi*.
 entrance, n. (= aperture) *kofa*;
 e. room (e.g. to palace) *dandali*.
 entrap, tr. v. *yin hako* (or *turko*).
 entreat, tr. v. *biko, roko*.
 entrenchment, n. *kagara* or *ke-*
garua, pl. *kagaru*.
 entrust, tr. v. *bada, yin sabtu*.
 enunciation, n. *halshi*, harshi**.
 envious, adj. *maitsalumchi*.

envy, n. *kita*, *kiyeya*, *kiji*, *hasada*, *has(s)ada*, *fasadi*, *fasada*, *hau-shi*, *tsalumchi*, *tsalimchi*.

epilepsy, n. *falfada**.

equal, adj. *sosai*, *daidai*; to make e. *daidaita*; to be e. *is(s)a*; a thing which is e. to *abin gam(m)awa*; this is e. to that *wonan ya yi wonchan*.

erase, tr. v. *yin maimai*.

erect, tr. v. *tashe*, *tada*.

err, intr. v. *manta*, *manche*, *kuskure*, *kurkura**.

errand, n. *sako*.

error, n. *mantua*, *manche**.

escape, n. place of e. *wurin chira*.

escape, intr. v. *fichi*, *chira**, *gudu**.

escort, n. *rakia*.

escort, tr. v. *yin rakia*, *raka*, *roma*.

established, part. (= firmly fixed) *tabbatachia*, *kaf(f)afe*.

estimate, tr. v. *kawamata**.

estrangement, n. *rabua*.

eternal, adj. *hal* (or *har*) *abada*.

eunuch, n. *baba*, pl. *babani*.

euphorbia, n. the e. tree *kunkumia*.

European, n. *bature**, *ture**, pl. *turawa**.

even, adj. *samsi*; cf. smooth.

even, adv. *ko*; e. now *koyanzu*.

evening, n. *mareche*, *yamma*; late e. *magarub*, *maguriba*, *lisha*, cf. under *rana*; in the e. *da mareche*; phr. I continue travelling till e. *ina yini taffia*, it is e. *mareche ya yi*.

eventually, adv. *yauyau*, *yo-yo*.

ever, adv. 1. (= at any time) *dadai*, *tab(b)a*, e.g. have you ever seen him? *ka tabba ganinsa*, have you ever been to Sokoto? *ka tabba je sokoto*; 2. (= for ever) *tutul*, *tutur*, *tutu*, *tutuk*, *tutul*, *hal* (or *har*) *abada*, *dankam**, *katu**, e.g. they have never met *ba su gama katu* B 23.

everlasting, adj. *matuturchi**, *madawami**, *matabbetawa**.

every, adj. *duka*, *duk*, *kul(l)um**; everyone *kowa*, *kowane*, fem. *kowache*, pl. *kowanensu*, *kowanene*; everything *duka komi*, *dukachin komi*, *komi*; e. day *kowache rana*; e. morning *kul(l)um safe**: e. night *ku(l)um dere**; everywhere *koenna*.

evil, n. *abin mugu*, *banna*, *bannai*, *mugunta*, *shar(r)a**, *shariri**, *gaya**, *guriguri**, *guri**, *suabo**, *suabo**, *şabo**, *chiuta**, *zunufi*; *zunubi**, e. desire *shawwa*, *suwa**; e. disposition *lalata*, *mugunta*, *kaferchi*, *kafrichi*; e. thought *bak(k)in zuchia*; e. spirit *ebtis*; e. spirits *raiuka*; e. speaking *ananminchi*; e. principle existing in the world *dunia**; e. doer *maisuabo*; to attribute e. to one doing good *kushe**; to e. intreat *kankanta*; to tempt to e. *jaraba*, *jarabe*.

evil, adj. *mugu*, fem. *mugunia*, pl. *miagu*, *numuna**, *mumuna**; cf. bad.

- ewe**, n. *tumkia, dumkia*, pl. *tumaki*.
- exact**, adj. *sar(r)ai*.
- exactly**, adv. *tangas*.
- exaggerated**, part. *fululuwa**.
- exalt**, tr. v. *daukaka, daukake, maida girima*.
- exalted**, part. (epithet applied to God) *ta'ala*.
- examine**, tr. v. *dandana**, *dandani**; cf. look at.
- example**, n. *koikoiya**; his e. *koikoiyansa*.
- exceed**, tr. v. *buaya, buaye, fi, dad(d)a**; e. in strength *gar-gara*.
- excel**, intr. v. *faye*; cf. prec.
- excellence**, n. *fiyaya, fiyaye, fiko*.
- except**, adv. *sai, saidai, saiko*.
- excess**, n. *abinda ya faye, yawa*.
- exchange**, tr. v. *sake, yin musaya* (?)*.
- excitement**, n. *karaya*.
- exclamation**, n. (expressing astonishment or incredulity) *hubba, haba*; (expressing doubt or grief) *wai*; words used as an e. *maganan zuchia*.
- excuse**, n. *huja, gaferta*, yerji**.
- excuse**, tr. v. *gafara, yin gaferta*; phr. e. me *bani yerji, gafara*.
- executioner**, n. (a royal e.) *dogari*.
- exercise**, n. to take e. (by walking) *yawo*; (by riding) *kil(l)isa*.
- exertion**, n. *kokua**.
- exhausted**, part. *zumane*.
- exhaustion**, n. (from lack of food) *kumolo*.
- exhibit**, tr. v. *nuna, nuni, god(d)a, goda*.
- exhort**, tr. v. *gargadi, galqadi**.
- exist**, intr. v. *ka(s)shi, ka(s)she**; cf. be.
- expand**, 1. tr. v. *shimfida, shimfada*; 2. intr. v. *yalwata, yin auki, habama**.
- expect**, tr. v. (= await with expectation) *jira*; (= anticipate) *tamaqa, yin tamaqa, had(l)ama**.
- expectorate**, intr. v. *tofi, fesa, furja*.
- expel**, tr. v. *kora, kore*.
- expense**, n. see *cost*.
- expensive**, adj. *da tsada*; phr. it is too e. *ya fi da tsada*; to be e. *yin tsada*.
- experienced**, part. *gon(n)i, mai-gon(n)i*.
- expert**, adj. cf. prec.
- explain**, tr. v. *waye, nuna, nuni, had(d)ichi, yin fasara, haberta**; phr. e. it to me *ka gaya mani, ambatoni*.
- explained**, part. *akanwaita*.
- explanation**, n. *wayewa, nunawa, fasara, fasaranta*.
- extend**, tr. and intr. v. see *expand*.
- extended**, be, intr. v. *miku*.
- extent**, n. see *limit*.
- extinguish**, tr. v. *kufuli**.
- extract**, tr. v. *jawo, fusge, fusge, fishe, fushe*.
- exult**, intr. v. *yin raha*, raha**.
- exulting**, part. *raha**.
- eye**, n. *ido*, pl. *idamu* and *idandanu*; eye-ball *kwayan ido*;

e. socket *gulbin ido*; pupil of e. *ijian ido*, *matsokachin ido*; eye-brow *gera*, *gira*, *giro*, pl. *gerare* or *girori*; e. lashes *kainijia*; ridge over the e. *ka(s)-shin ido*; e. glass *madubin ido*; mucus from the e. *kwamsa*, *komtsa*; disease of the e. *hakia*, *hekia*; eyes of a blind man *tsauria*; medicine for the eyes *korino*, *fideli*, *giwa kamba*; man with sunken eyes *makwo-romi*; man with only one e. *maihakia**; a blemish in the e. *lahani*; watery e. (i.e. desire) *ruan ido*; one with evil e. *maye*, *mayi*, fem. *mayia*; as far as the e. can reach *hange**; e. witness *shaidan ido*; to have dim eyes *dindimi*; to look with eyes nearly shut *yin kan-kanin ido*.

fable, n. *tasunia**, *michali**, *al-mara**, *fira**.

face, n. *fuska*, pl. *fuskoki* and *fuskuna*, *huska**; to f. towards the speaker *gabato*, *gabatowa*; to f. in a given direction *fuskanchi*, *fuskanta*.

fade, intr. v. *tafe*, *tafi*, *yaushi*, *yoshi*, *yin yaushi*, (used of cloth) *kwaki*; (used of leaves) *fofi**.

fading away, part. *kwake*.

fail, intr. v. (= decay) *ras(s)u*; (f. to keep a promise) *kuskure*, *kurkura*; (= fall short of) *kasa*, *kasas*; f. to get *tabe*; f. to understand *rudi*.

faint, adj. *zumane*.

faint, intr. v. *yin suma* (or *zuma*), *jin suma*, *suma*, *gaji*.

faintness, n. *suma*, *suma*, *zuma*, *gamata**, (from lack of food) *kumolo*.

fair, adj. *keau*, *da keau*, *maikeau*, *maikiyo*.

faith, n. *aiman**, *aminchi**; the f. of Islam *musulumchi*; cf. believe.

faithful, adj. *yerdaji*, *salih**, pl. *salihai**.

faithfulness, n. *aminchi*.

falcon, n. *shafu*, *shahu*, *jehurma*.

fall, n. *fadua*, *saraya*.

fall, intr. v. *fadi*, *fada*, *fado**, *yin saraya*, *kucha**, *kuza**, *ture**, f. down before anyone *run-suma*, *rusona*; f. in (used of a well) *gubchi*; make to f. *go-chema*; f. upon *haye**; f. in with *tsayi*, *tsaya*, *tsai*.

falling, part. *fadua*; f. into ruin *rushiwa*; sound of f. glass *kilin kilin*, *kirri kirri*.

false, adj. *marasgaskia*, f. dealing *kawawa na karia** D 7; to spread f. news *kormot(t)o*, *chinewa*, *chima**.

falsehood, n. *karia*, *kariachi*.

falsely, adv. to swear f. *yin ka-para*.

fame, n. *yab(b)o*.

family, n. members of f. *iyali*, *um(m)a**, *dengi**.

famine, n. *yunwa*, often pronounced *zungwa*, *farin yunwa*.

fan, n. *fifche*, *mafuchi*, pl. *mafefechi*; (made of woven grass) *faifai*, pl. *fiyafai*; (made of

- palm leaves) *giginia*, pl. *gigangani*, *giginyoyi* or *giginai*; (for winnowing) *bakache*, *matankani*, *rereya*, *rairaira*.
- fan**, tr. v. *bakache*; one who fans *maibakache*.
- far**, adj. *da nesa*.
- far**, adv. *nesa*; as far as *har*, *hal*, *har ga*, *tun*, *tunda*; to place f. off *nesanta*.
- farewell**, n. to bid f. *gaida*; an expression of f. *sai wota rana*.
- farm**, n. *gona*, pl. *gonaki*; f. work *aikin gona*; owner or cultivator of a f. *maigona*.
- fashion**, n. (= mode, custom) *hal(l)i*, pl. *hal(l)ai*.
- fast**, n. *azumi*.
- fast**, intr. v. *yin azumi*.
- fasten**, tr. v. (e.g. with nails) *kaf(f)a*; (= tie) *damre*.
- fastened**, part. (= closed) *girkeke*, fem. *girkekia*, pl. *girkeku*.
- fat**, n. *kib(b)a*, pl. *kibobi*, *kis(s)i*, pl. *kisosi*, *gwabi*; f. of meat *mai*.
- fat**, adj. *da kib(b)a*, *da gwabi*, *maigwabi*, *kauri*, *kabri*; one who is f. *maitumbi*, *maigato*, *maijiki*, *maichik(k)i*, *gendi*, fem. *gendia*; to grow f. *yin kib(b)a*, *yin ter(r)inia*.
- fate**, n. *jinkiri**.
- father**, n. *uba* or *oba*, pl. *ubane* or *ubanai*; father-in-law *surki*, *sariki**.
- fatigue**, n. *gajia*; failure through f. *gajewa*.
- fatigued**, part. *gayara*; to be f. *gaji*, *jin gajia*.
- fatness**, n. *ter(r)inia*.
- fault**, n. 1. (= defect) *aibu*; 2. (= offence) *laifi*; f. finding *bimbini*.
- favour**, n. *alheri*; to show f. *yin keau*; phr. he wins f. *ya yi tomashi*.
- fear**, n. *tsoro*, *tinzera*, *tunzurua**, *razan(n)a*, *giz(z)o*, *falgaba*, *raki**, *shaii**, *shigoro**, *zulumi**; to cause f. *bada tsoro*.
- fear**, tr. and intr. v. *jin tsoro*, *yin shigoro**, *razan(n)i*, *tsantsanta*.
- feast**, n. *buki*, *biki*, *idi*, religious f. *sal(l)a**; to make a f. *yin buki*.
- feasting**, part. (esp. used of marriage f.) *wasan buki*.
- feather**, n. *fikafike*, pl. *fikafikai*, *fukafuki*, pl. *fukafukai*, *gashi**.
- fee**, n. (paid by recipient of a royal present) *tukuichi*, *takichi*, *tokochi*; market f. *lad(d)a*.
- feeble**, adj. *kumama*, *maraskarifi*.
- feebleness**, n. *kumamanchi*.
- feed**, 1. tr. v. (= supply with food) *chida*, *chishe*; 2. intr. v. (= eat) *kiwo*.
- feel**, tr. v. 1. (= perceive by touching) *lalabe*, *ji*, *tab(b)a*; 2. (= be affected) *ji*; f. about whilst searching *fafake*; f. anything in order to test its weight *jin-jini*, *jijiga*; f. afraid *jin tsoro*.
- fell**, tr. v. (= cut down) *sare*.
- fellow**, n. (= partner) *kama*, pl. *kamanu*.
- female**, n. (of human beings and animals) *mache*, *machi*, pl. *mata*,

- tamata*; phr. male and f. *wane da wanche*.
- fence**, n. *darni**, *damfam(m)i*; (f. round garden) *danga*, pl. *dangogi*; (f. made of stalks or thorns to keep in sheep, etc.) *shinge*, *shimge*, pl. *shimgaye*.
- fencing**, n. (a game) *sharo*.
- ferryman**, n. *sarikin rua*.
- festival**, n. *sal(l)ata*.
- fetch**, tr. v. *kawo*, *zo da*; cf. bring.
- fetters**, n. *malwa*, *mari*, *giger*, *sarka**.
- fever**, n. *mas(s)asara*, *zaz(z)abi*, *zaz(z)ebi*.
- few**, adj. *kad(d)an*, *kanana**, *kan-kani**, *kankane**, *tsarari**.
- fez**, n. *fuladara*, *faladara*, *tagia*.
- fibre**, n. (of palm tree) *kab(b)a*, (used for making rope) *tsaiwa*.
- field**, n. (cultivated) *fili*, pl. *filaye*, *gona*, pl. *gonaki*; (barren) *sabura*, *sar(r)ari**; (very large) *karikara*, *karkara*, pl. *karkarori* or *karkaroni*, *daji**.
- fierce**, adj. to be f. *haukache*.
- fiercely**, adv. *da kangara*.
- fifteen**, adj. *goma sha biar* (or *bial*), *sha biar*.
- fifteenth**, adj. *nagoma* (fem. *ta-goma*) *sha biar*.
- fifth**, adj. *nabiar*, fem. *tabiar*; one f. *humushi**.
- fifty**, adj. *hamsin*.
- fig**, n. (tree) *itachen baure*, *baure*, *bore*; (fruit) *baure*, *bore*.
- fight**, n. *fad(d)a*, *fama*, *kokua*, *yaki**, *jaiya**.
- fight**, intr. v. *fad(d)a*, *yin fad(d)a*, *far**, *fata**, *yin fama*, *yin kokua*, *sab(b)a**, *yin jaiya**, *goraya**.
- file**, n. *zerto*, *derto**.
- file**, tr. v. *gurjago*, *gurzago**, (a sword) *akras*, *yin akras*.
- fill**, tr. v. *chik(k)a*, *tsik(k)a*; f. full *chichik(k)a*, *yin chichik(k)a*; to f. up a hole *turubude*; phr. fill them up *kawo chik(k)onsu*.
- filled**, part. *chik(k)ache*, *chik(k)aka*, *achik(k)a*; to be f. *chik(k)a*.
- filling**, part. *chik(k)awa*.
- filter**, n. (usually in form of small basket through which water is strained out) *marari*.
- filter**, tr. v. *rare*; one who filters *mairarewa*.
- filth**, n. *dauda*, *jaraba*.
- filthy**, adj. *da dauda*; to be f. *yin najasu*.
- find**, tr. v. *samu*, *same*, *samo*, *sama**; try to f. *tuske*, *tuski*.
- fine**, adj. (= thin, delicate) *laushi*, *loshi*; 2. (= beautiful) *da keau*; very f. *kal(l)o kal(l)o*.
- finger**, n. *yasa*, pl. *yasosi*; the little f. *auta yasa*; f. nail *farichi*, *kambori*, *kumba*, pl. *kumbuna* or *kumbai*, *danuba*, *ahaiya**.
- finish**, n. see end.
- finish**, v. *kare*, *wanya*, *wanyi*, *wanye*, *gam(m)a*, *gum(m)a**.
- finished**, part. *kaf(f)afe*, fem. *kaf(f)afia* or *kaf(f)afa*, pl. *kaf(f)afu*; phr. it is f. *ya kare*, *ya tsaya*, *tammata**; he f. speaking *ya yi magana ya kare*; the month is f. *wata ta mutu*.
- fire**, n. *wuta*; fire-place *murufu*;

a f. which has burnt down *ru-fushi, rubshi, rubchi**; back of the f. *dabarun wuta*; restoration of a dying f. *kwanin wuta*; to light a f. *fura wuta, hassa wuta*; make a large f. *gas(s)a*; to strike f. with a flint *kestu wuta*; to miss f. (of a gun) *fasa, yin karia*; to f. a gun *halbi* (or *buga*) *bindiga*.

fire-fly, n. *dim(m)i dawa*.

firewood, n. *itachen wuta*.

fireworks, n. (display of) *wowo*.

firmament, n. *hawa**, *sama**.

first, adj. *nafari*, fem. *tafari*.

first, adv. *nafērko, dafari, tukun, tukun(n)a*.

fish, n. *kifi, kife*, pl. *kifaye*; mud-fish *gaiwa*; electric f. *mijiria, misiria*; large f. from which oil is obtained *gini, zau*; a kind of jelly f. *karaya, karaia*; a f. resembling an eel *gondo*; a f. with a belly like a frog *talibambam*; shell f. *kumba**, pl. *kumbuna**; f. with large teeth *tsag(g)e*; f. like a salmon *falia*; species of flat f. *karfa(s)shi*; other species of f. (unidentified) *kuku, kulume, kuma, gargas(s)a*, pl. *gargas(s)u, mari, kurungu, baramchi**, *yauni**; scales of f. *kumba**, pl. *kumbuna**; f. bones *kayan kifi*; net for catching f. *koma**; spear for catching f. *hag(g)u*; f. trap *murmura*; fishing line with hooks attached *faza, murimuri*; f. hook *kugiya, kogia, kogua*, pl. *kugiyoyi*.

fish, intr. v. *kama kifi*; f. with small hand-net *su*.

fisherman, n. (who uses small net) *maisū*, pl. *masusu*.

fist, n. to close the f. *tunkushe*.

fit, n. (fainting f.) *gamata, fal-fada*.

fit, adj. *da ya kamata, sawabe**, *sawaba**; to deem f. *gamshe*.

fitting, be, intr. v. *kamata, gamshe, gamma**.

five, adj. *biar, bial, biat**, *hamsa**; f. thousand *hamsa**, q.v.

fix, tr. v. see **fasten**.

flag, n. *tuta, tuti*, pl. *tutoshi*.

flame, n. *halshin wuta* (lit. tongue of fire).

flat, a f. place without trees *kanga, konga*.

flat-fish, n. species of, *karfa(s)shi*.

flatten, tr. v. *nani*.

flattened, part. *namane*.

flatter, tr. v. *lalashi**, *lilashi**.

flattery, n. *kirari*.

flavour, n. *gardī, gerdi, zaki*; the nut has a good f. *gedda tama da gardi*.

flax, n. string made of f. *kirtani*.

flay, tr. v. *fida, fide, fige**, *figi**.

flea, n. *kuma, koma, kwalkwat(t)a**, *kolkot(t)a**.

flee, intr. v. *gudu, guje**, *tsire, sukua, suka, sukani, ruga**, *rauga**; a place to which to f. *wurin gudu*; to make to f. *ruqa**, *rauga**; cf. drive away.

flesh, n. *nama*, pl. *namomi*; uncooked f. *nama dainye*; (bushmeat) *naman daji**.

flight, n. *guduwa*.

flint, n. *kestu*, *kastu*; f. in a f. lock gun *dushin bindiga*; to strike fire with a f. *kestu wuta*.

flock, n. *garike*, *gerke*, pl. *garikuna* or *gerkuna*.

flog, tr. v. *doke*, *buga*, *yin kurfu*.

flogging, n. *kurafu*, *kurfu*, *karfu**.

flood, n. *chik(k)owa*, *chichik(k)owa*, *tabki**.

floor, n. (for threshing) *masis(s)ika*.

flour, n. *gari*, *sek(k)i*, *tsek(k)i*; f. of wheat *lal(l)e*; f. mixed with water *talia**.

flourish, intr. v. *yawata*.

flow, intr. v. f. quickly *tumbudu*.

flower, n. *fure*, pl. *furori* or *furaye*.

flute, n. *algaita*, *algaito*, *sarewa*; reed from which flutes are made *kusumburua*.

fly, n. (common house f.) *kuda*, *kudi*, *kuje*, pl. *kud(d)ashe* or *kud(d)aje*; small sand f. *kudan gerke*; horse f. *gorje*, *gurje*, *bobua*, *berbachi*, *damis(s)an dawaki*; piece of leather placed on horses' eyes to keep off flies *maganin kuda* (lit. fly medicine); fire-fly *dim(m)i dawo*.

fly, intr. v. (of a bird) *jawagi**.

foal, n. *dukushi*, fem. *dukusa*, pl. *dukusai*, *dan dukushi*.

foam, n. *kunfa*, *kumba*.

fog, n. *hazo*.

foggy, adj. *du hazo*.

fold, n. (for sheep, etc.) *garike*, *gerke*, pl. *garikuna* or *gerkuna*, *turike*, *tuke*, *ruga*; cutting folds of cloth *kirfawa*.

fold, tr. v. (cloth, etc.) *nimka*, *linke*, *yafa*, *yafo*, *kunsa**; f. the arms *tak(k)ura*.

foliage, n. *gainyen itache*.

follow, tr. v. *bi*, *biawa*; f. a path *bi hainya*.

followers, n. *masubi*.

folly, n. see foolishness.

fond, adj. to be f. of *marimari*.

fondling, n. act of f. *lalaba*.

food, n. *chima*, *chimaka*, *abinchi*, *tuw**, *jibi**; much f. *machia*; calabash full of f. *kabak(k)i*, pl. *kaboka*; one possessed of f. *kabeke**; faintness from lack of f. *kumolo*.

fool, n. *wawa*, *haruka*, *magagachi*, *shashasha*, *badada*, *bada bada*, *maiwauta*, *marwauta*, *mahaukachi*, fem. *mahaukachia*, pl. *mahaukatu*; foolish talking *badagula*, they talked foolishly *su yi bobawa*.

foolish, be, intr. v. *wawa*.

foolishness, n. *wawanchi*, *haruka*, *mabuya*, *marwauta**.

foot, n. *kaffa*, pl. *kafafu* or *kafafe*; f. regarded as a measure of length *tak(k)i*, pl. *takoki*; footprint *sau*; sole of f. *tafin kaffa*, *mataki*, pl. *matakai*; footstool *mataki**, *lekafa**; on f. *akaffa*.

for, 1. prep. (= for the sake of) *domin*, *don*, *zama**, see **ac-count of**; (= in view of) *ga*; 2. conj. (= because) *fa*; phr. for his sake *dominsa*.

forbearance, n. *hankuri*, *hantura*, *hakora*.

forbid, tr. v. *daḳile*, *han(n)a*.
force, n. *tilas*, *karifi*; by f. *da tilas*, *tilas*; to use f. *yin tilas*, *tilasa*, *tilasda*; phr. I was forced to go *na taffi tilas* or *wajibine na taffi*; see under *wajib*.
forearm, n. *gab(b)a*.
forefather, n. see **ancestor**.
forefinger, n. *manuni*.
forehead, n. *goshi*.
foreign, adj. *ajami**.
foreigner, n. *ture**, *bature**; that which pertains to a f. *turan-chi**.
forest, n. *rukuki*, *daji**, *dawa**; dense f. *kurimi*, *kurmi*, *kumchi*, *kumshi**.
forethought, n. *hanḳali*.
forge, n. *makera*; worker at f. (blacksmith) *makeri*, *maikira*, *muk(k)ira*.
forge, tr. v. *kira*.
forget, tr. v. *manche*, *yin mantua*, *manta*.
forgetfulness or **forgetting**, n. *mantua*, *sakafchi*.
forgive, tr. v. *yafe*, *yin gaferta*, *gafara*, *yerda*, *yirda*; f. me *gafara mani*.
forgiveness, n. *gafara*, *gaferta*.
fork, n. (iron toasting f.) *rino*.
forked, adj. (f. iron stick on horse's neck) *kasegi*.
forlornness, n. *kewa*, *kiwa*.
form, n. (= shape) *kama*, *supa**.
former, adj. *nafari*; the f...the latter *wonchan...wonchan*.
formerly, adv. *daḳu*, *dafari*; in former times *nadā*; as in former times *kaman nadā*; those who

lived in former times *masugabato*.
fornication, n. *shakalichi*.
fornicator, n. *shakali*.
forsake, tr. v. *beri*, *ber*.
forthwith, adv. *nan da nan*, *ko-yanzu*.
fortification, n. *kagara*, *kagarua*, pl. *kagaru*.
fortunate, adj. it was f. *ya yi arziki*.
fortune, n. (= prosperity) *arziki*; a man of f. *mawadachi*, pl. *mawadata*.
forty, adj. *arba'in*.
forward, adv. *gab(b)a*; to move a little f. *guso*, *guruguso*.
foster, f. mother *uwal rufi*; f. child *dangana**; one who fosters *gona**.
foundation, n. *gato*; f. of a wall *tushi*.
founded, part. *kafafe*, fem. *kafafia*, pl. *kafafa* or *kafafu*.
fountain, n. *maromaro*, *marmaru*.
four, adj. *fudu*, *hudu**, *arbaa*, *arba*; by fours *fudu fudu*.
fourteen, adj. *goma sha fudu*, *sha fudu*.
fourth, adj. *nafudu*, fem. *tafudu*; f. day *gata*.
fowl, n. *kaza* or *kasa*, pl. *kaji*; speckled fowls *wakawake*; a f. plucked for cooking *chikiri-kidda*; a place where fowls are kept *akurike*.
fox, n. *karambik(k)i*, *yanyawa**.
fragment, n. *guzura*, pl. *guzure*, *guntru*, *guntun abu*; fragments of broken pots *kaina**.

frankincense, n. *turare*; small box for f. *lulu*.

fraud, n. see *deceit*.

free, adj. one who is f. *da*, *diya*.

free, tr. v. *beri*, *bada diyauchi*.

freed, part. *berere*, fem. *bereria*, pl. *bereru*.

freedom, n. *yanchi*, *diyauchi*, *di-yanchi*, *diyantaka*; a certificate of f. *laya*, *layan dayauchi*.

frenzy, n. *wahami*, *haruka*.

frequent, adj. see *often*.

frequent, tr. v. (= visit often) expressed by use of *kan* with verbs meaning to go to.

fresh, adj. *şabo*, fem. *şabua*, pl. *şabi*, (applied to plants, etc.) *gainye*, *dainye* or *dainyi*, pl. *dainyoyi*.

fretful, adj. *da zafn rai*.

Friday, n. *aljimua*.

fried, part. *soiyaye* or *soiyeye*, fem. *soiyaya*, pl. *soiyayu*.

friend, n. *aboki*, fem. *abokia* or *abuya*, pl. *abokai*, *masoyi*, fem. *masoya*, pl. *masoyu*, *maso*, pl. *masowa*, *tsara*, *kama*, pl. *kamanu*, *dan uwa*, pl. *yan uwa*, *zuma*, *zuma*, *juna**, *amini**, *wali**, *dengi*, *denga* or *deg(g)i*, pl. *dengoyi*, *makofchi* or *makubchi*, fem. *makopta*, pl. id.; friends *şahabai**, *şahba**; my friends *yan uwana*.

friendship, n. *abuta*, *zumunchi*, *hal(l)in aboki*.

fright, n. *tinzera*, *tunzurua*, *tsoro*.

frighten, tr. v. *tsorata*, *bada tsoro*, *ruba**.

frog, n. *talibambam*; small dark

coloured f. *warnu*; an edible f. *burdudugi*.

from, prep. *dag(g)a*, (when followed by the personal pronouns) *dag(g)a gare*; f. within *dag(g)a chik(k)i*; f. afar *dag(g)a nesa*; *tun*, phr. f. birth *tun haifua*.

front, n. *gab(b)a*, pl. *gab(b)obi*, *goshi*; in f. *agab(b)a*; in f. of *gab(b)an*; to go in f. *tsaitse*.

frost, n. *buda**.

froth, n. *kunfa*; f. skimmed off in making bread *kulu*.

frown, intr. v. *damre fuska*, *kan-kamna*, *jirkita fuska*, *diba kamna**; to f. on *harara**.

fruit, n. (of trees) *diyan itache*, *yayan itache*; (of grains, etc.) *kwara*, *kwaya*; a species of sweet smelling f. *goasa*; the f. of the earth *diyan kasa*.

fruitful, adj. a f. place *matachin wuri*.

fruitless, adj. e.g. f. toil *aiké wofi*.

fry, tr. v. *soiya*, *soya*.

fuel, n. see *firewood*.

fugitive, n. *gujeje**, *maigudu*.

Fulah, pr. n. a F. native *ba fulata*, pl. *fulani*; the F. language *fulanchi*; the F. people *fulbe*.

full, adj. *chik(k)ache*, fem. *chik(k)aka*, pl. *chik(k)aku*, *achik(k)a*, (f. to the brim) *fau*; to be f. *taru**; cf. complete.

fulness, n. *yayalwachi*; cf. completion.

funeral, n. *ķufamwa**, *biso**; lamentations at a f. *makoki*.

furbish, tr. v. (e.g. a sword) *koda*.

furnace, n. *tanderu**, *murufu**.
furrow, n. *kwori*; to draw a f. *kirta*.

further, adj. (= more distant) *masi da nesa*.

fury, n. see **anger**.

future, adj. (= that is to come) *maizua*.

gain, n. *riba**; unlawful g. *kura*, *riba*, *haramia*; to make unlawful g. *chin riba*, *chin haramia*, *chin kura*.

gall, n. *madachi*, *sefa**.

gallop, intr. v. *yin sukua*, *sukua*, *suka*, *sukani*; a place for horses to g. *masukwani*.

gambling, n. a game for g. *chacha*, *shasha**, *modi*; to throw down money in g. *wasu da kurdi*.

game, n. *worigi*, *izgili**; g. played by children *karkachi*; g. played by fortune-tellers in order to discover secrets *dirka*; a g. played with cowry shells *dar(r)a*, *der(r)a*; a gambling g. *chacha*; a call to join in a g. *shu* or *shiu*.

game, n. (food) *naman daji*.

gape, intr. v. *yin hama*, *hama*.

garden, n. *danga**, pl. *dangogi**; a dry season irrigated g. *lambu*, pl. *lambuna*.

gardener, n. *maigona**.

gargle, n. *wanken makoshi*.

garlic, n. *tafarnua*, pl. *tafarnai*.

garment, n. *riga*, pl. *riguna*; old garments *sum(m)a* or *tsuma**, pl. *sum(m)oki* or *tsumoki**, *keso*, *reg(g)u*; cf. clothes.

garner, n. (= place for storing grain) *rufogo*, *rafonia*, *rumbu**.

garnished, part. *gertache*, fem. *gertata*, pl. *gertatu*.

gasp, intr. v. (for breath) *yin fuka*, *yin fuchi**, *shashisha**; one who gasps *maifuchi*.

gate, n. *kofo*, pl. *kofofi*, *kaf(f)i*, *kojara**; gateway, see **doorway**.

gather together, 1. tr. v. *tara*; 2. intr. v. *taru*, *gayya*.

gathered, part. *atara*, *ataru*, *atarat**, *tarare*, fem. *tarara*, pl. *tararu*.

gathering, n. e.g. of people before a king *kindigaye*; cf. assembly.

gaze at, tr. v. *yin kal(l)o*, *kal(l)o*, *tsokachi*, *chokachi*, *dauro**, *dro**, *giwaya**, *jiwaya**, *nuri**, (generally in a bad sense) *zuru**.

gazelle, n. *barewa*, pl. *bareyi*.

generosity, n. *baiwa*.

generous, adj. *maitalafi**.

genii, n. see **demons**.

genitive, the g. case in Hausa is denoted by *na*, frequently contracted to *n*, a feminine form *ta* is also used; see **of**.

gentleness, n. *lalafanchi**.

gently, adv. *san(n)u*.

genuine, adj. g. money *kurdi zaba*.

Germany, pr. n. (used in North Africa) *bursia*.

get, tr. v. *samu*, *same*, *samo*, *sama**.

ghost, n. *fatalua*, *magiro**, *dodo**.

giddiness, n. *gigita, jeri**.
giddy, adj. phr. I am g. *kaina shina kecoyewa*; to be g. *gigita*; to make g. *dame, dama*.
gift, n. *keauta, kaya* or *kasia*, pl. *kayoyeki, abin gaisua*; free g. *alheri*; g. given to conciliate *saraba**; gifts coll. *baisoa*.
gimlet, n. *araraki, berima**.
gin, n. (for animals) *turko*.
gin, n. (a spirit) *barazza**, *barassa**; a case of g. *akwoti**.
gird, tr. v. *damre, daure, darmi**, *damra**, *yin damara*.
girded, part. *damrare*, pl. *damraru*.
girdle, n. *damarichik(k)i, damara, madamrin chik(k)i*; g. of rope *guru**; g. made with copper *tagula, tug(g)ula*, pl. *tagulai*; g. of cloth *taraia*; woman's g. *geftu*; woman's g. of beads *tsak(k)ia*.
girl, n. *yarinia*, pl. *yamata, diya, madachia**; young g. *tanta-bara**.
girth, n. (of a horse) *bauji*.
give, tr. v. *ba, bada, bashi, bayes, baya**; g. back *bayesda*; g. up *sall(ame, bada, bashi, yerda bashi**; g. alms *şadaka*; g. away a woman in marriage *wali**.
giver, n. *maibada, mabaya**.
glad, be, intr. v. *yin farinchik(k)i, yin (or jin) murna*.
gladden, tr. v. *bada (or sa) murna*.
gladness, n. *farinchik(k)i, murna*.
glass, n. *madubi**; dish made of g. *tamgaram*; looking g. *madubin ido, matsokachi, masokachi*.

glean, tr. v. *yin kala, roro, yin saura*.
gleanings, n. (of a harvest) *kala, saura**.
glorious, adj. (of God) *jalla** C 49.
glory, n. *daraja**, *darajia**, *annuri**, *girma**.
glove, n. *rigan hanu**.
glow-worm, n. *makesua, maikesua*.
glue, n. *danko**, *dunko**.
glutton, n. *mailoma*; gluttons *masurida*.
gnash, tr. v. *tamna hak(k)ora*.
gnashing, n. (of teeth) *tsuk(k)un hak(k)ora*.
go, intr. v. *taf(f)i, je, zaka, zazage**, *zatsa**; be about to go *za*; go to visit a place *zage, zagi*; go round *dauroro, doraro, daurara**; go before *gabata*; go back *birkida*; go forth *tashi*; go away *fishema, knu*; go constantly to a place *shishig(g)a*; go as far as *tusga, tusge*; go with *chimayi, chimma, tare*; go to meet *tarie*; go out of *fit(t)a*.
goat, n. *akwia*, pl. *awaki*; he-goat *bunsuru*, pl. *bunsurai* or *bunsuraye, tauri**; a vicious g. *watsatsi*, fem. *watsatsia*; old lean g. *guzuma*; a castrated g. *tabri*; beard of a g. *rairo*; skin of a g. *langabbu*.
God, pr. n. *allah*, the plural *allohi* is used of idols.
going, part. *taf(f)ia*; they are g. *sunataffia*; a g. away *maraita**.
gold, n. *zinaria, zinaria*.
good, adj. *nagari*, fem. *tagari*, pl.

*nagargaru, maikéau, maikiyo, kéau, kiyo, háira**, *šalihi*, pl. *šalíhai*; g. or bad *fari ko baki*; g. used as an exclamation *to*; g. morning *sanu da safe, sanu da rana, sanu da komowa*; g. evening (on parting) *sai da safe*, (on meeting) *sanu da dere*; good-bye for the present *sai anjima*; see under *sanu*.

goodness, n. *nagerta*.

goods, n. *dukiya*, pl. *dukoki* or *dukiyoyi, kaya* or *kaia*, pl. *kayayeki*.

goose, n. *dumia*; wild g. *gaba**; water g. with white breast *tsa-gagi*.

gore, n. *jini*.

gore, tr. v. (of horned animals) *tunkuda, tunkuji* or *tunkui*, e.g. the bull and the cow gored each the other *sa da sannia suka tunkuda junansu*; *soka, soka* or *soki* with intens. *sosoki*.

gorge, n. 1. see **throat**; 2. (= a narrow defile) *kozozobe*.

gorgeous, adj. (= splendid) *na ado*, e.g. g. robes *riguna na ado*.

gorilla, n. *gogo* (?).

goro-nut, n. *goro*, pl. *gurrá**; spec. a large g. *goria**, a small medicinal g. *namijin goro*.

gory, adj. *da jini, na jini, sai jini*.

gossip, n. 1. (= talk) *roski*; 2. concr. an idle talker, a gossip *algringumi*, pl. *algringuma*.

gourd, n. a plant whose fruit is either eaten or formed into cups and calabashes; among the kinds eaten are cucurbita

pepo kabewa and *goji*, a small species *kubewa, karam(m)ia*; among those used as vessels only are cucurbita *lagenaria kworia* or *koria* and *duma*.

gourds, roots of, coll. n. *yado**.

govern, v. (= rule, reign) *malaka**.

governor, n. *hákimi**, pl. *hákimai, maimalaka, masarauchi**, *wakili*; *sariki* is sometimes used in this sense.

gown, n. *riga*, pl. *riguna*.

grace, n. (= favour, free gift) *jinkai* or *shinkai, alheri*; he showed g. to us *ya yi mamu alheri*.

gracious, adj. (of God) *karímu** F 16.

graft, n. i.e. from one tree to another *kauchi*.

graft, tr. v. *kaffa**.

grain, n. 1. diff. spec. are: a g. like guinea-corn growing to height of eight feet *gero*; *dauro* is a small edible grain resembling *gero*; g. used for gruel, etc. *iblu* or *ibru*; the holcus cernuus (Barth) *maiwa, entaya**; 2. fig. grains (as of sand) *barbaddi* or *berbaddi*.

grain, mud receptacle for, n. *taska*, pl. *taskaki*.

grand, adj. (= important) *baba*, pl. *mainya*, e.g. g. people *mainya mutane*; *maigirima*, pl. *masugirima*.

grandchild, n. *jika*, fem. *jikata*, pl. *jikoki*.

granddaughter, n. see prec.

grandfather, n. *kaka*, pl. *kakani*,

uban uba, e.g. your g. *uban ubaka* B 75.

grandmother, n. *kakata*.

grandson, n. see **grandchild**.

grasp, with the hand, tr. v. *jimke*; with the arms (= to embrace) *runguma*.

grasping, adj. fig. (= covetous, greedy) *da rowa*, *mairowa*, *maitsalumchi*, *kawazuchi*.

grasping disposition, n. *rowa*, *tsalimi* or *tsalumi*, *kawazuchi*.

grass, n. 1. gen. *chiawa*; green g. *chiawa dainyi*, *achi**; 2. spec. of various kinds and uses, a species of g. *haki*, pl. *hakukua*; dried or chopped g. for horses *ingirichi* or *ingirochi*; undried g. as fodder *kasua* or *kasuwa*; g. with burr-like prickles *karangia*, *karengia* or *karingia*; a g. eaten by horses *gadeg(g)i*; a g. for making mats *zuntsia*; a g. from leaves of which a medicine is made *rairai* or *rere*; plaited g. *tsaiwa*; a rough g. *gamba*, pl. *gambobi*; a scented g. *jema*; a g. used for thatch and door covers *bunu*, pl. *bunai*; bristles of a g. used as a medicine *dandanbazi*; hatchet for cutting g. *mumtaraga*.

grasshopper, spotted, n. *wukan sariki* (lit. king's knife).

gratuitous, adj. *banza*.

grave, n. *kushewa* or *kusheya**, pl. *kusheyi*, *kabari**, *wurin bisne*, *maisutura**.

gravel, n. *tsakua*.

graze, v. 1. tr. *kiwo*; 2. intr. of cattle id.

grease, n. *mai*.

great, adj. 1. (both physically and morally) *babá* and *bab(b)a*, pl. *mainya* or *maiya*, *maigirima*, *girima*, e.g. with a g. sword *da bab(b)an takobi*, a g. king *sariki babá* or *bab(b)an sariki*; in a moral sense *bajini(n)** B 85; 2. (quantitatively and of degree) *dayawa* or *daiawa*, e.g. we sat down conversing with g. laughter *muka zamna muna yin zanche da daria dayawa*, g. falsehood *karia dayawa*; 3. spec. applied to God *jalla**, *jalala**, *akbar**; cf. seq.; 4. of one in authority as a king or prince *madaukaki*.

great, to declare, v. 1. (= to honour) *girmama*; 2. spec. *kabbar**, e.g. to declare that God is g. *kabbar ga allah akbar* A 72.

greater, adj. comp. *mafigirma*, pl. *masufigirma*; in the absence of superl. forms the idea is expr. by phr. *ya fi duka* or *ya fi kowa* appended to the adj.

greatness, n. *girma* and *girmama*; spec. *zati* (lit. essence, personality) = the g. or majesty of God; cf. F 45, 132, 246.

greed, n. *rowa*, *marowachi*, *zergi*.

greediness, n. *marowachi*.

greedy, adj. *da rowa*, *makodaita*; he is a g. person *shi ne marowachi*.

green, adj. 1. (the colour) *algus* or *alkus*, *korino*; 2. (= fresh) of

plants etc. *dainye* or *dainyi*, pl. *dainyoyi*; 3. of g. needle-work on tobe *algushi* or *algashi*.

greet, tr. v. 1. *gaida*, *gaiske*, *gaisa*, e.g. I greeted the man and he accepted my greeting *na gaida mutum ya karba gaisuana*; pres. we g. *muna gaisua*; often in pass. e.g. g. the truly great man *agaida yan maza bajinin gaskia* B 85, 87, I g. thee *agaisheka*; 2. (of religious salutation) *yin sallati* F 3, pres. (with *na*) *salmarwa*, e.g. we g. *muna salmarwa*; 3. to g. by shaking the hand *jinjini*; to wave or extend the hand in greeting *mika hanu*, e.g. I greeted them with my hand and departed *na mika masu hanu na taffi*.

greeting, n. 1. gen. *gaisua*; 2. in a religious sense *sal(l)atu* or *sal(l)ati*, *salmarwa* F 3, 5.

grey, turning, as from age *furu-fura*.

grief, n. 1. (= pain of mind, sorrow) *nadama**, *nidama** or *ladama**; 2. (cause of pain or sorrow) *wohal(l)a* or *wahal(l)a*; 3. (= expression of grief) *kuka*, e.g. he made great g. over him *ya yi kuka dayawa abissansa*, cf. G 4.

grievance, n. *kururua**.

grieved, be, intr. v. *wohalda* or *wahalda*, *jin wohal(l)a*.

grind, tr. v. 1. gen. *nik(k)a*, *tushe*, *dakka*, intensive *dadaka*; spec.

related to last, to g. to powder *dadaga*, to g. roughly *bersa** or *birza*, to g. rice *tingama*, to g. wheat *reda*; 2. (= to whet or sharpen) *wasa*, *gerta*, e.g. he ground the razors nicely *ya wasa (gerta) asaki da keanu*.

grinding, of wheat, n. *tersawa*, also *tesawa*.

gripe, tr. v. (of medicine) *murda*.

gristle, n. *gurunguntsi*.

groan, intr. v. *guri*, *yin nishi*.

groaning, n. *nishi*.

groom, n. 1. *shamak(k)i*, pl. *shamak(k)ai*; 2. (= bridegroom) *ango*, pl. *anguna*.

grope, v. *lalabe*; (= to search one's way with the hands in the dark) *burkuti*, *dundumi*.

ground, n. 1. (= surface of the earth) *kas(s)a*, pl. *kas(s)ashi* or *kas(s)asa*; on the g. *akas(s)a* or *akass*; 2. (= cause) *sab(b)abi* or *sub(b)abi*; without g. (or grounds) *babu sab(b)abi*; 3. (= first principle or foundation) *guzu* or *gusu**.

ground, pass. participle 1. (finely) *roski*; 2. (roughly) *da ts ekki*.

ground-nut, n. arachis hypogaea *aya*, *ged(d)a*; a smaller species *guchia*, *gujia* or *gojia*, pl. *gujeye*; oil from g. *main ged(d)a*; pod of g. *kobsa*, *kopsa* or *kobso*.

grow, intr. v. 1. of plants *chira*, *chire*, *chiro* or *teira*, *teire*, *tsiro*, also *tsoro*; 2. (= increase in size) *girima*, *yin girima*; 3. to g. (= to become) *zama*; to g. old *tsufa*.

growth, n. (of a plant) *ded(d)ua*.

gruel, n. made of guinea-corn *kunu*; thin g. *sal(l)ala*.

grumble, v. *gunaguni, guri, bim-bini, binbini*.

grumbling, n. *bimbini, binbini* or *bibini**; to refrain from g. *rika binbini*.

grunting, (of a pig) n. *tsuwa*.

guard, n. 1. (= heed, care) *tsari*, e.g. be on your g. against (= take heed against) *ka nema tsari*; 2. (= soldier of king's body-guard) *dakara*, pl. *da-karu, dogari*.

guard, tr. v. *tsara, tsari, tsare*; g. against *tsaro, tsarima*.

guest, n. *bako*, f. *bakua*, pl. *bakuna, baki* or *bakokuna*.

guide, n. *jagaba, shugaba*, pl. *shu-gabai*.

guide, tr. v. (= lead, conduct) *kai*.

guile, n. *munafuchi* or *manafuchi*; (= cunning) *wayo*, with g. *da wayo*.

guilt, n. *laifi, zambata*.

guiltless, adj. *babu laifi*.

guilty, to declare, v. *kada, bada laifi*; to be declared g. *kayes**.

guinea-corn, n. *dawa* (= sorghum vulgare), *gero**. There are four chief kinds of *dawa*: *kaura*, a red species, used for feeding horses, *farafara* used when ground for making gruel, *mura-mura* eaten whole when cooked, *giwakamba* used as a medicine for rubbing on the eyes; g. ground up *kafa*; a drink made from g. *giya*; g. fever, occur-

ring when the g. ripens *chiwo na sabo dawa*.

guinea-fowl, n. *sabua* or *zabua*, pl. *sabi* or *zabi, kazan yariba*.

guinea-worm, n. *kurkono* or *ku-rukunu*; a small plant used as a medicine for g. *damankad-(d)a*; a swelling caused by g. *hangara*.

guitar, n. *gurumin kiddi* (!).

gullet, n. *janai*.

gum, n. *danko* or *dumko, jirai, sagogi**; spec. a g. put in ink *karo*; a g. used in perfumes *karon maje*.

gums, n. (= seat of the teeth) *dasashi*.

gun, n. *bindiga*, pl. *bindigogi*; spec. a double-barrelled g. *bindiga da baki biu*; report of a g. *ammo**; to load a g. *dora* or *chik(k)a bindiga*; to discharge a g. *halbi* (or *halbe* or *buga*) *bindiga*.

gunpowder, n. *albarus* or *albarud*.

guns, coll. n. *makami**.

gush out, intr. v. *zub(b)a, zub(b)o, suba*; to g. out abundantly *gushe gushe*.

gusset, n. *tsuma*, pl. *tsumoki*; cloth g. in a tobe *shiga*.

gypsum, n. *alziibus**.

habit, n. *tada*, pl. *tadodi, ada, hal(l)i, sabo**, the last especially of aptitude acquired by practice, phr. nothing can be done except by practice *aikin dunia duka sai sabo*; cf. habituated.

habitation, n. *mazamne*.
habituated, to be, intr. v. *saba* constr. with *da*.
haggle, intr. v. *yin chiniki*; cf. bargain.
hail, n. *kankar(r)a, rua da kankar(r)a, buda*.
hail! exclamation = welcome! *samu, agaisheka, sai lafia*.
hair, n. coll. *gashi*; a single h. *gashi* F 144; spec. head of h. when cut off *suma*; h. on the cheeks *saje* or *saji*; h. of tail of horse, elephant, etc. *tsegia*; abundance of h. *giz(z)o*; absence of h. on head *kundumin kai*; long ridge of h. left in shaving *shasanda**; tuft of h. *zanko*; h. of woman plaited *bijaji*; h. worn by women in curls down their cheeks *kis(s)o*; twisted locks of woman's h. at side of face *dauri*.
hairdresser, n. *maikis(s)o*, fem. *maikis(s)ia, manzani**.
hairy, adj. *da gashi*, e.g. its face is all h. *fuskansa duk da gashi* or *fuskansa sai gashi*; a h. person *galgas(s)a* or *gargas(s)a*; h. all over *duguza**.
half, n. *shashi, sashi**, *rab(b)i, rib(b)i**; h. a piece of cloth, paper, etc. *ausigi*.
hall, n. entrance h. *zauru, pl. zauruka*.
halo, n. i.e. round sun or moon *sansan(n)i*.
halt, adj. *guragu* or *gurgu*, pl. *guragu*.
halt, intr. v. 1. (= to limp) *yin*

gurugunta; 2. (= to stop marching, to stand still) *tsayi, tsaya, tsai*; 3. spec. to h. for the night *shid(d)a* or *shid(d)e*; 4. fig. to h. between two opinions *yin baki biu*.
halter, n. (= leading-rope for horses, etc.) *assalawi, ragama*.
halting, n. (= limping) *gurugunta, gurgunta, gurmunta, gurgunchi*.
halting-place, for the night, n. *zungo, mashid(d)i*, last in the sense of lodging or khan; spec. temporary h. for carriers *loko*.
halve, tr. v. *bare**; in less strict sense (= to divide) *raba*.
hammer; n. *kwarikwas(s)a*; a blacksmith's h. *mas(s)aba*, pl. *mas(s)abai*; a large h. *amadeshi*; a small h. *matalaka* or *muntalaka*.
hand, n. 1. *hanu*, pl. *hanua*; the right h. *dama* or *hanu na dama*; the left h. *hagum, hagu, hauni, hanu na hagum* or *hanu na hauni*; the palm of the h. *bayan hanu*, the same spread out flat *tafin hanu*; 2. of place or direction, right h. *dama, wojen dama*; left h. *hagum, hagu, hauni* or *wojen hagum*, etc.; of time, at h. *kus(s)a, da kus(s)a*; cf. hands.
hand, tr. v. *mika*, and in a looser sense *ba* or *bada*.
handed, left-, adj. *bahago*.
handful, n. (of mud, flour, etc.) *dunkule, churi*; to take a h. *jimka*.

handkerchief, n. *maharma*; spec.

a h. on woman's head *kal(l)abi*;
h. to bind round woman's head
alfuta, pl. *alfutai*; h. tied up
so as to form a bag *adiko*; h.
used to wrap up money *mai-*
yani.

handle, n. *marik(k)i*, pl. *marik-*
(k)ai, *madauki*, *maratayi*; h. of
axe *bakin gatari*; h. of knife,
pen, axe, etc. *bota**; h. of box
makama, *kota*, *zoben* (or *zobin*)
kaya.

handle, tr. v. *tab(b)a*.

hands, to clap the, v. *ban hanu*,
tafa or *tafi*.

hands, a man with his h. tied to
his neck, n. *kukumi*.

handsome, adj. *da keau*, *mai-*
keau; a building h. to look at
gid(d)a da keaun gan(n)i.

hang, tr. v. *rataya* or *rataia*, *yin*
rataya; to h. up *rataya*, *yin*
rataya, *done**.

hanging, n. (= curtain, etc.) *reto*.

hanging, 1. adj. (= suspended)
arataye; 2. part. *ratayawa*.

happen, intr. v. *faru*, e.g. it
happened *ya faru*, what has
happened? *mi ya faru?* cf.
seq.

happen to, intr. v. *sama*, *sama**,
samo, e.g. what has happened
to you? = what is the matter
with you? *mi ya sameka?*

happiness, n. 1. (= satisfaction)
dadi, *dadin zuchia*, *murna**;
2. (in a religious sense) *sa-*
*ada**.

happy, feel, intr. v. *jin dadi*.

harass, tr. v. *sananche*.

hard, adj. 1. phys. *da tauri*, cf.
seq.; also morally hard, ob-
stinate; 2. (= difficult of ac-
complishment, etc.) *da wuya*.

harden, intr. v. (to become hard)
yin tauri.

hardened, part. one whose heart
is h. *matauria zuchia*.

hard-headed, n. (= an obstinate
person) *maikinji*.

hardness, n. *tauri*, also in a moral
sense, e.g. *taurin zuchia* hard-
ness of heart.

hare, n. *zomu* or *zomo*, pl. *zomai*.

harlot, n. *bombegi*, *shakalia*, pl.
shakalai, cf. fornicator; child
of harlot *danfarka*.

harlotry, n. *shakalichi*.

harm, n. *bannai**, *laifi*, e.g. there
is no h. in it *babu laifi*.

harm, tr. v. *bata*, *bache*, *jima*.

harp, n. *garaiya**.

harpoon, n. for river fishing *zago*,
hag(g)u.

hart, n. see deer.

harvest, n. (i.e. the season) *kak-*
(k)a.

harvest, to cut down the, v. *girbi*
or *giribi*; cf. reap.

haste, n. *sauri* or *samri*, *aniya*,
garaje or *garazi* D 36.

hasten, intr. v. *yin aniya*, *ham-*
zari or *hamzari*, *gaugawa*,
*gaugata**, *kaifafa**; to h. after
zazari.

hastening, n. *garaje* or *garazi*.

hastily, adv. *da sauri*, *da sauki*.

hat, straw, n. *garumfa*, *garunfa*
or *gurumfa*; large straw h.

malafa, pl. *malafuna* or *mala-fai*; *dangarumfa* designates a small trader, who carries goods on his head; cf. cap.

hatch, tr. v. *kenke(s)she* or *kenkes(s)a*.

hatchet, n. *gatari*, pl. *gatara*, *gatura* and *gaturua*; small h. *dan gatari*; handle of a h. *bakin gatari*; spec. small h. for cutting grass for fodder *mumtaraga*, *kurada*, pl. *kuradai*; h. with broad blade *barandem(m)i*, *sitaka*.

hate, n. *kiyeya*, *takaichi*.

hate, tr. v. *ki*, *kia**, *kije**; pass. I am hated *ankini*.

hateful, n. *mugu*, fem. *mugunia*, pl. *miagu*.

hater, n. ag. *makiyi*, pl. *makiya*.

haughtiness, n. *fadin rai*, *fadin zuchia*, *girmankai*, *giriman rai*, *jinkai**.

haughty, adj. *da giriman rai*; a h. person *mai jinkai*.

haul, tr. v. *ja*.

haunch, n. (of a cow) *kankashi**.

Hausa, pr. n. the Hausa nation, country, language *hausa*; a H. native *bahaushe*, pl. *hausawa*; the H. language *hausa*, *magana hausa*, *halshin hausa*, e.g. boat—that is *jirigi* in H. *shi ne da hausa jirigi*, he said to me in H. *ya che gareni da magana hausa*, I understand H. *ina jin magana hausa*, to speak H. *yin magana hausa*, a speaker of H. *mai yin magana hausa*.

have, 1. tr. v. (= to possess) *na da*, *ke da*, also expr. by *ga* (to) with pronouns *gare*, e.g. I h. a friend named Hassan *ina da aboki sunansa hassan*, a certain man has a camel *woni mutum shina da rakumi*, we h. *mu ke da*, I h. much money *kurdi dayawa gareni*; 2. aux. v. as in 'you h. seen'; this is one of the senses of the perf. form in *ka*, *nka*, for which see H. G. p. 60.

hawk, n. *shirua* or *shirwa*, pl. *shiruoyi*; spec. a small white h. *shahu* or *shafu*.

hay, n. *ingirichi* or *ingirochi*.

haze, n. *hazo*.

hazel nut, n. *chanza*.

hazy, adj. *da hazo*.

he, pers. pron. *shi*, *ya*; *shi* is emphatic and used as separate pron. before *ya*, e.g. but my brother he saw her afar off *amma kanena shi ya ganta da nesa*, also with dependent clauses and wishes; *ya* is used in the aorist and in impersonal expressions as *ya issa* it is enough.

head, n. 1. of animated beings *kai*, pl. *kanua*, *kawana*, *kawana** and *kawuna*; 2. (= chief point or substance of a statement) *kai*; 3. (= chief person) see **chief**. Spec. back part of h. *keya*; top of h. *kandaman kai*.

headache, n. *chiwon kai*, *jeri**.

head-dress, n. *rawani*, pl. *rawuna*.

headlong, adj. and adv. *da gangara*; to fall h. *yin saladak(k)a**, he fell h. *ya yi saladak(k)a** or *ya fadi da gangara*.

headman, 1. (of a village, place, etc.) *sariki* or *sarki*, q.v.; 2. (of a caravan) *madugu*, pl. *madugawa*.

heal, tr. v. *worike*, *worke* or *warke*; pass. to be healed *worike*, *worke*, *warke* and the pass. form, e.g. remain here until he be healed *ku zamna awurinani sai ya worike* or *sai aworikeshi*, we stayed here until he was healed *muka zamna nan har anworikeshi*.

healed, particip. (= h. in body or restored in mind) *worikeke*, fem. *worikekia*, pl. *worikeku*.

health, n. (i.e. good h.) *lafia*; in h. *lafia* and *da lafia*, frequent in salutations, e.g. are you in h.? *kana lafia*, answ. in very good h. *lafia lau*; to be in good h. *yin lafia*; to improve in h. *jin dama*, *woriwori*; restoration to h. *afua*, he recovers his h. he becomes better *ya samu afua* (or *lafia*), *ya ji rongomi*, they give thee medicine to drink that thou mayest become better *su baka ka sha fa dom fa ka samu afua* F78; one in bad h., sick, a patient *maraslafia*.

heap, n. *taro* or *taru*, pl. *tarori*, *tilli** or *tulli*.

heap up, tr. v. *had(d)a*, *dora*;

spec. to h. up earth round plants *fir(r)i*, *maimai*, q.v.

hear, tr. v. *ji*.

heart, n. 1. (the bodily organ) *zuchia*, pl. *zukata* and *zutochi*, *gab(b)a**, pl. *gab(b)obi**; 2. (= the feelings) *zuchia*, e.g. *zuchiata ta bache* my h. was broken; to be cut to the h. *jin zafin zuchia*; to learn by h. *samu harda** D 33; to say off by h. *yin tulawa*.

heartless, adj. *magaya* or *magachi*, pl. *magata*.

heat, n. *zafi*, *zafi* and *zufa*; spec. h. of the sun *gum(m)i*.

heathen, n. *asna* or *arna*, *kafiri*, pl. *kafirai* and *kafirawa*, *majusi*, pl. *majusawa*, *bamagye*.

heathenism, n. *kafirichi*, *hal(l)in kafirai*.

heave, tr. v. *tada*; intr. *tashi*; to h. a sigh *yin sheda*.

heaven, n. *sama*, pl. *samunia* or *samomi*, *gid(d)an dawama*; h. and hell (the after-world) *lahira*; the Mohammedan paradise *aljenna*.

heaviness, n. (= great weight) *nauyi*.

heavy, adj. *da nauyi*, *mainauyi*.

hedge, n. (= fence) *darni*, *danga*, *damsam(m)i*, *shimge*, *shinge*, pl. *shimgaye*.

hedge-hog, n. *bushia* or *baushia*.

hedges, a plant used in making, n. *fidasari*.

heed, v. 1. (= to take notice of anything) *kul(l)a*, *tuna*, *tunane*, all constr. with *da*; 2. (= to

- attend to what is said) *saurara*, *sorara* or *jurare**, *ji*; spec. to take h. to an agreement, etc. *damre magana*.
- heel**, n. *duduge* or *did(d)igi*, pl. *dudugai*, *duga duga*, *karsha**.
- Hegira**, the, n. *hijra*.
- height**, n. *hawa*, *tsawa*, *tsawo*, e.g. it is three cubits in h. *tsawonsa kamu uku*.
- heir**, n. *magashi*, fem. *magashia*, pl. *magata* or *magada*, *magado* or *magaji*; h. to the throne *chiroma*; h. to the throne at Kano *wombai*.
- held**, particip. *riḱaḱe*, fem. *riḱaḱia*, pl. *riḱaḱu*.
- hell**, n. *jahannama*; h. and heaven (= the future world) *lahira*.
- hell-fire**, n. *jahima*, *wuta**.
- helmet**, n. *bushia* or *bishiga*, *kwolkwoli*.
- help**, n. *taimako*, *taimakawa*, *tainyona**, *sauḱi*, *gudunmawa*, the last especially of h. in war; to ask for h. *zukat(t)a*; to obtain h. *samu sauḱi*; to send h. *koro sauḱi*.
- help**, tr. v. *taya*, *tainya*, *tainye*, *tainyo*, *yin taya*, *yin taimako*, *tarsa*, *tarsho* or *tarshi*.
- helper**, n. ag. *maitaimako*, *mataye**, *maigazawa**.
- helpless**, n. (= one who is h.) *machiachi*.
- hem**, n. *lafi* or *lafe*; to make a h. *kalmas(s)a* or *kalma(s)-she*.
- hen**, n. *kaza* or *kasa**, pl. *kaji*.
- hen-coop**, n. *aḱuriken kaza*.
- hence**, adv. *dag(g)anan*, *dag(g)a wuri nan*.
- her**, l. possess. pron. suffixed *-ta*, *-nta*, e.g. h. daughter *diata*, h. camel *rakuminta*; separate, if the object possessed is masc. *nata*, if fem. *tata**, cf. H. Gr. p. 17 note; these stand also for Engl. 'hers'; 2. pers. pron. objective suffixed to verbs and preps. *-ta*, e.g. he saw h. *ya ganta*, to h. *gareta*; and separate (after prepositions) *ita*, e.g. he returned along with h. *ya komo tare da ita*.
- herb**, n. l. (= green blade) *gainya*, pl. *gainye* and *gainyaye*; 2. spec. of various kinds and uses are: h. from which a cure for diarrhoea is made *shani ka sanni*, an edible h. *turgunwa* or *turgunuwa*, a sort of edible water lettuce *kainua*, a prickly h. *daii* or *dayi*, h. root of which is put in milk to keep it *loda*, small red flowered h. used in sauce like coriander *yandon ruri*, sweet herbs *na'ama*, thorny h. eaten by camels, *tsaido*, h. with tooth-shaped leaves used as a medicine *zabo*.
- herd**, n. *garike** or *gerke**, pl. *garikuna** or *gerkuna**.
- herdsman**, n. *makiyayi*, pl. *makiyaya*.
- here**, adv. *nan*, *dag(g)a nan*, *awuri nan*, the latter also = from h., from this point, e.g. do you know the way from h. *ka sanni hainya dagga nan ko*.

heretofore, adv. (= until now) *har yanzu*; h. I have not heard this *dadai ban ji wonan ba*; as h. *kam(m)an nadá*; cf. ever.

heron small bird like, n. *bad-billa, belbela* or *bilbila*.

hers, separ. possess. pron. *nata, tata**; cf. her.

hesitate, intr. v. *yin zuchia biu, sauraro**.

hesitation, n. *zuchia biu*.

hiccough, n. *shakua*.

hid, to be, v. *boye, boiye* or *boiyi*.

hidden, particip. *boyeya, rufafe*, fem. *rufafa*, pl. *rufafu*.

hide, n. *kilágo*, pl. *kilágai, kirigi*, the latter used of h. after tanning, the untanned h. is called *fata*.

hide, 1. tr. v. *rufe, rufi* or *rife**, *boye, boiye* or *boiyi, sakaye* or *saye**, *tsaiye, kumso**; 2. intr. v. (= to hide oneself) *boye, boiye* or *boiyi; fak(k)e*, cf. ambush; *rebandari**; to h. behind a person in fear *rafaki*.

hiding, n. *boyiwa*.

hiding-place, n. *maboya* or *ma-boiya, fako**; a place for hiding or laying up anything *maaje*.

higgle, v. *tal(l)a*.

high, adj. *dogo*, fem. *dogua*, pl. *dogaye, da tsawo*.

hill, n. *tudu*, pl. *tudodi, kudunia*; spec. a h. larger than *tudu* is called *tsauni*, a h. covered with sand *jigowa* or *jegawa*, a range of hills *kudunia*.

himself, pron. both emphatic as *shi dakansa*, and also reflexive,

e.g. prov. he who weeps for another weeps for h. *kowa shi ke kuka da woni shi kuka da kansa*.

hinder, adj. *nabaya*, fem. *tabaya*.

hinder, tr. v. *han(n)a, tankosa* or *tankwas(s)a*, e.g. if he speaks do not h. him *idan ya yi magana kadda ku hannashi*.

hip bone, n. *katara**.

hippopotamus, n. *dorina*, pl. *dorinai*.

hire, n. (= wages) *lada*.

hire, tr. v. *yin sufuri* or *sufur-chi*.

his, possess. pron. suffixed *-sa*; after *e* or *i* *-shi*; *-nsa, -nshi*, e.g. h. house *gid(d)ansa*, h. camel *rakuminsa*; separate, if the object possessed is masc. *nasa* or *nai*, if fem. *tasa* or *tai*.

hiss, intr. v. *yin fuchi*.

hissing, n. *shishit(t)a*; of snakes *fuchi*.

hit, tr. v. see **strike**.

hither, adv. *nan**, *ga wuri nan**.

ho! interj. to call attention, *kai, ihu**.

hobble horses, a rope used to, n. *dabebeyi, tarnaki*.

hobgoblin, n. *fatalua*.

hoe, n. *fatainya* or *fartanya, hauya**, pl. *hauyi, hauyuna* and *hauyoyi, mashemi*; spec. a large h. bent like small plough *galma* or *garma*.

hoe, tr. v. (= dig or stir the ground) *noma, nomi* or *nome, shira, huda*; (= to cut down grass with a h.) *shema*.

hogs, coll. n. (tame) *gursuna* or *gurusunu*; cf. *gado*.

holcus cernuus, n. *maiwa*.

hold, tr. v. *rik(k)e*, *rik(k)a* or *rik(k)i*, *riske*, *riski* or *ruska*, *aje**, e.g. he held the door *ya aje kofa*; to h. fast in the mind *rik(k)e*, *rik(k)a*, *rik(k)i*; to h. fast *jirfata**; to h. off *taushe* or *tausa*; to lay h. of *maki**; to lay h. on *kama*.

holding-fast, n. *rik(k)awa*.

hole, n. *rami*, pl. *ramuna*, *kwarmi*, pl. *kwarmu*, *baria**, *masai = salga*, q.v. spec. h. for game to fall into *hako*, pl. *hakoki*; h. where dirty water is thrown *katami*; h. to look out at *taga*; h. for storing corn *tsunjia*; h. made in nose of ox for rope *azirka*; h. cut for neck in a shirt *wundi*.

holiness, n. *char(i)ki** or *tsar(i)ki**.

hollow, n. *kogo*, *get(t)o*, e.g. the h. behind the ear *get(t)on kune*; the h. of a stream *kozozobe*.

hollow-backed, adj. *ganseruwa* or *gancheruwa*.

holy, adj. *tsariki* or *tsarki*; spec. a holy man *sherif*.

holy, to make, tr. v. *charkaka* or *tsarkaka*.

homage, do (by kneeling down) intr. v. *durugus(s)a* or *durgus(s)a*.

home, n. *gid(d)a*; at h. *chik(k)in gid(d)a*.

honest, adj. *gaskia*, *da gaskia*, *gas-ke**; an h. man *mutumen gaskia*.

honey, n. *zumua*, *zuma*, *ruan zumua*; h. poured from the comb *sakan**.

honey-guide bird, n. *gunda*.

honour, n. *fahari* or *fahri*, *yab(b)o**, *daraja* or *darajia* or *derejia*.

honour, tr. v. *yin yab(b)o*, *girmama*, *bada girma* (or *girima*), *ba* (or *bada*) *daraja* or *darajia* or *derejia*.

honoured, participial adj. *yeb(b)abe*, fem. *yeb(b)aba*, pl. *yeb(b)abu*.

hoof, n. *kofato* or *kafato**, pl. *kofatai*.

hook, n. *kugiya* or *kogia* or *kogua*, pl. *kugiyoyi*; large wooden h. *kwonderiya*; hooks on a fishing-line, coll. *murimuri*.

hop, on one foot, intr. v. *lenge* or *lunge*.

hope, intr. v. *tamaha**, *yin tamaha**, *so**.

horn, n. *kafo*, pl. *kafoni* and *kafuna*, also = a (horn) trumpet.

hornet, n. *zanzaro*.

horse, n. *doki*, fem. *godia*, pl. *dawaki*; spec. young h. *saf(f)i*, fem. *saf(f)ia*, *dukushi*, fem. *dukusa*, pl. *dukusai*; old lean h. *guzuma*; war horses coll. *ingaramu**; a h. that walks with its ankles on ground *maitakin biri*; h. led behind another, not ridden *zagi**; a bay h. *furde*, *sari*, *sheji**; a black h. *akawali*, *chicherro*; a brown h. *aharus*, fem. *aharasa*; white-faced h. *bola*; h. with

white spot on forehead *kili*, fem. *kilia*; h. with white forehead and forelegs *danda*; h. speckled white with black *alshafi*, fem. *alshafa*. Horse's harness, diseases, etc.: h. head ornament *chakasabra*; small bells on h. head *chikasora*; strap round h. head *maraya*; h. girdle *kurafu*, *kurfu* or *karfu**, pl. *karfuna**; h. breast-band *dangab(b)a*; h. breast-strap fastened to saddle *majayi**; disease of h. foot just above the hoof *alafa*; swelling on a h. back *tura*; medicine poured into h. mouth *chushe*; place for horses *shamak(k)i*, pl. *shamak(k)ai*.

horseback, on, adv. phr. *bis(s)a* (or *bis(s)an*) *doki*; a man on h. *maidoki*, pl. *masudoki*; to mount on h. *hawa bis(s)a doki*; to take exercise on h. *kil(l)isa*.

horse-fly, n. *berbachi*, also called *damis(s)an dawaki* being spotted like a leopard; a large buzzing h. *gorje* or *gurje*.

horseman, n. *maidoki*, pl. *masudoki*.

horse-soldier, n. *guriguri**.

host, n. (= entertainer) *maimashidi*; (= a great multitude) *bab(b)an taro*.

hot, adj. *zafi*, *zafi*, *da zafi*, *demi* or *dumi*, *da demi*; h. water *ruan zafi*; it is h. (of the weather) *rana da dumi*; the h. season *rani*.

hound, n. see *dog*.

hour, *sa'a**; the hours of the day are only reckoned approximately by the Hausas, they are: *jijifi* the twilight just before the dawn, *asuba* or *azuba* the dawn, *hanchi* two hours after dawn, i.e. circ. 8 a.m., *wollata* circ. 10 a.m., *rana tsak(k)a* or *tsak(k)an rana* mid-day, *zowall* circ. 2 p.m., *azuhur* the call to prayer, circ. 4 p.m., *laasar* circ. 6 p.m., *maguriba* or *magarub* late in the evening, *lisha* very late in the evening, *dere* the time between *lisha* and *jijifi*.

house, n. *gid(d)a*, pl. *gid(d)aje*, *gid(d)ashe* or *gidadaji**, *shigifu* or *shegifa*, pl. *shigifu* and *shigifofi*; h. of one room *daki*, pl. *dakuna*; top of h. or upper storey of h. *kandaki*; desolate ruined h. *kango*, pl. *kangogi*; all the people belonging to one h. *kabila*; master of h. *maid(d)a*, *balle**.

household, n. *gid(d)a*, pl. *gid(d)aje*, *gid(d)ashe* or *gidadaji*; father of the h. *ubangiji*, fem. *uwalgid(d)a* or *uwoorigid(d)a*.

householder, n. *maid(d)a*.

how, adv. *kaka*, 1. interrog. e.g. h. are you? *kai kaka ke*; 2. rel. *kaka*, e.g. tell me h. he died *fadda mani kaka ya mutu*; h. long? *har yaushe*, *tunyaushe*; h. many? *nawa* or *guda nawa*; h. much? *nawa*; phr. h. many persons were there? *mutane su yi nawa*.

however, 1. rel. adv. (= in whatever manner) *kokak(k)a*; 2. adversative conj. (= but) *ber(r)i dai*; *fache**.

howl, intr. v. *yin kuka, yin har-gowa*.

hue, n. (of colour) *launi*.

hum, n. *ammo*; h. of conversation *dum(m)i*.

hum, intr. v. *yin ammo*.

humanity, n. (= the nature of man) *mutumchi*.

humble, adj. *da karamin rai*.

humble person, *maitankwas(s)a*.

humble, tr. v. *maida karami*, e.g. he humbled himself *ya maida kansa karami*.

humiliation, n. *zilla**, F 105.

humility, n. *tankwas(s)a*.

hump, n. *doro*; spec. h. on bull *tozo*.

hump-back, n. *kazaza*.

hump-backed, adj. *maidoro, mair-gancherurwa*.

hundred, num. *dari, mia, minya, zango* or *zungo*, the last generally restricted to counting cowries; two h. *metin**, *dari biu*.

hunger, n. *yunwa* often pronounced *yingwa*.

hunger, to suffer, n. *matsu, jin yunwa*.

hungry, adj. *da yunwa*; I am h. *ina da yunwa*; a h. person *mayenwachi*, pl. *mayenwata*.

hunt, v. *yin farauta*.

hunting, n. *farauta*.

hurry, to be in a, v. *gaugawa*; cf. hasten.

hurt, tr. v. *jima, tamna**; cf. harm.

husband, n. *miji*, or *namiji*, pl. *maza* and *mazaje, gorzo*; h. and wife *namiji da mache*.

husk, n. (of grain) *surfe*.

husks, coll. *dusa*, h. from wheat etc. *tsak(k)i*; h. of guinea corn *kworno*.

husks, to clean of, tr. v. *surife* or *surifa*.

hut, n. *shegifa, rumpa*, pl. *rumfuna*; h. for storing grain in *shirai*; light, thatched h. *rudu*.

huts, collection of temporary, coll. *tarika* or *tarika*.

hyena, n. *kura*, pl. *kuraye, amina**, *baru**.

hypocrisy, n. *munafuchi* or *munafuchi*.

hypocrite, n. *munafiki*, pl. *munafikai*; to play the h. *yin munafuchi*.

I, 1st pers. pron. comm. gender;

1. *na*, prefixed to aor. e.g.

I went *na taffi*; I saw him

na ganshi; with *ba*, often

contracted, e.g. I did not see

him *ban ganshi ba*; 2. *ni*

suffixed to fut. and passives,

e.g. I shall go *zani taffi*; I

was wounded by a gunshot

akahalbeni da bindiga, I shall

be wounded *za-ahalbeni*. As

a prefix to a verb *ni* expresses

the fut. e.g. *ni taffi = zani*

taffi; prefixed to the aor. it

denotes an emphatic past, e.g.

It was I who went or I indeed went *ni na taffi*; *ni* is to be used in emphatic expressions, e.g. I myself *ni da kaina*, I alone *ni kad(d)ai*, is it I? do you mean me? *nia*; 3. *ina* expresses the present and should be followed by the participial form if there be such, thus aor. I came *na taffo* pres. I am coming *ina taffowa*; but *ina so* I am willing.

idiot, n. 1. from birth *shashasha**; 2. fig. cf. fool, foolish.

idle, adj. 1. (= doing nothing) *laane**, fem. *laana**, pl. *laanu**; *lalafa**; an idle person *rago*, fem. *ragua*, pl. *ragaye*, one who is i. *mailalachi* or *mala-lachi*, pl. *masulalachi*, *maika-sala*, *bahili**; 2. (= in vain, unprofitable) *banza*, *babu anfani*; to be i. *huji*.

idleness, n. *ragaita*, pl. *ragaitu*, *ragonchi*, *lalachi*, *lalafanchi*, *sausauchi* or *sosochi*, the last also of unwillingness to work.

idler, n. see *idle*.

idly, one who saunters about i. n. *mairagaita*.

idol, n. *tsafi* or *zafi**, pl. *tsafuna* and *tsafafuka*, *gumki* or *gamki*, pl. *gumakai*.

idolater, n. *matsafi*, pl. *masutsafa*.

idolatry, n. *shirku*, *kafrichi*.

if, conj. *idan*, *izan**, e.g. if any of you refuse to repent ye shall all burn in the fire *izan kowa kun ki tuba du ku kona* E 20; *en*, e.g. if thou wilt hold it

fast put forth thy left hand *en zaka jirfata ea hagu* A 17, if she make an agreement with thee *en ta yi alkarueli da kai*; *kad(d)an*, e.g. if thou fearest the King who is almighty *kadan ka tsorshi sarki mai-iyawa*; *kan* (before *b kam*), e.g. if she see thee, she covers up her face *kan ta ganika ta lulube* C 18; *akan* F 19, *akal* D 43; *kur**, *kul** C 7.

ignoble, adj. *banza*, *na banza*.

ignorance, n. (i.e. religious ignorance) *jahalichi*; in ignorance *da jahalichi*.

ignorant, adj. (relig.) *jahili*. To be i. in a general sense must be expressed by means of the verbs *san(n)i*, *ji* or (in the case of an art or science) *saba* with negatives.

iguana, n. *tsare*, *guza**.

ill, n. (= misfortune, loss) *berna*, *hasara*, *asara*, *tasari*, to suffer ill *yin tasari*.

ill, adj. 1. (= bad) *mugu*, fem. *mugunia*, pl. *miagu*, *banza*; 2. (= sick) *da chiwo*, *marili**; to be i. *yin chiwo*, *jin chiwo*; he is i. *shina da chiwo*; to become i. *chiutu*.

illegitimate, child, n. *shég(g)e* or *shege*, *dan farika*.

illiberal, adj. (= stingy) *da taurin zuchia**; he is i. *hanunsa ya bushe* or *hanunsa busashe* ne lit. his hand is dry.

illiberality, n. *taurin zuchia**, *kalma(s)shen zuchia*.

illicit, adj. *haram*, *ba* (or *babu*) *halal*.

illness, n. *chiwo*, *chiuta*, *azaba**.

ill-treat, tr. v. *kankamna*; cf. injure.

illuminate, tr. v. 1. gen. *haskata*;
2. to i. a manuscript *zayen(n)a*.

image, n. 1. (= likeness, picture) *kama*, pl. *kamanu*; 2. (= a graven image or idol) *gumki* or *gamki*, pl. *gumakai*.

imagine, v. *yin tamaḥa*, *zet(t)o*, *tset(t)o*, *tsachi*, *zache*; cf. suppose.

imbibe, tr. v. (= to drink in or absorb) *sha*.

imitate, tr. v. another's pronunciation or actions *koikoīyo*, e.g. I imitate him *ina koikoīyonsa*; to i. the religion of the heathen *maida addin'in asna*.

immediately, adv. *koyanḥu*, *nan da nan*.

immerse, tr. v. *tsoma*, *nuche*.

impatient, adj. *marashankuri*.

impede, tr. v. *han(n)a*.

impediment, n. 1. (= hindrance) *abin han(n)a**; 2. impediment in speech *ininan halshi*.

impertinent, adj. *tsiwa* or *tsewa*.

important, adj. *baba*, pl. *mainya* or *maiya*; i. person, n. *dotijo*, *datijo* or *dotizo*; cf. also consideration.

importunate, to be, v. *yin tsatumchi*.

impossible, it is, impers. v. *ya gagara*, *ya faskare**.

improper, adj. *ba daidai*, e.g. he

did what was i. *ya yi abin da ba daidai ba*.

improve, tr. v. *gerta**.

improve, in health, intr. v. *woriwori*, *yin rongomi*; cf. health.

impudent, adj. see **impertinent**.

in, prep. *chik(k)in* or *dag(g)a chik(k)in*, *a*, *gun*, e.g. in the basket *chik(k)in* (or *dag(g)a chik(k)in*) *sanfo*; in pain *chik(k)in azaba*; in this place *a uuri nan*; in this world *gun dúniana* B 111.

in order that, conj. phr. *abis(s)a*, *domin*, *don*, e.g. practise diligently in order that you may shoot well *ku yi aniya dayawa abissa halbin bindiga da kearu*, in order that he might hear *domin* or *don shi ji*.

inability, n. *gajewa**.

incense, n. *ḥamshi*, *turare*.

incensed, particip. (= angered); see **irritated**.

incline, steep, n. *gangare* or *gangara*, pl. *gangaru*.

incline, tr. v. to i. the head *tsuguna* or *tsugun*; to i. the ear *karkat(t)a kunu*.

including, (= as well as) *har** or *hal**.

increase, n. *dad(d)ua*, *ḥarama**, *auki**, *abki**.

increase, v. 1. tr. *ḥara*; *dad(d)a* (also pronounced *deddi*), *yin auki* (or *abki*), *dora*, *safa*, *saf(f)a*, *su(f)a*; 2. intr. *dad(d)a*, *yin dad(d)ua*, *yado*, *yadu*, *karu* q.v.

incredible, adj. *dunia**.

incredulity, an interj. expressing
i. *aiya! hubba!*

incurable, adj. e.g. an incurable
disease *chiwon wofi*.

indebted to, intr. v. e.g. I am
indebted to you *ina da
bashinka*.

indecency, n. *kazamta*.

indecent, adj. *kazami*, pl. *kazá-
mai, maraskumia, babu kumia*.

indecorous, adj. *ba daidai*.

indeed, l. adv. (= in truth, in
fact) *hakiika*, to which may be
added the phrases *babu shakka*
or *babu shak, babu wawa, da
gaskia*; 2. as affirmative em-
phatic particle *ai, aje, ashe*, or
ashi, aiwa or *ewa, anche* or
enche, madala, dai, the last is
enclitic following the word
which it is desired to empha-
size; 3. interj. of doubt or
surprise *to! aje! anche! enche!*
Thus, in question and answer,
indeed? indeed! *aje? aje! = da
gaskia? da gaskia!*

india-rubber, n. *danko* or *dunko*,
gumji.

indicate, v. *nuna, nuni, gaya*.

indifference, n. (= carelessness)
lalachi.

indigence, n. *talauchi*.

indigent, adj. *talaka*, pl. *talakarwa*;
an i. person *maritalaka*.

indigo, n. *baba, shuni* or *juni*;
spec. the second annual crop
of i. *kwosusu*; an indigo dye-
pit *marin(n)a*, pl. *marin(n)ai*.

indistinct, to become, intr. v.
dushi.

indistinctness, n. *dushiwa*.

industrious labourer, n. *ma-
aikachi*.

infant, n. (up to one year old)
jinjiri, jariri or *shariri**.

infantry, coll. n. *kirma*; infantry
leader *sarikin kirma*.

infidel, n. *kafiri*, pl. *kafirai* and
kafirawa.

infidelity, n. (in a religious sense)
kafrichi.

infirm, adj. *kumama*.

infirmity, n. *kumamanchi*.

inflict, tr. v. to i. blows *buga*,
bubuga; cf. beat; to i.
punishment *yin wohal(l)a*,
palashe.

influence, n. (= authority, power)
*hakumi**.

inform, v. (= to bring intelligence,
to apprise) *laberta, ba labári*;
to i. against *sare, sara* or
*zara**; cf. accuse.

information, n. (= news, account)
labári.

informant, n. *maisara*, pl. *masu-
sara*.

ingrate, n. *maibutulchi*, pl. *masu-
butulchi*.

ingratitude, n. *butulchi* or *butul-
shi**.

inhabitant, n. *maizamna*, pl.
masuzamna, mazamni.

inherit, v. *gáda* or *gádo, gáji* or
gáje.

inheritance, n. *gádo*.

iniquity, n. *mugunta, kita* or
kita; cf. evil.

injure, tr. v. l. (= to damage) *bata*,
bache; 2. (= to wrong) *jima*.

injustice, n. *tsuláma*.
ink, n. *adawa* or *tadawa*.
ink-blot, n. *dole*, *dungule*.
inn, n. (i.e. a khan or halting place for the night) *mashid(d)i**.
innkeeper, n. *maimashid(d)i**.
innocent, adj. *babu laifi*; an i. person *maraslaifi*.
innumerable, adj. expr. by phr. *fi kedaya*, e.g. he has innumerable books *shina da litatafi su fi kedaya*.
inquire, v. *tambaiu* or *tambaya* (*tabi* D 45); *yin tambaia*, *yin binchik(k)i*.
inquiry, n. *tambaia* or *tambaya*, *binchik(k)i**.
insane, adj. see **mad**.
insect, n. *tsutsa**; spec. minute, white, biting i. *kolkot(t)a*, *kwalkwat(t)a* or *kwarkwat(t)a*; small biting i. *kurdi**; i. found in kola-nuts *sankara*; a black, winged i. *kurugunguma*, pl. *kurugungumai*.
insects, coll. *sususi**; (F 109).
inside, n. *chik(k)i*; on the i. of the house *chik(k)in gid(d)a*; cf. in.
insight, n. (= clear perception) *lura*.
insipid, adj. *lami*, *da lami*, *babu zaki*.
insolent, adj. *tsiwa*, *tsewa*, *da tsiwa*.
instantly, adv. *nan da nan*, *koyanzu*.
instead of, prep. *gurubin**, *wurin*, *big(e)ri**, e.g. instead of it *gurubinsa*, *guns**, *wurinsa*, *bigerinsu*.

instruct, v. 1. (= teach) *koiya* or *koya*, e.g. instruct me in reading *ka koiya mani karatu*; 2. (of religious instruction especially that combining reproof and threatening) *foro*.
instruction, n. *foro*, *wa'atsi** or *wa'atsu**, *alama** or *halama** pl. *alamomi**; as these words refer to religious teaching, i. in a general sense must be expr. by verbs etc. e.g. a man of no i. *wanda bai san komi ba*; he received much i. from them in literature *suka koiya masa karatu dayawa*.
instrument, n. 1. (= implement) *kaya* or *kaia*, pl. *kayayeki*, *makami*; 2. (musical) *kiddi* or *kidda*, any kind of wind i. *bushe bushe*; spec. a kind of stringed i. *machirkia**; wind i. played by court musician *pampame*; wind i., flute *sarewa*; wind i. resembling bagpipes *algaita* or *algaitu*, player on a musical i. *makid(d)i*.
integrity, n. (= honesty) *gaskia*.
intelligence, n. 1. (= mental power), cf. ability; 2. (= news) *labári*, e.g. let me give you i. of the war *em baka labarin yaki*.
intelligent, adj. *gon(n)i*; cf. able, ability.
intend, v. *kul(l)a**, e.g. I i. going *na kulla taffia*; cf. seq.
intention, n. (= purpose) *kul(l)i*, e.g. I have the i. of going *ina*

da kullin taffia; (= fixed application) *ania*.
intentionally, adv. *da gangan*.
interfere, v. *kormotto*; to i. with tr. v. *tare* or *tarie*, *han(n)a**.
interference, n. *shesheg(g)i**; i. with what does not concern one *karambani*.
interior, n. (= the inside of anything) *chik(k)i*.
interpret, v. 1. (= to translate) *juya da magana* or *juya magana*, *yin fasara* (*fasala* or *fasali**); he interprets *ya rabbi fasalinsa*; 2. (= to explain) *yin fasara*, *waye*.
interpretation, n. (= both translation and explanation) *fasara fasala* or *fasali**, *wayewa*.
interpreter, n. *mayayi**.
interrogative. This sense is expr. by a change in the intonation or by *ko* placed at the beginning or end or at both beginning and end of a clause or by adding the phr. *ko ba hakka ba*, e.g. do you understand Hausa? *ko kuna jin magana hausa ko* or *kuna jin magana hausa ko ba hakka ba*.
interruption, n. *fashi*.
intestine, n. spec. the large i. *tumburkuma*; the intestines coll. *hanji*.
into, prep. *chik(k)in* or *dag(g)a chik(k)in*, e.g. he fell i. the water *ya fadi chik(k)in rua*; he was turned or changed i. a sheep *ya sauya tumbia*.
intoxicant, n. *barazza* or *barassa*,

this word is also applied specially to gin.

intoxicating drink, n. *bummi*; spec. an i. drink made from the palm tree (*tukurua*) *bummi, bam*; an i. drink made from guinea corn *gia* or *giya*; an i. drink made with honey, salt and water *buz*a; an i. drink made from a shrub of the same name *zakami* or *zakami*; place of i. drinks *mashaya*.

intoxication, n. *shangia*.

introduction, a letter of, n. *bishara*.

invocation, n. i.e. to God, *zikri* or *zikiri**, *safirchi**, we make i. *muna zikri*.

iron, n. *karifi*, pl. *karafa* or *karifuna*; spec. i. wrought into cups, bright i. *zub(b)i*; to burn with hot i. *lala*s.

iron, adj. *na karifi*, fem. *ta karifi*, with plurals *na karifi*, e.g. i. bars *sanduna na karifi*.

iron ore, n. *tam(m)a*, *matamachi*; i. dross *kazin tam(m)a*.

irons, leg-, n. *giger*, *malwa*, F 186.

irrigated, garden, n. *lambru*.

irritable, adj. *da zafin rai*.

irritate, tr. v. e.g. he i. me *ya yi mani fushi*.

irritated, particip. adj. *husanche**.

is, subst. v. 1. (= simple copula) with masc. subject *ne*, with fem. *che*, with either *ke*; 2. (implying real existence = there is) *akwoi*; *ina*; *ke* with *nan*, e.g. there is a book which I know *woni litafi ke nan da na san-*

(n)i; *ayi mani*; for the pl. *sunyi mani* is found; cf. be. island, n. *gungu**, pl. *gunguna**, *chibiri**.

isolate, tr. v. *yin kad(d)aita*.

it, pers. pron. neut. *ya*, fem. *ta*; separate and emphatic forms *shi*, fem. *ita*; its *-shi*, *-sa*; *nasa* or *nai*, fem. *tasa*, *tas* or *tai*.

itch, n. *kaikai*, *kaswa* or *kazua*, *kurji* q.v.; one who has the i. *maikurji*.

itching, n. spec. i. disease at roots of toes and fingers *gushagushi*; i. sore *kushekusheya**; a prickly plant that causes i. *karara*.

ivory, n. *hak(k)orin giwa* or *haurin giwa*; a piece of i. *haurin giwa*.

jacinth, n. *yaikutu*, F 227.

jackal, n. *dila*, pl. *diloli*; *kalkeche*; *karambik(k)i(?)*.

jaded, to be, v. *gaje* and *gaji*.

jail, n. *kurkuku*.

jam, tr. v. (= to press) *mache*, *machi* or *matse*.

jar, small, n. *simbali*, *shimbali* or *sinbali*, *tulu**.

jaw, n. *kum(m)atu*; fig. jaws *baki*.

jaw-bone, n. *mukamike*, pl. *mukamikai*.

jealousy, n. *kishi* or *kishia*, pl. *kishiyoyi*, *hasada* or *has(s)ada*.

jeer at, v. *baa* or *yin baa*; *ba daria*, e.g. they jeered at us *suka bamu daria*.

jelly-fish, n. *kawora(?)*.

jerboa, n. (*dipus*) *kurege*, pl.

kuragai; spec. a species of tailless rat prob. allied to the former *reme*.

Jerusalem, pr. n. *birnin alkud-dus**.

jester, n. (= buffoon) *babambade*, *bade**; (= foolish trifler) *wawa*.

Jesus, *yasuu*, *yashuu**; cf. *isa*.

jet-black, adj. *bak(k)i ker(r)in*.

Jew, gent. n. *yahudi*, D 29, pl. *yahudawa*.

jewel, n. *yaikutu**, *duchi**.

join, v. 1. tr. *gama*; to j. together (e.g. by filling up a gap) *saji*; to j. heads together (in consultation or forming a plan) *gama kai*; 2. intr. (= to fall in with anyone by overtaking or meeting him) *gamu* or *gamo* constr. with prep. *da*; *tarda* and *tarasda*, e.g. we joined him *mun gamu da shi* or *mun tarasdashi*.

joiner, n. (carpenter) *masasaki*, pl. *masasaka*.

joint, n. *ido**, pl. *idanu** and *idandanu**; ankle j. *idon sau*, *idon kaffa*; wrist j. *idon hanu* (also = knuckle); *godawa**; j. of scissors *kwarmi*, pl. *kwarmu*; to be out of j. *gochi* and *goche*.

joints, coll. (of the body) *gab(b)obi*; to suffer from a disease in the j. *turgude**.

jostle, tr. v. *tunkuda*, *ture*.

journey, n. *taf(f)ia*, pl. *tafifia*; provisions for a j. *guzuri*; to make provision for a j. *yin guzuri*.

journeying, n. *taf(f)iawa*.

joy, n. (the inward feeling) *farin chik(k)i*; (coupled with the outward expression) *murna*; to experience j., to rejoice *faraa*, *yin* or *jin murna*; there shall be j. *anamurna*; to feel j. *yin faraa*; there shall be j. *anafaraa*, F232; *kalkili*, B163; a cause for j. *abin murna*; a cry of j. *guda* or *gudu*; an exclamation of j. used by women dancing *gada*; a chant or shout of j. *rerereu*; to cause j. *bada murna*.

judge, n. *alkali*, pl. *alkalai*.

judge, v. 1. gen. (= to look into, discern) *bibia*; in a weaker sense (= I imagine, think) *tamaḥa* or *yin tamaḥa*, e.g. I j. that he will hinder us *ina tamaḥa zai hannamu*; 2. (of a judge) *yin sheria*, *kāda*.

judgment, n. 1. gen. *bibia*; 2. (of law and justice) *sheria*, *hakumchi* or *hukumchi*, *alḥaki*, *hisabi*, *ameri*; the j. day *ranan* or *ran gobe* (lit. the day of tomorrow), *gobe*; j. seat *karaga*.

jug, n. *tulu**, *randa**; cf. *jar*.

jump, intr. v. *tuma*; *dir(r)a*, *dir(r)o*, *dera*, *dero* or *dir(r)i*; *tsal(l)i* or *tsul(l)i*, *tsal(l)ache* or *sal(l)achi**; to j. backwards and forwards *wur(r)a*; to j. down *gangara* or *gangari*; also the various forms of *dir(r)a*.

just, adj. *da gaskia*, *daidai*; of things (=lawful) *halal*; a j. man *mutum gaske* (*gaskia* or *na gaskia*).

just, adv. as in expression j. (now) *ko (yanzu)*.

justice, n. 1. (= administration of the law) *sheria*; 2. (= moral right) *gaskia*.

justify, tr. v. 1. (= prove to be in the right, to vindicate as true) *gaskanta*; 2. (of a judge etc. to declare in the right, to ascribe right to) *bada gaskia*, pass. he was justified *ambadashi gaskia*.

Kano, *kano* the chief commercial town in the W. Soudan.

keen, adj. 1. (= sharp-edged) *da kaiḥi*; 2. (= of acute intelligence) *mailura*.

keep, n. (= retain, hold) *rik(k)e*, *rik(k)a* or *rik(k)i*; (= to tend, as sheep, cattle) *kiwo*; to k. back (=detain) *zami*, cf. B113; to k. carefully *kiyaye*; to k. one off *taushe* or *tausa*; to k. a promise *chik(k)a magana*, *kama magana*, *kul(l)a bis(s)a magana*.

keeping, participial n. k. back *zamiwa*; a place suitable for k. anything in *maanfani*.

kerchief, n. *maharma*; (woman's) *kal(l)abi*.

kernel, n. *kwara*.

kettle, n. *shintali*, *sintali* or *shantali*, pl. *shintalai*; an earthen k. *karifi** or *karipi**.

key, n. *makubli*, pl. *makublai*, *dan makubli*; *makul(l)i**.

kick, tr. v. *shure* or *jure**, e.g. *rakumi ya shureni*; *habri* or

- harbi* used of horses ; to k. away *hanbare*.
- kid**, n. *dan akwia*, pl. *yan* (or *yayan*) *akwia*.
- kidney**, n. *gidibi* or *kidibi*, pl. *gidiba* or *kidiba* ; *koda** or *kwoda*.
- kill**, n. *ka(s)she*, *ka(s)shi* or *kis(s)a* with a shortened form *kass*, e.g. there was killed **Kakumi** whom he loved *anan akakasshi kakumi da ya ki sonshi* G 2 ; *fauchi**.
- killing**, adj. (= murderous) *ka-sau**.
- kind**, n. *iri*, pl. *irare*, *laumi* D 78 ; a certain k. (species) of fish *wani irin kifi*.
- kind**, adj. *keanu**, *da keanu**, *na-gari**.
- kindle**, tr. and intr. *toi*, *towi*, *toya*, *toye* with related *tuya*, the last used thus, he kindled the lamp *ya tuya fitilla* ; *fura*, intr. *furu*, e.g. they kindled the fire *suka fura wuta*, the fire was kindled *wuta ta furu* ; *has(s)a*, *haz(z)a* or *az(z)a* tr. he kindled the fire *ya has(s)a wuta*, q.v.
- kindness**, n. (= goodness of heart) *nagerta* ; (= favour, benevolence) *alheri*, *chik(k)i daia*, *gáfara* and *gaferta*, *nima*, *naima* ; an act of k. *keauta*, *aikin gáfara* ; to do an act of k. *yin alheri*, *yin keanu*, e.g. they did me an act of k. *sun yi mani keanu*.
- kindred**, n. *kabila**, *dengi*, *denga* or *deg(g)i* (as a coll. n.) and its pl. *dengoyi*.
- king**, n. *sariki* or *sarki*, pl. *sara-kuna* or *sarikai*, *sultan** ; a king's son *turaki*, *yerima*, q.v. ; young son of a k. *gimba*, pl. *gimbayi*.
- kingdom**, n. *sarauta* or *sarota* ; to gain possession of a k. *chin sarauta* ; cf. accede 3.
- kiss**, n. *sumba** ; see seq.
- kiss**, tr. v. *tsosa* and *tsotsa* ; k. hands to *sumba*, e.g. we k. hands to the stone *nuna sumban dutsi* B 164.
- kitchen**, n. *madaffa*, pl. *madaffai*, *wurin daffua*.
- kite**, n. (the bird) *shafu* or *shahu*.
- knead together**, tr. v. *gariwoya*.
- knee**, n. *guiwa* (or *gwiwa*), pl. *guiwaye* and *guiwoye*.
- kneel**, intr. v. *durkushi*, *dilkushi* or *dik(k)ushi**, related forms are *durugus(s)a* or *durgus(s)a* = to k. as in prayer ; to k. down or prostrate oneself *gurufani* and *yin gurufani*.
- knife**, n. *wuka*, pl. *wukake*, *konga* ; to sharpen or whet a knife *gerta* (or *wasu*) *wuka* ; spec. a small k. *almoza*, *kududura** ; a kind of k. with blade projecting backwards *kangar* or *kanga*, a k. carried up the sleeve, attached by a leathern ring *wuka hanu* cf. *hanu* ; a sort of missile k. *gario*, q.v.
- knit**, v. *sharaba**.
- knock**, v. gen. *buga* ; to k. against intr. *gochi* and *goche*, tr. as the

hand against a wall *gumberi*, *gobúri*, *gobre* or *gubri*; to k. at a door *buya kofa*, *kwan-kwas(s)a*; to k. down *tankade*.

knot, n. *kubli* or *kulli*.

know, v. *san(n)i*, *shin(n)a*, e.g. I know *na shin(n)a* or *na san(n)i*; tok. clearly *shaidani*, *fahimta**; to k. and understand well *sansanche*; to k. certainly *tabbache*; related to the last is *tabbeta* used in a similar way, e.g. do you k. for certain? *ka tabbeta*.

knowledge, n. *asanchi* or *azanchi*, *lura*.

known, to make, v. *ambachi*, *gaya*, e.g. have you ever heard this? If you do not know it, I will make it k. to you *ko ka tabba jin wonan idan ba ka sannu ba zan gaya maka*.

knuckle, n. *idon hanu*.

kola-nut, n. *goro*, pl. *gourra**; spec. a variety of k.-n. from Gwanja *atarus*, from Yoruba *ibi*; a bad k.-n. *gobro* fem. *gobrua*; a large k.-n. *goria*; half of a k.-n. *bare*; packing placed round k.-nuts *fufu*; insect found in the k.-n. *sankara*.

koran, n. *kurán*, e.g. the purpose of the whole of this song is (to commend) the k. *dalili worga waka duka ga kurán* F 26.

koran, text of the, n. *nassí**.

labour, n. *aiki*, pl. *ayuyuka*, *ayuku*, *aikoki* or *aikuna*; farm

labour *aikin gona*; labour pains *wohal(l)an haifua*.

labour, v. *yin aiki*; *aiki*.

labourer, n. *maai*, fem. *maai-ki*, pl. *masuarki*.

lack, n. *reshi* or *ra(s)shi*; l. of goods *tsia**.

lack, tr. v. *tabe**, *ras(s)a*, also prec. with *da*, e.g. they l. money *suna da reshin kurdi*, cf. seq.

lacking, adj. 1. *reshi*, e.g. l. strength *reshin karifi*, l. health *reshin lafia*; 2. by prefixing *maras*, e.g. l. sense *marashankali*.

lad, n. *yaro*, pl. *yara*.

ladder, n. *mahayi**, *karangama*, *tsani**; wooden l. *matákara*.

laden, participial adj. *labche*.

laid down, participial adj. *sab-keke*.

lake, n. *kogi*, pl. *koguna*, *kogina* and *kogai*.

lamb, n. *dan tumbia*, pl. *yan tumbia*; the paschal l. *ragon laya*.

lame, adj. *guragu* or *gurgu*, pl. *gurágu*, *maigwami*, pl. *masugwami*, *amurgude*, *makasari**, fem. *makasaria**.

lame, to be intr. v. *yin gurgunta*, cf. seq.; *turgude**; he goes l. *yana taffia takwoshi*.

lameness, n. *gurgunchi*, *gurgunta*, *gurugunta*, and *gurmunta*, *gwami*, *takwoshi* or *tarkoshi*, *din-gishi*, *kage**.

lament, v. *yin kuka*, e.g. he lamented *ya yi kuka* G 2; cf. seq.

lamentation, n. *kuka*; to make l. *tak(k)aba*; cf. cry.

lamp, n. *fatilla* or *fitilla*, pl. *fatillu*, *fatillai* or *fatiloli*; l. oil *main fatilla*; he lit the l. *ya tuya fitilla*; we are working by lamp light *muna yin aiki da fatilla*.

lance, n. *mashi* or *maji*, pl. *masusuka*.

land, n. (phys.) *kas(s)a*, pl. *kas(s)ashi* and *kas(s)asa*; (= one's country) *kas(s)a* and *gari*, pl. *garurua* and *garigaru*.

landing place, n. *mafichi**

language, n. 1. (= speech) *magana*; 2. (= tongue of particular nation) *magana*; to speak the Hausa l. *yin magana hausa*; *halshi* or *harshi*, pl. *halshina*, *hausa**, pl. *harata**; 3. (= literary expression) *karatu*.

larder, n. *maianfanin nama**

large, adj. *baba*, pl. *mainya*, *girima*; a l. book *bab(b)an litafi* or *litafi baba*.

large, to become, intr. v. *girima* and *yin girima*.

last, the, n. (= final state or case) *makarshe*, *makari*, *makare*, *makara*; *karshе* used adverbially = at the last, at last.

last, adj. *nabaya*, fem. *tabaya*; phr. the l. day *ranan* (or *ran*) *gobe*, *gobe*; the l. sleep (= death) *makarin berichi*; (= l. of a preceding series) l. night *jia da dere*; l. month *watan jia*; l. year *bara*; at l. adv. *yauyau* or *yoyo*, *karshе*.

last, to, intr. v. *yin karfo*, *karfo**

lasting, n. (= state of continuance) *dad(d)awa* or *ded(d)ewa*.

lasting, adj. *matabbata**, *mada-wami*; long l. *madawami*.

late evening, n. of time *magarub* or *maguriba*; later evening *lisha*.

late, to be, v. *yin yauchi**, e.g. he was l. in arriving *ya yi yauchin zakua*; to be l. in doing anything *makara*; one who is l. *maimakara*.

lateness, n. (= delay) *yauchi*.

laths, thin wooden, coll. *katamba**

laud, tr. v. *yin kirari*, *yin yab(b)o* also with pres. form *na*, e.g. I laud thee *ina yab(b)onka*.

laudation, n. *kirari*, *yab(b)o*.

laugh, intr. v. *yin daria*; to cause to l. *ba* or *bada daria*, e.g. *ya bani daria* he made me l.; to l. at *zunde* and *yin zunde*.

laughter, n. *daria*, *harerewa**

law, n. gen. *sheria*, to decide in l. *raba sheria*; (relig. = ordinance) *sun(n)a* or *sunna**; a prohibitory l. *doka**

lawful, adj. *halal*, *halas* or *halla-ta**

lay, tr. v. *sa*; to l. eggs *aje kwoi*; to l. aside *sa*, *aje*; to l. down *kwanta*; to l. a thing down again *mayes*; to l. hold of or on *kama*.

laziness, n. *ragonchi*, *ragaita*.

lazy, adj. *lalafa*, (= idle) *rago*, *mairago*, *mairagaita*.

lead, v. *bada hainya*, *ja**

lead, n. (the metal) *dalma*; l. for bullets *arsas*.

leader, n. *baba*, *tunari**, also *uba*, pl. *ubane* and *ubanai*, e.g. their l. *babansu*; l. of a fight *uban yaki*; spec. l. of infantry *sarikin kirma*; l. of caravan (= chief) *jaji*; (= the conductor who precedes it) *jagaba* or *shugaba*, pl. *shugabai*; (= the one that walks behind it) *maduga*, pl. *madugawa*; l. in prayer *limam**, pl. *limami**.

leaf, n. (of tree) *tofo*, pl. *tofuna*. *waraka**, *gainya*, pl. *gainye* or *gainyaye*, *dainyen itache*; l. of a book *waraka*; spec. an edible l. also used for thatching *fitta*, see also *fufu*.

leafless tree, n. *kwabri* or *kwauri*, pl. *kwabruka* and *kwobruka*.

league, n. (= alliance) *gaya*.

leak, intr. v. *zub(b)a*, *zub(b)o* and *suba*.

lean, adj. *arame*, *ramame*, fem. *ramamia*, pl. *ramamu*, *guzuma**; an old l. object (applied to animals and also to women) *guzuma*.

lean, to be or become, v. *yin rama*, *rama*.

lean, intr. v. l. against *jingina*, *jingine*, *tangana**; to l. back on horse *zami*; to l. upon *dangana*, *dogare*; the last also fig. to l. upon in trust or confidence, e.g. we l. on thee *mun dogareka* B 20.

leanness, n. *rama*.

leap, intr. v. *tuma*, *dir(r)a*, *dir(r)o*, *dera*, *dero*, *dir(r)i*, *zariu*, *fadi*

(lit. fall), e.g. we leaped among them *mun fadi chikkinsu*.

learn, v. *koiyo* or *koyo*, *sanas*; to l. by heart *samu harda**.

learned, adj. *karanta**, *maiakaratu*; very l. *maiakaratu dayawa*; a l. man *malami*, pl. *malamai*; a l. woman *malama**.

leather, n. *kirigi*, *fata**; spec. strips of l. coll. *gunda*; strips of black l. coll. *kwaro*.

leather-dresser, n. *majemi* or *maiijima*.

leathern, case for book, n. *guf(f)aka*.

leave, tr. v. *ber(r)i* or *ber*, *raba* and *rabu*, constr. with *da*, e.g. we left Kano *mun rabu da kano*; to l. a thing and come back *ber(r)o*; to l. a path or track *sau** *hainya*; to l. a thing as it is *kotakwana*; to l. behind *ber(r)i* or *ber*, to l. off *daina*, *ber(r)i da...*; to l. off work till to-morrow *kotakwana**.

leaven, n. *yami*, *kulu*; spec. l. made from the acid pulp of the tamarind *tsamia*.

leaves, coll. *kunen itache*, *dainyen itache*, *gainyen itache*.

left, adj. 1. (= remaining, remainder, rest) *saura*, *sudi*, *kingi*, e.g. there is little l. *ya yi saura kaddan*; 2. (of position) the l. *hauni*, *hagu* or *hagum*; the l. hand *hanu na hauni*; l.-handed *bahago*.

left, part. *berere*, fem. *berera*, pl. *bereru*.

leg, n. *kaffa*, pl. *kafafu* and *kafafe*, *chinia*, pl. *chinyoi*; l. bone *kobrin kaffa*; calf of the l. *sharaba*; bent l. (a disease) *gwami*; l. bent by disease *kage**; with bent legs (i.e. through disease) *guragu* or *gurgu*, pl. *guragu*, which also = without legs; to bend the l. *tunkushe*.

leg-irons, n. *malwa*, *giger*.

lemon, n. *lemu*.

lend, v. *bada aro*; cf. loan.

length, n. 1. (of space and time) *tsawa*, *tsawo* or *sawo*, *tsaiyi*, *tsayi* or *tsai*; *tsawanta*; 2. (= long continuance), e.g. length of life *yawan rai*.

leopard, n. *damis(s)a*, pl. *damis(s)ai*.

leper, n. *kuturu*, pl. *kutare*, *maikuturta**, *maikuturchi**.

leprosy, n. *kuturchi* or *kuturta*, *albaraş**; spec. a mutilating form of l. *machiri*; white l. *albaraş**; a lizard whose bite is reputed to cause l. *kutu*.

leprous, adj. *akuturche*, *maikuturta*.

less, adv. 1. (= minus in computing) *shawora*, *buss*, *gaira*, e.g. *arbaa shawora daia* = 3000, *metin goma buss* = *metin gaira goma* = 200 - 10 i.e. 190; 2. (= Engl. neg. suff. -less) neg. prefix *maras-* e.g. shameless *maraskumia*.

less, much, comp. adv. *bal(le)*, *bershi*, e.g. this man was not able to walk much less take

up his load *wonan ba ya iya yin taffia balle shi dauke kayansa*.

less, to grow or make l. see seq.

lessen, v. tr. and intr. *reg(g)i*, *ragi* or *rage*; one who lessens *maireg(g)i*; tr. *kasashe*; intr. *ragu*, *tawaya* or *tauwi*, *kasasda*; the waters are lessening *ruaye suna ragu*; cf. seq.

lessening, participial n. *ragua*.

lest, conj. (= for fear that, that... not) *kad(da)*, e.g. he took the medicine lest he should die *ya hade magani kadda shi mutu*; *don kad(da)*.

let, tr. v. (= allow) *ber(r)i* or *ber*; to l. alone *ber(r)i*, *ber*, *kiale*; to l. down *sabka*, *sabki* or *sapka*, also (with *da*) *sabkas* or *sapkas*, *shid(da)*, e.g. I l. down the load *na sabka kaya* or *na sabkas da kaya* or *na shid(da) da kaya*; particip. l. down *sabkeke*; to l. go *sal(l)ame*, *saki*; to l. loose *saki*, *kunche*; to l. out to (of hire etc.) *sufuri*, *sufurchi*, *yin sufuri* or *yin sufurchi*; N.B. the particle *en* (= that) is sometimes elliptically used to express l., e.g. l. us go for a walk *en mu taffi yawo*; l. me follow you *em bika*.

letter, n. 1. (= epistle) *wotika* or *wochika**, *takarda*, pl. *takardu*, *laya**; 2. (= a sign of the alphabet) *hurufi* or *harifi**, pl. *harufai*.

lettuce, n. spec. a sort of water l. *kainua*.

level, adj. and adv. *sosai*; it is l.

ya yi sosai.

liar, n. *makariachi*.

liberality, n. *baiwa*.

liberate, tr. v. see **free**.

liberation, from slavery, n. *diyauchi* or *diyanchi*.

liberty, n. *yanchi*.

lice, coll. n. *kurji** or *kureji**, pl. *kurareji**; also *kirchi**, *gurje**, *girje** or *urji**, *kolkot(t)a** or *kwalkwat(t)a**.

licentiousness, n. *fasishwa**.

lichen, n. *toto* or *tantau*.

lick, v. *las(s)a* or *la(s)she*, used fig. of flame; to l. the hand *tandewa* or *tundewa*.

lie, intr. v. to l. down *kwanche*; to l. down to sleep *kwana* and *kwanta*; a place to l. down *makwanche* or *makwonche*; to l. in wait *yin fak(k)o*; a place to l. in wait *mafak(k)a*.

lie, n. *karia*, *afko**.

lie, intr. v. (= to tell lies) *yenke karia*.

life, n. *rai*, pl. *raiu* and *raiuka*; in a more general sense (= Engl. time) *zamani* or *zamani*, *yayi*, e.g. during the life (= in the time) of the prophet *zamanin annabi* = *ga yayin annabi*; to come or come back to l. *raiu*; coming back to l. participial n. *raiuwa*; to restore to l. *raia* or *ra-ya*.

lift up, tr. v. *chira*, *chire*, *chiro* or *tsira*, *tsire*, *tsiro*, *tada*, *tsaida*, *daukaka*, *dokaka* or *dokake*;

spec. to l. up a heavy weight with both hands *sunguma*.

ligature, n. *rawani**, pl. *rawuna**.

light, adj. (= not heavy) *shakup, sak(k)ai*.

light, adj. (= full of light) *maihaske*.

light, n. *haske*, pl. *haskoki*, *annuri*; cf. seq.

light, tr. v. 1. (= to give light) *haskaka**, *bada haske*, e.g. the moon gives light *wata shina bada haske*; 2. (= to set alight) to l. a fire *has(s)a* (*hazza* or *azza*) *wuta*, *fura wuta*, *yada wuta*; to l. a lamp *tuya fatilla*.

light upon, intr. v. *tsaya*, e.g. I lit upon this book *ni na tsaya ga litafi nan*.

lighten, tr. v. 1. (= to illuminate) *haskaka**; 2. (of the lightning) *wolka* or *yin wolkia*.

lightning, n. *wolkia*; like l. (i.e. at immeasurable speed) *ya wolkia** F 155.

like, adv. *tamka*, *tamkar*, *tamkan*, *tamkat* or *tankat*, *kam(m)a*, *kam(m)an* or *kamal*, e.g. l. a room *kamal daki*; *wa**, e.g. l. a hair (in fineness) *wa gashi* F 144; *ya*, *yi*, *yina*, e.g. l. lightning *ya wolkia* F 155; l. Abubekr *yi abubekr* A 82; l. a child *yina jinjiri* A 81; *ta'ada** A 21; adj. *tanfari* or *tamfari* A 76; the following are substantival (as in Engl. one's l.) *tsewa**, *kama*, pl. *kamanu*, e.g. his l. *kamansa*; cf. likeness; what is l. to some-

- thing *maimeki*, *wani*, e.g. l. him *waninsa*, *shig(g)e**, e.g. l. them *shig(g)ensu*, *kotanchi*, e.g. l. this *kotanchin hak(k)a*, *michali** or *misali*, cf. seq.
- like, as, adv. *tankarda* or *tankarda*, *kam(m)a* or *kamada* and *kamanda*, *michali** or *misali**, *wa**.
- like, to make, tr. v. *daidaita*; pass. is made l. unto *akotanchi*.
- like, tr. v. *so*, *marimari*, e.g. I l. my friend *ina son abokina*; I l. him *na maida kamna gareshi*.
- likened to, tr. v. *kotanchi* or *kwatanchi*.
- likeness, n. *kama*, pl. *kamanu*, *michali**, *misali**, *supa**, *wani**, *kutumshi**, *tsewa**, e.g. his l. *kamansa = supansa = waninsa = misalinsa*; he gave me his l. (= his portrait) *ya bani kamansa*.
- likewise, adv. *kua*, *ma**, e.g. I love her she l. loves me *ina sonta ita kua tana sona*.
- limbs, coll. (of body) *gab(b)obi*, e.g. it will break their bones, it will cut all their l. *shi karya kasshi shi yenke duk gab(b)obi*, F 175.
- lime, n. (the fruit) *lemu*.
- limit, n. *iyaka* or *iaka*.
- line, n. (= a row, series) *jera*, *jere* or *jire**; in a l. *ajera* or *ajere*; spec. a l. formed for prayer *saffu*, a broad blue l. in cloth *saki*, *soki*, or *soaki*; cf. lines.
- lineage, n. *zuria**, *usali**.
- linen, n. *alkamura*.
- lines, coll. *zane*; to draw l. *zana* or *zani*.
- linger, intr. v. *dad(d)a* also pronounced *deddi*; to l. about *lalata*.
- lingerer, at home in time of war, n. *kazum*.
- lintel, n. *almanani**.
- lion, n. *zaki*, fem. *zakainya*, pl. *zakoki*, *firdi**, male l. *toron zaki*; young l. *dan zaki*; spec. a red l. *alkumali**; strong l. *wandara**; the adj. *gadanga* strong is specially used as an epithet of the lion.
- lioness, n. *zakainya*.
- lip, n. *lebo*, pl. *lebuna*.
- list, n. (written) *zumami*, *takarda*, pl. *takardu*.
- listen, v. (=to hear with attention) *saurara*, *sorara* or *jurare**; to l. intently with bowed head *karkat(t)a* and *kakartsa* used with or without *kunu* (ear).
- listener, n. *majia*.
- listens, He who, adj. (epithet of God) *sami'u**.
- little, adj. *karami*, fem. *karama* or *karamia*, pl. *karamai*, *kanaana* and *kankana*; *kankani* or *kankane*, f. *kankana*, pl. *kankanu* or *kankana*; substantively (= a l., also few) *kad(d)an*, *sum(m)a*, *sam(m)a* *sam(m)a*, *kalilan**, *tsarari**; very l. *kad(d)an kad(d)an*, I ate but l. but very l. *ban chi ba sai kaddan sai kaddan*

kaddan; wait a l. while *jima kaddan* or *jimkaddan*, to take very l. of *tsakara* or *tsakura*.

live, intr. v. *yin rai*.

liver, n. *hanta* or *anta*, *kidibi*, *koda** or *kwoda*.

living, adj. *da rai*, e.g. this is not a l. child *woga ba dia da rai che*.

living One, the, adj. epithet of God *maihaya**.

lizard, n. *kadam gari*, *gusa**, spec. a kind of l. *kulba**, large venomous l. (*draconina*?) *dam(m)u*, small venomous l. *tsaka*, small black-headed l. *goguware*, small tree-l., supposed to cause leprosy *kutu*.

load, n. *kaya* or *kaia*, pl. *kayayeki*; heavy l. *adila* or *adilan kaya*, *alaro*, a small addition to a carrier's l. *dauria*, to get ready a l. *gara kaya*, to pack up a l. *labda*, I took his l. *na taboshi*.

load, tr. v. *labda*; to l. a gun *dora* (or *chik(k)a bindiga*).

loadstone, n. *mujin karifi*.

loaf, n. of salt or sugar *kantu*.

loan, n. *aro*, *bashi**, *ramche**, cf. lend; one who gives money etc. on l. *mabachi*, pl. *mabata*.

loathe, tr. v. *tsantsani* and *yin tsantsani*.

locality, n. *wuri*, pl. *wurare*.

lock, n. *makulli**.

lock, tr. v. *kubli*, to lock up, id.

locust, n. *fara*, pl. *farori* or *faruna*; spec. small l. *dungo**, large l. *babe*, fem. *babania*, black l. *birdudua*, black l.

which flies at night *bardinuwa* or *farandere*; an insect like the l. *taki*, pl. *takoki*.

locust tree, n. *doriuwa* or *dorowa*, pl. *dorowaye*.

lodge, intr. v. *sabka*, *sabki* or *sapka*.

lodging, n. *mashid(d)i*.

lodging-place, n. *mashid(d)i*, *masabki* or *masapki*.

log, n. (of wood) *itache* and *iche*, spec. l. of wood fastened to feet of slaves as a punishment *turayi**, l. of wood tied to head as punishment for thieving *kangalai*; cf. dried.

loins, n. *karfata* or *karifata*, *mara**.

loneliness, n. *kiwa* or *kewa*.

long, adj. 1. (= of considerable length) *dogo*, fem. *dogwa*, pl. *dogaye*, *da tsaiyi*; 2. (of dimension) expr. by n. *tsawa*, *tsawo* etc. e.g. it is seven cubits long *tsawansa kamu bokki* cf. length; 3. (of time) how l. ? *tunyaushe*, l. ago *tuntuni*, l. since *tundadewa*; l. lasting, adj. *maidawami*; (of space) l. way off *dag(g)a nesa*, *da nesa* and *nesa*.

long for, v. *tuski* or *tuske*; to l. after absent friend *begi*.

longing, n. (also = l. for) *kodai* or *kwadai*; evil l. *guri*.

look at, v. *duba* or *dubo*, *dauro* or *doro*, *kal(l)o* and *yin kal(l)o*, l. at this! *ga shi wonan*, to l. attentively at *tsokachi*; to l. steadfastly at *xuru**; to l. be

- hind *woiya*, *woida*, *woishe*, also *woiwoia* and *waiwoia*; to l. carefully into *bibia**; to l. closely so as to distinguish *rerebi*; to l. for (= seek) *nema*; to l. into, constr. with *da* or acc. *lura*; to l. on at *giwaya* or *jiwaya*; to l. pleased at seeing *kamna fuska*; to l. proudly on *harara**; to l. round *dauraro*, *doraro* or *daurara**; cf. B 127, 151.
- looking-glass**, n. *madubi*, *matso-kachi* or *masokachi*.
- loom**, n. *takala*.
- loop**, in a string, n. *zarge*, pl. *zarguna*; *mazarigi*.
- loosen**, tr. v. *kunche*, *kwanche* or *kunchi*; *sunche* or *sinche**.
- loosened**, particip. *kunche*, fem. *kunchia*, pl. *kuntu*.
- lord**, n. *ubangiji*; *sidi* applied to Mohammed B 20; Lord, an epithet of the Deity, *rabbi*, *ribbi* or *rabba**; in the same sense also *ubangiji*, cf. B 3, 4, 6, 9.
- lose**, tr. v. *ras(s)a*, *yin reshi*, *tabe**, *yin asara*, *gagata*, the last constr. with *da*, *rubushi*; to l. the way, *ras(s)a hainya*, *rache* or *ratse*, *gochi* and *goche*, *gagata da hainya*, *bata hainya*, *kari-kache*, the last also fig. of moral deviation; to l. one's case *kayes ga sheria*.
- loss**, n. *berna* or *birna*, e.g. they caused him l. *su kai mashi berna* G 2, *reshi* or *ra(s)shi*, *hasara*, *asara*, *tasari*, *ta'adi*.
- loss**, to suffer, intr. v. *hasara*, *ta'adi*.
- lost**, particip. *lalatache*, fem. *lalachia*, pl. *lalatatu*; to be l. *ras(s)a*; it is l. *ya talafa**.
- lot**, n. (= portion) *rabo* or *rabu*, pl. *raberibi*; (= Engl. familiar expr. 'a l. of' and 'lots of') *dayawa*, e.g. a l. of money *kurdi dayawa*.
- lots**, coll. *kuria*; to draw lots *yin kuria*.
- love**, n. *soyeya**, *soaya* or *sowaya*, *kamna*, *so**.
- love**, tr. v. *so*; (after pronouns ending in *na*) *kamna*; *yin soyeya*; *shahawa*.
- loved**, one much, n. *lele**, *masoyi**.
- lover**, n. *maso*, pl. *masowa*; *masoyi*, fem. *masoya*, pl. *masoyu*.
- low**, intr. v. *yin kuka*; cf. *lowing*.
- low**, adv. *kas(s)a*, *akas(s)a akass*.
- lower**, tr. v. *kasashe*, *kass*, *sabka*, *sabki* or *sapka*; to l. to the ground *kas(s)a*; spec. to l. a bucket into a well *zir(r)e*.
- lowering**, participial n. (a bucket into a well) *zir(r)awa*.
- lowing**, n. (of cow or camel) *boda*; *kuka**.
- luck**, n. (good) *nas(s)ara*, *arziiki*.
- luggage**, n. *kaya* or *kaia* and pl. *kayayeki*; spec. a woman's l. *fago** or *pago**.
- lull**, tr. v. *reno*.
- lump**, n. (e.g. of flour) *dunkule*; *tsaba* or *tsal(l)a**.
- lunatic**, adj. *tabu* or *tabo*, fem. *tabuwa*; *mahaukachi*, fem. *mahaukachia*, pl. *mahaukatu*.

lungs, n. *fufu* or *kufu*.
 lust, n. *guri*, *shawa*, *kodai**.
 lying down, n. *kwoantawa*.
 lying in wait, n. *fak(k)o*, *kwoanto*.
 macaroni, n. *talia**, *wasawasa*.
 mad, adj. *mahaukachi*, fem. *mahaukachia*, pl. *mahaukatu*; *mihauka*; *hutsu**; a m. dog *mahaukachi kar(r)s*.
 mad, to be, intr. v. *hauka*, *hauka*, *haukache*.
 madden, tr. v. *haukata*.
 madness, n. *hauka*, *wahami*.
 magic, n. *maita*.
 magnet, n. *mujin karifi*.
 magnify, tr. v. (= to honour, to extol) *girmama*, *bada girima*, *yab(b)o*, *yin yab(b)o*.
 magnitude, n. *girima*, e.g. the sun surpasses the moon in m. *rana ta fi wata da girima*.
 magpie, n. (eats locusts) *chilikowa*.
 maiden, n. *budurua*, pl. *budurai*, *diya*.
 maidenhood, n. *buduruchi* or *buduruanchi*.
 mail, coat of, n. (made of cloth) *lufudi*, pl. *lufudai*; (made of chain) *sulke*, *kumakum(m)i**.
 maintain, tr. v. 1. (= retain) *rik(k)e*, *rik(k)a*, *rik(k)i**; also *rukun**, *rikun** A 47, C 37; 2. (= feed) *chida*.
 maize, n. *mas(s)ara** or *dama(s)sara**.
 majesty, n. *zati** F 132.
 make, tr. v. 1. (= to construct, fashion, create) *yi*, *yiwa*, *yiwo*

or *iwu**; *wa*; I m. *nai* = *na yi*; God who made the world *allah wanda ya yiwo dunia*; (= to produce or effect) e.g. to m. an outcry *yin kururua*; 2. (to cause) *sa*, e.g. they m. the householder run away *su sa maigidda shi guje*.
 malady, n. *chiwo*, *chiuta*.
 male, adj. and n. *namiji*, *toro**; the m. lion *toron zaki*; *wani* in the phrase *wani da wanche* male and female.
 malice, n. *kiyeya*, *masifa*, *keta* or *kita*, *mugun hal(l)i*, *mugunta*.
 mallam (teacher or learned man) n. *malam**, *malami*, pl. *malamai*; chief m. *limam**, pl. *limami**.
 maltreat, tr. v. *walakanta*, cf. *injure*.
 maltreatment, n. *walakanchi*.
 man, n. *mutum* or *mutume*, pl. *mutane*; (as contrasted with woman and wife) *miji*, pl. *maza* and *mazaje*, *namiji*; married m. *miji da mache*; the m. with the broom (i.e. a bachelor who has to sweep his own house) *namiji da shara*.
 mane, n. (of horse, etc.) *geza*, pl. *gezuna*.
 manger, n. *jirigi** or *jirgi**, pl. *jirage**.
 manifest, adj. *tsahiri*.
 manifest, tr. v. *bayan(n)a* or *bayen(n)a*, *gaya*, *god(d)a*.
 manifestation, n. *nunawa*.
 manifestly, adv. *tsahiri*.
 mankind, coll. *mutane duka*, *dukan mutane*, *dunia*.

- manliness**, n. *mazakuta*.
- manner**, n. *hal(l)i*, pl. *hal(l)ai*,
ada, the latter used especially
of religious m. ; such is his m.
hallinsa ke nan.
- manners**, coll. good m. *kumya* or
kumia ; want of good manners
reshin kumya.
- manumission**, a certificate of, n.
laya, layan diyaruchi.
- manure**, n. *taki*.
- manure**, tr. v. *yin taki*.
- many**, adj. *dayawa* and (esp. of
persons) *mayawa* or *mayiawa*,
pl. *masuyawa* ; *berkete**, *tak-*
*(k)aka**, *ful** or *pul** ; how
m. ? *nawa, guda nawa*, e.g.
how m. years is it since your
birth ? *shekara nawa tun hai-*
fuanka. Cf. also D 57 n.
- march**, by night in war, n. *kwanan*
daga.
- mare**, n. *godia, dukusa* (fem. of
dukushi) pl. *dukusai* ; a young
m. *dan dukushi* ; a large m.
angarmia ; a strong m. *kangarua*.
- mark**, n. *tab(b)o*, pl. *tab(b)una* ;
m. on paper or cloth *dug(g)o*
or *dig(g)a*, pl. *dugogi* ; m. on
animals, trees, etc. or of a
person unable to write *shaida*,
pl. *shaidai* ; a m. on the ground,
a land-mark *amara** ; for tribal
marks, cf. marks ; to put a m.
on the ground *halama**.
- mark**, tr. v. 1. (= to note, observe)
ji and *gan(n)i* ; 2. (= to make
a m. on) *shaida* or *yin shaida* ;
to m. off *kebe* ; cf. marks.

- marker**, in book, n. *halama**,
*amara**.
- market**, for some special article,
n. *kasua* or *kasuwa* ; spec. a
very small m. *dan kasua* ; officer
of the m. *sankurumi* ; president
of the m. *sarikin kasua* ; a m.
thief *maisani* ; notice forbid-
ding people to sell in the m.
shela.
- marks**, coll. 1. (cut on face to
point out tribe etc. to which
a person belongs) *shaushawa*,
keskestu ; 2. (id. cut from the
corners of the mouth) *yanbaka*.
- marks**, to cut, on, v. *reda*.
- marksman**, n. *mahalbi*, pl. *ma-*
halbai or *masuhabi*.
- marriage**, n. *amre, amri* or *aure*,
angonchi ; m. feast *buki* or
biki, also *wasambuki* ; m. pre-
sents (wife's) *gara* ; to rejoice
at a m. *yin gara*.
- married**, adj. *sun** ; m. man *miji*
da mache.
- marrow**, n. *burgo* or *barugo*.
- marry**, v. *amre, amri, aure* or *yin*
amre, etc.
- marsh**, n. *fadama*.
- marvel**, n. (= a wonder) *abin*
mamaki, abinchewa, ajub.
- marvel**, v. *yin mamaki, jin*
manaki, yin woba ; to m. at a
thing unseen before *kakabi** ;
to cause to m. *ajabi*.
- mash**, tr. v. *farifasha* or *palpa-*
she.
- mashed**, participial adj. *tak(k)ake*,
fem. *tak(k)aka*, pl. *tak(k)aku*.
- mass**, n. *tsaba* or *tsal(l)a*.

master, n. *ubangiji*; *uba* or *oba*, pl. *ubane* and *ubanai*.

master, tr. v. (= to overpower) *rinjayi* or *rinjaya*, *fi**, *i**.

masticate, tr. v. *tamma* or *tona*, *touk(k)e*.

masticated, particip. *tamnane*, fem. *tamnana*, pl. *tammanu*.

mat, n. gen. *abin shimfida*; spec. old grass m. *keso*; reed m. *taberna*; goat-skin m. *buzu* or *busu**; round m. *tafin giwa*; round grass m. *windi*; round m. of plaited grass *asalo*; m. let down in front of doorway *arɔɔberi*, *tufania*; grass or reed m. for covering outside of houses *zana*; cf. seq.

mats, coll. (used for roofing) *amami*; grass used for making m. *zunteia*.

matter, n. (subject) *tada*, pl. *tadodi*; what is the m.? *mi ya faru*, what is the m. with you? *mi ya sameka*.

mattress, cloth, n. *derduma*.

mature, adj. and v.; see **ripe**, **ripen**.

me, personal pron. *-ni* and (rare) *-na*, e.g. he caused me fear *ya bani tsoro*, they followed me *sun bini*, he likes me *shina sona*, he saw me *ya ganina*; with prep. to me *mani*, *gareni*; exclamatory, me! do you mean me? *nia*.

meal, n. 1. (= repast) *kalachi*, which also = mid-day m.; 2. (= ground fruit of *dorowa*) *garin dorowa*; cf. flour.

mean, adj. (= worthless, contemptible) *lalatache*, fem. *lalachia*, pl. *lalatatu*, *banza*.

meaning, n. (of words and phrases) *loga*, *guzu*, *tushi*, *kari**, *mana**, *dalili**; e.g. there is no m. in it *babu loga*; what is the m. of it! *minene guzunsa*.

measles, n. *bakwoondoro* (!).

measure, n. 1. gen. (both in the strict sense and also of comparison, estimation, proportion, one's m. or standard) *golgoda*, *gorgodo*, *gulgudu* D 25; 2. (= instrument or means of measuring) *abin auna*, *abin awo*, *maana*; 3. spec. the foot regarded as a m. of length *tak(k)i*, pl. *takoki*; a m. of length from elbow to tip of middle finger *kamu*; a cloth m. of about 15 feet *zan(n)e* or *zan(n)i*, pl. *zan(n)ua*; a cloth m. of about 22 yards *turumi*; cf. cloth-measure; a m. of capacity *mud(d)u*, pl. *mud(d)una*; a m. for grain *zakka*, *zikka* or *jikka*; cf. span.

measure, tr. v. *golgoda* or *gorgoda*, *god(d)a*, *awo*, *yin awo*, *auna*; trop. to m. by rule or comparison *kiyasi*, e.g. we keep silent, understanding is the m. of (lit. measures) all things *muna kurum hankali duka shi kiyasi* D 94.

measuring, 1. participial n. *godawau*; 2. anything used for m.; cf. measure (2).

meat, n. (= flesh used as food) *nama*, pl. *namomi*; spec. thin strips of cooked m. *kilishi*; the fat of m. *mai*; epithet applied to broth without m. *da lami*.

mediator, n. *masakanche*.

medicine, n. *mágani*, pl. *mangunguna* and *magunguna*; to take m. *sha* or *hade magani*; to apply, administer m. *sa*, *ba* or *bada magani*; purgative *zawo*; m. against a cold *maganin majina*; spec. a white mixture used as m. *farin-gamu*; a bitter herbal m. *tazargadi**; a m. made from leaves of *adua* tree *lingab(b)u*; saltpetre used as m. *jan kanwa*; a m. made from a grass *dandana*; to preserve fruit in syrup as a m. tr. v. *tsumi* or *tsume*; m. for the eyes *korino*, *giwakamba*; a m. taken to ward off an enemy's blows *sago*; a m. for children *dauri*; sources of m.—a tree whose root is used as a m. for dysentery *domashi*; a bitter herb from which a m. is made *shikawa*; a grass from which a m. is made *tsaiwa*; a tree whose bark furnishes a m. for men and cattle *kukuki*; a small tree from whose root a scent is made used as a m. *uwan magunguna*; a sharp, thorny grass ground up as a m. *rairai* or *rere*; a tree (the fruit of which resembles a melon) whose blossoms furnish a m. *tumfafia*,

pl. *tumfafi*; a large tree furnishing an astringent m. *sansami*; a shrub from berries of which a m. is made *zakami* or *zakami*; a medicinal plant growing amongst *dawa* about two feet high *kuduji*; a root used as a purgative m. *zagarafi*; a plant whose leaves furnish m. for the chest *tafessa*, *raidore*; herb with tooth-shaped leaves from which a m. is made *zabo*; a shrub the wood of which affords a m. used for a cold *yako*; a plant with small black seeds used in m. *nanaf(f)a*.

meditate, intr. v. *tsachi* or *zache*.

meditating, particip. n. a. *mai-zache*.

meditation, n. *tunane*, fem. *tunana*, pl. *tunanu*, q.v.

meeek, adj. *da hankuri*; cf. seq.

meeekness, n. *hankuri*, *hankura* or *hakora*.

meet, adj. *daidai*, and in stronger sense *halal*, *halas*, *hallata**; not m. *haram*, *ba daidai*, *ba halal* etc.; cf. seq. (2).

meet, v. 1. *tarie*, *yin taria*; to m. as in conflict or opposition *kar(r)o* with *da*; to m. with *gamu* or *gamo da*; *tare* or *tarie*, *tareo**, *tarda*, *tarasda*; *tsayi*, *tsaya*, *tsai*; *saddu*; *sama*, *sama** or *samo*; *tabo**; to m. a person coming from the opposite direction *karapta*; to m. on the road *saddu*; 2. trop. (= to m. so as to be fit, suit-

- able, sufficient) *gamshe, gamshe, ishe*; this meets our case *wonan ya ishemu*.
- meeting**, n. *taruwa, taria*; a m. with *saddua*; m. of rivers (= confluence) *magangami*; a day of m. (with God on the last day) *rangamu*.
- melon**, n. *dila**; spec. water-m. *kankana*; roots of melons *yado**; a tree with a fruit somewhat resembling a m. *tumfafa*.
- melt**, tr. v. (e.g. metals) *narike*.
- melted**, be, intr. v. *nariku*.
- melted**, participle *narike*, fem. *narika*, pl. *nariku*.
- memorandum**, of goods, written on paper, n. *zumami*.
- memorial**, n. *ambato*.
- memory**, n. *tunane**, *tuna**.
- men**, n. 1. (= males) *maza*; 2. (= human beings) *mutane*.
- mend**, tr. v. 1. *gerta*; 2. (= to patch clothes etc.) *banke*; to m. by sewing *fasali*; 3. fig. (to set right, to 'm. matters') *gára* or *gera*.
- mendicant**, n., see **beggar**.
- mending**, participial form *gertawa*, used after pronouns ending in *na*, e.g. they are n. *suna gertawa*.
- mention**, tr. v. *ambata* or *ambato*.
- merchandise**, n. *bukata, abin chiniki, fatauchi**.
- merchant**, n. *fadake, maifadake*, pl. *masufadake, attajiri* or *tajiri, kuntumi, maifatauchi, dangarumfa**; spec. a rich m. *kunkumi* or *kuntumi*; a travelling m. *falke*, pl. *fatake*; *fatake* used as a coll. = merchants; see **trader**.
- merciful**, adj. (epithet applied to God only) *errahimi**.
- mercy**, n. *jinkai* or *shinkai, tausayi**; cf. compassion.
- merely**, adv. *sandai, sai*, e.g. he would m. lift up his chin *sandai shi tada haba A 6*.
- merry**, be, intr. v. *shewa* or (Sokoto) *suwa*; we are very m. *muna yin daria da murna*.
- message**, n. (= errand, mission) *sako*, (= news or information brought) *labári*; to delay to deliver a m. *ida labári*.
- messenger**, n. *maaike*, pl. *masa-aike* and *maaika*; *maaikechi*; *jekada*; *manzo*, pl. *manzani* • which is also used of a king's m. specially.
- midday**, n. of time *tsak(k)an rana*; m. meal, n. *kalachi**.
- middle**, n. *tsak(k)ia, tsak(k)a, atsak(k)a*; in the m. of (prepositional phr.) *tsakani* or *zakani**.
- midst**, n., see **prec.**
- midwife**, n. *ungozuma*.
- might**, n. *iko*, (of physical power) *karifi, karfi*.
- mighty**, adj. *maiiko, maikarifi, bajini**, *gugara** or *gugari**, *aljabbaru B 118*; (as epithets of God) *azizu**, *jabbaru**, *jalala**, *kadari**; cf. powerful.
- mildew**, n. *fumfuna*.

- milk**, n. *nono*, pl. *nonua*; sweet or fresh m. *madara*; curds of m. *guntsari*; herb root of which is put in m. to preserve it *loda*, *daf(f)ara*; to skim m. *yade*.
- milk**, tr. v. *tasa*, *tasi*, *tachi*, *tatsa* or *taza*, e.g. I m. the goat *na tasi akwia*.
- mill**, n. see **mill-stone**.
- mill**, tr. v. (= to grind) *nik(k)a*.
- millers and mill-owner**, n. *mai-reda*.
- millet**, n. *dawa*, *dawa mazara*, *gero*.
- million**, adj. *alif alif*; *dubu dari goma*.
- millstone**, n. *duchin nik(k)a*, *ma-rede*, pl. *mare dai*.
- mince**, tr. v. (cut into very small pieces) *yenyena*.
- mind**, n. *zuchia**, *rai**, the latter used in compounds like *giri-man rai* haughtiness, see *rai* (2); I am of two minds *ina da zuchia biu*; absence of m. cf. *shagalichi**.
- mind**, v. (= regard, heed) *kul(l)a* with *da*, cf. *care*, *care for*.
- mine**, sep. possess. pron. *nawa* when obj. possessed is masc., *tawa* when fem., e.g. your horse is stronger than m. *dokinka ya fi nawa da karifi*.
- mingle**, tr. v., see **mix**.
- minister**, a king's, n. *bafade* or *bafadi*, *mafadawa*; m. of the household *magaji*.
- minstrel**, n. *zabia*, pl. *zabiyo-yi*.
- mint**, a plant resembling, n. *da-doi**.
- minute**, n. of time *gari**.
- mirage**, n. *diyatrana** (lit. child of the sun).
- mire**, n. *laka*, *tab(b)o*, pl. *tabuna*; cf. *mud*.
- mirror**, n. *madubi*, *madubin ido*, *madubin fuska*, *matsokachi* or *masokachi*.
- miscarriage**, n. *wabi*.
- miscarry**, v. *bari*, *yesda diya**, *bata chik(k)i**.
- mischievous**, n. *kita* or *keta*, *masifu*; to do m. *yin sababi*.
- mischievous-maker**, n. *maisab(b)abi*, pl. *masusab(b)abi*; *machuchi*.
- mischievous person**, n. *mai-masifa*, pl. *masumasifa*.
- miser**, n. *bahili**.
- miserable**, to be or to render m. *sinihi*.
- misery**, n., see **distress**.
- misfortune**, n. *hasara*, *asara*, *tasari*, *sab(b)abi* or *sub(b)abi*, *masifa*.
- mislead**, tr. v. *rude*; one who misleads *marude* or *mairude*, pl. *maruda*.
- misled**, particip. *rudade*, fem. *rudada*, pl. *rudadu*.
- miss**, n. used of an arrow, gun, etc. *kuskurewa*.
- miss**, v. (= to pass over, omit words in a book) *ratsa**, cf. A 73; to m. the way *ras(s)a hainya*; to m. (of an arrow) *kuskure* or *kurkura*, *yin kundu**; to m. fire *fas(s)a*, *yin karia*; charms to cause the

weapons of the enemy to m. or m. fire *sha kuskure* and *sha bara*.

mist, n. *hazo*.

mistake, n. *mantua*; to make a m. *manta, manche, yin mantua, bata zanche*.

mistress, n. (of the house) *uwoorigid(d)a* or *uwalgid(d)a*, (of slaves) *uwoorigijia*.

misty, adj. *da hazo*.

misunderstand, v. *gigiche* or *gigi, rudi**.

mix, tr. v. *dame* or *dama*; *gariwoya*; *gangama*; *kwabe, kube* or *kwaba*; to m. together *chuda* or *chudawa*; to m. mud *chuda yimbu*; to m. up together *foruu forau* or *foro foro*.

mixed, what is, n. *damamia*.

mock, v. *bananche, fasiki**.

mock, n. *maifasiki**.

mode, n. *hal(l)i*, pl. *hal(l)ai*.

moderate size, n. *madaidaichi*; a thing of m. s. *madaidaichi*; of m. s. adj. *da madaidaichi*.

moderately, adv. *da dama dama*.

modest, adj. (= bashful, under a sense of shame) *da kumya*.

modesty, n. (= sense of shame, bashfulness) *kumya* or *kumia*.

Mohammed, pr. n. *muhammadu* B 2, 16, C 42; *muhammad* D 75, 78; *ahmadu* D 47; *sidi uban zahra mijin hadija* B 21; *dan amina* E 2; cf. also for further designations D 97 n.

mohammedan, a, n. *musulmi* (*musilmi* A 5), pl. *musulmai*; the m. religion *musulumchi*; to be a m. *musulumta* F 58; I changed from a heathen to a m. *na sauuya da arna* (or *asna*) *musulmi*.

moisten, tr. v. *jik(k)a*.

moisture, n. *damshi*.

molasses, a kind of, n. *mad(d)i* or *madya*.

mole, n. (= birth mark) *tadawal allah*.

molest, tr. v. *tsananta, alale*.

moment, n. of time *keptawan ido, gari**; in a m. (= forthwith = a m. afterwards) *nan da nan*.

Monday, n. *latini* and *rana latini*.

money, n. *kurdi* or *kudi**; for m., on payment of m. *da kurdi*; (the only money regularly used by the Hausas consists of cowrie shells, about 2000 of which are equivalent in value to a shilling; the Austrian dollar is occasionally used, see *della*).

money-bag, small, n. *tsal(l)eta*.

monkey, n. *biri*, pl. *birai, biraye* or *biruna*; spec. a large m. *gata* or *gatan biri*; a small red m. *tsulo*.

monkey-bread, tree, n. i.e. the baobab *kuka*.

monkey-nut, n. *ged(d)a*; oil from the monkey-n. *main ged(d)a*.

month, n. *wata*, pl. *watani* and *watashi*; this m. *watan yo*; last m. *watan jia*; next m. *watan gobe*; m. after next

watan jibi; four months *wata fudu*; the fourth m. *wata na fudu*.

monument, n. see **memorial**.

moon, n. *wata*, pl. *watani* and *watashi*. masc; new m. *sabon wata*, *farin wata*, *faril(l)a**; a bright m. (ein heller Mond) *wata farifet*; halo round m. *sansan(n)i*; phr. the m. is ended *wata ya mutu*.

more, adj. 1. (= greater in amount) *mafiyawa*, e.g. he gave him books m. than ours *ya bashi litatafi mafiya wa daggan namu*; m. considerable than this *mafigirma daggan nan*; 2. (= to a greater degree) as in our comparison of adj. and adv. *fi*, e.g. he is m. cunning than a jerboa *ya fi kurege da wayo*; I am m. beautiful than thou *ina fiki da keau*; *faye*, *faskare*, e.g. you ask m. than I am equal to *kana so abin da (ya faye mani or) ya faskereni*; 3. (= m. in addition, further) *kara*, e.g. add m. (to the price in bargaining) *ka kara mani*; although they made every attempt to console him, he cried the m. *koda suka yi kokari dayawa su bashi hankuri shi ya kara kuka*; he stabbed him again and then he moved no m. *ya yenkeshi haryo da wuka baya nan bai kara yin mosi ba*; a little m. *da dama*; much m. *balante*, e.g. Shaikhu would receive any-one, much m. would he receive

me *ya dauki kowa shaikhu balante nia* C 48.

moreover, adv. *bayan hak(k)a, fa**.

morning, n. the early m. *safe* and *safia*; when m. came *da safe ya yi*; in the m. *da safe*; every m. *kowache safia*; good morning! *sannu da safe* or *sannu da ranu*; very early in the m. *sasafe*; m. two hours after sunrise *hanchi* or *hantsi*.

morrow, n. *gobe*, *rana maizua*; good bye till to-morrow *sai gobe*; for 'day after to-morrow' &c. see **day**.

morsel, n. *guzura*, pl. *guzure*.

mortar, n. 1. (made by scooping out a log) *turumi*, pl. *turami*; a maker or owner of mortars *maiturumi*; 2. (= building cement) *damamia*; to mix m. *dame* or *dama*.

moslem, n. *musulmi*, pl. *musulmai*; see also **mohammedan**.

mosque, n. *masallachi*, pl. *masallatai*.

mosquito, *sab(b)ero*, *sabro*, *sauro* or *samro*.

most, adv. 1. (denoting the relative superlative) is expressed by a defining phr. *mafi* (or *ya fi*) *duka* (or *kowa*) = surpassing all or any, e.g. he is the m. powerful *shina da karifi ya fi duka*; for similar phrases cf. the m. excellent Mohammed *muhammadu ya fi kowa* E 3, 51; let us fear a meeting with Him who is m. powerful *mu*

- tsarshi gamu da maiiko da kowa* (lit. who has power over all) E 12; 2. the absolute superlative (= in a very high degree) *faye*, e.g. the cat is m. addicted to crying at night *kenwa ta faye yin kuka da dere*.
- moth**, n. spec. a m. from a black caterpillar *asu**; a black m. *kwaro*, pl. *kwari*; a m. which bites men and eats ants *tsutsa*.
- mother**, n. *uwa*, *iya*; his m. was *Zainabu uwa tasa zainabu*.
- mother-in-law**, n. *sarakua*.
- motion**, n. *mosi* or *motsi*.
- mound**, n. *tudu*, pl. *tudodi*.
- mount**, v. *hawa* or *haru*; to m. a horse or to m. on horseback *hawa doki* or *hawa bis(s)a doki*; to m. up or upon *tak(k)i* or *taka*.
- mountain**, n. *tudu*, pl. *tudodi*, *tsauni* (but larger than *tudu*), *kudunia*, which also means range of mountains.
- mourn**, v. *tak(k)aba*, *yin kuka* G 2.
- mouse**, n. *bera* or *bira*, *dambaria*, *kusu*, pl. *kusai*; spec. field m. *gunzu**.
- mouth**, n. *baki*, pl. *bakuna*; also fig. of the opening or entrance to anything, e.g. the m. of a well *bakin rijia*; spec. a disease at the corners of the m. *decha**.
- mouthful**, n. *loma* or *lauma**.
- move**, v. tr. and intr. *mosa*, intr. *yin mosi*; to m. away from *gurugusa*; to m. a little back *gusa*, *gulgusa* or *gurugusa*; to m. a little forward *guso* or *guruguso*; to m. forward or backward so as to make room *zakuda* or *zakudo*; to m. from a place *gurugushu*; to m. towards *guruguso*.
- moved**, be, v. *muchu**.
- movement**, n. *mosi* or *motsi*.
- moving**, a little away, particip. *gusawa*.
- mow**, tr. v. *yenka* or *yenke*.
- much**, l. adj. and adv. (= in great quantity) *yawa**, *dayawa*, *nai-yawa**, e.g. much money *kurdi dayawa*; he rejoiced m. *ya yi murna dayawa*; *yawa* connective form. *yawan*, *gugu* or *gugi*, connect. *gugin*, *tilli**, e.g. m. sand *gugin rairai*, *dungum** B 30; how m.? *nawa*, e.g. how m. money am I to give you *kurdi nawa ni baka*; to do something very m. *faye*, e.g. children laugh very m. *yara su faye yin daria*; to be too m. for *buaya* or *buaye*, *faskare*, e.g. it is too m. for me *ya buayeni*; it is too m. *ba shi kai hakkaman ba* or *ya faskare*.
- mucus**, from the eyes, n. *komtsa* or *kwamsa*.
- mud**, n. *yimbu* or *yambu**, *tab(b)o*, pl. *tabuna*, *laka*, *kafo*; spec. handful of m. *churi*; round piece of m. *chibirin kasa*; slippery m. *til(l)abia**.
- mud-fish**, n. *gaiwa*; the noise made by the m.-f. *chiwuki*.
- muddy**, adj. *da tab(b)o*.

muddy water, n. *guiba* or *guibi*.
muezzin, n. *lada**.
mule, n. *alfadari*, fem. *alfadara*,
 pl. *alfadaru*.
multiply, tr. v. *yawanta*, *yin*
yawanta, *sa yawayawa*, *ƙara**.
multitude, n. *yawa*, *taro* or *taru*,
 pl. *tarori*.
murder, n. *ka(s)shinkai*.
murder, intr. v. *yin ka(s)shin-*
kai.
murderer, n. *maka(s)shi*, *maka(s)-*
shinkai.
murderous, adj. *kasau**.
murmur, intr. v. *gunaguni*, *yin*
gunaguni; to m. against *kusato*.
muscular person, n. *gendi*, fem.
gendia.
music, n. *molo*, pl. *moluna*; to
 play music *yin wasa*.
musical instrument, n. *abin*
molo, *kidda* or *kiddi*; to play
 on a m. i. that is touched or
 struck *yin kiddi*; spec. a m. i.
 like a guitar *gurumi* or *gurimi*
 used in the expr. *gurimin kid-*
di; a m. i. held under the arm,
 a kind of drum *kozo*; a m. i.
 played by rubbing on it *ku-*
kuma; a stringed m. i. *ma-*
*chirkia**; strings of a m. i.
tsarkia; stick for m. i. *goge*;
 a m. i. played before a king,
 e.g. a trumpet *kakaki*.
musical performer, on drum, n.
makiddi; on a trumpet *mai-*
busa.
musician, king's, n. *zabia*, pl.
zabiyoyi.
musk, n. *muska*.

muslin, n. used for turbans
*harsa**, *hirsu**.
mussulman, to be a, intr. v.
*musulumta**; see moslem and
 mohammedan.
must, v. (= be obligatory or neces-
 sary) *lalli*, *kamata*, e.g. we must
 work *lalli ne* (or *ya kamata*)
mu yi aiki; cf. necessary.
musty smell, as of grain long
 kept, n. *ƙuna*.
muzzle, for goat or donkey, n.
*takumkumi**.
my, possess. pron. 1. suff. *-na*
 when the obj. possessed is
 masc., *-ta* when fem., e.g. my
 father *ubana*, my mother *uwa-*
ta; 2. separate, *nawa* with
 masc., *tawa* and *tata** with
 fem., e.g. my horse *doki nawa*;
 my mare *godia tawa*.
myriad, n. of number *ribbi**.
myself, pron. *kaina*; I m. *ni*
dakaina.
nail, finger, n. *kumba*, pl. *kumbuna*
 or *kumkai*, *farichi*, *kambori*.
nail, an iron, n. *kosa* or *kusa**.
nail, tr. v. *kaf(f)a*.
naked, adj. *chiraro*, *tsirara*, *funtu*
 or *dafuntu*, *jir*, e.g. because
 he is n. *don jir shi ke*; a n.
 person *tambar*; he is n. *ya yi*
chirara.
nakedness, n. *chirara*, *funtunchi*;
 fig. *wofi*, e.g. a naked lie *karria*
wofi.
name, n. *suna*, pl. *sunua* and
sunanaki; a city whose n. is
 Kano *birni sunansa kano*;

what is his n. ? *wa sunansa*
 phr. name its price *ba shi suna*.
name-day, for a child, n. *ransuna*;
 a meal connected with the n.-
 day *tuon suna*.
napkin, n. *kalkaf(f)i*, *maharma*.
narrate, v. *fad(d)i* or *fad(d)a*, e.g.
 what I have narrated to you
 is true *abinda na fadda maka*
da gaskia ne.
narrative, n. *labári*, *aljima*, *al-*
*jama**, e.g. let me give you
 the n. of those wars *em baka*
labarin yakoki nan.
narrow, adj. *kumche**, *kunkunta**;
 a n. place *wurin machi*.
narrow, v. 1. tr. (= to make n.)
kumtata ; 2. intr. (= to be n.)
matou.
narrowed, particip. adj. *kumche**.
natal, adj. *na haifua*, fem. *ta hai-*
fua, e.g. your n. day *rana ta*
haifuanka or *ranan (ran) hai-*
fuanka.
native, 1. adj. (of animals etc. be-
 longing to a particular country
 or district) expressed by means
 of *kasa* or *gari*, e.g. the n. trees
iatuan kasa ; the n. fish *kifayen*
garinga ; 2. gentile n. (= a
 native) of a country *ba* with
 terminal vowel *e* or *i*, e.g. a
 Hausa n. *bahaushe* ; of a town
 or locality *da* followed by its
 name, e.g. a n. of Zozo *dan zozo*.
nativity, n. *haifua*.
natron, n. *kanwa*, *gal(l)o*, *ashau-*
ma ; a heap of n. *burdumi*.
nature, n. (character) *hal(l)i*,
 B 104.

navel, n. *chibia*, pl. *chibioyi*.
near, adv. *kus(s)a* ; n. at hand *da*
kus(s)a, e.g. he came n. *ya taffi*
kus(s)a ; he sat n. at hand *ya*
zamma da kus(s)a ; very n.
kus(s)a kus(s)a ; n. to *kus(s)a*
da or *kus(s)a ga*, e.g. n. to
 him *kus(s)a gareshi*.
near, to be etc., v. intr. to be or
 draw n. *yin kus(s)a*, *kus(s)ala*
 or *kus(s)anta* ; to draw n. *dun-*
no ; to draw n. to *gwamatsi**
 B 15, *rabe**, e.g. it draws n. to
 him *ta rabeshi* B 121.
near, coming, participial form
kus(s)atowa.
near, drawing, participial form
kus(s)awa, *kus(s)ache*.
nearly, adv. *kus(s)a* ; it is n.
 finished *ya yi kussa kare* or
ya kussa kare.
necessary, adj. *wajib* or *wajibi*.
necessary, to be, v. *wajaba*, *wa-*
jabu or *wajiba*, *lazumche*, *ka-*
mata ; impers. it is n. *ya wajiba*,
ya kamata, *lal(l)i ne*.
necessity, n. *larura**, *sharatsa** ;
 of n. *da lal(l)e*, *da tilas*, *da*
wuya.
neck, n. *wuya* or *wiya*, pl. *wuyayi*
 or *wiyayi*.
neckband, of horsehair etc., n.
tegia.
neck-hole, of shirt, n. *wundi*.
necklace, of beads, n. *kutofi* ;
 (worn by women) *dimbujin*
zufa.
neck ornament, n. *hanchi*.
need, n. *bukata*, e.g. He is the
 satisfier of his n. *shi ne maibia*

- bukata tasa*; to be in n. of *lal(l)ɛ*.
- need**, v. *bukata* B 4, *yin bukata*; cf. prec.
- needful**, it is, impers. *ya kamata*, *lal(l)i ne*.
- needle**, n. *alura*, pl. *alurai*, *alibra**, *madinkia**, *tafasua**; spec. large n. *siko*; a sail-n. *masilla**.
- needle-case**, n. *gid(d)an alura*.
- needlework**, on a burnous, yellow, n. *yaran(n)i*.
- needy**, adj. *makaskachi*, pl. *makaskasta*, *talaka*, pl. *talakawa*, *maitalaka*, pl. *masutalaka*, *maitalauchi**, pl. *masutalauchi**.
- neglect**, of work, n. *huja*.
- neglect**, tr. v. *kiale*, *rena*.
- neighbour**, n. *makofchi* or *makubchi*, fem. *makopta*, pl. *makopta*.
- neigh**, intr. v. *yin haninia*.
- neighing**, n. *haninia*.
- neither**, adv. *ko**; after a neg. neither...nor *ko...ko*.
- nerve**, n. *jijia*, pl. *jivoji*.
- nerves**, coll. n. *dag(y)ura**.
- nest**, n. *shek(k)a*, pl. *shek(k)una* and *shek(k)oki*, *guribi*.
- net**, n. *taru*, pl. *taruna*; spec. names for fishing-nets also *raf(f)a*, *raga*, pl. *ragogi*, *koma**.
- network**, n. *aikin raga*.
- never**, adv. expressed by v. *tabba* with negative, e.g. I n. acted thus *ban tabba yi wonan*; we n. went there *ba mu tabba je nan*; n. until now *dadai* with negative verb.
- nevertheless**, adv. *saiko*, *tare da wanan*, *koda**.
- new**, adj. *ɓábo*, fem. *ɓábu*, pl. *ɓábi*; anything n. (= strange, evil) *bidaa* F 25; the n. moon *ɓábon wata*, *farin wata*.
- news**, coll. n. *labári*, what is the news? *enna labari* or *enna labarin dunia* or *labarin dunia*, I heard n. of you *na ji labarinka*.
- next**, adv. (as a qualification of nouns of time) *gobe*, e.g. n. month *watan gobe*; the n. world *lahira*, *gid(d)an gobe*; the n. day *rana maizua* or *rana marzakua*.
- nibbling**, of ants, n. *tausan gara* A 44.
- nice**, adj. *da dadi*; something n. *abin dadi*.
- Niger**, Hausa name for the river; n. *kwora*, *kwara* or *ruan kwora*.
- niggard**, adj. *bahili**.
- nigh**, adv. *kus(s)a* or *da kus(s)a*; n. to *kus(s)a da* or *kus(s)a ga*.
- night**, n. *dere* or *der(r)i*; all n. *dere duka*; at or by n. *da dere*; good night! *san(n)u da dere* and *sai da ɓafe*; last n. *jia da dere*; it is n. *dunia ta yi dere*; to go by n. *bin dere*; to pass the n. *wuni*; when n. comes or came *da dere ya yi*.
- nine**, num. *tara*, e.g. n. horses *dawaki tara*, n. hundred *dari tara*, by nines *tara tara*.
- nineteen**, num. *goma sha tara*, *sha tara*.

ninety, num. *tis(s)ain, dari goma buss, dari gaira goma*, the two last expr. lit. 100 less 10.

ninth, num. 1. ordinal *natara*, fem. *tatara*; 2. fractional n. *tusu'i**.

no, 1. interj. *a**, *aa*; 2. adj. *babu, ba*, e.g. no money *babu kurdi*; no one *babu kowa, ba kowa, babu wonda* or *ba wonda*.

no, to say, v. *han(n)a, ki, kia*; cf. *kauda kai*.

nod, to, in assent, v. *kada kai, ged(d)a kai*.

noise, n. *am(m)o, dum(m)i, haya-
nia* or *hania*; loud and angry n. *hargowa*.

none, adj. *babu* (or *ba*) *wonda, babu* (or *ba*) *kowa, babu*, the last applied to things; n. used of persons *babu mutum*.

nonsense, n. *wawa, wawanchi*; he talks n. *shina magana barkatai**.

noon, n. *tsak(k)an rana*.

noose, n. gen. *zarge*, pl. *zarguna*; spec. a n. for catching animals *mazarigi, mazargi, azarigagi*.

nor, adv. *ko* with negative, e.g. he gave them neither bread n. money for bread *ba ya basu ko gurassa ko kurdin gurassa*.

north, n. *ariwa* or *ariawa*; on the n. or to the n. *da ariwa*.

northern, the, region, n. *ari-wachi*.

nose, n. *hanchi* or *hanshi*, pl. *hanchochi*; the bridge of the n. *goran hanchi*; a man with flattened n. *maihanchi nanane*.

nostrils, n. *hanchi* or *hanshi*, pl. *hanchochi*.

not, adv. *ba*, e.g. I know not *ban san(n)i*; the *ba* is usually placed before and after the verb or sentence which it negatives, e.g. I did not see the man *ban gani mutum ba*, or *ban gani ba mutum*; *babu*, e.g. it is not good *babu keau*; with imperative or subjunctive clauses *kad(d)a*, e.g. do not fear *kadda ka ji tsoro*; that you may not fall (or lest you fall) *kadda ka fadi; kad(d)a-dai*, e.g. let her n. be heard *kaddadai ajita*; 'or not' when the words form the end of a question *ko ba hak(k)a ba*.

notch, n., i.e. in a tree for resting a load against *loko*; n. of an arrow *gofi*.

note, v. *duba* or *dubo*, e.g. note this *duba wonan*.

nothing, n. *babu, babu komi, ba...komi* or *ba komi ba*, e.g. who knew n. *wanda bai san komi ba*; n. but *sai, saidai*.

notwithstanding, adv. *saike, tare da wanan, koda*.

nought, n. see **nothing**.

novel, adj. 1, see **new**; 2. (=strange) *bako*, fem. *bakua*, pl. *bakuna, baki* or *bakokuna, da bako*.

novelty, n. (=strangeness) *bakon-chi, bakontaka*.

now, adv. *yanzu, koyanzu, loka-chinan*; even n. *koyanzu, yanzu yanzu*; just n. *yauyau* or

yoyo; till n. *har yanzu*; up till n. *fache**

nude, adj. see **naked**.

numb, to be, v. see **numbness**.

number, n. *guda*, *lisafi* or *lesafi*; five in n. *guda biar*; without n., beyond n., is expressed by *fi kedaya*, e.g. fishes without n. *kifaye su fi kedaya*.

number, tr. v. *lisafi* or *lesafi*, *kilga* or *kirga*.

numbering, method of, n. *kedaya*, *kididiga*.

numbness, n. *dela*, my hands are numb *dela ya kama hanuana* lit. n. has seized my hands.

Numeral adverbs, these are formed by prefixing *sau* or *so* and also *guda* to the cardinal numbers, e.g. once *sau daia*, thrice *sau* (or *so*) *uku* or *guda uku*.

numerous, adj. see **many**.

nurse, n. *maireno*, pl. *masureno*.

nurse, tr. v. *reno*.

nut, n. the small edible ground n. *guchia*, *gujia* or *gojia*, pl. *gujeye*, the ground n. called also the monkey-n. *ged(d)a*, monkey-n. oil *main ged(d)a*; a large n. similar to ground n. *kwaruru**, *yaro da daria*; hazel n. *chanza*; a n. which when ground and burnt furnishes a scent *jawel*; a dried-up n. *koda*.

nuts, coll. *lanza**

O!, interj. *ya*.

oak, n. *gwinki**

oath, n. *rantsua*, *safirchi**; to take an o. *ranche* and *yin rantsua*; a common oath is *wolla**, i.e. by Allah!

obduracy, n. *taurin zuchia*, *matauria zuchia*.

obdurate, adj. *da taurin zuchia*.

obedience, give ready, to, tr. v. *kiyaye*.

obeisance, do, v. *yin sajada*, *runsuma* or *rusona*, *yin af(f)i*, he did o. to him *ya yi masa affi*.

obey, tr. v. *bi*, *ji*; to o. a command *kiyaye magana*, also *bi* (or *ji*) *magana*.

object, n. *abu*, e.g. a wonderful o. *abin mamaki*; a delightful o. *abin murna*; a sad o. *abin tausai*.

object, tr. v. *ki*; to o. to labour etc. *yin kiwuya*; to o. to an agreement *walwale**, e.g. if she make an agreement with thee she will o. to it *en ta yi alkaweli da kai ita wahvale* C 23.

objection, n. *kiwuya* or *kuyiwa*.

obliterate, tr. v. see **blot out**.

observe, tr. v. 1. see **notice**; 2. (=to comply with, e.g. the commandments of God) *rik(k)e*, *rik(k)a*, *rik(k)i*; o. a promise *damre magana*, *chik(k)a magana*, *kul(l)a bis(s)a magana*.

observance, religious, n. *ada*.

obstinacy, n. *kinji*.

obstinate, adj. *maikinji*, pl. *masukinji*; to be obstinate *chuya**

obtain, tr. v. *same, sami, sama**, *samo*, e.g. may we obtain salvation *amusami teira* E 52; *riske, riski, ruska, chi**, e.g. thou obtainest not everything that thou wishest for *ba duka niffa guri kan ruska* B 64 n.

obtained, to be, v. *samu**.

obvious, adj. *tsahiri*.

obviously, adv. *tsahiri*.

occasion, n. (=time of an occurrence) *lot(t)u, lokachi**.

occupation, n. 1. (=a being occupied or busied) *shag(g)ali, shog(g)eli, shug(g)eli* or *shag(g)al**, e.g. the occupations of this world *shag(g)alin dunia* B 50; 2. (=a trade, profession etc.) *goni**.

odd, adj. *bako, da bako*.

oddity, n. (=strangeness) *bakonchi, bakontaka*.

odour, n. *wari* and *wardi**, very frequently of a bad, disagreeable odour, so also *doi* or *doyi*; an agreeable or sweet o. *kamshi*; concr. a thing producing an agreeable o. or scent *abin kamshi*; to get or emit a bad o. *zama wari, yin wari, ruba* or *riba*; to perceive such an o. *jin wari*.

of, prep. (genitive) *na*, fem. *ta*; also expressed by the connective forms in *-n* (a contraction of *na*), e.g. history of the kings *labari na sarakuna* or *labarin sarakuna*. The genitive relation is often expressed by the addition of a

possessive pronoun, thus, the house of the king *gid(d)an sariki* or more commonly *sariki gid(d)ansa*.

off, adv. e.g. far off, at a distance off *dag(g)a nesa*; to be o. (=depart) *taf(f)i*; to come o. (=happen) *faru*; to go o. (=escape) *fichi, chira**, *gudu**; to take o. (=to mimic, personate) *koikoiyo*.

offence, n. 1. (=displeasure) *haushi*; to feel o. *jin haushi*; 2. (=transgression, sin) *zamba* or *zamba, zunufi* or *zunubi*, pl. *zunufai*; 3. (=an annoyance) *alale, abin alale*.

offend, tr. v. 1. (=to commit a transgression) *yin zamba, yin zunufi*; 2. (=to annoy) *alale*.

offer, in bargaining, to make an, v. *taya, taia* or *tayi*, also *yin tayi*.

officer, n. *zarumi, zaromi, zarmi* or *jarimi*, pl. *zarumai*; spec. o. at court *turaki, maijada*; royal o. *bango, makama, dogari**.

officers, n. a king's o. *fadawa*, q.v.; spec. one of the chief o. *maji*; one of the court o. at Zaria *sarikin makira*.

official, n. *gall(l)adima**, pl. *gal(l)adimai**; on the precedence of officials see vol. I. *gall(l)adima*; title of an o. at court *manzo*.

offspring, n. *dia* or *diya, iri*, pl. *irare*.

often, adv. *palinwota**, *sautari*.

oil, n. *mai*; any dark o. *alayed(d)i*; spec. o. obtained from nuts, used for rubbing camels *zurma*; o. from ground or monkey nut *main ged(d)a*; o. from the *kwakwa* palm *main ja, alayed(d)i*; o. from coriander seed *main ridi*; o. from the seeds of the shea-butter tree *main kedanya* and *dankon kedanya*; large fish from which oil for eating is obtained *gini*, also *zau*.

ointment, n. *main shafewa, jibda*.

old, adj. *tsfo*, fem. *tsfua*, pl. *tsofi* and *tsofofi*; o. age *tsufa*; to grow o. *tsufa, tsufe, tsufa* and *yin tsufa*; he is o. *yayinsa ya wuche*; o. man with bent back *takoko*.

old, of, adv. *dā, daa* and *loka-chindā*; as of o. *kamān nadā*.

olden, in...time, adv. phr. see prec.

olive, tree, n. *zaiti** (the olive is not found in Hausaland itself).

on, prep. *bis(s)a* and *abis(s)a*, e.g. o. a horse *bis(s)a doki*; o. a hill (*abis(s)a* or *abis(s)an tudu*).

once, adv. *sau* (or *so*) *daia*; to do a thing o. *tab(b)a*, e.g. I saw him o. *na tabba ganinsa*; at o. (= forthwith) I will go at o. *zan rikka taffi*; o. (= in former times) *lokachindā*; in a weaker sense (= on one occasion), e.g. there was o. a man *mutum ke nan* or *akwoi woni mutum*.

one, num. adj. *daia* or *daya*, e.g. o. cubit *kamu daia*; o. of you *daiunku*; o. another *junansu*; o. at a time *daia daia*; o. here o. there *daia daia*; not even o. (in negative sentence) *ko daia*; but o. *sai daia*.

oneself, periphr. for, refl. pron. *zuchia*, see **self**.

onion, n. *albas(s)a*, pl. *albas(s)osi*; wild o. *habki*; spec. onions cooked in soup *taushi*; dried leaves of onions *lauashi*.

only, adj. and adv. *makadaichi* or *mukadaichi, kad(d)ai, sai, saidai, karuwe* or *karuwi, buss**, e.g. he only *shi makadaichi* or *shi kaddai*; there was nothing in it, stones o. *babu chikinta sai druatsu*; you have o. to stretch out your hand and take it *saidai ka mika hanunka ka karbata*.

onwards, adv. *gab(b)a, da gab(b)a*; to go o. (= to advance) *yin gab(b)a, chin gab(b)a*.

onyx, n. *mosaham**.

ooze, intr. v. also = to o. out, *zub(b)a, zub(b)o* or *suba**.

open, to be, v. *budu*; to lay o. *tona* and *tone*; cf. seq.

open, tr. v. *buda, bude* or *budi, wari*, e.g. a book; *hankude** e.g. a door; to o. by making a hole in anything *fuda* or *huda*; to o. out *fida* or *fide* e.g. of flaying or of unfolding a standard E 13; to o. by untying *bal(l)e*.

opened, particip. *budede*, fem.

- budeda*, pl. *budedu*, also expressed by the pass. forms *abude* and *akuntuna**; *kurkur-kur** B 32 note; to be o. *fudu* and pass. of *bude*, e.g. when all the gates were o. *lokachinda dukan kofofi abudesu*.
- opening**, n. (= aperture) *baki*, pl. *bakuna*; (= hole) *baria**; (= commencement) *farawa*, e.g. he composed a song with a beautiful o. *ya yi waka da keaun farawa*; the act of o. *budawa, fudawa*.
- openly**, adv. *abude, sar(r)ari, asar(r)ari*.
- opine**, intr. v. *tamaḥa* (used with pres. forms in *na*), *yin tamaḥa*.
- opponent**, n. *abokin gab(b)a*, cf. enemy.
- opportunity**, n. *dama, tsarafi**, e.g. he had not the o. *ba ya samu dama*; I have o. to *ina da tsarafi*.
- oppose**, v. *han(n)a, kar(r)a, kar(r)o, yin kar(r)o*, cf. conflict.
- oppress**, tr. v. *tsune, tsani* and *tsanache*.
- oppressed**, particip. adj. *makaskuchi*, pl. *makaskasta*.
- oppression**, n. *alhaki**.
- or**, conj. *ko*. The correlatives either... or *ko...ko*.
- orb**, n. *guda**, its o. *gudanta* D 64.
- ordeal**, by water, n. *gwaska*.
- order**, n. 1. (= custom, rule or method of procedure) *ada, tada, alada**; 2. (= a command) *hakumchi* or *hukumchi*; 3. adv. phr. in o. (= in good order, correct) *daidai*; conj. in o. that *domin, don, en, hardai*, e.g. he took medicine in o. that he might be cured *ya sha magani domin aworikeshi*; in o. that not *domin kad(d)a*, e.g. let us take great care in o. that we may not miss the way *mu tunane kwarai domin kadda mu rassa hainya*; in o. to *garin*, e.g. you and I will go out in o. to take a walk on the outside of the town *ni da kai zamu taffi garin yawo bayan birni*.
- order**, v. *hakumta* or *hakumche, yin umorni, kadertu*; the last used of God.
- ordered**, particip. (= arranged) *shiriyaye*, fem. *shiriyaya*, pl. *shiriyayu*.
- ordinance**, n. *sheria*, pl. *sheriai*.
- ordure**, n. *kashi*.
- ore**, iron, n. *tam(n)a*.
- origin**, n. *mafari, usali**; the o. of a fable or story, i.e. what the fable explains or accounts for *dalili*.
- ornament**, n. 1. abstr. (= embellishment) *ado*, e.g. for o. *na ado*; 2. concr. ornaments *kayan ado*; spec. o. for neck *hanchi*; o. on horse's head *chakasabra*; wrist o. of iron, ivory, etc. *warami*, pl. *waramai*.
- ornamental**, adj. *na ado*.
- orphan**, n. *maraya*, fem. *marainia*, pl. *marayu*.
- oryx**, n. *marea**.

ostrich, n. *jim(m)ina*.

other, pronominal adj. 1. (= different) *dabam*, e.g. give me o. fish *ka bani kifi dabam*; o. words *maganganu dabam*; 2. correlatives, the o. *wonchan* or *wanchan*, fem. *wochan*, pl. *wod(d)anan*; less emphatic of various members of a group, e.g. the one...the o. (= one...another) pl. some...others *woni* or *wani*, fem. *wota*, pl. *wonsu*, *woosu* or *wodansu* repeated, e.g. the one said yes the o. said no, quarrelling *woni ya che i woni ya che aa suna yin gerdama*; some will go over running, others slowly, others crawling *wodansu kamar gudu woosu sanu sanu wodansu da jan jiki su ka ketarewa* F 155; 3. o. than (equivalent to Engl. else) *sai*, this is seldom used except in negative statements, e.g. nothing else but blood *sai jini*; *bamda*, e.g. we have nothing o. than this *ba muna da komi bamda wonan*; cf. another.

otherwise, conj. *fache**, *balshe**, *bashe**.

ought, aux. v. 1. (personal construction) *wajaba*, *wajabu* or *wajiba*, e.g. we o. to repent *mu wajaba tuba*; 2. (impersonal constr.) *kamata*, *kamache*, *wajiba*, e.g. *ya wajiba mu tuba*, or *ya kamata mu tuba*; *wajib* or *wajibi* is used with the v. to be, e.g. *wajibi ne* (or *ke*) *mu tuba*.

our, poss. pron. 1. suffixed *-mu* or *-nmu*, e.g. o. relations *dengimu* or *denginmu*; 2. separate, when obj. possessed is masc. *namu*, when fem. *tamu*; thus, o. horse *doki namu*, o. mare *godia tamu*.

ourselves, refl. pron. see **self**.

out, adv. *woje*, e.g. he has gone o. *ya taffi woje*; the fire has gone o. *uruta ta mutu*; o. of *dag(g)a*, e.g. he took a stone o. of his pocket *ya fitasda duchi daggu aljifinsa*.

outdo, tr. v. (= surpass) *fi*, *faye*.

outgo, tr. v. (= surpass) *fi*, (go beyond) *gochi**, *goche**.

outrun, tr. v. *rig(g)a*, *rig(g)aya* or *rig(g)agi**, *tseri*.

outside, adv. *awoje*, *woje* and *dag(g)a woje*; o. the town *bayan birni*.

outward, adv. *dag(g)a woje*.

oven, n. *tanda*, *tanderu*.

over, adv. (= left, remaining) to be o. *wanza* and *wonzu*, what is o., n. *burbishi*; to be o. (= be finished) *kare*; it is o. *ya kare*; o. and above, prepositional phr. *bamda*; o., prep. *bis(s)a*, *abis(s)a*, with or without *ga*, e.g. he fell o. a big log *ya fadi bissa baban itache*, he spread his gown o. the stones *ya shimfida rigansa bissa ga duatsu*.

overcharge, n. (= an excessive price) *kura*.

overcharge, v. (= to charge an excessive price) *shirga* with

- tsada* (dear), e.g. he overcharges
yana shirya tsada.
- overcome**, tr. v. *rinjaye* or *rinjaya*, *faskare*, *i*; the last used with *ma*, e.g. we o. them *mu i masu*; sleep overcomes me *berichi yakamani*; cf. overpower.
- overflow**, intr. v. (of rivers) *yin gibi*.
- overpower**, tr. v. *ka(s)she*, *ka(s)shi* or *kissa*, *gargara*, *buaye*; he overpowered me *ya buayeni*.
- overtake**, tr. v. *turda* or *tarasda*, *ishe*; fig., e.g. to o. in a fault *rize*.
- overthrow**, tr. v. *birkichi* or *birkiche*; *giche* or *gichi*; *jirkita* or *jirkiche*; *jefasda*.
- overturn**, tr. v. *tankade*, *juya*; the latter used with *da*.
- owe**, tr. v. expressed by n. *bashi* (debt), e.g. I owe him *ins da bashinsa* (lit. I have his debt); he owes me *shina da bashina*; cf. debt.
- owl**, n. *mujia*, pl. *mujije*.
- own**, tr. v. expressed by *ga* (with pronouns *gare*), the pres. form in *na* with *da*; *ke*, fem. *che* with *da*; and by the forms in *mai*-, e.g. I o. the horse *doki gareni*, *ina da doki*, *ni ke da doki* and *ni ne* (or *ke*) *maidoki*.
- own**, adj. e.g. my o. *nawa*, with fem. obj. *tuwa*; cf. H. G. p. 17.
- owner**, n. *maichi*, *maiabu*; connective form *maiabin*; the forms in *mai*- frequently express ownership, e.g. house o. *maigid(d)a*; o. of a boat
- maiijirigi*; cf. under *mai* vol. i. 153.
- OX**, n. *sa*, pl. *shanu*; *kurtumi*, pl. *kurtumai*; pack o. with wide spreading horns *takarikari*, pl. *takarikarai*.
- pack**, tied up, n. *rizuma*.
- pack**, up, to, tr. v. (e.g. a load) *labda*, *gara**.
- package**, n. *kaya*, pl. *kayayeki*; *kabak(k)i*, pl. *kaboka*.
- packet** (e.g. of paper not written on), n. *rizuma**.
- pack-saddle**, n. *surdi*, pl. *suradi* and *surduna*.
- pad**, n. (placed on donkey) *akumari*; (on head of carriers) *gum(m)o*.
- paddle**, used as a rudder, n. *matuki*.
- paddle**, tr. v. *tunkuda jirigi*.
- paddles**, coll. *karoki*, p. of a canoe *fulafule* or *filafile*.
- paddling**, participial n. *tukawa*.
- pagan**, n. coll. *asna* or *arna*; in a less strict sense (= unbeliever) *kafiri*, pl. *kafirai* and *kafirawa*.
- paganism**, n. *addini na* (*asna* or) *arna* or *addinin asna*, *kafrichi*.
- page**, of a book, n. *waraka*, *taba'an takarda*, *shafi**.
- pain**, n. *zafi*, *azaba*, *gobara*, *masiba**, *wohal(l)a* or *wahal(l)a*; labour pains *wohal(l)an haifua*; sharp p. *zogi*; to feel p. *jin zafi*, *shag(g)i** or *sag(g)i**; he feels p. (i.e. on receiving punishment) *ya rikke larura*.

- pain**, tr. v. *jima*, e.g. of a sickness.
- painful**, adj. *da zafi, da wuya, da zogi*.
- palace**, royal, n. *fada*, pl. *fadodi, dandalin sariki*; owner of a p. *maikaşru**, found at F 55.
- palate**, n. *dabori**.
- palaver**, n. *alameri*, shawora**.
- palm**, of hand, n. *tafin hanu, bayan hanu, kaf(f)a**, pl. *kafafu** or *kafafe**.
- palm**, n. (the tree) deb. p. *gigina*, pl. *gigangani, giginyoyi* or *giginai*; the dum p. *goriba* or *goreba*, pl. *goribai* and *goribobi*; the oil p. *kwakwa*; large species of p. with edible fruit *kab(b)a*, pl. *kab(b)obi*; a large p. with hard fruit *chiwo*; a small, thorny p. *şabara*; a young p. tree *kilili*; another species is *takurua* or *tukurua*; bag made from leaves of the last *kororo*; fruit of the *gigina* p. *kurdugo*; p. leaves *tsaiwa*; rope material from *chiwo* p. *dankon chiwo*; p. oil *main ja*; p. wine from the *tukurua* p. *bam* or *bumbi* and *bummi*.
- pan**, cooking, brass, with handle, n. *algideri* or *alkideri*.
- panic**, n. (= sudden terror) *tunzurua, tinzera, razan(n)a*.
- pannier**, grass, n. *gufa* or *gufata, adila**.
- pant**, intr. v. *sheda* and *yin sheda, shesheka*.
- panther**, n. *rabji*, spec. a small, ill-smelling p. *tunku*.
- pap**, n. (of the breast) *nono*, pl. *nonua*.
- papaw**, n. see **pawpaw**.
- paper**, n. *takarda*, pl. *takardu*; a p. (= a document) *laya*; sheet of p. *taba'an takarda*.
- parable**, n. *michali**, *misali** or *machali**; to speak in parables *yin machali* D 94; *almara**.
- paradise**, n. *aljenna*, e.g. to p., the place of continuance *zua aljenna dakin tabbetawa* F 221.
- paragraph**, of the Koran, n. *izufi**.
- parallel**, that which is, or like, adj. *maimeki*.
- parallel**, to make, tr. v. *daidaita*.
- paralyzed**, adj. *maiwwadawu*.
- parasite**, n. (= a hanger on at others' tables) *maikwarika*.
- parch**, tr. v. *surya*; also *soiya* and *suya*.
- parched**, particip. *soiyaye* or *soiyeye*, fem. *soiyaya*, pl. *soiyayu*.
- pardon**, n. *gáfara* and *gáferta*.
- pardon**, tr. v. *gáfara, yin gáferta, yafe*; as a polite expr. I beg your p. = excuse me *gáfara* or *ka gáfara mani*.
- parent**, n. *mahaişi*, pl. *mahaişa*.
- parents**, n. *uwaye, iyaye*; cf. also prec.
- parrot**, n. *aku*.
- part**, n. *rab(b)i, rabo* or *rabu*, pl. *raberibi, wari, shashi* or *sashi**, e.g. each of them shall receive his p. *kowanensu zai samu*

- rabonsa*; (= region) *woje*, pl. *wosashe**.
- part**, tr. v. (= to separate) *rab(b)i* or *rib(b)i** B 57, 58.
- parting**, n. *raba*, e.g. on account of its p. from the world *don rabanta da dunia* C 29.
- partition**, n. (i.e. wall) *shamak(k)i*, pl. *shamak(k)ai*.
- partner**, n. *kama**, pl. *kamanu**.
- partridge**, red-legged, n. *makerua*, *fakara**.
- paschal lamb or ram**, n. *ragon laya*.
- pass**, v. *wuche*, *wushe** or *fuche*; to p. anyone on the path *gochi* or *goche*; to p. the night *kwana*, *kwanta*, *wuni*; to p. away *shude*, *shuda*, *shudi* or *shutse**, *wuche*, *wushe** or *fuche*, or *fuchi**, *lulachi*, *wulga*, *wulge* or *wurga*; to p. by *wulga*, *wulge* or *wurga*, *wuche*, *wushe** or *fuche*; to p. over (= to cross) *ketare*, (= to skip words in book) *ratsa**, *chingara**.
- passer-by**, rapid, n. *shawagi**.
- passing away**, adj. (used of this world) *maiata* or *mayata* D 85, F 37.
- passionateness**, n. *harara**.
- passover**, feast corresponding with, n. *gal(l)an laya*.
- past**, the, n. (= former times) *da*, *baya*, e.g. the wars of the p. *yakoki nadā*; the things of the p. *abubua nabuya*; a thing p. *abin baya*.
- pastor**, n. (= shepherd) *makiyayi* or *makiayi*, pl. *makiyaya*.
- pasture ground**, n. *wuria kiwo*.
- pasture**, v. tr. and intr. (= to graze) *kiwo*.
- patch**, n. *banke*, *shafi*, *fit(t)o*.
- patch**, tr. v. (of cloth, clothes) *banke*.
- path**, n. *turuba*, pl. *turubobi*, *hainya* or *haya*, pl. *hainyoyi*, *tafariki*, *tafarki*, *tafarke* or *tafrika**, pl. *tafarkohi*, *karamta*; a straight p. *hainya sosai*; a narrow p. *hainya maitasai*; fig. the p. of religion or conduct *hainya* or *tafariki*, e.g. the paths of Mussulmans *hainyoyin musulmi* E 18; they left the (right) p., they followed one that was crooked *sun san tafarki sun bi wanda ta fanda* A 22.
- patience**, n. *hankuri*, *hankura* or *hakora*; a man of extraordinary p. *rakumin allah*; to show p. (to be patient), *yin* or the forms ending in *-na* followed by *hankuri*, e.g. they have p. *sun yin hankuri* or *sun hankuri*.
- patient**, 1. adj. (= calm, not fretful) *da hankuri*, *mai hankuri*, pl. *masu hankuri*, *da sainyin rai*, *ṣabiri**; to be p. *jinri*, cf. prec.; 2. n. (= a sick person) *marasafia**.
- pawpaw**, n. i.e. both the tree and the fruit *gonda* or *gwanda**.
- pay**, n. *lada*, *bia* or *biya*, e.g. that is their p. *ladansu ke nan*.
- pay**, tr. v. *bia*, *rama*, also used in the sense of requite and reward; to p. a debt *bia* (or

biya) bashi; to p. a second time or over again *kotontawa*.

payment, n. see **pay**.

peace, n. *lafia* (lit. safety, cf. also *aminchi* G 4), e.g. there is p. between us *lafia tsakaninmu*; you can travel in p. *kana iya yin taffia da lafia*; p. of mind *dadin zuchia*; p. ! (a salutation) *salam!*

peace-maker, n. *masakanche*.

peak, n. *kai*, e.g. p. of a hill *kain tudu*; spec. p. of a saddle *kwochia*; the front p. of a saddle *kwochia gab(b)a*; its hind p. *kwochia baya*.

peal, of thunder, n. *tsawa*, cf. B 139.

pearl, n. *murjan**; idiom *zaura (?)*; pearls coll. *kwoin kifi*.

peck, tr. v. *koto*.

peculiarity, n. (of animate beings) *hal(l)i*, pl. *hal(l)ai*.

peel, n. (of fruits, etc.) *kosfa*, *kwoosfa* or *kwaosfa*, pl. *kosfofi* or *kwoosfofi*.

peel, v. 1. tr. *kware* or *kwari*, *bare*, *kankari*, *fere**; 2. intr. to p. or p. off, as the skin from a blister *sali*, *soli* or *soale*.

peg, n. *maratayi*.

pelican, n. *kwasakwasa*, *jinjimi (?)*.

pelt, to, with, tr. v. e.g. to p. with stones *jefa da duatsu*.

pen, n. 1. (for writing) *alkalami*, pl. *alkalamai*; 2. (enclosure for sheep, etc.) *garike*, *gerke*, pl. *garikuna*, *gerkuna*, *turike*,

tuke, *ruga*, e.g. where shall I put my horse? put him in the cow p. *enna ni sa dokina sashi* (*gariken* or *agariken* or) *chikin gariken shanu*.

pendant, stone, worn by women, n. *talhatina*, pl. *talhatinu*.

pennisetum, n. p. *distichum karangia*, *karengia* or *karingia*; p. *typhoideum acha*.

people, n. *mutane*, pl. of *mutum* (in the sense of population and persons generally), e.g. the p. of Lingi *mutanen lingi*; the p. whom they killed *mutane da suka kasshe*; the p. of a town or tribe *kauwi**; (= connections, relations, etc.) *kibanta**; (= followers, congregation, etc.) *alum(m)a** C 42, *um(m)ata** E 3 at both places in connection with Mohammed.

pepper, n. *berkono*, of which a small kind is called *berkono defu*, a large *berkono tatasai*, *yaji* B 17; spec. a small p. *tamka*; a small red p. *chil(t)a*, *kol(l)e*; fruit of large tree, ground, hot like p. *kimbu*; hot berries like p. *masoro*; a bush producing a kind of p. *chitafo*.

peradventure, adv. *wotakila*, *hal(l)ama**.

perceive, tr. v. 1. gen. (= to apprehend by the senses) *ji*; to p. by sight *gan(n)i*; 2. (of comprehending, understanding) *fahimta* or *fahumta*, *ji* and also

- san(n)i*, e.g. do you p. I do *ka fahimta. na fahimta*; to p. something wrong *farga*, e.g. I p. that you are cheating me *na farga da kai*.
- perfect**, adj. *ingatachi* G 7; to be p. *chik(k)a*.
- perfect**, tr. v. *chik(k)a*; to be p.; cf. prec.
- perforate**, tr. v. *fuda* or *huda, sosoke*; cf. pierce.
- perforce**, adv. *tilas, da tilas*, e.g. we had to go on board p. *mun hawa bissa jirigi da tilas*; cf. force.
- perfume**, n. see odour.
- perhaps**, adv. *wotakila, hal(l)a-ma**, *waushi** (?).
- peril**, n. see danger.
- perish**, intr. v. (to be spoiled, wasted or destroyed in any way) *bata, bache*, e.g. they p. together *su bache tare* B 139, *lalachi, mache (machi*)*, *rizbata*, for the last three cf. B 101, 102; (= to die) *mutu*, e.g. they perished of hunger *sun mutu da yunwa*.
- perished**, participial adj. *lala-tache*, fem. *lalatachia*, pl. *lala-tatu*.
- perishing**, participial n. *lala-chewa*.
- perjury**, n. *kapara*; to commit p. (= to swear falsely) *yin kapara*.
- permanence**, n. *tabbata, tabbetu, tabbetawa*.
- permanent**, adj. *matabbata*.
- permission**, n. *yerji* or *yerje, yer-da*, e.g. grant me p. *bani jerji*; by the p. of God *da yerdan allah* or *bissa yerdan allah*.
- permit**, tr. v. see allow.
- perplex**, tr. v. *dame* or *dama*.
- perplexed**, to be, intr. v. *damu*; one who is p. *machiachi*.
- perplexity**, n. *tinzera*.
- persecute**, tr. v. *has(s)ada, wahalsha*.
- persecutor**, n. *maihas(s)adi*.
- person**, n. *mutum*, pl. *mutane*, also (with or without *mutum mutane**) *woni* or *wani**, fem. *wota*, pl. *wonsu, woosu* or *wodansu*, e.g. some persons *wodansu mutane* or *wodansu*; a certain p. who shall be nameless *mutum kaza*.
- perspiration**, n. *jib(b)i, gum(m)i, zufa*.
- perspire**, intr. v. *jib(b)i, zufa*.
- persuade**, tr. v. *lalashi* or *lilashi, biko*.
- persuaded**, particip. pass. (= sure or certain) is expressed by means of *tabbata, san(n)i*, etc., e.g. he was p. that...*ya tabbata...or ya sanni kwarai...or ya yi babu shakka...*
- pervert**, tr. v. (= to lead from truth or right) *rude*.
- perverted**, part. pass. (= misled) *rudade*, fem. *rudada*, pl. *rudadu*; to be p. *rudu* B 52.
- pestilence**, n. *aloba*.
- pestle**, large, n. *kayan dakka*; (of wood) *tabaria*, pl. *tabare*.
- physic**, n. (= medicine) *magani*, pl. *muganguna* and *magunguna*.

- physician**, n. *maimágani*, pl. *masumágani*.
- pick**, tr. v. (= choose) *zabe*, *zaba* or *zabi**; to p. a quarrel *tona fad(d)a, zabe*; to p. out pieces of dirt from cotton *tsina, tsinche, tsunche* and *tsinta*; to p. up *id*.
- picked**, part. pass. (= chosen) *zababe*, fem. *zababa*, pl. *zababu*.
- picking a thing off the ground**, particip. n. *tsintua, sintua**.
- picture**, n. *misali**, *michali**, *kama**, pl. *kamanu**; his p. *misalinsa* or *kamansa*.
- piece**, n. *wari*; small p. of anything *chibiri* or *chibari, guzura*, pl. *guzure, tarfi**, *guntu*; the last in phr. *guntun abu* q.v.
- pieces**, to tear to, tr. v. *tsatsaga*.
- pierce**, tr. v. *fuda* or *huda, fuji, soka, soke* or *soki, yin sakia*; intensives, to p. many holes *fufuji*; to p. through *sosoke*.
- piercing**, n. e.g. of the skin by an arrow *sakia*.
- pig**, n. (domestic) *gursuna* or *gurusunu, gado*.
- pigeon**, n. *tantabara, tandabara*, pl. *tantabaru* and *tandabaru*; large species of wood p. *tankerike*; wild p. *berdo*, pl. *berdaye*; a bird larger than p. with red rim round eyes *hasbia* or *harbia*.
- pike**, n. (= spear) *mashi* or *maji*, pl. *masusuka*.
- pile**, n. (= heap) *taru* or *taro*, pl. *tarori*.
- pile up**, tr. v. *tara, tatara, had(d)a*; pass. to be piled up *anhad(d)a* A 51.
- pilfer**, v. *sata, yin sata, sache* or *zache*.
- pilferer**, n. *maisata*.
- pilgrim**, n. *haji*; pilgrims *mahajta**, e.g. B 166 O pilgrims I pray you wait a little while for me, let us go together *muhajta ni ke roko ku yi mani jinkiri amuje tare*.
- pilgrimage**, n. *haji*; to go on the p. *haji* and *taf(f)i haji*, e.g. I have a strong desire to go on the p., to go to Medina, to visit the prophet *guri gareni en taffi haji ni en je madina en yi ziarata*.
- pill**, n. *chibiri** or *chibari**.
- pillage**, n. (= booty) *abin kwache*.
- pillage**, tr. v. *kwache*, e.g. he conquered them, he pillaged their property *ya chisu ya kwache dukiansu*.
- pillar**, n. *gimshiki* or *gumshiki*.
- pillow**, n. *matashin kai*.
- pin**, n. *tsiko*, pl. *tsikuna, tsinki**.
- pincers**, n. *kwagua*; small p. *hansaki* or *ansaki, madebin kaya**.
- pinch of**, to take, v. *tsakura* or *tsakara, guzura*.
- pinch**, tr. v. *tsakura* or *tsakara, tsunki* or *tsumki*.
- pinnacle**, n. *kokua*.
- pipe**, tobacco-, n. *tukunian taba*.
- pistol**, n. *akodi, akotia*; small p. *algaderia**.
- pit**, n. *rami*, pl. *ramuna, ganwa*;

spec. a deep wide p. *hangarma**;
p. for cooking bread in *tanda*
or *tanderu*; p. for storing corn
tsunja; p. for game to fall into
hak(k)o, pl. *hak(k)oki*; cesspit
salga, pl. *salgagi*; dye-p. *ma-*
rin(n)a, pl. *marin(n)ai*.

pitch, tr. v. 1. (= cast, throw)
jefa; 2. spec. to p. a tent
kaf(f)a lema.

pitcher, n. *tulu*, pl. *tulina*, *tu-*
kunia, pl. *tukane*, also pro-
nounced *tukwane* or *tukuane*,
randa, pl. *randuna*.

pitfall, n. *hak(k)o*, pl. *hak(k)oki*.

pitiful, adj. (= compassionate)
*imani**, *mitalafi**.

pity, n. *tausai* also *tausaye*, *sau-*
*na**; to have or feel p. *yin* (or
jin) *tausai* or *tausaiye*, *jika**;
what a p.! *abin tausaiye*.

pity, tr. v. cf. prec.

place, n. *wuri*, pl. *wurare*, *woje*,
pl. *wosushe**, *big(e)ri** or *bikri**;
(= district, country) *gari*; an
uninhabited p. *dawa*; in cir-
cumlocution to supply the want
of various special nouns and
adjectives, e.g. a p. to flee to
(= refuge) *wurin gudu* B 95,
98, so also *gid(d)a*, e.g. p. or
abode of pain *gidan azaba*
B 24, cf. D 79, 85; a secret p.
loloki asiri D 61; in that p.
wuri nan, *awuri nan*, *dag(g)a*
nan, e.g. there are many hippo-
potami in that p. *akwoi dorinai*
dayawa dagga nan; in p. of
(= instead of), e.g. in his place
gurubinsa, *bigerinsa*, *wurinsa*;

the last also = at his p., i.e. near
him, with him; to give p. to
(= to make room for) *ras(s)i*;
to take p. *faru*.

place, nouns of, these are formed
by means of prefix *ma-*, e.g.
hiding p. *maboya*, kitchen *ma-*
daffa, inn *mashid(d)i* from *bo-*
ya, *daffa*, *shid(d)a* respectively.

place, tr. v. *sa*, *sainya*, e.g. they
who placed it in front of their
foreheads *wodanda sunka sata*
gaben goshi B 110; p. this
world behind you, p. the next
world before your forehead *ku*
sainya duniaka a baianka ku
sainya lahiralka gaben goshi
B 51; *aje* denotes also to
place aside; *dora* also fre-
quently in the sense of placing
on, e.g. he placed me on the
camel *ya dorani* (*bayan ga* or)
bissa ga rakumi; *jefo** found
in pass., e.g. they shall be
placed *ajefo* F 140; spec. to
p. in the earth (as the locust
its eggs) *turubude*; to p. on
the ground (e.g. a load) *jib(b)e*,
kas(s)a; to p. together (e.g. for
the purpose of comparison)
kotanchi or *kwatanchi*.

placing, of a thing, participial n.
*sauwa**.

plague, n. 1. (= pestilential dis-
ease) *aloba*, also (of both men
and cattle) *rangaz(z)a**; 'he
caught the p.' turn by 'the p.
caught him' *aloba ta kamashi*
(or *sameshi*); 2. (= a provi-
dential visitation) *azaba**; 3.

(= an annoyance) *alale*, *wohal(l)a*.

plague, tr. v. (= to vex) *wohalshe*; cf. annoy.

plain, n. *fili*, pl. *filaye*, *sär(r)ari*, *karikara* or *kärkara*, pl. *karkarori* and *karkaroni*, *konga* or *kanga*; the battle p. *kangan fad(d)a*; a wide p. *baiala* or *bayala**.

plain, adj. (of language simple and open) *sär(r)ari* and *asar(r)ari*, these words also = plainly.

plainly, adv. cf. prec.

plait, tr. v. *tubka*, *tufka* or *tupka*, *kis(s)o*, *yin kis(s)o*.

plaiting, of hair, n. *doka*, *kis(s)o*; p. of hair in two lines *jaki*; hasty p. of woman's hair *kumbuchi*.

plaits, coll. n. (of woman's hair) *bijaji*.

plan, n. (= scheme, device) *wayo* and *waya*.

plank, n. *faskari*, *gungume*, pl. *gungumai*, *rumpa*, pl. *rumfuna*.

planks, to make into, v. *yin faskari*.

plant, tr. v. 1. (= to set or sow in the ground) *shipka* or *shuka*, *yin shipka*, *dezza* the last of planting trees; 2. (= to set or place) *sa*, e.g. there was no place to p. our footsteps *babu wurinda mu sa matakai bissa*.

plant, n. special names of plants, most of which are not as yet identified: an aquatic p. *shalla*;

p. from which a scent is procured *jiji*; p. from which native ropes are made *ramma*; a p. the leaves of which are used as medicine *raidore*; a leguminous p. *zamarka*; a medicinal p. (senna?) *filasko*; a p. resembling a tomato *gauta*, pl. *gautaye*; a p. with edible root *mirmirto*; a p. with red flower and poisonous nut *chini da zugu*.

plantain, n. *ayaba* applied both to tree and fruit, also used to denote the banana.

planter, n. *manomi* and *monomi*, pl. *monoma*.

planting, of seeds, n. *biso*.

plants, small, coll. n. *shipka* or *shuka*.

plaster, tr. v. (of walls etc.) *yabe*.

plastered, participial adj. *yababe*, fem. *yababa*, pl. *yababu*.

plate, n. (flat plates are not used by the Hausas) see *dish*.

play, n. (= the doing of anything for amusement) *worigi*, *geauga**; hail to you at your p. (salutation to persons at p.) *sannunku da worigi*.

play, v. (of sport, amusement) *yin worigi*; (of music) *yin wasa*, *yin kiddi*; the last particularly applied to instruments struck or beaten.

player, on drum, n. *makiddi*; spec. p. on the *kalango* drum *kuntukuro*.

playing, n. (of amusement) *worigi*, *geauga**; (of music and

- especially drumming) *kidda* or *kiddi*, *molo*, pl. *moluna*.
- plaything**, n. *abin worigi*; spec. p. made from a seed pod *kachokacho*.
- pleasant**, adj. *maidadi*, *da dadi*.
- please**, tr. v. *sa dadi*, *gam(m)a* and *gamshe*, e.g. it pleases me *ya gam(m)ani* and *ya gamshe*; p. (elliptical = if you p.) *mana*, e.g. come here, p. *zo mana*; p. (i.e. allow me) *beri*.
- pleased**, to feel, intr. v. *jin dadi*.
- pleasure**, n. (= agreeable sensation or emotion) *dadi*, *nima*; (a gratification) *abin dadi*, *abin murna*.
- pledge**, n. *jingina* or *jinjina*; p. held for money owing *kamua**.
- pledge**, tr. v. (= to leave anything as a p.) *jingina* or *jinjina*.
- Pleiades**, pr. n. *tarsoa*.
- plentifully**, adv. *tari*.
- plenty**, n. *yawa*, *dayawa*, *kar(r)i*, *tari*, *tululu*, e.g. p. of words *yawan magana* or *magana dayawa*; p. to eat *zari*, *anchia**; there shall be a p. to eat, do ye hear *anchiar tari ku ji* D 57.
- plot**, n. *wayo*, *waya*; to form a p. *gam(m)a*.
- plough**, n. spec. large hoe bent back like a small p. *galma* or *garma*.
- plover**, kind of, n. *danraguwa*.
- pluck**, tr. v. *chira*, *chire*, *chiro* or *tsira*, *tsire*, *tsiro*; (to p. fruit etc.) *tsinki*, *tsunke*, *tsinko*; (to p. a fowl) *fige* or *figi*.
- plum**, sort of, n. *gawasa*, pl. *gawasai*, *gawasuna* and *gawasoshi*.
- plunder**, n. *abin kwache*, *kwache* or *kwashe*.
- plunder**, tr. v. *kwache* or *kwashe*.
- plunge**, v. 1. tr. (= immerse) *tsoma soma** or *zoma**, *nuche*; 2. intr. *fadi*, e.g. he leaped plunging headlong into the water *ya tuma yana fadi da gangara chikkin rua*; see also *dive*.
- plural**, n. (grammatical term) *dayawa*, e.g. 'doki is singular, dawaki is p.' *doki daia dawaki dayawa*.
- pocket**, n. *aljifi* or *aljifa*, pl. *aljifu* or *aljifuna*.
- pod**, n. (of nuts, beans etc.) *kobsa*, *kopsa* or *kobso*.
- poem**, n. (in the sense of metrical composition, song) *waka*; to compose a p. *id*, e.g. Malam Derhu sits there composing his poems *malam derhu shina zamne shina waka*.
- poet**, n. *maiwaka*.
- point**, n. *kokua**, *tsini**; points above or below letters *wasali*.
- point**, out, tr. v. *nuna* or *nuni*, *god(d)a* or *goda*, e.g. before he could p. it out I saw it myself *tun ba ya nuna mani ni na ganta da kaina*; (in the sense of explain, make clear) *gaya*.
- pointed**, adj. *tsini* or *zini*, *da tsini*.
- poison**, n. *def(f)i* or *daf(f)i* (for

- arrows, of snakes etc.), e.g. snakes pour forth p. *machi-zai deffi su ka bungulawa* F 190; *máyaní*, pl. *maganguna* and *magunguna*; p. given in food *sammu* or *sammo*, *kwariche*; p. for arrows *uwal deffi*, *zabgui*; p. for mice etc. *madat* or *madas*; a tree from the juice of which a p. for arrows is made *tumia* or *tinia*.
- poisoned**, participial adj. *da def(f)i*.
- poisonous**, adj. cf. prec.; spec. a p. plant *guba* q. v.; a plant with p. nut *chini da zugu*; a p. tree *zanyarami**.
- pole**, n. *gunshiki* or *gimshiki* which also = middle supporting p. of house; p. of tent *tankari*; poles used in supporting a tent coll. *shikashiki*, pl. *shikashikai*; cf. post.
- polish**, tr. v. *gogi* or *goge*.
- pollute**, tr. v. *yin haram*, *kasamta*, *kazamta*.
- polluted**, adj. *janaba*, *kazami*.
- pollution**, n. 1. gen. *kazamta*; 2. (= religious or ceremonial uncleanness) *haram*, *abin haram*.
- pomegranate**, n. *rimmani*.
- pommel**, n. (of a saddle) see **peak**.
- pommel**, tr. v. (= to beat) *buga*, *bubuga*, cf. beat.
- pomp**, n. *sitira* or *sutura*.
- pond**, n. a small p. *gebe*; a large stagnant p. *bingi*, *kurdu-duf(f)i*, *kududuf(f)i* or *kun-duduf(f)i*, *tapki**; spec. the p. of Paradise *kundumi*; we shall be brought to the p. of the prophet, we shall drink and wash *akaimu kundumi ya rasulu mu sha mu wanka* D 76; cf. pool.
- pony**, n. *kuru* and *doki kuru*.
- pool**, n. *tabki*, *tapki* or *tafki*, *rafi*, pl. *rafuna* or *rafafuka*, *fadama*; cf. pond.
- poor**, adj. *talaka*, pl. *talakawa*, *makaskachi*, pl. *makaskasta*.
- poor person**, a, n. *talaka*, *mai-talaka*, *maitsia*, *majinachi**.
- porch**, n. *shigifa* or *shegifa*, pl. *shigifu* and *shigifofi*, *katanga*; spec. a small p. *shirai*; a p. with double entrance *zawre*, pl. *zauruka*.
- porcupine**, n. *begua*, *makibia* (lit. possessor of arrows).
- porridge**, n. *fura*; spec. p. of guinea-corn and rice *suruki*; p. of beans, guinea-corn or (in N. Africa) macaroni *wasawasa*; p. was made for them and they took it *anyi masu fura sunka sha*.
- porter**, n. see **carrier**.
- portion**, n. *rabo* or *rabu*, pl. *raberibi*; a p. (when one of two or more portions) *shashi* or *sashi**.
- possess**, tr. v. this idea is expressed: 1. by the pronominal forms ending in *na* with *da*, e.g. I possess much money *ina da kurdi dayawa*; 2. by *ke* with *da*, e.g. all the property

- that you p. *dukia duka da ku ke da*; 3. by the prep. *ga* (with pronouns *gare*) = is to or belongs to, e.g. he possesses no money *babu kurdi gareshi*; he will p. no power of resistance *ba makawa gare (= gareshi)* D 24.
- possession**, n. 1. abstr. e.g. to gain p. of a kingdom *chin sarota*; not to be in p. of a thing *ras(s)a*; 2. concr. pl. possessions *dukia, samu**, e.g. thy possessions *dukiaka* B 145; the world and its possessions *dunia hal samunta* B 106.
- possessor**, n. *maiabu* connective *maiabin, maichi*; the idea is often expressed by the prefix *mai-*, e.g. the p. of a farm, a boat, *maigona, maijirigi*; the p. of a horse *maidoki* E 8.
- possibly**, adv. see **perhaps**.
- post**, n. (of door) *kobrin kofa, hako**; p. for supporting roof *jigo*, pl. *jiguna*.
- posterior**, adj. (both of time and space) *baia* or *baya, nabaya*, fem. *tabaya*, e.g. the p. limbs *gab(b)obin baya* or *gab(b)obi nabaya*.
- postpone**, tr. v. *fasa*, cf. delay.
- postponing**, particip. n. *fasa-wa*.
- pot**, n. (of earth or iron) *tukunia*, pl. *tukane, tukwane* and *tukuwane*, a sing. coll. *tukumya* A 84; earthen p. *karifi* or *karipi*; large earthen p. *randa*, pl. *randuna*; large earthen p. used as oven *tanda* or *tanderu*; water p. *tulu*, pl. *tulina*.
- potato**, sweet; n. *dankali*; various species are: *gwaza* or *goza*, pl. *gwazuna* and *gwazoyi, kulaku*; a white species *lauer*.
- potent**, adj. *isheshe*, fem. *ishashia*, pl. *ishasu*; cf. powerful.
- potter**, n. *maitukunia*, pl. *masutukunia, maiyimbu**.
- pouch**, n. *tumbi*, pl. *tumbuna*, a sort of leathern p. *sabira**; p. or crop of a bird *maroro* or *malolo*.
- poultry**, n. *kaji*, pl. of *kaza* or *kasa** fowl.
- pound**, n. (of 12 ounces) *rotel**, sometimes pronounced *rotli*.
- pound**, tr. v. *dandaka* or *den-daki*.
- pour**, v. tr. and intr. (= also to pour out, down, off, away, etc.) *zub(b)a, zub(b)o* or *guba**; tr. only *zub(b)as, zubasda* and *zubda*, e.g. I poured out every drop of it *na zubasdashi babu kingi*; intr. only *zubu*, e.g. the rain is pouring or pours down *rua ya zubu*; p. forth *bungulawa** F 190; to p. out (or scatter) *tsiayi*; to p. out grain so that chaff may blow away *sheka*; to p. over (= overflow) intr. *tuda* or *tude*, tr. *tudas*.
- poured**, to be p. out like wheat through a sieve or like water, intr. v. *tarara*.
- pouring**, participial n. *zubuwa* or *zubuwa*; used also with pres. forms in *na*, e.g. they are p.

out *sunu zubuwa*, in an intr. sense.

pout the lips at, to, v. (in derision) *zunde* and *yin zunde*.

poverty, n. *talaichi*, *tsia*, *machia-chi*.

powder, n. (= gunpowder) *albarus* or *albarud*.

powder, tr. v. (= to reduce to p.) *dadaga*.

power, n. 1. (= faculty of doing or causing anything) *iko*, pl. *ikoki*, e.g. we pray that our Lord may give us p., that we may rise up amongst all the followers of Abd-el-Kadr *mu roki ubangizinmu shi bamu iko mu tashi shikin jama'a alkadirawa* E 31; *yi* (Sokoto), e.g. by the power of (God) *da yin allah = da ikon allah*; 2. (= great p., bodily or material strength) *karifi* or *karfi*, pl. *karafa* or *karifuna*; 3. (= political or social p., authority, influence) *hakumi*; 4. (= surpassing p., excellence) *fiko*.

powerful, adj. 1. gen. *isheshe*, fem. *ishashia*, pl. *ishasu*, *maiiko*, e.g. let us fear the meeting with Him who is p. over all *mu tsarshi gamu da maiiko da kowa*; 2. (cf. prec. 2.) *maikarifi*, pl. *masukarifi*, e.g. a p. man *mutum maikarifi*; 3. spec. applied to God *kaderi* A 59; cf. mighty.

powerfully, adv. *da karifi*.

practice, n. *sabo*, e.g. no work in the world can be accomplished

except by p. *aikin dunia duka sai sabo*; (= customary procedure) *ada, tada, alada*.

practised, be, intr. v. *saba*, e.g. I am p. in this *na saba da wonan*.

praise, n. *yab(b)o*, *kirari*, the last also = self-p.; (of praising God) *shukra*, *tasbaha**, *subhana* B 1.

praise, tr. v. *yab(b)o*, *yab(b)a*, *shukra*; *yin yab(b)o* and *yin kirari* F 240; also expressed by nouns of prec. with the present forms in *na*, e.g. I praise thee *ina yabonka* B 21; cf. *ina shukra* B 172, *kuna tasbaha* D 26.

praised, particip. adj. *yeb(b)abe*, fem. *yeb(b)aba*, pl. *yeb(b)abu*.

pray, tr. v. (whether of prayers to God or requests to men) *roko*, *roko*, *roka*, *roke*; construed with an acc. of the person B 4 or with *ga* (before pronouns *gare*) B 155, 156; the thing asked is expressed either by the acc., e.g. I p. our Lord for that which I seek and for my needs *ubangijinmu ni ke roko komi ni ke bida da bukatata* or by a dependent clause, e.g. we p. to the Lord, if we start, that we may obtain provision for our journey from the heathen *mu roki ubangizi izan muna tashi mu yi guzuri da asna* E 34; intr. v. in a religious sense only *addua*, e.g. I p. *ina addua* B 172; *yin addua* D 2, *yin sal(l)a* also with *na* D 22,

- zikri* or *zikir* B 88, C 37; to p. for a person *sal(l)asho** or *sallasho** F 92.
- prayer**, n. *addua*, *ṣal(l)u*, *aṣṣalatu* or *aṣṣalati*; the last also spec. = call to p. at early dawn, call to p. circ. 4 p.m. *azuhur* or *tsohor*; the man who calls to p. *lada**; leader in p. *limam**, pl. *limami*; prayers said by a mallam at a funeral *alfatia*; time of p. about 10 a.m. *wollata*.
- prays**, one who, n. *maṣal(l)ati*.
- preach**, v. *wa'utsi** and *wa'atsu*, colloquially *wazi* and *wazu*, yin *wa'atsi* or yin *wazi*, etc.
- preaching**, n. *wa'atsi*, *wa'atsu*, *wazi*, *wazu*.
- precious**, adj. (= costly) *da tsada*.
- prefer**, tr. v. *fi(s)o*, e.g. we p. mutton to beef *mu fiso naman rago ya fi naman shanu*; I p. this to that *na fiso wanan da wanchan*.
- preferable**, to be, intr. v. see better, 1.
- pregnant**, adj. *da chik(k)i*.
- preparation**, n. *shiri*, *shiriwa*, *tatali* or *taltali*; he makes p. *ya yi shiri ya yi tatali* D 86; *jajebbera*, in a religious sense, e.g. *ranun jajebbera* = day of p., i.e. day before any feast.
- prepare**, tr. v. gen. *gara*, *gāra*, *gira* or *gera*, e.g. to p. a way *gera hainya, gerta*; *shiria* and yin *shiri* express to p. for a journey, for the pilgrimage and (fig.) for the world to come; cf. D 80, 89, E 29; used in the intensive form = p. diligently *shirshiria* B 114; to p. food *fida* or *fide*; exclam. phr. p. ! *ka watane**.
- prepared**, particip. form *shiriyaye*, fem. *shiriyaya*, pl. *shiriyayu*; those who are p. *masushiria*.
- present**, n. *keauta*, e.g. I made him a p. *na yi masa keauta, abin gaisua, tsaraba, kaiwo*; the last especially of a p. made to a king; spec. a fee paid for bringing a p. *takichi*; wife's marriage presents to bridegroom *gāra*.
- presently**, adv. (= soon after the present time) *yanzu yanzu*; (= immediately) *nan da nan*.
- preserve**, tr. v. *kiyaye*; in a looser sense *chira*, q.v.; may God p. us *allah shi samu chiraro* D 74; to p. from *sit(t)ira* or *sutura*, e.g. may God p. us from the works of the evil spirit *allah shi muna sutura da aikokin ebliz*.
- president of the market**, n. *surikin kasua*.
- press**, tr. v. *taushe* or *tausa*, *mache*, *machi* or *matse*, *damfare*, *dan-kira**; to p. down *tawaya* or *tauwi*, *dunde*, e.g. a little new grass is brought and pressed down *akawo dan haki adunde* F 95.
- pressed**, particip. adj. *tausheshe*, fem. *tausheshia*, pl. *taushetu*.
- presser**, n. instr. *mataushi* found, e.g. in *mataushin kofa* = a piece

- of wood to keep a door closed, *mataushin wolika* = signet.
- pressing**, particip. n. *taushewa*.
- pretend**, v. *maida kunsu, ria**.
- prevail over**, v. *rinjayi* or *rinjaya*; also expressed by means of *fi*, e.g. I prevailed over the man *na rinjaya mutum* = *na fi mutum da karifi* or *mutum na fi karifinsa*.
- prevent**, tr. v. *han(n)a, tankosa* or *tankwas(s)a, dakile, tare**; to p. a person's leaving *hume*, e.g. I prevented his leaving *na humeshi*.
- previous**, adj. *nafari*, fem. *tafari*; (if the time be long p.) *nadā*, e.g. p. time or age *lokachindā*; men of p. ages *mutane nadā* or *mutanen dā*.
- previously**, adv. *dafari*, e.g. why did you not tell me this p.? *domi ba ka faddi mani nan dafari*.
- prey**, n. 1. see *booty*; 2. (= food of an animal of p.) *nama*, e.g. the lion catches and eats deer and cows, that is his pr. *zaki ya (kasshe or) kama bareyi da shanu ya chisu namansa ke nan*.
- price**, n. *kurdi, antayu, tamani**, *haki**, e.g. what is its p.? *kurdinsa nawa* or *nawa antaya*, its p. is three Spanish dollars *kurdinsa* (or *tamaninsa*) *bu madafa nku*; name its p. *ba shi suna*; to fix a p. for *kawama**, e.g. their goods shall be gathered together and their p. fixed *agangama dukiansu akarwamata* E 7.
- prick**, tr. v. *soka, soks* or *soki*; to p. much (intens.) *sosoke*.
- prickle**, n. (on grass, etc.) *kaya*, pl. *kayayua*.
- pride**, n. *foma, tama, girmankri* E 25, *tashinkai, jinkai**, *fadin zuchia, fadin rai, guri, fahari* or *fahri*, e.g. leave off p. *ku ber fahri* D 35.
- prince**, n. *amiru**; (= son of a king) *maina**, *dan sariki*; princes *sarakuna*.
- prison**, n. *kurkuku*.
- procession**, n. *jera, jere* or *jire*; spec. a royal p. *banga banga* or *bunga bunga*, an annual p., with a sacrifice, in the direction of Mecca *idi q.v.*
- proclaim**, v. 1. (= to make an official announcement or order) *yin shela*; 2. gen. (= to announce or publish) *laberta, haberta**; 3. spec. to p. the end of the fast *yin gangamin azumi*.
- proclamation**, n. 1. (= an official public announcement or order) *shela*; 2. (= deliverance of religious or moral instruction) *wa'atsi, wa'atsu, wazi* or *wazu*.
- procrastinate**, v. see *delay*.
- procreate**, v. (= to generate and also to produce) *haife* or *haife*.
- procure**, tr. v. *same, sama**, *samo* and *samu*.
- produce**, n. cf. obtain, *dia* or *diya, yaya*.
- produce**, tr. v. to p. young or fruit

haiſe or *haiſe*; to p. fear *ba* (or *bada*) *tsoro*; to p. evidence *kai* (or *kawo*) *shaida*.

profanely, to act, v. e.g. he acted p. *ya yi ſuabon allah*.

profess, tr. v. (a religion) e.g. he professed heathenism *ya maida addinin* (*asna* or) *arna*.

profession, n. (of an art or craft) *gon(n)i*; the termination *-chi* is often used to denote a person's p., e.g. the p. of a *boka* = *bokanchi*, the p. of a *mallam* = *mallamchi*.

profit, n. (both lawful and unlawful) *kura*, *riba*; unlawful p. *harámia*; to make a p. *chin riba*; a man who sells a second time at a p. *maisari*; men who make unlawful p. *masuriba da kura* F 201.

profitable, to be, v. *yin moria**

profligate, n. a p. *asheggi*; a p. man *fasiki* or *fasiki*, pl. *fasikai*, *maiſin zina*, *maizina*, pl. *masuzina*; a p. woman *fasika* and *farika*.

profligate, adj. *sheg(g)e* or *shege*; to be p. *yin zina*.

prohibition is expressed by *kad(d)a* or *kad(d)a**, also by *kad(d)adai*, the former is sometimes reduced to *kal*, e.g. do not hinder them *kadda ka hannasu* or *kal ka hannasu*, let her not be heard *kaddadai ajita* A 29.

prohibition, n. *doka**

prolong, tr. and intr. v. *dad(d)i* also pron. *deddi*, *tsawo*, *wanzu*

and *wonzu**, e.g. may God p. your life *allah shi deddi rainka*; impers. we prolonged our stay here *mu zamna nan ya deddi*; the last idea can be expr. by *deddi* alone in personal constr., e.g. I prolonged my stay in Tripoli to four months *na deddi ga tarabulus wata fudu*; pres. form *ina dad(d)ewa*.

promenade, intr. v. *yawo*, also pronounced *yaö*, *yin yawo*, *shuwaki*.

promise, n. *alkaweli*; to make a p. *yin alkaweli*; to break a p. *saki* and *warwari alk.*; to keep a p. *chik(k)a alk.* C 22; *chik(k)a magana*, *kama magana*.

promise, v. *yin baki*, *yin magana daia*; spec. O Thou who promiseest that which is true *mawa'adu ka hakk* F 131.

pronounce, v. (= to declare openly or positively) see **declare**.

pronunciation, n. *halshi* or *harshi*, pl. *halshina*.

proof, n. *shaida**; to adduce p. *kai* or *kawo shaida*; p. (e.g. from the Koran) in support of conduct or statement *dabili*; cf. F 19, 21, 138, &c.

prop, n. *madogara*, *makari*; cf. *bar*.

prop oneself up by, to, v. *dogare*.

propagate, tr. v. (= to have young) *haiſe* or *haiſe*, *haiſe dia*.

propel, tr. v., e.g. a canoe *tunkuda*.

proper, adj. *nakwarai*, fem. *tak-*

warai, halal, halas or *hallata**, *sosai, daidai*; that which is p. *sawaba** or *sawabe*.

properly, adv. *kwarai, daidai*.

property, n. (= one's goods, riches) *dukiya* or *dukia*, pl. *dukoki* and *dukiyoyi*; a man of p. *maidukia, maiabin dukia, mutum da dukia dayawa*, less strictly (= rich) *maiwadachi* and *maiwadata*.

prophecy, n. *annabanchi, wali-anchi*.

prophecy, v. *yin annabanchi*.

prophet, n. *annabi*, pl. *annabawa*, e.g. behold the prophets, there is not one (left) *ka duba annabawa babu kowa*; the office of a p. *annabanchi*.

proprietor, n. gen. (= owner) *maiabu*, conn. *maiabin, mai-chi*; (= house owner) *ubangiji*; see under *mai*.

propriety, n. *halachi**.

prosper, v. 1. tr. *ba* (or *bada*) *arziki*, e.g. may God p. you *allah shi baku arziki*; 2. intr. see prosperous.

prosperity, n. *arziki, abki* or *auki, katerta**, *yalwata, bi-jinta, lafafa**, e.g. days of p. *kwana lafafa* B 46; he has enjoyed p. *ya sha rua*; he has enjoyed p. in this world *ya sha dunia*.

prosperous, adj. *da arziki, mai-arziki, maikaterta*; he is p. *ya yi bijinta*; he shall not be p. *ba ayi masa arziki ba* D 23.

prostitute, n. *karua, karma**, *kortua* (= fem. of *korto*).

prostrate oneself, to, v. *yin aff, kaf(f)a goshi, gurufani* and *yin gurufani*; (of prostration in worship) *yin (sajada or) sujuda*, also with *na*, e.g. follow after God, p. yourselves before Him *ku bi allah kuna sajada* D 34; he will p. himself in the presence of the King *shina sujuda enda zati* F 132.

prostrate, to be, v. *rubda* (or *rufda*) *chik(k)i* F 192.

prostration, n. (i.e. in prayer) *rak(k)a*.

protect, tr. v. *tsara, tsari, tsare, tsaro* and *tsarima**, e.g. do Thou guard my mother *ka tsara uwana* C 41.

protection, n. *lamuni**, *amana**.

protector, n. (= defender) *mai-taimako*; spec. applied to Mohammed *shafi'u*, e.g. for he is the p. of sinners *zama shi ne shafi'u al-muznibina* F 129.

protopterus, n. (mud-fish) *gaiwa*; the noise made by the p. *chi-wuki*.

proud, adj. *maigirmankai, pl. masugirmankai* F 167, *da girmankai, maigirima, maifoma, mayenka*; cf. seq.

proud, to be, *kasaita, guri, farta**, the last also applied to the purse-p.

proudly, adv. *da girmankai*; to look p. on *harara*; to speak p. *yin raha*; to treat p. *toma** or *tomo**; to walk p. *takama*;

one who walks p. *maitaka-ma*.

prove, tr. v. (= to establish the truth of anything) *gaskata* or *gaskanta*; (= to evidence by testimony of any kind) *kai* (or *karwo*) *shaida*; (by exposition or argument) *gaia*, *nuna* or *nuni*.

proved, particip. (= attested, certified) *shaidade*, fem. *shaidada*, pl. *shaidadu*.

provide, v. (= to make provision) see **provision**.

provided that, conj. *fache**; as this conj. differs from 'if' by the stress laid on the condition it is expressed by adding emphatic particles *dai*, *fa* to *en*, *idan*, *izan*, e.g. p. that thou art a believer thou wilt answer and the joy of the Lord will fill the whole tomb *izan dai mumini ka ka kai jawaba fa nima er-rabbu ta shika du kushewa* F 102, *en dai* F 73, *idan fa* F 120.

provision, n. provisions for a journey *guzuri*; to make or obtain p. *yin guzuri*; 1. literally, e.g. we obtain p. for the journey from the heathen *mu yi guzuri da asma* E 34; 2. fig. of p. for the next world, e.g. repent, seek p. for the way that thou mayest prepare to make a journey *ka tuba ka nemi guzuri don ka shiria yinin taffia* F 67.

provoke, tr. v. e.g. I provoked

him to battle *na tsokana yaki*; I was provoked at this saying *na ji fushi da magana nan*.

proximo, adv. (= next month) *watan gobe*.

prudence, n. *hanḳali* or *hanḳali*.

prudent, adj. *maiḳanḳali*, pl. *ma-suhanḳali*.

prudently, adv. *da hanḳali*.

Psalms, n. *zabura**.

puberty, one who has reached, n. *balagaga*, pl. *balagagu*.

publish, to reach, intr. v. *balaga**.

publish, tr. v. (i.e. to p. a thing or news of a thing) *laberta*, *haberta**.

pudenda, n. *alaura** A 30.

puerility, n. *hal(l)in yaro*.

pull, tr. v. *ja*, *jaka*; to p. out *chira*, *chire*, *chiro*, *tsira*, *tsire*, *tsiro*, *fit(t)a*, *fit(t)as* or *fit(t)as-da*, *fusge* or *fisge*, e.g. he pulled a pistol out of his pocket *ya fittasda akodi dagga aljifina*; to p. out (as a hair, grains from a stalk) *tsefe*, (as roots) *tona* or *tone*, pres. *tonewa*, e.g. he is pulling out (or up) the roots of the tree *shina tonewa saiwan itache*; to p. towards oneself *jawo*; to p. in towards oneself *miko*.

pulled down, to be, pass. v. *yamutse* or *yamutsi*.

pumping beam, n. *kutara** D 16.

pumpkin, n. names of different species are: large garden p. (cucurbita pepo) *kabewa*; a smaller p., used in *mia*, *ku-*

bewa; a p. grown on houses *goji*; a p. not eaten, used for making water pots *duma*.

punish, tr. v. *falasa*, *palasa* or *palashe*, *foro*, e.g. ye shall be punished *anaforonku* E 22; *yin wohal(l)a*.

punishment, n. *falasa* or *palasa*, *azaba*.

pup, n. *kwikuyon kar(r)e*, pl. *kwikuyen kar(r)e*.

pupil, n. 1. (= a youthful scholar, school-boy) *dan makaranta*, pl. *yan makaranta*, *yaron* (pl. *yarar*) *makaranta*; (of adults and spec. those of a religious teacher = disciples) *almajiri*, fem. *almajira*, pl. *almajirai* B 134; 2. (of the eye) *ijia*, *ijian ido*, *matsokachin ido*.

puppy, n. see **pup**.

purchase, tr. v. see **buy**.

pure, adj. 1. (in a material sense) *tsari* or *chari*, *tsalka* or *tsatsalka*, e.g. p. wheat, i.e. clean, in good condition *alkam(m)a tsari*, (of metals = unalloyed) *safi* or *sase*, e.g. p. silver *azurfa safi* = *azurfa babu hairinchi*; p. (i.e. genuine) money *kurdi zaba*, (= simply) *tsuba* and *tsal(l)a*, e.g. p. and simple cowries, i.e. nothing but cowries *tsaban kurdi*; 2. (in a ceremonial or moral sense) *tsari*, *chari*, *tsariki* and *tsarki*, *halal*, *halas* or *hallata**; p. in heart *imani**.

purgative medicine, n. *maganin zawo*, *maganin gudund-aji*.

purification, n. esp. ceremonial

p. *tsalka* or *tsatsalka*, *lullo* and *allowa*.

purify, tr. v. *tsarikake* (*charikake*), *tsarkaka* or *tsarkaki*; he purified (the water) by straining *ya yishi da kyau*, lit. he made it right.

purity, n. *tsar(i)ki*, *tsarki* or *chariki*, *halachi*.

purloin; tr. v. see **steal**.

purpose, on, adv. *ganga*, *daganga* or *dagangan*; to no p. *banna*.

pursue, tr. v. (as in war) *rakaso* or *rukaso*; he pursued his way *ya kama hainya*.

push, tr. v. *tuka*, *iza*, *damsfare*, the last of pushing so as to cause one to stumble; to p. along *ture*; to p. aside *tunkuda*; to p. back *mayer*; to p. down *ture*; to p. into water *gangante*.

pustule, n. (= boil) *kurji*, pl. *kuraji*, *kureji*, pl. *kurareji* q.v.

put, tr. v. *sa*, *sainya* or *sanya*, *aje*; to p. aside (= cease from) *sa*, e.g. let us p. aside quarrelling *mu sa kankanche* B 83, (= to lay up) *aje*; to p. away *kaua*, *kawas*; to p. on (of clothes, etc.) *sa*, e.g. fetters and leg-irons of fire shall be p. on them *asa masu sasari na wuta da malwa* F 186; they shall p. on garments of silk *su sa kuma rigunansu na alharini* F 217; to p. together *tara*.

puzzle, tr. v. see **perplex**.

python, n. *maïssa*, *messu* or *misa*.

quack, n. (a pretender to medical science) *boka*, pl. *bokaye*.

quackery, n. *bokanchi*; cf. prec.

quake, intr. v. see tremble.

qualm, n. 1. (= feeling of nausea) *kumolo*; to feel such *jin kumolo*; 2. (a conscientious scruple or hesitation) *kumia*; to feel such *jin kumia*.

quantity, n. (= an amount of anything) *mashasha**; a large q. *gugu* or *gugi*, e.g. a large q. of sand *gugin rairai, jibgi*, the last esp. of food; *yawa, ya-wanchi*, also *dayawa*, e.g. his discourse was nothing but a great q. of words *wa'atsinsa sai yawan magana, taro* or *taru*, pl. *tarori*; cf. much.

quarrel, n. *fusuma, jaiya**; cf. seq. and *sab(b)abi* 2.

quarrel, intr. v. *yin jaiyu, kankani, yin kankanchi*; to q. with *yin kankanchi da, raina*; in the sense of to angrily maintain opposite opinions *gerdama* with the forms in *na* or with *yi*; *fad(d)a* (lit. to fight) is also freely used = to q.; cf. seq.

quarrelsome, adj. turn by *tarika*, e.g. he is q. *ya tarika fadda*.

quarrelsomeness, n. *mugun gashi*.

quarter, n. 1. (= one fourth part) *rubu*i; 2. (= division in a town) *shia* or *shiya*, pl. *shiyoyi, ungua*, pl. *ungwai* and (Sokoto) *unguni*; cf. seq.

quarters, n. (= place of stay,

lodging) *masabki* or *masapki, mazanne*, also loosely *wuri*, e.g. the commander's quarters *mazannen sariki*.

quash, tr. v. (= make void) *wofinta*.

queen, n. 1. (= a female sovereign) *saraunia*; 2. (= king's wife) *malan sariki*.

quench, tr. v. (= to put out a light or fire) *ka(s)he* (lit. kill), *kufuli**; pass. to be quenched (= to go out) *mutu*, e.g. the fire is quenched *wouta ta mutu*.

query, n. v. seq.

question, n. *tambaya* or *tambaia, binchik(k)i**.

question, v. *tambaya, tambaia, tabi**, *yin tambaya, yin binchik(k)i*.

questioning, n. (= discussion about something doubtful) *kokonto, binchik(k)i**; to engage in such *kokonto* with *yi* or the forms in *na*.

quick, adj. 1. (= rapid, immediate) *sauki, da sauki, da sauri*; a q. death (also = a sudden death) *sauki mutua*; 2. (= alive) *da rai*.

quickly, adv. (= at once, with the least delay) *da sauki, da sauri, nan da nan*; (= at a rapid rate) *mas(s)a* or *mas(z)a, rupta, rugu**; very q. *massa* contr. *malmassa*, e.g. he is counting the cowries very q. *yana kilgan alkawara massa massa*.

quicksilver, n. *zaiba*.

quiet, adj. (of condition) *kauwe* or *kawoi*; when implying cessation from speech or cries *da kawoi*, so to be q. *yin shiru*, *yin kawoi*, e.g. give the children something to eat so that they may be q. *ku bada yaya abinchi don su yi kawoi*, similarly *yin kurum*; (of disposition, = of easy temper) *lalafa*; cf. seq.; to keep q. (= to hush up a matter) *ka-wanchi*.

quietness, n. (of disposition) *lala-fanchi*.

quit, v. (= to leave or abandon in every sense) *ber(r)i* or *ber*, e.g. q. this custom *ku berri tadan nan*; of a path *sau*.

quite, adv. 1. (in the precise sense = wholly, nothing but) *sai* which is either applied to the entire clause, e.g. if he refuses this you may call him quite a coward *en ya ki nan sai ka kirrawoshi matsorata* lit. you may quite call him a coward = why you may etc.; or, as in Engl., is applied to a particular term, e.g. his face was q. bloody *fuskansa sai jini*; so in the very common expression *sai lafia* quite well = *lafia lau*, the last word used with *lafia* only; 2. (less precisely = very much, indeed, truly) *dayawa*, *kwarai*, e.g. we are q. pleased *muna jin dadi dayawa*; I was q. frightened *na ji tsoro dayawa*; I q. under-

stand *na ji kwarai*; adv. phr. quite so *ashe*, *aje*, *da gaskia*, *ya yi hakka*.

quiver, n. *kwori*, *kworin kibia*, *gid(d)an kibia*.

quiver, intr. v. see **shake**, **tremble**.

rabbit, n. *zomo** (?).

rabble, n. (= low class of men, the mob) *taro banza*.

rabid, adj. *mahaukachi*, e.g. a r. dog *mahaukachi kar(r)e*; cf. mad.

race, n. 1. (= ancestral stock) *usali**; 2. (= a particular breed of men or animals) *iri*, pl. *irare*; 3. (= a running in contest of men or horses) *tseri*.

radiant, adj. (= emitting light) *maihaske*, pl. *masuhaske*.

rafter, n. analogous Hausa terms are; a kind of r. *gongola**; r. made of reeds forming a circular binding on the inside of a roof *kirinia*; cf. reed.

rag, n. (in the sense of a small piece of any stuff) *da*, e.g. a cloth r. *dan zan(n)e*; it was bound up in a silk r. *akadamreshi chikkin dan alhari*; cf. rags.

rage, n. *fushi*.

rage, intr. v. *haukache*, *yin fushi*, *jin fushi*; cf. angry.

rags, n. coll. *reg(g)a*, pl. *reg(g)una*, *sum(m)a* or *tsum(m)a*, pl. *sum(m)oki* or *tsum(m)oki*; the singulars of both are used as collectives, old r. *keso*; trop.

(in the sense of old or tattered clothes) *reg(g)a*, *sum(m)a* and *keso*, e.g. let him be clothed in r. *asa masu regga*; clothed in r. adj. *funtu* or *da funtu*.

raid, n. *har(r)i**.

rain, n. *rua*, pl. *ruaye*, *ruan bis(s)a*, *ruan sama*; spec. gentle r. *yayef(f)a** or *yinyif(f)i*; r. during heavy storm *ginaria* or *ginania*; heavy or lasting r. *malka* or *maku*, *tugua* or *tagua*; light r. *tsatsafa*, *yayef(f)a**; the night has been passed in the r. *ankwanda rua*; the r. pours down *rua ya zuba*.

rain, v. 1. impers., it rains *anarua* and *yana rua*; it rained *anrua*; to r. heavily or long *yin (tugua* or) *tagua*, *yin malka*, *sarafa**; it does not r. *babu rua*; 2. used in a fig. sense to cast or shower down like r. turn by means of a comparison common in Hausa *kam(m)an rua*, e.g. our guns r. bullets on the enemy *bindigoginmu sunjefu da arşas abissa abokain gaba kamman rua*; he speaks fluently = *ya yi magana kaman rua*, lit. he speaks like r.

rainbow, n. *masharua* or *mashan rua*, *bakan giz(z)o*, *bakan allah*.

rain-drop, n. *tarfi**.

rainy, adj. see **rain**; r. season *dam(m)ana* or *dam(m)una*, cf. *rani*; a break during the r. season *fari*.

raise, tr. v. (= to make or cause to rise, also to set up) *tada*,

tayes, *tayesda*, *tashe*, the last being also the common expr. for making a person get up from the ground or from sleep; (= to lift or pick up anything) *dauka* contr. *dau*, *do*.

rake, tr. v. spec. to r. together cinders or embers of a fire *az(z)a* (or *has(s)a wuta*; I r. up cowries towards me *na tone kurdi*.

ram, n. *rago*, pl. *raguna*, *bunsuru*, pl. *bunsurai* or *bunsuraye*; spec. a large Bornuese r. *araara*.

Ramadan, n. (the mohammedan fast month) *azumi**, *watan azumi**.

ramble, intr. v. (= to wander about) *yin yawo* (or *yawwa*).

rambling, n. *yawwa*.

rampart, n. *ganna* and *ganwa*.

ramrod, n. *tsatsagawa*.

rancid, to be or become, intr. v. *ruba*.

range, n. (of hills) *kudunia*.

range, tr. v. (= to dispose in regular order) *daidaita*.

ransom, n. *pansa* or *fansa*.

ransom, tr. v. *pansi*, *panshe*, *fansi* or *fanshe*, e.g. pass. let him be ransomed *afansheshi*.

ransomer, n. ag. *maifansa*, pl. *masufansa*.

ransoming, n. *pansawa* or *fansawa*.

rapid, adj. see **quick**.

rasp, n. see **file**.

rasp, tr. v. *gogi* or *goge*.

rat, n. *dambaria*, *bera* or *bira*,

gafia, pl. *gafioyi*; names of species which await identification: a large r. *burgu* (for which *gafia* is also used); large tailless r. prob. allied to the jerboa *reme*; the stinking r. *jaba**.

rat-trap, n. *buma**.

rave, intr. v. *hawukache* and *hawka*, see **raving**.

raven, n. *hankaka**, *shamowa** or *shamua**.

ravening, n. *zowari*.

ravenous, to be, intr. v. *kwarika* or *kwaraka*.

ravine, n. *kanga* or *konga*; a r. with water in it *kogi*, pl. *koguna*, *kogina* or *kogai*; r. in which a stream flows among stones and rocks *koram(m)a*; a waterless r. *kozozobe*.

raving, adj. *maihauka*, *maihaukache*; to become r. *yin rau-rawa*; cf. *mad*.

raw, adj. *dainye* or *dainyi*, pl. *dainyoyi*; anything r. or uncooked n. *gaya**.

razor, n. *aska*, pl. *asaki* or *askaki*.

re-, prefix, Engl. words with this pref. (= again) may often be rendered in Hausa by means of the adverbs *kuma*, *hario*, e.g. he reentered the hall *ya shigga zaure (kuma or) hario*; in the case of words like repaint, replaster use *na sabo*; cf. again.

reach, v. 1. tr. (= to extend, or hold out) *mika*, e.g. I reached

my hand to him *na mika masa hanu*; 2. intr. (= to arrive at) *is(s)a*, *ishe*, *iski* F 165, *kai* (original sense = bring), e.g. the boys swam and reached the land *yara suyi iyo su kai kassa*; everyone who sows corn (in a religious sense) will reach the great city *kowa ya nomi hatsi ya kai baban gari* A 10, *tusga* or *tusge*, e.g. they shall reach Sair without doubt *su tusga har sa'ira babu warwa* F 164, *wata**; 3. (= to overtake) *taras*; 4. trop. (= be sufficient as in Engl. 'the money will r. so far') *iya*, *is(s)a*, *ishe*, *kai*, e.g. it wont r. (it is insufficient) *ba shi kai*.

read, tr. v. *karatu* or *karatu*, *yin karatu*, e.g. they r. many books and letters *suma karatu litatafi da wotika dayawa*; we have r. that document *muka yi karatu laya chan*.

read well-, adj. (= w. informed) *maikaratu dayawa*, pl. *masu-karatu*.

readiness, n. *shiria*.

reading, n. *karatu* or *karatu*.

ready, participial adj. (= arranged or prepared in readiness) *shiriyaye*, fem. *shiriyaya*, pl. *shiriyayu*; cf. seq.

ready, to make, v. 1. (in a general sense but also very commonly of preparation for an expedition, journey etc.) *yin shiri*, *shirya* (pronounced *shiria*), pass. *ashirya*, e.g. a prudent man

would prepare for to-morrow's journey to-day *don taffian gobe nutum maihanƙali shi kan yi shiri yau*; (in a religious sense) we have a journey before us which cannot be put aside, whether you are prepared or unprepared *muna da taffia ba fasawa en ka yi shiri da izan ba ashiriya ba* B 55; so also *gara* or *gera*, e.g. to make r. a way, a load *gara hainya, kaya*; to make r. (by mending or by putting to rights and in order generally) *gerta*, presential form *gertawa*; to make r. to go *zazage* B 168.

real, adj. *na gaskia, da gaskia*, also *gaskia* and *gaske* added to the term to be thus qualified; of persons *maigaskia*, e.g. he is a r. friend *shi ne aboki maigaskia*, which may also be expressed by *shi ne aboki da gaskia* lit. he is a friend in reality.

reality, n. *gaskia*, e.g. whether this be r. or falsehood I know not *ko gaskia ko karia ban sannu ba*; cf. seq.

reality, to assure of the, of, tr. v. *gaskata* or *gaskanta*.

really, adv. *da gaskia, gaskia, gaske, jidda**, e.g. it is r. so *da gaskia hakanan shi ke* or simply *gaskia ne*; what knowledge perceives, it is not the eye, as you know, which r. sees *abinda hanƙali ke ganiwa kun san ido ba shi gashi jidda*

ba B 33; (= the foregoing, but also very common in interrogatives and expressions of surprise) *ashe, aje, ai, ainin*, e.g. r.† or r.‡ *aje*.

realm, n. *sarauta, mulki**, e.g. behold *Kahukaro* and his r. *duba kahukaro da sarauta tai*; behold *Bello*, the ruler over his r. *duba ga bello idon mulki nai*; (in a very wide sense = presence) *zati* F 45.

reanimate, tr. v. (= to recall to life) *raia*.

reap, tr. v. *girbi* or *giribi, yenka* or *yenke*.

reaper, n. *maigirbi*.

reason, 1. (= cause) *sab(b)abi* or *sub(b)abi*; 2. (= r. given as an excuse) *huja* or *fuja*; 3. (= authority from Koran etc. or = origin of a myth, story etc.) *dalili*; 4. (= the intelligent faculty) see **ability** (2); adverbial phrases, for this r. *domin hakka, don hakka*, for that r. *domin* or *don wanan, wachananka** (?), *dominchewa**, *chewa**.

reasoning, n. *kokonto*; to engage in r. *yin kokonto*.

rebel, intr. v. *kangara**, *yin kangara*.

rebound, intr. v. *tankoshe*, e.g. the spears rebounded from the coats of mail *masusuka su tankoshe dagga lufudai*.

rebuke, tr. v. *tsawa, yin tsawa, kwobe**, e.g. the learned man rebuked his disciples *malami*

ya yi tsawa ma almajirainsa ; he rebuked me *ya yi mani tsawa*.

receive, tr. v. 1. (= to take what is offered) *karba* or *kariba**, *karbi* or *karibi**, *dauka* or *doka*, imperat. receive *karbo*, *samu*, *samata** A 83 ; 2. (of a salutation) *karba*, e.g. they received i.e. acknowledged your salutation *sun karba gaisuanka* ; 3. (of news etc.) *ji*, e.g. we received news *mun ji labari* ; 4. (= to allow, admit) *yerda* ; 4. to r. as a guest *shide*, e.g. they received me joyfully *suka shideni da murna*.

received, particip. (= approved of, agreed to, believed in) *yerdade*, fem. *yerdada*, pl. *yerdadu*.

receptacle, n. any kind of r. may be expressed by *gid(d)a*, pl. *gid(d)aje*, *gid(d)ashe* or *gidadaji* ; by means of this are formed the Hausa equivalents of various Engl. terms, e.g. a needle-case (lit. r. of needles) *giddan atura* ; a quiver *giddan kibia* ; an envelope *giddan takarda*.

reception, a royal, n. *turaka*.

recess, n. (= nook, closet, small room etc.) *loloki*, pl. *lolokai* ; secret recesses coll. *loloki asiri* D 63.

reciprocal, adj. turn by the recipr. pron. *jiuna*.

reckless courage, with, adj. *jan namiji*.

reckon, v. see **calculate**, **count**, **number** ; to r. up *zana*.

reckoned up, particip. *madudai** B 122.

reckoning, n. 1. (= computing, calculating) *kedaya*, *kidda* and *kididiga* ; (of accounts) *lisafi* or *lesafi*.

recline, intr. v. *dangana*, *kishingida* (this also = to sit with crossed legs), *zami*, *jingina*, *jingine*, e.g. we ate and drank, reclining *mun chi mun sha muna kishingida*.

recollect, tr. v. (= remember) *tuna*, *tuna da*, e.g. I did not forget everything but remembered this *ban manche duka ba amma na tuna da abin nan*.

recollection, participial n. *tunawa*.

recompense, n. (both of pecuniary reward, wages, and also generally) *lada*.

recompense, tr. v. see **repay**, **requite** and **reward**.

reconcile, tr. v. *biko*, *gama dadi**.

recover, v. 1. tr. (= to get back), e.g. he recovered his property *ya same* (or *samu*) *dukiansa kuma* ; 2. intr. (of health) *samu afua*, *yin rongomi* ; he recovered his health *ya samu lafia*.

recovery, n. (of health) *rongomi*.

red, adj. *ja*, pl. *jajayi* ; a little r. *jaja kad(d)an* ; staining r. *jaje* ; very r. *ja wur*.

reddish, adj. *jaja kad(d)an*.

redeem, tr. v. *fanshe* or *panshe*,

fansi or *pansi*, *yin fansa*, e.g. we redeemed him from slavery *muka fansheshi dagga bauta*.

redemption, n. *fansa* (generally pronounced *pansa*) *fansaawa*; *diyauchi* (lit. freedom) also bears the pregnant sense of r.

reduce, tr. v. 1. (= generally, to lessen, to decrease) *reg(g)i*, *ragi* or *rage*; to be reduced *ragu*; 2. to r. amount of an account or charge *yin rongomi*; 3. (= to conquer, subdue) *chi*.

reduction, n. 1. (lessening, assuaging of anything) *ragua*; 2. (of an account) *rongomi*, e.g. make me a r. *ka yi mani rongomi*.

reed, n. *gora*, pl. *gororo* and *gorana*, *kura*, *jinia*, *rama* (for *ramma* see below); spec. of various qualities and uses, a kind of r. or rough grass *gamba*, pl. *gambobi*; water r. often planted near mosques *karan maşallachi*; a r. growing amongst and resembling guinea-corn *kusumburua*; an edible water r. *bindu*; r. used for making arrows *kemru*, *gazara**, *sheme*; large reeds used in thatching *maiwa*; reeds such as are used for making doors etc. *tsabore* or *zabore*; reeds forming circular bindings near the *kwando* inside a roof *murdaka*; place where reeds meet in the centre inside thatched roof *kwando* or *kondo*; reeds bound together forming

inside binding of a thatched roof *tanka*; reeds (two or three) forming circular band on the outside of a roof *jinia*; r.-like plant of which native ropes are made *ramma*.

reeling, n. (as of a dying man) *magagi*.

reflection, n. (= consideration, thought) *tunane*, fem. *tunana*, pl. *tunanu*.

refrain from, tr. v. *ber(r)i*, *ber*, e.g. r. f. falsehood *ka ber karia* F 8; r. f. laughter *rik(k)e daria*.

refuge, n. *gid(d)an chira*; a place of r. *uurin chira*.

refusal, n. *kiwuya* or *kuyiwa*; r. to hear *kinji*; r. to work *kiwuya*.

refuse, v. *ki*, *kia*, *kinkinta*, e.g. he refused to tell me what he did *ya ki faddi mani abinda ya yi*; they refused to pay heed to this *sun ki kulla da wanan, rena, yin kishi, dakile*, e.g. dost thou silently r. and givest no answer *ka dakile shiru ba ka amsa ba* B 130; to r. especially an offer in buying and selling *han(n)a* and *saidaba**; to r. contemptuously with a noise made with the lips *tsaki*; to r. exertion (or labour) *yin kiwuya*; to r. to keep a promise *yin gas(s)e*; to r. to listen *kiale* and *kalli**; to r. to work *kangara**.

refuses, one who, to work, n. *makiyachi*.

refusing, n. participial form *han-(n)awa, kiyaya**.

regard, n. 1. (= attention, heed) *hankali, tunawa*; 2. (= affection) *soyeya**, *soaya* or *sowaya*, *kamna*, e.g. an object of r. *abin kamna*.

regard, tr. v. 1. (= to look at attentively both physically and mentally) *duba*; 2. (= to heed) *yin hankali, ku(l)la, kul(l)ata** each construed with *da* before the object regarded.

region, n. *woje*, pl. *wosashe*.

regret, v. (in the sense of to repent) *tuba*.

reign, n. 1. (= royal authority, power) *sarauta* or *sarota*; 2. (= the time a r. lasts) *zamani*, e.g. in his reign there was security of land *achiki zama-nishi da kasa amana ni* G 4.

reign, intr. *malaka**; cf. also he reigned *ya malake(ta)* B 76, *yin zamani*, e.g. thus did he reign *hakanan ya yi zamanishi* G 4.

reject, tr. v. *ki, kia**, *yada**, e.g. they rejected the way *sun yada hainya* A 58; to r. as something bad *tsantsani*; he rejects the love *ya yenke kamna*; cf. C 10.

rejoice, v. 1. intr. *yin* or *jin farinchik(k)i, yin* or *jin murna, wajiba**; to r. over *sambachi*; to r. with anyone *yin bishari*; 2. tr. *bada* (or *sa*) *murna*.

rejoin, intr. (= answer) *amsa* and *yin amsa*.

rejoinder, n. (= answer) *amsa*.

relate, v. *fad(d)i* or *fad(d)a*, e.g. he related to us how the king made many attempts to kill him *ya faddi mamu kaka sariki yana yin kokari dayawa shi kassheshi*.

relation, n. *dengi, denga* or *deg(g)i*, pl. *dengoyi, kotuna**; cf. seq.

relations, coll. *dengi* both in the sing. and pl., *kibanta, alwali** or *wali**, *aluma** (?).

relationship, n. *zumunta**.

relax, v. 1. tr. (of bonds etc. = to loosen) *kunche*; (of efforts, rule etc. = to make less severe or strict) *reg(g)i, ragi* or *rage*; 2. intr. (= to become less strict or severe, of anything, e.g. pain) *ragu*.

relaxation, n. 1. (in sense of 2. prec.) *ragua*; 2. (= rest) *natsu** B 62.

release, tr. v. *saki* and in a looser sense *ber(r)i, ber*.

reliable, adj. (vulg.) see **trust-worthy**.

relieve, tr. v. (e.g. one of a load) *tabo**, *tareo**, (= to assist) see **help**.

religion, n. *addini**; the true r. *addinin gaskia*; the mohammedan r. *musulumchi*; he was converted to the mohammedan r. *ya sauya musulmi* or *ya zama nusulmi*.

religious person, n. *maiaddini*, pl. *masuaddini*.

rely on, v. *dangana, ingata*, constr. with *da* or *ga*, *yerda* with *da*; to r. on God *kas(s)ada*; to r.

upon a person *shaduda* or *saduda*.

remain, intr. v. 1. (of staying or stopping in a place) *zamna*, *zamna*, *zona*, *kwana* (lit. sleep) e.g. we remained there two days *mun kwana dagga nan kwana biu*; we remain for this one day only *mu ke yini rana nan*; 2. (of remaining in one state as well as place) *duma*, *dawama*, e.g. they shall ever r. *aduma tutur*, *kasanchi*, *tabbetawa*, e.g. in the back part of the fire should they r. *ga ta dabarun wuta su ka tabbetawa* F 180; to r. over *wanzu* and *wonzu*.

remainder, n. *saura* and *shawora*, *kingi*; the last also specially used of r. of drink, dregs, as is *seki**, e.g. drink the medicine and leave no r. *ka sha magani babu kingi*; r. of food left for children or servants *sudi*; r. of nuts, food, etc. *kala*.

remaining, 1. participial adj. (= also r. over) *maiwan-zuwa*; 2. n. (= continuance, staying) *dawama*, *tabbeta*, e.g. house of r. (= lasting abode) *gidan dawama gidan tabbeta* D 79.

remedy, n. (both in the medicinal and also in general sense) *magani*, e.g. the *filasko* plant is a r. for diarrhoea *filasko maganin gudawa*; prov. if a town be far off the r. is travel *maganin gari da nesa taffia*.

remember, v. *tuna*, *ambata* and *ambato*; to come to r. *tuna* with *da* before object.

remembrance, n. (= recollection) *tunane* and *tunawa*.

remiss, adj. *lalafa*.

remission, n. (= forgiveness) *gá-fara*, *gaferta*, *yerda*, *yafewa**.

remissly, adv. *da lalafanchi*.

remissness, n. *lalafanchi*.

remit, tr. v. (= to forgive) *yerda*, *gáfara*, *yin gaferta*; to r. a debt *yerda bashi*.

remnant, e.g. after cloth has been measured, n. *guzura*, pl. *guzure*; cf. remainder.

remorse, n. *nidama*, *ladama**.

remote, adj. 1. (= distant in place) *na nesa*; also *da nesa* and *dag(g)a nesa*, e.g. a r. town *gari da nesa*; 2. (= distant in time) *na dā*, also *dawuri* or *dauri*, e.g. r. customs *tadodi na dā*.

remove, tr. v. *kauda*, *kauchi*, *kauwa*, *kawas*, *kawasda*, *kaura**, e.g. the wind blew with such power that even stones were removed from their places *iska tana busawa da iko har ga ko duatsu akawasdasu dagga wurinsu*.

rend, tr. v. *chags* or *tsaga*.

render, tr. v. 1. (=, in solemn style, to give) *ba* or *bada*; 2. (of an account = to give, give in, present) to r. an account *yin (lisafi or) lesafi*; 3. (= to translate) *juya*, *sauya*, *fasara*, *yin fasara*; 4. (= to cause to

- be or become) periphr. e.g. the heat of the fire rendered his face very red *zafin wuta ya sa fuskansa ta zama ja wur*, pass. it was rendered very black *ya zama bakki kerrin*.
- rent**, tr. v. (of houses, etc.) *sufuri*, *sufurchi*, *yin sufuri* and *yin sufurchi*.
- repair**, 1. tr. v. (= to mend) *gerta*, *gara*, *gera*; 2. intr. to r. to *taffi*, e.g. he repaired to the city *ya taffi birni*; they repaired to the king *sun taffi wurin sariki*.
- repast**, n. 1. (= a meal) *kalachi*; 2. (= food, victuals) *abinchi*, *chima*, *chimaka*.
- repeal**, tr. v. *kauda*, e.g. the king repealed the prohibition *sariki ya kauda doka*.
- repeat**, v. 1. (= to do again) see **again**; to r. an action *mai-mai*; to r. an action again and again *maimaita*; to r. ten thousand times *ribbi** D 44; 2. (= to say over again) *tes(s)a* or *tesa*, *tus(s)o* or *tuso*.
- repel**, tr. v. *kora*, *kore*; to be repelled (of an arrow, etc.) *tankoshe*.
- repent**, intr. v. *tuba*, e.g. repent! *ku tuba* E 10; also pass. impersonal *atuba* D 10, a wild cat, it repents with the fowl in its mouth, it puts it not down *mazoro shi ke tuba kaza ta tana baki bai sako ba* D 11; if he refuses to r. *izan ya ki tuba* D 21.
- repentance**, n. *tuba*, *nidama*, *nadama** or *ladama*, e.g. let repentance be made *ayi tuba*.
- repents**, one who, n. *maituba*.
- reply**, n. *amsa*; to give a r. *ba* (or *bada*) *amsa*; cf. seq.
- reply**, intr. v. *amsa*, *yin amsa*, e.g. he replied to them *ya amsa masu* or *ya yi masu amsa*.
- report**, n. 1. (= rumour, news) *labari*, e.g. we heard a r. about war *muka ji labarin yaki*; 2. (= fame, repute) *yab(b)o*; 3. (= noise of gun) *am(m)o*.
- report**, v. (= to bring, news) *yin labari*, *ba* (or *bada* or *fad(d)i*) *labari*; to r. against (= to inform against) *sare*, *sara* or *zara**.
- repose**, n. 1. (= lying at rest) *kwantawa*; 2. (= rest, quietness) *futa*, *futawa* 3. (= sleep) *berchi*, *kwana*.
- repose**, v. 1. tr. to r. confidence in *sa* with *bis(s)a*, *abis(s)a* and *bis(s)a ga* and substantives given under **confidence**, q.v.; 2. intr. (= to lie, to be placed) pass. of *aje* and *sa*; (= to lie at rest) *kwana*, *jingina**, e.g. we r. under the trees *muna kwana kalkashin itatua*.
- reprehend**, tr. v. (= to reprove, censure) see **blame**.
- reprehensible**, adj. *da laifi*.
- representative**, n. (= an agent, substitute) *wakili*.
- reproach**, tr. v. *zage* or *zagi*, *tarsasa**.

reprobate, adj. *laane*, fem. *laana*, pl. *laanu*.

reproof, n. (and spec. of a set discourse in reproof) *foro*; *harasa*.

reprove, tr. v. *kwaba* or *kwobe**; also (see prec.) *foro*, *yin foro*, e.g. he reprov'd the pupils *ya foro almajirai* or *ya yi foro ma almajirai*.

reptile, n. *mairarafe*, pl. *masurarafe*, *abin kasa*.

reputation, n. *yab(b)o*, *sunu*, e.g. his r. spread throughout the Sudan *mutane duka su ji sunansa chikkin* (or *dagga*) *sudan*; cf. consideration 2.

requital, n. *fansa* or *pansa*.

requite, tr. v. *bia* or *biya*; (in a bad as well as good sense) *rama*, presential form *ramawa*.

rescue, tr. v. *kwache* or *kwashi*; see also *deliver*.

reside, intr. v. see *dwel*.

resign, tr. v. 1. (= to give up, abandon) *ber(r)i*, *ber*; cf. seqq.

resignation, n. *hanḱuri*, *hanḱura* or *hakora*.

resigned, to be, v. *jin sainyi*, also *hanḱuri* with *yi* or the forms in *na*, e.g. I am r. to this *ina hanḱuri da wanan*; he was r. to this pain *ya yi hanḱuri da azaba nan*.

resist, tr. v. (= gen. to withstand, baffle) *han(n)a*; to r. an offer, request etc. *han(n)a* q.v., *ki* (and *kin*) *ji*, e.g. he resisted every proposal *ya ki ji magana duka*; to r. a temptation etc.

(= to overcome it) *rinjaji* or *rinjaya*; to r. angrily *gagara*.

resistance, n. in sense of prec. init. *han(n)awa*, *makawa**.

respond, v. (= to answer) *amsa*, *yin amsa*.

rest, n. 1. (= remainder) *shawora*, *saura*, *kingi*; 2. (= repose, quiet) *futa*, *futawa*, *hutaawa**, cf. repose; (of the grave) place of r. *makwanche*; (of death) the last r. *makarin berichi*.

rest, v. 1. tr. (= to lay, place) *aje*, *sa*, e.g. he rested his hands on the book *ya sa hanuansa bissa litafi*; 2. intr. (= to be at rest) *futa*; (= to be laid, placed) pass. of *aje*, *sa*, e.g. the book rested on a large cushion *litafi ajeshi abissa baban leferu*.

resting-place, n. (= lodging) *ma-shid(d)i*; his last resting-place *makwanchensa*.

restitution, make, v. *rama*, and, with pres. forms in *na*, *ramawa*.

restive, be, intr. v. *tuma*.

restore, tr. v. 1. (= give or bring back) *maida*, *mayes*, *kwonda*, *bayesda*, and, where there can be no mistake as to the meaning, simply *ba*, e.g. r. me my stick *ka bani sandana*; 2. (= to make good) *rama*; 3. (= to bring back into a better state, as of health) *chira*, *chire*, *chiro* or *tsira*, *tsire*, *tsiro*; to r. to life *raia* or *raya*; to be restored to life *raiu*.

restrain, tr. v. *han(n)a*.

result, n. *akib(b)a*.

resurrection, n. *tashi dag(g)a matatu, tayasua, alkiyama, alkiam, kiama*; the r. day *ranan gobe* (lit. day of to-morrow), *ran gobe, ranal* (= *ranan*) *kiama, ran alkiama*; periphr. the day when the sounder of the trumpet shall sound *rana da maibusa ya busa kafa nasa* A 78, 79.

retain, tr. v. *rik(k)e, rik(k)a, rik(k)i**, *rumtsi* B 27.

retained, particip. *rikake*, fem. *rikakia*, pl. *rikaku*.

retaliate, intr. v. *rama, ramawa*, e.g. I retaliated *na rama*, I am retaliating *ina ramawa*.

retaliation, n. (in a good as well as bad sense) *saka* (-*mako, -moko* or) *-mukko*; cf. requital.

return, intr. v. *koma* or *qoma*; to r. to where the speaker is = to r. here *komo, dawo*; to r. from a place *dawoia* or *dawoya*; to r. to a place *dawoio* or *dawoyo*; to r. often *shirbache*.

returning, n. (of place) *komawa*; (of state, = a changing back, reversion) *juyawa*.

reveal, tr. v. *gaya, waye, nuna*, e.g. they revealed the secret to the king *sun gaya asiri nan ga sariki*.

revenge, n. *fansa* or *pansa*.

revenge, v. *rama*; cf. requite.

revere, tr. v.; cf. seq.

reverence, tr. v. *tsar(i)kaka, tsarkaki, charkaka* and, in freer sense (= to honour) *gir-*

mama, and bada (*girima* or) *girma*.

revile, tr. v. *zage* or *zagi, falasa* or *palasa, sabe*.

revive, intr. v. (as from fainting) *firko* or *ferko**.

reward, n. *lada, akib(b)a**.

reward, tr. v. see **requite**.

rheumatism, n. *amas(s)ani* or *amas(s)ana*.

rhinoceros, n. *marili*.

rib, n. *awoza* or *awaza*, pl. *awozu*; ribs coll. *hakarikari*.

rice, n. *shinkaf(f)a*, more particularly = r. in the husk, husked, clean r. *shinkaf(f)a* (*shanshere* or) *surfafe, gumi** (?); ear of r. *geza*, pl. *gezuna*; the swelling of r. when boiled *auki, abki*; a soft mash of r. *pet(t)i pet(t)i*; a mixture of r., milk and honey *gumba*; cake made of r. and guinea-corn *mas(s)a*; cake made of r., oil and honey *tsatsafa*; large rice-bag *sub(b)olo* or *saulo*; spec. a dark coloured kind of r. *jimero*; a dark red kind of r. *tamba*.

rich, adj. 1. (= wealthy, also concr. = r. man) *moidukia, maiwadachi* or *maiwadata, mainema**; a r. man. *falala** or *falale*; a very r. man *dumbuji**; 2. (as an epithet of God) *gani*, e.g. for He is r. and the giver of everything *zama shi ne gani mabaya kowa* F 14; 3. (= abundant) *yawa, dayawa*; 4. (= splendid as 'r. dress') *na ado*, fem. *ta ado*.

rich, to be, intr. v. express by *da* (have), e.g. he is r. *shina da* (*dukia*, *wadata* or) *arzi*ki.

rich, to become, intr. v. *ajerta*, *yin wadata* and in a freer sense *zama maidukia*, etc.

riches, coll. *dukia*, pl. *dukoki* or *dukuyoyi*, *wadata* or *wodata*, *wadachi*, *arzi*ki.

ride, intr. v. no general term, express by periphr., e.g. he was riding along *yana taffia* (*bis(s)a* or) *abis(s)a doki*; I rode to the town *na hawa doki na taffi gari*; they rode back here *suka komo abissa doki*; spec. to r. at a gallop *sukua* (Kano), *suka* (Sokoto), *sukani*, *yin* (*sukua*, *suka* and) *sukani*; to r. for exercise *kil(l)isa*.

rider, n. *maidoki*, pl. *masudoki*.

ridge, n. *kokua*; ridges in a field coll. *kwiya*.

ridicule, tr. v. *darara**; he turned him into r. *ya bashi daria*.

riding in, a place for, n. *fag(g)en doki*; a place for riding in at the gallop *masukwani*.

right, n. 1. gen. *gaskia*; 2. (= authority or privilege) *iko*, pl. *ikoki*; 3. (= claim) *alhaki*; 4. (= the opposite of left) *dama*.

right, adj. 1. (=in conformity with truth and justice) *da gaskia*, *da gaske*, or simply *gaskia*, *gaske*, see also lawful, proper; 2. (= opposed to left) *dama*, *na dama*, fem. *ta dama*; the r. hand (i.e. the bodily member)

hanu na dama, *damichi*, *damshi*, (i.e. the r. side) *wojen dama*.

righteousness, n. *gaskia**.

rightly, adv. 1. (= truthfully, justly) *da gaskia*, *da gaske*, *gaske*; 2. (= correctly, exactly) *kwarai*, also *sar(r)ai*, e.g. if I r. understand you will come to this house in the evening *idan na ji kwarai* (or *sarrai*) *zaku zo giddanga da mareche*; he did not count them r. *bai kil-gasu sarrai ba*.

rind, n. (of tree) *fata*.

ring, n. *zobe* or *zobi*; seal r., signet r. *zoben shaida*; finger r. *ko-wainia**; metal r. placed round hands and legs of women *karafa*; r. put through man's lower lip *baibaiyi*.

rings, coll. arm r. *mundaye*; foot r. *mundayen kaffa*; women's foot r. of brass or iron *chakankani*.

rinse, tr. v. *dariwoye*.

rip, tr. v. *keta*, participial n. *ketua*, cf. tear.

ripe, adj. *nen(n)a*, *nen(n)ane* or *nunane*, pl. *nen(n)anu* or *non(n)anu*, *tabo*, *tapshi*, *tafshi* or *tabshi*.

ripe, to be, intr. v. *nen(n)a*, *nin(n)a* or *nuna*, *yin tabo*, *kosa*.

rise, intr. v. *tashi*; to cause to r. *tashe*; to r. up *taso*, *gusa*, *gul-gusa* or *gurugusa*; to r. up against *firmaki*; to r. up quickly *zabura*; to r. high (of the sun) *karu*; to r. (= to swell, of any-

thing cooking or fermenting)
yin auki.

rising, participial n. *tashi*, *tasawa*,
 e.g. the r. of the sun *tasawal*
hantsi B 56; *tayesua* used also
 in sense of resurrection.

rivalry, n. *kishi*, *gasa**.

river, n. *rua*, pl. *ruaye*, e.g. the
 r. Benué *ruan tsada*, *gulbi*, pl.
gulabe, *tabki*, *tapki* or *tafki*; a
 large r. *kogi*, pl. *koguna*, *kogina*
 or *kogai*; the r. of Paradise
kauchara and *alkauchara*, e.g.
 they shall come to the r. of
 Paradise without doubt *su kan*
tusga ta kauchara babu wawa
 F 214; only if he repent shall
 he drink the r. of Paradise
saiko da tuba zayi sha alkaru-
chara A 49, 50, 52.

river-horse, hippopotamus, n.
dorina, pl. *dorinai*.

rivers, confluence of, n. *magan-*
gami.

road, n. *hainya* or *haya**, pl.
hainyoyi, *tafariki* or *tafarki*,
 pl. *tafarkoki*, *turuba*, pl. *turu-*
bobi, which are also employed
 fig. (of the r. of duty, religion),
 e.g. we ought to take their r.
 which leads to the city (i.e.
 heaven) *wajib mu do haiasu*
wanda ta je gari A 20; they
 left the right r., they followed
 one which was crooked *sun*
sau tafarki sun bi wodda ya
fantsari A 19; on the r. (= tra-
 velling) *chikkin taffia*; he is on
 the r. *yana* (or *shina*) *taffia*; do
 you know your r. from this

point? *ko ka sanni hainya*
dag(g)a nan ko; a broad r.
godobe, *rimdi*; turning of a r.
lungu.

roads, n. branching off of r. (pl.
 of *kosfa*) *kosfofi* or *kwosfofi*;
 dividing of r. *luloki*, pl. *lu-*
lokai; meeting-point of two or
 more r. *mararabin hainya*.

roar, n. *tsawa* also spec. of the r.
 of thunder, r. of camel *babaki*
 and *kuka*.

roar, intr. v. *tsawa* used with the
 forms in *na* and with *yi* as
 are also all that follow, (of fire
 F 186, men F 188) *tsawutawa*,
 (of camel, donkey, fire, men
 and spec. of bull) *ruri*, (of fire)
baiki, e.g. (the fire) will r.
 and make a noise (*wuta*) *tana*
ruri tana baiki D 72; (of wild
 animals) *kugi*; of course the
 general term for a loud cry
kuka may be employed, e.g.
 my camels are roaring from
 thirst *rakumana suna kuka*
domin kishirua.

roast, tr. v. *soiya* or *suya*, *gas(s)a*,
 the last used with *guras(s)a*
 bread.

roasted, particip. *gasashe*, fem.
gasashia, pl. *gasasu*.

rob, tr. v. (= to take openly, by
 force) *kwache* or *kwashhe*.

robber, n. one who robs openly
maisani; a highway r. (= bri-
 gand) *maifesshe*, pl. *mafas(s)a*.

robe, n. *riga*, pl. *riguna*; splendid
 robes *riguna na ado*; silken
 robes *riguna na alharini*

- F 217; spec. fine white r. *kwakwata*; long white r. *bula**.
- robe**, tr. v. *sa* (lit. put on), e.g. they shall be robed in white *asa masu riguna farufaru*.
- rock**, n. *duchi*, pl. *duatsu*, *falala** or *falale*; we climbed a high r. *mun hawa bissa ga dogon duchi*.
- rock**, tr. v. (= to shake or swing to and fro) *reto*.
- rock-salt**, n. *gal(l)o*.
- rod**, n. *sanda*, pl. *sanduna*; brass rods *sanduna na jan karifi*.
- rogue**, n. *maizambachi*, *maizambata*, *maizumba*.
- roll**, v. 1. (= to move along by turning over and over) tr. *bingira*, intr. to r. *birgima* or *birkima* with forms in *na*; to r. or r. over as in sleep *bingira*, intr. to r. down *gangara* or *gangari*; 2. (= to fold round on itself) tr. *nad(d)e*; to r. together or up *nad(d)e*; to r. up *kalmas(s)a* or *kalma(s)she*; to r. up covering to doorway *leke*; to r. up mat, etc. *linke*; to r. into balls as clay for building *chibara* or *tsibara*; intr. and reflexive to r. up or together *nad(d)u*.
- rolled**, 1. intr. v. to be r. together (cf. prec.) *chibaru*; 2. particip. adj. r. together *anade*.
- roller**, i.e. stone used for crushing rice etc., n. *dan magurji*.
- rolling**, particip. n. *birgima* or *birkima*, r. down *gangarawa* and *gangaro**.

roof, n. the following apply to the native thatched roofs *tsaiko*, *saiko*, *tanka*; centre of r. *kwando* or *kondo*; binding line inside r. formed of two or three reeds *murdaka*, *kirinia*; band outside r. *jinia*, see **reed**, **reeds**; to bind grass with cords so as to form a r. *yamche* or *yamchi*.

room, n. 1. (= open, unoccupied space in any sense) *sar(r)ari*; abundance of r. *yalwata*; (= unoccupied space on a flat surface as a plain, a floor) *fili*, e.g. there was no r. for (putting down) my load *babu fili ga kayama*, cf. seq.; 2. (= an apartment) r. in a house *daki*, pl. *dakuna*; upper r. *kandaki*, pl. *kandakuna*; royal assembly r. *fag(g)e*; small dark r. *loloki*, pl. *lolokai*; r. made of mud and thatched with reeds *tseko*.

room, to have plenty of r. to sit down, intr. v. *wala**; to make r. for *ras(s)i*, *zakuda* or *zakudo*.

roomy, adj. *da sar(r)ari*, e.g. this chamber is r. *daki nan yana da sarrari*; roomier than that *da sarrari ya fi wanan*.

root, n. 1. (of vegetables, etc.) *saiwa*, *saiwo* or *soya*; r. of a tree *tushi* or *taushi**; spec. an edible r. with which *tuo* is made *kurus-kurus*; 2. fig. (= the truth) the r. of the matter *koman magana*; (= origin or fundamental sense) *guzu*, *tushi*.

rope, n. gen. *igia* or *igiya*, pl. *igoyi*

and *igiyoyi*; spec. of various uses and materials: r. for hobbling horse *tarnaki*, *dabebeyi*; r. for leading horse *assalawi*; r. for leading horses or camels *ragama*; r. put through nose of cow *zar(r)e* or *zar(r)i*; r. (also coll.) tied to anything, e.g. a rafter *ragaya*; r. tying horse's leg to a post *gindi*; r. for tying up camel *aḳala*; materials for r. (plaited grass, palm leaves, fibre) *tsaiwa*; material from the *chiwo* palm for r. *dankon chiwo*; leaves and fibre from a large species of palm for r. *kab(b)a*, pl. *kab(b)obi*; a large tree (*asclepias gigantea*?) from the bark of which r. is made *tum-fafia*, pl. *tumfafi*; a fibre for making r. *yawa*; reed-like plant for making r. which is called by the same name *ramma*; a shrub (*cynanchum viminale*?) from the bark of which r. is made *yadia*; large tree from the bark of which small ropes are made *tawas(s)a*.

rot, intr. v. (= to putrefy) *riba*, *ruba*; (= to be decomposed) *bacha*.

rote, by, 1. n. a saying by r. *tulawa**; 2. v. to say by r. *yin tulawa*; to learn so as to say by r. (by heart) *samu harda*.

rotten, particip. adj. (of fruit, etc.) *ribabe*, fem. *ribabia*, pl. *ribabu*, (of corn) *tsad(d)eri*; in all cases may be used *batache*, fem. *ba-*

tachia, pl. *batatu* as a general expression.

rough, adj. *da kaushi*, cf. seq.

roughness, n. (= unevenness of surface) *kaushi*.

round, adj. express by the nouns = a r. object *chibiri* or *chibari*, *kumbu*, e.g. a r. piece of mud *chibirin kasa*, cf. *chibara*, to cut r. *shankumbu*; adv. to go round *dawraro*, *doraro* or *daurara**, *kewoye* or *kewayi*, the last also tr., e.g. they went r. the city *sun kewoye birni*; to go r. in order to examine a thing *giwaya* or *jiwaya*; to look r. *dawraro*, *doraro* or *daurara**; prep. *kewoye*, e.g. they made a road r. the pool *sun gina hainya kewoyen tabki*.

rouse, tr. v. (= to make rise, e.g. from the ground or from sleep) *tashe*, *tayes*, e.g. on hearing the distant report of guns I roused my friends *da na ji ammon bindigogi dagga nesa na tashe abokaina*; *tashi**.

row, n. (= series, line, rank) *ṣaffu*, *jera*, *jere* or *jire**; to form a r. *yin ṣaffu*; in a r. *ajere*.

row, n. (= angry dispute), see **dispute**, **quarrel**; (= noisy outcry) *kururua*, e.g. he made a great r. *ya yi kururua dayawa*.

row, tr. and intr. v. *tuka*, *tukawa*, *yin tuka*; Hausas acquainted with European oared boats employ this word which (originally = to push, propel) is

- the term used for 'paddling' native canoes.
- royal**, adj. *na sariki*, fem. *ta sariki*; r. officers or attendants *sadawa* q. v.
- rub**, tr. v. *yafa* and *yafu*, *chuda* or *chudawa*; spec. to r. (= to wipe, r. down a table, etc.) *shafe*; to r. (or grind) corn *tushe*; to r. anything, e.g. corn in the hands *murje*, *murda*, *mulmuleli*; to r. the hair off a hide or skin *jemi*; to r., e.g. the head *murza**; to r. out *kankari*; to r. out (of writing = to blot out, erase) *yin maimai*; to r. violently *murkoshi*.
- rub out**, one to, n. *makankara*, e.g. he will contract a disease which has no one to rub it out *ya tarda ckuta wanda ba ta makankara* A 38.
- rubbed**, particip. adj. *murjek(k)e*, fem. *murjek(k)a*, pl. *murjek(k)u*.
- rubber**, n. 1. (= thing, e.g. a cloth, used in rubbing or wiping) *abin shafe*; 2. (= india-rubber) *danko*, *dunko*, or *dunko*, also *dankon gumji*; india-rubber tree (landolfia?) *gumji* or *gamji*.
- ruby**, n. *yaƙutu**.
- rudder**, paddle used as a, n. *matuki*.
- rug**, woollen sleeping-, n. *kilishi*.
- ruin**, tr. v. (= to spoil, destroy) *bata*; to be ruined or to fall into r. (of a house, etc.) *rushi*; participial n. and pres. form *rushiwa*.
- ruins**, coll. (of a place, town) *kufai*, pl. *kufaiƙai*, *kango*; r. left after a conflagration *gobara*.
- rule**, n. (= government, royal sway) *sarauta* or *sarota*; (= established mode of procedure) *tada*, pl. *tadodi*, *ada*.
- rule**, v. (= to hold sway as a king) *malaka*, *yin* (*sarauta* or) *sarota*; (= to decide, order authoritatively) *hakumta*, e.g. he ruled that we should do this *ya hakumta nu yi hakka*.
- ruler**, n. *maimalaka*, *masarauchi**, *hakimi**, pl. *hakimai*; (= king) *sariki* or *sarki*, pl. *sarakuna* or *sarikai**.
- run**, intr. v. *gudu*, *gudana*; (= to melt) *nariku*; to r. after *bi*; to r. at (= to attack) *fadi bis(s)a*; to r. away *gudu*, *guje**, *tsire*, *tsal(l)ache* or *sal(l)achi**; to r. away quickly *sheka*; to r. out, e.g. he ran out of the town *ya fitta dagga birni da gudu*; to r. out (= to come to an end) *kare*; to r. over (= to overflow) *tude* or *tuda*.
- runaway**, n. 1. (of slaves) *gujeje**; 2. (in war) *maguje* or *muguje*.
- rush**, intr. v. *kuche* or *kuza*; to r., e.g. out of a crowd *ruza*.
- rust**, n. *tsatsa**.
- rust**, intr. v. *yin tsatsa*.
- sabbath**, n. 1. (in the scriptural sense = Saturday) *assubat*, *ra-*

- nan asubat*; 2. (= Sunday) *lahadi, ranan lahad*.
- sable**, adj. see **black**.
- sabre**, n. see **sword**.
- sack**, n. spec. large skin s. or bag for cowries *jik(k)a* or *zik(k)a*, pl. *jikoki, buhu* (Zaria), *birgami* (Kano), these are not used as water skins for which see under skin; skin s. for loading camels, donkeys, etc. *waga*; s. made of network *raga*, pl. *ragogi*; large s. of salt (= one donkey load) *lengi*.
- sack**, tr. v. (= to pillage or plunder, of a place or town) turn by *kwache* or *kwashi*, e.g. he took and sacked the town *ya chi gari nan ya kwache dukiansu duka*.
- sacred**, adj. (= connected with religion) *na addini*, fem. *ta addini*, e.g. honour s. things and do not ridicule them *ku girmama abubua ta addini kadda ku basu daria*; (= gen. holy, pure) *tsariki* or *tsarki*.
- sacrifice**, n. *ṣadaka**; to offer a s. *yin ṣadaka**.
- sad**, adj. (= depressed, sorrowful); to be s. see **sadness**; a s. business (= causing sorrow or pity) *abin tausaye*; a s. business (= bad, wicked) *abin mugu*.
- saddle**, n. *surdi*, pl. *suradi* and *surduna*; native s. cloth which is laid on the s. *jel(l)ala**, *zipka**; s. peak *kwochia*, that in front *kwochia gab(b)a*, that behind *kwochia baya*.
- saddle**, v. (of camels, etc.) *labda*, (of horses) *damre* (or *darime*) *surdi*, and in the freest sense *sa surdi bis(s)a doki*.
- sadness**, n. *bak(k)in zuchia*; to experience s., to feel sad *jin, yin* or the forms in *na* with the n., e.g. I experience s., I feel sad *ina bakkin zuchia*.
- safe**, meat, n. *maanfanin nama*.
- safe conduct**, letter of, n. *wotikan lamuni*.
- safety**, n. (= security from harm) *lamuni, amana*; (= deliverance from harm) *chira* and *chiraro*.
- saffron**, n. (a plant) *daf(f)ara* (?), *loda*.
- sagacious**, adj. *da basira, da hankali, maihankali*.
- sagacity**, n. *basira, hankali*.
- said**, it is, determinative or causal phr. *wai*, e.g. thou art proud because it is s., Thou excellest all *kana kumburawa wai ka fi kowa*.
- sake**, for the s. of, prep. *domin, don, garin, sabbada, sabbado** or *sabboda**, e.g. for his s. *dominsa*; for the s. of this *domin* (or *don*) *hak(k)a*; for the s. of a walk *garin yawo*; for the s. of what? *domin mi, domi*, and *sabbada mi*.
- sale**, phrr. expose for s. *tal(l)a*; it is on s., it is for s. *asayesda*.
- salesman**, n. *maisaida*, pl. *masusaida*.
- saline**, adj. *da gishiri, na gishiri*.
- saliva**, n. *sal(l)abi, mio*.
- salmon**, fish resembling, n. *falia*.
- salt**, n. *gishiri*; prov. a man may

boil horns with his own s. (i.e. one may do what one likes with one's own) *mutum da gishirinsa shi kan daffa kafa*; spec. a dark kind of s. *maruda*; hard rock s. *gal(l)o*; an inferior kind of s. *balma*; a s. (or natron) used in dyeing as a mordant *ashauma*; a cake of s. *foche**; a flat piece of s. cut from block *zowari*; round flat pieces of s. coll. *aserimi*; large sack of s. (= one donkey load) *lengi*; load of s. cut small *bakan gishiri*; pyramidal load (for one man) of s. *kantu*; small *kantu* of inferior s. *pashi*; a large *kantu* of s. *azurumi*; a quantity of s. *auki**; s. spread out *tafin giwa**.

salt-bag, n. long, narrow b. for carrying s. *langi**; small s.-bag *chukurufa**.

saltless, adj. *babu gishiri, ba gishiri*; spec. of eggs without salt (= insipid) *da lami*.

saltpetre, n. *kanwa, gal(l)o (?)*; spec. a s. used medicinally *ja kanwa*; s. used as *maganin haifua* is called *kanwa gwan-gwarassa*; a s. used in making *tuo*, etc. *farin kanwa*; a s. for making armlets *kanwa un-gurnu*.

salutation, n. *gaisua*, e.g. he paid no heed to my s. *bai kulla ba da gaisuana* or *ba ya karba gaisuana ba*; salutations at a funeral *makoki*. N.B. The language is rich in expressions

of s., e.g. s. to you (= Engl. hail! welcome!) pass. *agaishe (-ka, -ki) -ku, atuski*; the commonest expr. of s. is *san(n)u* or rep. *san(n)u san(n)u* and this is most frequently accompanied by a reference to the time of day, or the state and occupation of the person saluted, e.g. good morning (lit. s. to you in the morning) *sannu da safe*, good evening *sannu da mareche*, welcome out of the rain *sannu da rua*; s. to you in your bereavement *sannu da kewa*; s. to you at your play *sannu da worigi*; s. to you at your work *sannu da aiki* or *sannu da aikinku* or *sannunku da aiki*; spec. s. (among moslems) *salam*, (to the name and memory of Mohammed) *ṣal(l)ata* or *ṣal(l)atu*, see under *ṣal(l)a*; to send salutations *gaishe*.

salute, tr. v. *gaida, gaishe, gaisa, shali** and *yin shali*, e.g. I saluted the man *na gaida mutum*; to go to s. anyone *jawayi* or *jiwoyi*; spec. to go to s. (of sacred persons or places) *ziara, ziaara* C 37, B 162, 168.

saluted, to cause to be, tr. v. *gaishe*.

saluting, n. (in a religious sense) *tasliman** D title note.

salvation, n. *tsira, cheto, gaji**, e.g. may we obtain s. *amusami tsira* E 52; a day in which

there shall be no s. *rana da ba cheto* A 4.

same, adj. *daia* (lit. one) e.g. they are the s. *duk daia ne*; this is the s. as that *wonan daia kaman wonchan*; together at the s. time or place *gab(b)adai* or *gab(b)adaia*; the s. *hak(k)anan*; it is all the s. *suasua*; as a determinative employ demonstrative pronouns, e.g. I saw the s. man yesterday in the market *na gani wanan* (or *wanan mutum* or *mutum nan*) *jia chikkin kasua*.

sanctify, tr. v. *tsar(i)kaka*, *tsar-kaka*, *tsarkaki* or *charkaka*.

sanctified, particip. *tsar(i)kake*, fem. *tsarkakia*, pl. *tsarkaku*; cf. holy.

sand, n. *rairai* or *rere*, *jigowa* or *jegawa*; spec. fine s. *turbaia**; white s. in water *yachi*; grains of s. *barbaddi* or *berbaddi*; s. mixed with grain *tariki**.

sandal, n. *takalmi*, pl. *takalma*, *kufit(t)a* or *kufut(t)a*, pl. *kufit(t)ai* or *kufut(t)ai*; sandals with red leather tops and hole for toe *sambazai*; light kind of s. *tajawankai*.

sandy hill, a, n. *jigowa* or *jigawa*.

sapphire, n. *yakutu**.

Satan, pr. n. *shaitan*, *shetan* or *shaitani* B 105, 132.

satchel, n. (leathern) *gufaka* or *guf(f)aka*, *lek(k)i*.

satisfaction, n. 1. (of the appetite) *koshi*; 2. (of the feelings and emotions) *dadi*, e.g. we felt

great s. *mu ji dadi dayawa*;

3. see **requital**, **requite**.

satisfactory, it is, phr. *ya yi*.

satisfied, to be, intr. v. (of the appetites) *koshi*, e.g. they ate, they drank and were s. *sun chi sun sha sun koshi*, (of the emotions) *jin dadi*; cf. seq.

satisfied, a being, n. *koshi*; one who is s. n. *kosa(s)he*, pl. *kosas(s)u*.

satisfy, tr. v. (of the appetite) *koshada**; (= to pay to the full claims, etc.) *bia*, *rama*.

Saturday, pr. n. of time *assubat*, *ranan assubat* or *rana assubat*.

sauce, n. *mia**.

savage, n. (barbarians, uncivilised human beings) *baibai*, pl. *baibaiyi* and *babawa*.

savage, adj. (= barbarian) cf. prec., (= cruel) *mun(n)i*.

savagely, adv. (= cruelly) *da mun(n)i*.

savagery, n. (= cruelty) *mun(n)i*.

save, tr. v. 1. (= to rescue, deliver) *chira*, *chire*, *chiro* or *tsira*, *tsire*, *tsiro*, sar F 125, *cheto* or *cheche*, *fidakai**, *rukun** or *rikun**, e.g. whoever beholds thee, beholds part of paradise, he (Mohammed) saves him *kowa ganika ya ga rabbo gobe ya tsira*; 2. (of money = to lay by or up) *aje*.

save, exceptive prep. see **but** 2.

saved, to be, intr. v. *chira*, *chire*, *chiro* or *tsira*, *tsire*, *tsiro*, e.g. he who is ungrateful shall not be s., let us repent, let us put

away ingratitude, so that we may be s. *da ya she* (= *che*) *maibutulshi ba shi tsira mu tuba mu ber butulshi ko mu tsira*; the pass. of *cheto*, *cheche*, may also be used *acheto*, *ancheto*, *anacheto*, *akacheto*, and the fut. *zaacheto*.

saviour, n. *maicheto*, pl. *masucheto*, *machechi**, pl. *macheta*.

savoury, adj. *gardi*, fem. *gardia*, *da gardi*, *da zakai*, e.g. meat without broth is not s. *nama da babu mia ba tana da gardi ba*; for the opposite quality see *insipid*.

saw, n. *zerto*, *sasago**.

say, tr. v. *che* with pres. forms *chewa*, *fad(d)i* or *fad(d)a*, *tan(n)e**, e.g. what do you say? *mi ka che*, we are saying that he is an honest man *muna chewa shi mutumen gaskia ne*; it is said *anche*, *akache*; he said to them *ya che dasu*, *ya fad(d)i masu*; he says, it is said, they s. (used to determine a phr. or clause as uttered or admitted to be true by others, like Engl. fam. 'you know') *wai*, e.g. what does he desire in this earth? Its goods, he says, both them and its dominion *shi mi akayi kwadai gun duniana wai dukia da su da sarotanta* B 111; to s. a thing over again *tes(s)a* or *tesa*; to s. off by heart or rote *yin tulawa*.

saying, n. 1. (= something said) *magana*, pl. *maganganu*; 2.

participial n. (= act of s.) *chewa* used with pres. forms in *na*.

scab, n. *kurji*, pl. *kuraji*; *kureji*, pl. *kurareji*; also *kirchi*, *gurje*, *girje* or *urji**; s. which has healed up *tombo*; scabs coll. *balli balli*.

scald, tr. v. (i.e. with hot water) *tsali*.

scale, n. (as lichen, dandruff) *toto*, *tautan*.

scales, n. 1. (of fish) *kumba*, pl. *kumbuna* and *kumbai*, (of dead alligator) *kirigin kada*; 2. (= balance) *maana*, *mizani*.

scan, v. (= to look at with scrutiny) *kal(l)o* and *yin kal(l)o*, e.g. we walked about the town scanning everything *mun yawo dagga gari muna kallo dukachin abu*.

scar, n. (= cicatrix) *tabo*, *tombo* and *tubbo*; scars made on face serving as tribal marks *shau-shawa*; cf. marks.

scatter, v. 1. tr. *wasa* or *wase*, *walwache*, *wache* and *wase*, *raraba* or *rarabi**, *kaririye* or *karayeya*, *tsiayi*; 2. intr. *wache* and *washe*, *gigichi* or *gigi*, e.g. they s. in silence, they leave thee in the grave *su washe shiu su berka chikkin kushewa* F 98; also pass., e.g. they scattered or were scattered *anwachesu*; lest we be scattered *kad(d)a awasamu*.

scattered, particip. pass. *watsu*, also expressed by appending

the pass. forms *anwachesu*, *akawachesu*; scattered abroad *wasawasa**.

scent, n. 1. (= characteristic odour of animals) *wari*, cf. seq.; 2. (= a sweet or agreeable odour) *kamshi*; 3. (= a sweet-smelling preparation, a perfume) *abin kamshi*, *jibda*; spec. a small tree from the root of which a s. is made *uwan magunguna*; a plant whose root furnishes a s. *jiji*.

scent, tr. v. (= to recognise by the odour) *jin wari*, also *san(n)i wari*; the dog scented the lion *karre ya ji warin zaki*.

scent-bottle, n. *wukia*.

scented, keen-, adj. (of hounds) *maijin wari*, pl. *masujin wari*.

scheme, n. (= artful contrivance) *wayo*, *waya*.

scholar, n. (= a great scholar, a teacher) *malami*, pl. *malamai*; (= a pupil) *almajiri*, pl. *almajirai*, (used adjectively = learned) *maikaratu*, e.g. he became a great s. *ya zama maikaratu dayawa*.

school, n. *makaranta*.

scissors, n. *almaqassi*; joint of s. *kwarmi*, pl. *kwarmu*.

scissors, cutting with, participial n. *sosaiya**; to cut with s. *yin sosaiya*.

scoff at, to, v. *baa* and *yin baa*.

scold, v. *tsawa* or *yin tsawa*, e.g. he scolded her well *ya yi mata tsawa dayawa*.

scorch, tr. v. *farcha*.

score, n. of number *lasso*, *hawia*, the latter esp. used in counting cowries, e.g. he looses two thousand cowries *ya ber hawia dari* A 39.

scorn, v. *rena*, e.g. do you s. my present? *kana rena kecutana*.

scorpion, n. *kunama*, *konama* or *kunami*, pl. *kunamai*, e.g. scorpions and snakes will gather together, and with insects will pour forth poison *kunamai duk su gaia mashizai da sususi deffi su ka bungulawa* F 109.

scourge, n. *bulala*.

scourge, tr. v. *yin bulala*, e.g. the judges ordered him to be scourged *alkalai su hakumta ayi masa bulala*.

scowl, intr. v. *damre fuska*.

scramble for anything, v. *wasoso*.

scrape, tr. v. *karkari**, (to s. clean and so polish) *gogi* or *goge*, pres. *gogewa*, e.g. he is scraping the axe-handle *shina gogewa bakin gatari*; to s., also to s. or peel off, to s. out (erase) *kankari*; to s., e.g. with a stone *kurkura*; to s. up = to grub up, e.g. roots *tona* and *tone*; to s. with a knife *karta**.

scratch, tr. v. (an itching place) *susa*; to s. up with the nails *kache*.

scream, n. *ufu*, *kururua*.

scream, intr. v. *yin ufu*, e.g. he screams *shina yin ufu* or *shina (ufu or) kururua*.

scum, n. *kunfa*.

sea, n. *gulbi**, *kogi**.

seal, n. *zobe*, *zobi*.

seal, tr. v. *yumki**, *zuin(n)a**, *zuinna**.

seal-ring, n. *zoben shaida*.

seam, n. (in cloth) *albad(d)a*, pl. *albad(d)u* or *albad(d)odi*; spec. a breadth between seams of cloth *chiki*.

seamless, adj. (applied to cloth) *liwasa*.

sear, tr. v. (with hot iron, to cauterise) *lalas*, *sa lalas*, e.g. he seared it *ya sa mata lalas*.

search, n. *chigia*; to make diligent s. *yin chigia* or *bada chigia*.

search, v. 1. tr. (=to examine for the purpose of finding something) *nema* with *chik(k)i*, e.g. we searched the boat but found nothing *muka nema chikkin* (or *dagga chikkin*) *jirigi amma ba mu same komi ba*; 2. intr. (=make search) *nema*; to s. after or for *nema*, *bid(d)a*, *nuf(f)e* or *nif(f)a*; s. diligently for *tsururi*, cf. prec.; to s. for with the hand *lalabe*, *fafake*.

searching after, n. (=desire and object of desire) *maradi* or *muradi*.

season, n. 1. gen. (=usual or proper time) *saa*, *lokachi*, *lot(t)u*; 2. (=division of the year with respect to weather, etc.) dry (and hot) s. *rani*; it is the dry s. *ya yi rani*; hottest part of dry s., when the rains are beginning *basara*; wet s. *dam(m)ana* or *dam(m)una*.

seat, n. *mazamni* (i.e. spot on which anyone sits), *kushera*, *bige**, *turaka**; judgment s. also s. on which a king is carried about *karaga*.

secede, intr. v. (=to separate from, withdraw from) *raba* and *rabu* with *da* or *dag(g)a*.

second, ord. num. *nabiu*, fem. *tabiu*, also *nabaya*, fem. *tabaya*.

second, tr. v. (=to assist) *taya*, e.g. I seconded their action *na tayasu yin hakka*.

secret, n. *boya* or *boiya*, *asiri* or *ashiri*; in s., see **secretly**.

secret, adj. *naasiri*, fem. *taasiri*; s. place *loloki asiri*, *loloki*, pl. *lolokai*; vv. to keep s. *rufe*, *rufi* or *rife*; to open up, make known anything s. *bude*.

secretly, adv. *asiri* or *ashiri*, *aboyi*.

section, n. *godawa**.

secure, adj., *da babu tsoro* (lit. without fear); cf. **safety**.

secure, tr. v. (from danger, harm, etc.) see **guard**, (fam. =to catch, capture, e.g. a prisoner) *kama*, (to guarantee payment of a debt, etc.) see seq.

security, n. 1. (=safety from harm generally) *aminchi*; to afford such s. *yin aminchi* B 84; 2. (=part payment of a debt as s. = earnest money) *amana*; 3. (=a thing left as s., a pledge), *jingina* or *jinjina*; to give such s. *jingina*; 4. (responsibility for a debt, etc. = gua-

rantee) *lamuni* or *lamini*; I stand or go s. *na yi lamuni*.

sediment, n. *guiba*, *gwiba* or *guibi*.

seduce, tr. v. (to lead astray) *rude*.

seducer, n. *mairude*, pl. *masurude*, the pl. of *shaitan* is also used in this sense, i.e. *shaitane* or *shaitanai*.

see, tr. v. *gan(n)i*, *gan(n)o*, often contracted to *gan*, e.g. I saw her *na ganta*, also to *gā* which is very commonly used as an imperative, e.g. s. him, also = s. here *gashi*; I s. distinctly there is the hyena *ina gani sarrai kura gata* B 149; in a pregnant sense, like the Engl. 'see' (= experience), e.g. they shall s. pain *su gano azaba* F 181; fig. (= to perceive, recognise, understand), e.g. what knowledge (intelligence) does not s. *abindu hankali bai gani ba* B 32; what knowledge sees *abinda hankali ke ganewa* B 33; common in conversation, e.g. do you s.? *ka ganni*; this may also be expressed by *ka ji* or *ka fahimta*; to s. from afar *tsinkata*, *hange*.

seed, n. gen. (of plants, men, creatures) *iri*, pl. *irare*; spec. black and red seeds of a plant *algarib*, pl. *algaribi*; coriander s. *ridi*.

seeing, participial n. *ganewa*.

seen, pass. particip. *ganene*, fem. *ganenia*, pl. *ganenu*.

seek, tr. v. (= to go in search

of) *nema*, *bid(d)a*; to s. after (often implying to set the heart upon) *dawoingya*, *wai-waia*, e.g. he sought not after the things of this world *ba waiwaia ba ta dumia* C 51; to s. for *tuski* or *tuske*; pregn. s. and return with *bid(d)o*, go to s. and return with *nemo*.

seize, tr. v. (= to lay hold of) *kama*, intens. *kankama**, e.g. he seized the horse by the tail *ya kama doki da wutsiansa* or *ya kama wutsian doki*, *haushi**, *maki**, *sariki**; to s. (esp. in order to eat) *rida*; to s. forcibly as in war *burumtu*, also *kwache*; (to snatch) *amshi*.

select, tr. v. *zaba*, *zabe*, *zabi**, *wari*, the last often used of choosing out one or more pieces.

selected, particip. pass. *zababe*, fem. *zababa*, pl. *zababu*, e.g. I will not agree to this unless you bring selected witnesses *ba zan yerda wanan ba sai ka zo da masushaida zababu*.

self, n. expressed by *kai* and *rai* with possess. pronouns, 1. reflexive, e.g. he exposed himself to ridicule *ya bada (kansa* or) *rainsa daria*; 2. emphatic, e.g. I myself *ni dakaina*, *ni kaina*, *ni raina* and *raina* F 254.

selfish person, n. *marowachi*, *mairouwa*; a s. grasping person *maisari*.

self-laudation, n. *kirari*.

sell, tr. v. *sayo*, also *saye*, *sayi*, *sai*, *saida*, *sayes*, *sayesda*, *tal(l)a*, the last also esp. of having or exposing on or for sale, e.g. good camels are to-day selling in the market *rakuma nagargaru anasayesu yau chikkin kasua*; in the sense of consenting to s. the pass. of *sal(l)ame* is often used, e.g. I agree to s. = I let it go or you can have it *asalameshi*.

seller, n. *maisaida*, pl. *masusaida*.

send, tr. v. *aiki*, *aike*, *aika*, which also = to s. forth, from, to; to s. to where the speaker is *aiko*, (with a person only as obj. lit. to rouse up, to start) *táda*, e.g. I sent a messenger *na táda manzo*; to s. away *tayesda*; (= to cast, throw, e.g. a bullet) *jefa*.

sender, n. *maaike*, pl. *masuaike* and *maaike*.

senna, n. *shani ka sanní**, *filasko* (Barth).

sense, n. 1. (= good s., understanding) *hankali* or *hankali*; a man of s. *mutum maihankali*; 2. (= signification) see **meaning**.

senseless, adj. (= stupid, foolish) *marashankali*, *babu hankali*, *magagachi* B 108, *faskara**, (= insensible, unconscious) see **seq.**

senses, n. (= the faculties of sensation) *hankali*, e.g. look at him! there he is in a faint and senseless but do not fear,

in a little while he will come to his s. again *gáshi! shina nan shina suma hankalinsa kua ya bache amma kadda ka ji tsoro jima kaddan hankalinsa zai komo kuma gareshi*.

sensible, adj. (= prudent, intelligent) *maihankali*, pl. *masuhankali*, *da hankali*.

sensibly, adv. (= with good sense) *da hankali*.

sent, pass. particip. *aikeke*, fem. *aiketa*, pl. *aiketu*; one s. n. *maaike*, pl. *masuaike* and *maaike* = *manzo*; spec. one s. from God *rasulu**.

sentence, n. (= judicial decision) *sheria*; to pass s. *yin sheria*.

sentinel, n. *gata*, pl. *gataye*.

sentry, n. see **prec.**

separate, adj. *bambam*, e.g. s. from that *bambam dag(g)a wonchan*.

separate, v. 1. tr. *raba* and *rab(b)i*, *kebe*, *ware*; 2. intr. *rabu*, *zaua**; to s. from *id*.

separated, pass. particip. *rababe*, fem. *rababa*, pl. *rababu*.

separately, adv. *dek(k)i dek(k)i*.

separation, n. *rabua*.

serene, adj. see **calm**, **clear**, **quiet**.

sermon, n. *waatsi*, *waatsu* often pronounced *wazi*, *wazu*.

serpent, n. see **snake**.

servant, n. (not slave) *bara*, fem. *barania* or *baranya*, pl. *barori* and pl. of multitude *barurua* which implies a large number such as a king would have,

dan daki; a female s. *maarkia*, *enturaka**; s. of God *bawan allah* (lit. slave of God).

serve, v. 1. (of one not a slave) *yin barantaka*; 2. (of a slave) *bauta* with forms in *na*, or with *ke* or *yi*; this is also the proper term (as the more respectful) for to s. God and hence for to s. false gods, e.g. a servant who has served a vain service, who serves a stone *bawa wanda ki* (= *ke*) *bauta ta banza shina bauta ga duchi* D 42 note.

service, n. 1. gen. *ibada*; 2. (of one not a slave) *barantaka*, that of a slave being *bauta* (= servitude, slavery) hence its use as given in prec. 2; 3. (relig.) s. of God *ibada*, e.g. serve God *kuna ibada* D 51; concr. divine s. (= public worship) *gal(l)a*.

servitude, n. see **slavery**.

sesame, n. *samsam*.

set, tr. v. (gen. to place) *sā*; (= to plant) see **plant** 1.; (= to sharpen, e.g. a knife) *wasa* or *gerta wuka*; intr. (of the sun) *fadi*, e.g. the sun s. *rana ta fadi*; combinations of to s. with particles, etc. are: to s. apart from *raba*, to s. aside (= to reject) *ki*, to s. aside (= to omit for the present) *ber(r)i*, *ber*, to s. by and to s. down (e.g. on the ground) *aje*, to s. forth (= to exhibit, state) *gaya*, to s. out (= to start on a jour-

ney) *sabko*, *safko* or *sapko*, to s. up *tayes*, *kaf(f)a*, to's. upon (= to assault) *firmaki*.

settle, v. 1. tr. (= gen. to arrange, set right) *gara*, *gera*; (= to pay, liquidate) *bia*, e.g. I settled the debt *na bia bashi*; 2. intr. (= to alight, fix one's habitation or stay) *sauka* or *soka*, *zamna* or *zamna*; to s. on or s. down on *id.*, e.g. the bird was tired and settled on the branch of a tree *tsuntsua ta gaji ta zamna bissa ga reshen itache*.

seven, card. num. *bokkoi*, e.g. the s. Hausa districts *hausa bokkoi*; s. times *sau* (or *so*) *bokkoi*; by sevens *bokkoi bokkoi*.

seventeen, card. num. *goma sha bokkoi*, *sha bokkoi*.

seventh, ord. num. *nabokkoi*, fem. *tabokkoi*.

seventh, one, n. of number *subu**.

seventieth, ord. num. *naseb(b)ain*, fem. *taseb(b)ain*.

seventy, card num. *seb(b)ain*.

severe, adj. (e.g. of a law, etc. = oppressive, harsh) *da tsanani*, also *abin tsanani*; to be s. *tsane*, *tsani*, *tsanache*, *tsananta*, all constr. with *ga*, *gare* (with pronouns) or *ma*.

sew, tr. v. *dumke*, *dumka* or *dumki*, e.g. some tailors cannot s. well *wodansu madumkai ba su iya dumke da kearu ba*.

sewer, n. (= one who sews, also = tailor) *madumki*, fem. *madumkia*, pl. *madumkai*.

sewing, n. s. at edge of a garment *tindumi*; (= the act of s. in order to mend) *fasali*; v. to tack in s. *lalaftu*.

sh!, n. (= the sound of hissing) *shishit(t)a*.

shackle, v. *sā* with seq. and *ma*, e.g. we shackled them *mu sa masu malwa*; let him be shackled *asa masa giger*.

shackles, n. *malwa, giger*, cf. also fetters.

shade, n. *en(n)ua*; a broad s. *en(n)ua mafadi*; (= a thing for affording s., as a booth, shed, cover, etc.) *rumpa*, pl. *rumfuna*; to enjoy the s. *sha en(n)ua* D 75.

shadow, n. *en(n)ua*, e.g. a man does not leave his s. behind him *mutum bai berri ba ennuansa ga baya*.

shake, v. 1. tr. *gilgiza* or *girgiza*, e.g. the woman is shaking her kerchief to attract our attention *mache tana gilgiza kallabinta don mu tunane da ita*, *rauda*, e.g. he shakes his head *ya rauda kai nasa, tankade* as in winnowing, etc., *zazaga, tugua*, e.g. do not take the medicine without shaking it first *kadda ka (hade or) sha magani sai ka zazagashi da-furi, mosa* (also in fig. sense see below); to s. the hand as a greeting *jinjini*; to s. off, e.g. dust *kalkada, kalkade, kankade, karkade* and *kakabe**; to s. to and fro *reto, shil(l)u*; to

s. up *shil(l)u*, e.g. s. up the two medicines together *ka shillu magani da magani*; to s. violently *shil(l)u* and *jijiga*; 2. intr. *mosa*, also fig. in the wider sense of being agitated, influenced, moved, e.g. the whole multitude were shaken at the news of war *taro duka (ya or) su mosa da labarin yaki*; to s. (as to tremble, shiver, shudder with cold, etc.) *raura*.

shaken, pass. part. *gilgizaze*, fem. *gilgizazia*, pl. *gilgizazu*.

shaking, n. (or trembling) *raura-wa*.

shall, aux. v. 1. (of futurity) *za*, e.g. what s. I do now? *mi zani yi yanzu*; 2. (of obligation), see **must, necessary**.

shallow, adj. *ba* (or *babu*) *zurufi* (or *zurfi*), *ba maizurufi*.

shambles, n. *wurin fawa*.

shame, n. *kumya* or *kumia*; the parts of s. *alaura*; to feel s. *jin kumya*; to put to s. *sa* (*ba* and *bada*) *kumya*, e.g. he put him to open s. *ya sashi kumya* (*abude* or) *asarrari*.

shameful, adj. *na kumya, da kumya*; a s. thing *abin kumya*.

shameless, adj. *naraskumya, babu kumya*; a s. person *fuzu*.

shamelessness, n. *kulikas(s)a*.

shape, n. (= form) *kama, supa**.

shape, tr. v. (= to fashion, create), see **make** 1.

share, n. see **part, portion**.

share, tr. v. see **divide**; spec. to invite to s. in one's food *chuna*.

sharp, adj. 1. (= having a fine edge) *da kaiji*; 2. (= finely pointed) *tsini* or *zini*, *da tsini*.

sharpen, tr. v. *wasu*, *gerta**, e.g. take this knife and s. it *ka dauka wukanga ka wasata*; the knife was sharpened long ago *wuka akawasata tundade-wa*; spec. to s. a knife *bada-gela**; to s. a sword *koda*.

sharpened, be, pass. v. *awasa*, *anwasa*, *akawasa*.

sharpening swords, tool for, n. *magagari*.

shatter, tr. v. (intens.) *farifasha* or *palpashu*.

shave, v. (with razor) *aski*, *aske*, *aska*, and *yin aski*.

shaving, verbal n. spec. s. the front of head or so as to leave only a tuft on top of head *kumbe* or *kwumbe*; s. one side of the head as sign of sorrow *faskari*; baldness caused by s. *kundumi*.

shawl, made in strips, n. *alkil(l)a*.

she, pers. pron. fem. 1. separate and emphatic *ita*, e.g. it is s. *ita che*; s. stayed but her mother went away *ita ta zamna amma uwata ta tuffi*; 2. in combination with verbs *ta*, e.g. s. saw him *ta ganshi*, the woman said no *mache ta che aa*.

shea-butter, n. *dankon kedanya*; the s.-b. tree *kedanya*, *kadanya*, *kedainya*; fruit of the s.-b. tree *kade* and *hanchin kade*.

sheaf, n. (=also bundle of any-

thing) *dame* or *demmi*, pl. *damuna*; spec. s. of arrows *shib(b)a**; s. of corn *sangarnia** or *zangarnia**, pl. *sangarnu*.

shear, tr. v. *yin sosaiya*.

shearing, verbal n. *sosaiya*.

sheath, n. (for knife, sword) *kube*.

shed, n. *rumbu*, *rumpa*, pl. *rumfuna* esp. used of a s. or booth in a market-place; a temporary s. *buka*, pl. *bukogi*.

shed, tr. v. (= to pour out or down) *zub(b)a*, *zub(b)o* or *suba**; to s. tears *yin hawaye*.

sheep, *tumkia* or *dumkia*, pl. *tumaki*.

sheep-fold, n. see *fold*.

sheet, n. (of paper) *taba'an** *takarda*; winding s. *likafani* F 91 note, *kafan* D 88.

shelf, rope supporting a, n. *ragaya*, pl. *ragayu*.

shell, n. (= hard covering of fruit, eggs, etc.) *kosfa*, *kwosfa* or *kwasfa*, pl. *kosfofi* or *kwosfofi*, e.g. you break the nut, you peel off the s. *ka karye gujia ka bare kwosfa*; shells of snails *katamtamwa*.

shell, tr. v. (= to take off the peel or shell) *bare*.

shell-fish, an edible, n. *kumba*, pl. *kumbuna* and *kumbai*.

shelter, n. (= protection from light and heat) *en(n)ua*, (= a place of refuge) *gid(d)an chira*, *wurin chira*.

shepherd, n. *makiyayi* or *makiyaye*, pl. *makiyaya*.

sherd of pots, n. *katanga*.

shield, n. gen. *garkua* or *gerkua*, pl. *gariki*, also in a loose sense (lit. battle equipment) *kayan dagga*; spec. large, oblong s. like that of the Zulus *kwungura**; small s. *kunkeli**; s. made of skin *makari*; s. made of straw *dangi*; species of antelope of whose skin shields are made *walwaji*.

shine, intr. v. *ba* or *bada haske*, *haskaka**, *kal(l)i** or *kel(l)i**; the lightning shines brighter than the sun *wolkia ta fi rana da haske*.

shining, adj. *maihaske*, pl. *masuhaske*.

shirk work, v. *huji*.

shirt, n. *tufa* or *tufua*, pl. *tufafi* or *tufofi* worn under the gown, *riga*, pl. *riguna*, which sometimes = a large s.; spec. a funeral s. *hausaki** or *ausagi** D 88 note; an inside, pleated s. *kwakwata*; s. like a robe but smaller *tugua* or *tagua*, pl. *tuguna*; akin to last is the name of a kind of s. *tag(g)o*, pl. *tag(g)una*; hole for neck in a s. *wundi*.

shiver, 1. tr. see **shatter**; 2. intr. (= to tremble, shudder) *firgita*, *raura*.

shoe, n. *takalmi*, pl. *takalma*; he took off the s. *ya fit(t)a* (or *fit(t)asda*) *takalmi*; I put on the shoes but they did not fit *na sa takalma amma ba su daidai ba*; spec. small s. worn inside boots *suf(f)adu*, pl. *suf(f)a-*

dai; a pair of odd shoes *gam(m)inbauta*.

shoot, v. 1. tr. (= to hit with a shot, etc.) *halbi* or *harbi*; pass. e.g. he was shot *akahalbeshi da bindiga* (if with an arrow *da kibia*); 2. intr. (= to discharge a gun) *halbi bindiga* or *buga bindiga*; of plants to s. or s. forth *yin tofo*.

shooting, n. (= the killing of game) *farauta*; to go s. *yin farauta*.

shooting star, n. *mashi*.

short, adj. 1. (of length) *gajere*, fem. *gajera* and *gajeria*, pl. *gajeru*, e.g. a s. stick *sanda gajera*, also *karami* (lit. small); 2. (of time) *kad(d)an*, e.g. a s. while *jima kaddan*; 3. (in number, wanting) *hil(l)afa**.

short of, fall, intr. v. *kasa*, e.g. thy days on earth are numbered, thou canst not pass them nor come s. of them *kwanunka durnia maduda ne ba ka wuchesu ba ka kasanu* B 122.

shortness, n. *gajerta*.

shot, n. (= ball, bullet) *arşarş*.

shoulder, n. *kafada*, pl. *kafadu* and *kafadodi*; the part from the s. to the elbow *damichi* or *damshi*, pl. *damasa*.

shout, n. *ufu*, *wu*, *guda* or *gudu*; spec. s. in war *jinjina*; a s. of joy *rereru*.

shout, intr. v. *yin ufu*.

shove, tr. v. see **push**.

show, n. (= ornamental display) *ado*.

show, tr. v. (= both to point out any object and also to inform, explain) *god(d)a* or *goda*, *nuna* or *nuni*, e.g. he showed me it (i.e. he pointed out where it was) *ya godda (mani or) gareni*; s. me how I am to do it *nuna (or godda) mani kamada ni yi*.

showing, verbal n. in both senses of prec. *nunawa*.

shrink, intr. v. (from cold, etc.) *firgita*; (= to shrivel up), see seq.

shrivel, intr. v. *yaushi* or *yoshi*, *yin yaushi*; it shrivels up *ya yi yaushi*.

shroud, n. *kafan**, *likafani* or *likafani*; a s. is put on thee, thou art wrapped therein *asa maka dan likafani kuma asunke* F 91.

shrub, n. spec. a leguminous s. *kaikaya*; a s. that burns with a noise (? = *cynanchum viminalis*) *yadia*; s. from the wood of which a medicine (*maganin majina*) is made *yako*; s. the seeds of which are used for an eye medicine *fideli*.

shudder, intr. v. *raura*.

shun, tr. v. see **avoid**.

shut, tr. v. *rufe*, *rufi* or *rife*, e.g. let not the door be s. *kadda arufe kofa*; to s. a box, door, etc. *yami**; to s. up *sadda*, *turubude*.

shuttle, n. *masaka*.

sick, adj. *da chiwo*, *marili**; one who is s. *maichiwo*, pl. *masuchiwo*, *marasafia*, *majinachi**.

sick, be, v. 1. (= to be in bad health) *jin* (or *yin*) *chiwo*, also *da chiwo* with forms in *na*, e.g. he is s. *shina da chiwo*; 2. (= to feel nausea) *jin kumolo*; see also ill 2.

sickle, small semicircular, n. *lauje* B 38; he bends it as a s. is bent *shi karkatta kama lauje*.

sickness, n. *chiwo*, *chiuta* or *chuta*, *jinya**; the following words designate special forms *majina* (= a cold), *falfada* (= fainting fit), *aloba* (= pestilence, plague) *amai* (= vomiting).

side, n. 1. gen. *woje*, pl. *wosashe*, *sas(s)a* found also as *zaza* F 182; e.g. one on this s. and one on the other s. *daia ga woje nan daia ga woje chan*; from this s. (of a room, glen, etc.) even to that s. *dagga sassa nan har ga sassa nan*; the right s. *wojen dama*, *dama*; the left s. *wojen (hauni or) hagum*, *hagum*; s. of a body (also = edge) *karuye*, *kowi* or *kowie*; s. (= edge) of a stream *korwien rua*; 2. s. of the body *kwibi*; s. (= rib) of an animal *awoza* or *awaza*, pl. *awozai*, e.g. serpent's fat is a remedy for pain in the s. *kissin machiji maganin awozai ne*; s. (= boundary) *kawechi** D 13.

sieve, n. *rereya* or *rairaria*; spec. vessel with holes used as a coarse s. *matache*; s. used for separating gold from sand, etc. *matankadi*; the verbal ex-

pressions for sifting or winnowing with the foregoing are *tache*, *tankade* or *yin tankade*, also *bakache*.

sift, tr. v. see prec.

sigh, n. *sheda*.

sigh, intr. v. *sheda* used with forms in *na* or with *yi*, e.g. he sighs *shina* (or *yana*) *sheda*; she sighed *ita ta yi sheda*, *sinihi* or *sinishi*.

sighing, n. *ajian zuchia*.

sight, n. 1. (= the faculty of vision) no precise equivalent, turn, e.g. he lost the s. of his eye *idonsa ya bache*; or (he became blind) *ya zama makafu*, etc.; 2. (= the act of seeing also = view) *ido*, *gan(n)i* thus, in the s. of all men *idon dunia*; the s. of her will console them *ganninta zai masu hankuri*; the s. of them made everybody laugh *ganninsu ya sa kowane daria*, cf. F 247; the golden saddles are a beautiful s. *suradi na zinaria su da keaun ganni ne*; dim (or dimness of) s. *bambarokai*.

sign, n. gen. *shaida*, pl. *shaidodi*, which also = s. or mark made by one who cannot write his name, (= important or wonderful token, intimation) *alama* often pronounced *halama*, pl. *alamomi*, *aya*, pl. *ayoyi*; (= s. adduced or appealed to as a reason or authority) *dabili*.

signet, n. *mataushin wotika*; s. ring *zoben shaida*.

silence, n. *shiriu*, *shiru*, *shiu* or *shu*, *kurum*, *kawoi*; in s. *shiriu* B 54, *kuru*, e.g. leave them in s. *abersu kuru* D 29; to keep s. *yin kawoi*; he kept s. *ya ja bakinsa*.

silent, adj. *kauwe* or *kawoi*.

silent, to be, v. *shiriu*, *kurum* and *kawoi* with *yi* or the forms in *na*, e.g. be silent! *ka yi shiriu*; we were s. *mu yi kurum*; he is s. *shina kurum* or *shina yin kawoi*; cf. D 94, 95.

silently, adv. *shiriu*.

silk, *alhari*, pl. *alharini*; cord or chain of s. *silia* or *siliya*, pl. *siliyu* and *siliyoyi* F 233.

silken, adj. *na alharini* F 217.

silkworm, species of, n. *tsamia*.

silk cotton tree, n. *rimi*.

silly, adj. see **fool**, **foolish**.

silver, n. *azurfa* or *azurufa*.

silver, adj. *naazurfa*, fem. *taazurfa*.

similar, adj. see **like**.

similar, to be, v. *daidaiche**, see under **like**.

similitude, n. *michali** or *misali**; to speak by a s. *yin michali*.

sin, n. *zunufi* or *zunubi*, *laifi*, *kuskuri**; to commit s. see seq.

sin, intr. v. *yin zunufi* or *zunubi*, *yin laifi*.

since, 1. prep. (= after, from the time of) *tun*, e.g. s. your birth *tun haifuanka*; s. the commencement of the war *tun farawan yaki*; 2. conj. of time (= after that, from the time

that) *tun da, tunda*, e.g. s. we learnt that he was an infidel *tunda mu sannu shi kafiri ne*; 3. adv. (= ago) long s. *tundade, tundadewa, tuntuni*; how long s. ? *tunyaushe*, e.g. how long s. did you learn Hausa? *tunyaushe ka koiyo hausa*; 4. conj. (= because) *don, zama*, e.g. they cannot move since they are lifeless *ba suna iya yin mosi ba don ba su da rai*.

sincere, adj. see **honest**.

sing, v. *waka* or *waka*, e.g. a mallam sits there and sings *woni malami ya zamna nan yana waka*.

singing, n. *raha**.

single, adj. see **alone, one**.

singly, adv. e.g. question them s. (= one by one) *ka tambayasu daia daia*, see also **alone**.

singular, adj. see **plural**.

sink, n. (= a place of filth, also fig.) *salga*, pl. *salgagi*.

sink, v. 1. intr. (= to go under water) *nuta* (Sokoto), *nus(s)a* or *nus(s)e* (Kano), *ninkaya**, e.g. the boat is sinking *jirigi shina nussa*; when s. = to fall e.g. of a man wounded or the sun descending *fadi*; 2. tr. (= to immerse) *nuche*; spec. to s. a well *gina rijia*.

sinless, adj. *maraslaifi, babu laifi, babu zunufi*.

sinner, n. *mai zunufi*, pl. *masu zunufi*.

sip, n. *guwa*, e.g. on that day a s.

(of water) shall be sought for *rana na akannemi guwa* D 66.

sip, v. *kurba* or *kurbata*.

sister, n. (usually = younger s.) *kanua* or *kamua**; elder s. *ya, iyata* or *yata*.

sit, intr. v. (also = to s. down) *zamna, zamna, zona* or *zamne**; spec. to s. on the ground with legs crossed *kishingida*; to s. down (of camels, donkeys, etc.) *kalabta**.

site, n. *wuri*, pl. *wurare*.

six, card. num. *shidda*; s. times adv. *sau* (or *so*) *shidda*; by sixes or s. each *shidda shidda*; spec. s. o'clock, just before sunset *sakalia**.

sixth, adj. *nashidda*, fem. *ta-shidda*; one s. *sudusi**.

sixtieth, ord. num. *nasettin*, fem. *tasettin*.

sixty, card. num. *settin*; also *gomia shidda*.

size, n. *girima* employed thus: its fruit is large in s. *diata suna da girima*; the s. of the jerboa exceeds that of the mouse *kurege ya fi bera da girima*; a box of great s. *babban sanduƙi*; to become (or grow) large in s. *girima* and *yin girima*.

skeleton, n. *mushe**.

skilful, adj. (in an art, etc.) *gon(n)i*, pl. *gon(n)ai, mai-gon(n)i*; (in artifice) *maiwayo*, pl. *masuwayo*, (esp. in war) *gardaye*.

skilfully, adv. *gon(n)i*, *da gon(n)i*,
da wayo, *da dubara*.

skill, n. (in an art or profession)
gon(n)i also *goni**; (in artifice)
wayo and *waya*; (in contri-
vance, resource) *dabára* or
dubára; (with more or less
implication of opportunity and
readiness) *tsarafi**.

skim, tr. v. (milk) *yade*.

skin, n. gen. *fata*, pl. *fatuna*,
(= hide) *kilago*, pl. *kilagai*; s.
after tanning *kirigi* (before,
fata); cast s. of serpent *suaba*
or *saba*, *tsana**; he casts his
s. *ya yi suaba*; spec. s. bag or
bottle *salka* or *salha*, pl. *sal-
kuna*; s. used for drawing
water from well *guga*, pl.
guguna; covering of skins
tunku; s. of goat used as loin
cloth *walki* or *wolki*; sack
made of s. *waga*.

skin, tr. v. *kware* or *kware*; see
also *flay*.

skip, v. (= to spring along or over
lightly) *bira*; (= to pass over
without reading passages in a
book) *chingara*, q. v.

skull, n. *kolua*, *kolua*, *kwalua*,
kokulwa, *koinya*, *koinyan kai*,
ka(s)shin kai (lit. bone of the
head); the s. shall boil *kolua*
tana tafassa D 65.

sky, n. *sama*, pl. *samania* or
samomi, *dunia* or *duniya*,
gari.

slacken, v. 1. tr. see *loosen*,
intr. (= to be loosened) id. in
the passive; 2. tr. v. (= to

relax, mitigate) *reg(g)i*, *ragi*
or *rage*; intr. (= to be relaxed,
mitigated) *ragu*, e.g. the heat
of the fire slackened *zafin*
wuta ya ragu.

slander, tr. v. *chimbaya*.

slash, tr. v. (= to cut by striking,
i.e. not by drawing the edge
along, which is *yenka sare*).

slaughter, tr. v. *yenka* or *yenke*;
to s. animals *fawa*.

slaughter-house, n. *wurin fawa*.

slave, n. *bawa*, fem. *baiwa*, *baiya*
or *bawiya*, pl. *bayi* or *bai*,
*buzu**; spec. chief s. of a king
kachal(l)a, *yari*; female s.
baiwa (as above), *kuyanga* or
kuiyanga, pl. *kuyangai*, *yan*
turaka, (also = mistress, con-
cubine) *šadaka*; female begging
s. *mauro**; female house s.
kwarakwara or *kworakwora*,
bawan gid(d)a; son of s. but
free *bachucheni*; offspring of
a s. and a free person *dimajo*;
s. about 14 years old *magu-
danchi*, pl. *magudantai*; a
strong s. *katu*, fem. *katuwa*;
runaway s. *gujeje**; s. holder
maibawa; charm for catching
slaves *kauchi*; s. raiding ex-
pedition *samame*; v. to free a
s. *yanchi* or *enchi*.

slaver, n. (= saliva dripping from
mouth) *sal(l)abi*.

slaver, intr. v. (to let saliva drip
from mouth) *yin sal(l)abi*.

slavery, n. *bauchi*, *bauta*, *ba-
wanchi*; liberation from s.
diyauchi or *diyanchi*; redemp-

tion from s. *fansa* usually pronounced *pansa*; to redeem from s. *yin fansa*, *bada* (or *ba*) *diyauchi*, e.g. he freed them from s. *ya badasu diyauchi*.

slay, tr. v. see **kill**.

sleep, n. *berchi* or *berichi*, *kwana*, *kunshia** or *kwanshia*, e.g. hasten to arise from s., my brother; fear then the s. within the tomb *ka razanna dugga kwana dan uwata ka tsorshi fa kunshia ta shikin kushewa* F 75; the last s. *makarin berichi*.

sleep, intr. v. *berchi* or *berichi* with *yi* or forms in *na*, also *kwana* or *kwanche*; the former refer rather to the physical condition, the latter convey also the idea of reposing, lying down to s., e.g. we did not hear the howling of the dogs we were sleeping *ba mun ji kukan karnuka muna berchi*; we slept at that place *mun kwana awurinan*.

sleepiness, n. *genged(di)*; to be overcome by s. *id*.

sleeping-place, n. *makwanche*; spec. s.-p. (e.g. in a tree) affording protection from wild beasts *saura**.

sleeve, n. *hanu*, pl. *hanaye*; sleeve-knife the blade of which is worn along or up the s. *wuka hanu*.

slide, intr. v. see **slip**.

slight, adj. see **thin**.

slight, tr. v. *rena*.

sling, a stone, to, v. *majujawa**.

slip, n. (= loss of foothold by sliding) *samtsi* or *santsi*; to make a s. *yin samtsi*, *talalabia*, e.g. he made a s. *ya yi samtsi*, also *samtsi ya sameshi*, *ya talalabia* or *ya yi talalabia*.

slip, intr. v. 1. (= to lose foothold by sliding) *talalabia* and *yin talalabia*, *gubchi* or *gache* the last also = to s. into, e.g. he slipped into the well *ya gubchi chikkin rijia*, *kafia** (e.g. as in soft mud) B 142; 2. (= to escape hold) *kubche*; of things, e.g. the sword slipped from my grasp *taḳobi ya kubche dagga hanuna*; of persons (= to leave or get away easily from companions, etc.) *rabu*, e.g. he slipped suddenly away and we saw him no more *nan da nan ya rabu ba mu kara ganshi ba*.

slipperiness, n. *samtsi* or *santsi*.

slippery, adj. *da samtsi*.

slipping down or **out**, participial n. *sumbulewa*.

slit, for head etc. in gown, n. *kwakwata*.

slit, tr. v. *keta*.

slothful, adj. see **laziness**.

slough, n. (= cast skin of serpent) *suaba* or *saba*; to cast a s. *yin suaba*.

slow, adj. (= one who goes slowly or deliberately) *maimauwa*.

slowly, adv. *san(n)u*; very s. *san(n)u san(n)u*, e.g. tell me very s. *ka faddi mani sannu sannu*.

slumber, n. and v. see **sleep**, **sleepiness**.

sly, adj. *da wayo*, *mairwayo*, pl. *masuwayo*; cf. **skilful**.

small, adj. *karami*, fem. *karama* or *karamia*, pl. *karamai*, *kankana* and *kankara*, also *kankanta*, e.g. in phr. *hal(l)in kankanta* = childishness (lit. the having a s. mind), compar. smaller, see H. Gr. p. 45; sup. smallest *auta*; but see id. p. 46; anything s. n. *kima*, *kusugu**; s. quantity of *karan-chi*.

small-pox, n. *agana*, *zanzana*, *mas(s)asara**.

smash, tr. v. (= to break to pieces with violence) *farifasha*, *pal-pashe*, *rugunguza**.

smashed, particip. pass. *murjek(k)e*, fem. *murjek(k)a*, pl. *murjek(k)u*.

smear, tr. v. (e.g. with oil, etc.) *shafa* or *shafe*, *yafa**.

smell, n. (= odour) an agreeable s. *kamshi*, *chibda* or *dadin chibda*; a bad s. *doii* or *doyi*, *wari* (or *wardi**), the last also = the characteristic odour of animals 'the scent'; s. of camel *funi**; s. of damp *fumfuna*; an evil s. as of putri-fying animal bodies *mushe**; musty s. as of grain long kept *guna*.

smell, tr. v. 1. (= to perceive by the sense) *ji*, e.g. I s. the scent of lions *na ji warin zakoki*; 2. (= to s. at with the intent

to enjoy or test) *shaka* or *sheka*, also *sunsuna* or *sonsona*, the last esp. of a sweet or agreeable scent.

smelt, tr. v. *narike*.

smelted, particip. adj. *narike*, fem. *narika*, pl. *nariku*; to be s. *nariku*.

smile, n. *daria**.

smile, intr. v. *murmushi* or *mul-mushi*, *kamna fuska**.

smite, tr. v. see **strike**, **kill**; to s. in fight *yin kokua*.

smith, n. see **blacksmith**.

smoke, n. *hayaki*; spec. s. of a conflagration *turnuka*.

smoke, v. 1. (= to emit s.) *yin hayaki*; 2. (to s. tobacco) *shan taba*.

smooth, adj. *da (samtsi or) santsi, samsi*.

smooth, tr. v. (of wood, by paring, shaving) *sasaka* or *saseka*, (by daubing, plastering, etc.) *yabe*.

smoothed, particip. adj. (by plastering, etc.) *yababe*, fem. *yababa*, pl. *yababu*.

smoothly, adv. *sansamsa**.

smoothness, n. *samtsi* or *santsi*.

snail, n. *tantanua** (?).

snail-shells, coll. *katamtamwa*.

snake, n. *machiji*, pl. *machizai*, e.g. snakes. also shall be gathered together to them *machizai kua su yivo gais garesu* F 190; names of different species which await identification are: a black s. *masaso**; black s. about 14 inches long *kumachi*; black s.

about 18 inches long *dan margurji*; black s. with red neck, ten feet long and poisonous *gumshaka*; s. with black and white spots, about five or six feet long *kububua*; large black and white poisonous s., its flesh eaten *kasa*; long, slender, light-coloured s. *kwakia*; a small species of s. *damachiri* or *damatsiri*; plant used as antidote to s. bite *filasko*; s. charmer *garda* or *gerdi*, pl. *gardawa*, *turdi*, pl. *turdawa* or *turdodi*; s. skin *suuba* or *saba*, *tsana**, see *skin*, *slough*.

snare, n. *hak(k)o*, pl. *hak(k)oki*, *turko*; to lay a s. *yin hak(k)o*.

snare, tr. v. (to catch by means of a s.) *yin hak(k)o*.

snatch, tr. v. *kwache* or *kwashe*, *kwaso*, *karba* or *kariba**, *karbi* or *karibi**, *fisge* or *fusge*, *amshi*, *zar(r)i**, *fauchi* (?), e.g. I snatched the fellow's stick *na kwache sandan mutum*; spec. to s. goods *wasoso*; to s. greedily *wawasu**; to s. the hand away *dungo**; to s. with violence *rupta* or *rupto*.

snatcher, n. *maikwachewa*.

snatching away, particip. n. *amshiwa* C 24, 25.

sneeze, intr. v. *atisha* and *atishawa*; spec. (of horses) *furji*.

sniff, v. *sheka*; to s. up (for the purposes of smelling) *id*.

snore, intr. v. *minshari*, *nansari* or *hansari*.

snuff, n. (powdered tobacco) *garintaba*, *taban hanchi*.

snuff, v. see **sniff**.

snuff-box, n. *bat(t)a*, pl. *bat(t)ochi*.

so, adv. (= thus) *hak(k)a*, *hak(k)anan*, e.g. or is it not so? *ko ba hakka ba*; so flashed and fell the brand *hakkanan takobi ya fadi maihaske, kaza*, e.g. so too there shall be rooms of ruby *kaza kuma dakunan yakutu* F 227; so and so it happened *kaza da kaza ya faru*; *kaza* is often used in a less demonstrative sense and when something is referred to not named = so and so, e.g. he did so and so *ya yi abu kaza*; also of persons, e.g. I saw doctor so and so *na ganni maimagani kaza*; just so (= no doubt) *labud(a)a** which also = quite so, for which cf. quite (fin.); about so much *kotanchin kaza*; so expressing doubt or some surprise, so! *to*; so that, see under **that**; so then (= therefore), see **therefore**.

soap, n. *şabuni*, *sello*; spec. a superior kind of s. used for washing the face *şabunin sello*.

soar, intr. v. (of birds = to fly aloft, and gen. = to rise high) *tashi* and *tashi bis(s)a*.

socket, n. *kwarmi*, pl. *kwarmu*; s. of the eye *gulbin ido*; prov. the s. of the eye is not the eye itself *gulbin ido ba ido ne ba*.

soever, affix to words to emphasise the notion of contingency

- ko* (used as a prefix), e.g. where? *enna*; wheresoever *ko-enna*; who? which? what? *wa, wane*; whosoever, whichsoever, whatsoever *kowa, kowane*, e.g. whomsoever you find seize him *kowane ka same ka kama-shi*.
- soft**, adj. (e.g. of mud, dough, etc. also of cloth) *tapshi, tafshi* or *tabshi*, of fruit when ripe *tábo* is also used; v. to be or become s. *yin tapshi*, of ripe fruit *yin tabo*, e.g. the date is s. *dabino ya yi tabo*; to make s. *yin tapshi*.
- soften**, tr. v. *yin tapshi, zabki**, e.g. it will s. our heads *kai garemu ta zabki* D 65.
- soft-hearted**, adj. (= kind, gentle) *tapshi, tafshi*.
- soil**, n. 1. (= ground, land) *kas(s)a*, pl. *kas(s)ashi* and *kas(s)asa*; very hard s. *tsandauri*; 2. see **dirt**.
- soil**, tr. v. *yin dauda*.
- sojourn**, n. (= temporary stay) *zama* or *zama*, e.g. how have you been faring during your s. in this town? *enna zaman gari*; his craft during his s. on earth is in vain *wayonsa banza ni zamansa na dunia* C 6.
- sojourn**, intr. v. (= to make a stay) *zamna, zona* or *zamne**, e.g. we sojourned there twelve days *mu zamna nan kwana goma sha biu, shid(d)a* or *shid(d)e* (lit. to alight at a place).
- sojourner**, n. *maizamna*, pl. *masuzamna*.
- solace**, n. see **comfort, consolation**.
- solace**, tr. v. see **comfort, console**.
- solder**, a sort of, n. *sinaderi, shinaderi* or *sunadari*, = chloride of ammonium (f).
- soldier**, n. *mayaki*, pl. *mayaka, dan yaki*, pl. *yayan* (or *yan*) *yaki, askar*, pl. *askarawa*; spec. s. of king's body *dogari, dakara*, pl. *dakaru*; foot-s. *saati**; foot-soldiers coll. *kirma*, see **infantry**; horse-s. *guriguri**, see also **cavalry**; experienced s. *maitsasi* or *maidsasi*.
- sole**, n. (of the foot) *sau, mataki*, pl. *matakai, tafin kaffa*.
- sole**, adj. *makadaichi* or *mukadaichi*, s. in its most idiomatic use, however, is best expressed by means of *sai*, e.g. his s. request was this *ba ya roko ba sai wonan*; our s. food is guinea-corn *abinchi namu sai dawa*.
- solely**, adv. see **alone**.
- solid**, adj. (= sound, trustworthy) *ingatachi* G 7.
- solve**, tr. v. (= to clear up, explain) *waye, gaya*.
- some**, l. (standing as an indefinite adj. pron.) *woni* or *wani**, fem. *wota*, pl. *wonsu, wosu* or *wodansu*, e.g. s. woman had fowls *wota mache tana da kaji*; 2. *woni* also expresses the correlatives s. one...another, pl. s....

- others, also s...s., e.g. s. one said yes, another said no *woni ya che i woni ya che aa*; s. will pass the bridge like a wind, others (or s.) again like lightning, without doubt *sirati wonsu kan shutse (shude) wa iska wodansu ya wolfia kuma babu wawa* F 154.
- sometime**, adv. *woniyayi*.
- son**, n. *da*, connective *dan*, pl. *yaya*, connective *yayan* and *yan*, e.g. first-born s. *da nafari*; the s. of Amina *dan amina*, used as an expression of regard, e.g. my s. *dana*; s. of my mother (= friend) *dan uwana*, also (as at times in English) to express contempt or aversion, e.g. s. of the ignorant (heathen) *dan jahili* (stronger than *jahili* alone) B 14, C 5, 6, s. of the wicked *dan mazugu* D 29.
- song**, n. *wasa, waka* or *waka*; v. to sing a s. *waka* with *yi* or the forms in *na*, e.g. I sang them a s. *na yi masu waka*; to compose a s. *id*.
- sonship**, n. *diyauchi** or *diyan-chi**.
- soon**, adv. (= after a little while) *jima kad(d)an*, e.g. I shall s. return to you *jima kaddan ni komo gareku*, cf. also while; (= in a short time, with quickness) *maza* and frequently *maza maza*, e.g. I will s. catch him *zan kamashi maza maza*.
- soothsayer**, n. *boka**, pl. *bokaye**.
- soothsaying**, n. *aruwa*.
- sorcerer**, n. *maye* or *mayi*, fem. *mayia*.
- sorceress**, n. see prec.
- sorcery**, n. *maita*.
- sordid**, adj. see *filthy*, base.
- sore**, n. see *ulcer*, *boil*.
- sore**, adj. see *painful*.
- sores**, pl. *balli balli*.
- sorrow**, n. *mayata**, D 61, see *affliction*, *grief*; v. s. for and to feel s. for, see *compassion*.
- sorrowful**, to be, intr. *sinihi*.
- sorry**, (= distressed, pained) *da woha(l)la*, (= poor, mean) *banza, na banza*; to be s., see *grieved*; to be or feel s. for, see *compassion*.
- sort**, n. *iri*, pl. *irare, launi*; cf. *species*.
- sort**, tr. v. (= to divide, distribute into classes) *raba*; (= to s. out) cf. *choose*.
- sorted**, pass. part. *rababe*, fem. *rababa*, pl. *rababu*.
- sought for**, what is, n. *maradi* or *muradi*.
- soul**, n. *rai*, pl. *raiu, kurua*, both are used of the disembodied as well as the embodied s.; (= the seat of the mental feelings and qualities) *rai*, e.g. of haughty s. *da giriman rai*; patient of s. *da sainyain rai*.
- sound**, n. (e.g. of bees, a bell, gun, trumpet) *am(m)o*; a confused s. *dum(m)i*.
- sound**, adj. (= trustworthy) *ingatachi*; s. (in health) *da lafia*.
- sound**, intr. v. *yin am(m)o*.

soup, n. *romua*, *rumua* or *romo*, *ruan nama*; spec. s. in which *fura* has been made *forau forau* or *ruan fura*; s. made of meat and the fruit of the *dorowa* tree *yakua*; a s. resembling the last *sure*; herb leaves of which are used in making s. *turgunwa* or *turgunwa*.

sour, adj. see **acid**.

source, n. (= spring of water) *idon rua*; (= origin, beginning) *mafari*; (of words = primitive meaning, derivation) *guzu* or *gusu**, e.g. what is its s.? *minene guzussa*; (= first cause) *sab(b)abi*, *sub(b)abi* or *subub(b)i*, e.g. the s. of the illness was this *sabbabin chiuta ke nan*.

souse, tr. v. (= to immerse) *tsoma*, *nuche*.

south, n. *kudu* or *kud(d)us*, *gusum*, *tsakan rana*; adv. *id.*, e.g. he went s. *ya taffi kudu* G 2.

southward, adj. (= towards the s.) *gusumchi*.

sovereign, n. see **king**.

sovereignty, n. see **kingdom**.

sow, n. (female of wild swine) *gadonia*; (of domestic) *gursuna mache*.

sow, tr. v. *shipka* or *shuka*, *yin shipka*, *yin shuka*.

sower, n. *maishipka*, pl. *masushipka*, *mashipki*, pl. *mashipka*.

sowing-place, n. *manomi*.

sowing-time, n. *manomi*, also

fig., e.g. this life is a s.-t. for the future life, everyone who hoes corn will reach the great city *ita dunia nana che manomi a lahira kowa ya nomi hatsi ya kai baban gari*.

space, n. (= open, free room) *sar(r)ari*; unoccupied sp. (e.g. on the ground, etc.) *fili*, pl. *filaye*, e.g. there is no s. here for my load *babu fili wuri nanga kayana*; in a less precise sense *wuri* (place) may be used.

spacious, adj. *maisar(r)ari*, *mai-yehwa*.

span, n. (measure of length = space between ends of thumb and first finger extended) *takin hanu*, *dani*.

spare, tr. v. (to avoid troubling) *kiyaye*, e.g. spare yourself *kiyaye kanka*.

sparrow, n. *suda**; spec. a bird rather smaller than s. *baiwan allah*.

speak, v. *fad(d)a* and *fad(d)i*, *tan(n)e*, e.g. I s. the truth to you *ina faddi maku gaskia*, (in the sense also of conversation) *yin zanche*, and *zantawa*; to s. a language *yin magana*, e.g. we are able to s. Hausa *muna iya yin magana hausa*; to s. evil of *bache**; to s. evil of behind one's back *chimbaya*; to s. proudly *yin raha*; to s. secretly or to s. in whispers *rad(d)a*; cf. *say*.

spear, n. *mashi* or *maji*, pl. *masu-*

suka; spec. a long s. not thrown *kasarusawa*; small s. for throwing *hankaltilo*; small s. tied to wrist and after throwing pulled back *hargi*; small s. or dart for catching fish *hag(g)u*; v. to cast a s. as a sign of declaration of war *yesda* (or *yada*) *mashi*.

spear, tr. v. *soka*, *soke* or *soki*, *halbe*, *halbi* or *harbi*, e.g. he speared a fish *ya soka kifi*; he speared the enemy with a javelin *ya halbe abokin gabba da hankaltilo*.

spearman, n. *mahalbi*; pl. *mahalbai* and *masuhalbi*.

species, n. *iri*, pl. *irare*, *launi*, e.g. in this building they had collected stones of various s. *chikkin gidda nan su ka tatara duatsu na iri dabam dabam*.

speckled, adj. (of birds, etc.) *wakwaka*, cf. spotted.

specks, coll. (= spots or dots, e.g. on plumage of birds) *zane*; spec. s. in eyes of blind *tsauria*; cf. spot.

spectacle, n. (=an imposing sight), see **sight** 2.

spectacles, n. (the optical instrument) *minzeri**.

spectre, n. *fatalua*.

speech, n. 1. gen. *magana*, which can be used in all the following senses; 2. (=the uttering of words) *fad(da)*, e.g. he would hear my s. *shi kan ji faddata*; until s. be heard (=is ended) *har magana ajita*; in her s. *chikkin magana nata*; con-

fused, noisy s. *dum(m)i*, e.g. leave off excess of noisy s. *ku ber yawan dummi* B 22 where see note, B 154; 3. (=uttered words and so =talk, discourse) *zanche*, *kalami**, *kalmata** (lit. my words, only so found), *aljama** or *aljima*, *jawabi**, together with *magana*, pl. *maganganu*, e.g. s. of or about the resurrection *zanchen kiyama*; one who listens to our s. *majia kalami* D 5; listen to my s. *ku ji kalmata* B 22; I have s. which will profit *ina da aljama maianfani*; that we may not fail in s. *don kadda mu kasa faddi jawabi* D 47; 4. (=native language) *hausa**, pl. *harata*, *halshi* or *harshi*, pl. *halshina*, e.g. in the s. of the Fulahs *da halshin fulani*; he understands the Hausa s. *ya ji magana hausa*.

speechless, adj. see **dumb**, **silent**.

speed, n. see **haste**; with s. (of rapid pace in running) *da gudu*.

speedily, adv. see **quickly**, **soon**.

spell, n. (=charm) *magani*, pl. *maganguna* and *magunguna*; to put under a s. *damre*, *daure*, *damra** or *darmi**.

spend, tr. v. *ka(s)he*, *kasshi** or *kissa*, (with the idea of waste more or less implied) *batas*, e.g. he spent much money *ya kasshe kurdi dayawa*; to s. time *samu*.

spew, v. *tofi*, *kurukure*.
spice, hot, n. *yaji*; spices coll. *jauwi**; cf. pepper.
spider, n. *gizzo* or *gisso*, *toto*, *tau-tau*; female s. *koki**; spider's web *sumya*.
spike, n. an iron s. *tsinki* or *zinke*, pl. *tsinkai* or *zinka*; also = a little s. of straw; s. for making holes in skin, etc. *tsiko* or *siko*, pl. *tsikuna*.
spill, v. 1. tr. (= to let run over) *tudas*, e.g. the woman spilled water from her pitcher *mache ta tudas rua dagga tulunta*; 2. intr. *tuda* or *tude*.
spin, v. 1. tr. (= to twist into thread) *kadi* and *yin kadi*; to s. yarn *seb(b)i**; 2. (= to revolve) *kewoye* or *kewayi*, e.g. the top spins *kodi ya kewoye*; I feel qualmish, my head spins round *ina jin kumolo kaina kua shina* (or *yana*) *kewoye*.
spindle, n. *mazari*, *kadamin abduga*; a sort of s. *mataki*.
spinning round, anything, n. *kodi*, e.g. ball, top, etc.
spinster, n. *gobrua*.
spirit, n. (= soul of man generally, also as the seat of feelings, etc.) see *soul*, (= an immaterial being, a sp.) *id.*; the evil s. *ebli*, *ebliz**, *iblis*, see also *satan*; an evil s. *aljan*, pl. *aljannu*; evil spirits coll. *jinnu*, also the pl. *raiuka*, cf. *rai 4*; (= a ghost) see *spectre*; (= mind) *zuchia*, e.g. tranquillity or happiness of s. *dadin zuchia*; (= temper,

frame of mind) see *disposition*; spec. terms connected with popular superstitions are: s. described as having hair hanging down face (*da gashi*) and often appearing in trees *dodo*, pl. *dodonai*; an evil s. or ghost *maigiro**; a s. that renders man mad or delirious *bori*; s. said to be the patron of the *masubori* (infra) and to make mad *janzir(r)i*; evil s. said to kill mother and child at birth *uwayara*; evil s. supposed to injure tamarind tree *dogua*; evil s. in form of snake *gajimare*; persons and esp. women possessed by an evil s. *masubori* or *masuboli*; see also *spirits*.

spiritless, adj. *da karamin zuchia*.

spirits, pl. n. see *intoxicating drink*; a case of s. *akwoti* (!).

spirt, tr. v. (i.e. water, etc. from the mouth) *teddas*; spirting n. *teddaswa*; see also *spew*.

spit, v. 1. *tofi*, *fesa*, *furja*, *kaki**; to s. out *miau*; to s. out water from the mouth *tsertua*; 2. see *pierce*.

spite, n. *chegi*, for s. *don chegi*.

spitting, participial n. *fesawa*, e.g. accompanied by s. of blood *da* (or *tare da*) *fesawan jini*.

spittle, n. see *saliva*.

splash water, e.g. over an infant, v. *shawo*.

spleen, n. (= the bodily organ) *sefa* or *saifa*, pl. *sefofi*; (= disease of the s., splenitis) *chawon*

- sefa*; trop. (= vexation) *haushi*, e.g. his s. was roused at this *ya ji haushin wonan*.
- splendid**, adj. (of dress, ornaments, etc.) *na ado*, fem. *ta ado*.
- splendour**, n. (of dress, etc.) *ado*, pl. *adodi*.
- splenitis**, n. see **spleen**.
- splinter**, n. (e.g. in the skin) *sartsi*; spec. to get a s. in the foot *tafo** *magamma*.
- split**, n. *tsaga* or *chage*.
- split**, tr. v. *tsaga* or *chage*, *keta*, *fas(s)a*, the last also used of cold.
- splitting**, 1. participial n. *ketua*, *fasawa*, (of wood) *chachagi*; 2. adj. *maifasawa*, e.g. where there is cold s. (everything) open *enda sainyi maifasawa* F 174 n.
- spoil**, 1. tr. v. (= to waste, injure) *bata*, *bache*; 2. intr. (= to be spoiled, wasted, etc.) *bache*; of fruits, etc. (= to go bad, rot) *riba* or *ruba*; 3. n. and tr. v. see **plunder**.
- spoiled**, pass. part. *batache*, fem. *batachia*, pl. *batatu*, *ribabe*, fem. *ribabia*, pl. *ribabu*; to be s. see **spoil** 2.
- sponge**, n. spec. foliage of a small plant used as a s. *soso**; a general designation for anything used as a s. is *abin shafe*.
- spoon**, n. (of wood) *tsokali*, *koshia*; large s. *gago**; large wooden s. *moda*; spoons made from pumpkin rinds pl. *lud(d)ai* or *led(d)ai*.
- sport**, n. (= play, diversion) *worigi*; s. (or trick) *bamanchi**; (= mirth, also mirthful contempt) *daria*, e.g. we made s. of him *mun badashi daria*; (of the field, as fowling, hunting) *farauta*.
- spot**, n. *tab(b)o*, pl. *tabuna*, *dungule*; the last = ink s. or blot (Kano) = *dole* (Zaria), (= a blemish in an article) *aibu*; fig. (= moral blemish, fault) *aibu*; (= a particular locality) *wuri*, pl. *wurare*.
- spots**, pl. e.g. on plumage *zane*; having s. adj. *wakawake*.
- spread**, tr. v. (e.g. a cloth, a mat) *shimfida* or *shimfada*, intr. (= to separate, scatter) *wache* or *washe*; to s. out tr. (e.g. a mat, goods for sale) *shimfida* or *shimfada*; (wheat to dry) *baza*; (= expose to view) *bayan(n)a* or *bayen(n)a*; intr. *kau** (= to s. out or abroad, increase) *yado*, *yadu*, e.g. if there be food and drink and abundance and prosperity, the service of God would s. *izan da chi da sha da abin yehwa da lafa ibáda kan yado* B 47.
- spring**, n. of water, *idon rua*, *maromaro* or *marmaru*; mouth of a s. or well *bakin rijia*; for other senses, e.g. origin, cause, see **source**.
- spring**, intr. v. 1. see **jump**; 2. to s. or s. up out of the ground

(of seeds, plants) *chira, chire, chiro* or *tsira, tsire, tsiro* and *tsoro**.

sprout, n. (of guinea-corn, etc.) *karamami* or *karmami*; (of trees) *tofo*, pl. *tofuna*; spec. new sprouts after trees, etc. have been cut down *kankama*.

sprout, intr. v. 1. (= to spring up out of the ground) see **spring** 2; 2. of trees and plants (= to put forth buds, leaves, etc.) *tofu, yin tofo, gunda* and *yin gunda*, e.g. the trees s. *itatua su tofu*; the melon sprouts *kabewa tama gunda* or *kabewa ta yi gunda*.

spue, v. see **spew**.

spur, n. *kaimi*, pl. *kayami*.

spurs, long riding-boot with, n. *kufit(t)a* or *kufut(t)a*, pl. *kufittai* or *kufuttai*.

spy, n. *gata*, pl. *gataye*.

squat, intr. v. to s. down with legs crossed *kishingida, turaba'i* or *yin turaba'i*; to s. on the ground *tsuguna* or *tsugun*.

squeeze, tr. v. *mache, machi* or *matsi, taushe* or *tausa, damfare, tsamki* or *tsumki, tatara*; to s. a lemon, etc. *tasa, tasi, tachi, tatsa* or *taza*.

squeezed, pass. particip. *taushe-she*, fem. *tausheshia*, pl. *taushetu*.

squeezing, participial n. *taushe-wa, machichi* D 14.

squint, n. *idon magi*.

squirrel, n. *kusum-bis(s)a*.

stab, tr. v. *soka, soke* or *soki*.

stable, n. *muri*; s. for one horse *burga*; and less precise (= place for horses) *shamak(k)i**, pl. *shamak(k)ai**.

stable-man, n. *dan muri*, see also **groom**.

staff, n. *sanda*, pl. *sanduna*.

stag, n. *barewa miji* or *namiji*; the female animal *barewa mache* or *tamache*; spec. small female *tinkia*.

stagger, v. 1. intr. *magagi* with forms in *na*, e.g. at that moment he was struck by a bullet, he staggered and fell *sa'aman akahalbeshi da bindiga yana magagi ya fadi*; 2. (= to confuse, perplex) *dame* or *dama* and pass. to be staggered *damu*.

staggering, n. (e.g. of a dying man) *magagi*.

stain, n. (= colouring matter) see **dye**; (= spot, blemish, fault) *aibu*.

stain, v. (= to tinge fabrics, etc. with colouring matter) see **dye**; pass. to be stained (in a wider sense), turn by general terms for 'change' with the appropriate complements, e.g. the field was stained with blood *wurin fadda ya sauya ja da jini*, or *wurin fadda sai jini*; the waters were stained all red *ruye su sauya* (or *zama) ja wur*.

staircase, n. *tsani**.

stairs, pl. n. (= steps) *mahayi, karangama*; cf. steps.

stake, n. *rino, rinu**, e.g. again he is taken and tied to a painful s. *kuma akankaishi kan rataia ga rinon azaba*, D 16.

stalk, n. (of plants) *kara*; (of corn, etc.) *sangarnia** or *zan-garnia*, pl. *sangarnu, karamami* or *karmami*; stalks (of beans, ground nuts) *harawa*; stalks of grass used for horses' food *tatak(k)a*.

stall, n. 1. (for cattle) *garike* or *gerke*, pl. *garikuna* or *gerkuna*, (for one horse) *burga*; 2. (= stand in market) *rumbu, rumpa*, pl. *rumfuna*.

stammer, intr. v. *inina* or *ina*.

stammering, n. *ininan halshi*.

stand, on which things are exposed for sale, n. see **stall** 2.

stand, intr. v. *tsayi, tsaya* or *tsai* which also = to s. up and to s. still, e.g. s. there till I am ready *ka tsayi nan har na yi shiri*; to cause to s. still *tsaishe*; I s. upright *na tsaya daidai*; to s. by or up for (= to aid) see **help**.

standard, n. 1. (of proportion, measure) see **measure**; 2. (= flag of a king) *tuta* or *tuti*, pl. *tutoshi*, e.g. if the standards of war be unfurled *izan anfida tutoshi jahadi* E 13.

star, n. *tamraro* or *tauraro*, pl. *tamraru, taurarai* and *tamrai, tatsunia*, pl. *tatsuniai*; spec. morning s. in harvest time *gomdazaki tamraro*; shooting s. *mashi*.

R. II.

stare, v. also = to s. at (of curiosity) *kal(l)o* and *yin kal(l)o*, e.g. you keep staring at me *ka faye kallona*; to s. (frowningly or proudly) *harara**; one who stares, n. *makel(l)achi*.

start, v. 1. intr. (= to move suddenly through fear, etc.) *razan(n)a* or *razan(n)i*; (of a horse) to s. or s. back *zabura*; (of restive horse) to s. *tuma*; 2. intr. (= to move off, set out) *tashi, sabko, safko* or *sapko*, e.g. he prepared to s. *ya saki tashi* G 1, 3, 5; tr. (= to send off) *tada, tayedda*, e.g. I started a messenger *na tada manzo*.

starve, intr. v. (= to perish by starvation) *mutu da yunwa*.

state, n. (= condition) *zama* and *zamanchi*; intr. v. to come into a s. *zama*, e.g. he came into a s. of distress *ya zama machiachi*.

state, v. see **narrate**.

stay, n. (= prop, support) *mugam(m)a*.

stay, intr. v. *zamna, saruka* or *soka* F 252; *wanzu* or *wonzu*, which also = delay; to s. at a place or occupation for a day only *yini*, e.g. there we stayed a day *nan mu ke yini dara*; I stayed at work the whole day *ina yini aiki*.

steal, tr. v. *sache* or *sache, yin sata, yin wawasu**; spec. to s. goods *wasoso*; those who s. earnest money *masutabin amana* E 15.

stealing, n. (= theft) *sata, baran-*

12

- chi*; s. earnest money *chin amana* E 25.
- steam-boat**, n. a s.-b. is usually designated by Hausas who have seen one by *jirigin wuta* or *jirigin hayaki*; so also locomotive s.-engine *dokin wuta*.
- stem**, n. (of plants) *kars*.
- stepfather**, n. *agola* (?).
- steps**, n. *mahayi*, *takawa*, *karan-gama*; spec. s. formed of mud *mataki*, pl. *mataakai*; s. by which to come down from a place *mashidi*; s. placed for mounting a horse *lekafa** and *lekafan doki**.
- sterile**, adj. see barren.
- stew**, tr. v. *daffa*, q.v.
- steward**, n. (= manager) *wakili*.
- stewardship**, n. *wakilchi**.
- stick**, n. *sanda*, pl. *sanduna*, *kulki*, pl. *kulaki* F 107; walking s. *kulki da hanu*, (such as are used by the blind) *jagora*; s. cut from a tree and in this sense fem. *itache* or *iche*, pl. *itatusa*, *sumanjia*; spec. heavy s. *gom(m)i**; s. carried by porters *loko**; s. used, when making *tuo*, to stir it *muchia**; small s. for stirring milk, etc. *mabiriki* or *maburiki*.
- stick**, v. 1. tr. (= to pierce) *soka*, *soke* or *soki*; 2. intr. s., also s. to or together see **adhere**, **cleave** to.
- stiff**, to be, intr. v. *gaga* or *gaga*.
- still**, to be, intr. v. *karwaita*, pass. impersonal, be still! *akawaita*.
- sting**, tr. v. *halbe*, *halbi* or *harbi*, *sare*, *tab(b)a*.
- stinginess**, n. *gerdama* (?).
- stingy**, adj. *rowa*, *da rowa*, *bahili**, *geti**.
- stink**, n. *doi* or *doyi*, *wari*.
- stink**, intr. v., e.g. they s. *suna doyi*.
- stinking**, to become, intr. v. *zama wari*.
- stipulation**, n. see **condition** 2, **terms**.
- stir**, v. 1. tr. (for the purpose of mixing) *dame* or *dama*; to s. about in pot while cooking *tal(l)agi*; to s. up (e.g. a fire) *tona* and *tone*; 2. intr. (= to move oneself) *yin mosi*.
- stirrup**, n. *lekafa*; iron s. *kebe*; stirrups of plaited leather *kinami*.
- stock**, n. (= seed, kind, tribe) *iri*, pl. *irare*.
- stomach**, n. *tumbi*, pl. *tumbuna*.
- stone**, n. *duchi* or *dushi*, pl. *duatsu*, *duasu* and *dwarwat-tai**; spec. flat stone for rolling rice on *magurji*; precious s. *yakulle*; a white s. (= pearl?) *zaura*, *idon zaura*; s. ball *makodi*; (the disease) *marena*; to sling a s. *maju-jawa**.
- stones**, n. in coll. sense, small s. *tarik**; little s. *tsakua*; very small s. *tsok(k)ua**; s. collected together, e.g. round a well *marmara*; s. used as a support *magirkai**.
- stool**, n. *kushera*.

stoop, intr. v. *sunkwia* or *sunkuya*, *tsuguna* or *tsugun*; to s. in order to look into a hole *lekawa*.

stop, full, n. *guda**.

stop, v. 1. tr. (= to make or cause to stand still) *tsaishé*; 2. intr. (e.g. of one walking, running, etc.) *tsayi*, *tsaya* or *tsai*; (= to come to an end) *id.*, e.g. at that point it stopped *dagga nan ya tsaya*; (= stay, stay at, etc.) see **stay**.

store, n. 1. (= supply laid up) *ajia*, e.g. a s. which will be free from the attacks of mice, much more from the nibbling of ants *ajiar da ba bera bale tausán gara* A 44; a large s. of anything *tilli** or *tullu*; 2. (= place for storing things) *gumasakawa** or *gumsakawa*.

store, tr. v. also = to s. up *aje*; to s. up goods *jibga* or *jibki**; to s. up treasure *taskache*.

store-house, n. *rumbu*; fig. (a title given to Mohammed) *maiji*.

store-keeper, n. *maiája*.

store-place, n. see **store** 2.

store-room, n. *taska*, pl. *taskaki*.

storey, upper, in a house, n. *kandaki*, pl. *kandakuna*.

storing grain, chamber for, n. *rafonia*, pl. *rafoni*; large barn for s. g. *rufogo*.

stork, n. *shamowa* or *shamua*; species awaiting identification are: *maiájika*, *borintumki**; s. (?pelican) *jinjimi*.

storm, n. *hadéri*; whirling dust s. *gugua* (also pronounced *gugwa*); heavy rain s. *ginaria* or *ginania*.

story, n. *karia*, *tasunia*, pl. *tasunioyi* (latter also = s. told at night, a fireside s.) *karatu* or *karatu*, e.g. the beginning of my s. *farawa na karatu* D 1; this is the s. of Hamza *wanan karatu hamza ne* A 9; *aljama* or *aljima*, e.g. I have a s. which will profit *ina da aljama mai-anfani* B 153; an untrue s. *karia*, *fira* or *hira**, *almara**.

stout, adj. 1. (of persons = fat, of things = thick) *kabri* or *kauri*, *da kabri*, *da kauri*; 2. see **brave**.

stove, n. *murufu*.

stow, tr. v. (= to lay up) *aje*.

straight, adj. *sosai*, *daidai**, e.g. they followed the s. path *sun bi hainya sosai*.

strain, tr. v. (= to filter) *rare*; to s. out *rare*, *tarare*.

strainer, n. *marari*, *marare*.

strains, one who, n. *mairarewa*, pl. *masurarewa*.

straining, to purify by, tr. v. *tachi* or *tashi*; n. a calabash with holes for s. *raria*.

strange, 1. (= foreign) *bako*, fem. *bakua*, pl. *bakuna*, *baki* and *bakokuna*; 2. (= odd, extraordinary) *id.*; this notion is also expressed by the n. *alameri* (matter) in the pregnant sense of 'a s. matter,' e.g. what a s. thing! *alameringa*; the s.

- course of this world *alamerin dunia*; this s. war *wanan alamerin yaki*.
- strangeness**, n. *bakonchi*, *bakon-taka*.
- stranger**, n. *bako*, fem. *bakua*, pl. *bakuna*, *baki* and *bakokuna*, *hadaka**, pl. *hadaku*, *bature* or *baturi*; attention shown to strangers *dawoinia*; to act as a s. *yin bakonchi* or *yin bakontaka*.
- strangle**, tr. v. *shak(k)e*, *makure*.
- strap**, tied to bit, n. *kamazoro*.
- stratagem**, n. *wayo* or *waya*, *hila* or *fila*; to use s. *gam(m)a* with *wayo* or *kai*.
- straw**, n. *tsaiwa*; s. hat *málafa*, pl. *málafuna* and *málafai*, *garumfa**, q.v.
- stream**, n. *rua**, small running s. *gebe*; fast flowing s. *koram(m)a*; hollow of a s. *kozozobe*.
- street**, n. *hainya* or *haya*, pl. *hainyoyi*; narrow s. *maityasi* or *maidsasi*, cf. *way*.
- strength**, n. (= inherent power or firmness) *karifi* or *karfi*, pl. *karafa* or *karifuna*; (= power over something else) *iko*, pl. *ikoki*; these terms differ as absolute and relative, e.g. s. of mind *karfin zuchia*; he surpassed him in s. *ya fishi da karifi*; we do this by the s. of a charm *muna yi hakka da ikon magani*; *gazawa* F 15, *kambi**; to have s. *gaza**.
- strengthen**, tr. v. *karifafa*.
- stretch**, forth, tr. v. *mika*; intr. to be stretched forth or out *miku*.
- stretched out**, verbal adj. *giche* or *gichi*, e.g. it causes men to lie s. out *ta sainya mutum gichi* B 118.
- stretching one's limbs sleepily**, n. *magagin berichi*.
- strife**, n. *fad(d)a*, *fama*; (= s. of tongues, contention) *hayanía* or *hanía*; they are all at s. *duka sun fadda*; to stir up s. *tsokana*.
- strike**, tr. v. see **beat** 1 and the verbs given under **blow** n.; to s. (and so bruise, smash) *fal-fas(s)a*; to s. (also = to seize) *maki**; to s. a tent *nad(d)e lema*.
- striking repeatedly**, participial n. *marmarawa*.
- string**, n. *igia* or *igiya*, pl. *igoyi* and *igiyoyi*, *silia* or *siliya*, pl. *siliyu* or *siliyoyi*; spec. s. for tying up trousers *mazargi*, *zar(r)ia* or *zar(r)ia*; strong white s. made of flax *kir-tani*.
- strip**, n. of cloth *kwaría*; strips of black leather *kwaro*; to cut into strips *reda*.
- strip**, tr. v. *kware* or *kwari*; s. (skin of fruits, etc.) *bare*; to s. off garments *tube riguna*, *debe riguna*.
- stripe**, n. (= blow) fig. *sanda*; pl. *sanduna* D 44.
- stripe**, n. (in cloth, blue) *saki*, *soki* or *soaki*; stripes (e.g. on bird, etc.) *zane*; having stripes

adj. *wakewake*; to draw stripes *zana* or *zani*.

strive, intr. v. (= contend) *musu*; (= endeavour) see **attempt**.

striving, participial n. *musuwa* F 159.

stroke, n. *mari*, pl. *marumari*; see also **blow**.

strokes, n. see **lines**.

strong, adj. *maikarifi*, *da karifi*, *karfe* F 84; *da tauri*, *tsauri*, *da gazo*, *isheshe*, fem. *ishashia*, pl. *ishasu*; very s. *karkarifu*; to be s. *gata**; he is stronger than I *ya buayeni*; spec. adj. and n. s. in war *gargami* or *garkami*; very s. (epithet of lion) *gadanga*; s. man *zari*, *kwodoki**, s. men *karifafa*; s. person *gendi*, fem. *gendia*, *gorzo*; s. slave *kato*, fem. *katuwa*.

strongly, adv. *da karifi*, *da kangara*, e.g. endure the holy war, follow it out s. *ku jimri jehadi ku bi da kangara* B 36.

stubble, n. *kututura* or *kotutura*; s. of guinea-corn, wheat, etc. *tushia*.

stubborn, adj. (also = s. person) *maikinji*, pl. *masukinji*, *da taurin zuchia*.

stubbornness, n. *tauri*, *taurin zuchia*.

study, v. (= to endeavour diligently) *yin aniya*, e.g. s. to follow the true path *ku yi aniya ku bi hainyan gaskia*.

stumble, intr. v. *tunsure*, *zami*, *yin tuntube*, *tuntube*; to s. against a stone *kar(r)o da*

duchi; to make or cause to s. *damfare*.

stumbling of a horse, n. *sansarifa* or *sasarifa*.

stump, n. of tree *guzun itache*, *gatsa* na itache* D 42, *gun-gume*, pl. *gumagumai*, *kututura* or *kotutura* q.v.; s. of a leg or arm *dungu*.

stupid, adj. (= wanting in sense) *marashankali*, *da babu hankali*.

stutter, intr. v. *inina* or *ina*.

stuttering, n. *ininan halshi*.

subdue, tr. v. (= to bring into subjection) *kas(s)u**; (to conquer, e.g. a people) *chi*.

subject, n. (= matter) *tada*, pl. *tadodi*, e.g. a s. of enquiry *tadan tambaya*.

subject to, to be, intr. v. (= to be characteristically prone to) turn by means of *tarika*, e.g. he is s. to terror *ya tarika razanni*, see **character** 3.

subjection, to bring into, tr. v. see **subdue**.

submissive, adj. *maitankwas(s)a*, pl. *masutankwas(s)a*.

submissiveness, n. *tankwas(s)a*.

submit, intr. v. *tankwas(s)a* or *tankosa*; refl. with *kai*, e.g. I s. myself *na tankwassa kaina*.

subside, intr. v. (e.g. of water) *kaf(f)e*, *wuche*, *wushe*, *fuche**; (= gen. to abate, lessen) *reg(g)e*, *ragi* and *ragu*.

substance (of a statement), n. *kai**.

substitute for something, n. *maimeki*.

suburb, n. *ungua*, pl. *unguai*.
succeed, intr. v. (= to be successful) *iyes**, *iyesda**; impers. it succeeds *ya kama*, *ya yi*; to s. (as heir) *gáji* or *gáje*.
success (in war), n. *naş(ş)ara* and *naş(ş)archi*; to obtain s. (in war) *yin naş(ş)ara*.
such, demonstr. adj. 1. (=like that) e.g. we cannot do s. a thing *ba muna iya yin abu kaza*; 2. (=that referred to, the naming of which is avoided by narrator), e.g. ho! (or here!) s. a one *yaka mutum kaza*, he said to them take this money to s. and s. persons (mentioning their names which, however, need not be recorded) *ya faddi masu ku taffi da kurdi nan ga mutane kaza da kaza*.
suck, tr. v. *tsoa* and *tsotsa*, *sha*; to s. a lime or lemon *sha lemu*; (of infants) *sha nono*; to s. in or up (e.g. as a sponge water) *id*.
suckle, tr. v. (= to give suck to) *goiyo* or *goyo*, *yin goiyo*, *ba nono*.
Sudan, pr. n. *sudan*, q.v., the plains of the S. *sar(r)arin sudan* B 76.
sudden, adj. see quick 1.
suddenly, adv. *da sauki*, *atake**.
suffer, v. 1. tr. (=to endure) *jimri*; (= to allow) *ber(r)i* or *ber*, e.g. s. me to enter *berri ni shigga*, phr. s. me *kiyayeni*; 2. intr. (= to undergo pain or distress) *sha wohal(l)a*.

suffice, v. *is(s)a* and *ishe*.
sufficient, adj. *isheshe*, fem. *ishashia*, pl. *ishasu*, also expressed by appending the impers. *ya issu*, *ya ishe*, e.g. we have a bread *muna da gurasa (ya issa or) ya ishemu*; exclamatory phr. s.! *buss*, which = say no more!; to be s., see prec.
suffocate, **suffocation**, v. and n. see **choke**, **choking**.
sugar-cane, n. *takanda* or *takanta*.
suit, n. (=claim at law) *kára* q.v.; to make or bring such *kára* and *kai kára*.
suit, v. *gamshe*, e.g. it suits me *ya gamshe ni*.
suitable, adj. *daidai*.
sum, n. (= aggregate of numbers) *kidda* or *kididiga*, *did(d)iga** (?); (of a statement) see **substance**.
summit, n. *kai*, pl. *kawana* and *kawuna*, *bis(s)a*.
summon, tr. v. *kir(r)a* or *kir(r)aye*; to s. to where the speaker is *kir(r)awo*.
sun, n. fem. *rana* or *ra*, pl. *ranuka**; the s. rose *rana (ta fitta or) ta tashi*; the s. set *rana ta fadi*, the s. is about to set *rana ta kussa fadua*; halo round s. *sansan(n)i*; heat of the s. *gum(m)i*; orb of the s. *rana gudanta* (?), cf. D 64.
Sunday, n. *lahadi*, *ranan lahadi*.
sunder, tr. v. see **divide**.
sunken eyes, one with, adj. and n. *maikworomi**.

sunrise, time of, n. *tasawal hantsi*.

sunset, n. *fadawan rana*; time just before s. *sakalia**.

sunstroke, n. *jeri**.

superfluity, n. *wanji** q.v.

superfluous, adj. *fululuwa**, e.g. s. noisy talk *dummi na fululuwa* B 154.

superior, adj. *mafifichi*; to be or prove s., to express 'this thing or this method is s.' use the impers. *ya gara hakka, ya guma* hakka*, lit. it is better so, see also **surpass**.

supplicate, tr. v. (= to pray earnestly) *barra*, e.g. O Lord, I, the son of a weak slave, supplicate Thee that Thou wouldst save me *ya rabbi dan bawa laifi na barra domin ka tsarshani*.

support, n. *madogara, makari, tankari*; the last also fig., e.g. a king is the s. of the world *sariki shi ne tankarin dunia*; spec. (= pole of house) *gimshiki* or *gumshiki*; see also **aid, assistance, help**.

support, tr. v. (e.g. as a pole supports a tent) *tokara*; spec. to s. anything with the hand spread out *talaba*; to s. oneself with the palm of the hand *daf(f)a, daf(f)awa*.

suppose, v. *tset(t)o, tsat(t)o, zet(t)o**, *tsachi* or *zache, tamaha*; also trop. *che*, e.g. a poisonous plant he would s. to be wheat *guba shina tsachi alkaki che* (= is).

sure, adj. see **trustworthy**.

sure, to be or make, v. *tabbata* or *tabbeta*, e.g. do you make s.? *ka tabbata*; I am s. *na tabbata*.

surely, adv. (= certainly) *tubbas, aje, ashe* or *ashi, da gaskia, da gaske, gaskia, gaske, hakika*; s. is also idiomatically expressed by the particle *sai* as well as the v. *tabbata*, e.g. the people will s. rise *mutane sai su tashi*; he is s. there *ya tabbata nan*; you may s. assume that he is an infidel *ku tabbeta kafiri ne* D 24.

surety for a debt, n. *lamuni* or *lamini*, (= person who is s.) *mailamunta*, pl. *masulamunta*; to be or become s. *laminta* and *lamunche* with acc., e.g. we became s. for the merchant *muka laminta fadake*.

surpass, tr. v. *fi, fikowa* A 70, *dad(d)a* also pronounced *deddi*, e.g. the strength of elephants surpasses that of camels *karifin giwaye ya fi na rakuma*; this surpasses that *wonan ya deddi wonchan*.

surrender, tr. v. (= to give up, resign) *sall(l)ame*.

surround, tr. v. *kewoye, kewaye* D 165, or *kewayi*.

suspend, tr. v. *rataya* or *rataria, yin rataya*.

suspicion, n. *zergi, matsin(n)a** F 8.

sustain, tr. v. see **support**.

swaggering walk, n. *rongoda*.

swallow, n. *tsaijewa, tsaitsewa* or *chechewa*.

swallow, tr. v. *hade*.

swamp, n. *kafo*, *tapki*.
swarm, n. see **multitude**.
sway to and fro, intr. v. *ran-gaji**, *rauni**; to s. the arms to and fro *takama*.
swear, intr. v. *ranche*, *yin rantsua*, e.g. I swear by God *na ranche da allah*.
sweat, n. and intr. v.; see **perspiration**, **perspire**.
sweep, tr. v. *shara* or *share*, *yin shara*.
sweeping, participial n. *shara*.
sweet, adj. (to the taste) *da zaki*, *tutushi*, (= nice, agreeable, grateful to any sense or feeling) *da dadi*, e.g. this song is s. *wakanga da dadi ke*.
sweetly, adv. *da dadi*, e.g. the bird sings s. *tsuntsua tana waka da dadi*.
sweetmeat, n. *allowa*; spec. s. made from the *ais* reed *dakua*.
sweetness, n. (taste) *zaki*, *dadi*, the last gen. and of taste too, e.g. when thou sittest down thou shalt taste of its s. *kami kazona zaka sha dadi nata* A 12.
swell, intr. v. 1. *kumbure* or *kumburi*, and, with forms in *na*, *kumburawa*, (of a sore, etc.) *yami*; 2. fig. (= to be inflated with pride, etc.) *kumbure*, *kumburi*, *kumburawa*, e.g. thou swellest, too, with pride because it is said thou excellest all *kana kuma kumburawa wai ka fi kowa* F 30; the same may be expressed by means of

chichik(k)a (lit. be filled with), e.g. again, thou swellest with pride, thou fool *kana kuma shishik(k)a girma ya hauka* F 32; to s. out, be confounded *sadare* A 8, *sandare* A 64.
swelling with pride, participial n. *kumburawa*.
swelling, n. (= a morbid enlargement) glandular s. *kar(r)i*; s. caused by guinea-worm *hangara*; internal s. *suwa*; s. on back *doro* D 14; s. on back of horse, etc. *tura*; s. on body *kukur**; slight s. on body *kaswa* or *kazua*; s. in front of a man's body *gugi*, pl. *gugui*; s. on hand or foot *kakari*; the related plural form *kek(k)aru* = s. in the hands; s. on throat *hangum**.
swept, pass. part. *sharare*, fem. *sharara*, pl. *shararu*.
swim, intr. v. *iyo*, *yin iyo*, *futo**, *nus(s)o**.
swindler, n. *maizambachi* or *maizambata*, *maizumba*.
swine, n. (domestic) *gursuna* or *gurusunu*; (wild) *hanzir**, pl. *hanzirai*.
swing to and fro, intr. v. *lil(l)o*.
switch, n. (i.e. one for driving away flies, made from cow's or horse's tail) *isga* or *esga*.
swollen with calamity, adj. *kumburata*, cf. **swell**, **fin**.
sword, n. *takobi* or *takwobi*, pl. *takuba*, *kansakali*; spec. s. with broad blade *findi*; s. with double sharp edge *tagomas*; a

with one cutting edge *tam(m)alawulo*; cheap, roughly made s. *tam(m)a*, rasp for sharpening s. *magagari*; to draw a s. *zage* or *zagi*.

sword-belt, n. *hamilu**.

syphilis, n. *chiutan birni, timjere* or *tumjere*.

syrup, n. *madya* F 230.

table, n. *rumpa*, pl. *rumpuna* or *rumpfuna, maida**; case or package used as a t. *kabak(k)i*, pl. *kaboka*.

taciturn, adj. (=habitually silent) turn by *tarik* q.v., e.g. he is t. *ya tarika (yin kurum, yin shiru, kurum or) shiru*.

tack, v. (i.e. in sewing) *lalaf-tu*.

tackle, n. (=implements, instruments, apparatus) *kaya* or *kaia*, pl. *kayayeki*.

tail, n. *wutsia* or *wuchia**; spec. cow's or horse's t. used as a switch *isga* or *esga*.

tailor, n. *madumki*, fem. *madumkia*, pl. *madumkai*.

take, tr. v. 1. gen. (=seize, lay hold of) *kama, samu, dauka, doka, dau* or *do, karba, kariba**, *karbi* or *karibi**; to t. (of an object running away, about to escape or resist) *kama*; (with the added notion of reaching, overtaking, finding) *samu*; (of taking or picking up an object from the ground, a table, shelf, etc.) *dauka* or *doka*; (of receiving) *karba* and especially

as an imperative *karbo* q. v., also *ungo* or *ungwo*; to t. (=conduct, guide) *kai*, e.g. what is to t. us to the Hausa country *mi zai kaimu hausa*, cf. B 163, D 50, E 38; to t. (of game, fish) *kama*; (of road, way) *id.*, e.g. he took his road (pursued his journey) *ya kama hainya*; (of medicine) if liquid *sha* and *hade*, if solid *hade*; 2. various combinations of t. with preps., adverbs, etc. are: t. and bring *tarjo** and *tareo**; t. a thing to *gabata da*; t. away *kai, kawa, kauda, kawas, kawasda, fige* or *figi, dauka* or *doka, taf(f)i da*, e.g. he took it away *ya taffi da shi, fit(t)a da, fishe* or *fushe*; to t. away by force *kwache* or *kwashi, amshi**; to t. down (gen.) *shid(d)a* or *shid(d)e*; (a tent) *nad(d)e*; to t. for oneself *dauko*; to t. hold of *dauka* or *doka*; to t. in (=to let or bring in) *shig(g)asda*; to t. off (gen.) *debe* or *debo, fuda, fit(t)asda, fisge* or *fusge*; (garments) *tube*; to t. off garments as sign of grief *tak(k)aba*; to t. off a load, etc. *subda*; to t. out *fit(t)a, fit(t)a da, fit(t)as, fit(t)asda, debe, debo* and *daibo, fisge* or *fusge*; to t. to oneself *karbo*; to t. up *dauka* or *doka*; to t. up with hand or spoon *mara*; to t. a handful *dimso*; to t. care, heed or notice of *tuna da, kul(l)a da*; (in proclamations 't. notice that') *ji*,

- ja*, *saurara*, *sorara* or *jurare**, cf. E 27.
- taking away**, participial n. *kar-biwa* C 14; *amshiwa**.
- tale**, n. (= story) *tasunia*, pl. *tasuniyoi*; (of fiction, unreal or false t.) *karia*, *fara* or *hira*, see **story**.
- talebearing**, adj. *ananminchi*.
- talent**, n. see **ability 2**.
- talk**, n. (= conversation, mutual discourse) *zanche* or *zanchi*, e.g. t. of the resurrection *zanchen kiyama* A 3, *battu*, *roshi*, and in a less precise sense *magana*; abundance of t. *harshi**; loud t. *dummi*, e.g. for much loud t. is superfluous *domin yawan dummi na fululuwa* B 154, cf. also B 22.
- talk**, v. (= converse) *zanche*, *tanka* or *tamka*, the first with forms in *na* or with *yi*, e.g. I am talking with my friends *ina zanche* (or *ina yin zanche*) *da abokaina*, *zantawa* with forms in *na*, *yin battu*, *yin magana*, e.g. we talked in Hausa *muna yin magana hausa*; he talks nonsense *shina magana bar-katai*; to t. much *tanka* or *tamka* D 87; (= palaver) *alameri**.
- talkative**, very, adj. *yanbaka*.
- talking**, participial n. (= conversing) *zantawa*, *tankawa*, (?) *fad(d)owa** D 87; much t. *tankiya*; noise of angry or loud t. *hargowa*.
- tall**, adj. *dogo*, fem. *dogua*, pl. *dogaye*; comp. taller and sup. tallest are expr. by *fi*, cf. H. Gr. pp. 45, 46; very t. *tsololo**.
- tallness**, n. *tsawa* and *tsawo*.
- talon**, n. *ahaifa*; spec. inside of a bird's t. *dundunia*.
- tamarind tree**, n. *tsamia*.
- tame**, adj. (= subdued, domesticated), no general term, the distinction between t. and wild species being sometimes expressed by different words, e.g. t. swine *gurusuna* opp. to *hanzir* and *gado*; t. cat *mag(g)i* opp. to *mazoro*; t. dog *kar(r)e* and *kar(r)en gid(d)a* opp. to *kalkeche*; t. animals *bis(s)ashen gid(d)a*.
- tameness**, n. (= easy disposition, want of spirit) *lalafanchi*.
- tan**, tr. v. *jemi* or *jima*.
- tank**, n. see **cistern**.
- tanner**, n. *majemi* or *majjima*.
- tanning**, a tree used for, n. *gab(b)arua*.
- tarry**, intr. v. 1. (= to stay) *zamna*, e.g. we tarried in Timbuctoo three months *mun zamna chik-kin timbuktu wata uku*, cf. F 71; 2. t. for (= to wait for) *jira* and *jirache*; 3. (= to delay) *yin yauchi*.
- task**, n. *alameri*, and in a general sense *aiki*.
- taste**, tr. v. 1. (= to try the flavour of) *dandana* and *dandani*, e.g. have you ever tasted pepper? *ko ku tabba dandana berkono*; 2. fig. (= to experience) *sha*, e.g. thou shalt taste its sweetness

zaka sha dadi nata A 12; he tasted trouble *ya sha wohalla*.

tasteless, adj. *lami* and *da lami*, *da babu zaki*.

taster, n. *madandani* B 17.

tasty, adj. (of food, etc., nice to taste) *da dadi*, *da zaki*.

taught, adj. (= well instructed, learned) *karanta**.

tax, n. *humushi*; spec. t. paid on leaving a country *garam(m)a*, *fit(t)o*; the latter also = t. paid to king in Kano market when buying a slave, cf. taxes.

tax-collector, n. *ajali*, *jekada*.

taxes, n. gen. *kurɗin kasa*, *jinga*; to pay t. *yin jinga*.

teach, tr. v. *koiya* or *koya*, e.g. he said to her teach me reading *ya faddi mata ki koiya mani karatu*, *samasda* or *sanda**, *karanta**.

teacher, n. *maikoiya*.

teaching, n. (= the act of teaching and also doctrine) *koiyawa*.

tear, n. (also coll. = tears) *hawaye*; with tears *da hawaye*; to shed tears *yin hawaye*, *shurfe*.

tear, n. (= rent in clothes, etc.) *yagua*.

tear, tr. v. (clothes, paper, etc.) *yaga*, e.g. and there will be dogs to bark in the fire, they will bark and tear *da karnuka chikkin wuta masuhafshi suna hafshi suna yaga*, *chage* or *tega*, *keta*, *berke* or *barke*; to t. out *tona* and *tone*; to t. to pieces *tsatsaga*, *fatatake*; to t. up *chichira*.

teeth, n. pl., all the t. together *matamna*; back t. *gub(b)o*; front t. *hauri**; a person who has no t. *maidasashi*; being without t. *gigi**.

tell, tr. v. (= to inform, also to command) *fad(d)a* or *fad(d)i*, e.g. I wish to be told this *ina so afaddi mani abu nan*, cf. F 7.

temper, n. (= disposition) *hal(l)i*, pl. *hal(l)ai*; evil t. *hallin mugu*; (= irritation, passion) *haushi*, e.g. he is in a bad t. with you *shina jin haushinka*.

tempest, n. *hadari*, *ginaria*.

temple, n. (place of worship) *maşallachi*, pl. *maşallatai*.

tempt, tr. v. 1. (= to test one, put him to trial) *jaraba* (A 65) or *jarabe*, *yin jarabi*; 2. (in bad sense, to allure, mislead) *rude*.

temptation, n. (= trial) *jaraba*.

tempter, n. (i.e. in sense of tempt 2) *marude* or *mairude*, pl. *maruda*.

ten, card. num. *goma*, pl. *gomia*; the latter is sometimes used to express multiples of t., e.g. *gomia uku* = *talatin*; t. times *sau* (or *so*) *goma*.

tend, tr. v. (to watch cattle) *kiwo*.

tendency, n. *takitaki** C 17.

tender, adj. (= soft, in a material sense) *tapshi*, *tafshi* or *tabshi**; to be or to make t. *yin tapshi*; the t. leaf *dainye* or *dainyi*, pl. *dainyoyi*.

tent, n. *lema*; to pitch a t. *kaf(f)a lema*; to take down a t. *nad(d)e*

- lema, buka*, pl. *bukogi*; spec. t. of skins or leather only *alfaruwa* or *alfaua*.
- tenth**, n. of number: 1. (= one part of ten) *ushuri*. 2. (one t. devoted to religious purposes, alms) *zak(k)a* F 17.
- tenth**, adj. *nagoma*, fem. *tagoma*.
- tentpole**, n. *tankari*; tentpoles coll. *shikashiki* as well as its pl. *shikashikai*.
- tents**, a collection of, n. *tarika** or *tarika**.
- terebinth**, n. *gwinki**.
- term**, n. 1. (= limit, end, boundary) *iyaka*; 2. (= time a thing lasts) *zamani*, cf. also seq.
- terminate**, v. see **end**, **finish**.
- termite**, n. *gara* (also used as coll.), pl. *garani*.
- terms**, n. pl. (= conditions, stipulations) *sharatsa**.
- terrify**, tr. v. *tsorata, bada tsoro*.
- terror**, n. 1. abstr. (the emotion) *tsoro, tsantsanta, razan(n)a* or *razan(n)i*; without t. *da babu razan(n)i* B 46; 2. concr. (=an object of t.) *abin tsoro*, etc., *mahawayi**.
- test**, tr. v. *dandana* or *dandani*; spec. to t. anything by smelling it *sunsuna* or *sonsona*; to t. weight of a load *jijiga*.
- testimony**, n. *shaida*, pl. *shaidai* and *shaidodi*; to adduce t. *kai* (and *kawo*) *shaida* which also = to bear t., as do *shaida* and *yin shaida*, e.g. he bore or gave t. *ya shaida* or *ya yi shaida*.

text, n. (of the Koran) *nassî*, e.g. you regard the t. *ku dubi nassî* E 11.

thank, tr. v. *gode, barka, gaida, gaishe*; the clipt Engl. phr. 'thank you' *na gode maka* or *godia*; 'no thank you' *albarka* or *alberka* q. v.

thanks, n. pl. *godia*; expressions for to give t. are: 1. (to God) *gode*, and with *yi* or pres. forms *godia* followed by *na, ga* or *zua ga*, e.g. we give t. to God *muna godia zua ga allah* D 100, *shukra*, e.g. *muna shukra* D 100; 2. (to men) *gode, yab(b)a*, e.g. *na yab(b)a = na gode*; for the Engl. phrase 'thanks' cf. prec.

that, 1. demonstr. pron. pointing out remote object *wonchan* or *wanchan**, fem. *wochan*, pl. (= those) *wod(d)anan*; an emphatic form = t. one *wonchan-anka*; the following = those as well as t. *chan, chana* or (in written Hausa) *chananka*, e.g. t. lion *zaki chan*; *nan* is also employed in this sense, e.g. t. business *abu nan*; 2. rel. pron. see under **who**; 3. conj. t. = in order t., t. not = in order t. not, see **order** 3; 4. Engl. t., as a conjunctive particle, pointing out one sentence or clause as logically the object of another, is unrepresented in Hausa, which expresses such a connection, in nearly every case, by simply placing the depen-

dent after the principal sentence. This is so with verbs of asserting, knowing, perceiving, judging, wishing, commanding, e.g. this woman says t. she will not go on *mache nan ta che ba zata taffia ba*; I said to them t. I did not perceive t. I had been struck by a shot *na faddi masu ban sannu ba akahalbeni da bindiga*; I desire t. you give me my money *ina so ka bani kurdina*; he ordered t. they should be fettered *ya hakumche asa masu giger*. In the same way may be expressed a consequence, e.g. he terrified him (so) t. he fell down *ya tsoratashi ya fadi akass*; he beat it t. it died *ya yi mata bulala ta mutu*; similarly verbs of causing and the like may govern a clause, which takes the emphatic pronouns, expressing the effect, e.g. I will make him run (= I will cause t. he run) *ni sashi shi gudu*; permit t. I depart *berri ni taffi*.

That, used after to say, assert etc. *chewa*, or in written Hausa *chiwa*, this use is however very limited, cf. *dominchewa*.

thatch, grass used for, n. *bunu*, pl. *bunai*.

thatched roof, n. *tanka, jibga* or *jibki**

thatching, a leaf used for, n. *fitta*; large reeds used for t. *maiwa*.

theatre, n. *gid(d)an wasa**

thee, pers. pron. see **thou**.

theft, n. *sata, sani* or *suane*.

their, possess. pron. suffixed -*su*, -*nsu*, e.g. t. town *garisu** G 2, *garinsu*; t. wives *matayensu*; separate, if the object possessed is masc. *nasu*, if fem. *tasu*.

them, pers. pron. suffixed to verbs and prepositions as object, e.g. he destroyed t. *ya halakasu* G 2; to t. *dasu, masu, garesu*.

then, adv. (= at that time) *sa'anana, lokachinun, yanda, yaenda, yaennan, yawanda** (?); (= t. and not till t. or and t.) *kana**, *kan**, *kanda**, e.g. do my work (first) and t. do your own *ka yi aikina kana ka yi naka*; (= in that case, in its weakest sense) *fa, mana*, e.g. come, t. *zo mana*.

thence, adv. *dag(g)a chan*.

there, adv. *chan, dag(g)a chan, wuri chan, awuri chan*; t. is, t. are, etc. *akoi* D 9, 29, 36, e.g. t. is a journey before us *akoi taffia gabbanmu*.

therefore, *don wonan, fa, dominchewa* or *chewa**

these, dem. pron. see **this**.

they, pers. pron. prefixed to various forms of past tenses *su, sun, suka*, suffixed to the aux. verb of the future, e.g. t. will... *zasu*....

thick, adj. *kabri* or *kauri, da kabri, da kauri*.

thief, n. *barao*, fem. *baraunia*, pl. *baraye* or *barai, maisata*; spec. a market t. *maisani*.

thieving, n. *karakonchi*, *birkonchi**; *anta*, *sani* or *susani*; secret t. *ja chikki* D 9 note.

thigh, n. *chinia*, pl. *chinioyi*, *katara**, *karfata* or *karifata* q.v.; it was almost larger than my t. *ya kusa* *fa chinia* *da girima*.

thin, adj. (= fine, as flour, dust, etc.) *lauhi* or *lohi*; (= not stout) *ba kabri*, *babu kabri*; (= lean, emaciated) *arame*, e.g. her young were quite t. *diata sai arame*.

thing, n. *abu*, connective *abin*, pl. *abubua* for which *abu* may be used; (in the gen. sense of matter, subject) *tada*, pl. *ta-dodi*; things created *talibai**.

think, v. (= to reflect, ponder) *tuna*, *tunane*; to t. of, or about *tuna da*; (= to deem) *tset(t)o*, *tset(t)o*, *zet(t)o**; *tsachi* or *zache*, e.g. thou thinkest that it will set *kana tsetto fadawa* B 103; he would t. it was wheat *shina tsachi alkaki che*; (= imagine, expect) *tamaha* with *yi* and the pronouns in *na*; t. of (in the sense of to remember) *ambata* and *ambato*; t. of (in the sense of intend) *kul(l)a* or *kul(l)i*, e.g. I t. of going *ina da kullin taffia*.

third, 1. ordinal num. *naiiku*, fem. *taiku*, e.g. the t. one of them was a man who excelled them in declaring the unity of God *naiikunsu wanda ya fisu tauhidi* A 48; 2. fractional

num. (= one part out of three) *suhari*.

thirst, n. *kishirus*; to feel t. *jin kishirus*.

thirsty, adj. *da kishirus*, *izama* D 92 (?).

thirteen, cardinal num. *goma sha uku*, also *sha uku*.

thirty, card. num. *talatin*.

this, dem. pronominal adj. *wonan* or *woman**, pl. (these) *wod(d)anan*, also *wonga*, fem. *wog(g)a*, pl. (these) *wod(d)anga*; in the Sokoto district especially are used the forms *worga* or *warga* = *wonan*, e.g. t. song *worga waka* F 26; *nan* used for all genders and numbers usually placed after the word to which it refers, e.g. t. woman *mache nan*, but in poetry sometimes before it, e.g. he who desires the possessions of t. world *maison dukaka nan dunia* C 39; suffixed also to the connective is *ga*, e.g. t. house *gid(d)anga*; t. town *garinga*; *gata* C 8 (?).

thither, adv. of place words = there employed *nan*, *chan*, *wurichan*.

thorn, *kaya*, pl. *kayayua*, *karangia*, *karengia* or *karingia*; spec. a tree with white thorns, from fruit of which ink is made *farakaya*.

thorns, a quantity of, n. coll. *kayeta*.

those, demonstr. pron. see **that** 1.

thou, pers. pron. separate and

- emphatic *kai*, fem. *ki* or *ke*; prefixed to past and suffixed to fut. auxiliary and to passives *ka*, fem. *ki*, e.g. t., O woman *ke mache*; t. wilt return here *zaka komo*; t. wast stung by a scorpion *anhalebeka da kunama*; the above also = thee after prepositions and tr. verbs, e.g. along with thee *tare da kai*; to thee *maka*; I saw thee *na ganki*.
- though**, conj. *koda*, *saidai* A 16.
- thought**, n. *tunane*, fem. *tunama*, pl. *tunanu*, *matuna** or *matunan**, *tamaha*, *matamache*.
- thousand**, num. *dubu*, *zambar*, *alif*; two t. *alfin*.
- thread**, n. *zar(r)e*, *zar(r)i* A 75, *abawa*; spec. very fine t. *arrafia*.
- threat**, empty, n. *alwashi*.
- threaten**, v. *yin kurar(r)i*.
- threatening**, n. *kurar(r)i*; a t. discourse *foro**.
- three**, card. num. *uku*, *talata*; the latter in counting cowries often stands for t. thousand; t. days ago *wanshekaranjia*.
- thresh**, tr. v. *dakka*, *sis(s)ika* or *sus(s)ika*, *buga**.
- thresher**, n. *maitaki*.
- threshing floor**, n. *masis(s)ika*, *wurin sis(s)ika*, *mabugi*, pl. *mabugai*, *fak(k)o*.
- threshold**, n. *garam(m)a** and *dan garam(m)a**.
- thrice**, numeral adv. *sau* (or *so*) *uku*, *guda uku*.
- thrive**, v. (= to prosper) *yin ar-ziki*.
- throat**, n. *makurua*, *makogoro*, pl. *makogorai*, *makoshi*; spec. swelling on t. *makoko*, *hangum**.
- throne**, n. *kusheran sariki*, *kushera*.
- throng**, n. *taru*, pl. *tarori*, *firmai*, cf. crowd.
- throttle**, tr. v. *murda*, *makure*.
- throttler**, n. *mirdago* or *murdago*.
- throw**, tr. v. *yes*, *yesda*, *jefa*, e.g. he throws stones *ya jefa duatsu*; to t. away *yes*, *yesda*, *zub(b)as*, *zubasda*, *wulga*, *wulge* or *wurga*, e.g. he threw away his gun and fled *ya yesda bindiga ya gudu*; all these kola nuts are rotten, t. them away *gora nan duka ribabu ka zubasdasu*; to t. back *mayeres*; t. out (= to t. away) *jefas* (also = to cast out, overthrow) *jefasda*; to t. with dice *jefa kuria*; spec. to t. (food) into the mouth *hamfude*, *hamfudi* or *hanfude**; to t. up anything so that it falls down again *shik(k)a*.
- thrush**, bird resembling, n. *gado*.
- thrust**, tr. v. *zonkutsa** F 93, see push; to t. through (= pierce) *soka*, *soke* or *soki*, e.g. he t. their chief through with a spear *ya soka babansu da mashi*.
- thumb**, n. *baban yasa*.
- thunder**, n. *tsawa*; distant rolling

t. *chid(d)a*; a burst of t. or thunder-bolt *arradu*.

Thursday, n. *alhamis* or *rana alhamis*.

thus, adv. (= in this or that way or manner) *hak(k)a*, *hak(k)anan*, *kaza*; the last is also used (see under **so**, **such**) where the speaker mentions the way or manner, but the actual author of the account avoids it, e.g. he said the king spoke (t., or) t. and t. *ya che sariki ya faddi (kaza or) kaza da kaza*; (in a weak sense = so then) *fa*.

thy, possess. pron. suffixed *-ka*, *-nka*, fem. *-ki*, *-nki*, e.g. t. wife *mataka*, t. husband *mijinki*; separate, if the object possessed is masc. *naka*, *naki*, if fem. *taka*, *taki*.

thysself, 1. reflexive *kanka*, fem. *kanki*; 2. emphatic *kai dakanka*, fem. *ke* (or *ki*) *dakanki*; cf. **self**.

tidings, n. see **news**.

tie, tr. v. *damre*, *dauire*, *damra** or *darmi** G 4, *rataya* or *rataia*, *sarkafe*; to t. up together *goiyo* or *goyo*; spec. to t. up kola nuts *sufuri*, *sufurchi** or *sufili*.

tied loosely, participial adj. *sasabda* or *sasapta*.

tightened, pass. particip. *kumche**.

till, prep. and conj. see **until**.

till, tr. v. *noma*, *nomi* or *nome*, *maimai*.

tiller, n. (i.e. of the ground) *mainoma* or *mainomi*, pl. *masunoma*, *makafchi**.

Timbuctoo, pr. n. *timbuktu*.

time, n. *lokachi*, *sa'a*, *yayi*, *zamani*, *zamani*, (also found as pl.) *zamanu*, e.g. a long t. *lokachi dogo*; a short t. *zamani kad(d)an*; at that t. *lokachinan*, *sa'anan*; at the t. when he returned here *lokachinda* (or *sa'anda*) *ya dawoioyo*; at what t.? *wane sa'a*; some t. *woni-yayi*; you, my brethren, consider well the times and their changes *ku yan urwa ku hura da zamanu da jirkitansu* B 82; (= period, age) *yayi*, *zamani*, e.g. in the t. of the prophet *ga yayin annabi* or *zamanin annabi*; his t. is passed (i.e. he is old) *yayinsa ya wuche*; (= set t. or proper occasion) *lot(t)u*, *loto**, *wakti* or *wakati*, e.g. whoever omits the times (of prayer) passes away and is destroyed *kowa ya ber lotu ya shude ya bata* A 62, 65; every t. *wakti duka* A 54, see A 61; leave off saying your prayers late, make yours at their proper t. *ku ber makara da ƙalla ku yi taka wakaita* D 23; by (or about) this t. *warhakka* or *waraka*; at any t. *koyaushe*; at what t. (= when) *yanda*, *yaenda*; at what t.? *yaushe*; before-time *wuri*; in former times or some t. ago *dawuri* or *dauri* (lit. in the before-time);

from a long t. *dadade*; from what t.? *dag(g)a yaushe*; since what t.? *tunyaushe*; until what t.? *har yaushe*; length of t. *tsawa* or *tsawo*; I have not t. to *ba ni da dama*; see also **times**, **hour**.

times, pl. (of repetition) *sau* or *so*, *guda*, e.g. five t. *sau* (or *so*) *biar*, or *guda biar*.

timid, adj. *matsorata*.

tin, n. *sinaderi*, *shinaderi* or *sunaderi*.

tinder, n. *alhowami*, sometimes pronounced *alfoami*.

tinge, tr. v. *rin(n)i* or *rin(n)a*.

tinged, pass. particip. *rin(n)ene*, fem. *rin(n)ena*, pl. *rin(n)enu*.

tip, n. (of the finger) *dan yasa*, (of the ear) *dan kune*.

tire, v. 1. tr. (= to fatigue) *gaje*; 2. intr. (= to be fatigued, weary) *gaje*, *gaji*, *jin gajia*, e.g. he was tired with travelling *ya gaji da taffia*; we are tired with over-work *muna jin gajia da yawan aiki*.

tithe, n. 1. (= tenth part) *ushuri*; 2. t. or tithes (= one-tenth devoted to religious purposes, alms) *zak(k)a*, e.g. repent, cease from unlawful gain, give tithes *ka tuba ka ber riba ka bada zakka* F 17.

title, n. (= name, appellation) *suna*, pl. *sunua* or *sunanaki*; spec. a t. of respect given to the heir to the throne in Kano and to the *galladima* in Zaria *daudu*.

to, 1. prep. *ga*, with pronouns *gare*, used of both persons and things, e.g. he came to me *ya zaka gareni*; they sell them to the traders *su sayesu ga masu-chiniki*; near to the bank of the river *kussa ga bakin rua*; *zua* and *ya zua*, *zua ga* D 100, and *ya zua ga* applied to both persons and things, e.g. they went to Sokoto *sun taffi ya zua sokoto*; those who frequent the gates of cities pay all their attention to women *masuzua ga kofofin birane su tatara hankalinsu zua ga mata* E 19; both *ga* and *ya zua* are often strengthened by *har* (cf. Engl. to, unto), e.g. to Othman *har ya zua othmanu* G 7; to the time of Othman *har ya zua zamani othmanu* G 1; even to the present time *hal ya zua yanzu*, B 174; *ma*, applied not to things but persons, mostly to pronouns, e.g. to me *mani*, also *mini*; to thee *maka*, often shortened to *-ma* after verbs, e.g. the day when death comes to thee *randa mutua ta ishema* F 76; *ma* sometimes expresses the Datives of Advantage and Interest, e.g. grant to me an abatement *ka yi mani rongomi*, the latter in the phr. come, please *zo mana* (= *mani*); *a*, found in a few phrases, e.g. he fell to the ground *ya fadi akasa* or *akass*, sometimes prefixed to *gare*, e.g. to thee

agareka = *gareka*; after verbs of motion etc. Engl. to may be wholly unrepresented, e.g. he went to his house *ya taffi gid-dansa*; they came to Mangi *suka je mangi* G 1; they swam and came to land *sun iyo sun kai kasa*; 2. conj. (= in order that, so that, so as to) *en* placed immediately before the verb and rarely used except with the 1st person, e.g. I shall not see a well to fall into it *ba ni ga rijia en fada ba* B 148; I have a strong desire to go on the pilgrimage to it, to go to Medina, to visit it *guri gareni en taffi haji nai en je madina en yi ziarata* B 162, cf. D 32; I am about to go *zani en taffi*, see under *order* 3.

toad, n. *kwado*, pl. *kwadodi*, *en-gurdigi** (?); spec. sick t. with swelling on back *kwozo*.

tobacco, n. *taba*, t.-pipe *tukunian taba*; to smoke t. *shan taba*.

tobe, n. *riga*, pl. *riguna* A 11; spec. black or blue t. *rigan saki*; t. of black or shiny blue cloth *kore*; red t. *jeb(b)a**; white t. *gare*, pl. *garuruka*, *girike*; a white t. used esp. by the Nupés *kwakwata*.

to-day, adv. *yau*, also pronounced *yo*; existing t. *maiyo* B 3, 21.

toddle, intr. v. *dubbo dubbo*.

toe, n. *yasa*, pl. *yasosi*, *yasankaffa*; big t. *babun yasa*; spec. a disease of the toes *kudumbia*.

together, adv. *tare*, *gab(b)adai* or

gab(b)adaia, *taro** or *taru** B 158, *jeni*; t. with *tare da*; t. with this (= notwithstanding) *tare da wonan*; v. to put t. *tara*; to put up t., to gather t. *gangama*; to be gathered t. (= to assemble) *taru*; to come t. with violence *kar(r)a* or *kar(r)o*; to go t. *tare*, e.g. we will all go t. *duka zamu tare* E 36; keep together! *ku taffi jeni*.

toil, n. (= fatigue) *ta'ba*.

toil, intr. v. *ta'ba*, *shama*; to t. for *tsururi*, *dawoinya*, e.g. he toils for vanity *shina dawoinya da abin wofi* B 52.

token, n. *shaida*, pl. *shaidai* and *shaidodi*.

toll, n. *humushi* (lit. one-fifth), cf. *tax*.

tomato, n. *gauta*, pl. *gautays*; plant with fruit like large t. *yalo*, pl. *yaluna*.

tomb, n. *kushewa* or *kusheya**, pl. *kusheyi*, *wurin kushewa*, *wurin bisme*, *kabari*, *barzahu** F 70 note, e.g. the t. of the prophet, a thing to be loved *kabari an-nabi abin kamna* B 169.

to-morrow, n. *gobe*; possessor of t. *maigobe* B 3, 21; the day after t. *jibi*, the day after *jibi* is called *gata*, that after *gata*, i.e. the third day after t. *chitta*.

tongs, n. *awortak(k)i* or *hawar-tek(k)i*, *ansaki* or *hansaki*.

tongue, n. 1. (the bodily member) *halshi* or *harshi*, pl. *halshina*; 2. (= a particular language) see *language* 2.

too, adv. 1. (= likewise) *kua, kuma, ma**; 2. (more than enough) express by the verbs *faye* and *buaye*, e.g. it was t. severe for me *ya fayeni karifi*; he was t. big *ya faye da girima*; he was t. much for me *ya buayeni*; t. much *ya faye yawa*.

tools, n. pl. *kaya* or *kaia* or the pl. *kuyayeki*.

tooth, n. *hauri, hak(k)ori*, pl. *hak(k)ora*; first t. of a child *matamni*, pl. *matamna*; back teeth *gub(b)o*; spec. t.-brush, made of bristles of a tree *dashi*; t.-gaping n. used of one who has lost two teeth *gibi*, e.g. *shina gibi*.

toothless, adj. *maidasashi*; n. condition of being t. *gigi**.

top, n. *kai*, pl. *kawana**, *kawana* and *kawuna, bis(s)a* or *abis(s)a, kodi*; on the t. of *akan, bis(s)a* or *abis(s)a*, e.g. on the t. of the tomb *akan kushewa* F 96 = *bis(s)a* (or *abis(s)a*) *kushewa*; the t. of the head *kandaman kui*.

topple over, to, intr. v. *yin kunduma*.

torch, n. *bakin wuta*.

torment, n. *tsanani, gobara* (orig. = the fire) B 12; spec. place of t. for unbelievers *gumki* or *gamki*, pl. *gumaka*; to suffer t. *jin tsananta*.

torment, tr. v. *tsananta, tsane, tsani, tsanache*.

torn off, a half, n. *tsayi*.

tornado, n. *haderi*.

torrent, n. *koram(m)a*.

tortoise, n. *kunkuru, kififia**; a small t. *kafarji*.

toss, tr. v. (of cattle, etc. when butting, goring) *tunkuda, tunguji* or *tunkui*.

total, n. (=sum or amount reached by reckoning) see **calculation** 2.

tottering, adj. *agaga*, e.g. it is old and t. with age, the nurturer of disease *agaga tsofua gonal chiuta* B 109, (applied to the walk of the old or blind) *kut(t)up kut(t)up*, (of walls, etc.) *karikache*, fem. *karikata*, pl. *karikatu*.

touch, tr. v. *tab(b)a*, e.g. it is alive, just t. it and it will certainly move *shina da rai sai ka tabbashi zai mosa babu shak*, (= to engage slightly in) *id.*, e.g. he just touched the work *ya tabba yin aiki*.

towards, prep. *ga*, before pronouns *gare*, also with *dag(g)a*, e.g. some men are coming t. us *woddansu mutane suna zakkua garemu* or (less commonly) *dagga garemu*.

towel, n. *bante*, pl. *bantuna, kal-kaf(f)i*.

town, n. large, walled t. *birni*, pl. *birane* or *birnua*; small, unwalled t. *gari*, pl. *garurua*, and *garigaru*; quarter of a t. *shiya* or *shia*, pl. *shiyoyi*; cf. suburb.

toy, n. (= plaything) *abin worigi*.

track, n. (= beaten path) *tafuriki, tafarki, tafarke** or *tafrika**,

- pl. *tafarkoki*; a broad t. *rimdi*, *godobe*.
- trade**, n. *fadake*, *chiniki*.
- trade**, intr. v. *yin fadake*, *yin chiniki*; to t. successfully *chin kasua*.
- trader**, n. *fadake* or *maifadake*, *falka**, pl. *fadake*, *maifatauchi*, *maidilanchi**, *tajiri* and *at-tajiri*, *dan kasua*.
- trading**, n. *fatauchi*, *dilanchi*.
- tradition**, n. (= doctrine orally handed down) *sunna* B 16, C 42, e.g. leave off that which is evil, work according to the t. of Mohammed *ka ber bida'a ka aikata sunna ahmad* F 25.
- traduce**, tr. v. see **calumniate**.
- trample**, tr. v. *taka*, intensive form *tataka* or *tatake*, e.g. let us not t. it under foot *kadda mu tatakeshi* B 40.
- transform**, tr. v. *sauya* and *sawaya*, e.g. by the power of a charm he transformed himself into an elephant *da ikon magani ya sauya kansa giwa*.
- transformed**, pass. particip. *rikidade*, fem. *rikidada*, pl. *rikidadu*; to be t. *sauya* and *sawaya*, *mayerda*, *rikida*, e.g. he was t. into a sheep *ya sauya tumkia*; she was t. into something or other *ta mayerda* (or *rikida*) *woni abu*, see also **change** 4.
- transgress**, intr. v. (= to do wrong) *yin laifi*, (= to commit sin) *yin zunufi*.
- translate**, v. see **interpret** 1.
- translated**, pass. particip. *sauyaye*, fem. *sauyaya*, pl. *sauyayu*.
- transport**, n. animals used for t. *alaro*; oxen used for t. *takarikari*, pl. *takarikarai*.
- trap**, n. *hak(k)o*, pl. *hak(k)oki*, fig. (= a thing leading into harm or error) *id.*; t. for rat *burma* or *buma**; t. for wild animals *turko*; to lay or set a t. *hak(k)o* with *yi* or the forms in *na*, fig. *id.*.
- travail**, n. 1. (= severe labour) see **toil**; 2. (= pains of childbirth) *wohal(l)an haifua*; to be in t. *nakuda**.
- travail**, intr. v. see **toil**.
- travel**, intr. v. *taf(f)i*; also *taf(f)ia* with *yi* and the forms in *na*, e.g. as we were travelling much rain fell *da muna taffia anrua dayawa*; spec. to t. as a merchant *yin fatauchi*; money paid to a king for permission to t. *garam(m)a*.
- traveller**, fellow, n. *abokin taf(f)ia*, *maraki*.
- travelling for trade**, n. *fatauchi*.
- travelling-ant**, n. also coll. *kwarikwas(s)a*, *kwalkwas(s)a* or *kwarukwas(s)a*.
- tread**, v. to t. down *tataka* or *tatake*; to t. down with the feet *tak(k)i* or *taka*; to t. on *take*, to t. upon (to crush) *laze*.
- treasure**, n. *wad(d)a*, *taska*; treasures *ajia*, *azawa* F 94; royal t. stored up *kambi**;

spec. chamber for storing t. *rafonia*, pl. *rafoni*; to lay up t. *taskache*.

treasury, n. *taska*, pl. *taskoki*.

tree, n. *itache* (Sokoto *itashe* F 94)

or *iche*, pl. *itatua*; in this sense the word is masc. (a stick cut from a t. i.e. *itache* is usually regarded as fem.), a dried-up, withered t. *kobrin itache*; also *kwauri* and *kwabri*, pl. *kwabruka*; a t. when used to hang meat on *jigo*, pl. *jiguna*; a pair of trees so planted as to grow into one *gam(m)inbanta*. The following, most of which await identification, are grouped according to their characters and uses—a large species of t. *sherinia*; large t. with milk-white sap *chedia*; a large, shady t. *gimshi**; large, shady t., fruit resembles kola-nut *durumi*; large t. with white berries, under which rain collects during rainy season *gawo*, pl. *gawake*; large t. with poisonous fruit *zangarami**; small poisonous species of euphorbia t. *kumkumia**; a small t. *tsatsagi**; small t. with white leaves *sabur(r)a*; tall, straight t. *dilo*; a thorny t. with hard wood like mahogany *dakwora*; the following have edible fruit—a large t. *kadawra*; a large t., leaves also used to feed cattle *kokia**; a t. with reddish wood *baushi*;

a t. whose wood turns red by exposure *madobia*; a small t. *bana**; a small red-flowered t. *gaude*; molasses (*mad(d)i*) is made from the edible fruit of the following *dumia*, *taura* and *kainya* or *kaiwa*; a large, bushy t. (*zizyphus spina Christi*), with red edible berries *kurna*; a t. resembling *kurna* and having red wood *mijiria* or *misiria**; *zizyphus lotus*, its fruit made into cakes *magaria*; robinia *pseudacacia*, its fruit (*kalua*) eaten in soup *doriwa* or *dorowa*, cf. *dodowa*; the fruit of a red-flowered t. of which soup (*mia*) is made *soborodo*; a small t. with reddish wood and edible leaves *marike*; baobab or monkey-bread t. (*adansonia digitata*), its fruit eaten and its leaves used for making soup *kuka*;—t. grown on roof from which blacksmith's charcoal is made *kiria* or *kiriya*; t. from which india-rubber is obtained *gumji* or *gamji*; large t. with white thorns used in making ink *fara-kaya*; large t. from which a sweet scent is obtained *maje*; a large t. (?) *asclepias gigantea*, from bark of which ropes and from its blossoms a medicine for women are made *tumfafia*, pl. *tumfafi*; t. from whose bark small ropes are made *tawas(s)a*; the silk cotton t. (*eriodendron bombax*) *rimi*; t. whose leaves furnish

a yellow stain and, mixed with indigo, a green dye *magenta*; t. its leaves ground to make a stain for the hands *le(l)le*; small t. whose fragrant leaves are used for wrapping food and whose bark is used as a stain to darken lips *kalgo* or *kargo*; large t. its bark used for staining the teeth *gurjia*; t. from fruit of which a scent is made *sainya*; large t., with reddish bark, used for shed supports etc. *janyaro*; t. used in tanning *gab(b)an rua*; t. whose bristles are used as tooth-brush *dashi*; large t. its aromatic bark ground up as a medicine *fusa-kwooria*; large t. its bark furnishing an astringent medicine *sansami*; large t. its fruit ground up used as an ointment *kar(r)ana*; a Nupé t. fruit used as a medicine *pasakori**; small t. from whose root a scent is made, used also as a medicine *uwan magunguna*; small t. with yellow blossoms, an infusion of its leaves used by women near childbirth *runhu*; small fabaceous t. whose fruit ground up and drunk is supposed to render invulnerable to sword cut *dundu*; t. whose root is used as a charm at childbirth *bazere**; t. whose fruit is eaten as a charm to reconcile husband and wife *begeyi*.

tremble, intr. v. (with terror,

cold, etc.) *firgita*, *raura*, *zazaga*.

trembles, one who, n. *makartata** D 43, *maikatarta** D 46.

trembling, participial n. (from terror, cold, etc.) *raurawa*, t. all over *zazagawa*; t. (from excitement, agitation) *karaya*.

trespass, intr. v. see **transgress**.

trial, n. (= a putting to the proof, testing) *jarabi*, *jaraba*, e.g. for a t. *da jaraba*. A 65; to make t. of v. *jaraba*, *jarabe* or *yin jarabi*.

tribal marks, n. pl. (cut on face) *shaushawa*, *keskestu*, (cut from corners of the mouth) *yanbaka*.

tribe, n. *iri*, pl. *irare*, *kauwi*.

tribunal, n. *wourin sheria*.

tribute, n. *humushi*, *gandu* or *gundu*, *kurdin kas(s)a*; t. money *kurdin gandu*; spec. t. paid by the heathen *tara*; cf. tax.

trick, n. (= dexterous artifice) *bamanchi**, *woyo*.

trickery, n. (= fraudulent deception) *birkonchi**.

trim, tr. v. (to put in order) *gerta*.

trinkets, coll. *kayan ado*; cf. ornament.

trip, intr. v. *tunsure*, *yin tuntube*, the last is used as a tr. and intr. v.

Tripoli, pr. n. *tarabulus* or *birnin tarabulus*.

triumph, n. see **victory**.

troop, n. see **company**.

trot, intr. v. (of a horse) *kil(l)isa*.

trouble, n. (= distress) *wohal(l)a* or *wahak(l)a*, *ta'ba* F 68, *sa-*

*nanta, kinke, alale, karaki**, *mayata** D 61, (= polite attention) *dawoinia*, e.g. I thank you for your t. *na gode maka sabbada* (or *domin*) *dawoinia*; to be in t. *yin wohalla, ta'ba*; to feel t. *j'in wohalla, tangar(r)a*; to cause t. *kenke* and with *kai* as obj. *shama*, e.g. it causes t. *ya shama kai*.

trouble, n. one who bears t. *maiwohal(l)a*, one who causes t. *mahas(s)adi*.

trouble, v. tr. *wohalshe, ta'ba, sananche* and *tsananta, has(s)ada, alale, haiyet(t)a*, refl. (= to trouble oneself) *yin wohal(l)a, wohalda* or *wahalda*; do not t. (= feel distressed) *kadda ka wohalda kanka*, (as a polite exp. = spare yourself the t.) *kiyaye kanka*.

troublesome, what is, n. *kumamanchi*; adj. *da wuya*.

trough, n. *jirigi* or *jirgi*, pl. *jirage*.

trousers, n. (i.e. the loose, baggy native t.) *wando* or *wondo*, pl. *wanduna* or *wonduna** A 11, F 202; spec. two pieces of cloth sewn on at bottom of native t. *kamunkaf(f)a*; trouser-string *mazargi*.

true, adj. gen. *da gaskia, da gaske, gaskia* and *gaske*, (of persons = veracious, sound, honest) *maigaskia*, (= faithful) *ṣalihi**, pl. *ṣalihai*, e.g. the wise man is a t. friend, he would show to us the course of this world

maiḥankali shi ni abokin ṣalihi shi ḡan guda muna takitakin dunia C 17; t. as an adverbial phr. (= quite right) *ainin* as well as the words given in seq.

truly, adv. *da gaskia, da gaske, gaskia, gaske, aje, ashe, haḡiḡa, aiwa* or *ewa, ainin*.

trumpet, n. *kafo* or *ḡafo*, pl. *kafoni* and *kafuna, kakuki*, e.g. the t. shall sound, all shall rise *abusa ḡafo antashi duk* F 112.

trumpeter, n. *maikafo, maibusa* (lit. blower), e.g. on the day when the t. shall blow his trumpet *rana da maibusa ya busa kafo nasa* A 78, 79.

trunk, n. 1. (= small box, usually of leather) *ṣanduḡi*, pl. *ṣanduḡai*; 2. (= proboscis of elephant) *hanun giwa*; 3. (t. of a tree) *kwabri, kwauri, kobrin itache, kotutura*.

trust, n. (= confidence, certainty of safety) *amāna, shaduda* or *saduda*, (also = reliance on truth or right) *gaskia* B 19, (= the depositing of money etc. with anyone) *sabtu, saptu* or *sotu*, e.g. in his reign all men might have t. *amutane duka achikki zamanishi amāna ni* G 4; he betrayed t. *ya chinye amāna*; I left money with them on t. *na yi masu sabtu*.

trust, intr. v. or t. in (= rely on) *dogare, dangana, shaduda* or *saduda, ingata, sakankache*, e.g. we t. in thee *mun dogareka*

B 20; I t. in God *ina dangana da* (or *ga*) *allah*; follow Mohammed, t. in him *ku bi muhamadu ku sakankache* B 16 note.

trustee, n. *madaukan bashi*.

trustworthy, adj. (= to be relied on, depended on) *yerdaji* or *yirdaji*, *ingatachi**, *tab(b)atache*, fem. *tab(b)atachia*, e.g. this account is t. *wanan labari ingatachi*; t. language coll. *magana tab(b)atachia*; for the last is also found *makama magana* q. v.

truth, n. *gaskia*; phr. the t. of the matter *koman magana*; to speak the t. *ba gaskia*; to establish the t. *gaskata* or *gaskanta*.

try, tr. v. (= make trial of) see **trial**; (= endeavour), *kokari*, *yin kokari*, *tab(b)a* (or *bada*) *kokari*, e.g. I will t. to make an attempt *zan tabba kokari* A 2; t. diligently to follow his tradition *ku bada kokarunku ga sunna tai* B 16.

Tuarek, n. gent. *asben*, pl. *as-benawa*.

Tuesday, n. *rana talata*.

tuft of hair, n. on the head *tuku* or *tukuwa*; t. o. h. in the middle of the head *zanko*; cf. **hair**.

tug, tr. v. (= to haul along) *ja*.

tumult, n. (= noisy clamour of a multitude) *hargowa*; t. (e.g. of war) *falmaki*; see **uproar**.

turban, n. *rawani*, pl. *rawuna*;

spec. small red, white-bordered t. *zubuta**; t. of white muslin *harsa* or *hirsu*; white muslin for making t. *zabuta*; white stuff for making t. *mabur(r)us*.

turkey, n. *talatalu*, *agwagwa*.

turn in, a, at the edge of a garment, n. *shafi*.

turn, v. 1. tr. (= to move round) *maida*; to t. away from *juya ma*; to t. the head away from *kauda kai*; to t. back, t. over *juya*; to t. upside down *jiche* or *jichi*, *jirkiche*; to t. over (e.g. a mat, piece of cloth etc. for the purpose of folding) *linke* or *nimka*; intr. to t. aside (off the road, out of the way) *ratsa*, *rache*, *ratse*, *kari-kache* or *karkache*, e.g. we t. aside from Kano *nu ratsa kano* E 45; to t. over *kewoye* or *kewayi*; to t. round (of continuous motion = to revolve) *id.*, e.g. my head turned round (of giddiness etc.) *kaina ya kewoye*; to t. round (of a single change of position) *woiwoia* or *waiwaia*, e.g. when he called me I turned round and saw him *da yu kirrani na woiwoia na ganshi*; trop. (= to become eventually) *fit(t)a*, e.g. he turned out well *ya fitta nagari*; 2. (= to change or change into) tr. and intr. see **change**.

turning, participial n. *juyawa*, *woiwoia* or *waiwaia*.

turtle, n. *kunkuru*.

turtle-dove, n. *kurichia*, pl. *kuri-*

- checheki* and *kurchiyoyi, wala*, pl. *walu*.
- tusk**, n. an elephant's t. *haurin giwa, hauri*; cf. ivory.
- twelfth**, ord. num. *nagoma sha biu*, fem. *tagoma sha biu*.
- twelve**, card. num. *goma sha biu*, also *sha biu*; t. times *sau* (or *so*) *goma sha biu*.
- twentieth**, ord. num. *naishirin* or *naashirin*, fem. *taishirin*, etc.
- twenty**, card. num. *ishirin* or *ashirin*; in counting by twenties *hauia* and *lasso* (= a score) are especially employed, e.g. *hauia uku = settin*, cf. A 39; a long measure of about t. yards *turumi*.
- twice**, numeral adv. *sau* (or *so*) *biu*.
- twig**, n. *hamso**, *itache*, q.v.
- twilight**, n. (that before dawn) *jijifi* also *jijif* B 56.
- twinkling of an eye**, n. (= a moment of time) *keptawan ido*.
- twins**, n. pl. *tuguai, tuguaye* or *taguaye*; spec. next child born after twins *gumbo*.
- twist**, tr. v. *kis(s)o* (e.g. the hair); t. (e.g. the neck) *murda*; (e.g. thread) *murje*; (e.g. a piece of cloth) *jainye**; (in plaiting rope, etc.) *tubka, tufka* or *tupka*.
- twisted**, adj. *kis(s)o*.
- two**, card. num. *biu, biyu* or *bi*; by twos *biu biu*; t. hundred *dari biu* or *metin*; t. thousand *alfin*.
- udder**, n. *nono*, pl. *nonua**.
- ugly**, adj. *babu keau*.
- ulcer**, n. *gembo*, pl. *gembuna*; cf. scab.
- umbrella**, n. *tuta** or *tuti**, pl. *tutoshi* D 68.
- unable**, to be, intr. see **able**.
- unalloyed**, adj. *şafi* or *safe*; cf. unmixed.
- unbecoming**, adj. *haram, ba daidai*; e.g. he did what was u. *ya yi abinda ba daidai ba*.
- unbeliever**, n. *kafiri*, pl. *kafirai* and *kafirawa*.
- unbind**, tr. v. *kunche, kunchi*; e.g. he unbinds his load on the plain of this world *ya kunchi kaya nai ga filin dunia* C 11.
- unbound**, pass. part. *kunche*, fem. *kunchia*, pl. *kuntu*.
- uncertain**, adj. *da zuchia biu*; u. thought (= doubt) *tset(t)o, tsat(t)o* or *zet(t)o*; to be u. *sauraro**; I am u. *ina da zuchia biu*.
- uncertainty**, n. (a state of doubt) *kokonto, tambaba, tantam(m)a*.
- unchaste**, adj. see **profligate**.
- unchastity**, n. *zallantaka*.
- uncle**, maternal, n. *rafa*.
- unclean**, adj. (= dirty, foul) *da dauda, kazami*; ceremonially u. *haram, da haram*.
- uncleanness**, n. (in a physical sense) *dauda*; (in a wider sense) *kazamta, jaraba*, the last of moral pollution.
- uncooked**, adj. *dainye*; u. flesh *nama dainye*; n. anything u. *gaya**.

uncover, tr. v. *yaye** (?).
under, adv. and prep. *kalkashin*,
kalikashin or *karkashin*.
underneath, adv. cf. preceding.
understand, v. *ji*, *fahimta* or
*fahumta**, *yin z̄iaya* E 11, 20,
 e.g. I u. your words, I u. quite
 well *na ji magananka na ji*
sarrai; he understands (i.e. you
 need say no more) *ya yi kerren*
magana; to u. well intens.
sansanche; to fail to u. *gigichi*
 or *gigi*, *rudi*, *gagata*, the last
 taking *da* before object, e.g. I
 failed to u. it *na gagata da shi*.
understanding, n. (= compre-
 hending, comprehension) *fa-*
himchi, *fahami**, *ziaya*, *kerre*
 or *kari*; cf. prec.; (= knowledge,
 cleverness) *asanchi* or *azanchi*;
 see also **ability** 2.
undo, tr. v. see **untie** (= to annul,
 render vain) *wofinta*; (= to
 ruin) *bata*.
undress, v. *debe* or *debo*, *tube*,
fit(t)asda all with *riguna*, etc.
undressed, pass. particip. see
naked.
uneven, adj. (of a surface) see
rough.
unfortunate, adj. and n. *masiachi*,
 pl. *masiata*.
ungird, tr. v. *sinche*, e.g. he
 ungirded his camel *ya sinche*
rakuminsa.
ungrateful, adj. *butulu*, *maibu-*
tulchi (Sok. *maibutulshi*), e.g. he
 who is u. shall not be saved *da*
ya she (= *che*) *maibutulshi ba*
shi tsira E 5.

unique, adj. *kad(d)aichi**.
unite, tr. v. *gam(m)a*; intr. to u.
 closely *garwaya* C 20 note.
unity, n. *daianchi**; spec. to
 profess the u. of God *tauhida**
 or *tauhidi** A 48.
unjust, adj. (= unfair, wrongful)
tsulumi; (= wicked, gen.) *da*
haram or *haram*; n. what is
 u. *haram* or *abin haram*; cf.
 seq.
unlawful, adj. *da haram* or *haram*;
 n. anything u. or what is u.
haram or *haramu*, *abin haram*,
shirku; u. gain or profit *hara-*
mia.
unless, conj. *sai*, *saike*, e.g. he
 who asks is not without reason,
 u. he refuses to listen to that
 which thou showest to him
matan(ba)yi ba shi rassa huja
ba sai ya ki (= *ki*) *jin abin da*
ka nuna mai B 10.
unload, tr. v. gen. *shid(d)a* or
shid(d)e; to u. camels, etc.
sahka, *sabki* or *sapka*.
unmixed, adj. (= pure from ad-
 mixture) *tsalka*, *tsatsalka*, *safi*,
safe.
unprofitable, adj. *babu anfani*,
da babu anfani, *banza*, *babu*
riba.
unripe, adj. *dainye* or *dainyi*, pl.
dainyoyi.
unsympathetic, adj. *magaya* or
magauchi, pl. *magata*.
untie, tr. v. *kunche* or *kwanche*,
sunche or *sinche*.
untied, pass. particip. *kunche*,
 fem. *kunchia*, pl. *kuntu*.

until, till, prep. and conj. *har*, *hal* or *hal*, prep., e.g. he followed the true path u. now *ya bi hainyan gaskia har yanzu*; strengthened by *dai*, *ga*, *ya zua*, e.g. even u. now *hal ya zawa (=zua) yanzu* B 174; conj. let them quarrel u. they are tired *abersu fadda har su gaji*; *sai*, prep. with nouns of time, e.g. u. to-morrow *sai gobe*; u. evening *sai mareche*; these expressions are elliptical, some such v. as wait, etc. being understood before them, as is the case also when *sai* is used as a conj., e.g. give up delaying and saying that (you will wait) u. you are old; death will come before you are old *berri jira ka che sai ka tsofe akanmache gabban ba atsofe ba* B 115; *kana**, *kan**, *kanda**, conj. = then and not u. then, so that the corresponding English sentence always contains a negative, e.g. they stood till we charged them, then and not u. then they all ran *sun tsaya har muka fadi abissansu kana su duka su gudu*; don't eat our bread u. you have eaten your own *ka chi gurassanka kana ka chi tamu*; *kāmi** D 91.

unto, prep. (a strengthened form of to) *ga*; with pronouns *gare*, *zua*, *ya zua*; in correlative expressions combined with *har*, e.g. from this border unto that

dagga iyaka nan har ga iyaka chan.

untrue, adj. *kakari*; the n. *karia* (= Engl. 'a story') is constantly used in this sense, e.g. whether true or u. I do not know *gaskia ko karia ban sannu ba.*

unwell, adj. *reshin lafia*, *maras-lafia*; cf. ill.

up, adv. (= upwards, aloft) *bis(s)a*, *abis(s)a*; e.g. the falcon soared up *shafu ya tashi bissa.*

uphold, tr. v. (= to support, e.g. as a tent-pole) *tokara.*

upon, prep. *bis(s)a* or *abis(s)a*, which may also be followed by *ga*; e.g. u. it *bissa garesa*; he got u. the horse *ya hawa (bissa or bissan or) bissa ga doki.*

uproar, n. *hautsina**.

upset, v. 1 tr. *jirkiche*, *birkichi* or *birkiche*; to u. (so as to spill water, etc.) *zubda*; 2. intr. to u. or to be u. (of men, etc.) *tunsure*; (of a boat) *durime* or *dirime.*

upside down, to turn, tr. v. *jirkiche*, *jiche* or *jichi.*

urinate, intr. v. *boli*, also seq. with the forms in *na* or with *yi.*

urine, n. *fitsare.*

us, pers. pron. obj. -*mu* suffixed to verbs and prepositions, e.g. he called u. *ya kirramu*; to u. *mamu*, or with assimilation *mumu.*

usage, n. (= custom) *ada*, *tada*, pl. *tadodi.*

use, n. (= utility, also advantage,

- profit, gain) *anfáni*; e.g. what is the u. of ink? *tadawa minene anfaninta*; of u. *da anfani*; of no u. *babu anfani*; a man of no u. *mutum wofi*.
- use**, tr. v. (to employ) no general term, must be turned, e.g. they u. flesh for food *abinchinsu nama*; they u. skins only for clothing *rigunansu duka sai da fata*; they u. force *sunayin tilas*; he can u. the axe *shina iya yin aiki da gatari*; do you u. a hat *ka aike da malafa*; (= to be wont) verbal forms with *kan*, e.g. he used to come home at night *shi kan taffo gidada dere*; to be used to (= to be accustomed to) *sabada*; e.g. camels are used to men *rakuma su saba da mutane*.
- useful**, adj. *da anfani, maianfani* B 44; it is u. *shina da akibba*.
- useless**, adj. *babu anfani, banza*.
- uselessly**, to work, intr. v. *sunkwira* or *sunkuya* C 4.
- uselessness**, n. *wofi*.
- utility**, n. see *use*.
- vagabond**, adj. *gujeje*.
- vain**, adj. (= empty, worthless) *banza, kakari*; in v. *banna*; (= conceited) *wawa*; to be v. *wauta*.
- valley**, n. see *ravine*.
- value**, n. (= estimated worth in money) see *price*.
- vanity**, n. (= emptiness, worthlessness) *kakari, abin wofi*; (= conceit, foolishness) *wauta*.
- vapour**, n. (= mist, fog) *hazo*; v. rising in hot sun *kawalwolmia*.
- variance**, n. (= dissension, disagreement) see *discord*.
- variation**, n. see *difference*.
- various**, adj. *dabam dabam*, e.g. v. things are sold in the market *abubua dabam dabam asayesdasu chikkin kasua*.
- vase for scent**, n. *wukia*.
- veal**, n. *naman marak(k)i*.
- vegetable**, a, used in making soup, n. *rigi**.
- veil**, n. long v. *lulubi, lulube* or *lilibi, zan(n)e, lulubi*; v. worn by a king *amarwali*.
- veil**, tr. v. *lulubi* or *lulube*, e.g. O women, v. your whole body *fa mataye ku lulubi du jikinku* F 41; refl. to v. oneself *id.* C 18; (to wrap up) *sunke** F 91.
- vein**, n. *jijia*, pl. *jivoji*; veins coll. *dag(g)ura**.
- velvet cloth**, kind of, n. *yapki*.
- vengeance**, to take, v. *rama*, presential form *ramawa*.
- venison**, n. *naman daji*.
- Venus**, (the planet) n. *zara, matan wata* lit. wife of the moon.
- verily**, adv. *hakika, anche* or *enche, ai, da gaskia, iyo**.
- vermin**, infesting horses, goats, etc., coll. *kaska*.
- verse of the Koran**, n. *aya* (a connective form *aiar** F 19, 24, 42, 158), pl. *ayoyi*, e.g. and this v. (of the Koran) is a sufficient reason to give to

anyone *fa aya nan dalili she*
(= *che*) *ga kowa* F 138.

vertigo, n. *gigita*.

very, adv. *dayawa* most frequently with the expression thrown into a nominal form, e.g. he was v. frightened *ya ji tsoro dayawa*, etc.; sometimes this idea is expressed by repetition, e.g. v. fast, v. quickly *maza maza*; v. slowly, v. quietly *san(n)u san(n)u*; spec. v. red *ja wur*; v. black *bak(k)i ker(r)in*; v. much (of habitual actions) is often expressed by v. *faye*, e.g. dogs bark v. much at night *karnuka suna faye hafshi da dere*.

vessel, n. 1. (= utensil for holding anything) *tukunia*, pl. *tukane* or *tukwane*; v. made of clay *kasko*, pl. *kasaki*; v. made of skin *tandu*; spec. any small white v. *tamgaram*; 2. see **boat**.

veteran, n. (= an experienced soldier) *maitasasi* or *maidsasi*.

vex, tr. v. *wohalshe*, refl. to v. oneself *wohalda*.

vexation, n. *haushi*; cf. anger.

vexed, to be, intr. v. *jin haushi*, e.g. he is v. with me *yana jin haushina*; phr. my heart is v. *zuchiata ta tafassa*.

vice, n. 1. (= profligacy) *zina*; 2. (= a defect, blemish) *aihu*.

victory, n. *naş(s)ara*, *naş(s)archi*, *bijinta*; to gain a v. *naş(s)ara* with *yi* or *samu*, e.g. he gained a v. *ya yi* (or *ya samu*) *naşşara*.

victuals, n. *abinchi*, *tuo*, *chima* or *chimaka*.

view, n. see **sight** 2.

vigorously, adv. *da kangara*.

vile, adj. *kazami*, *dunia**.

village, n. *alķaria*, pl. *alķariyu*; small v. *kauye*, pl. *kauyuka*; little v. *gimi**.

villain, n. *maimasifa*, pl. *masu-masifa*, *mugun mutum*.

villainy, n. (= mischief, wickedness) *masifa*, *mugunta*.

vinegar, n. *ruan tsami*, *yami*.

violence, n. (i.e. tyrannical or wrongful v.) *tsanāni*, *abin tsanāni*; (= physical force) *karifi*, e.g. by v. (= by force) *da karifi*, *da tilas*.

violent person, n. *maitsanāni*.

virgin, n. *budurua*, pl. *buduruai*, *gorua* or *gobrua*, *ķurikia* or *ķurkia*, pl. *ķurikoki* C 18.

vision, n. see **sight** 1.

visit, tr. v. *jiwayi* or *jiwoyi*; spec. of a religious v. to a shrine or holy person *ziara*, *z̄iara*, also *z̄ayi*, e.g. we will v. him *zamu* (= *zamu*) *ziara nai* B 168; she visited the prophets *ta z̄ayi annabawa* F 58.

visitor, n. *bako*, fem. *bakua*, pl. *bakuna*, *baki* or *bakokuna*.

vizier, n. *wazir**.

voice, loud, n. *muria* or *muriya*, pl. *murioyi*.

void, to make, tr. v. *wofinta*.

vomit, v. *yin amai*, *tumbudi*.

voracity, n. *zowari*.

vowels, n. *hajetu**; points or v. (?)

- placed above or below letters
wasali.
- vulture**, n. *angulu*, *agulu* or
augulu, fem. *angula* or *agula* ;
the fishing v. *jayaki* ; cf. *mekia*.
- wag the head**, to, v. (in token of
assent) *ged(d)a* and *ged(d)a kai*
also *kada kai* ; to w. or move
the head (in token of dissent)
kauda kai.
- wage war**, to, v. *yin yaki*.
- wages**, coll. *luda*, *lad(d)a*, *bia* or
biya, *jinga* ; one who pays or
receives w. *maiyinga* ; to pay
w. *yin jinga*.
- wail**, n. *kuka*.
- wail**, v. *kuka* with *yi* or the forms
in *na*.
- wait**, intr. v. gen. expressed by
means of *jima*, pass. *anjima*,
e.g. w. a little *jima kaddan* ;
w. a while, I shall return *sai*
anjima ; thou knowest that in
the world we w. but a short
time *ka san dunia kaddan*
muka jinjimawa F 62 ; where
the meaning is obvious *tsaya*
(stop) is often used, e.g. w., I
am going to explain that *ka*
tsaya ni gaya naka nan, so
zamna, e.g. we waited there
three months *mu zamna wuri-*
nan wata uku ; to w. for *jira*,
jirache, *yin jinkiri*, F 237, B
166.
- wait**, lying in, n. *fak(k)o*, *kwanto* ;
a place for lying in w. *mafak(k)a*.
- wait**, to lie in, intr. v. *yin fak(k)o*,
aranfaki.

- wake**, to, intr. v. (= cease to sleep)
falaka or *falka*, *tashi*, e.g. w.
and arise from sleep *ku falaka*
ku tashi D 26 ; tr. to w. one
up *tada*, *tayes*, and *tashi*.
- wale**, made by a whip etc., n.
kulu, pl. *kulayi*.
- walk**, n. (= pathway) *hainya*, pl.
hainyoyi ; also fig. of the
religious w., e.g. to follow the
true w. *bi hainyan gaskia*.
- walk**, intr. v. (= to move slowly
on foot) *yawo* or *yaö*, *yin*
yawo ; these are used of the
act of walking itself and of
promenading, taking a w., also
shuwaki ; very frequently in
this sense the phr. *shan hiska*
is combined with *yawo* and
taffi, e.g. we walked for an
airing *muka yi yawo shan*
hiska ; to w. about *zago* ; to w.
backwards and forwards *zago*,
jawagi ; to w. on all fours
rarafe B 161 ; to w. on tiptoe
sandua ; to w. proudly *takama* ;
to w. up and down as women
in weaving *wad(d)ari* or *wod-*
(d)ari ; to try to w. (= toddle)
of infants *dubbo dubbo*.
- walking**, verbal n. *gauwa* ; w.
fast or excitedly *gagawa*.
- wall**, n. *katanga*, *garu*, *berza*, e.g. if
he comes out his wits are at the
house wall (i.e. at home) *idan*
ya fitto hankalinsa da berza
D 28 ; w. of house *kag(g)o** ;
w. of house built of mud *bango*
or *bungo*, pl. *bangaye* or *ban-*
guna ; w. round town *gamwa*.

wallow, to, intr. v. *bingira*.

wand, carried by officials, n. *rukuke*.

wander, to, intr. v. spec. to w. as a beggar afar alone *kas(s)ada*; fig. to w. from (= stray from) path *sau hainya* or *tafarki*, e.g. they wandered from the right path, they followed one which was crooked *sun sau tafarki sun bi wanda ta fandare* A 19, 22.

wandering, n. *yauwa*.

wane, intr. v. *ragu*, e.g. the day wanes (or is on the w.) *rana ta ragu*.

want, n. 1. (= need, lack) *reshi* or *ras(s)hi*, e.g. may (God) bring us to the city without w. of anything *shi kaimu garin da babu rasshi ga kowa* E 49; w. of health *reshin lafa*; 2. (= penury) see **indigence**, **poverty**; v. to be in w. of *ras(s)a*, e.g. he is not in w. of excuse *ba shi rassa huja ba* B 10.

want, to, 1. (to be without) tr. v. *ras(s)a, kasa**; cf. prec. 2. (= to desire) *so*, e.g. I w. you to give me money *ina so ka bani kurdi*.

wanting, particip. (= lacking, devoid of) prefix *maras-*, e.g. w. sense *marashankali*; w. strength *maraskarifi**; w. (in the sense of short) *hil(l)afa**; v. to be w. in sense *gigiche* or *gigi*; cf. without 1.

wanton, n. see **profligate**.

wantonness, n. see **vice** 1.

war, n. *yaki*, pl. *yakuna* or *yakoke*; spec. a holy war, e.g. when we come to the (holy) war and conquer the heathen *izan mun zo jihadi mun shi (= chi) asna* E 7; charm for protection in w. *maganin yaki*; day fixed for w. *ranan gamu*; large bird whose cry is considered an omen of war *zakaran dawaki*; v. to make or wage w. *yin yaki* G 7; she undertakes wars *ita dauki yakoke* C 31.

war-horse, n. *mai har(r)i** A 74.

ward off, to, tr. v. *tsara, tsari, tsaro, tsarima*, e.g. w. off from the son of thy servant the evil of this world *ka tsarima dan bawanka zanba dunia* C 40.

warm, to, tr. v. to w. the hands *gas(s)a hanu*; refl. to w. oneself at a fire and intr. to become w. *jin wuta*.

warn, tr. v. *haberta, kaderta*; also *galkadi* with *yi* or the forms in *na*, e.g. we w. you *muna galkadi gareku* D 30.

warning, n. *galkadi, habertawa**.

warrior, n. *mayaki, gunguma, jajirma*, jarimi*, bage**, fig. (lit. a large snake) *gumshaka**, (lit. the black snake) *masaso**; boastful w. *goyara**; chief w. *rago**, pl. *raguna**; invincible w. *duma-muss**; royal w. *samagi**; strong w. *gizgari**; w. without load, i.e. carrying only arms *sunkuru**; cf. soldier.

wash, tr. v. *wanke* or *wanka*, e.g. let this patient be clothed when

- you have washed him *maras-lafia nan awankeshi kana asa masa riguna*; in pregn. sense w. and bring back *wanko*; to w. over with water *yafa, yafu*, w. thoroughly *tsapta*; w. well *winke kalai*.
- washed**, pass. part. *wankake*, fem. *wankaka*, pl. *wankaku*; also expressed by simply appending pass. *awanke*; spec. ceremonially w. *tsalka* or *tsatalka*.
- washing**, n. *gaslu** F 90; w. of clothes *kalai**; w. of the hair *tsapta*.
- wasp**, n. *zurnako, rina**.
- waste**, n. 1. (= destruction, harm, loss) *berna* or *birna, banna*; 2. (= wilderness) *daji*.
- waste**, tr. v. (= spoil, destroy) *bata, batas, banna*; to w. money (i.e. dissipate, squander) *batas* (and *kas(s)she*) *kurdi*; to lay w. *yin kad(d'aita)*.
- wasted**, pass. part. *batache*, fem. *batachia*, pl. *batatu*; v. to be w. (i.e. spent) *bache*, e.g. the ink is w. (i.e. dissipated, dried up) *tadawa ta bache*; (of man, with disease) *yonkane*; see **emaciated**.
- watch**, n. (time-piece) *lottu, sa'a*.
- watch**, v. *tsara, tsari, tsare, tsaro* and *tsarima*; to w. carefully *duba* or *dubo*; to w. cattle *kiwo*.
- water**, n. *rua*, pl. *ruaye*; cold w. *ruan dari*; hot w. *ruan zafti, ruan (demi or) duni*; drinking w. *ruan sha*; a sip of w. *guwa*;
- a body of flowing w. *tabki, tapki* or *tafki*; beam for drawing water *jigo*, pl. *jiguna, kutura**, e.g. he falls down like the pumping beam *shina tankura kamal kutara* D 16; one who in time of sickness gives water *majinata**, B 59 note; v. to draw w. *jan rua, gugana**, *kwalfa, debe* and *debo rua, daruka rua*.
- water-pot**, n. *tulu* A 26, pl. *tulina*; spec. pumpkin or gourd from which w.-pots are made *duma*.
- waterside**, n. (watering-place) *mashaya**.
- water-trough**, n. (for cows, etc.) *jirigi** or *jirgi**, pl. *jirage**.
- watery**, adj. *da rua*.
- wattles of a cock**, n. *lebatu*.
- wave**, tr. v. (= to move to and fro) *shil(l)u, reto*; she is waving her kerchief *tama gilgiza kal-labinta*.
- wax**, n. (from the ear) *kwanyan kune, daudan kune*; see **bees-wax**.
- way**, n. (= road and also fig. of religion, etc.) *hainya* or *haya*, pl. *hainyoyi, tafariki, tafarki, tafarka* or *tafrika*, pl. *tafarkoki, turuba*, pl. *turubobi*; (of temper, character) *ha(l)li*, pl. *ha(l)lai*, e.g. that is his w. *hallinsa ke nan*; in this w. see **thus**; v. to go out of the w. (= to make room for) *ra(s)si*; to lose the w. *ras(s)a hainya, rache* or *ratse, karikache* or

- karkache*; to build or construct a w. *gina hainya* and gen. to prepare a w. *gara hainya*; phr. I know my w. about *na sanni dunia*.
- we**, pers. pron. nominative sep., e.g. all we or we all *mu duka*; we two *mu biu*; prefixed to past tenses, e.g. we saw him *mu ganshi*; suffixed to auxiliary of the future and to the passives, e.g. we will go together *zamu tare*; we were driven out *akafit(t)asdamu*.
- weak**, adj. *reshin karifi, maras-karifi, babu karifi, kumama, laifi** C 1 note; v. I am growing w. *ina kasasda karifi*.
- weakness**, n. *kumamanchi*.
- wealth**, n. see **property**, **riches**.
- wealthy**, adj. see **rich** 1.
- wean**, tr. v. *yeye* or *yaye*.
- weaned child**, n. *yeye* or *yaye*; person who takes charge of a w. ch. *id*.
- wear**, tr. v. *sa** (lit. put on); pass. (= to be clothed with) *asa**, e.g. they shall w. garments of fire *asa masu riguna wuta* F 201.
- weariness**, n. *gajia*.
- weary**, adj. *da gajia, angashe*; v. to feel w. *jin gajia*.
- weary**, tr. v. *gaje*.
- weather**, fine, n. *dunia dadi*; we have f. w. to-day *rana nagari ne*.
- weave**, v. *saka*.
- weaver**, n. ag. *masaki* or *masaka*; weaver's loom *takala*; weaver's shuttle *masaka*.
- weaving**, walk up and down as women when, intr. v. *wad(d)ari* or *wod(d)ari*.
- web**, spider's, n. *sumya*.
- wedding**, n. see **marriage**; w. festivities *amarchi**.
- Wednesday**, n. *rana laraba, laraba*.
- weed**, tr. v. *yin tsintsuan chiawa*.
- weep**, intr. v. *yin hawaye*.
- weigh**, tr. v. *awuna, auni* or *awuna, yin awo*; pass. actions are weighed *ayuka awunsu* F 139, *god(d)a*.
- weighing**, verbal n. anything for w. with *abin awo*; anything used for w. *mauna*.
- weight**, n. 1. (= measured heaviness) *awo*; for particular measures of w. see *miskal, rotel**; v. to feel in order to discover the w. of a thing *jinjini*; 2. (= heaviness) *nauyi* or *noyi, nauwa**.
- weighty**, adj. (= heavy) *da nauyi*.
- welcome**, interj. used as a salutation on meeting after a long time *marhaba, marhabi* or *maraba*; see also under *sanu*.
- welcome**, tr. v. (= to receive as a guest) *shid(d)e*, e.g. they joyfully welcomed me as a guest *suka shiddeni da murna*.
- well**, n. *rijia*, pl. *riyoji* or *rijiyoyi*, e.g. I do not see a w. to fall into it *ba ni ga rijia en fada ba* B 148; a deep w. *rijia da zurifi*; a very deep w. *tumia*; spec. beam for drawing water

out of a w. *jigo*, pl. *jiguna*; v. to dig a w. *gina rijia*.

well, adj. 1. (= right, proper, advantageous) *da keau*; 2. (= in good health) *da lafia* and *lafia*, e.g. are you w.? *kana lafia*; quite w. *sai lafia* or *lafia lau*; he came back here w. *ya komo lafia*; to be w. *yin lafia*; 3. adverbial expressions are: (of approbation) w. *da keau*; (of doubt, hesitation) w. *to*, as w. as (= together with) *tare da*.

west, n. *yamma*, *magarub*.

westward, adv. *yammachi*.

wet, n. (= rain) *rua*; cf. seq.

wet, to be, intr. v. (of the weather) e.g. it is w. *anarua*; it was very w. *anrua dayawa*; (= to become wet) *jik(k)i*; pass. (= to be wetted, put in water) *ajikka* F 78.

wet-season, n. *dam(m)ana* or *dam(m)una*; see under **rainy**.

what, pron. 1. dependent relative (= that which) *abinda*, e.g. I see what you want *na ganni abinda ka ke so*; 2. interrog. what? *mi*, *mine* and *minene*, e.g. what has happened to you? *mi ya sameka*; what shall we do? *mi zamu yi*; also adj. *wa*, *wane* and *wanene*, fem. *wache*, pl. *sua*, *suane* and *suanene*, e.g. what is his name? *wa sunansa*, what kind of bird is this? *wane irin tsuntsua ke nan*.

whatever, indef. rel. pron. *komi*, e.g. wh. begins will come to an

end *komi ya faru zashi shi kari ni* B 71.

whatsoever, indef. rel. pron. *komine*, e.g. wh. you do, it will be of no use *komine ka yi babu anfani*.

wheat, n. *alkam(m)a*, *alkaki** B 14, wh. in good condition *alkamma tsari*; ear of wh. *geza*, pl. *gezuna*; unripe w. ears cooked for eating *tumu*; wh. flour *lal(l)e**.

wheel, n. *rumbua**, *ujala**.

whelp, n. *kwikuyo* or *kurkwuiyo*, pl. *kwikuye*.

when, adv. 1. rel. *da*, *yanda*, *yaenda*, *yaushe*, *sa'anda*, *loka-chinda*, *randa* (= *rana da*), *idun* or *izan*, *kad(d)an*, *kam*, *kami**, *akan**, *akal**, *kur** or *kul**; 2. interrog. when? *wane sa'a*, *wane lokachi*, *kuda**; since wh.? *tunyaushe*, *dag(g)a yaushe*; until wh.? *har yaushe*.

whenever, adv. *koyaushe*, e.g. wh. he gets up he falls down again *koyaushe shi tashi ya fadi kuma*.

where, adv. 1. rel. *enda*, *wurinda*; 2. interrog. where? *enna*.

wherefore P adv. *domi* or *domin-mi*; cf. why.

wherever, adv. *koenna*.

whether...or, correlatives *yala...yala*, *ko...ko*.

which, see **who**.

while, a little, n. *jima kad(d)an* and *jimkad(d)an*.

while, adv. rel. *tunda*, e.g. while they were speaking together I

ran off *tunda suna yin magana na taffi da gudu*; wh. they were about to kill him a wonderful thing. happened *tunda zasu kassheshi abin mamaki ya faru*.

whip, n. (of skin) *kurafu*, *kurfu* or *karfu*, pl. *karfuna*, *bulala*, pl. *bulalai*.

whip, tr. v. *yin bulala*, e.g. he whipped them *ya yi masu bulala*.

whirlwind, n. *gugua* also pronounced *gugwa*, used esp. for dust storm.

whisper, intr. v. *rad(d)a*, *chimbaya*, both esp. in bad sense.

whisperer, n. ag. *mairad(d)a*, pl. *masurad(d)a*, e.g. and the whisperers of evil shall be brought to an evil-smelling place *fa masuradda akaisu gari na mushe* F 168.

whispering, n. *rad(d)ata*.

whistle, intr. v. (with the lips) *feto* or *fito*, *fewa*.

whistling, participial n. *fedua*.

white, adj. *fari*, fem. *fara*, pl. *farari* or *faru faru*; very wh. *farifet*; a wh. (i.e. one of a wh. race) *bature* or *baturi*.

whitened, pass. particip. *faraya*, pl. *farayu*.

who, pron. 1. rel. (also = which, the objective whom, and the rel. that) *wonda* or *wanda**, fem. *wod(d)a*, pl. *wod(d)anda* or *wod(d)anan*, *yedda*, also simply *da*; when used as nominatives the personal pro-

noun of the verb is retained, e.g. 'the second of them was one who showed honour to his parents *nabiusu wanda ya ba iyayi daraja* A 47; I do not know the man whom you seek *ban sanni ba mutum wonda ka ke nema* (or *nemashi*); the city which (or that) you see *gari yedda* (or *da*) *ka ganni* or *garinda ka ganni*; the possess. whose is expressed by the foregoing with the corresponding possess. pron. suffixed to the object possessed, e.g. the man whose camel I killed cannot go on his way *mutum wanda na kasshe rakuminsa ba shi iya yin taffia ba*; 2. interrog. who? (also = which?) *wa*, *wane* and *wanene*, fem. *wache*, pl. *sua*, *suane*, e.g. who is this? *wa ke nan*; who are you? *wanene kai*; who are they? *suane ne*; which of them? *wane chikkinsu*; which woman among them? *wache chikkinsu*; I forget who it was that took him prisoner *na manche wane ya kamashi*; the possess. whose? is expressed by placing the name of the object possessed in the connective before the interrog., e.g. whose daughter art thou? *dian wache ki ke*, and so, without distinction of gender, by using as suffix *-nwa*, e.g. whose horse is this? *dokinwa ke nan*; see also **what**.

whoever, indef. pron. *kowa, duka wanan da, wane*, e.g. w. prays, but refuses to say the opening chapter, is as a man sewing a white garment without thread *kowa ya ke zalla shina ki fatiha shi ne ya ke dumkin fari nasa ba zare* A 75; w. thou art that art afraid *wane kaka zulumu* E 36; cf. soever.

whole, n. *dukachi, dukanta*, e.g. the w. of mankind *dukachin mutane*.

whom, rel. and interrog. pron. see **who**.

whore, n. *shakalia*, pl. *shakalai, karua*.

whoredom, n. *shakalichi*.

whoring, n. *zina* or *zina*.

whose, possess. rel. and interrog. pron. see **who**.

why, dependent rel. adv. *domi* or *dominmi*, e.g. he did not tell us why he did this thing *ba ya faddi mamu domi ya yi abin nan*; interrog. why? *domi* or *dominmi, mayes(s)a, maiyes(s)a* or *maiyes(s)a, sab(b)ada mi*.

wick, n. *jere** (?).

wicked, adj. *mugu*, fem. *mugunia*, pl. *miagu*; a w. person *mugun mutum, malalachi*, pl. *masulalachi*; the w. *lainu** D 22; cf. bad, sinner.

wickedness, n. *mugunta*.

wide, adj. see **broad**; n. a w. place *yalwa* or *yelwa*; it is two cubits w. *fadinsa* (= its width) *kamu biu*.

wide-opened, adj. *kurkurkur** B 32 note.

widow, n. *zauwara*.

width, n. *fadi*, e.g. its w. is this *fadinsa ke nan*.

wife, n. *mata*, pl. *mataye*; spec. chief w. *uworigid(d)a* or *uwalgid(d)a*; w. of a polygamist *kishia* (q.v.), pl. *kishiyoyi*.

wild, adj. see **tame** 1.

wilderness, n. *daji, dawa**, cf. desert.

wile, n. see **stratagem**.

will, n. (= assent, consent and so, permission) *yerda* G 7 fin, (= one's pleasure, wish, determination) turn, e.g. work your w. *ku yi abinda ku ke so*.

will, v. 1. (of consent, also willingness) *yerda*; also *so*, e.g. I ask you to teach me reading—I will *na roko ka koya mani karatu—ina yerda* or *ina so*; 2. as auxiliary of the fut. *za*, e.g. I w. run *zani gudu*; he w. return here *zashi* (or *zai*) *komo*.

win, v. (in gambling) *chi*, e.g. I w. *na chi*.

wind, n. *iska* or *hiska*, pl. *iskoki* or *hiskoki*, e.g. the w. is now blowing hard *iska tana busawa yanzu da karifi*; to break w. *tusa*.

wind, tr. v. *murda*; this is used by Hausas acquainted with them for winding time-pieces, e.g. I wound my watch *na murda lottuna* or *sa'ana*; intr. (= to coil) *nad(d)e*.

winding-sheet, n. *likafani, zugu*.

window, n. (i.e. a hole to look out) *taga**, *dan kofa**.

wind-pipe, n. *muria* or *muriya*, pl. *murioyi, janai, janyaro*.

wine, palm-, n. *bam* or *bumbi*.

wing, n. (of bird) *fikafike*, pl. *fikafikai*, also *fukafuki*, pl. *fukafukai*.

wink, v. *kepta ido*; to w. with one eye *yin kan(n)e*.

winking, participial n. *keptawa* or *kiptawa, kan(n)e**, *kaniawa*.

winnow, v. *tankade* and *yin tankade, bakache*.

winnower, n. ag. *marbakache*.

wipe, tr. v. *shafe*; anything used for wiping *abin shafe*.

wisdom, n. 1. (=sagacious insight) *lura, budi, hikima**; 2. (=prudence, good sense) *hankali*.

wise, adj. in sense of prec. 1. *mailura*; in that of prec. 2. *da hankali*.

wish, n. *abinso, katara**, *san** (=son); strong w. *guri*, e.g. many a w. *dayawan guri* B 119 note; w. and esp. wrong w. *fata**; v. to gratify a w. *katarsa**, e.g. he whose wishes God gratifies, *wanda ubangiji ya katarsasa* D 70; in salutations the indicative forms sometimes denote a wish, e.g. may God lengthen thy life *allah ya baka tsawan rai*.

wish, tr. v. *so, nuf(f)e* or *nif(f)a*; w. strongly expressed by *guri* (cf. prec.) with *ga*, e.g. I have a strong w. to go on the pil-

grimage to it *guri gareni en taffi haji nai* B 162; to w. for *id*; to w. rather *fis(s)o*, e.g. I w. this rather than that *na fiso wonan da wonchan*; to w. what is wrong *yin fata*.

witchcraft, n. see *sorcery*.

with, prep. 1. instrumental, *da*, e.g. they slashed him w. swords *suka sareshi da takuba*; 2. comitative, *da* which is very common with verbs of motion, e.g. go off w. it (=take it away) *taffi dashi*; (=in company w.) *tare da*; (=near, by) *wuri na* or *wurin, gun*, e.g. w. the king *wuri na (or wurin) sariki*; thou must seek knowledge w. the Mallams *kai dai anim shinni gun malamai* B 155; (of competition and contest) *da* and *a*, e.g. he fought w. a certain man *ya yi fadda da woni mutum*; he made war w. Kaffi *ya yi yaki da kaffi* G 5; he went to war w. Gunu *ya taffi yaki agunu* *ibid*.

withdraw, tr. v. *kauda*; intr. to w. from (=move away from) *gusa* (participial form *gusawa*), *gulgusa* or *gurugusa*.

wither, v. *yaushi* or *yoshi, tsotse* and *tsotsi, kwake**; (of plants) *yonkane, tafe, tafi, tabe*.

withered, pass. part. *shainyaye*, fem. *shainyaya*, pl. *shainyayu*; spec. w. branches *kwobruka* or *kwabruka*; w. tree *kwabri* or *kwauri*, pl. *kwabruka* or *kwobruka*.

withhold, tr. v. *han(ɳ)a, saidaba**.

within, prep. *chik(k)in* or *dag(g)a chik(k)in, tsak(k)an**, e.g. w. the house *tsakka(n) giddansu* A 23; from w. *dagga chikkin*; adv. *batsini** B 35 note.

without, prep. 1. (= devoid of, wanting) *ba, babu, bamda, wane**, e.g. w. thread *ba zare* A 75; w. doubt *babu shak(k)a, babu wawa*, e.g. thou wilt leave this place then w. doubt *gari nan zaka bershi fa babu wawa*; with the prefix *maras-* compounds are formed equivalent to the English prepositional phrase, e.g. w. shame *maras-kumia*; v. to be w. *ras(s)a, tafe, tafi* or *tabe, kasa**, e.g. thou wilt not be w. it *ba ka tabe ba* F 67; 2. (= not within) see **outside**.

witness, n. 1. (= testimony) *shaida*, pl. *shaidai* and *shaidodi*; eye-w. *shaida ido*; 2. (= person who testifies) *maishaida*, pl. *masushaida*; v. to bear w. *shaida* with *yi* or the forms in *na*; to bring or adduce w. *kai* (or *kawo*) *shaida*.

wizard, n. *maye* or *mayi*, fem. *mayia, boka*, pl. *bokaye*.

woe! interj. *wai, tir*, e.g. w. is me! *wai nia*; w. unto you! *tir daku*; cf. **alas**.

wolf, animal resembling, n. *kir-keshi = kelkeji* (?).

woman, n. *mache* or *machi*, pl. *mata*; young w. *yarinia*, pl. *yamata*; bad w. *karua, shakalia*.

wonder, n. 1. (the feeling) *woba**; v. to cause w. *ajabi*; 2. (= something wonderful, a w.) *mamaki* and *abin mamaki, ajaba, ajub, aya*, pl. *ayoyi*; the last esp. of a wonderful sign or portent; this is a w.! *alame-ringa*.

wonder, intr. v. *yin woba, yin* (or *jin*) *mamaki*; to w. at *demanta**.

wonderful, adj. *lajibi* D 90; anything w. see **wonder** 2; to be w. *da mamaki*.

wont, n. (= habit) *tada, ada, hal(l)i*, e.g. this is their w. *tadansu ke nan*; v. to be w. see **accustom** 2.

wood, n. 1. (= forest) *rukuki*; 2. (= the material of trees) *itache* and *iche*; a little piece of w. *dan itache*; spec. a long piece of w. tied behind the ear as a punishment for thieving *kan-galai*.

wool, n. *mulufi* or *malufi*, e.g. there shall be put on them beautiful garments of w. *asa masu riguna na ado da mulufi* F 216; w. from sheep *sufi, rero**.

woollen, adj. *da* (or *na*) *mulufi* or *malufi*; woollen cloth *mulufi* or *malufi*.

word, n. *magana*, pl. *maganganu, zanche* or *zanchi*; words, in coll. sense *kalmata** B 1, *kalam-i** D 7, *karatu* D 1; pleasant words (lit. ear broth) *romon kune*.

work, n. (=employment, business, labour) *aiki*, *aiko*, *shag(g)ali*, *shag(g)eli*, *shug(g)eli*, *shag(g)al**, pl. *shugulgula*, *tsurfa*, concr. (= a production, an act, a w.) *aiki*, pl. *aikoki*; net-work *aikin raga*; a bad w. *aiki mugu*; v. to refuse to w. *kiwuya*; to refuse to w. or to shirk w. *huji*.

work, intr. v. *aiki* with *yi* and the forms in *na*; to w. diligently *kakari*, *yin sawabe*, the last also = to w. well, to w. uselessly *sunkwia* or *sunkuya* C 4; n. unwillingness to w. *sousachi* or *sosochi*.

working, n. (=action, operative power) *yi** q.v.

workman, n. ag. *maaikachi*.

workshop, n. *maaikachi**.

world, n. *dunia* or *duniya*; the next w. *lahira* A 7, 33; *gid-(d)an gobe*, e.g. so too this w. and the next, you know that you cannot bring them together so as to retain them *hakka fa dunia da gidan gobe ka san ba ka gamasu ka rumtsi ba* B 27; see under *dunia*.

worm, n. spec. guinea-worm *kur-kono* or *kurukunu*; a w. which lives in the ground *tana*, pl. *tanu*; worms in horses or asses coll. *azumaki*.

worry, tr. v. *kenke*, *wohalshe*.

worse, comp. adj. *mafi mugunta dagg*.

worship, n. (= religion, creed) *addini**; (= divine service)

gal(l)a; Mohammedan w. *mu-sulumchi*.

worship, v. tr. *tsarikaka*, *tsarkaka*, *tsarkaki* or *charkaka*; if you follow Him and worship Him, He will grant you salvation *en ka bishi ka charkakashi (shi) baka chira* D 81.

worshipped, pass. part. *ma'abu-du** D 3 note.

worthless, adj. *banza*, *laane*, fem. *laama*, pl. *laamu*, *lalatache*, fem. *lalatachia*, pl. *lalatatu*; n. a w. fellow *aibu*.

worthy, to be, intr. *chinchinta**, e.g. I am not w. to do this *ban chinchinta en yi hakka*; tr. to deem w. *gamshe*.

wound, n. *rauni*; scar of a healed w. *tabo*.

wound, tr. v. *rauni*.

wounded, pass. part. *da rauni*.

woven, pass. part. *sakake*, fem. *sakakia*, pl. *sakaku*.

wrap, tr. v. *yafa*, *yafo*, *sunke*.

wrapper, n. (= a goatskin loin w.) *walki* or *wolki*.

wrapping, grass, for packing natron, n. *burdumi*.

wrath, n. see *anger*.

wrestle, intr. v. *yin kokua*.

wrestler, n. *maikunche**.

wrestling, n. *kokua*.

wring, tr. v. *murda*, e.g. they wrung the fowls' necks *suka murda wuyan kaji*.

wrinkle, intr. v. *yaushi* or *yoshi*.

wrist, n. *wuyan hamu*, *dumbubu* or *dungudu*; w. bone *idon*

hanu; spec. w. ornament worn by the heathen *warami*, pl. *waramai*.

write, v. *rubuta*, *rubutu*, *yin rubutu*.

writing, n. abstr. *rubutu* or *rubuchi*; a w. board *allo*; concr. (= anything written, a w.) *laya*, *takarda*, pl. *takardu*, *rubutu*, *rubuchi*, *litafi* or *letafi*, pl. *litatafi*; spec. writing from God (used of the Koran, the Psalms or Gospels) *zabura**.

wrong, n. (= violation of right) *laiifi*; v. to do w. *yin laiifi*, *karikache*, e.g. he did me w. *ya yi mani laiifi*; I will produce proof so that anyone may see that you are in the w. *ni kawo shaida kowa shi ganni ku ke da laiifi*.

yam, n. *doiya* or *doya*, pl. *doyoyi*; a y. cooked and beaten up *sokara*; spec. a kind of y. *risga*; a root resembling y. *tumuku*.

yarn, thick cotton, n. *abawa*.

yawn, intr. v. *mika*.

ye, pers. pron. see **you**.

yea, adv. see **yes**.

year, n. *shekara*, pl. *shekaru*, e.g. how many years old are you? *shekarunka nawa* or *shekara nawa kana da rai* or *shekara nawa tun haifuwanka*; last y. adv. *bara*; next y. *bad(d)i*; this y. *banna*; v. to live (so many) years *shekara*, e.g. he lived three years in the kingdom of

Zaria ya shekara uku chikki sarota zaria G 2.

yeast, n. spec. y. made of acid pulp of the tamarind *tsamia*.

yellow, adj. *rawaiya* or *rawaya*, pl. *rawaiyu*, spec. y. needlework on a bernouse *yaranni*.

yes, adv. *i*, *na'am**, *madala*; to say y. (= to assent or consent) *kada kai*; cf. certainly.

yesterday, n. *jia*; the day before y. *shekaranjia*, three days ago *wanshekaranjia*; y. evening *jia da mareche*.

yet, adv. *har yanzu*, e.g. is your father y. living? *ubanka har yanzu shina da rai*; while y. *tunda*, e.g. while they were y. running *tunda suna gudu*; not y. *tukun*, *tukun(n)a* with *ba*, e.g. he has not y. gone away *ba ya taffi tukuna ba*.

yoke, put on necks of slaves, n. *karkia*.

yolk of egg, n. *kobdua* or *gobdua*.

yonder, l. dem. adj. (also = the one y.) *wonchan*, fem. *wochan*, pl. *wod(d)anan*, *chan* or *chana*, e.g. on the y. side *dag(g)a woje chan*; 2. adv. (= over there) *chan*, *chana*, *dag(g)a chan*, *wurichan*.

you, pers. pron. (also = ye) *ku*; 1. separate, e.g. y. are all much frightened *ku duka kuna jin tsoro dayawa*; 2. prefixed to past tenses, e.g. did you see them? *ko ku gansu*; suffixed to fut. auxiliary and the passive, e.g. on that day y. will

experience trouble *rana nan zaku sha wohalla*; y. were driven out *akafit(t)asdaku*; also suffixed to preps., e.g. to you *maku* or with assimilation *muku*.

young, adj. 1. (= new, fresh, not used of animals or men) *šábo*, fem. *šábuá*, pl. *šábi*, e.g. down (lit. y. hair) *šabon gashi*; 2. (of animals) *da*, conn. *dan*, fem. *dia*, pl. *ya*, conn. *yan*, coll. *dia*, e.g. a y. lion *dan zaki* or *dan zakainya*; y. lions *yan zakainya*; the hyena brought forth her y. *kura ta haife danta*; 3. (of human beings) special terms are used requiring no adj., e.g. a y. lad *yaro*, pl. *yara*; a y. woman *yarinia*, pl. *yamata*; a y. man; see **youth** 2.

youngest, adj. *auta*.

youngling, n. (of animals) *kwi-kuyo* or *kurkwiyo*, pl. *kwikuye*.

your, possess. pron. suff. *-ku*, e.g. y. king *sarikinku*; separate, if the object possessed is masc. *naku*, if fem. *taku*, if pl. *naku*.

yours, (the form of prec. employed when the object possessed is not expressly stated but implied) with masc. object *naku*, fem. *taku*, pl. *naku*, e.g. our horses are better than y. *dawakinmu su fi naku*.

yourself, yourselves, refl. and emphatic pron.; see **self**.

youth, n. 1. abstr. *yarinta*; 2. concr. (= a y. from fourteen to twenty years of age) *samrai* or *sarmayi*, pl. *samari*.

zeal, n. *him(m)a* or *him(m)a*; v. to show z. *máida* (or *yín*) *himma* D 26, E 42.

zizyphus, n. z. spina Christi *kurna*; z. lotus *magaria*.

Cambridge:

**PRINTED BY J. AND C. F. CLAY,
AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS.**

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

SPECIMENS
OF HAUSA LITERATURE

CONSISTING OF POEMS AND HISTORICAL EXTRACTS
REPRODUCED IN FACSIMILE IN THE ORIGINAL
CHARACTER WITH

TRANSLATION, TRANSLITERATION AND NOTES

Small 4to. 10s.

The Translation, Transliteration and Notes, without the facsimiles, 5s.

A DICTIONARY
OF THE HAUSA LANGUAGE.

VOL. I. HAUSA-ENGLISH.

Demy 8vo. 12s. net.

VOL. II. ENGLISH-HAUSA.

Demy 8vo. 9s. net.

London: C. J. CLAY AND SONS,
CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE,
AVE MARIA LANE.
Glasgow: 50, WELLINGTON STREET.

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

HAUSA GRAMMAR

WITH EXERCISES, READINGS AND VOCABULARY

Being a Volume of

TRÜBNER'S SELECTION OF SIMPLIFIED GRAMMARS

Crown 8vo. 5s.

The *ATHENÆUM* says:—"The book is a distinct contribution to the study of a language still greatly in need of elucidation."

LONDON: KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & Co., LTD.
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING CROSS ROAD, W.C.

HAUSALAND,

OR FIFTEEN HUNDRED MILES THROUGH
THE CENTRAL SUDAN.

Third Edition. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

The *SPECTATOR* says:—"The book is one to be warmly commended, not only on account of the interest and value of the ethnical study it contains, but also for the pleasant and entertaining style in which it is written."

LONDON: SAMPSON LOW, MARSTON & CO.
FETTER LANE, FLEET STREET, E.C.

NIGERIA;

OUR LATEST PROTECTORATE.

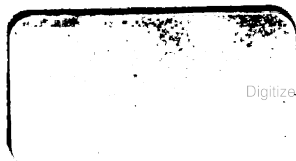
Just published. Crown 8vo. 5s.

With Map and Numerous Illustrations.

The *MORNING POST* says:—"This is a book which ought to be read by everyone as a duty: once started it will be read with sheer pleasure."

LONDON: HORACE MARSHALL & CO.
TEMPLE HOUSE, TEMPLE AVENUE, E.C.

**DOES NOT
CIRCULATE**



2235.42

Dictionary of the Hausa language /

Widener Library

003526106



3 2044 086 556 362